



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 475.1 .A566a

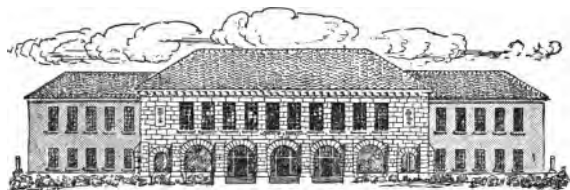
Andrews, E. A.

Grammar of the Latin language : for the

**Stanford University Libraries**



**3 6105 04926 6187**



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK  
COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARIES



*Corrected Proof*

## ANDREWS' SERIES OF LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS.

PUBLISHED BY CROCKER & BREWSTER,

47 WASHINGTON STREET, BOSTON.

The Latin School Books prepared by Prof. R. A. ANDREWS, exclusive of his Latin-English Lexicon, founded on the Latin-German Lexicon of Dr. Freund, constitute two distinct series, adapted to different and distinct purposes. The basis of the First Series is Andrews' First Latin Book; of the Second, Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar.

### FIRST SERIES.

This Series is designed expressly for those who commence the study of Latin at a very early age, and for such as intend to pursue it to a limited extent only, or merely as subsidiary to the acquisition of a good English education. It consists of the following works, viz. :—

**1. Andrews' First Latin Book; or Progressive Lessons in Reading and Writing Latin.** This small volume contains most of the leading principles and grammatical forms of the Latin language, and, by the logical precision of its rules and definitions, is admirably fitted to serve as an introduction to the study of general grammar. The work is divided into lessons of convenient length, which are so arranged that the student will, in all cases, be prepared to enter upon the study of each successive lesson, by possessing a thorough knowledge of those which preceded it. The lessons generally consist of three parts:—1st. The statement of important principles in the form of rules or definitions, or the exhibition of orthographical or etymological forms; 2d. Exercises, designed to illustrate such principles or forms; and 3d. Questions, intended to assist the student in preparing his lesson. In addition to the grammatical lessons contained in this volume, a few pages of Reading Lessons are annexed, and these are followed by a Dictionary comprising all the Latin words contained in the work. This book is adapted to the use of all schools above the grade of primary schools, including also Academies and Female Seminaries. It is prepared in such a manner that it can be used with little difficulty by any intelligent parent or teacher, with no previous knowledge of the language.

**2. The Latin Reader, with a Dictionary and Notes,** containing explanations of difficult idioms, and numerous references to the Lessons contained in the First Latin Book.

**3. The Viri Romæ, with a Dictionary and Notes,** referring, like those of the Reader, to the First Latin Book. This series of three small volumes, if faithfully studied according to the directions contained in them, will not only render the student a very tolerable proficient in the principles of the Latin language and in the knowledge of its roots, from which so many words of the English language are derived, but will constitute the best preparation for a thorough study of English grammar.

### SECOND SERIES.

This Series is designed more especially for those who are intending to become thoroughly acquainted with the Latin language, and with the principal classical authors of that language. It consists of the following works:—

**1. Latin Lessons.** This small volume is designed for the younger classes of Latin students, who intend ultimately to take up the larger Grammar, but to whom that work would, at first, appear too formidable. It contains the prominent principles of Latin grammar, expressed in the same language as in the larger Grammar, and likewise Reading and Writing Lessons, with a Dictionary of the Latin words and phrases occurring in the Lessons.



## **New Series of Latin School Books.**

**2. Latin Grammar.** A Grammar of the Latin Language, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By Professors E. A. ANDREWS and S. STODDARD. This work, which for many years has been the text-book in the department of Latin Grammar in a large portion of American schools and colleges, and which claims the merit of having first introduced into the schools of this country the subject of grammatical analysis, which now occupies a conspicuous place in so many grammars of the English language, has been recently revised and carefully corrected in every part.

**3. Questions on the Grammar.** This little volume is intended to aid the student in preparing his lessons, and the teacher in conducting his recitations.

**4. A Synopsis of Latin Grammar,** comprising the Latin Paradigms, and the Principal Rules of Latin Etymology and Syntax. The few pages composing this work contain those portions of the Grammar to which the student has occasion to refer most frequently in the preparation of his daily lessons.

**5. Latin Reader.** The Reader, by means of two separate and distinct sets of notes, is equally adapted for use in connection either with the First Latin Book or the Latin Grammar.

**6. Viri Romæ.** This volume, like the Reader, is furnished with notes and references, both to the First Latin Book and to the Latin Grammar. The principal difference in the two sets of notes found in each of these volumes consists in the somewhat greater fulness of those which belong to the smaller series.

**7. Latin Exercises.** This work contains exercises in every department of the Latin Grammar, and is so arranged that it may be studied in connection with the Grammar through every stage of the preparatory course. It is designed to prepare the way for original composition in the Latin language, both in prose and verse.

**8. A Key to Latin Exercises.** This Key, in which all the exercises in the preceding volume are fully corrected, is intended for the use of teachers only.

**9. Cæsar's Commentaries** on the Gallic War, with a Dictionary and Notes. The text of this edition of Cæsar has been formed by reference to the best German editions. The Notes are principally grammatical. The Dictionary, which, like all the others in the series, was prepared with great labor, contains the usual significations of the words, together with an explanation of all such phrases as might otherwise perplex the student.

**10. Sallust.** Sallust's Jugurthine War and Conspiracy of Catiline, with a Dictionary and Notes. The text of this work, which was based upon that of Cortius, has been modified by reference to the best modern editions, especially by those of Kritz and Gerlach; and its orthography is, in general, conformed to that of Pottier and Planche. The Dictionaries of Cæsar and Sallust connected with this series are original works, and, in connection with the Notes in each volume, furnish a very complete and satisfactory apparatus for the study of these two authors.

**11. Ovid.** Selections from the Metamorphoses and Heroides of Ovid, with Notes, Grammatical References, and Exercises in Scanning. These selections from Ovid are designed as an introduction to Latin poetry. They are accompanied with numerous brief notes explanatory of difficult phrases, of obscure historical or mythological allusions, and especially of grammatical difficulties. To these are added such Exercises in Scanning as serve fully to introduce the student to a knowledge of Latin prosody, and especially of the structure and laws of hexameter and pentameter verse.

## New Series of Latin School Books.

ANDREWS AND STODDARD'S *LATIN GRAMMAR* has long since been introduced into the *LATIN SCHOOL OF THE CITY OF BOSTON*, and into most of the other principal Classical Schools in this country. It is adopted by all the Colleges in New England, viz., *HARVARD, YALE, DARTMOUTH, AMHERST, WILLIAMS, BOWDOIN, WATERTOWN, MIDDLEBURY, BURLINGTON, BROWN UNIVERSITY* at Providence, *WESLEYAN UNIVERSITY* at Middletown, and *WASHINGTON COLLEGE* at Hartford; also at *HAMILTON COLLEGE*, New York, *NEW YORK UNIVERSITY*, city of New York, *CINCINNATI COLLEGE* and *MARIETTA COLLEGE*, Ohio, *RANDOLPH MACON COLLEGE*, Virginia, *MOUNT HOPE COLLEGE*, near Baltimore, *MARYLAND INSTITUTE OF INSTRUCTION* and *ST. MARY'S COLLEGE*, Baltimore, and the *UNIVERSITIES OF MICHIGAN* and *ALABAMA*; and has been highly recommended by Professors Kingsley, Woolsey, Olmstead, and Gibbs, of Yale College; Professor Beck, of Harvard College; President Penney and Professor North, of Hamilton College; Professor Packard, of Bowdoin College; Professor Holland, of Washington College; Professor Fisk, of Amherst College, and by Professor Hackett, of Brown University;—also by Messrs. Dillaway and Gardner, of the Boston Latin School; Rev. Lyman Colman, of the English High School, Andover; Hon. John Hall, Principal of the Ellington School, Conn.; Mr. Shaler, Principal of the Connecticut Literary Institution, at Suffield; Simeon Hart, Esq., Farmington, Conn.; Professor Cogswell, of Round Hill School, Northampton; President Shannon, of Louisiana College, and by various periodicals.

As a specimen of the communications received from the above sources, the following extracts are given:—

It gives me great pleasure to bear my testimony to the superior merits of the *Latin Grammar* lately edited by Professor Andrews and Mr. Stoddard. I express most cheerfully, unhesitatingly, and decidedly, my preference of this *Grammar* to that of Adam, which has, for so long a time, kept almost undisputed sway in our schools.—*Dr. C. Beck, Professor of Latin in Harvard University.*

I know of no grammar published in this country, which promises to answer so well the purposes of elementary classical instruction, and shall be glad to see it introduced into our best schools.—*Mr. Charles K. Dillaway, Master of the Public Latin School, Boston.*

Your new *Latin Grammar* appears to me much better suited to the use of students than any other grammar I am acquainted with.—*Professor William M. Holland, Washington College, Hartford, Conn.*

I can with much pleasure say that your *Grammar* seems to me much better adapted to the present condition and wants of our schools than any one with which I am acquainted, and to supply that which has long been wanted—a good *Latin grammar* for common use.—*Mr. F. Gardner, one of the Masters Boston Lat. Sch.*

The *Latin Grammar* of Andrews and Stoddard is deserving, in my opinion, of the approbation which so many of our ablest teachers have bestowed upon it. It is believed that, of all the grammars at present before the public, this has greatly the advantage, in regard both to the excellence of its arrangement, and the accuracy and copiousness of its information; and it is earnestly hoped that its merits will procure for it that general favor and use to which it is entitled.—*H. B. Hackett, Professor of Biblical Literature in Newton Theol. Sem.*

The universal favor with which this *Grammar* is received was not unexpected. It will bear a thorough and discriminating examination. In the use of well-defined and expressive terms, especially in the syntax, we know of no *Latin* or *Greek grammar* which is to be compared to this.—*Amer. Quarterly Register.*

The *Latin Grammar* of Andrews and Stoddard I consider a work of great merit. I have found in it several principles of the *Latin language* correctly explained which I had myself learned from a twenty years' study of that language, but had never seen illustrated in any grammar. *Andrews's First Lessons in*

## New Series of Latin School Books.

sider a valuable work for beginners, and in the sphere which it is designed to occupy, I know not that I have met its equal. — *Rev. James Shannon, President of College of Louisiana.*

These works will furnish a series of elementary publications for the study of Latin altogether in advance of any thing which has hitherto appeared, either in this country or in England. — *American Biblical Repository.*

We have made Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar the subject both of reference and recitation daily for several months, and I cheerfully and decidedly bear testimony to its superior excellence to any manual of the kind with which I am acquainted. Every part bears the impress of a careful compiler. The principles of syntax are happily developed in the rules, whilst those relating to the moods and tenses supply an important deficiency in our former grammars. The rules of prosody are also clearly and fully exhibited. — *Rev. Lyman Coleman, Principal of Burr Seminary, Manchester, Vt.*

I have examined Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and regard it as superior to any thing of the kind now in use. It is what has long been needed, and will undoubtedly be welcomed by every one interested in the philology of the Latin language. We shall hereafter use it as a text-book in this institution. — *Mr. Wm. H. Shaler, Principal of the Connecticut Lit. Institution at Suffield.*

This work bears evident marks of great care and skill, and ripe and accurate scholarship in the authors. It excels most grammars in this particular, that, while by its plainness it is suited to the necessities of most beginners, by its fulness and detail it will satisfy the inquiries of the advanced scholar, and will be a suitable companion at all stages of his progress. We cordially commend it to the student and teacher. — *Biblical Repository.*

Your Grammar is what I expected it would be — an excellent book, and just the thing which was needed. We cannot hesitate a moment in laying aside the books now in use, and introducing this — *Rev. J. Penney, D. D., President of Hamilton College, New York.*

Your Grammar bears throughout evidence of original and thorough investigation and sound criticism. I hope, and doubt not, it will be adopted in our schools and colleges, it being, in my apprehension, so far as simplicity is concerned, on the one hand, and philosophical views and sound scholarship on the other, far preferable to other grammars; a work at the same time highly creditable to yourselves and to our country. — *Professor A. Packard, Bowdoin College, Maine.*

This Grammar appears to me to be accommodated alike to the wants of the new beginner and the experienced scholar, and, as such, well fitted to supply what has long been felt to be a great desideratum in the department of classical learning. — *Professor S. North, Hamilton College, New York.*

From such an examination of this Grammar as I have been able to give it, I do not hesitate to pronounce it superior to any other with which I am acquainted. I have never seen, any where, a greater amount of valuable matter compressed within limits equally narrow. — *Hon. John Hall, Prin. of Ellington School, Conn.*

We have no hesitation in pronouncing this Grammar decidedly superior to any now in use. — *Boston Recorder.*

I am ready to express my great satisfaction with your Grammar, and do not hesitate to say, that I am better pleased with such portions of the syntax as I have perused, than with the corresponding portions in any other grammar with which I am acquainted. — *Professor N. W. Fiske, Amherst College, Mass.*

I know of no grammar in the Latin language so well adapted to answer the purpose for which it was designed as this. The book of Questions is a valuable attendant of the Grammar. — *Simeon Hart, Esq., Farmington, Conn.*

This Grammar has received the labor of years, and is the result of much reflection and experience, and mature scholarship. As such, it claims the attention of all who are interested in the promotion of sound learning. — *N. Y. Obs.*

This Grammar is an original work. Its arrangement is philosophical, and its rules clear and precise, beyond those of any other grammar we have seen  
*Portland Christian Mirror.*

A

GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE;

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

E. A. ANDREWS AND S. STODDARD.

---

THE SIXTY-FIFTH EDITION.

REVISED WITH CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS,

BY E. A. ANDREWS, LL. D.

---

BOSTON:

PUBLISHED BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,

47 Washington Street.

1858.

597605

**C**

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1857,  
BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

---

## P R E F A C E .

---

As more than twenty years have elapsed, since the first publication of this Grammar, it can scarcely be necessary, in offering to the public a revised edition of the work, to make more than a passing allusion to its original plan or to the circumstances to which it owed its origin.

For some years previous to the date of its publication, the progress of classical learning in Europe, and particularly in Germany, had been such, as plainly to indicate the necessity of a corresponding advance in the manuals of Latin grammar employed in the schools of this country. Their deficiencies had indeed become so apparent, that various attempts had already been made to furnish a remedy by means of translations of German grammars; but none of these, however excellent in many respects, had seemed to be fully adapted to the purpose for which they were intended.

To unite the acknowledged excellencies of the older English manuals and of the more recent German grammars was the special aim of the authors of this work; and to this end their attention was directed, first to the preparation of more extended rules for the pronunciation of the language, secondly to a clearer exposition of its inflectional changes, thirdly to the proper basis of its syntax, and fourthly to greater precision in its rules and definitions.

The system of rules for the division and accentuation of Latin words, prepared in pursuance of the plan which has just been specified, was accordingly more copious than any previously found in the Latin grammars in common use in this country. For the purpose also of preventing the formation of erroneous habits of pronunciation in the early part of the student's course, the penultimate quantities of all Latin words occurring in the Grammar were carefully marked, unless determinable by some general rule, and the paradigms were divided and accented in such a manner as to indicate their true pronunciation.

In their treatment of Latin etymology, the authors aimed to render its study less a mere exercise of memory, and in a greater degree an efficient aid in the general cultivation of the mental powers. The principal means adopted for this purpose consisted in the practical distinction, every where made in treating inflected words, between the root, or ground-form, and the termination.

The third prominent peculiarity of the original work was its direct derivation of the rules of Syntax from the logical analysis of sentences, and its distinct specification of the particular use of each of the several words of which a sentence is composed. This method of treating syntax—a method previously unknown in the schools of this country—has, since that period, been extensively adopted, and in some instances greatly extended, particularly in a portion of the English grammars recently published in this country, and has probably contributed more to the advancement of grammatical science, than any other innovation of modern times.

The errors noticed in the original work have been corrected, as successive editions have issued from the press, but no opportunity has occurred, until the present, of thoroughly revising it in every part. Two years of continuous labor have now been devoted to its revision, and to the purpose of rendering it conformable in all respects to the advanced position which it originally aspired to occupy.

In all the modifications which have now been made, I have aimed to accomplish these two purposes—to preserve, as far as possible, the identity of the work, and at the same time to bring it as near, as should be practicable, to the present state of philological science. Hence, while I have made no changes either in language or arrangement, but such as appeared to me quite necessary, I have omitted none which logical accuracy or requisite fulness of explanation seemed to demand. In doing even this it soon became evident, that the changes and additions must be more numerous, than would well consist with the convenient use of the old and the new editions in the same classes. Though not insensible of the trouble occasioned to the teacher by alterations in a familiar text-book, I could not but suppose, that such modifications as the progress of the last twenty years had rendered necessary, would still be welcomed by him, notwithstanding the personal inconvenience arising from the disturbance of his previous associations. To his pupils, who will have known no other form of the Grammar, than that in which it now appears, the work, it is believed, will not only be as easy of comprehension in its new, as in its old form, but in its practical application far more satisfactory.

Of the minor changes and additions occurring on almost every page, and even of the occasional rearrangement of small portions of the materials, it is unnecessary to speak particularly. The student familiar with former editions will at once detect these slight modifications, and note them in his memory for future use; and though he may fail to find a rule, exception, or remark on the page where he has been wont to see it, he will still meet with it in the same relative position,—in the same section and subdivision of the section in which it formerly appeared.

In the department of Orthoëpy will now be found some account of the Continental mode of pronouncing Latin; and, by means of the joint exhibition of

this and of the English methods, the student will be able to use the Grammar with equal facility, whether choosing to adhere to the usual pronunciation of English and American scholars, or preferring that of the continental schools.

In the Etymology of nouns, no other alteration need be specified, except the introduction, in the third declension, of "Rules for forming the nominative singular from the root." These are copied, in a modified form, from the editor's First Latin Book. In themselves they are of considerable utility in showing the mutual relations between the sounds of certain letters, and they are also closely connected with corresponding changes in some of the verbal roots. In the Etymology of adjectives, besides the minor modifications already alluded to, a few changes in arrangement have been made in those sections which relate to Comparison. To pronouns have been added some remarks on Pronominal Adjectives, which seemed to require a more particular notice, than they had heretofore received, both in their relation to each other and to the Adverbial Correlatives. The Etymology of particles has been treated somewhat more fully than in former editions—a fulness especially observable in relation to adverbs and conjunctions, and which was rendered necessary by the more extended treatment of those particles in the revised Syntax.

In almost every section of the Syntax the student will meet with modifications and especially with additions, which, as in other parts of the work, are introduced in such a manner as seldom to interfere with the references made to former editions in the series based upon this Grammar. The principal exception to the latter remark is to be found in sections 247—251, which relate to certain uses of the ablative.

A comparison of the Prosody in the present and former editions will show, that it has been revised with minute care in every part. Similar attention has also been given to the Appendix, in which will be found some additions relating to Roman Money, Weights and Measures. For the greater convenience of the student the Index in this edition has been much enlarged.

In conclusion, I would briefly indicate the principal sources from which have been derived the various additions and corrections, to which allusion has been made. In preparing the original work, the earlier editions of Zumpt's Grammar were consulted at almost every step, and while frequent use was made of the grammars of Scheller, Grant, Adam, Ruddiman, Hickie and others, the treatises of Zumpt were even then regarded as the most valuable embodiment of the principles of Latin philology. It was therefore natural and almost unavoidable, in revising a work which had in so many points received both its form and its substance from the earlier labors of that distinguished grammarian, to look to his maturer works for many of the materials by means of which our original sketch should be made more complete. Accordingly I have constantly consulted the last edition of his Grammar, translated by Dr. Schmitz, and have freely incorporated in this edition such



of its materials, as were suited to my purpose. In most cases his ideas have been either expressed in my own language, or in language so modified as to suit the general plan of my work. In the Etymology, and not unfrequently in the Syntax also, the copious Grammar of Ramshorn has furnished valuable materials; and the Grammars of Key and of Kühner, the latter translated by Prof. Champlin, have been consulted with profit and satisfaction. In the sections comprising conjunctions, and especially in those relating to grammatical analysis, I am happy to acknowledge my indebtedness to Prof. S. S. Greene of Brown University. To the sources already specified I must add the Latin Lexicon of Dr. Freund, in editing a translation of which I had frequent occasion to note such matters as promised to be of utility in the revision of this Grammar. The additions in the Appendix relating to Roman money, etc., are taken principally from Dr. Riddle's translation of Dr. Freund's School Dictionary. To these references I will only add, that such other notes relating to Latin philology, as I have made during the past twenty years, so far as they were adapted to my purpose, have either been used in my former occasional corrections, or are incorporated in the present edition.

In taking a final leave of the earliest of the elementary Latin works with which my name has been associated, and with which, in my own mind, must ever be connected the pleasant memory of my early friend and associate, Prof. Stoddard, I trust I shall be pardoned in commending it once more to the kind indulgence of the teachers of this country, and in expressing the hope that, in its present form, it will be deemed not altogether unworthy of a continuance of the favor which it has so long received. I cannot indeed venture to indulge the hope, that all the imperfections of the work have even now been removed, or that, in my attempts to render it more perfect, I may not sometimes have fallen into new errors; but this I can truly say, that since its first publication I have devoted much time to its revision, and have sought to manifest my sense of the kindness with which it has been received, by doing all in my power to render it less unworthy of public favor.

E. A. ANDREWS.

*New Britain, Conn., Oct., 1857.*

# CONTENTS.

|                                    | Page. |                                        | Page. |
|------------------------------------|-------|----------------------------------------|-------|
| <b>ORTHOGRAPHY.</b>                |       | <b>ORTHOËPY.</b>                       |       |
| Letters .....                      | 9     | Continental pronunciation .....        | 11    |
| Division of letters .....          | 10    | English pronunciation .....            | 11    |
| Diphthongs .....                   | 10    | Sounds of the letters .....            | 11    |
| Punctuation .....                  | 10    | — of the vowels .....                  | 11    |
|                                    |       | — of the diphthongs .....              | 12    |
|                                    |       | — of the consonants .....              | 13    |
|                                    |       | Quantity of syllables .....            | 14    |
|                                    |       | Accentuation .....                     | 15    |
|                                    |       | Latin accents .....                    | 16    |
|                                    |       | English accents .....                  | 16    |
|                                    |       | Division of words into syllables ..... | 16    |
| <b>ETYMOLOGY.</b>                  |       | <b>PRONOUNS.</b>                       |       |
| Nouns .....                        | 19    | Substantive pronouns .....             | 82    |
| Gender .....                       | 20    | Adjective pronouns .....               | 83    |
| Number .....                       | 22    | Demonstrative pronouns .....           | 83    |
| Cases .....                        | 23    | Intensive pronouns .....               | 85    |
| Declensions .....                  | 23    | Relative pronouns .....                | 86    |
| First declension .....             | 25    | Interrogative pronouns .....           | 87    |
| Greek nouns .....                  | 26    | Indefinite pronouns .....              | 88    |
| Second declension .....            | 26    | Possessive pronouns .....              | 89    |
| Greek nouns .....                  | 29    | Patrial pronouns .....                 | 90    |
| Third declension .....             | 29    | Pronominal adjectives .....            | 90    |
| Formation of nom. sing. ....       | 30    |                                        |       |
| Rules for the gender .....         | 33    | <b>VERBS</b> .....                     | 91    |
| oblique cases .....                | 36    | Voices .....                           | 91    |
| Greek nouns .....                  | 45    | Moods .....                            | 92    |
| Fourth declension .....            | 45    | Tenses .....                           | 93    |
| Fifth declension .....             | 47    | Numbers .....                          | 95    |
| Declension of compound nouns ..    | 47    | Persons .....                          | 95    |
| Irregular nouns .....              | 48    | Participles, gerunds, and supines ..   | 95    |
| Variable nouns .....               | 48    | Conjugation .....                      | 96    |
| Defective nouns .....              | 49    | Table of terminations .....            | 98    |
| Redundant nouns .....              | 54    | <i>Sum</i> .....                       | 100   |
| Derivation of nouns .....          | 56    | <i>Prosum, Possum, etc.</i> .....      | 102   |
| Composition of nouns .....         | 60    | First conjugation .....                | 103   |
| <b>ADJECTIVES.</b> .....           | 61    | Second conjugation .....               | 108   |
| Adjectives of the first and second |       | Third conjugation .....                | 111   |
| declensions .....                  | 62    | Fourth conjugation .....               | 116   |
| Adjectives of the third declension | 64    | Deponent verbs .....                   | 120   |
| Rules for the oblique cases .....  | 67    | Remarks on the conjugations .....      | 121   |
|                                    |       | Periphrastic conjugations .....        | 123   |
|                                    |       | General rules of conjugation .....     | 124   |
|                                    |       | Formation of second and third          |       |
|                                    |       | roots .....                            | 125   |
|                                    |       | First conjugation .....                | 125   |
|                                    |       | Second conjugation .....               | 129   |
|                                    |       | Third conjugation .....                | 131   |
|                                    |       | Fourth conjugation .....               | 139   |
|                                    |       | Irregular verbs .....                  | 140   |
|                                    |       | Defective verbs .....                  | 145   |
|                                    |       | Impersonal verbs .....                 | 147   |

|                                  | Page. |                                         | Page |
|----------------------------------|-------|-----------------------------------------|------|
| Redundant verbs.....             | 150   | Protasis and apodosis.....              | 268  |
| Derivation of verbs.....         | 152   | Subjunctive after particles.....        | 269  |
| Composition of verbs.....        | 154   | — after <i>qui</i> .....                | 275  |
| Particles.....                   | 155   | — in indirect questions.....            | 278  |
| ADVERBS.....                     | 155   | — in inserted clauses.....              | 279  |
| Derivation of adverbs.....       | 160   | Imperative mood.....                    | 281  |
| Composition of adverbs.....      | 162   | Infinitive mood.....                    | 282  |
| Comparison of adverbs.....       | 163   | Participles.....                        | 292  |
| PREPOSITIONS.....                | 163   | Gerunds and gerundives.....             | 296  |
| Prepositions in composition..... | 167   | Supines.....                            | 299  |
| CONJUNCTIONS.....                | 170   | Adverbs.....                            | 300  |
| INTERJECTIONS.....               | 176   | Prepositions.....                       | 303  |
|                                  |       | Conjunctions.....                       | 304  |
|                                  |       | Interjections.....                      | 306  |
|                                  |       | Arrangement.....                        | 306  |
|                                  |       | — of words.....                         | 310  |
|                                  |       | — of clauses.....                       | 312  |
|                                  |       | Analysis.....                           | 312  |
|                                  |       | Parsing.....                            | 313  |
|                                  |       |                                         |      |
|                                  |       | PROSODY.                                |      |
|                                  |       | Quantity.....                           | 319  |
|                                  |       | General rules.....                      | 319  |
|                                  |       | Special rules.....                      | 322  |
|                                  |       | First and middle syllables.....         | 322  |
|                                  |       | Derivative words.....                   | 322  |
|                                  |       | Compound words.....                     | 324  |
|                                  |       | Increment of nouns.....                 | 325  |
|                                  |       | Increment of verbs.....                 | 329  |
|                                  |       | Penults and antepenults.....            | 331  |
|                                  |       | Final syllables.....                    | 336  |
|                                  |       | Versification.....                      | 341  |
|                                  |       | Feet.....                               | 341  |
|                                  |       | Metre.....                              | 342  |
|                                  |       | Verses.....                             | 342  |
|                                  |       | Figures of prosody.....                 | 343  |
|                                  |       | Arsis and thesis.....                   | 346  |
|                                  |       | Cæsure.....                             | 347  |
|                                  |       | Different kinds of metre.....           | 347  |
|                                  |       | Dactylic metre.....                     | 347  |
|                                  |       | Anapaestic metre.....                   | 350  |
|                                  |       | Iambic metre.....                       | 351  |
|                                  |       | Trochaic metre.....                     | 353  |
|                                  |       | Choriambic metre.....                   | 354  |
|                                  |       | Ionic metre.....                        | 355  |
|                                  |       | Compound metres.....                    | 356  |
|                                  |       | Combination of verses.....              | 356  |
|                                  |       | Horatian metres.....                    | 357  |
|                                  |       | Key to the odes of Horace.....          | 359  |
|                                  |       |                                         |      |
|                                  |       | APPENDIX.                               |      |
|                                  |       | Grammatical figures.....                | 361  |
|                                  |       | Tropes and figures of rhetoric.....     | 363  |
|                                  |       | Roman mode of reckoning time.....       | 367  |
|                                  |       | — money, weight, etc.....               | 370  |
|                                  |       | Abbreviations.....                      | 374  |
|                                  |       | Different ages of Roman literature..... | 374  |
|                                  |       | Writers of the different ages.....      | 375  |
|                                  |       |                                         |      |
|                                  |       | INDEX.....                              | 378  |

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

§ 1. The Latin language is the language spoken by the ancient Romans. Latin Grammar teaches the principles of the Latin language. These relate,

1. To its written characters;
2. To its pronunciation;
3. To the classification and derivation of its words;
4. To the construction of its sentences;
5. To the quantity of its syllables, and its versification.

The first part is called Orthography; the second, Orthoëpy; the third, Etymology; the fourth, Syntax; and the fifth, Prosody.

---

## ORTHOGRAPHY.

§ 2. Orthography treats of the letters, and other characters of written language, and the proper mode of spelling words.

1. The Latin alphabet consists of twenty-five letters. They have the same names as the corresponding characters in English. They are A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

2. The Romans used only the capital letters.

3. *I* and *j* were anciently but one character, as were likewise *u* and *v*.

4. *W* is not found in Latin words, and *k* occurs only at the beginning of a few words before *a*, and even in these *e* is commonly used, except in their abbreviated form; as, *K* or *Kal.* for *Kalendæ* or *Calendæ*, the Calends.

5. *Y* and *z* are found only in words derived from the Greek.

6. *H*, though called a letter, only denotes a breathing, or aspiration.

## DIVISION OF LETTERS.

§ 3. Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

1. The vowels are . . . . . *a, e, i, o, u, y.*
- The consonants are divided into
- |                              |                                           |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Liquids, . . . . .           | <i>l, m, n, r.</i>                        |
| Mutes, {                     | Labials, . . . . . <i>p, b, f, v.</i>     |
|                              | Palatals, . . . . . <i>c, g, k, q, j.</i> |
|                              | Linguals, . . . . . <i>t, d.</i>          |
| Sibilant, . . . . .          | <i>s.</i>                                 |
| Double consonants, . . . . . | <i>x, z.</i>                              |
| Aspirate, . . . . .          | <i>h.</i>                                 |

2. *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*; *z* to *ts* or *ds*; and, except in compound words, the double consonant is always written, instead of the letters which it represents. In some Greek words *x* is equivalent to *chs*.

## DIPHTHONGS.

§ 4. Two vowels, in immediate succession, in the same syllable, are called a *diphthong*.

The diphthongs are *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe, oi, ua, ue, ui, uo, uu*, and *yi*. *Ae* and *oe* are frequently written together, *æ, œ*.

## PUNCTUATION.

§ 5. The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients was a point, which denoted pauses of different length, according as it was placed at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line. The moderns use the same marks of punctuation, in writing and printing Latin, as in their own languages, and assign to them the same power.

Marks of *quantity* and of *accent* are sometimes found in Latin authors, especially in elementary works:—

1. There are three marks of quantity, viz.  $\sim$ ,  $-$ ,  $*$ ; the first denotes that the vowel over which it stands is short; the second, that it is long; the third, that it is doubtful, that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

2. There are also three written accents—the acute ( $'$ ), the grave ( $`$ ), and the circumflex ( $\hat{\phantom{a}}$ ). These were used by the old grammarians to denote the rising and sinking of the voice in the Roman mode of pronouncing words. (See §§ 14 and 15.) In modern elementary Latin works, the acute marks the emphatic syllable of a word, (§ 16), the grave distinguishes certain particles from other words spelled in the same manner; as, *quòd*, because; *quod*, which; and the circumflex is placed over certain penultimate and final syllables that are formed by contraction.

The diæresis ( $\ddot{\phantom{a}}$ ) denotes that the vowel over which it stands does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel; as, *aër*, the air. It is used principally with *ae, ai*, and *oe*.

## ORTHOËPY.

## § 6. Orthoëpy treats of the right pronunciation of words.

The ancient pronunciation of the Latin language being in a great measure lost, the learned, in modern times, have applied to it those principles which regulate the pronunciation of their own languages; and hence has arisen, in different countries, a great diversity of practice.

The various systems now prevalent in Europe, may, however, be reduced to two—the *Continental* and the *English*—the former prevailing, with only slight diversities, in most of the countries of continental Europe, and the latter in England. Their principal difference is found in the pronunciation of the vowels and diphthongs, since, in both methods, the consonants are pronounced in nearly the same manner.

## THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.

[According to this system, each of the vowels, when standing at the end of a syllable, is considered as having but one sound, which, however, may be either short or long. Thus,

|                                |                                              |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Short <i>ă</i> , as in hat.    | Long <i>ō</i> , as in no.                    |
| Long <i>ā</i> , as in father.  | Short <i>ū</i> , as in tub.                  |
| Short <i>ē</i> , as in met.    | Long <i>ū</i> , as in full.                  |
| Long <i>ē</i> , as in there.   | <i>æ</i> or <i>æ</i> , as <i>e</i> in there. |
| Short <i>i</i> , as in sit.    | <i>au</i> , as <i>ou</i> in our.             |
| Long <i>i</i> , as in machine. | <i>eu</i> , as in feudal.                    |
| Short <i>ô</i> , as in not.    | <i>ei</i> , as <i>i</i> in ice.              |

REMARK. These sounds are sometimes slightly modified when followed by a consonant in the same syllable.]

## THE ENGLISH METHOD.

In the following rules for dividing and pronouncing Latin words, regard has been had both to English analogy and to the laws of Latin accentuation. See § 14 and 15. The basis of this system is that which is exhibited by Walker in his "Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names." To pronounce correctly, according to this method, a knowledge of the following particulars is requisite:—

1. Of the *sounds* of the letters in all their combinations.
2. Of the *quantities* of the penultimate and final syllables.
3. Of the place of the *accent*, both primary and secondary.
4. Of the mode of dividing words into *syllables*.

## OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

## I. OF THE VOWELS.

§ 7. A vowel, when ending an accented syllable, has always its long English sound; as,

*pa-tēr*, *de-dī*, *vī-vus*, *to-tus*, *tu-ba*, *Ty-rus*; in which the accented vowels are pronounced as in *fatal*, *metre*, *vital*, *total*, *tutor*, *tyrant*.

1. *A*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, has nearly the sound of *a* in *father* or in *ah*, but less distinct or prolonged; as, *mu'-sa*, *o-pis'-tō-la*, *a-cer'-bus*, *Pal-a-mē-des*; pronounced *mu'-zah*, etc.

2. *E*, *o*, and *u*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, have nearly the same sound as when accented, but shorter and less distinct; as, *re'-te*, *vo'-lo*, *u'-su-i*.

3. (*a*.) *I* final has always its long sound; as, *qui*, *au'-di*, *le-gā'-ti*.

REM. 1. The final *i* of *tibi* and *sibi* has its short sound.

(*b*.) *I*, at the end of an unaccented syllable not final, has an indistinct sound like short *e*; as, *Fa'-bi-us* (*fa'-be-us*), *phi'-los'-ō-phus* (*phe'-los'-o-phus*).

Exc. *I* has its long sound in the first syllable of a word the second of which is accented, when it either stands alone before a consonant, as in *i'-dō-ne-us*, or ends a syllable before a vowel, as in *ji'-ē-bam*.

REM. 2. *Y* is always pronounced like *i* in the same situation.

§ 8. A vowel has always its *short* English sound, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable; as,

*mag'-nus*, *reg'-num*, *fin'-go*, *hoc*, *fus'-tis*, *cyg'-nus*, in which the vowels are pronounced as in *magnet*, *seldom*, *finish*, *copy*, *lustre*, *symbol*.

EXCEPTION 1. *A*, when it follows *qu* before *dr* and *rt*, has the sounds of *a* in *quadrant* and in *quart*; as, *qua'-dro*, *quad-ra-gin'-ta*, *quar'-tus*. In other connections *a* before *r* has the sound of *a* in *part*; as, *par-ti-ceps*, *ar'-ma*; except when followed by another *r*, as in *par-ri-ci'-da*.

Exc. 2. *Es*, at the end of a word, is pronounced like the English word *ease*; as, *ig'-nes*, *au'-des*.

Exc. 3. *Os*, at the end of plural cases, is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*; as, *nos*, *il'-los*, *dom'-i-nos*.

Exc. 4. *Post* is pronounced like the same word in English; so also are its compounds; as, *post'-quam*, *post'-e-a*; but not its derivatives; as, *pos-trē-mus*.

Exc. 5. *E*, *i* and *y* before final *r*, or before *r* in a syllable not final, when followed in the next syllable by any other consonant, except *r*, have the sound of *e* and *i* in the English words *her* and *fir*; as, *fer*, *fert*, *fer'-ti-tis*; *hir*, *hir'-cus*, *myr'-tus*.

## II. OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

§ 9. *æ* and *œ* are always diphthongs unless separated by *diæ-resis*. They are pronounced as *e* would be in the same situation; as, *æ-tas*, *œ-tas*, *pæ'-na*, *œs'-trum*.

1. *At*, *ei*, *oi*, and *yi*, usually have the vowels pronounced separately. When they are accented, and followed by another vowel, the *i* is pronounced like initial *y*, and the vowel before it has its long sound; as, *Maia*, *Pompeius*, *Troia*, *Harpyia*; pronounced *Ma'-ya*, *Pom-pe'-yus*, *Tro'-ya*, *Har-py'-ya*.

REMARK 1. *Ei*, when a diphthong and not followed by another vowel, is pronounced like *i*; as in *hei*, *om'-neis*.

2. *Au*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like *aw*; as, *laus*, *au'-rum*, pronounced *laws*, etc.

REM. 2. In the termination of Greek proper names, the letters *au* are pronounced separately; as, *Men-e-lā-us*.

3. *Eu*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like long *u*; as, *heu*, *Orpheus* (or'-phuse), *Eu-phrā-tes*.

REM. 3. The letters *eu* are pronounced separately in the terminations *eus* and *eum* of Latin nouns, and of all adjectives, whether Greek or Latin, except *neuter*; as, *ur'-ce-us*, *mē'-us*, *mē'-um*, *ē'-um*. In other situations they form a diphthong; as, *Eu-rō'-pa*, *Thē'-seus*, *e'-heu*.

4. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uu*, when diphthongs, are pronounced like *wa*, *we*, etc.; as, *lin'-gua*, *quē'-ror*, *sua'-de-o*, *quō'-tus*, *ē'-quus*. They are always diphthongs after *q*, usually also after *g*, and often after *s*.

5. *Ui* in *cui* and *huic*, when monosyllables, is pronounced like *wi*, and by some like long *i*.

### III. OF THE CONSONANTS.

§ 10. The consonants have, in general, the same power in Latin as in English words.

The following cases, however, require particular attention.

#### C.

*C* has the sound of *s* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ*, *æ*, and *eu*; as, *ce'-do*, *ci'-bus*, *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ'-lum*, *ceu*, *Cy'-rus*. In other situations, it has the sound of *k*; as, *Ca'-to*, *cru'-dus*, *lac*.

1. *Ch* has always the sound of *k*; as, *charta* (kar'-tah), *machīna* (mak'-ē-nah).

Exc. *C*, following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and also before *eu* and *yo*, has the sound of *sh*; as, *socia* (so'-she-ah), *caduceus* (ca-du'she-us), *Sicyon* (sish'-e-on).

REMARK. In the pronunciation of the ancient Romans, the hard sound of *c* and *g* seems to have been retained in all their combinations.

#### G.

*G* has its soft sound, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *æ*; as *ge'-nus*, *ag'-i-lis*, *Gy'-ges*, *Gæ-tū-li*. In other situations, it has its hard sound, as in *bag*, *go*.

Exc. When *g* comes before *g* soft, it coalesces with it in sound; as, *agger* (aj'-er), *exaggeratio* (ex-aj-e-ra'-she-o).

#### S.

§ 11. *S* has generally its hissing sound, as in *so*, *thus*.

Exc. 1. (*a*.) When *si* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by a consonant in an accented syllable, the *s* has the sound of *sh*; as, *Per'-si-a* (per'-she-a).



## 14 QUANTITIES OF PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

(b.) But when *si* or *zi* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by an accented vowel, the *s* or *z* has the sound of *zh*; as, *As-pa'-si-a* (as-pa'-zhe-ah), *Sa-ba'-zi-a* (sa-ba'-zhe-ah).

NOTE. In a few proper names, *s* preceded by a vowel in an accented syllable and followed by *i* before another vowel, has the sound, not of *zh*, but of *sh*; as, *A'-si-a* (a'-she-a): so *Sisia*, *Theodosia*, *Lysias*.

Exc. 2. *S*, at the end of a word, after *e*, *æ*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, and *r*, has the sound of *z*; as, *res*, *æs*, *laus*, *trabs*, *hi'-ems*, *lens*, *Mars*.

English analogy has also occasioned the *s* in *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ-si'-ra*, *mi'-ser*, *ma'-sa*, *re-si'-u-um*, *cau'-sa*, *ro'-sa*, and their derivatives, and in some other words, to take the sound of *z*. *Cæs-a-re'-a*, and the oblique cases of *Cæsar*, retain the hissing sound; so likewise the compounds of *trans*; as, *trans'-e-o*.

### T.

§ 12. 1. *T*, following or ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, has the sound of *sh*; as, *ratio* (ra'-she-o), *Sulpi-tius* (sul-pish'-e-us).

Exc. *T*, in such case, retains its hard sound (*a*) after *s*, *t*, or *x*; as, *Sal-lus-ti-us*, *Brut'-ti-i*, *Sec'-ti-us*: (*b*) in proper names in *tion* and *tyon*; as, *Eu-ryt'-i-on*, *Am-phic'-ty-on*; and (*c*) in old infinitives in *er*; as, *flec'-ti-er*, for *flec'-ti*.

### X.

2. *X*, at the beginning of a syllable, has the sound of *z*; at the end, that of *ks*; as, *Xenophon* (zen'-o-phon); *axis* (ak'-sis).

Exc. 1. When *ex* or *ux* is followed by a vowel in an accented syllable, *x* has the sound of *gz*; as, *exemplum* (eg-zem'-plum), *ux-o'-ri-us* (ug-zo'-re-us), *inexhaustus* (in-eg-zaus'-tus).

Exc. 2. *X*, ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *u* ending a syllable, has the power of *ksh*; as, *noxius* (nok'-she-us), *pezu* (pek'-shu-i).

REMARK. *Ck* and *pk*, before *ti*, in the beginning of a word, are silent; as, *Chthonia* (tho'-ni-a), *Phthia* (thi'-a). Also in the following combinations of consonants, in the beginning of words of Greek origin, the first letter is not sounded:—*mne-mon'-i-ca*, *gna'-vus*, *ime'-sis*, *Cie'-si-as*, *Ptol-e-mæ'-us*, *psal'-lo*.

## OF THE QUANTITIES OF THE PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

§ 13. 1. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it.

2. A *short* syllable requires, in pronunciation, half the time of a *long* one.

REM. The *penultimate* syllable, or *penult*, is the last syllable but one. The *antepenult* is the last syllable but two.

The quantity of a syllable is generally to be learned from the rules of prosody, §§ 282—301; but for the convenience of the student, the following general rules are here inserted:—

3. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short.

4. *Diphthongs*, not beginning with *u*, are long.

5. A vowel before *x, z, j*, or any two consonants, except a mute followed by a liquid, is long by *position*, as it is called.

6. A vowel naturally short before a mute followed by a liquid is common, i. e. either long or short.

In this Grammar, when the quantity of a penult is determined by one of the preceding rules, it is not marked; in other cases, except in dissyllables, the proper mark is written over its vowel.

To pronounce Latin words correctly, it is necessary to ascertain the quantities of their last two syllables only; and the rules for the quantities of final syllables would, for this purpose, be unnecessary, but for the occasional addition of enclitics. As these are generally monosyllables, and, for the purpose of accentuation, are considered as parts of the words to which they are annexed, they cause the final syllable of the original word to become the penult of the compound. But as the enclitics begin with a consonant, the final vowels of all words ending with a consonant, if previously short, are, by the addition of an enclitic, made long by position. It is necessary, therefore, to learn the quantities of those final syllables *only* which end with a vowel.

## OF ACCENTUATION.

### I. OF LATIN ACCENTS.

§ 14. 1. Accent, in Latin, signifies the rising and falling of the voice in pronouncing the syllables of a Latin word. It is a general rule of the Latin language, that every word has its accent. The enclitics, however, have no accent of their own, but they modify the accent of the words to which they are annexed, and prepositions lose their accent, when they precede the cases which they govern.

2. The Latin language has three accents, the acute (´), or rising tone, the grave (`), or falling tone, and the circumflex (˘), composed of the acute and the grave, i. e. of the rising and the falling tone.

3. A monosyllable, when short by nature, takes the acute, when long by nature, the circumflex accent; as, *pīz, ēt, pārs; dūs, jūs, spēs*.

4. In words of two syllables, the penult is always accented; as, *pā'ter, mā'ter, pen'-na*.

REM. 1. Words of two syllables have the circumflex accent, when the vowel of the penult is naturally long and that of the last syllable short; as, *Rō-mā, mā'-cā, tū'-cē, jū'-ris*; if otherwise, they have the acute; as, *hī'-mō, dē'-as, Rō'-mā* (abl.), and *ar'-te*, in which *e* is long only by position.

5. In words of more than two syllables, if the *penult* is long, it is accented; but if it is short, the accent is on the *antepenult*; as, *a-mī'-cus, dom'-i-nus*.

REM. 2. When the accent of a word of more than two syllables falls upon the penult, it may be either the circumflex or the acute according as the last syllable is short or long. The antepenult can take no accent except the acute, and in no case can the accent be drawn farther back than to the antepenult.

EXC. Vocatives of the second declension in *i*, instead of *ie*, from nominatives in *ius*, and genitives in *i*, instead of *ii*, are accented as they would be, if the rejected letters were annexed, i. e. with the acute upon the penult, even when it is short; as, *Vir-gil-i; Va-lē'-ri, in-gē'-ni*. So, also, the compounds of *facio* with words which are not prepositions; as, *cal-e-fā'-ci, tep-e-fā'-ci*.

§ 15. If the penult is common, the accent, in prose, is upon the *antepenult*; as, *vol'-ū'-cris, phar'-ē'-tra, iū'-i'-que*: but genitives in *ius*, in which *i* is common, accent their *penult* in prose; as, *u-nī'-us, is-tī'-us*.

**REMARK.** All the syllables of a Latin word, except that on which the acute or circumflex accent falls, are supposed to have the grave accent, and were pronounced with the lower tone.

1. The rules for the *accentuation* of compound and simple words are the same; as, *se'-cum, sub'-e-o*.

2. In accentuation, the enclitics *que, ne, ve*, and also those which are annexed to pronouns,\* are accounted constituent parts of the words to which they are subjoined; as, *i'-ta, i'-d-que; vi'-rum, vi-rum'-que*.

## II. OF ENGLISH ACCENTS.

§ 16. Accent, in English, is a particular stress of voice upon certain syllables of words. Cf. § 5, 2.

According to the English method of pronouncing Latin, a word may have two, three, or even four accents. That accent which is nearest to the termination of the word, and which always corresponds in position with the Latin accent, is called the *primary* or *principal* accent, and the *secondary* accent is that which next precedes the primary. The *third* and *fourth* accents, in like manner, precede the secondary, and are subject in all respects to the same rules; as, *pá'-ter, má'-ter, ser-mó'-nes, dom'-i-nis; pe-ric'-u-lum, con'-ju-ra-ti-o, op'-por-tu'-ni-tá'-tes, ex-er'''-ci-ta'''-ti-on''-i-bus'-que*.

1. If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is on the first; as, *mod''-e-rá'-tus, tol''-e-rab'-i-lis*.

2. If three or four syllables stand before the primary accent, the secondary accent is placed, sometimes on the first, and sometimes on the second syllable; as, *de-mon''-stra-ban'-tur, ad''-o-les-cen'-ti-a*.

3. Some words which have only four syllables before the primary accent, and all which have more than four, have *three* accents; as, *mod''-e-rá'-ti-ó'-nis, tol''-e-ra-bíl''-i-ó'-rem, ex-er'''-ci-ta'''-ti-ó'-nis*.

## DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

### VOWELS.

§ 17. Every Latin word is to be divided into as many syllables, as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

**REMARK.** In the following rules, the term *vowel* includes not only single vowels, but diphthongs; and when a particular vowel is mentioned, a diphthong, also, ending with that vowel is intended.

### CONSONANTS.

#### SPECIAL RULES.

§ 18. **REMARK.** The following special rules, relating to particular letters or to particular combinations of letters, are in all cases to be regarded rather than the general rules, §§ 19-23, when the latter are inconsistent with the former.

1. *H*, when standing alone between two vowels, is always joined to the vowel that follows it.

Thus, *mí'-hi, tra'-hē-re, co'-hors, co'-hor-ta-ti-o*.

---

\* These are *te, mei, te, ce, cine, and dem*; as, *tute, egōmet, meapte, hiccē, hiccine, idem*.

2. *Ch*, *ph*, and *th*, in the division of words into syllables, are considered, not as separate letters, but as single aspirated mutes, and hence are never separated.

Thus, *A-chil'-les*, *Ach'-ra-dē'-na*, *Neph'-ē-le*, *Te'-thys*.

3. *Gl*, *tl*, and *thl*, when standing alone between any two vowels, unless the first be *u*, and *bl* after *u* are always separated.

Thus, *Ag'-le*, *Ag-lau'-rus*, *At'-las*, *ath-let'-i-cus*;—*Pub'-li-us*, *Pub-lic'-ē-la*, *res-pub'-li-ca*.

4. In writing syllables, *z*, when standing alone between two vowels, is united to the vowel before it, but, in pronouncing such syllables, its elementary sounds are separated.

Thus, *saz'-um* (sak'-sum); *az-il'-la* (ak-sil'-lah); *ez-em'-plum* (eg-zem'-plum); *uz-o'-ri-us* (ug-zo'-re-us).

#### GENERAL RULES.

##### I. SIMPLE WORDS.

#### § 19. A.—A single Consonant between two Vowels.

1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, between the last two vowels of a word, or between the vowels of any two unaccented syllables, must be joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *t* in *pe'-ter* and *au'-tem*; *th* in *σ'-ther*; *cl* in *Hi-or'-ē-cles*; *q* in *ā'-qua*; *cr* in *ā'-cris* and *vol'-ū-cris*; *chr* in *α'-chras*; *r* in *tol'-ē-ra-bil'-i-us*; *m* in *cl'-y-mo-lō'-gi-a*; *l* in *am'-bu-lā-tō'-ri-us*; and *gr* in *per'-a-gri-na'-ti-o*. Respecting *ch* and *th* cf. § 18, 2.

Exc. *Tū'-i* and *sib'-i* are commonly excepted.

§ 20. 2. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, before the vowel of an accented syllable, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *t* in *i-tin'-ē-ra*; *d* in *vi-dē'-to*; *th* in *α-the'-ri-us*; *cl* in *Eu-clī'-des* and *Her'-a-clē'-a*; *gr* in *a-gres'-tis* and *a-griē'-ē-la*; *pr* in *ca-prē'-ē-lus*; *q* in *a-quā'-ri-us*; and *phr* in *Eu-phrā'-tes*.

§ 21. 3. A single consonant after the vowel of any accented syllable, except a penult, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *m* in *dom'-i-nus* and *dom'-i-na'-ti-o*; *t* in *pat'-ē-ra*; *th* in *Scyth'-i-a*; and *q* in *aq'-ui-la* (ak'-we-lah), and *Aq'-ui-ta'-ni-a* (ak'-we-ta'-ne-ah).

4. When a mute with *l* or *r* follows the vowel of any accented syllable, except the penult, the mute is to be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *cr* in *ac'-ri-ter*, *ac'-ri-mō'-ni-a*; *tr* in *det'-ri-men'-tum*; *pr* in *cap'-ri-pea*, *cap'-ri-mul'-gus*, *phl* in *Paph'-la-go'-ni-a*; and *phr* in *Aph'-ro-dis'-i-a*. Respecting *phl* and *phr* cf. § 18, 2.

#### EXCEPTIONS TO THE 3D AND 4TH RULES.

Exc. 1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *a*, *e*, or *o*, and before two vowels the first of which is *e*, *i*, or *y*, must be joined to the syllable following the accent.

Thus, *d* in *ra'-d-us*, *ta'-d-um*, *me'-d-i-a'-tor*; *r* in *ha'-re-o*, *Cx'-ry-d'-tes*; *ch* in *bra'-chi-um*; *q* in *re'-qui-es*, *re'-qui-es-co*; *tr* in *pa'-tri-us*, *E-no'-tri-a*; and *r* and *l* in *ce'-re-a'-li-a*.

Exc. 2. A single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *u*, must be joined to the vowel following it.

Thus, *r* in *lu'-ri-dus*, *au'-re-us*; *cr* in *Eu'-cri-tus*; *gl* in *ju'-glans*; and *pl* in *Nau'-pli-us*, *du'-pli-co*, and *du'-pli-ca'-ti-o*. Cf. § 18, 3.

### § 22. B.—Two Consonants between two Vowels.

Any two consonants, except a mute followed by *l* or *r* in the cases before mentioned, when standing between two vowels, must be separated.

Thus, *rp* in *cor'-pus*, *rm* in *for'-ma* and *ger-mā'-nus*; *rv* in *ca-ter'-va*; *sc* in *ad-o-les'-cens*; *nn* in *an'-nus*; *phth* in *aph'-tha*; *chh* in *Bac'-chus* and *Bac'-cha-na'-li-a*; and *thl* in *ath'-lē-ta*.

### C.—Three or four Consonants between two Vowels.

1. When three consonants stand between any two vowels, the last, or, if that be *l* or *r* after a mute, the two last, are joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *mpt* in *emp'-tor*, *ad-emp'-ti-o*; *str* in *fo-nes'-tra*; *mpl* in *ex-em'-plum*; *rthr* in *ar-thr'-ti-s*.

2. When four consonants stand between two vowels, two are joined to each vowel; as, *nstr* in *trans-trum*.

## II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 23. 1. In dividing a compound word into syllables the component parts are to be separated, if the former part ends with a consonant; as, *ab-es'-se*, *in'-ers*, *cir'-cum-er'-ro*, *su'-për-est*, *sub'-i-tus*, *præ-ter'-e-a*, *trans'-i-tur*, *sub'-stru-o*. So, also, if a consonant is inserted to prevent hiatus, it is joined to the preceding vowel; as, *prod'-e-o*, *red'-e-o*, *sed'-it'-i-o*.

2. But if the former part either ends with a vowel, or has dropped its termination, it is to be divided like a simple word; as, *def'-i-ro*, *dil'-i-gens*, *be-nev'-o-lus*, *præs'-to*, *eg'-ô-met*;—*po'-tes*, *po'-tes-tis*, *an'-i-mad-ver'-to*, *ve'-ne-o* (from *venum*, *eo*), *mag-nan'-i-mus*, *am-bā'-ges*, *lon-gæ'-vus*.

## ETYMOLOGY.

§ 24. 1. Etymology treats of the different classes of words, their derivation, and their various inflections.

2. The classes, into which words are divided in reference to their signification, are called *Parts of Speech*.

3. The parts of speech in Latin are eight—*Substantive or Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.*

4. The first four are *inflected*; the last four, which are sometimes called *Particles*, are *not inflected*, except that some adverbs change their termination to express comparison.

REM. Substantives, pronouns, and adjectives are often included by grammarians under the general term *nouns*; but, in this Grammar, the word *noun* is used as synonymous with *substantive* only.

§ 25. 1. To verbs belong *Participles, Gerunds, and Supines*, which partake of the meaning of the verb, and the inflection of the noun.

2. *Inflection*, in Latin grammar, signifies a change in the termination of a word. It is of three kinds—*declension, conjugation, and comparison.*

3. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, participles, gerunds, and supines, are *declined*; verbs are *conjugated*, and adjectives and adverbs are *compared*.

## NOUNS.

§ 26. 1. A substantive or noun is the *name* of an object.

2. A *proper* noun is the name of an individual object; as, *Cæsar*; *Rōma*, Rome; *Tibēris*, the Tiber.

3. A *common* or *appellative* noun is the name of a class of objects, to each of which it is alike applicable; as, *hōmo*, man or a man; *avis*, a bird; *quercus*, an oak; *leo*, a lion; *mendacium*, a falsehood.

4. A *collective* noun is one which, in the singular number, denotes a collection of individuals; as, *exercitus*, an army.

REM. 1. The following are examples of nouns used as collectives, viz. *exercitus, gens, juvenis, multitudo, nobilitas, plebs, populus, turba, vis, and vulgus.*

5. An *abstract* noun is the name of a quality, action, or other attribute; as, *bonitas*, goodness; *gaudium*, joy; *festinatio*, haste.

REM. 2. A *concrete*, in distinction from an abstract noun, is one which denotes an object that has an actual and independent existence; as, *Rōma, hōmo, populus, ferrum.*

6. A *material* noun is the name of a substance considered in the gross; as, *lignum*, wood; *ferrum*, iron; *cibus*, food.

REM. 3. Proper, abstract, and material nouns become common, when employed to denote one or more of a class of objects. A verb in the infinitive mood is often used as an abstract noun.

7. To nouns belong *gender, number, and case.*

REM. 4. Adjectives and participles have likewise different genders, numbers, and cases, corresponding to those of nouns.

## GENDER.

§ 27. 1. The gender of a noun is its distinction in regard to sex.

2. Nouns have three genders—the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

3. The gender of Latin nouns is either *natural* or *grammatical*.

4. Those nouns are naturally masculine or feminine, which are used to designate the sexes; as, *vir*, a man; *mulier*, a woman.

5. Those are grammatically masculine or feminine, which, though denoting objects that are neither male nor female, take adjectives of the form appropriated to nouns denoting the sexes.

Thus, *dominus*, a lord, is naturally masculine, because it denotes a male; but *sermo*, speech, is grammatically masculine, because, though not indicative of sex, it takes an adjective of that form which is appropriated to nouns denoting males.

6. The grammatical gender of Latin nouns depends either on their signification, or on their declension and termination. The following are the general rules of gender, in reference to *signification*. Many exceptions to them, on account of *termination*, occur: these will be specified under the several declensions.

§ 28. **MASCULINES.** 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all male beings are masculine; as, *Homērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *consul*, a consul; *ēquus*, a horse.

As proper names usually follow the gender of the general name under which they are comprehended; hence,

2. Names of rivers, winds, and months, are masculine, because *fluvius*, *ventus*, and *mensis*, are masculine; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber; *Aquilo*, the north wind; *Aprilis*, April.

Exc. *Styx* and some names of rivers in *a* and *e* are feminine. §§ 62, and 41, 1.

3. Names of mountains are sometimes masculine, because *mons* is masculine; as, *Othrys*, a mountain of Thessaly; but they usually follow the gender of their termination; as, *hic\* Atlas*, *hæc Ida*, *hoc Soracte*.

§ 29. **FEMININES.** 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all female beings are feminine; as, *Helēna*, Helen; *māter*, a mother; *juvenca*, a heifer.

2. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, ships, islands, poems, and gems, are feminine; because *terra*, *urbs*, *arbor*, *planta*, *nāvis*, *insula*, *fabula*, and *gemma*, are feminine; as, •

*Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Orinthus*, Corinth; *pirus*, a pear-tree; *nardus*, spikenard; *Centaurus*, the ship Centaur; *Sāmos*, the name of an island; *Eunuchus*, the Eunuch, a comedy of Terence; *amethystus*, an amethyst.

Exc. Names of countries and islands in *um*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *trum*, are neuter.—Names of towns in *i*, *trum*; four in *o*, *nis*, viz. *Trusino*, *Hippo*, *Narbo*, and *Sulmo*, with *Tunes*, *Taras*, and *Candypus*, are masculine. Names of towns in *um* or *on*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *trum*; those in *e* and *ur* of the third declension, indeclinable nouns in *i* and *y*, and some barbarous names, as *Suthul*, *Hispul* and *Gadiv* are neuter.—Names of trees and plants in *er* of the third declension, (§ 60), with *baccar* and *robur* are neuter. A few names in *us*, *i*, (§ 50), with *oleaster*, *pinaster*, *Styrax* and *unedo* are masculine.—A few names of gems in *us*, *i*, are also masculine.

\*To distinguish the gender of Latin nouns, grammarians write *hic* before the masculine, *hæc* before the feminine, and *hoc* before the neuter.

§ 30. COMMON AND DOUBTFUL GENDER. Some words are either masculine or feminine. These, if they denote things animate, are said to be of the *common* gender; if things inanimate, of the *doubtful* gender.

Of the former are *pārens*, a parent; *bos*, an ox or cow: of the latter, *finis*, an end.

The following nouns are of the common gender:—

|                                  |                            |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Adolescens, a youth.             | Exsul, an exile.           | Palumbes, a wood-pigeon.         |
| Affinis, a relative by marriage. | Grus, a crane.             | Pārens, a parent.                |
| Ales, a bird.                    | Hospes, a guest, a host.   | Par, a mate.                     |
| Antistes, a chief priest.        | Hostis, an enemy.          | Præses, a president.             |
| Auctor, an author.               | Index, an informer.        | Præsul, a chief priest.          |
| Augur, an augur.                 | Infans, an infant.         | Princeps, a prince or princess.  |
| Bos, an ox or cow.               | Interpres, an interpreter. | Serpens, a serpent.              |
| Cānis, a dog.                    | Jūdex, a judge.            | Sacerdos, a priest or priestess. |
| Civis, a citizen.                | Juvēnis, a youth.          | Satelles, a life-guard.          |
| Cōmes, a companion.              | Martyr, a martyr.          | Sus, a swine.                    |
| Conjux, a spouse.                | Miles, a soldier.          | Testis, a witness.               |
| Consort, a consort.              | Municeps, a burgess.       | Vātes, a prophet.                |
| Conviva, a guest.                | Mus, a mouse.              | Verna, a slave.                  |
| Custos, a keeper.                | Nēmo, nobody.              | Vindex, an avenger.              |
| Dux, a leader.                   | Obses, a hostage.          |                                  |
|                                  | Patruēlis, a cousin.       |                                  |

The following hexameters contain nearly all the above nouns:—

Conjux, atque pārens, princeps, patruēlis, et infans,  
Affinis, vindex, jūdex, dux, milēs, et hostis,  
Augūr, et antistes, juvēnis, conviva, sacerdos,  
Mūni-que-ceps, vātes, adolescens, civis, et auctor,  
Custōs, nēmo, cōmes, testis, sus, bōs-que, cānis-que,  
Pro consorte tōri par, præsul, verna, sātelles,  
Mus-que obses, consors, interprēs, et exsul, et hospes.

§ 31. 1. When nouns of the common gender denote males, they take a masculine adjective; when they denote females, a feminine.

2. The following are either masculine or feminine in sense, but masculine only in grammatical construction:—

|                       |                       |                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Artifex, an artist.   | Fur, a thief.         | Lātro, a robber.  |
| Auspex, a soothsayer. | Hāres, an heir.       | Libri, children.  |
| Eques, a horseman.    | Hōmo, a man or woman. | Pēdes, a footman. |

To these may be added personal appellatives of the first declension; as, *advēna*, a stranger; and some gentile nouns; as, *Persa*, a Persian.

§ 32. 1. The following, though masculine or feminine in sense, are feminine only in construction:—

|                     |                      |                    |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| Copix, troops.      | Opēxæ, laborers.     | Vigiliæ, watchmen. |
| Custulix, guards.   | Prōles, } offspring. |                    |
| Excubix, sentinels. | Subōles, }           |                    |



2. Some nouns, signifying persons, are neuter, both in their termination and construction; as,

|                       |                       |                          |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| Acroama, a buffoon.   | Mancipium, { a slave. | Scortum, { a prostitute. |
| Auxilia, auxiliaries. | Servitium, }          | Prostitūlum, }           |

3. (a.) In some personal appellatives masculines and feminines are distinguished by different terminations affixed to the same root. The masculines end in *us, er, o, tor, etc.*; the feminines in *a* or *trix*; as, *cōquus, cōqua*; *magister, magistra*; *lēno, lēna*; *inventor, inventrix*; *tibicen, tibicina*; *āvus, avia*; *rex, regina*; *poēta, poētria*.

(b.) So also in some names of animals; as, *ēquus, ēqua*; *gallus, gallina*; *leo, lea* and *leona*. Sometimes the words are wholly different; as, *taurus, vacca*.

4. Some names of animals are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine without regard to difference of sex; as, *anguis, serpens, dama, talpa, tigris, colūber* and *colūbra, etc.*

§ 33. EPICENES. Names of animals which include both sexes, but admit of an adjective of one gender only, are called *epicene*. These commonly follow the gender of their terminations.

Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, *corvus*, a raven, are masculine; *aquila*, an eagle, *vulpes*, a fox, are feminine; though each of them is used to denote both sexes.

NOTE. This class includes the names of animals, in which the distinction of sex is seldom attended to. When it is necessary to mark the sex, *mas* or *femina* is usually added.

§ 34. NEUTERS. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are said to be of the neuter gender; such are,

1. All indeclinable nouns; as, *fas, nefas, nihil, gummi, pondo*.

2. Names of letters; as, *o longum*, long *o*. But these are sometimes feminine, *lūera* being understood.

3. Words used merely as such, without reference to their meaning; as, *pater est dissyllābum*; *pater* is dissyllabic.

4. All infinitives, imperatives, clauses of sentences, adverbs, and other particles, used substantively; as *scire tuum*, your knowledge; *ultimum vale*, the last farewell; *hoc diu*, this (word) *diu*.

REMARK. 1. Words derived from the Greek retain the gender which they have in that language.

REM. 2. Some nouns have different genders in the singular and plural, and are called *heterogeneous* nouns. See § 32.

## NUMBER.

§ 35. 1. (a.) Number, in nouns, is the form by which they denote whether they represent one object or more than one.

(b.) Latin nouns have two numbers,—the *singular* and the *plural*,—which are distinguished by their terminations. The singular number denotes one object; the plural, more than one.

## PERSON.

2. The person of a noun or pronoun is the character sustained by the object which it represents, as being the speaker, the person addressed, or the person or thing spoken of.

Hence there are three persons. The speaker is of the *first* person, the person addressed is of the *second* person, and the person or thing spoken of is of the *third* person.

## CASES.

§ 36. Many of the relations of objects, which, in English, are denoted by prepositions, are, in Latin, expressed by a change of termination.

*Cases* are those terminations of nouns, which denote their relations to other words. Latin nouns have six cases; viz. *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

REMARK. Though there are six cases in each number, no noun has in each number so many different terminations.

§ 37. 1. The nominative denotes the relation of a *subject* to a finite verb; as, *ego scribo, I write. Caius dicit, Caius says.*

2. The genitive denotes *origin, possession*, and many other relations, which, in English, are expressed by the preposition *of* or by the *possessive case*; as, *Vita Cæsaris, the life of Cæsar, or Cæsar's life.*

3. The dative denotes that *to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as, *Ille mihi librum dedît, He gave the book to me.*

4. The accusative is either the *object* of an active verb, or of certain prepositions, or the *subject* of an infinitive.

5. The vocative is the form appropriated to the name of any object which is addressed.

6. The ablative denotes *privation*, and many other relations, especially those expressed in English by the prepositions *with, from, in, or by.*

REMARK. The nominative and vocative are sometimes called *casus recti*, i. e. the uninflected cases; and the others, *casus obliqui*; i. e. the oblique or inflected cases.

## DECLENSIONS.

§ 38. The regular forming of the several cases in both numbers, by annexing the appropriate terminations to the root, is called *declension*.

The Latin language has five declensions or modes of declining nouns, distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular, which, in the first declension, ends in *æ*, in the second in *i*, in the third in *is*, in the fourth in *us*, and in the fifth in *i*.

§ 39. The following table exhibits a comparative view of the terminations or case-endings of the five declensions.

## TERMINATIONS.

*Singular.*

|             | I.  | II.       |           | III.              |           | IV.       |           | V.  |
|-------------|-----|-----------|-----------|-------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----|
|             |     | <i>M.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i>         | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>N.</i> |     |
| <i>Nom.</i> | ă,  | ūs, ōr,   | ūm,       | ōr, etc. ě, etc.  |           | ūs,       | ū,        | ēs, |
| <i>Gen.</i> | ae, | ī,        |           | is,               |           | ūs,       |           | eī, |
| <i>Dat.</i> | ae, | ō,        |           | ī,                |           | uī,       | ū,        | eī, |
| <i>Acc.</i> | ām, | ūm,       |           | ēm, (īm), ě, etc. |           | ūm,       | ū,        | ēm, |
| <i>Voc.</i> | ă,  | ě, ōr,    | ūm,       | ōr, etc. ě, etc.  |           | ūs,       | ū,        | ēs, |
| <i>Abl.</i> | ă.  | ō.        |           | ě, (ī.)           |           | ū.        |           | ē.  |

*Plural.*

|             |       |       |    |              |               |     |       |
|-------------|-------|-------|----|--------------|---------------|-----|-------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | ae,   | ī,    | ă, | ēs, ă, (iă), | ūs,           | uă, | ēs,   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | ārūm, | ōrūm, |    | ūm, (iūm),   | uūm,          |     | ērūn, |
| <i>Dat.</i> | is,   | is,   |    | ībūs,        | ībūs, (ūbūs), |     | ēbūs, |
| <i>Acc.</i> | ās,   | ōs,   | ă, | ēs, ă, (iă), | ūs,           | uă, | ēs,   |
| <i>Voc.</i> | ae,   | ī,    | ă, | ēs, ă, (iă), | ūs,           | uă, | ēs,   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | is.   | is.   |    | ībūs.        | ībūs, (ūbūs). |     | ēbūs. |

*Remarks.*

§ 40. 1. The terminations of the nominative, in the third declension, are very numerous. See §§ 55, 58, 62, 66.

2. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, always ends in *m*.

3. The vocative singular is like the nominative in all Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension.

4. The nominative and vocative plural always end alike.

5. The genitive plural always ends in *um*.

6. The dative and ablative plural always end alike;—in the 1st and 2d declensions, in *is*; in the 3d, 4th, and 5th, in *bis*.

7. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, always ends in *s*.

8. Nouns of the neuter gender have the accusative and vocative like the nominative, in both numbers; and these cases, in the plural, always end in *a*.

9. The 1st and 5th declensions contain no nouns of the neuter gender, and the 4th and 5th contain no proper names.

10. Every inflected word consists of two parts—a *root*, and a *termination*. The root or *crude form*, is the part which is not changed by inflection. The termination is the part annexed to the root. The root of a *declined* word may be found by removing the termination of any of its oblique cases. The case commonly selected for this purpose is the genitive singular.

11. The preceding table exhibits terminations only. In the fifth declension, the *e* of the final syllable, though unchanged, is considered as belonging to the termination.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 41. Nouns of the first declension end in *ā*, *ē*, *ās*, *ēs*. Those in *a* and *e* are feminine; those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

Latin nouns of the first declension end only in *a*. They are thus declined:—

| Singular. |                      | Plural. |                       |
|-----------|----------------------|---------|-----------------------|
| Nom.      | mū'-sā, a muse;      | Nom.    | mū'-sæ, muses;        |
| Gen.      | mu'-sæ, of a muse;   | Gen.    | mu-sā'-rūm, of muses; |
| Dat.      | mu'-sæ, to a muse;   | Dat.    | mu'-sis, to muses;    |
| Acc.      | mu'-sām, a muse;     | Acc.    | mu'-sās, muses;       |
| Voc.      | mu'-sā, O muse;      | Voc.    | mu'-sæ, O muses;      |
| Abl.      | mu'-sā, with a muse. | Abl.    | mu'-sis, with muses.  |

In like manner decline

|                       |                              |                       |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Au'-la, a hall.       | Lit'-ē-ra, a letter.         | Sa-git'-ta, an arrow. |
| Cu'-ra, care.         | Lus-cin'-i-a, a nightingale. | Stel'-la, a star.     |
| Ga'-le-a, a helmet.   | Mach'-i-na, a machine.       | Tō'-ga, a gown.       |
| In'-sū-la, an island. | Pen'-na, a feather, a quill. | Vi'-a, a way.         |

NOTE. As the Latin language has no article, appellative nouns may be rendered either with or without the English articles *a*, *an*, or *the*, according to their connection.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 42. 1. Names proper and appellative of men, as, *Sulla*, *Cinna*; *poëta*, a poet; *nauta*, a sailor; and names of rivers, though ending in *a*, are masculine: § 28, 1 and 2. But the following names of rivers have been used as feminine: viz. *Albula*, *Alia*, *Druentia*, *Garumna*, *Himëra*, *Matrōna*, *Mosella*, *Trebia*. *Lithe* is always feminine.

*Ossa* and *Œta*, names of mountains, are masculine or feminine.

2. *Iadria*, the Adriatic sea, *dāma* in Virgil and Statius, and *talpa* in Virgil, are masculine.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 43. Genitive singular. 1. The poets sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āt*; as, *aula*, gen. *aulāt*.

2. *Familia*, after *pāter*, *māter*, *filius*, or *filia*, usually forms its genitive in *as*; as, *mater-familias*, the mistress of a family; gen. *matris-familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias* or *familiārum*. Some other words anciently formed their genitive in the same manner.

Genitive plural. The genitive plural of patronymics in *es*, of several compounds in *cōla* and *gēna*, and of some names of nations, is sometimes, especially in poetry, formed in *um* instead of *arum*; as, *Æneādum*, *Cælicōlum*, *terrigēnum*, *Lapithum*. So *amphōrum*, *drachmum*, for *amphorārum*, *drachmārum*.

Dative and Ablative plural. The following nouns have sometimes *abus* instead of *is*, in the dative and ablative plural, especially when it is necessary to distinguish them from the same cases of masculines in *us* of the second declension having the same root; as, *filiis et filiābus*, to sons and daughters.

Dea, a goddess.  
Filia, a daughter.

Equa, a mare.  
Mula, a she mule.

The use of a similar termination in *anima*, *asina*, *liberta*, *nata*, *conserva*, and some other words, rests on inferior authority.

### GREEK NOUNS.

§ 44. Nouns of the first declension in *ē*, *ās*, and *ēs*, and some also in *ā*, are Greek. Greek nouns in *ā* are declined like *musa*, except that they sometimes have *ān* in the accusative singular; as, *Ossa*; acc. *Ossam*, or *Ossan*.

Greek nouns in *e*, *as*, and *es*, are thus declined in the singular number:—

|                    |                     |                      |
|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| N. Pe-nel'-ō-pē,   | N. E-nē'-ās,        | N. An-chī'-ēs,       |
| G. Pe-nel'-ō-pēs,  | G. E-nē'-as,        | G. An-chī'-ēs,       |
| D. Pe-nel'-ō-pæ,   | D. E-nē'-æ,         | D. An-chī'-sæ,       |
| Ac. Pe-nel'-ō-pēn, | Ac. E-nē'-ām or ān, | Ac. An-chī'-sēn,     |
| V. Pe-nel'-ō-pē,   | V. E-nē'-ā,         | V. An-chī'-sē or ā,  |
| Ab. Pe-nel'-ō-pē.  | Ab. E-nē'-ā.        | Ab. An-chī'-sā or ē. |

§ 45. In like manner decline

|                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Al'-o-e, aloe.              | Ti-ā'-ras, a turban.           |
| E-pit'-ō-me, an abridgment. | Co-mē'-tes, a comet.           |
| This'-be.                   | Dy-nas'-tes, a ruler.          |
| Bo'-rē-as, the north wind.  | Pri-am'-i-des, a son of Priam. |
| My'-das.                    | P'y-rī'-tes, a kind of stone.  |

1. Most proper names in *es*, except patronymics, follow the third declension; but in the accusative they often have both *em* and *en*, and in the vocative both *es* and *e*. See §§ 80, IV, and 81.

2. Greek nouns of the first declension, which admit of a plural, are declined in that number like the plural of *musa*.

3. The Latins frequently change the terminations of Greek nouns in *ēs* and *ē* into *ā*; as, *Atrides*, *Atrida*, a son of Atreus; *Perseus*, *Perseā*, a Persian; *geomētres*, *geomētra*, a geometrician; *Circe*, *Circa*; *epitōme*, *epitōma*; *grammatices*, *grammatica*, grammar; *rhetorices*, *rhetorica*, oratory.—So also *tiāras*, *tiāra*.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 46. Nouns of the second declension end in *ēr*, *ir*, *ūs*, *ūm*, *os*, *on*. Those ending in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns in *er*, *us*, and *um*, are thus declined:—

#### SINGULAR.

| A lord.         | A son-in-law. | A field. | A kingdom. |
|-----------------|---------------|----------|------------|
| N. dōm'-i-nūs,  | gē'-nēr,      | ā'-gēr,  | reg'-nūm,  |
| G. dom'-i-nī,   | gen'-ē-rī,    | a'-grī,  | reg'-nī,   |
| D. dom'-i-nō,   | gen'-ē-rō,    | a'-grō,  | reg'-nō,   |
| Ac. dom'-i-nūm, | gen'-ē-rūm,   | a'-grūm, | reg'-nūm,  |
| V. dom'-i-nē,   | ge'-nēr,      | a'-gēr,  | reg'-nūm,  |
| Ab. dom'-i-nō.  | gen'-ērō.     | a'-grō.  | reg'-nō.   |

## PLURAL.

|                  |               |            |             |
|------------------|---------------|------------|-------------|
| N. dom'-i-ni,    | gen'-ē-ri,    | a'-gri,    | reg'-nā,    |
| G. dom-i-nō-rūm, | gen-e-rō-rūm, | a-grō-rūm, | reg-nō-rūm, |
| D. dom'-i-nis,   | gen'-ē-ris,   | a'-gris,   | reg'-nis,   |
| Ac. dom'-i-nōs,  | gen'-ē-rōs,   | a'-grōs,   | reg'-nā,    |
| V. dom'-i-ni,    | gen'-ē-ri,    | a'-gri,    | reg'-nā,    |
| Ab. dom'-i-nis.  | gen'-ē-ris.   | a'-gris.   | reg'-nis.   |

Like *dominus* decline

|                              |                             |                                     |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| An'-i-mus, <i>the mind.</i>  | Fō'-cus, <i>a hearth.</i>   | Nu'-mē-rus, <i>a number.</i>        |
| Clip'-e-us, <i>a shield.</i> | Gla'-di-us, <i>a sword.</i> | O-ce'-ā-nus, <i>the ocean.</i>      |
| Cor'-vus, <i>a raven.</i>    | Lū'-cus, <i>a grove.</i>    | Trō'-chus, <i>a trundling-hoop.</i> |

NOTE. Nouns in *us* of the second declension are the only Latin nouns, whose nominative and vocative singular differ in form. See § 40, R. 8.

§ 47. A few nouns in *er*, like *gener*, add the terminations to the nominative singular, as a root. They are the compounds of *gēro* and *fēro*; as, *armiger*, -ēri, an armor-bearer; *Luctifer*, -ēri, the morning star; and the following:—

|                                    |                                               |                                  |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| A-dul'-ter, <i>an adulterer.</i>   | LI'-ber, <i>Bacchus.</i>                      | Pu'-er, <i>a boy.</i>            |
| Cel'-ti-bēr, <i>a Celtiberian.</i> | Lib'-ē-ri, ( <i>plur.</i> ), <i>children.</i> | Sō'-cer, <i>a father-in-law.</i> |
| I'-ber, <i>a Spaniard.</i>         | Pres'-by'-ter, <i>an elder.</i>               | Ves'-per, <i>the evening.</i>    |

*Mul'-ct-ber*, Vulcan, sometimes has this form.

§ 48. 1. All other nouns in *er* reject the *e* in adding the terminations, (§ 322, 4), and are declined like *ager*; thus,

|                                  |                               |                |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|
| A'-per, <i>a wild boar.</i>      | LI'-ber, <i>a book.</i>       | Al-ex-an'-der. |
| Aus'-ter, <i>the south wind.</i> | Ma-gis'-ter, <i>a master.</i> | Is'-ter.       |
| Fā'-ber, <i>a workman.</i>       | On'-ā-ger, <i>a wild ass.</i> | Teu'-cer.      |

2. *Vir*, a man, with its compounds, and the patritial *Trēvir*, (the only nouns in *ir*.) are declined like *gener*.

Like *regnum* decline

|                           |                                   |                                  |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| An'-trum, <i>a cave.</i>  | Ex-em'-plum, <i>an example.</i>   | Præ-sid'-i-um, <i>a defence.</i> |
| A'-tri-um, <i>a hall.</i> | Ne-go'-ti-um,* <i>a business.</i> | Sax'-um, <i>a rock.</i>          |
| Bel'-ium, <i>war.</i>     | NI'-trum, <i>natron.</i>          | Scep'-trum, <i>a sceptre.</i>    |

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 49. 1. The following nouns in *us* and *os* are feminine:—

|                                       |                                  |                                        |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Abyssus, <i>a bottomless pit.</i>     | Dialectos, <i>a dialect.</i>     | Miltos, <i>vermilion.</i>              |
| Alvus, <i>the belly.</i>              | Diphthongus, <i>a diphthong.</i> | Phārus(os), <i>a light-house.</i>      |
| Antidotus, <i>an antidote.</i>        | Dōmus, <i>a house, home.</i>     | Plinthus, <i>the base of a column.</i> |
| Arctos(na), <i>the Northern Bear.</i> | Erēmus, <i>a desert.</i>         | Vannus, <i>a corn-fan.</i>             |
| Carbāsus, <i>a sail.</i>              | Hūmus, <i>the ground.</i>        |                                        |

2. Greek nouns in *odus* (ὁδος), and *mētros*, are likewise feminine; as, *agōdus*, an assembly; *diāmētros*, a diameter.

\* Pronounced ne-go'-shē-um. See § 12.

§ 50. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, etc. are feminine. See § 29, 2.

Yet the following names of plants are masculine:—

|                                |                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Acanthus</i> , bear's-foot. | <i>Ebŭlus</i> , an elder.      | <i>Rŭbus</i> , a blackberry-bush.   |
| <i>Amarantus</i> , amaranth.   | <i>Hellebŏrus</i> , hellebore. | <i>Tribŭlus</i> , a caltrop.        |
| <i>Asparŭgus</i> , asparagus.  | <i>Intŭbus</i> , endive.       |                                     |
| <i>Calāmus</i> , a reed.       | <i>Juncus</i> , a bulrush.     | And sometimes                       |
| <i>Carduus</i> , a thistle.    | <i>Raphānus</i> , a radish.    | <i>Amarācus</i> , <i>marjoram</i> . |
| <i>Dŭmus</i> , a bramble.      | <i>Rhamnos</i> , buck-thorn.   | <i>Cytisus</i> , snail-clover.      |

*Oleaster* and *pinaster*, names of trees, are also masculine.

The following names of gems are also masculine:—

|                                   |                                            |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Beryllus</i> , a beryl.        | <i>Chrysoprŭsus</i> , <i>chrysoprase</i> . | So also,                              |
| <i>Carbuncŭlus</i> , a carbuncle. | <i>Opālus</i> , <i>opal</i> .              | <i>Pyrŏpus</i> , <i>gold-bronze</i> . |

*Chrysolithus*, *chrysolite*, and *amaragdus*, an emerald, are doubtful.

Names of females in *um* are feminine: § 29, 1; as, *mea Glycerium*, Ter.

Names of trees and plants in *um* are generally neuter; as, *apium*, parsley; *aconitum*, wolf's bane.

*Canŏpus*, *Pontus*, *Hellespontus*, *Isthmus*, and all plural names in *i* of countries and towns are masculine. *Abŏdus*(*os*) is doubtful.

Names of countries and towns ending in *um*, or, if plural, in *a*, are neuter as, *Ilĭum* or *Ilĭon*; *Ecbātāna*, *ŏrum*.

§ 51. The following are doubtful, but more frequently masculine:—

|                           |                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Balānus</i> , a date.  | <i>Grossus</i> , an unripe fig. | <i>Phasēlus</i> , a light vessel. |
| <i>Barbŏtus</i> , a tute. | <i>Pampinus</i> , a vine-leaf.  |                                   |

*Atŏmus*, an atom, and *cŏlus*, a distaff, are doubtful, but more frequently feminine.

*Pelāgus*, the sea, and *vĭrus*, poison, are neuter.

*Vulgus*, the common people, is neuter, and rarely masculine.

#### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 52. *Genitive singular*. When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the poets frequently contract it into *i*; as, *ingēni*, for *ingenii*.

*Vocative singular*. The vocative of nouns in *us* is sometimes like the nominative, especially in poetry; as, *fluviŭs*, *Latĭnus*, in Virgil. So, *audi tu*, *popŭlus Albānus*. Liv.

Proper names in *us* omit *e* in the vocative; as, *Horatius*, *Horāti*; *Virgilius*, *Virgĭli*.

*Filius*, a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, make also *fili* and *geni*. Other nouns in *ius*, including patris and possessives derived from proper names, form their vocative regularly in *e*; as, *Delius*, *Delĕ*; *Tirynthius*, *Tirynthĭe*; *Laertius*, *Laertĕ*.

§ 53. *Genitive plural*. The genitive plural of some nouns of the second declension, especially of those which denote money, weight and measure, is commonly formed in *um*, instead of *ŏrum*: § 322, 4.

Such are particularly *nummum*, *sestertium*, *denarium*, *medimnum*, *jugĕrum*, *modĭum*, *talentum*. The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry; as, *deum*, *libĕrum*, *Danaum*; etc., and sometimes *om* is found instead of *um*; as, *Achiom*. Virg. Cf. § 322, 8.

*Deus, a god, is thus declined :—*

| <i>Singular.</i>   | <i>Plural.</i>                     |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> de'-us,  | <i>N.</i> di'-i, di, or de'-i,     |
| <i>G.</i> de'-i,   | <i>G.</i> de-ō-rum,                |
| <i>D.</i> de'-o,   | <i>D.</i> di'-is, dis, or de'-is,  |
| <i>Ac.</i> de'-um, | <i>Ac.</i> de'-os,                 |
| <i>V.</i> de'-us,  | <i>V.</i> di'-i, di, or de'-i,     |
| <i>Ab.</i> de'-o.  | <i>Ab.</i> di'-is, dis, or de'-is. |

*Jēsus*, or *Iēsus*, the name of the Savior, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other oblique cases.

### GREEK NOUNS.

§ 54. 1. *Os* and *on*, in the second declension, are Greek terminations, and are commonly changed, in Latin, into *us* and *um*; but sometimes both forms are in use; as, *Alphēos*, and *Alphēus*; *Ilion* and *Ilium*. Greek names in *ros* after a consonant commonly change *ros* into *er*; as, *Alexandros*, *Alexander*; *Teucros*, *Teucer*. In a few words *ros* is changed to *rus*; as, *Codrus*, *hydrus*, and once in Virgil, *Teucus*.

Greek nouns are thus declined in the singular number :—

| <i>Singular.</i>          |                      | <i>Barblton, a lyre.</i> |
|---------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> Dē'-lōs,        | Andrō'-ge-ōs,        | <i>N.</i> bar'-bi-tōn,   |
| <i>G.</i> Dē'-i,          | An-dro'-ge-ō, or i,  | <i>G.</i> bar'-bi-ti,    |
| <i>D.</i> Dē'-lō,         | An-dro'-ge-ō,        | <i>D.</i> bar'-bi-tō,    |
| <i>Ac.</i> Dē'-lōn or ūm, | An-dro'-ge-ō, or ōn, | <i>Ac.</i> bar'-bi-tōn,  |
| <i>V.</i> Dē'-lē,         | An-dro'-ge-ōs,       | <i>V.</i> bar'-bi-tōn,   |
| <i>Ab.</i> Dē'-lō.        | An-dro'-ge-ō.        | <i>Ab.</i> bar'-bi-tō.   |

2. The plurals of Greek nouns in *os* and *on* are declined like those of *dominus* and *regnum*; but the nominative plural of nouns in *os* sometimes ends in *ε*; as, *canephōra*.

3. In early writers some nouns in *os* have a genitive in *ου* (*ou*); as, *Menandra*. Ter.

4. A genitive plural in *ων*, instead of *orum*, occurs in the titles of books and in some names of places; as, *Georgicōn*; *Philōnōn ara*. Sall.

5. Greek proper names in *eus* (see § 9, R. 3), are declined like *dominus*, except that the vocative ends in *eu*; but sometimes in the genitive, dative, and accusative also, they retain the Greek form, viz. gen. *έος*, dat. *έι* (contracted *ει*), acc. *έα* or *έδ*, and are of the third declension. See §§ 86, and 806, (1.) So in Lucretius the neuter *pelāgus* (Greek *πelaγος*, *sea*) has an accusative plural *pelāgē* for *pelagea* after the third declension. § 83, 1.—See also respecting a genitive in *ι* of some proper nouns in *es*, § 73, Rem.—*Panthūs* occurs in Virgil, A. 2, 822, as the vocative of *Panthūs*. Cf. § 81.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 55. The number of final letters, in this declension, is twelve. Five are vowels—*a, e, i, o, y*; and seven are consonants—*c, l, n, r, s, t, x*. The number of its final syllables exceeds fifty.

REM. The following terminations belong exclusively to Greek nouns; viz. *us, i, y, ōs, ōn, ōn, ēr, ēr, yz, eus, yz, inx, yux*, and plurals in *ε*.



*Mode of declining Nouns of the Third Declension.*

To decline a word properly, in this declension, it is necessary to know its gender, its nominative singular, and one of its oblique cases; since the root of the cases is not always found entire and unchanged in the nominative. The case usually selected for this purpose is the genitive singular. The formation of the accusative singular, and of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, depends upon the gender: if it is masculine or feminine, these cases have one form; if neuter, another.

§ 56. The student should first fix well in his memory the terminations of one of these forms. He should next learn the nominative and genitive singular of the word which is to be declined. If *is* be removed from the genitive, the remainder will always be the root of the oblique cases, and by annexing their terminations to this root, the word is declined; thus, *rupes*, genitive (found in the dictionary) *rupis*, root *rup*, dative *rupi*, etc.: *ars*, gen. *artis*, root *art*, dat. *arti*, etc.; *opus*, gen. *opëris*, root *opër*, dat. *opëri*, etc.

RULES FOR FORMING THE NOMINATIVE SINGULAR OF THE  
THIRD DECLENSION FROM THE ROOT.

I. Roots ending in *c, g; b, m, p; u, t, d*, and some in *r*, add *s* to form the nominative; as, *trăbis*, *trabs*; *hiëmis*, *hiëms*; *gruis*, *grus*.

REMARK 1. *T, d* and *r* before *s* are dropped; as, *nepôtis*, *nepos*; *laudis*, *laus*; *floris*, *flor*. So *bovis*, *bos*, drops *v*.

REM. 2. *C* and *g* before *s* form *x*; as, *vocis*, *vox*; *regis*, *rex*. So *vs* forms *x* in *nivis*, *nix*. Cf. §§ 3, 2, and 171, 1.

REM. 3. Short *i* in the root before *c, b, p, t*, is commonly changed to *ë*; as, *pollicis*, *pollex*; *calicis*, *calix*; *principis*, *princeps*; *comitis*, *comes*. So *û* is changed to *ë* in *aucupis*, *auceps*.

REM. 4. Short *ë* or *ö* before *r* in neuters is changed to *û*; as, *genëris*, *genûs*; *tempôris*, *tempûs*.

REM. 5. Short *ë* before *r* is changed to *i* in the masculines *cinëris*, *cinis*; *cucumëris*, *cucumis*; *pulvëris*, *pulvis*; *vomëris*, *vômis*.

REM. 6. A few and those mostly monosyllabic roots of masculines and feminines, not increasing in the genitive, add *es* or *is*, instead of *s* alone; as, gen. *rupis*, nom. *rupes*; gen. *auris*, nom. *auris*.

REM. 7. A few neuters add *ë* to the root to form the nominative; as, *rëtis*, *rëtë*; *mëris*, *mëré*.

II. To roots ending in *l* and *n*, to some in *r* and *s*, and to those of most neuters in *t*, no addition is made in forming the nominative; as, *animâlis*, *animal*; *canônis*, *cănôn*; *honôris*, *hônôr*; *assis*, *as*.

REMARK 1. Final *ön* and *în* in the roots of masculines and feminines, become *o* in the nominative; as, *sermônis*, *sermo*; *arundânis*, *arundo*.

REM. 2. Final *în* in the roots of neuters becomes *ën* in the nominative; as, *fluminis*, *flumën*. So also in the masculines, *oscen*, *pecten*, *tibicen* and *tubicen*.

REM. 3. *Tr* and *br* at the end of a root, take *ë* between them in the nominative; as, *patris*, *pätër*; *imbris*, *imber*. Cf. §§ 108, 48, and 106.

REM. 4. Short *ö* is changed to *û* in *ebôris*, *ëbûr*; *femôris*, *fëmûr*; *jecôris*, *jëcûr*; and *robôris*, *rôbûr*.

REM. 5. In the roots of neuters *at* drops *t*, and *it* becomes *ut* in the nominative; as, *poëmâtis*, *poëma*; *capitis*, *caput*.

REM. 6. Roots of this class ending in repeated consonants drop one of them in the nominative; as, *fellis*, *fel*; *farris*, *far*; *assis*, *as*; *bessis*, *bes*.

The following are the two forms of termination in this declension:—

| <i>Singular.</i>      |              | <i>Plural</i>         |              |
|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| <i>Masc. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| <i>N.</i> *           | *            | <i>N.</i> ěs,         | ă, (iă),     |
| <i>G.</i> ĩs,         | ĭs,          | <i>G.</i> ūm, (iŭm),  | ŭm, (iŭm),   |
| <i>D.</i> ĭ,          | ĭ,           | <i>D.</i> ĭbŭs,       | ĭbŭs,        |
| <i>Ac.</i> ěm, (ĭm),  | *            | <i>Ac.</i> ěs,        | ă, (iă),     |
| <i>V.</i> *           | *            | <i>V.</i> ěs,         | ă, (iă),     |
| <i>Ab.</i> ě, (ĭ).    | ě, (ĭ).      | <i>Ab.</i> ĭbŭs.      | ĭbŭs.        |

The asterisk stands for the nominative, and for those cases which are like it.

§ 57. The following are examples of the most common forms of nouns of this declension, declined through all their cases.

Hōnor, *honor*; masc.

| <i>Singular.</i>       | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i> ho'-nor,     | ho-nō'-res,    |
| <i>G.</i> ho-nō'-ris,  | ho-nō'-rum,    |
| <i>D.</i> ho-nō'-ri,   | ho-nor'-i-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> ho-nō'-rem, | ho-nō'-res,    |
| <i>V.</i> ho'-nor,     | ho-nō'-res,    |
| <i>Ab.</i> ho-nō'-re.  | ho-nor'-i-bus. |

Turris, *a tower*; fem.

| <i>Singular.</i>           | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i> tur'-ris,        | tur'-res,      |
| <i>G.</i> tur'-ris,        | tur'-ri-um,    |
| <i>D.</i> tur'-ri,         | tur'-ri-bus,   |
| <i>Ac.</i> tur'-rim, rem,  | tur'-res,      |
| <i>V.</i> tur'-ris,        | tur'-res,      |
| <i>Ab.</i> tur'-ri, or re. | tur'-ri-bus.   |

Rūpes, *a rock*; fem.

| <i>Singular.</i>    | <i>Plural.</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i> ru'-pes,  | ru'-pes,       |
| <i>G.</i> ru'-pis,  | ru'-pi-um,     |
| <i>D.</i> ru'-pi,   | ru'-pi-bus,    |
| <i>Ac.</i> ru'-pem, | ru'-pes,       |
| <i>V.</i> ru'-pes,  | ru'-pes,       |
| <i>Ab.</i> ru'-pe.  | ru'-pi-bus.    |

Nox, *night*; fem.

| <i>Singular.</i>     | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----------------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i> nox,       | noc'-tes,      |
| <i>G.</i> noc'-tis,  | noc'-ti-um,*   |
| <i>D.</i> noc'-ti,   | noc'-ti-bus,   |
| <i>Ac.</i> noc'-tem, | noc'-tes,      |
| <i>V.</i> nox,       | noc'-tes,      |
| <i>Ab.</i> noc'-te.  | noc'-ti-bus.   |

Ars, *art*; fem.

| <i>Singular.</i>    | <i>Plural.</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i> ars,      | ar'-tes,       |
| <i>G.</i> ar'-tis,  | ar'-ti-um,*    |
| <i>D.</i> ar'-ti,   | ar'-ti-bus,    |
| <i>Ac.</i> ar'-tem, | ar'-tes,       |
| <i>V.</i> ars,      | ar'-tes,       |
| <i>Ab.</i> ar'-te.  | ar'-ti-bus.    |

Miles, *a soldier*; com. gen.

| <i>Singular.</i>       | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i> mi'-les,     | mil'-i-tes,    |
| <i>G.</i> mil'-i-tis,  | mil'-i-tum,    |
| <i>D.</i> mil'-i-ti,   | mi-lit'-i-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> mil'-i-tem, | mil'-i-tes,    |
| <i>V.</i> mi'-les,     | mil'-i-tes,    |
| <i>Ab.</i> mil'-i-te.  | mi-lit'-i-bus. |

Sermo, *speech*; masc.

| <i>Singular.</i>        | <i>Plural.</i>  |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>N.</i> ser'-mo,      | ser-mō'-nes,    |
| <i>G.</i> ser-mō'-nis,  | ser-mō'-num,    |
| <i>D.</i> ser-mō'-ni,   | ser-mon'-i-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> ser-mō'-nem, | ser-mō'-nes,    |
| <i>V.</i> ser'-mo,      | ser-mō'-nes,    |
| <i>Ab.</i> ser-mō'-ne.  | ser-mon'-i-bus. |

Pāter, *a father*; masc.

| <i>Singular.</i>     | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----------------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i> pa'-ter,   | pa'-tres,      |
| <i>G.</i> pa'-tris,  | pa'-trum,      |
| <i>D.</i> pa'-tri,   | pat'-ri-bus,   |
| <i>Ac.</i> pa'-trem, | pa'-tres,      |
| <i>V.</i> pa'-ter,   | pa'-tres,      |
| <i>Ab.</i> pa'-tre.  | pat'-ri-bus.   |

\* Pronounced ar'-she-um, noc'-she-um. See § 12.

*Sēdile, a seat; neut.*

| <i>Singular.</i>      | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i> se-dī'-le,  | se-dil'-i-a,   |
| <i>G.</i> se-dī'-lis, | se-dil'-i-um,  |
| <i>D.</i> se-dī'-li,  | se-dil'-i-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> se-dī'-le, | se-dil'-i-a,   |
| <i>V.</i> se-dī'-le,  | se-dil'-i-a,   |
| <i>Ab.</i> se-dī'-li. | se-dil'-i-bus. |

*Carmen, a verse; neut.*

| <i>Singular.</i>       | <i>Plural.</i>   |
|------------------------|------------------|
| <i>N.</i> car'-men,    | car'-mī-na,      |
| <i>G.</i> car'-mī-nis, | car'-mī-num,     |
| <i>D.</i> car'-mī-ni,  | car'-mīn'-i-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> car'-men,   | car'-mī-na,      |
| <i>V.</i> car'-men,    | car'-mī-na,      |
| <i>Ab.</i> car'-mī-ne. | car'-mīn'-i-bus. |

*Iter, a journey; neut.*

| <i>Singular.</i>        | <i>Plural.</i>   |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| <i>N.</i> ī'-ter,       | i-tin'-ē-ra,     |
| <i>G.</i> i-tin'-ē-ris, | i-tin'-ē-rum,    |
| <i>D.</i> i-tin'-ē-ri,  | it-i-ner'-i-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> ī'-ter,      | i-tin'-ē-ra,     |
| <i>V.</i> ī'-ter,       | i-tin'-ē-ra,     |
| <i>Ab.</i> i-tin'-ē-re. | it-i-ner'-i-bus. |

*Lāpis, a stone; masc.*

| <i>Singular.</i>       | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i> la'-pis,     | lap'-i-des,    |
| <i>G.</i> lap'-i-dis,  | lap'-i-dum,    |
| <i>D.</i> lap'-i-di,   | la-pid'-i-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> lap'-i-dem, | lap'-i-des,    |
| <i>V.</i> la'-pis,     | lap'-i-des,    |
| <i>Ab.</i> lap'-i-de.  | la-pid'-i-bus. |

*Virgo, a virgin; fem.*

| <i>Singular.</i>        | <i>Plural.</i>   |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| <i>N.</i> vir'-go,      | vir'-gī-nes,     |
| <i>G.</i> vir'-gī-nis,  | vir'-gī-num,     |
| <i>D.</i> vir'-gī-ni,   | vir'-gīn'-i-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> vir'-gī-nem, | vir'-gī-nes,     |
| <i>V.</i> vir'-go,      | vir'-gī-nes,     |
| <i>Ab.</i> vir'-gī-ne.  | vir'-gīn'-i-bus. |

*Animal, an animal; neut.*

| <i>Singular.</i>        | <i>Plural.</i>   |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| <i>N.</i> ān'-i-mal,    | an-i-mā'-li-a,   |
| <i>G.</i> an-i-mā'-lis, | an-i-mā'-li-um,  |
| <i>D.</i> an-i-mā'-li,  | an-i-mal'-i-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> an'-i-mal,   | an-i-mā'-li-a,   |
| <i>V.</i> an'-i-mal,    | an-i-mā'-li-a,   |
| <i>Ab.</i> an-i-mā'-li. | an-i-mal'-i-bus. |

*Opus, work; neut.*

| <i>Singular.</i>     | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----------------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i> ō'-pus,    | op'-ē-ra,      |
| <i>G.</i> op'-ē-ris, | op'-ē-rum,     |
| <i>D.</i> op'-ē-ri,  | o-per'-i-bus,  |
| <i>Ac.</i> o'-pus,   | op'-ē-ra,      |
| <i>V.</i> o'-pus,    | op'-ē-ra,      |
| <i>Ab.</i> op'-ē-re. | o-per'-i-bus.  |

*Cāput, a head; neut.*

| <i>Singular.</i>      | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i> ca'-put,    | cap'-i-ta,     |
| <i>G.</i> cap'-i-tis, | cap'-i-tum,    |
| <i>D.</i> cap'-i-ti,  | ca-pit'-i-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> ca'-put,   | cap'-i-ta,     |
| <i>V.</i> ca'-put,    | cap'-i-ta,     |
| <i>Ab.</i> cap'-i-te. | ca-pit'-i-bus. |

*Poëma, a poem; neut.*

| <i>Singular.</i>        | <i>Plural.</i>                    |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> po-ē'-ma,     | po-em'-ā-ta,                      |
| <i>G.</i> po-em'-ā-tis, | po-em'-ā-tum,                     |
| <i>D.</i> po-em'-ā-ti,  | po-e-mat'-i-bus, or po-em'-ā-tis, |
| <i>Ac.</i> po-ē'-ma,    | po-em'-ā-ta,                      |
| <i>V.</i> po-ē'-ma,     | po-em'-ā-ta,                      |
| <i>Ab.</i> po-em'-ā-te. | po-e-mat'-i-bus, or po-em'-ā-tis. |

RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 58. Nouns whose gender is determined by their signification, according to the general rules, § 28-34, are not included in the following rules and exceptions.

MASCULINES.

Nouns ending in *o*, *er*, *or*, *es* increasing in the genitive, *os*, and *n*, are masculine; as,

*sermo*, speech; *dolor*, pain; *flos*, a flower; *carcer*, a prison; *pes*, a foot; *canon*, a rule.

Exceptions in O.

§ 59. 1. Abstract and collective nouns in *io* are feminine; as, *ratio*, reason; *legio*, a legion.

REM. 1. But numerals in *io*; as, *binio*, *trinio*, etc., except *unio*, unity, are masculine.

2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, are feminine; as, *arundo*, a reed; *imāgo*, an image. So also *grando*, hail. But *comēdo*, a glutton; *unēdo*, the arbut tree; and *harpāgo*, a grappling-hook, are masculine.

REM. 2. *Margo*, the brink of a river, is doubtful. *Cupido*, desire, is often masculine in poetry, but in prose is always feminine.

3. *Circo*, flesh, and Greek nouns in *o*, are feminine; as, *ēcho*, an echo. *Bubo*, the owl, is once feminine, Virg. A. 4, 462.

Exceptions in ER.

§ 60. 1. *Laver*, a water plant, and *tüber*, the tuber tree, are feminine, but when the latter denotes the fruit, it is masculine. *Linter*, a boat, is feminine, and once, in Tibullus, masculine. *Staer*, skirret, is neuter in the singular, but masculine in the plural.

2. The following, in *er*, are neuter:—

|                                    |                             |                            |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Acer</i> , a maple-tree.        | <i>Papāver</i> , a poppy.   | <i>Tüber</i> , a swelling. |
| <i>Cadāver</i> , a dead body.      | <i>Piper</i> , pepper.      | <i>Uber</i> , a teat.      |
| <i>Cicer</i> , a cich.             | <i>Siler</i> , an osier.    | <i>Ver</i> , the spring.   |
| <i>Iter</i> , a journey.           | <i>Spinther</i> , a clasp.  | <i>Verber</i> , a scourge. |
| <i>Lāser</i> , <i>assafatida</i> . | <i>Süber</i> , a cork-tree. | <i>Zingiber</i> , ginger.  |

Exceptions in OR.

§ 61. *Arbor*, a tree, is feminine: *ādor*, spelt; *aquor*, the sea; *marmor*, marble; and *cor*, the heart, are neuter.

Exceptions in ES increasing in the genitive.

1. The following are feminine:—

|                                  |                                           |                       |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Compes</i> , a fetter.        | <i>Quies</i> , and <i>Requies</i> , rest. | <i>Tēges</i> , a mat. |
| <i>Mercēs</i> , a reward.        | <i>Inquies</i> , restlessness.            |                       |
| <i>Mergēs</i> , a sheaf of corn. | <i>Sēges</i> , growing corn.              |                       |

2. *Alas*, a bird; *cōmes*, a companion; *hospes*, a guest; *interpretēs*, an interpreter; *miles*, a soldier; *obses*, a hostage; *præses*, a president; and *satelles*, a life-guard, are common, § 30. *Æs*, brass, is neuter.

*Exceptions in OS.*

3. *Arbor*, a tree; *cos*, a whetstone; *dos*, a dowry; *eos*, the morning; and rarely *nēpos*, a grandchild, are feminine: *sacerdos*, *custos*, and *bos* are common, § 80: *os*, the mouth, and *os*, a bone, are neuter; as are also the Greek words *ēpos*, epic poetry; and *mēlos*, melody.

*Exceptions in N.*

4. Nouns in *men* with four in *n* are neuter—*gluten*, glue; *inguen*, the groin; *pollex*, fine flour; and *unguen*, ointment.

5. Four nouns in *on* are feminine—*ādon*, a nightingale; *halcyon*, a kingfisher; *icon*, an image; and *sindon*, muslin.

## FEMININES.

§ 62. Nouns ending in *as*, *es* not increasing in the genitive, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, and *x*, are feminine; as,

*etas*, age; *nubes*, a cloud; *avis*, a bird; *chlamys*, a cloak; *laus*, praise; *trabe*, a beam; *pax*, peace.

*Exceptions in AS.*

1. *Mas*, a male, *vas*, a surety, and *as*, a piece of money, or any unit divisible into twelve parts, are masculine. Greek nouns in *as*, *antis*, are also masculine; as, *adamas*, adamant. So also *Mēlas*, the name of a river, § 28, 2. *Arcas* and *Nōmas* are common.—2. *Vas*, a vessel, the indeclinable nouns, *fus* and *nēfus*, and Greek nouns in *as*, *ātis*, are neuter; as, *artocreas*, a meat-pie; *bucēras*, a species of herb.

*Exceptions in ES not increasing in the genitive.*

3. *Acināces*, a scimitar, and *cōles* or *cōlis*, a stalk, are masculine. *Antistes*, *pulumbes*, *vātes*, and *vepres*, are masculine or feminine. *Cucoēthes*, *hippomānes*, *nepenthes*, and *panāces*, Greek words, are neuter.

*Exceptions in IS.*

§ 63. 1. Latin nouns in *nīs* are masculine or doubtful.

(1.) Masc. *Crinis*, hair; *ignis*, fire; *pānis*, bread; *mānes*, (plur.), departed spirits.—(2.) Masc. or fem. *Ammis*, a river; *cinis*, ashes; *fīnis*, an end; *clānis*, the haunch; *cānis*, a dog; *fūnis*, a rope. The plurals, *cinēres*, the ashes of the dead, and *fīnes*, boundaries, are always masculine.

2. The following are common or doubtful:—

*Anguis*, a snake.

*Callis*, a path.

*Canālis*, a conduit pipe.

*Contubernālis*, a comrade.

*Corbis*, a basket.

*Pollis*, fine flour.

*Pulvis*, dust.

*Scrōbis*, a ditch.

*Tigris*, a tiger.

*Torquis*, a chain.

3. The following are masculine:—

*Axīs*, an axle.

*Aquālis*, a water-pot.

*Cassīs*, a net.

*Caulis*, or } a stalk.

*Cōlis*,

*Cenchris*, a serpent.

*Collis*, a hill.

*Cucūmis*, a cucumber.

*Ensis*, a sword.

*Fasciā*, a bundle.

*Follis*, a pair of bellows.

*Fustis*, a club.

*Gilis*, a dormouse.

*Lāpis*, a stone.

*Lemūres*, pl., spectres.

Mensis, a month.  
Mugilis, a mullet.  
Orbis, a circle.  
Piscis, a fish.  
Postis, a post.  
Quiris, a Roman.  
Sammis, a Samnite.

Sanguis, blood.  
Sēmis, or  
Semissis, } compounds  
Bessis, } of *as*.  
Centussis,  
Decussis,  
Tressis, }

Sentis, a brier.  
Sodālis, a companion.  
Torris, a firebrand.  
Unguis, a nail.  
Vectis, a lever.  
Vermis, a worm.  
Vōmis, a ploughshare.

4. Names of male beings, rivers, and months in *is* are masculine; as, *Dis*, Pluto; *Anūbis*, an Egyptian deity; *Tigris*, the river Tigris; *Aprilis*, April. See § 28.

### Exceptions in YS.

Names of rivers and mountains in *ys* are masculine; as, *Hālys*, *Othrys*. See § 28, 2 and 3.

### Exceptions in S preceded by a consonant.

§ 64. 1. *Dens*, a tooth; *fons*, a fountain; *mons*, a mountain; and *pons*, a bridge, are masculine. So also are *auceps*, a bird-catcher; *chālybs*, steel; *cliens*, a client; *ellops*, a kind of fish; *ēpops*, a hoopoe; *gryps*, a griffin; *hydrops*, the dropsy; *mērops*, a kind of bird. *Rādens*, a rope, is masculine and very rarely feminine.

2. The following nouns also are masculine, viz. (a.) these which are properly adjectives—*confluens* and *torrens*, scil. *amnis*; *occidens* and *oriens*, scil. *sol*; (b.) compounds of *dens*—*tridens*, a trident, and *bidens*, a two-pronged mattock;—but *bidens*, a sheep, is feminine; (c.) the parts of *as* ending in *ns*; as, *sextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, *dodrans*, and *dextans*.

3. The following are common or doubtful:—

Adeps, grease.    Seps, a kind of serpent.    Serpens, a serpent.  
Forceps, pincers.    Scrobs, a ditch.    Stīps, the trunk of a tree.

*Animans* an animal, which is properly an adjective, is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

### Exceptions in X.

§ 65. 1. AX. *Anthrax*, cinnabar; *cōrax*, a raven; *cordax*, a kind of dance; *drōpax*, an ointment; *stīrax*, a kind of tree; *thōrax*, a breast-plate; and *Atax*, the river Aude, are masculine; *īmāx*, a snail, is common.

2. EX. Nouns in *ex* are masculine, except *fax*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, *prex*, (obsolete in nom. and gen. sing.), and *supellex*, which are feminine; to which add (§ 29) *cārex*, *lēx*, *mārex*, *pellex*, and *vīlex*. *Atriplex* is neuter and very rarely masculine or feminine. *Alex*, a fish-pickle; *cortex*, bark; *imbrex*, a gutter-tile; *ōber*, a bolt; and *silex*, a flint, are doubtful: *sēnex*, an old person; *grex*, a herd; *rūmex*, sorrel; and *pūmex*, pumice-stone, are masculine and very rarely feminine.

3. IX. *Ūlīx*, a cup; *formīx*, an arch; *phanīx*, a kind of bird; and *spādīx*, a palm-branch, are masculine: *lārīx*, the larch-tree; *perdīx*, a partridge; and *cārīx*, a swollen vein, are masculine or feminine.

4. OX. *Box* and *īsox*, names of fishes, are masculine.

5. UX. *Trāchux*, a vine-branch, is masculine.

6. YX. *Bombyx*, a silk-worm; *cālyx*, the bud of a flower; *cōccyx*, a cuckoo; *ōryx*, a wild goat, and names of mountains in *yx*, as *Eryx*, are masculine. *Onyx*, a box made of the onyx-stone, and *sardōnyx*, a precious stone; also, *calx*, the heel, and *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx, and *sandyx*, a kind of color, are masculine or feminine.

NOTE. *Bombyx*, when it signifies silk, is doubtful.

7. *Quincunx*, *septunx*, *dēcunx*, *duonx*, parts of *as*, are masculine.

## NEUTERS.

§ 66. Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, t, ar, ur, us, and men*, are neuter; as,

*diadēma*, a crown; *rēte*, a net; *hydromēli*, mead; *lac*, milk; *vectigal*, revenue; *caput*, the head; *calcar*, a spur; *guttur*, the throat; *pectus*, the breast; and *flāmen*, a river.

## Exceptions in L, C, and E.

*Magil*, a mullet, and *sol*, the sun, are masculine. *Sal*, salt, is masculine or neuter, in the singular; but, in the plural, it is always masculine. *Lac* is neuter and rarely masculine. *Frānesiē* is neuter, and once in Virgil feminine.

## Exceptions in AR and UR.

§ 67. *Furfur*, bran; *salār*, a trout; *turtur*, a turtle dove; and *cultur*, a vulture, are masculine.

## Exceptions in US.

1. *Lēpus*, a hare; and Greek nouns in *pus* (πούς), are masculine; as, *tripus*, a tripod; but *lagēpus*, a kind of bird, is feminine.

2. Nouns in *us*, having *ūtis*, or *ūdis*, in the genitive, are feminine; as, *juventus*, youth; *incus*, an anvil.

3. *Pecus*, *-ēdis*, a brute animal, and *tellus*, the earth, are feminine. *Pessimus*, and *Selinus*, names of towns, are also feminine. See § 29.

4. *Grus*, a crane; *mus*, a mouse; and *sus*, a swine, are masculine or feminine.

5. *Rhus*, sumach, is masculine, and rarely feminine.

## RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ 68. 1. The genitive singular of the third declension of *Latin* nouns always ends in *is*, in *Greek* nouns it sometimes ends in *os* and *us*.

## A.

2. Nouns in *a* form their genitive in *ātis*; as, *dī-a-dē'-ma*, *dī-a-dem'-ā-tis*, a crown; *dog'-ma*, *dog'-mā-tis*, an opinion.

## E.

3. Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rē'-le*, *rē'-tis*, a net; *se-dī'-le*, *se-dī'-lis*, a seat.

## I.

4. Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin, and are generally indeclinable; but *hydrom'-ē-ti*, mead, has *hyd-ro-mel'-t-is* in the genitive.

## O.

§ 69. Nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ōnis*; as, *ser'-mo*, *ser-mō'-nis*, speech; *pā'-vo*, *pa-vō'-nis*, a peacock.

REMARK. Patrials in *o* have *ōnis*; as, *Macēdo*, *-ōnis*; but some have *ōnis*; as, *Eburōnes*, etc. See 3d exception to increments in *O*, § 287.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *do* and *go* form their genitive in *tnis*; as, *a-run'-do*, *a-run'-dī-nis*, a reed; *i-mā'-go*, *i-mag'-i-nis*, an image.

But four dissyllables—*cūdo*, *ūdo*, *līgo* and *mango*; and three trisyllables—*comēdo*, *unēdo*, and *harpāgo*, have *ōnis*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns, also, have *tnis*:—*Apollo*; *hōmo*, a man; *nēmo*, nobody; and *turbo*, a whirlwind.

*Citro*, flesh, has, by syncope, *carnis*. *Anio*, the name of a river, has *Aniēnis*; *Nerio*, the wife of Mars, *Neriēnis*; from the old nominatives, *Amien*, and *Neriēnes*.

Exc. 3. Some Greek nouns in *o* form their genitive in *us*, and their other cases singular, in *o*; as, *Dido*, gen. *Didus*, dat. *Dido*, etc.; *Argo*, *-us*; but they are sometimes declined regularly; as, *Dido*, *Didōnis*.

## Y.

Greek nouns in *y* have their genitive in *gos*; as, *misy*, *misjos*, or, by contraction, *mīsgs*.

## C.

§ 70. The only nouns in *c* are *ā'-lec*, *a-lē'-cis*, fish-brine, and *lac*, *lac'-tis*, milk.

## L. N. R.

Nouns in *l*, *n*, and *r*, form their genitive by adding *is*; as, *con'-sul*, *con'-sū-lis*, a consul; *cā'-non*, *can'-ō-nis*, a rule; *hō'-nor*, *ho-nō'-ris*, honor.

So, *An'-i-mal*, *an-i-mā'-lis*, an animal.

*VI'-gil*, *vig'-i-lis*, a watchman.

*TY'-tan*, *TI'-tā-nis*, *Titan*.

*SI'-ren*, *Si-rē'-nis*, a Siren.

*De'-phīn*, *del-phī'-nis*, a dolphin.

*Cal'-car*, *cal-cā'-ris*, a spur.

*Car'-cer*, *car'-cē-ris*, a prison.

*A'-mor*, *a-mō'-ris*, love.

*Gut'-tur*, *gut'-tū-ris*, the throat.

*Mar'-tyr*, *mar'-tī-ris*, a martyr.

## Exceptions in L.

*Fel*, gall, and *mel*, honey, double *l* before *is*, making *fellis* and *mellis*.

## Exceptions in N.

§ 71. 1. Neuters in *en* form their genitive in *tnis*; as, *flū'-men*, *flū'-mī-nis*, a river; *glū'-ten*, *glū'-tī-nis*, glue.

The following masculines, also, form their genitive in *tnis*:—*oscen*, a bird which foreboded by its notes; *ecten*, a comb; *tibicen*, a piper; and *tubicen*, a trumpeter.

2. Some Greek nouns in *on* form their genitive in *ontis*; as, *Laomēdon*, *Laomedontis*. Some in *in* and *gn* add *is* or *os*; as, *Trāchin*, or *Trāchyn*, *Trachinis* or *Trachynos*.

## Exceptions in R.

1. Nouns in *ter* drop *e* in the genitive; as, *pā'-ter*, *pa'-tris*, a father. So also *ūber*, a shower, and names of months in *ber*; as, *Octōber*, *Octōbris*.



But *crâter*, a cup; *sôter*, a savior; and *lâter*, a brick, retain *e* in the genitive.

2. *Far*, a kind of corn, has *farris*; *hêpar*, the liver, *hêpâtis*; *Lar* or *Lars*, *Lartis*; *tier*, a journey, has *itinêris* from the old nominative *itiner*; *Jupiter*, *Jôvis*; and *cor*, the heart, *cordis*.

3. These four in *ur* have *ôris* in the genitive:—*êbur*, ivory; *fêmur*, the thigh; *jêcur*, the liver; *rôbur*, strength.

*Fêmur* has also *fêminis*, and *jêcur*, *jecinôris*, and *jocinôris*.

## AS.

§ 72. Nouns in *as* form their genitive in *âtis*; as, *æ'-tas*, *æ-tâ'-tis*, age; *pi'-ê-tas*, *pi-e-tâ'-tis*, piety.

EXC. 1. *As* has *assis*; *mâs*, a male, *mâris*; *vas*, a surety, *vâdis*; and *vâs*, a vessel, *vâsis*. *Anas*, a duck, has *anâtis*.

EXC. 2. Greek nouns in *as* form their genitive according to their gender; the masculines in *antis*, the feminines in *âtis* or *ados*, and the neuters in *âtis*; as, *adâmas*, -*antis*, adamant; *lampas*, -*âtis*, a lamp; *Pallas*, -*âtis* or -*ados*; *buck-ras*, -*âtis*, a species of herb. *Arcas*, an Arcadian, and *Nômas*, a Numidian, which are of the common gender, form their genitive in *âtis*. *Mêlas*, the name of a river, has *Mêlânis*.

## ES.

§ 73. 1. Nouns in *es* form their genitive by changing *es* into *is*, *îtis*, *êtis*, or *ëtis*; as, *ru'-pes*, *ru'-pis*, a rock; *mi'-les*, *mi'-t-is*, a soldier; *sê'-ges*, *seg'-ê-tis*, growing corn; *qui'-es*, *qui-e'-tis*, rest.

REMARK. A few Greek proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes form their genitive in *ei*, or, by contraction, *i*, after the second declension; as, *Achilles*, *is*, *ei* or *i*: and a few in *æ* after the first declension; as, *Orestes*, *is* or *æ*.

2. Those which make *îtis* are,

|                         |                          |                              |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| Ales, a bird.           | Gurges, a whirlpool.     | Poples, the ham.             |
| Ames, a fowler's staff. | Hospes, a guest.         | Satelles, a lifeguard.       |
| Antistes, a priest.     | Limes, a limit.          | Stipes, the stock of a tree. |
| Cæspes, a turf.         | Merges, a sheaf of corn. | Termes, an olive bough.      |
| Cômes, a companion.     | Miles, a soldier.        | Trâmes, a by-path.           |
| Eques, a horseman.      | Palmes, a vine-branch.   | Vêles, a skirmisher.         |
| Fômes, touchwood.       | Pêdes, a foot-soldier.   |                              |

3. The following have *êtis*:—*abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; *indêges*, a man deified; *interprees*, an interpreter; *paries*, a wall; *sêges*, a corn-field; and *têges*, a mat.

4. The following have *ëtis*:—*Cêbes*; *Cres*, a Cretan; *lêbes*, a caldron; *mag-nes*, a loadstone; *quies* and *requies*, rest; *inquies*, restlessness; and *têpes* (used only in acc. and abl.), tapestry.—Some Greek proper names have either *êtis* or *is* in the genitive; as, *Chrêmea*, -*êtis*, or -*is*. *Dâres*, -*êtis*, or -*is*.

EXC. 1. *Obes*, a hostage, and *præses*, a president, have *idâs*. *Hêres*, an heir, and *merces*, a reward, have *êdis*; *pes*, a foot, and its compounds, have *êdis*.

EXC. 2. *Cêres* has *Cerêris*; *bes*, *bessis*; *præs*, *prædis*; and *æ*, *eris*.

## IS.

§ 74. Nouns in *is* have their genitive the same as the nominative; as, *au'-ris*, *au'-ris*, the ear; *â'-vis*, *â'-vis*, a bird.

Exc. 1. The following have the genitive in *ēris*:—*cīnis*, ashes; *pulvis*, dust; *vōmis* or *vōmer*, a ploughshare. *Cucūmis*, a cucumber, has *ēris* and rarely *is*.

Exc. 2. The following have *īdis*:—*cāpis*, a cup; *cassis*, a helmet; *cuspis*, a point; *lapis*, a stone; and *prōmulsis*, an antepast.

Exc. 3. Two have *inis*:—*pollis*, fine flour, and *sanguis* or *sanguen*, blood.

Exc. 4. Four have *itis*:—*Dis*, Pluto; *lis*, strife; *Quiris*, a Roman; and *Samnis*, a Samnite.

Exc. 5. *Glīs*, a dormouse, has *gliris*.

## GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek nouns in *is*, whose genitive ends in *ios* or *eos*, (*ios* or *uec*), form their genitive in Latin in *is*; as (a.) verbals in *sis*; as, *basis*, *mathēsis*, etc. (b.) compounds of *polis* (*πόλις*); as, *metropōlis*, *Neapōlis*, etc.; and (c.) a few other proper names, as *Charybdīs*, *Lachēsīs*, *Syrītis*, etc. In some nouns of this class the Greek genitive is sometimes found; as, *Nemēsīs*, *Nemesios*.

2. Greek nouns in *is*, whose Greek genitive is in *idos* (*ιδος*), form their Latin genitive in *īdis*; as, *agīs*, *aspis*, *ephēmēris*, *pyrāmīs*, *tyrannīs*, *Ætīs*, *Iris*, *Nerētis*, etc. *Tigris* has both *is* and *īdis*; and in some other words of this class later writers use *is* instead of *īdis*.

3. *Chāris* has *Charītis*; *Salāmīs*, *Salamīnis*, and *Simōis*, *Simoenitis*.

## OS.

§ 75. Nouns in *os* form their genitive in *ōris* or *ōtis*; as, *flos*, *flo-ris*, a flower; *nē-pos*, *ne-pō-tis*, a grandchild.

The following have *ōris*:—

|                                       |                                       |                        |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Flos</i> , a flower.               | <i>Lābos</i> or <i>lābor</i> , labor. | <i>Os</i> , the mouth. |
| <i>Glos</i> , a husband's sister.     | <i>Lēpos</i> or <i>lēpor</i> , wit.   | <i>Ros</i> , dew.      |
| <i>Hōnos</i> or <i>hōnor</i> , honor. | <i>Mos</i> , a custom.                |                        |

*Arbos* or *arbor*, a tree, has *ōris*.

The following have *ōtis*:—

|                           |                                   |                              |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Cos</i> , a whetstone. | <i>Monocēros</i> , a unicorn.     | <i>Nēpos</i> , a grandchild. |
| <i>Dos</i> , a dowry.     | <i>Rhinocēros</i> , a rhinoceros. | <i>Sacerdos</i> , a priest.  |

Exc. 1. *Custos*, a keeper, has *custōdis*; *bos*, an ox, *bōvis*; and *os*, a bone, *ossis*.

Exc. 2. Some Greek nouns in *os* have *ōis* in the genitive; as, *hēros*, a hero; *Minos*; *Tros*, a Trojan; and some Greek neuters in *os* are used in the third declension in the nominative and accusative only; as, *Argos*, *cētos*, *ēpos*, *mētos*.

## US.

§ 76. 1. Nouns in *ūs* form their genitive in *ēris* or *ōris*; as, *gē-nus*, *gen'-ē-ris*, a kind; *tem'-pus*, *tem'-pō-ris*, time.

2. Those which make *ēris* are, *ācus*, (chaff), *fœdus*, *fūnus*, *gēnus*, *glōmus*, *lātus*, *mānus*, *olus*, *ōnus*, *opus*, *pondus*, *rūdus*, *scēlus*, *sidus*, *ulcus*, *vellus*, *viscus* and *vulnus*. In early writers *pignus* has sometimes *pignēris*.

3. Those which make *ōris* are, *corpus*, *dēcus*, *dedēcus*, *factus*, *fēnus*, *frigus*, *lēpus*, *litus*, *nēmus*, *pectus*, *pēcus*, *pēnus*, *pignus*, *stercus*, *tempus*, and *tergus*.

Exc. 1. These three in *ūs* have *ūtis*:—*incūs*, an anvil; *pālūs*, a morass; and *subcūs*, a dove-tail. *Pēcūs*, a brute animal, has *pecūdīs*.

Exc. 2. These five have *ūtis*:—*juventūs*, youth; *sālūs*, safety; *senectūs*, old age; *servitūs*, slavery; *virtūs*, virtue.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *as* have *gris*; as, *crus*, the leg; *jus*, right; *jus*, broth; *mus*, a mouse; *pus*, matter; *rus*, the country; *tus*, frankincense; except *grus*, and *sus*, which have *gruis*, and *suis*; and *rhus*, which has *rhois* or *roris*. *Tellus*, the earth, has *telluris*; and *Ligus* or *Ligur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris*.

Exc. 4. *Fraus*, fraud, and *laus*, praise, have *fraudis*, *laudis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *pūs* (πύς) have *ōdis*; as, *tripus*, *tripōdis*, a tripod; *Edipus*, *-ōdis*; but this is sometimes of the second declension.

Exc. 6. Some Greek names of cities in *us* have *antis*; as, *Amāthus*, *Amathuntis*. So *Trapēzus*, *Opus*, *Pessinus*, and *Selinus*.

Exc. 7. Greek nouns ending in *eus* are all proper names, and have their genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *-eos*. But these nouns are found also in the second declension; as, *Orpheus*, *-ei* or *-i*. Cf. § 64, 5.

## YS.

§ 77. 1. Nouns in *ys* are Greek, and make their genitive in *ŷis* (contracted *gs*), or, as in Greek, *yos* (υς); as,

*Ōtys*, gen. *Ōtŷis* or *Ōtys*; *Tētkys*, *-ŷis* or *ŷos*. So *Atys*, *Ōtŷys*, *Erinnyis*, *Halyis*, *Ōthrys*. A few have *ŷdis*; as, *chlāmŷis*, *chlāmŷdis*.

## S preceded by a consonant.

2. Nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, form their genitive by changing *s* into *is* or *tis*; as, *trabs*, *trā'-bis*, a beam; *hi-ems*, *hi'-ē-mis*, winter; *pars*, *par'-tis*, a part; *frons*, *fron'-tis*, the forehead.

(1.) Those in *bs*, *ms*, and *ps*; as, *scrobs*, *hiems*, *stirps*, change *s* into *is*; except *grŷps*, a griffin, which has *grŷphis*.

REMARK. Compounds in *ceps* from *cāpio* have *ŷis*; as, *princeps*, *principis*, a prince. But *auceps* has *aucepis*.

(2.) Those in *ls*, *ns*, and *rs*, as, *puls*, *gens*, *ars*, change *s* into *tis*.

Exc. 1. The following in *ns* change *s* into *dis*:—*frons*, foliage: *glans*, an acorn; *juglans*, a walnut; *lens*, a nit; and *libripens*, a weigher.

Exc. 2. *Tiryns*, a town of Argolis, has *Tirynthis* in the genitive.

## T.

§ 78. 1. Nouns in *t* form their genitive in *ŷtis*. They are, *cāput*, the head, gen. *cap'-ŷtis*; and its compounds, *occŷput* and *sinctŷput*.

## X.

2. Nouns in *x* form their genitive by resolving *x* into *cs* or *gs*, and inserting *i* before *s*; as, *vox* (*vocs*) *vō'-cis*, the voice; *lex* (*legs*) *lē'-gis*, a law.

(1.) Latin nouns in *ax* have *ācis*; as, *formax*, *formācis*, except *fax*, *fācis*. Most Greek nouns in *ax* have *ācis*; as, *thōrax*, *thorācis*; a few have *ācis*; as, *cōrax*, *corācis*; and Greek names of men in *nax* have *nactis*; as, *Astynax*, *Astynactis*.

(2.) Nouns in *ex* have *icis*; as, *jūdex*, *judicis*; *obex* has *obcis* or *objicis*; and *vibex*, *vibicis*. *Nex*, *prex*, (nom. obs.), *rēsex* and *femsex* have *ēcis*; *ālex*, *narthex*, and *vervex* have *ēcis*, and *fix*, *factis*. *Lex* and *rex* have *ēgis*; *aquilex* and *grex* have *ēgis*; *rēsex* has *remigis*; *sēnex*, *sēnis*; and *supellex*, *supellectilis*.

(3.) Nouns in *ix* have *icis*; as, *cervix*, *cervicis*; and less frequently *icis*; as, *edix*, *calicis*. But *nix* has *nivis*; *strix*, foreign names of men, and gentile nouns in *rix* have *igis*; as, *Bitūrix*, *Dumnōrix*, etc.

(4.) Nouns in *ox* have *ōcis*; as, *vox*, *vōcis*; but *Cappadox* has *Cappadōcis*; *Allobrox*, *Allobrogis*; and *nox*, *noctis*.

(5.) Of nouns in *ux*, *cruz*, *dux*, *trādux*, and *nux* have *ūcis*; *lux* and *Pollux*, *ūcis*.—*Conjux* has *conjūgis*, *frux* (nom. obs.) *frūgis*, and *fauz*, *faucis*.

(6.) *Yx*, a Greek termination, has *ycis*, *ycis*, or *ygis*, *ygis*. *Onyx* and *sardonyx*, in which *x* is equivalent to *chs* (§ 8, 2) have *ychis*; as, *ōnyx*, *onychis*.

### DATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 79. The dative singular ends in *i*; as, *sermo*, dat. *sermōni*.

Anciently it also ended in *e*; as, *morte datus*. Varro in Gellius. So *ære* for *ari*, Cic. and Liv.; and *jūre* for *jūri*. Liv.

### ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

(a.) The accusative singular of all neuter nouns is like the nominative.

(b.) The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, ends in *em*. Yet some Latin nouns in *is*, which do not increase in the genitive, have *im*, and some Greek nouns have *im*, *in*, or *a*.

1. Many proper names in *is*, denoting places, rivers, or gods, have the accusative singular in *im*; as, *Hispiis*, *Tibēris*, *Anūbis*; so also *Albis*, *Athēis*, *Batīs*, *Arar* or *Arāris*, *Biblis*, *Apīs*, *Osiris*, *Syrīs*, etc. These sometimes, also, make the accusative in *in*; as, *Albin*. *Scaldis* has *in* and *em*, and *Liris*, *im*, *in*, and *em*. *Liger* has *Ligērim*.

2. The following also have the accusative in *im* :—

|                                  |                     |                   |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| Amussis, a mason's rule.         | Mephitis, foul air. | Sināpis, mustard. |
| Būris, a plough-tail.            | Pelvis, a basin.    | Sitis, thirst.    |
| Cannābis, hemp.                  | Rāvis, hoarseness.  | Tussis, a cough.  |
| Cucūmis, (gen. -is), a cucumber. | Secūris, an axe.    | Vis, strength.    |

3. These have *im*, and sometimes *em* :—

|                  |                    |                 |                  |
|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| Febris, a fever. | Puppis, the stern. | Restis, a rope. | Turris, a tower. |
|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|

But these have *em*, and rarely *im* :—

|                         |                    |                           |
|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| Bipennis, a battle-axe. | Nāvis, a ship.     | Sementis, a sowing.       |
| Clāvis, a key.          | Præsēpis, a stall. | Strigilis, a flesh-brush. |
| Messis, a harvest.      |                    |                           |

4. *Lens* and *pars* have rarely *lentim* and *partim*; and *crātim* from *crates*, is found in Plautus.

5. Early writers formed the accusative of some other nouns in *im*.

### Accusative of Greek Nouns.

§ 80. The accusative singular of masculine and feminine Greek nouns sometimes retains the Greek terminations *in* and *a*, but often ends, as in Latin, in *em* or *im*.

1. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os*, *impure*, that is, with a consonant going before, have their accusative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas*, *lampādīs* (Greek -δος), *lampāda*; *chlāmys*, *chlāmýdis*, *chlāmýdem*, or *-da*; *Helicon*, *Helicōnis*, *Helicōna*.

REMARK. In like manner these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive—*Trās, Trōis, Trōem*, and *Trōa*, a Trojan; *hērōs*, a hero; and *Mīnos*, a king of Crete.—*Aēr*, the air; *āthēr*, the sky; *delphīn*, a dolphin; and *paean*, a hymn, have usually *a*; as, *aēra, aethēra, delphina, paedna*. *Pan*, a god, has only *a*.

Exc. 1. Masculines in *is*, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, have their accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*; *Pāris, Paridis; Parim*, or *Paridem*.

Exc. 2. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, though they usually follow the rule, have sometimes *im* or *in*; as, *Elīs, Elidis; Elin* or *Elidem*. So *tigris*, gen. *is* or *idis*; acc. *tigrim* or *tigrin*.

II. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns in *is* not increasing, and in *ys*, gen. *yois*, form their accusative by changing the *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *Charybdīs*, (gen. Lat. *-is*, Gr. *σοι*), acc. *Charybdīm* or *-in*; *Hālyx*, *-yis* or *-yois*, *Hālym* or *-ym*. So *rhus*, gen. *rhois*, has *rhum* or *rhum*.

III. Proper names ending in the diphthong *eus*, gen. *ēi* and *ēos*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Thēseus, Thesea; Tydeus, Tydea*. See § 54, 5.

IV. Some Greek proper names in *es*, whose genitive is in *is*, have in Latin, along with the accusative in *em*, the termination *en*, as if of the first declension; as, *Achilles, Achillen; Xerxes, Xerxen; Sophocles, Sophoclen*. Cf. § 45, 1. Some also, which have either *ētis* or *is* in the genitive, have, besides *ētem, ēta*, or *em*, the termination *en*; as, *Chrētes, Thāles*.

#### VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

##### § 81. The vocative is like the nominative.

REMARK. Many Greek nouns, however, particularly proper names, drop *s* of the nominative to form the vocative; as, *Daphnis, Daphni; Tēthys, Tethy; Melampus, Melampi; Orpheus, Orpheu*. Proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes have a vocative in *ē*, after the first declension; as, *Socrātes, Socrāte*. § 45, 1.

#### ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

##### § 82. The ablative singular commonly ends in *e*.

Exc. 1. (a.) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have the ablative in *i*; as, *sedile, sedili; animā, animālī; calcar, calcārī*.

(b.) But names of towns in *e*, and the following neuters in *ar*, have *e* in the ablative; viz. *baccar*, an herb; *far*, corn; *hēpar*, the liver; *jūbar*, a sunbeam; *nectar*, nectar; *par*, a pair; *sal*, salt. *Rēte*, a net, has either *e* or *i*; and *māre*, the sea, has sometimes in poetry *mare* in the ablative.

Exc. 2. (a.) Nouns which have *im* alone, or both *im* and *in* in the accusative, and names of months in *er* or *is*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi; Tibēris, -im, i; December, Decembri; Aprilis, Aprili*.

(b.) But *Betis, cannābis*, and *sināpis*, have *e* or *i*. *Tigris*, the tiger, has *tigrīde*; as a river it has both *Tigrīde* and *Tigrī*.

Exc. 3. (a.) Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris, turre* or *turri*.

(b.) So *Elīs*, acc. *Elidem* and *Elin*, has *Elīde* or *Elī*. But *restis*, and most Greek nouns with *idis* in the genitive, have *e* only; as, *Pāris, -idis, -īde*.

Exc. 4. (a.) Adjectives in *is*, used as nouns, have commonly *i* in the ablative, but sometimes *e*; as, *familiāris*, a friend; *natālīs*, a birthday; *sodālīs*, a companion; *trirēmīs*, a trireme.—Participles in *ns*, used as nouns, have commonly *e* in the ablative, but *contīnens* has *i*.

(b.) When adjectives in *is* become proper names, they always have *e*; as, *Juvenālis*, *Juvenāle*. *Affinis* and *adilis* have generally *e*; as have always *juvenis*, a youth; *rūdis*, a rod; and *volūcris*, a bird.

Exc. 5. (a.) The following, though they have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but most of them have oftener *e* than *i*:—

|          |            |          |         |           |
|----------|------------|----------|---------|-----------|
| Amnis,   | Collis,    | Ignis,   | Pars,   | Supellex, |
| Anguis,  | Convallis, | Imber,   | Postis, | Tridens,  |
| Avis,    | Corbis,    | Mugilis, | Pūgil,  | Unguis,   |
| Billis,  | Finis,     | Orbis,   | Sordes, | Vectis,   |
| Civis,   | Fustis,    | Ovis,    | Sors,   | Vesper.   |
| Classis, |            |          |         |           |

(b.) *Occiput* has only *i*, and *rus* has either *e* or *i*; but *rure* commonly signifies from the country, and *ruri*, in the country. *Mel* has rarely *i*.

(c.) So also names of towns, when denoting the place where any thing is said to be, or to be done, have the ablative in *i*; as, *Carthagini*, at Carthage; so, *Anasiri* and *Lacedamōni*, and, in the most ancient writers, many other nouns occur with this termination in the ablative. *Cunālis* has *i*, and very rarely *e*.

Exc. 6. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* or *yn* in the accusative, have their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*.

#### NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

§ 83. I. The nominative plural of masculines and feminines ends in *es*; as, *sermōnes*, *rūpes*:—but neuters have *a*, and those whose ablative singular ends in *i* only, or in *e* and *i*, have *ia*; as, *caput*, *capūta*; *sedile*, *sedilia*; *rete*, *retia*. *Aplustre* has both *a* and *ia*.

1. Some Greek neuters in *os* have *i* in the nominative plural; as, *mēlos*; nom. plural, *mele*; (in Greek μέλας, by contraction μέλα).

#### GENITIVE PLURAL.

II. The genitive plural commonly ends in *um*; sometimes in *ium*.

1. Nouns which, in the ablative singular, have *i* only, or both *e* and *i*, make the genitive plural in *ium*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*.

2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have *ium*; as, *nūbes*, *nubium*; *hostis*, *hostium*.

Exc. *Ovis*, *juvēnis*, *foris*, *mugilis*, *proles*, *strues*, and *vates*, have *um*; so oftener have *apis*, *strigilis*, and *volūcris*; less frequently *mensis*, *sēdes*, and, in the poets only, *ambages*, *caedes*, *clādes*, *vepres*, and *caelestis*.

3. Monosyllables ending in two consonants have *ium* in the genitive plural; as, *urbs*, *urbium*; *gens*, *gentium*; *arx*, *arcium*.

Exc. *Lynx*, *sphinx*, and *ops* (nom. obsolete) have *um*.

Most monosyllables in *s* and *x* pure have *um*, but the following have *ium*; *dos*, *mas*, *glis*, *lis*, *os* (*ossis*), *fauz*, (nom. obs.) *niz*, *noz*, *strix*, *vis*, generally *fraus* and *mus*; so also *fur* and *ren*, and sometimes *lar*.

4. Nouns of two or more syllables, in *ns* or *rs*, and names of nations in *as*, have commonly *ium*, but sometimes *um*; as, *cliens*, *clientium* or *clientum*; *Arpinas*, *Arpinatium*.

(1.) Other nouns in *as* generally have *um*, but sometimes *ium*; as, *celas*, *cellatium* or *celatium*. *Penātes* and *optimātes* have usually *ium*.

5. The following have *ium*:—*cāro*, *compes*, *linter*, *imber*, *ūter*, *venter*, *Samnis*, *Quiris*, and usually *Insūber*. *Fornax* and *pālus* have sometimes *ium*.

6. Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *gigas*, *gigantum*; *Arabs*, *Arabum*; *Thraz*, *Thracum*;—but a few, used as titles of books, have sometimes *on*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammāton*; *Metamorphōsis*, *-eōn*. The patrician *Maleōn* also is found in Curtius, 4, 18.

REMARK 1. *Bos* has *boum* in the genitive plural.

REM. 2. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; as, *mānes*, *manium*; *celites*, *celitum*; *ilia*, *ilium*; as if from *mānis*, *celēs*, and *ile*. So also names of feasts in *alia*; as, *Saturnalia*, *Saturnālium*; but these have sometimes *orum* after the second declension. *Ales* has sometimes, by epenthesis, *alitiūm*. See § 322, 3.

## DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL.

§ 84. The dative and ablative plural end in *ibus*.

Exc. 1. *Bos* has *bōbus* and *bābus*, by contraction, for *bovibus*; *sus* has *sūbus* by syncope, for *sūbus*. § 322, 5, and 4.

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *ma* have the dative and ablative plural more frequently in *is* than in *ibus*; as, *poēma*, *poemātis*, or *poematibus*.

Exc. 3. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns, that increase in the genitive, in *is*, and, before a vowel, in *sin*; as, *herōis*, *herōidēs*; *herōisi*, or *herōisin*. Ovid. So in Quintilian, *Metamorphōsi*.

## ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

§ 85. The accusative plural ends, like the nominative, in *ēs*, *ā*, *īā*.

Exc. 1. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *is* or *ēs*, instead of *ēs*; as, *partēs*, gen. *partium*, acc. *partēs* or *partēs*.

Exc. 2. Greek masculines and feminines, whose genitive increases in *is* or *as* impure, have their accusative in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādēs*, *lampādas*. So also *hēros*, *herōis*, *herōas*, and some barbarian names of nations have a similar form; as, *Brigantās*, *Allobrogas*.

*Jupīter*, and *vis*, strength, are thus declined:—

| Singular.      | Singular. | Plural.     |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|
| N. Ju'-pī-ter, | N. vis,   | vi'-res,    |
| G. Jō'-vis,    | G. vis,   | vir'-i-um,  |
| D. Jō'-vi,     | D. —      | vir'-i-bus, |
| Ac. Jō'-vem,   | Ac. vim,  | vi'-res,    |
| V. Ju'-pī-ter, | V. vis,   | vi'-res,    |
| Ab. Jō'-ve.    | Ab. vi.   | vir'-i-bus. |

§ 86. The following table exhibits the principal forms of Greek nouns of the third declension :—

|            | <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i>                             | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Acc.</i>                           | <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Abl.</i> |
|------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>S.</i>  | Lampas,     | { -adis,<br>-ados,<br>-adum,            | -adi,       | { -adem,<br>-ada,<br>-ades,<br>-adas, | -as,        | -ade.       |
| <i>Pl.</i> | -ades,      | -adum,                                  | -adibus,    | -ades,<br>-adas,                      | -ades,      | -adibus.    |
| <i>S.</i>  | Hēros,      | -ōis,                                   | -ōi,        | { -oem,<br>-ōa,<br>-ōes,<br>-ōas,     | -os,        | -oe.        |
| <i>Pl.</i> | -oes,       | -ōum,                                   | -oibus,     | -oem,<br>-ōa,<br>-ōes,<br>-ōas,       | -oes,       | -oibus.     |
|            | Chēlys,     | { -ŷis,<br>-ŷos,<br>-is, -los,<br>-eos, | -ŷi,        | { -ym,<br>-yn,<br>-im,<br>-in,        | -y,         | -ŷe or y.   |
|            | Poēsis,     | -is, -los,<br>-eos,                     | -i,         | -im,<br>-in,                          | -i,         | -i.         |
|            | Achilles,   | { -is, -ei, -i,<br>-eos,                | -i,         | -em,<br>-ea, ēn,                      | -es, -ē,    | -e or -i.   |
|            | Orpheus,    | -eos,                                   | -ēi,        | -ea,                                  | -eu,        | See § 54.   |
|            | Aēr,        | -ēris,                                  | -ēri,       | -ēra,                                 | -er,        | -ēre.       |
|            | Didō,       | -ūs,                                    | -ō,         | -ō,                                   | -ō,         | -ō.         |

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 87. Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Those in *us* are masculine; those in *u* are neuter, and, except in the genitive, are indeclinable in the singular.

Nouns of this declension are thus declined :—

| Fructus, <i>fruit</i> . |                | Cornu, <i>a horn</i> . |                |
|-------------------------|----------------|------------------------|----------------|
| <i>Singular.</i>        | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Singular.</i>       | <i>Plural.</i> |
| <i>N.</i> fruc'-tūs,    | fruc'-tūs,     | <i>N.</i> cor'-nū,     | cor'-nu-ā,     |
| <i>G.</i> fruc'-tūs,    | fruc'-tu-ūm,   | <i>G.</i> cor'-nūs,    | cor'-nu-ūm,    |
| <i>D.</i> fruc'-tu-i,   | fruc'-ti-būs,  | <i>D.</i> cor'-nū,     | cor'-ni-būs,   |
| <i>Ac.</i> fruc'-tūm,   | fruc'-tūs,     | <i>Ac.</i> cor'-nū,    | cor'-nu-ā,     |
| <i>V.</i> fruc'-tūs,    | fruc'-tūs,     | <i>V.</i> cor'-nū,     | cor'-nu-ā,     |
| <i>Ab.</i> fruc'-tū.    | fruc'-ti-būs.  | <i>Ab.</i> cor'-nū.    | cor'-ni-būs.   |

In like manner decline

|                                |                           |                                |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Can'-tus, <i>a song.</i>       | Fluc'-tus, <i>a wave.</i> | Se-nā'-tus, <i>the senate.</i> |
| Cur'-tus, <i>a chariot.</i>    | Luc'-tus, <i>grief.</i>   | Gē'-lu, <i>ice.</i> (in sing.) |
| Ex-er'-ci-tus, <i>an army.</i> | Mō'-tus, <i>motion.</i>   | Vē'-ru, <i>a spit.</i>         |

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 88. 1. The following are feminine :—

|                        |                       |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Acus, <i>a needle.</i> | Ficus, <i>a fig.</i>  | Porticus, <i>a gallery.</i> |
| Dōmus, <i>a house.</i> | Mānus, <i>a hand.</i> | Tribus, <i>a tribe.</i>     |



*Obolus*, a distaff, and the plurals *Quinquātrus*, a feast of Minerva, and *Idus*, the Ides, are also feminine. So *noctu*, by night, found only in the ablative singular. *Pēnus*, a store of provisions, when of the fourth declension, is masculine or feminine. *Sēcus*, sex, is neuter; see § 84. *Spēcus*, a den, is masculine and rarely feminine or neuter.

2. Some personal appellatives, and names of trees, are feminine by signification; as,

*Asus*, *nārus*, *socrus*;—*cornus*, *laurus*, and *quercus*. *Myrtus* also is feminine and rarely masculine. See § 29, 1 and 2.

#### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 89. *Dōmus*, a house, is partly of the fourth declension, and partly of the second. It is thus declined:—

| Singular.                               | Plural.                                   |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| N. <i>do'-mūs</i> ,                     | <i>do'-mūs</i> ,                          |
| G. <i>do'-mūs</i> , or <i>do'-mī</i> ,  | <i>dom'-u-ūm</i> , or <i>do-mō'-rūm</i> , |
| D. <i>dom'-u-i</i> , or <i>do'-mō</i> , | <i>dom'-i-būs</i> ,                       |
| Ac. <i>do'-mūm</i> ,                    | <i>do'-mūs</i> , or <i>do'-mōs</i> ,      |
| V. <i>do'-mūs</i> ,                     | <i>do'-mūs</i> ,                          |
| Ab. <i>do'-mō</i> .                     | <i>dom'-i-būs</i> .                       |

(a.) *Domūs*, in the genitive, signifies, of a house; *domī* commonly signifies, at home. The ablative *domu* is found in Plautus, and in ancient inscriptions. In the genitive and accusative plural the forms of the second declension are more used than those of the fourth.

(b.) *Cornus*, a cornel-tree; *figus*, a fig, or a fig-tree; *laurus*, a laurel; and *myrtus*, a myrtle, are sometimes of the second declension. *Pēnus* is of the second, third or fourth declension.

(c.) Some nouns in *u* have also forms in *us* and *um*; as, *cornu*, *cornus*, or *cornum*. Adjectives, compounds of *manus*, are of the first and second declensions.

REMARK 1. Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were formed by contraction, thus:—

| Singular.                         | Plural.                                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| N. <i>fructūs</i> ,               | <i>frutuēs</i> , <i>ūs</i> ,                         |
| G. <i>fructul</i> , <i>-ūs</i> ,  | <i>fructuūm</i> , <i>-ūm</i> ,                       |
| D. <i>fructul</i> , <i>-ū</i> ,   | <i>fructulbūs</i> , <i>-ūbūs</i> , or <i>-ībūs</i> , |
| Ac. <i>fructuē</i> , <i>-ūm</i> , | <i>fructuēs</i> , <i>ūs</i> ,                        |
| V. <i>fructūs</i> ,               | <i>fructuēs</i> , <i>-ūs</i> ,                       |
| Ab. <i>fructuē</i> , <i>-ū</i> .  | <i>fructulbūs</i> , <i>-ūbūs</i> , or <i>-ībūs</i> . |

2. The genitive singular in *is* is sometimes found in ancient authors; as, *anus*, Ter. A genitive in *i*, after the second declension, also occurs; as, *senātus*, *senātī*; *tumultus*, *tumultī*. Sall.

3. The contracted form of the dative in *u* is not often used; yet it sometimes occurs, especially in Cæsar, and in the poets.

4. The contracted form of the genitive plural in *um* rarely occurs.

5. The following nouns have *ūbus* in the dative and ablative plural:—

|                         |                         |                          |                          |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Acus</i> , a needle. | <i>Artus</i> , a joint. | <i>Partus</i> , a birth. | <i>Spēcus</i> , a den.   |
| <i>Arcus</i> , a bow.   | <i>Lacus</i> , a lake.  | <i>Pēcu</i> , a flock.   | <i>Tribus</i> , a tribe. |

*Gēnu*, a knee; *portus*, a harbor; *tonitrus*, thunder; and *vēru*, a spit, have *ibus* or *ūbus*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 90. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *ēs*, and are of the feminine gender.

They are thus declined:—

| Res, a thing.     |                  | Dies, a day.        |                    |
|-------------------|------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| Singular.         | Plural.          | Singular.           | Plural.            |
| N. <i>rēs</i> ,   | <i>rēs</i> ,     | N. <i>dī-ēs</i> ,   | <i>dī-ēs</i> ,     |
| G. <i>rē'-ī</i> , | <i>rē'-rūm</i> , | G. <i>dī-ē'-ī</i> , | <i>dī-ē'-rūm</i> , |
| D. <i>rē'-ī</i> , | <i>rē'-būs</i> , | D. <i>dī-ē'-ī</i> , | <i>dī-ē'-būs</i> , |
| Ac. <i>rēm</i> ,  | <i>rēs</i> ,     | Ac. <i>dī-ēm</i> ,  | <i>dī-ēs</i> ,     |
| V. <i>rēs</i> ,   | <i>rēs</i> ,     | V. <i>dī-ēs</i> ,   | <i>dī-ēs</i> ,     |
| Ab. <i>rē</i> .   | <i>rē'-būs</i> . | Ab. <i>dī-ē</i> .   | <i>dī-ē'-būs</i> . |

REMARK. Nouns of this declension, like those of the fourth, seem to have belonged originally to the third declension.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. *Dies*, a day, is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; *meridies*, mid-day, is masculine only.

NOTE. *Dies* is seldom feminine, in good prose writers, except when it denotes duration of time, or a day fixed and determined.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

2. The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *ē* or in *i*, instead of *ei*; as, gen. *diē* for *diēi*, Virg.; *fide* for *fidei*, Hor.; *acie* for *aciēi*, Cæs.—gen. *plēbi* for *plēbiēi*, Liv.—dat. *fide* for *fidei*, Hor., *perniciē*, Liv., and *perniciū*, Nep., for *perniciēi*. The genitive *rabies* contracted for *rabieis*, after the third declension, is found in Lucretius.

REMARK 1. There are only about eighty nouns of this declension, and of these only two, *res* and *dies*, are complete in the plural. *Acies*, *effigies*, *eluvies*, *facies*, *glacies*, *progenies*, *series*, *species*, *spes*, want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and the rest want the plural altogether.

REM. 2. All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except four—*fides*, faith; *res*, a thing; *spes*, hope; and *plēbes*, the common people;—and all nouns in *ies* are of this declension, except *abies*, *aries*, *paries*, *quies*, and *requies*, which are of the third declension.

## DECLENSION OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

§ 91. When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, both parts are declined; but when one part is a nominative, and the other an oblique case, the nominative only is declined. Of the former kind are *respublica*, a commonwealth, and *jusjurandum*, an oath; of the latter, *mater-familias*, a mistress of a family. Cf. § 43, 2.

| Singular.                       | Plural.                            |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| N. V. <i>res-pūb'-lī-ca</i> ,   | N. V. <i>res-pūb'-lī-caē</i> ,     |
| G. D. <i>re-i-pūb'-lī-caē</i> , | G. <i>re-rūm-pūb'-lī-cā'-rūm</i> , |
| Ac. <i>rem-pūb'-lī-caē</i> ,    | D. Ab. <i>re-bus-pūb'-lī-cis</i> , |
| Ab. <i>re-pūb'-lī-cā</i> .      | Ac. <i>res-pūb'-lī-caē</i> .       |

| <i>Singular.</i>             | <i>Plural.</i>    | <i>Singular.</i>                     |
|------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> jus-ju-ran'-dum,   | ju-ra-ju-ran'-da, | <i>N.</i> ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,       |
| <i>G.</i> ju-ris-ju-ran'-di, |                   | <i>G.</i> ma-tris-fa-mil'-i-as,      |
| <i>D.</i> ju-ri-ju-ran'-do,  |                   | <i>D.</i> ma-tri-fa-mil'-i-as,       |
| <i>Ac.</i> jus-ju-ran'-dum,  | ju-ra-ju-ran'-da, | <i>Ac.</i> ma-trem-fa-mil'-i-as,     |
| <i>V.</i> jus-ju-ran'-dum,   | ju-ra-ju-ran'-da. | <i>V.</i> ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,       |
| <i>Ab.</i> ju-re-ju-ran'-do. |                   | <i>Ab.</i> ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as, etc. |

NOTE. The preceding compounds are divided and pronounced like the simple words of which they are compounded.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 92. Irregular nouns are divided into three classes—*Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

### I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

A noun is *variable*, which, in some of its parts, changes either its gender or declension or both.

Nouns which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*; those which vary in declension are called *heteroclitics*.

#### *Heterogeneous Nouns.*

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as,

*Avernus*, *Dindymus*, *Ismarus*, *Massicus*, *Manikus*, *Pangæus*, *Tartarus*, *Taygetus*; plur. *Averna*, etc.

2. Masculine in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as,

*jocus*, a jest; plur. *joci*, or *joca*;—*locus*, a place; plur. *loci*, passages in books, topics, places; *loca*, places;—*sibilus*, a hissing; plur. *sibila*, rarely *sibili*;—*intubus*, endive; plur. *intubi* or *intuba*.

3. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as,

*carbāsus*, a species of flax; plur. *carbāsa*, very rarely *carbāsi*, sails, etc., made of it;—*Hierosolyma*, -æ, Jerusalem; plur. *Hierosolyma*, -orum.

4. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural; as,

*cælum*, heaven; plur. *cæli*;—*Elysium*; plur. *Elysii*;—*Argos*; plur. *Argi*. So *siser*, neut., plur. *siseres*, masc.

5. Neuter in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural;

as, *frēnum*, a bridle; plur. *frēni* or *frēna*;—*rastrum*, a rake; plur. *rastri*, or, more rarely, *rastra*;—*pugillar*, a writing tablet; plur. *pugillares* or *pugillaria*.

6. Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural; as,

*epulum*, a feast; plur. *epulæ*;—*balneum*, a bath; plur. *balneæ* or *balnea*;—*nundinum*, a market-day; plur. *nundinæ*, a fair.

7. Feminine or neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural;

as, *delicia* or *delicium*, delight; plur. *deliciæ*.

*Heteroclites.*

§ 93. 1. Second or third declension in the singular, and third in the plural; as,

nom. and acc. *jugèrum*, an acre; gen. *jugèri* or *jugèris*; abl. *jugèro* and *jugère*; plur., nom., and acc. *jugèra*; gen. *jugèrum*; abl. *jugèris* and *jugeribus*.

2. Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural; as, *vās*, a vessel; plur. *vāsa*, *ōrum*. *Ancile*, a shield, has sometimes *anciliorum*, in the genitive plural.

NOTE. Variable nouns seem anciently to have been redundant, and to have retained a part of each of their original forms. Thus, *vāsa*, *-ōrum*, properly comes from *vāsum*, *-i*, but the latter, together with the plural of *vās*, *vāsia*, became obsolete.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

§ 94. Nouns are defective either in case or in number.

1. Nouns defective in case may want either one or more cases. Some are altogether indeclinable, and are called *aptotes*.

Such are *pondo*, a pound; most nouns in *i*; as, *gummi*, gum: foreign words; as, *Aaron*, *Jacob*: *sēmis*, a half; *gēt*, a kind of plant; the singular of *mille*, a thousand; words put for nouns; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination; and names of the letters of the alphabet.

A noun which is found in one case only, is called a *Monoptote*; if found in two cases, a *Diptote*; if in three, a *Triptote*; if in four, a *Tetraptote*; and if in five, a *Pentaptote*.

The following list contains most nouns defective in case. Those which occur but once in Latin authors are distinguished by an asterisk:—

\**Abactus*, acc. pl.; a driving away.

*Accitu*, abl.; a calling for.

*Admissu*, abl.; admission.

*Admonitu*, abl.; admonition.

*Æs*, not used in gen. pl.

*Affātu*, abl.; an addressing;—pl. *affātus*, *-ibus*.

*Algu*, nom.; *algum*, acc.; *algu*, abl.; cold.

*Ambāge*, abl.; a going around;—pl. entire.

\**Amissum*, acc.; a loss.

*Aplustre*, nom. and acc.; the flag of a ship;—pl. *aplustria*, or *aplustra*.

*Arbitrātus*, nom.;—um, acc.;—u, abl.; judgment.

*Arcessitu*, abl.; a sending for.

*Astu*, nom., acc.; a city.

*Astus*, nom.; *astu*, abl.; craft;—*astus*, acc. pl.

*Cacoëthes*, nom., acc.; an evil custom;—*cacoëthe*, nom. pl.;—e, and—es, acc. pl.

*Canities*, nom.;—em, acc.;—e, abl.

*Cētos*, acc.; a whale;—*cēte*, nom. and acc. pl.; cetis, dat.

*Chāos*, nom. acc.; *chao*, abl.; chaos.

*Cassem*, acc.; *casse*, abl.; a net;—pl. entire.

*Circumspectus*, nom.;—um;—u; a looking around.

*Coactu*, abl.; constraint.

*Cœllite*, abl.; pl. entire; inhabitants of heaven.

\**Commutātum*, acc.; an alteration.

*Compēdis*, gen.; *compēde*, abl.; a fetter;—pl. *compēdes*, *-ium*, *-ibus*.

*Concessu*, abl.; permission.

*Condiscipulātu*, abl.; companionship at school.

*Crātim*, or—em, acc.;—e, abl.; a hurdle;—pl. *crātes*, *-ium*, *-ibus*.

*Cupressu*, abl.; a cypress.

*Daps*, nom., scarcely used; *dāpis*, gen. etc. pl. *dapes*, *-ibus*; a feast.

\**Dātu*, abl.; a giving.

*Derisus*, *-ui*, dat.;—um, acc.;—u, abl.; ridicule.

Despicatui, *dat.*; *contempt.*  
 Dica, *nom.*; dicam, *acc.*; a *legal process*;  
 —dicas, *acc. pl.*  
 Dicis, *gen.*; as, dicis gratiā, *for form's sake.*  
 Ditiōnis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *power.*  
 Diu, *abl.*; *in the day time.*  
 Divisui, *dat.*; a *dividing.*  
 Ebur, *ivory*; —not used in the plural.  
 \*Eflagitātui, *abl.*; *importunity.*  
 \*Ejectus, *nom.*; a *throwing out.*  
 Epos, *nom.* and *acc.*; an *epic poem.*  
 Ergo, *abl.* (or *adv.*); *for the sake.*  
 Esēdas, *acc. pl.*; *war chariots.*  
 Evectus, *nom.*; a *carrying out.*  
 Fæx, *dregs*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Fāmē, *abl.*; *hunger.*  
 Far, *corn*, not used in the *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Fas, *nom.*; *acc.*; *right.*  
 Fauce, *abl.*; *the throat*; —*pl. entire.*  
 Fax, *a torch*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Fol, *gall*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Feminis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -e, *abl.*; *the thigh*; —*pl. femina*, -ibus.  
 Flicti, *abl.*; a *striking.*  
 Fōris, *nom.* and *gen.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; a *door*; —*pl. entire.*  
 Fors, *nom.*; -tis, *gen.*; -tem, *acc.*; -te, *abl.*; *chance.*  
 \*Frustratui, *abl.*; a *deceiving.*  
 Frux, *fruit*, *nom.* scarcely used; —*frūgis*, *gen.*, etc.  
 Fulgetras, *acc. pl.*; *lightning.*  
 Gausāpe, *nom.*, *acc.*, *abl.*; a *rough garment*; —gausāpi, *acc. pl.*  
 Glos, *nom.*; a *husband's sister.*  
 Grātes, *acc. pl.*; —gratibus, *abl.*; *thanks.*  
 Hebdomādā, *acc.*; a *week.*  
 Hiems, *winter*, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Hippomānes, *nom.* and *acc.*  
 \*Hir, *nom.*; *the palm of the hand.*  
 Hortātui, *abl.*; an *exhorting*; —*pl. hortatibus.*  
 Impētis, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; a *shock*; —*pl. impetibus.*  
 Incitas, *or* -a, *acc. pl.*; as, ad incitas *reductus*, *reduced to a strait.*  
 \*Inconsultu, *abl.*; *without advice.*  
 \*Indultu, *abl.*; *indulgence.*  
 Inferiæ, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*; -is, *abl.*; *sacrifices to the dead.*  
 Infittas, *acc. pl.*; a *denial*; as, ire infittas, *to deny.*  
 Ingratiis, *abl. pl.*, (used *adverbially*); *against one's will.*  
 Injussu, *abl.*; *without command.*  
 Inquires, *nom.*; *restlessness.*  
 Instar, *nom.*, *acc.*; a *likeness.*

Interdiu, *abl.* (or *adv.*); *in the day time.*  
 \*Invitātui, *abl.*; an *invitation.*  
 Irrisui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *derision.*  
 Jōvis, *nom.*, rarely used; —*pl. Joves.*  
 Jugēris, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; an *acre*; —*pl. jugera*, -um, -ibus.  
 Jussu, *abl.*; *command.*  
 Lābes, *a spot*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Lūcu, *abl.*; *day-light.*  
 \*Ludificatui, *dat.*; a *mockery.*  
 Lux, *light*, wants the *gen. pl.*  
 Mandātui, *abl.*; a *command.*  
 Māne, *nom.*, *acc.*; *mane*, or rarely -i, *abl.*; *the morning.*  
 Mel, *honey*, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Mēlos, *nom.*, *acc.*; *melo*, *dat.*; *melody*; —*mēle*, *nom.*, *acc. pl.*  
 Mētus, *fear*, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Missu, *abl.*; a *sending*; —*pl. missus*, -ibus.  
 Monitu, *abl.*; *admonition*; —*pl. monitus.*  
 Nātui, *abl.*; *by birth.*  
 Nauci, *gen.*, with *non*; as, homo non nauci, *a man of no account.*  
 Nēfas, *nom.*, *acc.*; *wickedness.*  
 Nēmo, *nobody*, wants the *voc.* and the *pl.*  
 Nepenthes, *nom.*, *acc.*; an *herb.*  
 Nex, *death*, wants the *voc.*; —*nēces*, *nom.*, *acc. pl.*  
 Nihil, or nihilum, *nom.* and *acc.*; -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*; *nothing.*  
 Noctu, *abl.*; *by night.*  
 Nuptui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *marriage.*  
 Obex, *nom.*; -icem, *acc.*; -ice, or -jice, *abl.*; a *bolt*; —*pl. obices*, -jicibus.  
 Objectum, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; an *interposition*; —*pl. objectus.*  
 Obtentui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; a *pretext.*  
 Opis, *gen.*; ōpem, *acc.*; ōpe, *abl.*; *help*; —*pl. entire.*  
 Oppositu, *abl.*; an *opposing*; —*pl. oppositus*, *acc.*  
 Opus, *nom.*, *acc.*; *need.*  
 Os, *the mouth*, wants the *gen. pl.*  
 Panāces, *nom.*; -is, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; an *herb.*  
 Pax, *peace*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Peccātui, *abl.*; a *fault.*  
 Pecūdis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; —*pl. entire.*  
 Pelāge, *acc. pl.* of *pelāgus*; *the sea.*  
 Permissu, *abl.*; -um, *acc.*; *permission.*  
 Piscātus, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; a *fishing.*

|                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Pix, <i>pitch</i> ; <i>pieces</i> , acc. <i>pl.</i>                                                        | Suppetiæ, <i>nom. pl.</i> ; -as, acc.; <i>sup-ples</i> .                                                                    |
| Pondo, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>in weight</i> . Cf. § 94, 1.                                                       | Tābum, <i>nom.</i> ; -i, <i>gen.</i> ; -o, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>cor-rupt matter</i> .                                           |
| Præci, <i>dat.</i> ; -em, acc.; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>prayer</i> ; - <i>pl.</i> entire.                     | Tempe, <i>nom. acc. voc. pl.</i> ; <i>a vale in Thessaly</i> .                                                              |
| Præter; <i>nom.</i> ; -em, acc.; <i>a peer</i> ; - <i>pl.</i> entire.                                      | Tus wants <i>gen., dat., and abl. pl.</i>                                                                                   |
| Promptu, <i>abl.</i> , <i>readiness</i> .                                                                  | Vēni and -o, <i>dat.</i> ; um, acc.; -o, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>sale</i> .                                                        |
| Pus wants <i>gen. dat. and abl. pl.</i>                                                                    | Veprem, acc.; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>a brier</i> ; - <i>pl.</i> entire.                                                       |
| Relātum, acc.; -u, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>a recital</i> .                                                        | Verbēris, <i>gen.</i> ; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>a stripe</i> ; - <i>pl.</i> verbēra, um, <i>ibus</i> .                         |
| Repetundārum, <i>gen. pl.</i> ; -is, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>money taken by extortion</i> .                       | Vesper, <i>nom.</i> ; -um, acc.; -e, -i, or -o, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>the evening</i> .                                          |
| Rogātū, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>a request</i> .                                                                   | Vespēra, <i>nom.</i> ; -am, acc.; -ā, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>the evening</i> .                                                    |
| Ros, <i>dew</i> , wants <i>gen. pl.</i>                                                                    | Vicis, <i>gen.</i> ; -i, <i>dat.</i> ; -em, acc.; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>change</i> ; - <i>pl.</i> entire, except <i>gen.</i> |
| Rus, <i>the country</i> , wants <i>gen., dat., and abl. pl.</i>                                            | Virus, <i>nom.</i> ; -i, <i>gen.</i> ; -us, acc.; -o, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>poison</i> .                                         |
| Satiās, <i>nom.</i> ; -ātem, acc.; āte, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>satiety</i> .                                     | Vis, <i>gen. and dat.</i> rare; <i>strength</i> ; <i>pl.</i> vires, -ium, etc. See § 85.                                    |
| Sēcus, <i>nom., acc.; sez.</i>                                                                             | Viscus, <i>nom.</i> ; -ēris, <i>gen.</i> ; -ēre, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>an internal organ. pl. viscēra, etc.</i>                  |
| Situs, <i>nom.</i> ; -um, acc.; -u, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>situation</i> ; -situs, <i>nom. and acc. pl.</i>      | Vocātu, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>a calling</i> ; -vocātus, acc. <i>pl.</i>                                                          |
| Situs, <i>nom.</i> ; -ūs, <i>gen.</i> ; -um, acc.; -u, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>rust</i> ; -situs, acc. <i>pl.</i> |                                                                                                                             |
| Sol, <i>the sun</i> , wants <i>gen. pl.</i>                                                                |                                                                                                                             |
| Sordis, <i>gen.</i> ; -em, acc.; -e and -i, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>filth</i> ; - <i>pl.</i> sordes, -ium, etc.   |                                                                                                                             |
| Spontis, <i>gen.</i> ; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>of one's own accord</i> .                                      |                                                                                                                             |
| Subōles, <i>offspring</i> , wants <i>gen. pl.</i>                                                          |                                                                                                                             |

REMARK 1. To these may be added nouns of the fifth declension, which either want the plural, as most of them are abstract nouns, or have in that number only the nominative, accusative, and vocative. *Res* and *dies*, however, have the plural entire. Cf. § 90, R. 1.

REM. 2. For the use of the vocative, also, of many nouns, no classical authority can be found.

§ 95. 2. Nouns defective in number, want either the plural or the singular.

(a) Many nouns want the plural from the nature of the things which they express. Such are generally names of persons, most names of places (except those which have only the plural), the names of herbs, of the arts, most material and abstract nouns; but these may have a plural when used as common nouns, (§ 26, R. 3.), and many others.

REM. In Latin the plural of abstract nouns is often used to denote the existence of the quality, attribute, etc. in different objects, or the repetition of an action; and in poetry such plurals are used for the sake of emphasis or metre. See § 98.

The following list contains many of the nouns which want the plural, and also some, marked *p*, which are included in the above classes, but are sometimes used in the plural.

|                                    |                                  |                                                    |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Aconitum, <i>wolfbane</i> , p.     | Ævum, <i>age, lifetime</i> , p.  | Balaustium, <i>the flower of the pomegranate</i> . |
| Adorea, <i>a military reward</i> . | Album, <i>an album</i> .         | Balsāmun, <i>balsam</i> , p.                       |
| Ær, <i>the air</i> , p.            | Allium, <i>garlic</i> , p.       | Barathrum, <i>a gulf</i> .                         |
| Es, <i>brass, money</i> , p.       | Amicitia, <i>friendship</i> , p. | Callum, <i>hardened skin</i> , p.                  |
| Æther, <i>the sky</i> .            | Argilla, <i>white clay</i> .     | Cālor, <i>heat</i> , p.                            |
|                                    | Avēna, <i>oats</i> , p.          |                                                    |

Carduus, *a thistle*, p.  
 Căro, *fish*, p.  
 Căra, *vase*, p.  
 Cestus, *a girdle*.  
 Cicūta, *hemlock*, p.  
 Cœnum, *mud*.  
 Contagium, *contagion*, p.  
 Crôcum, *saffron*.  
 Crôcus, *saffron*, p.  
 Cruor, *blood*, p.  
 Cūtis, *the skin*, p.  
 Dilucūlum, *the dawn*.  
 Ebur, *ivory*.  
 Electrum, *amber*, p.  
 Far, *corn*, p.  
 Fel, *gall*, p.  
 Fervor, *heat*, p.  
 Fides, *faith*.  
 Fimus, *dung*.  
 Fūga, *flight*, p.  
 Fūmus, *smoke*, p.  
 Fūr, *madness*, p.  
 Gallā, *an oak-apple*, p.  
 Gēlu, *frost*.  
 Glarea, *gravel*.  
 Gloria, *glory*, p.  
 Glastum, *wood*.  
 Glūten, *or*  
 Glutinum, *glue*.  
 Gypsum, *white plaster*.  
 Hēpar, *the liver*.  
 Hesperus, *the evening star*.  
 Hīlum, *a little thing*.  
 Hordeum, *barley*, p.  
 Hūmus, *the ground*.  
 Indōles, *native quality*, p.  
 Ira, *anger*, p.  
 Jūbar, *radiance*.  
 Jus, *justice, law*, p.  
 Justitium, *a law vacation*.

Lac, *milk*.  
 Lætitia, *joy*, p.  
 Languor, *faintness*, p.  
 Lardum, *bacon*, p.  
 Lātex, *liquor*, p.  
 Lētum, *death*.  
 Lignum, *wood*, p.  
 Līnus, *mud*.  
 Līquor, *liquor*, p.  
 Lues, *a plague*.  
 Lūtum, *clay*, p.  
 Lux, *light*, p.  
 Macellum, *the shambles*.  
 Māne, *the morning*.  
 Marmor, *marble*, p.  
 Mel, *honey*, p.  
 Meridies, *mid-day*.  
 Mors, *death*, p.  
 Munditia, *neatness*, p.  
 Mundus, *female ornaments*.  
 Muscus, *moss*.  
 Nectar, *nectar*.  
 Nēmo, *no man*.  
 Nequitia, *wickedness*, p.  
 Nihilum, *nothing, or nil, nothing*.  
 Nitrum, *natron*.  
 Oblivio, *forgetfulness*, p.  
 Omāsum, *bullock's tripe*.  
 Opium, *opium*.  
 Palea, *chaff*, p.  
 Pax, *peace*, p.  
 Pēnum, *and*  
 Pēnus, *provisions*, p.  
 Piper, *pepper*.  
 Pix, *pitch*, p.  
 Pontus, *the sea*.  
 Prolubium, *desire*.  
 Pūbes, *the youth*.  
 Pulvis, *dust*, p.

Purpūra, *purple*, p.  
 Quies, *rest*, p.  
 Ros, *dew*, p.  
 Rūbor, *redness*, p.  
 Sabūlo and  
 Sabūlum, *gravel*.  
 Sal, *salt*.  
 Sālum, *the sea*.  
 Sālus, *safety*.  
 Sanguis, *blood*.  
 Scrupūlum, *a scruple*, p.  
 Senium, *old age*.  
 Siler, *an osier*.  
 Sināpi, *mustard*.  
 Siser, *skirret*, p.  
 Sitis, *thirst*.  
 Sol, *the sun*, p.  
 Sōpor, *sleep*, p.  
 Specimen, *an example*.  
 Spūma, *foam*, p.  
 Sulfur, *sulphur*, p.  
 Supellex, *furniture*.  
 Tābes, *a consumption*.  
 Tābum, *corrupt matter*.  
 Tellus, *the earth*.  
 Terror, *terror*, p.  
 Thymum, *thyme*, p.  
 Tribūlus, *a thistle*, p.  
 Tristitia, *sadness*.  
 Ver, *spring*.  
 Vespēra, *the evening*.  
 Vaternus, *lethargy*.  
 Vigor, *strength*, p.  
 Vinum, *wine*, p.  
 Virus, *poison*.  
 Viscum, *and*  
 Viscus, *birdlime*.  
 Vitrum, *wood*.  
 Vulgus, *the common people*.  
 Zingiber, *ginger*.

§ 96. (b). The names of festivals and games, and several names of places and books, want the singular; as, *Bacchanalia*, a festival of Bacchus; *Olympia*, the Olympic games; *Bucolica*, a book of pastorals; and the following names of places:—

Acroceraunia, Baia,  
 Amyclæ, Ceraunia,  
 Artaxata, Ecbatāna,  
 Athēnæ, Esquilæ,

Fundi,  
 Gabii,  
 Gades,  
 Gemoniæ,

Locri,  
 Parisii,  
 Philippi,  
 Puteoli,

Sūsā,  
 Syracūsæ,  
 Thermopylæ,  
 Veii.

NOTE. Some of those in *i* properly signify the people.

The following list contains most other nouns which want the singular, and also some, marked *s*, which are rarely used in that number:—

Acta, *records*.  
 Adversaria, *a memorandum-book*.  
 Œstiva, *sc. castra, summer quarters*.

Alpes, *the Alps*, *s*.  
 Annāles, *annals*, *s*.  
 Antæ, *door-posts*.  
 Antes, *rows*.  
 Antie, *a foreloc*.

Apinæ, *trifles*.  
 Argutiæ, *witlicisms*, *s*.  
 Arma, *arms*.  
 Artus, *the joints*, *s*.  
 Bellaria, *sweetmeats*.

- Bigæ, a two-horse chariot, s.  
 Bracæ, breeches.  
 Branchiæ, the gills of fishes.  
 Brevis, shallow places.  
 Calendæ, the Calends.  
 Cancelli, balustrades.  
 Cāni, gray hairs.  
 Casses, a hunter's net, s.  
 Caulæ, sheep-folds.  
 Celères, the body-guard of the Roman kings.  
 Cibaria, victuals, s.  
 Clitellæ, a pack-saddle.  
 Codicilli, a writing.  
 Cœlites, the gods, s.  
 Crepundia, a rattle.  
 Cunabula, and  
 Cūnæ, a cradle.  
 Cyclādes, the Cyclades, s.  
 Declmæ, tilths, s.  
 Diræ, the Furies, s.  
 Divitiæ, riches.  
 Druides, the Druids.  
 Dryādes, the Dryads, s.  
 Epulæ, a banquet, s.  
 Eumenides, the Furies, s.  
 Excubiæ, watches.  
 Exsequiæ, funeral rites.  
 Extæ, entrails.  
 Exuviæ, spoils.  
 Facetiæ, pleasantry, s.  
 Feriæ, holidays, s.  
 Fides, a stringed instrument, s.  
 Flabra, blasts.  
 Fraces, the lees of oil.  
 Frāgæ, strawberries, s.  
 Gemini, twins, s.  
 Gēnæ, cheeks, s.  
 Gerræ, trifles.  
 Grātes, thanks.  
 Habēnæ, reins, s.  
 Hibernæ, sc. castra, winter quarters.  
 Hyādes, the Hyades, s.  
 Idus, the sides of a month.  
 Iliæ, the flank.  
 Incunabūla, a cradle.  
 Indutiæ, a tunic.  
 Induviæ, clothes.  
 Ineptiæ, fooleries, s.  
 Inferi, the dead.  
 Inferiæ, sacrifices in honor of the dead.  
 Insecta, insects.  
 Insidiæ, an ambushade, s.  
 Justa, funeral rites.  
 Lactes, small entrails, s.  
 Lamenta, lamentations.  
 Lapidinæ, a stone quarry.  
 Latebræ, a hiding place, s.  
 Laurices, young rabbits.  
 Lautia, presents to foreign ambassadors.  
 Lemūres, hobgoblins.  
 Lendes, nits.  
 Libēri, children, s.  
 Lucēres, a division of the Roman cavalry.  
 Magalia, cottages.  
 Majōres, ancestors.  
 Mānes, the shades, s.  
 Manubiæ, spoils of war.  
 Mapalia, huts, s.  
 Minaciæ, and  
 Minæ, threats.  
 Minōres, posterity.  
 Mœnia, the walls of a city, s.  
 Multitiæ, garments finely wrought.  
 Munia, official duties.  
 Naiādes, water-nymphs, s.  
 Nāres, the nostrils, s.  
 Natāles, parentage.  
 Nātes, the haunches, s.  
 Nōmæ, corroding sores or ulcers, s.  
 Nōnæ, the nones of a month. § 326, 1.  
 Nūgæ, jests, nonsense.  
 Nundinæ, the weekly market.  
 Nuptiæ, a marriage.  
 Oblivia, forgetfulness, s.  
 Officiæ, cheats, s.  
 Optimates, the aristocratic party, s.  
 Palearia, the dewlap, s.  
 Pandectæ, the pandects.  
 Parietinæ, old walls.  
 Partes, a party, s.  
 Pascua, pastures, s.  
 Penātes, household gods, s.  
 Phalæreæ, trappings.  
 Philtra, love potions.  
 Pleiādes, the Pleiads or seven stars, s.  
 Postēri, posterity.  
 Præbia, an amulet.  
 Præcordia, the diaphragm, the entrails.  
 Primitiæ, first fruits.  
 Procēres, nobles, s.  
 Pugillaria, or -aria, writing-tablets, s.  
 Quadrigæ, a team of four horses, s.  
 Quirites, Roman citizens, s.  
 Quisquiliæ, refuse.  
 Reliquiæ, the remains, s.  
 Salebræ, rugged roads, s.  
 Salinæ, salt pits.  
 Scālæ, a ladder, s.  
 Scatebræ, a spring, s.  
 Scōpæ, a broom.  
 Scrūta, old stuff.  
 Sentes, thorns, s.  
 Sponsalia, espousals.  
 Stativa, sc. castra, a stationary camp.  
 Supēri, the gods above.  
 Talaria, winged shoes.  
 Tenebræ, darkness, s.  
 Tesca, rough places.  
 Thermæ, warm baths.  
 Tormina, colic-pains.  
 Transtræ, seats for rowers, s.  
 Tricæ, trifles, toys.  
 Utensilia, utensils.  
 Valvæ, folding doors, s.  
 Vepres, brambles, s.  
 Vergiliæ, the seven stars.  
 Vindicie, a legal claim, s.  
 Virgulta, bushes.

§ 97. The following usually differ in meaning in the different numbers.

- |                            |                                          |                                      |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Edes, -is, a temple.       | Bōnum, a good thing.                     | Castra, a camp.                      |
| Edes, -ium, a house.       | Bōna, property.                          | Comitium, a part of the Roman forum. |
| Aqua, water.               | Carcer, a prison.                        | Co nitia, an assembly for election.  |
| Aquæ, medicinal springs.   | Carceres, the barriers of a race-course. | Copia, plenty.                       |
| Auxilium, aid.             | Castrum, a castle.                       |                                      |
| Auxilia, auxiliary troops. |                                          |                                      |



|                                  |                                               |                                           |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Copiae, <i>troops, forces.</i>   | Impedimentum, <i>a hinderance.</i>            | Natālis, <i>a birthday.</i>               |
| Cupedia, -æ, <i>daintiness.</i>  | Impedimenta, <i>baggage.</i>                  | Natāles, <i>birth, lineage.</i>           |
| Cupediæ, -ārum, <i>and</i>       | Litēra, <i>a letter of the alphabet.</i>      | Opēra, <i>work, labor.</i>                |
| Cupedia, -ōrum, <i>dainties.</i> | Litēra, <i>an epistle.</i>                    | Opēre, <i>workmen.</i>                    |
| Facultas, <i>ability.</i>        | Lūdus, <i>pastime.</i>                        | Opis, <i>gen. power.</i>                  |
| Facultates, <i>property.</i>     | Lūdi, <i>public games.</i>                    | Opes, -um, <i>means, wealth.</i>          |
| Fastus, -ūs, <i>pride.</i>       | Lustrum, <i>a morass.</i>                     | Plāga, <i>a region, tract.</i>            |
| Fastus, -um, <i>and</i>          | Lustra, <i>a haunt or den of wild beasts.</i> | Plāgæ, <i>nets, toils.</i>                |
| Fasti, -ōrum, <i>a calendar.</i> | Mos, <i>custom.</i>                           | Principium, <i>a beginning.</i>           |
| Fortūna, <i>Fortune.</i>         | Mōres, <i>manners.</i>                        | Principia, <i>the general's quarters.</i> |
| Fortūnæ, <i>wealth.</i>          | Nāris, <i>a nostril.</i>                      | Rostrum, <i>a beak, prow.</i>             |
| Furfur, <i>bran.</i>             | Nāres, <i>the nose.</i>                       | Rostra, <i>the Rostra.</i>                |
| Furfures, <i>dandruff.</i>       |                                               | Sal, <i>salt.</i>                         |
| Gratia, <i>favor.</i>            |                                               | Sāles, <i>witticisms.</i>                 |
| Gratiæ, <i>thanks.</i>           |                                               |                                           |

§ 98. The following plurals, with a few others, are sometimes used in poetry, especially in the nominative and accusative, instead of the singular, for the sake of emphasis or metre.

|                              |                                              |                                             |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Æquora, <i>the sea.</i>      | Hymenæi, <i>marriage.</i>                    | Pectōra, <i>the breast.</i>                 |
| Alta, <i>the sea.</i>        | Ignes, <i>love.</i>                          | Reditūs, <i>a return.</i>                   |
| Anīmi, <i>courage.</i>       | Inguina, <i>the groin.</i>                   | Regna, <i>a kingdom.</i>                    |
| Auræ, <i>the air.</i>        | Ire, <i>anger.</i>                           | Rictūs, <i>the jaws.</i>                    |
| Carinæ, <i>a keel.</i>       | Jejunia, <i>fasting.</i>                     | Robōra, <i>strength.</i>                    |
| Cervices, <i>the neck.</i>   | Jūbæ, <i>a mane.</i>                         | Silentia, <i>silence.</i>                   |
| Colla, <i>the neck.</i>      | Limina, <i>a threshold.</i>                  | Sinūs, <i>the bosom of a Roman garment.</i> |
| Cōmæ, <i>the hair.</i>       | Litōra, <i>a shore.</i>                      | Tædæ, <i>a torch.</i>                       |
| Connubia, <i>marriage.</i>   | Mensæ, <i>a service or course of dishes.</i> | Tempōra, <i>time.</i>                       |
| Corda, <i>the heart.</i>     | Nenīæ, <i>a funeral dirge.</i>               | Terga, <i>the back.</i>                     |
| Corpōra, <i>a body.</i>      | Numina, <i>the divinity.</i>                 | Thalāmi, <i>marriage or marriage-bed.</i>   |
| Crepuscūla, <i>twilight.</i> | Odia, <i>hatred.</i>                         | Tōri, <i>a bed, a couch.</i>                |
| Currūs, <i>a chariot.</i>    | Ora, <i>the mouth, the countenance.</i>      | Tūra, <i>frankincense.</i>                  |
| Exsilia, <i>banishment.</i>  | Oræ, <i>confines.</i>                        | Viæ, <i>a journey.</i>                      |
| Frigōra, <i>cold.</i>        | Ortus, <i>a rising, the east.</i>            | Vultus, <i>the countenance.</i>             |
| Gaudia, <i>joy.</i>          | Otia, <i>ease, leisure.</i>                  |                                             |
| Gramina, <i>grass.</i>       |                                              |                                             |
| Gutturā, <i>the throat.</i>  |                                              |                                             |

### III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

§ 99. Nouns are redundant either in termination, in declension, in gender, or in two or more of these respects.

1. In termination: (a.) of the nominative; as, *arbor*, and *arbores*, a tree: (b.) of the oblique cases; as, *tigris*; gen. *tigris*, or *-idis*; a tiger.
2. In declension; as, *laurus*; gen. *-i*, or *-ūs*; a laurel.
3. In gender; as, *vulgus*, masc. or neut.; the common people.
4. In termination and declension; as, *senecta*, *-æ*, and *senectus*, *-ūtis*; old age.
5. In termination and gender; as *pileus*, masc., and *pileum*, neut.; a hat.
6. In declension and gender; as *pénus*, *-i* or *ūs*, masc. or fem., and *pénus*, *-ōris*, neut.; a store of provisions. *Spēcus*, *-ūs* or *-i*, masc. fem. or neut.; a cave.
7. In termination, declension, and gender; as, *menda*, *-æ*, fem. and *mendus*, *-i*, neut.; a fault.

The following list contains most *Redundant Nouns* of the above classes:—

- Acinus, -um, and -a, a *berry*.  
 Adagium, and -io, a *proverb*.  
 Admonitio, -um, and -us, *us*, a *remin-  
ding*.  
 Æthra, and æther, the *clear sky*.  
 Affectio, and -us, *us*, *affection*.  
 Agamemno, and -on, Agamemnon.  
 Alabaster, tri, and pl. -tra, *orum*, an  
*alabaster box*.  
 Alimonia, and -um, *aliment*.  
 Alluvio, and -es, a *flood*.  
 Alvearium, and -ære, a *bee-hive*.  
 Amariscus, and -um, *marjoram*.  
 Amygdala, and -um, an *almond*.  
 Anfractum, and -us, *us*, a *winding*.  
 Angiportum, and -us, *us*, a *narrow lane  
or alley*.  
 Antidôtus, and -um, an *antidote*.  
 Aranea, and -us, i, a *spider*.  
 Arar, and Arâris, the *river Arar*.  
 Arbor, and -os, a *tree*.  
 Architectus, and -on, an *architect*.  
 Arcus, -us, and i, a *bow*.  
 Attagæna, and -gen, a *moor-hen*.  
 Avaritia, and -ies, *avarice*.  
 Augmentum, and -men, an *increase*.  
 Baccar, and -âris, a *kind of herb*.  
 Baculus, and -um, a *staff*.  
 Balteus, and -um, i, a *belt*.  
 Barbaria, and -ies, *barbarism*.  
 Barbitus, and -on, a *harp*.  
 Batillus, and -um, a *fire-shovel*.  
 Blanditia, and -ies, *flattery*.  
 Buccina, and -um, a *trumpet*.  
 Bura, and -is, a *plough-tail*.  
 Buxus, and -um, the *box-tree*.  
 Cæpa, and cæpe, an *onion*.  
 Calamister, tri, and -trum, a *crisping-  
pin*.  
 Callus, and -um, *hardened skin*.  
 Cancer, cri, or êris, a *crab*.  
 Canitia, and -ies, *hoariness*.  
 Capus, and capô, a *capon*.  
 Carrus, and -um, a *kind of waggon*.  
 Cassida, and -cassis, a *helmet*.  
 Catinus, and -um, a *bowl, dish*.  
 Chirographus, and -um, a *hand-writing*.  
 Cingula, -us, and -um, a *girdle*.  
 Clipeus, and -um, a *shield*.  
 Cochlearium, -ar, and -ære, a *spoon*.  
 Colluvio, and -ies, *filth*.  
 Commentarius, and -um, a *journal*.  
 Compages, and -go, a *joining*.  
 Conâtum, and -us, *us*, an *attempt*.  
 Concinnitas, and -tudo, *neatness*.  
 Consortium, and -io, *partnership*.  
 Contagium, -io, and -es, *contact*.  
 Cornum, -us, i, or *us*, a *cornel tree*.  
 Costos, i, and -um, a *kind of shrub*.  
 Cratæra, and crater, a *bowl*.  
 Crocus, and -um, *saffron*.  
 Crystallus, and -um, *crystal*.  
 Cubitus, and -um, the *elbow*.  
 Cupiditas, and -pido, *desire*.  
 Cupressus, i, or *us*, a *cypress-tree*.  
 Delicia, and -um, *delight*.  
 Delphinus, and delphin, a *dolphin*.  
 Dictamnus, and -um,  *dittany*.  
 Diluvium, -o, and -ies, a *deluge*.  
 Dômus, i, or *us*, a *house*.  
 Dorsus, and -um, the *back*.  
 Duritia, and -ies, *hardness*.  
 Effigia, and -ies, an *image*.  
 Elegia, and -on, i, an *elegy*.  
 Eléphantus, and -phas, an *elephant*.  
 Epitôma, and -e, an *abridgment*.  
 Essêda, and -um, a *chariot*.  
 Evander, dri, and -drus, *Evander*.  
 Eventum, and -us, *us*, an *event*.  
 Exemplar, and -ære, a *pattern*.  
 Ficus, i, or *us*, a *fig-tree*.  
 Fimur, and -um, *dung*.  
 Frêtum, and -us, *us*, a *strait*.  
 Fulgetra, and -um, *lightning*.  
 Galêrus, and -um, a *hat, cap*.  
 Ganea, and -um, an *eating-house*.  
 Gausâpa, -es, -e, and -um, *frizze*.  
 Gibba, -us, and -er, *eri*, a *hump*.  
 Glutinum, and -ten, *glue*.  
 Gobius, and -io, a *gudgeon*.  
 Grammatica, and -e, *grammar*.  
 Grus, gruis, and gruis, *is*, a *crane*.  
 Hebdomâda, and -mas, a *week*.  
 Hellebôrus, and -um, *hellebore*.  
 Hônor, and hônos, *honor*.  
 Hyssôpus, and -um, *hyssop*.  
 Ilios, -um, and -on, *Troy*.  
 Incestum, and -us, *us*, *incest*.  
 Intûbus, and -um, *endive*.  
 Jugûlus, and -um, the *throat*.  
 Juventa, -us, *utis*, and -as, *youth*.  
 Lâbor, and lâbos, *labor*.  
 Lacerta, and -us, a *lizard*.  
 Laurus, i, or *us*, a *laurel*.  
 Lêpor, and lêpos, *wit*.  
 Ligur, and -us, *utis*, a *Ligurian*.  
 Lupinus, and -um, a *lupine*.  
 Luxuria, and -ies, *luxury*.  
 Mæander, -dros, and -dros, *Mæander*.  
 Margarita, and -um, a *pearl*.  
 Materia, and -ies, *materials*.  
 Medimnus, and -um, a *measure*.  
 Menda, and -um, a *fault*.  
 Modius, and -um, a *measure*.  
 Mollitia, and -ies, *softness*.  
 Momentum, and -men, *influence*.  
 Mûgil, and -ilis, a *mullet*.  
 Mulciber, êri, or êris, *Vulcan*.

|                                                                |                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Mulctra, and -um, a milk-pail.                                 | Rictum, and -us, <i>us</i> , the open mouth.                |
| Munditia, and -ies, neatness.                                  | Sævitia, -ūdo and -ies, ferocity.                           |
| Muria, and -ies, brine or pickle.                              | Sīgus, and -um, a military cloak.                           |
| Myrtus, <i>i</i> or <i>us</i> , a myrtle.                      | Sanguis, and sanguen, blood.                                |
| Nardus, and -um, nard.                                         | Satrāpes, and satraps, a satrap.                            |
| Nāsus, and -um, the nose.                                      | Scabritia, and -ies, roughness.                             |
| Necessitas, and -ūdo, necessity.                               | Scorpius, -os, and -io, a scorpion.                         |
| Nequitia, and -ies, worthlessness.                             | Segmentum, and -men, a piece.                               |
| Notitia, and -ies, knowledge.                                  | Segnitia, and -ies, sloth.                                  |
| Oblivium, and -io, forgetfulness.                              | Senecta, and -us, old age.                                  |
| Obsidium, and -io, a siege.                                    | Sequester, <i>tri</i> , or <i>tris</i> , a trustee.         |
| Œdipus, <i>i</i> , or <i>ŏdis</i> , Œdipus.                    | Sesāma, and -um, sesame.                                    |
| Ostrea, and -um, an oyster.                                    | Sibilus, and -a, ōrum, a hissing.                           |
| Palātus, and -um, the palate.                                  | Sināpi, and -is, mustard.                                   |
| Palumba, -us, and -es, a pigeon.                               | Sinus, and -um, a goblet.                                   |
| Papȳrus, and -um, papyrus.                                     | Spārus, and -a, ōrum, a spear.                              |
| Paupertas, and -ies, poverty.                                  | Spurcitia, and -ies, filthiness.                            |
| Pāvus, and pāvo, a peacock.                                    | Stramentum, and -men, straw.                                |
| Pēnus, <i>i</i> , -ōris, or <i>us</i> , and pēnum, provisions. | Suffimentum, and -men, fumigation.                          |
| Peplus, and -um, a veil.                                       | Suggestus, and -um, a pulpit, stage.                        |
| Perseus, <i>ei</i> , or <i>eos</i> , Perseus.                  | Suppārus, and -um, a linen garment.                         |
| Pileus, and -um, a hat.                                        | Supplicium, -icamentum, and -icatio, a public supplication. |
| Pinus, <i>i</i> , or <i>us</i> , a pine-tree.                  | Tapētum, -ēte, and -es, tapestry.                           |
| Pistrina, and -um, a bake-house.                               | Tenēritas, and -tūdo, softness.                             |
| Planitia, and -ies, a plain.                                   | Tergum, and -us, ōris, the back.                            |
| Plāto, and Plāton, Plato.                                      | Tiāra, and -as, a turban.                                   |
| Plebs, and plēbes, <i>ei</i> , the common people.              | Tignus, and -um, a beam, timber.                            |
| Porrus, and -um, a leek.                                       | Tigris, <i>is</i> , or <i>ids</i> , a tiger.                |
| Postulātia, and -io, a request.                                | Titānus, and Titan, Tītan.                                  |
| Præsēpia, -ium, -es, or -is, and -e, a stable.                 | Tonitruum, and -trus, <i>us</i> , thunder.                  |
| Pretextum, and -us, <i>us</i> , a pretext.                     | Torāle, and -al, a bed-covering.                            |
| Prosapia, and -ies, lineage.                                   | Trābes, and trabs, a beam.                                  |
| Rāpa, and -um, a turnip.                                       | Tribūla, and -um, a threshing sledge.                       |
| Requies, <i>ētis</i> or <i>et</i> , rest.                      | Vespēra, -per, <i>eri</i> and <i>ēris</i> , the evening.    |
| Rēte, and rētis, a net.                                        | Vinacēus, and -a, ōrum, a grape-stone.                      |
| Reticūlus, and -um, a small net.                               | Viscus, and -um, the mistletoe.                             |
|                                                                | Vulgus, masc. and neut., the common people.                 |

REMARK 1. To these may be added some other verbals in *us* and *io*, and Greek nouns in *o* and *on*; as, *Dio* and *Dion*; also some Greek nouns in *es* and *e*, which have Latin forms in *a*; as, *Atrides* and *Atrida*. See § 45.

REM. 2. Some proper names of places also are redundant in number; as, *Argos* and *Argi*; *Fidēna* and *Fidēnæ*; *Thēbe* and *Thēbæ*.

NOTE. The different forms of most words in the above list are not equally common, and some are rarely used, or only in particular cases.

## DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

§ 100. Nouns are derived from other nouns, from adjectives, and from verbs.

### I. FROM NOUNS.

From nouns are derived the following classes :—

1. A *patronymic* is the name of a person, derived from that of his father or other ancestor, or of the founder of his nation.

NOTE 1. Patronymics are properly Greek nouns, and have been borrowed from that language by the Latin poets.

(a.) Masculine patronymics end in *ides*, *ides*, *ādes*, and *īdes*.

(1.) Nouns in *us* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a short syllable, form their patronymics in *ides*; as, *Priānus*, *Priāmidēs*; *Agamemnōn*, gen. *ōnis*, *Agamemnōnidēs*.

— (2.) Nouns in *ūs* and *ies* form their patronymics in *ides*; as, *A-trēs*, *Atrides*; *Herōcles* (i. e. Hercules,) *Heractides*.

REM. 1. *Ēnides*, in Virg. A. 9, 658, is formed in like manner, as if from *Ēnēs*, instead of *Ēnās*.

(3.) Nouns in *ās* and *ēs* of the first declension form their patronymics in *ādes*, as *Ēnēās*, *Ēnēādes*; *Hippōtēs*, *Hippōtādes*.

(4.) Nouns in *ius* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a long vowel, form their patronymics in *īades*; as, *Thestius*, *Thestīādes*; *Amphitryō* (gen. *ōnis*), *Amphitryōnīādes*.

REM. 2. A few nouns also of the first declension have patronymics in *īades*; as, *Anchises*, *Anchisiādes*.

(b.) Feminine patronymics end in *is*, *ēs*, and *ias*, and correspond in termination to the masculines, viz. *is* to *ides*, *ēs* to *ides*, and *ias* to *īades*; as, *Tyndārus*, masc. *Tyndarīdes*, fem. *Tyndāris*; *Nereus*, masc. *Nereīdes*, fem. *Nerēs*; *Thestius*, masc. *Thestīādes*, fem. *Thestias*.

REM. 3. A few feminines are found in *ine*, or *īone*; as, *Nerine*, *Acrisiōne*, from *Nereus* and *Acrisius*.

NOTE 2. Patronymics in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension; those in *is* and *as*, of the third.

2. A *patrial* or *gentile* noun is derived from the name of a country; and denotes an inhabitant of that country; as,

*Trōas*, a Trojan man; *Trōas*, a Trojan woman; *Macēdo*, a Macedonian; *Samnis*, a Samnite; from *Trōja*, *Macedonia*, and *Samnium*.

NOTE 3. Most patrials are properly adjectives, relating to a noun understood; as, *hōmo*, *civis*, etc. See § 128, 6.

3. A *diminutive* signifies a small thing of the kind denoted by the primitive; as, *liber*, a book; *libellus*, a little book.

Diminutives generally end in *ulus*, *ūla*, *ulum*, or *cūlus*, *cūla*, *cūlum*, according as the primitive is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

A. 1. If the primitive is of the first or second declension, or its root ends in *c*, *g*, *d*, or *t* after a vowel, the diminutive is formed by annexing *ulus*, *a*, *um* to the root; as, *arūla*, *servūlus*, *puerūlus*, *scutūlum*, *cornicūla*, *regūlus*, *capitūlum*, *mercedūla*; from *ara*, *servus*, *puer*, *scūtum*, *cornix*, (*-icis*), *rex*, (*rēgis*), *cāput*, (*-itū*), *merces*, (*-ēdis*.)

2. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *e* or *i*, instead of *ulus*, *a*, *um*, add *olus*, *a*, *um*; as, *filīolus*, *gloriōla*, *horreōlum*; from *filius*, *gloria*, *horreum*.

3. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *l*, *n*, or *r*, form diminutives by contraction in *ellus*, *a*, *um*, and some in *illus*, *a*, *um*; as, *ocellus*, *asellus*, *libellus*, *lucellum*; from *oculus*, *asinus*, *liber*, *lucrum*; and *sigillum*, *tigillum*, from *signum*, *tignum*.

B. 1. If the primitive is of the third, fourth, or fifth declension, the diminutive is formed in *cūlus*, (or *icūlus*), *a*, *um*.

2. Primitives of the third declension whose nominative ends in *r*, or in *os* or *us* from roots ending in *r*, annex *cūlus* to the nominative; as, *fratercūlus*, *soror-*

*cūla, oscūlum, corpuscūlum*; from *frāter, sōror, ōs, (ōris), corpus, (-ōris)*.—So also primitives in *es* and *is*, but these drop the *s* of the nominative; as, *ignicūlus, nubecūla, diecūla*; from *ignis, nubes, dies*.

3. Primitives of other terminations of the third declension, and those of the fourth, add *icūlus* to the root; as, *ponticūlus, coticūla, ossicūlum, versicūlus, cornicūlum*; from *pons, cos, ōs, (ossis), versus, cornu*.

4. Primitives in *o, (ois or ōis)*, in adding *cūlus, a, um*, change the final vowel of the root (*i* or *o*) into *u*; as, *homuncūlus, sermuncūlus*; from *hōmo* and *sermo*; and a few primitives of other terminations form similar diminutives; as, *avuncūlus, domuncūla*; from *āvus* and *dōmus*.

C. 1. A few diminutives end in *uleus*, as, *equuleus, aculeus*; from *ēquus* and *ācus*; and a few also in *io*; as, *homuncio, senecio*, from *hōmo* and *sēnex*.

2. Diminutives are sometimes formed from other diminutives; as, *asellūlus*, from *asellus*; sometimes two or more diminutives with different terminations are formed from the same primitive, as, *homuncūlus, homullus*, and *homuncio*; from *hōmo*; and sometimes the primitive undergoes euphonic changes; as *rumuscūlus*, from *rūmor*.

REM. Some diminutives differ in gender from their primitives; as *ranuncūlus, scamillus*, from *rāna* and *scammum*.

4. (a.) An amplificative is a personal appellation denoting an excess of that which is expressed by its primitive; as,

*Capito*, one who has a large head: so *nāso, labeo, bucco, fronto, mento*, one who has a large nose, lips, or cheeks, a broad forehead or long chin; from *caput, nāsus, labia, bucca, frons*, and *mentum*.

(b.) A few personal appellatives in *io* denote the trade or profession to which a person belongs; as, *luchio*, an actor; *pellio*, a furrier; from *lūchus*, and *pellis*.

5. The termination *ium* added to the root of a noun, indicates the office or condition, and often, derivatively, an assemblage of the individuals denoted by the primitive; as, *collegium*, collegueship, and thence an assembly of colleagues; *servitium*, servitude, and collectively the servants; so *sacerdotium*, and *ministerium*; from *collēga, servus, sacerdos*, and *minister*.

6. The termination *imonium* is added to the root of a few nouns, denoting something derived from the primitives, or imparting to it its peculiar character; as, *testimonium*, testimony; so *vadimonium, patrimonium, matrimonium*; from *testis, vās (vādīs), pater*, and *māter*.

7. The termination *etum*, added to the root of names of plants, denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, *quercetum, laurētum, olivētum*, from *quercus, laurus*, and *oliva*.

So, also, *asculetum, dumētum, myrtetum*, and by analogy *saxetum*. But some drop *e*; as, *carcetum, salictum, virgultum*, and *arbutum*.

8. The termination *arium*, added to the root of a noun, denotes a receptacle of the things signified by the primitive; as, *aviarium*, an aviary; *plantarium*, a nursery; from *avis*, a bird, and *planta*, a plant.

9. The termination *ile*, added to the root of names of animals, marks the place where they are kept; as, *bovile*, a stall for oxen; so *caprile, ovile*; from *bōs*, an ox, *cāper*, a goat, and *ōvis*, a sheep.

NOTE 1. This class and the preceding are properly neuter adjectives.

NOTE 2. Abstract nouns are derived either from adjectives or from verbs. See § 26, 5.

## II. FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 101. 1. Abstract nouns are formed by adding the termination *itas, itudo, ia, iūa* or *ities, edo*, and *imōnia* to the root of the primitive.

2. Abstracts in *itas*, (equivalent to the English *ty* or *ity*), are formed from adjectives of each declension ; as, *cupiditas*, *teneritas*, *celeritas*, *crudelitas*, *felicitas*; from *cupidus*, *tener*, *celer*, *crudelis*, and *felix*.

(1.) When the root ends in *i*, the abstract is formed in *itas*; as, *pietas*, from *pius*; and when it ends in *t*, *as* only is added; as, *honestas* from *honestus*.

(2.) In a few abstracts *i* before *tas* is dropped; as, *libertas*, *juventas*, from *liber*, *juvenis*. In *facultas* and *difficultas*, from *facilis*, *difficilis*, there is a change also in the root-vowel from *i* to *u*.

(3.) A few abstracts are formed in *itus* or *tus*, instead of *itas*; as, *servitus*, *juventus*, from *servus* and *juvenis*. See § 76, Exc. 2.

3. Abstracts in *itudo* are formed from adjectives in *us*, and some from adjectives of the third declension of two or three terminations; as, *magnitudo*, *altitudo*, *fortitudo*, *acritudo*, from *magnus*, *altus*, *fortis*, *acer*. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus*, generally form their abstracts by adding *udo* instead of *itudo* to their root; as, *consuetudo*, from *consuetus*.

4. Abstracts in *ia* (equivalent to the English *ce* or *cy*), are for the most part formed from adjectives of one termination; as, *clementia*, *constantia*, *impudentia*, from *clemens*, *constans*, *impudens*. But some adjectives in *us* and *er*, including verbals in *cundus*, likewise form their verbals in *ia*; as, *misericordia*, *angustia*, *facundia*, from *miser*, *angustus*, *facundus*.

5. Abstracts in *itia* and *ities* are formed from adjectives in *us* and *is*; as, *justitia*, *tristitia*, *duritia*, and *durities*, *segnitia* and *segnities*, from *justus*, *tristis*, *durus*, and *segnis*.

6. A few abstracts are formed in *edo*, and a few in *imonia*; and sometimes two or more abstracts of different terminations are formed from the same adjective; as, *acritas*, *acritudo*, *acredo*, and *acrimonia*, from *acer*. In such case those in *itudo* and *imonia* seem to be more intensive in signification than those in *itas*.

REMARK. Adjectives, as distinguished from the abstracts which are formed from them, are called *concretes*.

### III. FROM VERBS.

#### § 102. Nouns derived from verbs are called *verbal* nouns.

The following are the principal classes:—

1. Abstract nouns expressing the action or condition denoted by a verb, especially by a neuter verb, are formed by annexing *or* to their first root; as, *amor*, love; *favor*, favor; *mæror*, grief; *splendor*, brightness; from *amo*, *faveo*, *mæreo*, and *splendeo*.

2. (a.) Abstracts are also formed from many verbs by annexing *ium* to the first or to the third root; as, *colloquium*, a conference; *gaudium*, joy; *ezordium*, a beginning; *exitium*, destruction; *solatium*, consolation; from *colloquor*, *gaudeo*, *ezordior*, *ezeo* and *solor*.

3. Some verbal abstracts are formed by annexing *ela*, *imonia*, or *imonium*, to the first root of the verb; as, *querela* and *querimonia*, a complaint; *suadela*, persuasion; from *queror* and *suadeo*.

4. (a.) The terminations *men* and *mentum*, added to the first root of the verb, generally with a connecting vowel, denote the thing to which the action belongs, both actively and passively, or a means for the performance of the action; as, *fulmen* from *fulgeo*, *flumen* from *fluo*, *agmen* from *ago*, *solâmen* from *solor*, *documentum* from *dóceo*, *blandimentum* from *blandior*.

(b.) The final consonant of the root is often dropped, and the preceding and connecting vowels contracted into one syllable; as, *âgo*, (*âgmen*), *âgmen*; *fôveo*, (*fôvimentum*), *fôvimentum*.

(c.) Some words of this class have no primitive verb in use ; as, *atramentum*, ink ; but, in this case, the connecting vowel seems to imply its reference to such a verb as *atrāre*, to blacken.

5. (a.) The terminations *ilum*, *bilum*, *cūlum* ; *brum*, *crum*, *trum*, annexed to the first root of a verb, denote an instrument for performing the act expressed by the verb, or a place for its performance ; as, *cingulum*, *operculum*, *venabulum*, *ventilabrum*, *fulcrum*, *spectrum*, from *cingo*, *opéro*, *venor*, *ventilo*, *fulcio*, *spécio*.

(b.) Sometimes *cūlum* is contracted into *clum* ; as, *vinculum* for *vincūlum*. Sometimes, also, *s* is inserted before *trum* ; as, *rostrum*, from *rōdo*, and a connecting vowel is placed before this and some of the other terminations ; as, *arātrum*, *stabulum*, *cubiculum*, from *aro*, *sto*, and *cūdo*.

(c.) Some words of this kind are formed from nouns ; as, *acetabulum*, a vinegar cruet ; *turibulum*, a censer ; from *acētum* and *tus*.

6. (a.) Nouns formed by adding *or* and *rix* to the third root of the verb, denote respectively the male and female agent of the action expressed by the verb ; as, *adjutor*, *adjutrix*, an assistant ; *fautor*, *fautrix*, a favorer ; *victor*, *victrix*, a conqueror ; from *adjūvo* (*adjūt-*), *fāveo* (*faut-*), *vinco* (*vict-*). They are often likewise used as adjectives. The feminine form is less common than the masculine, and when the third root of the verb ends in *s*, the feminine is sometimes formed in *trix* ; as, *tondeo* (*tons-*) *tonstrix*.

(b.) Some nouns in *tor* are formed immediately from other nouns ; as, *viātor*, a traveller ; *janitor*, a door-keeper ; from *via* and *janua*. In *meretrix* from *mereo*, *i* of the third root becomes *e*.

(c.) The agent of a few verbs is denoted by the terminations *a* and *o* annexed to the first root ; as, *conviva*, a guest ; *advēna*, a stranger ; *scriba*, a scribe ; *erro*, a vagrant ; *bibo*, a drunkard ; *comēdo*, a glutton, from *convivo*, *advēnio*, etc.

7. Many abstract nouns are formed by annexing *io* and *us* (gen. *ūs*) to the third root of a verb ; as, *actio*, an action ; *lectio*, reading ; from *āgo* (*act-*), *lēgo* (*lect-*) ; *-cantus*, singing ; *visus*, sight ; *ūsus*, use ; from *cāno* (*cant-*), *video* (*vis-*), *ūtor* (*ūs-*).

REMARK 1. Nouns of both forms, and of like signification, are frequently derived from the same verb ; as, *concurisio* and *concursus*, a running together ; *mōtio* and *mōtus*, etc.

REM. 2. Nouns formed by adding the termination *ura* to the third root of a verb, sometimes have the same signification as those in *io* and *us*, and sometimes denote the result of an action ; as, *positura*, position ; *vincitura*, a binding together ; from *pōno*, and *vincio* ; and the termination *ela* has sometimes the same meaning ; as, *querela*, complaint ; *loquēla*, speech, from *quēror* and *lēquor*.

NOTE. One of these forms is generally used to the exclusion of the others, and when two or more are found, they are usually employed in somewhat different senses.

8. The termination *orium*, added to the third root of a verb, denotes the place where the action of the verb is performed ; as, *auditorium*, a lecture-room ; *conditorium*, a repository ; from *audio* and *condo*.

## COMPOSITION OF NOUNS.

### § 103. Compound nouns are formed variously :—

1. Of two nouns ; as, *rupicapra*, a wild goat, of *rūpes* and *capra*. In some words, compounded of two nouns, the former is a genitive ; as, *senatusconsultum*, a decree of the senate ; *jurisconsultus*, a lawyer ; in others, both parts are declined ; as, *respublica*, *jusjurandum*. See § 91.

2. Of a noun and a verb ; as, *artifex*, an artist, of *ars* and *fācio* ; *fidelicen*, a harper, of *fides* and *cāno* ; *agricola*, a husbandman, of *āger* and *cōlo*.

3. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquinoctium*, the equinox, of *æquus* and *nox*; *millepēda*, a millepede, of *mille* and *pes*.

In *duumvir*, *triumvir*, *decemvir*, *centumvir*, the numeral adjective is in the genitive plural.

REMARK 1. When the former part of a compound word is a noun or an adjective, it usually ends in *i*; as, *artifex*, *rupicapra*, *agricola*, etc. If the second word begins with a vowel, an elision takes place; as, *quinquennium*, of *quinque* and *annus*; *magnanimus*, of *magnus* and *animus*.

4. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nefas*, wickedness; *nemo*, nobody; of *ne*, *fas*, and *homo*. So *biduum*, of *bis* and *die*.

5. Of a preposition and a noun: as, *incuria*, want of care, of *in* and *cara*. So *intervallum*, an interval; *præcordia*, the diaphragm; *proverbium*, a proverb; *subsellium*, a low seat; *superficies*, a surface.

REM. 2. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to that which follows it: as, *ignobilis*, *illepidus*, *imprudentia*, *irrumpe*, of *in* and *nobilis*, *lepidus*, etc. See § 198.

## ADJECTIVES.

§ 104. An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a substantive.

Adjectives may be divided, according to their *signification*, into various classes; as denoting,

1. Character or quality; as, *bonus*, good; *albus*, white; *amicus*, friendly.
2. State or condition; as, *felix*, happy; *dives*, rich.
3. Possession; as, *herilis*, a master's; *patrius*, a father's.
4. Quantity; as, *magnus*, great; *totus*, entire; *parvus*, small.
5. Number; as, *unus*, one; *secundus*, second; *tot*, so many; *quot*, as many. These are called *numerals*.
6. Time; as, *annuus*, yearly; *hesternus*, of yesterday; *bimus*, of two years; *trimestris*, of three months.
7. Place; as, *altus*, high; *vicinus*, near; *aërius*, aerial; *terrestris*, terrestrial.
8. Material; as, *aureus*, golden; *fagineus*, beechen; *terrēnus*, earthen.
9. Part; as, *nullus*, no one; *aliquis*, some one. These are called *partitives*.
10. Country; as, *Romānus*, Roman; *Arpinas* of *Arpinum*. These are called *patrials*.
11. Diminution; as, *parvulus*, from *parvus*, small; *misellus*, from *miser*, miserable. These are called *diminutives*.
12. Amplification; as, *vinolens* and *vinolentus*, much given to wine; *auritus*, having long ears. These are called *amplificatives*.
13. Relation; as, *avidus*, desirous of; *mémor*, mindful of; *insuetus*. These are called *relatives*.
14. Interrogation; as, *quantus*? how great; *qualis*? of what kind; *quot*? how many? *quotus*? of what number? These are called *interrogatives*; and, when not used interrogatively, they are called *correlatives*.
15. Specification; as, *talis*, such; *tantus*, so great; *tot*, so many. These are called *demonstratives*.



## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 105. 1. Adjectives are declined like substantives, and are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

2. The masculine of adjectives belonging to the first and second declensions, ends either in *us* or in *er*. The feminine and neuter are formed respectively by annexing *a* and *um* to the root of the masculine. The masculine in *us* is declined like *dominus*; that in *er* like *gēner* or *āger*; the feminine always like *mūsa*; and the neuter like *regnum*.

REMARK 1. The masculine of one adjective, *sātur*, *-āra*, *-ūrum*, full, ends in *ur*, and is declined like *gēner*.

Bōnūs, *good*.

## Singular.

|     | Masc.    | Fem.     | Neut.    |
|-----|----------|----------|----------|
| N.  | bo'-nūs, | bo'-nā,  | bo'-nūm, |
| G.  | bo'-nī,  | bo'-næ,  | bo'-nī,  |
| D.  | bo'-nō,  | bo'-næ,  | bo'-nō,  |
| Ac. | bo'-nūm, | bo'-nām, | bo'-nūm, |
| V.  | bo'-nē,  | bo'-nā,  | bo'-nūm, |
| Ab. | bo'-nō.  | bo'-nā.  | bo'-nō.  |

## Plural.

|     |              |              |              |
|-----|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| N.  | bo'-nī,      | bo'-næ,      | bo'-nā,      |
| G.  | bo'-nō'-rūm, | bo'-nā'-rūm, | bo'-nō'-rūm, |
| D.  | bo'-nīs,     | bo'-nīs,     | bo'-nīs,     |
| Ac. | bo'-nōs,     | bo'-nās,     | bo'-nā,      |
| V.  | bo'-nī,      | bo'-næ,      | bo'-nā,      |
| Ab. | bo'-nīs.     | bo'-nīs.     | bo'-nīs.     |

In like manner decline

|                              |                               |                             |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Al'-tus, <i>high</i> .       | Fi'-dus, <i>faithful</i> .    | Lon'-gus, <i>long</i> .     |
| A-vā'-rus, <i>covetous</i> . | Im'-prō'-bus, <i>wicked</i> . | Plē'-nus, <i>full</i> .     |
| Be-nig'-nus, <i>kind</i> .   | In-i'-quus, <i>unjust</i> .   | Tac'-i-tus, <i>silent</i> . |

REM. 2. Like *bōnus* are also declined all participles in *us*; as,

A-mā'-tus. Am-a-tī'-rus. A-man'-dus.

Rem. 3. The masculine of the vocative singular of adjectives in *us* is sometimes like the nominative; as, *O vir fortis atque amicus*. Hor. *Meus* has both *mi* and *meus*.

Rem. 4. The genitive plural of distributive numerals ends commonly in *um* instead of *orum*; as, *crassitudo binum digitorum*. Plin.

3. Tēner, *tender*.

*Singular.*

|            | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>N.</i>  | te'nĕr,      | ten'ĕ-rā,   | ten'ĕ-rūm,   |
| <i>G.</i>  | ten'ĕ-rī,    | ten'ĕ-ræ,   | ten'ĕ-rī,    |
| <i>D.</i>  | ten'ĕ-rō,    | ten'ĕ-ræ,   | ten'ĕ-rō,    |
| <i>Ac.</i> | ten'ĕ-rūm,   | ten'ĕ-rām,  | ten'ĕ-rūm,   |
| <i>V.</i>  | te'nĕr,      | ten'ĕ-rā,   | ten'ĕ-rūm,   |
| <i>Ab.</i> | ten'ĕ-rō.    | ten'ĕ-rā.   | ten'ĕ-rō.    |

*Plural.*

|            | <i>Masc.</i>   | <i>Fem.</i>    | <i>Neut.</i>   |
|------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i>  | ten'ĕ-rī,      | ten'ĕ-ræ,      | ten'ĕ-rā,      |
| <i>G.</i>  | ten-e-rō'-rūm, | ten-e-rā'-rūm, | ten-e-rō'-rūm, |
| <i>D.</i>  | ten'ĕ-ris,     | ten'ĕ-ris,     | ten'ĕ-ris,     |
| <i>Ac.</i> | ten'ĕ-rōs,     | ten'ĕ-rās,     | ten'ĕ-rā,      |
| <i>V.</i>  | ten'ĕ-rī,      | ten'ĕ-ræ,      | ten'ĕ-rā,      |
| <i>Ab.</i> | ten'ĕ-ris.     | ten'ĕ-ris.     | ten'ĕ-ris.     |

In like manner are declined

|                                 |                            |                                |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| As'-per, <i>rough</i> .         | Lă'-cer, <i>torn</i> .     | Pros'-per, <i>prosperous</i> . |
| Ex'-ter, <i>foreign</i> .       | Li'-ber, <i>free</i> .     | Să'-tur, <i>full</i> .         |
| Gib'-ber, <i>crook-backed</i> . | MI'-ser, <i>wretched</i> . |                                |

So also *alter*, except in the genitive and dative singular (see § 107), *semifer*, and the compounds of *gĕro* and *fĕro*; as, *laniger*, *opifer*.

NOTE. *Prosper* is less frequent than *prospĕrus*, and *exter* is scarcely used in the nominative singular masculine.

§ 106. The other adjectives in *er* drop *e* in declension; as,

Pĭger, *slothful*.

*Singular.*

|            | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>N.</i>  | pĭ'gĕr,      | pĭ'-grā,    | pĭ'-grūm,    |
| <i>G.</i>  | pĭ'-grī,     | pĭ'-græ,    | pĭ'-grī,     |
| <i>D.</i>  | pĭ'-grō,     | pĭ'-græ,    | pĭ'-grō,     |
| <i>Ac.</i> | pĭ'-grūm,    | pĭ'-grām,   | pĭ'-grūm,    |
| <i>V.</i>  | pĭ'gĕr,      | pĭ'-grā,    | pĭ'-grūm,    |
| <i>Ab.</i> | pĭ'-grō.     | pĭ'-grā.    | pĭ'-grō.     |

*Plural.*

|            | <i>Masc.</i>  | <i>Fem.</i>   | <i>Neut.</i>  |
|------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>N.</i>  | pĭ'-grī,      | pĭ'-græ,      | pĭ'-grā,      |
| <i>G.</i>  | pĭ'-grō'-rūm, | pĭ'-grā'-rūm, | pĭ'-grō'-rūm, |
| <i>D.</i>  | pĭ'-gris,     | pĭ'-gris,     | pĭ'-gris,     |
| <i>Ac.</i> | pĭ'-grōs,     | pĭ'-grās,     | pĭ'-grā,      |
| <i>V.</i>  | pĭ'-grī,      | pĭ'-græ,      | pĭ'-grā,      |
| <i>Ab.</i> | pĭ'-gris.     | pĭ'-gris.     | pĭ'-gris.     |

## In like manner decline

|                            |                         |                           |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Æ'-ger, sick.</i>       | <i>Mā'-cer, lean.</i>   | <i>Scā'-ber, rough.</i>   |
| <i>A'-ter, black.</i>      | <i>Nī'-ger, black.</i>  | <i>Sī-nis'-ter, left.</i> |
| <i>Crē'-ber, frequent.</i> | <i>Pul'-cher, fair.</i> | <i>Tē'-ter, foul.</i>     |
| <i>Glā'-ber, smooth.</i>   | <i>Rū'-ber, red.</i>    | <i>Vā'-fer, crafty.</i>   |
| <i>In'-tē-ger, entire.</i> | <i>Sā'-cer, sacred.</i> |                           |

*Dexter, right, has -tra, -trum, and less frequently -tēra, -tērum.*

§ 107. Six adjectives in *us*, and three in *er*, have their genitive singular in *ius*, and their dative in *ī*, in all the genders:—

|                        |                      |                                             |
|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Alius, another.</i> | <i>Tōtus, whole.</i> | <i>Alter, -tēra, -tērum, the other.</i>     |
| <i>Nullus, no one.</i> | <i>Ullus, any.</i>   | <i>Uter, -tra, -trum, which of the two.</i> |
| <i>Sōlus, alone.</i>   | <i>Unus, one.</i>    | <i>Neuter, -tra, -trum, neither.</i>        |

To these may be added the other compounds of *ūter*,—namely, *utēque*, each of two; *utercumque, uterlibet*, and *utervis*, which of the two you please; gen. *utriusque*, etc.,—also, *alterūter*, one of two; gen. *alterutrius*, and sometimes *alterius utrius*; dat. *alterutri*. So *alteruterque*, and *unusquisque*. See § 138, 4.

*Nullus, sōlus, tōtus, ullus*, and *ūnus* are thus declined:—

|            | <i>Masc.</i>      | <i>Fem.</i>      | <i>Neut.</i>     |
|------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>N.</i>  | <i>ū-nūs,</i>     | <i>ū-nā,</i>     | <i>ū-nūm,</i>    |
| <i>G.</i>  | <i>u-nī'-ūs,*</i> | <i>u-nī'-ūs,</i> | <i>u-nī'-ūs,</i> |
| <i>D.</i>  | <i>u-nī,</i>      | <i>u-nī,</i>     | <i>u-nī,</i>     |
| <i>Ac.</i> | <i>u-nūm,</i>     | <i>u-nām,</i>    | <i>u-nūm,</i>    |
| <i>V.</i>  | <i>u-nē,</i>      | <i>u-nā,</i>     | <i>u-nūm,</i>    |
| <i>Ab.</i> | <i>u-nō.</i>      | <i>u-nā.</i>     | <i>u-nō.</i>     |

The plural is regular, like that of *bōnus*.

REMARK 1. *Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, and in the genitive *alius*, contracted for *aliūs*.

REM. 2. Except in the genitive and dative singular, *alter* is declined like *tēner*, and *ūter* and *neuter* like *piger*.

REM. 3. Some of these adjectives, in early writers, and occasionally even in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, form their genitive and dative regularly, like *bōnus*, *tēner*, or *piger*.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 108. Some adjectives of the third declension have three terminations in the nominative singular; some two; and others only one.

I. Those of three terminations end in *er*, masc.; *is*, fem.; and *e*, neut.; and are thus declined:—

*Acer, sharp.*

*Singular.*

|            | <i>Masc.</i>    | <i>Fem.</i>     | <i>Neut.</i>    |
|------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>N.</i>  | <i>ā'-cēr,</i>  | <i>ā'-cris,</i> | <i>ā'-crē,</i>  |
| <i>G.</i>  | <i>a'-cris,</i> | <i>a'-cris,</i> | <i>a'-cris,</i> |
| <i>D.</i>  | <i>a'-cī,</i>   | <i>a'-cī,</i>   | <i>a'-cī,</i>   |
| <i>Ac.</i> | <i>a'-crēm,</i> | <i>a'-crēm,</i> | <i>a'-crē,</i>  |
| <i>V.</i>  | <i>a'-cēr,</i>  | <i>a'-cris,</i> | <i>a'-crē,</i>  |
| <i>Ab.</i> | <i>a'-cī.</i>   | <i>a'-cī.</i>   | <i>a'-cī.</i>   |

\* See § 15.

*Plural.*

|            |                    |                    |                    |
|------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>N.</i>  | <i>a'-crēs,</i>    | <i>a'-crēs,</i>    | <i>a'-cri-ā,</i>   |
| <i>G.</i>  | <i>a'-cri-ūm,</i>  | <i>a'-cri-um,</i>  | <i>a'-cri-ūm,</i>  |
| <i>D.</i>  | <i>ac'-ri-būs,</i> | <i>ac'-ri-būs,</i> | <i>ac'-ri-būs,</i> |
| <i>Ac.</i> | <i>a'-crēs,</i>    | <i>a'-crēs,</i>    | <i>a'-cri-ā,</i>   |
| <i>V.</i>  | <i>a'-crēs,</i>    | <i>a'-crēs,</i>    | <i>a'-cri-ā,</i>   |
| <i>Ab.</i> | <i>ac'-ri-būs.</i> | <i>ac'-ri-būs.</i> | <i>ac'-ri-būs.</i> |

In like manner are declined the following;—

|                                 |                               |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Al'-ācer, cheerful.</i>      | <i>Pa-lus'-ter, marshy.</i>   | <i>Sil-ves'-ter, woody.</i>       |
| <i>Cam-pes'-ter, campaign.</i>  | <i>Pe-des'-ter, on foot.</i>  | <i>Ter-res'-ter, terrestrial.</i> |
| <i>Cel'-ē-ber, famous.</i>      | <i>Pū'-ter, rotten.</i>       | <i>Vol'-ū-cer, winged.</i>        |
| <i>E-ques'-ter, equestrian.</i> | <i>Sa-lū'-ber, wholesome.</i> |                                   |

To these add names of months in *-ber*, used as adjectives; as, *October*, etc. (cf. § 71), and *cēter*, swift, which has *celēris*, *celēre*; gen. *celēris*, etc.

REMARK 1. The termination *er* was anciently sometimes feminine; as, *volūcer fama*. Petr.: and, on the other hand, the masculine often ends in *is*; as, *collis silvestris*, Cæs.

REM. 2. *Volūcer* has *um* in the genitive plural.

§ 109. II. Adjectives of two terminations end in *is* for the masculine and feminine, and *e* for the neuter, except comparatives, which end in *or* and *us*.

Those in *is*, *e*, are thus declined:—

*Mitis mild.*

| <i>Singular.</i>    |           | <i>Plural.</i>         |             |
|---------------------|-----------|------------------------|-------------|
| <i>M. &amp; F.</i>  | <i>N.</i> | <i>M. &amp; F.</i>     | <i>N.</i>   |
| <i>N.</i> mī'-tis,  | mī'-tē,   | <i>N.</i> mī'-tēs,     | mit'-i-ā,*  |
| <i>G.</i> mī'-tis,  | mī'-tis,  | <i>G.</i> mit'-i-ūm,*  | mit'-i-ūm,  |
| <i>D.</i> mī'-ti,   | mī'-ti,   | <i>D.</i> mit'-i-būs,  | mit'-i-būs, |
| <i>Ac.</i> mī'-tēm, | mī'-tē,   | <i>Ac.</i> mī'-tēs,    | mit'-i-ā,   |
| <i>V.</i> mī'-tis,  | mī'-tē,   | <i>V.</i> mī'-tēs,     | mit'-i-ā,   |
| <i>Ab.</i> mī'-ti.  | mī'-ti.   | <i>Ab.</i> mit'-i-būs. | mit'-i-būs. |

In like manner decline

|                            |                         |                                  |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Ag'-i-lis, active.</i>  | <i>Dul'-cis, sweet.</i> | <i>In-col'-ū-mis, safe.</i>      |
| <i>Brē'-vis, short.</i>    | <i>For'-tis, brave.</i> | <i>Mi-rab'-i-lis, wonderful.</i> |
| <i>Cru-dē'-lis, cruel.</i> | <i>Grā'-vis, heavy.</i> | <i>Om'-nis, all.</i>             |

*Tres*, three, is declined like the plural of *mitis*.

NOTE. Several adjectives of this class have forms also in *us*, *a*, *um*. See § 116.

§ 110. (a.) All comparatives, except *plus*, more, are thus declined:—

\* Pronounced *mish'-ā-a*, etc. See § 12.

Mitior,\* *milder.**Singular.*

|            | <i>M. &amp; F.</i>   | <i>N.</i>            |
|------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>N.</i>  | mit'-i-ōr,           | mit'-i-ūs,           |
| <i>G.</i>  | mit-i-ō'-rīs,        | mit-i-ō'-rīs,        |
| <i>D.</i>  | mit-i-ō'-rī,         | mit-i-ō'-rī,         |
| <i>Ac.</i> | mit-i-ō'-rēm,        | mit'-i-ūs,           |
| <i>V.</i>  | mit'-i-ōr,           | mit'-i-ūs,           |
| <i>Ab.</i> | mit-i-ō'-rē, or -rī. | mit-i-ō'-rē, or -rī. |

*Plural.*

|            | <i>M. &amp; F.</i> | <i>N.</i>        |
|------------|--------------------|------------------|
| <i>N.</i>  | mit-i-ō'-rēs,      | mit-i-ō'-rā,     |
| <i>G.</i>  | mit-i-ō'-rūm,      | mit-i-ō'-rūm,    |
| <i>D.</i>  | mit-i-or'-ī-būs,   | mit-i-or'-ī-būs, |
| <i>Ac.</i> | mit-i-ō'-rēs,      | mit-i-ō'-rā,     |
| <i>V.</i>  | mit-i-ō'-rēs,      | mit-i-ō'-rā,     |
| <i>Ab.</i> | mit-i-or'-ī-būs.   | mit-i-or'-ī-būs. |

In like manner decline

|                                   |                               |                                      |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Al'-ti-or, <i>higher.</i>         | Dul'-ci-or, <i>sweeter.</i>   | Gra'-vi-or, <i>heavier.</i>          |
| Au-da'-ci-or, <i>bolder.</i>      | Fe-lic'-i-or, <i>happier.</i> | Pru-den'-ti-or, <i>more prudent.</i> |
| Bre'-vi-or, <i>shorter.</i>       | Fe-ro'-ci-or, <i>fiercer.</i> | U-be'-ri-or, <i>more fertile.</i>    |
| Cru-de'-li-or, <i>more cruel.</i> | For'-ti-or, <i>braver.</i>    |                                      |

Plūs, *more*, is thus declined :—*Singular.*

| <i>N.</i>                          |
|------------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> plus,                    |
| <i>G.</i> plū'-rīs,                |
| <i>D.</i> _____,                   |
| <i>Ac.</i> plus,                   |
| <i>V.</i> _____,                   |
| <i>Ab.</i> (plū'-rē, <i>obs.</i> ) |

*Plural.*

| <i>M. &amp; F.</i>      | <i>N.</i>                         |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> plū'-rēs,     | plū'-rā, <i>rarely</i> plu'-ri-ā, |
| <i>G.</i> plu'-ri-ūm,   | plu'-ri-ūm,                       |
| <i>D.</i> plu'-ri-būs,  | plu'-ri-būs,                      |
| <i>Ac.</i> plū'-rēs,    | plū'-rā,                          |
| <i>V.</i> _____,        | _____                             |
| <i>Ab.</i> plu'-ri-būs. | plu'-ri-būs.                      |

So, but in the plural number only, *complūres*, a great many.

§ 111. III. Other adjectives of the third declension have but one termination in the nominative singular for all genders. They all end in *l*, *r*, *s*, or *x*, and increase in the genitive.

They are thus declined :—

Felix, *happy.**Singular.*

| <i>M. &amp; F.</i>            | <i>N.</i>          |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>N.</i> fe'-lix,            | fe'-lix,           |
| <i>G.</i> fe-li'-cis,         | fe-li'-cis,        |
| <i>D.</i> fe-li'-cī,          | fe-li'-cī,         |
| <i>Ac.</i> fe-li'-cēm,        | fe'-lix,           |
| <i>V.</i> fe'-lix,            | fe'-lix,           |
| <i>Ab.</i> fe-li'-cē, or -cī. | fe-li'-cē, or -cī. |

\* Pronounced *mish'-e-or*, etc. See § 12.

*Plural.*

| <i>M. &amp; F.</i> |                | <i>N.</i>      |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>N.</i>          | fe-li'-cēs,    | fe-lic'-i-ā,*  |
| <i>G.</i>          | fe-lic'-i-ūm,* | fe-lic'-i-ūm,  |
| <i>D.</i>          | fe-lic'-i-būs, | fe-lic'-i-būs, |
| <i>Ac.</i>         | fe-li'-cēs,    | fe-lic'-i-ā,   |
| <i>V.</i>          | fe-li'-cēs,    | fe-lic'-i-ā,   |
| <i>Ab.</i>         | fe-lic'-i-būs. | fe-lic'-i-būs. |

*Præsens, present.**Singular.*

| <i>M. &amp; F.</i> |                      | <i>N.</i>            |
|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>N.</i>          | præ-sens,            | præ-sens,            |
| <i>G.</i>          | præ-sen'-tis,        | præ-sen'-tis,        |
| <i>D.</i>          | præ-sen'-ti,         | præ-sen'-ti,         |
| <i>Ac.</i>         | præ-sen'-tēm,        | præ-sens,            |
| <i>V.</i>          | præ-sens,            | præ-sens,            |
| <i>Ab.</i>         | præ-sen'-tē, or -ti. | præ-sen'-tē, or -ti. |

*Plural.*

|            |                  |                  |
|------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>N.</i>  | præ-sen'-tēs,    | præ-sen'-ti-ā,†  |
| <i>G.</i>  | præ-sen'-ti-ūm,  | præ-sen'-ti-ūm,  |
| <i>D.</i>  | præ-sen'-ti-būs, | præ-sen'-ti-būs, |
| <i>Ac.</i> | præ-sen'-tēs,    | præ-sen'-ti-ā,   |
| <i>V.</i>  | præ-sen'-tēs,    | præ-sen'-ti-ā,   |
| <i>Ab.</i> | præ-sen'-ti-būs. | præ-sen'-ti-būs. |

## In like manner decline

|                                    |                                          |                                     |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Au'-dax, -ācis, <i>bold.</i>       | Par'-ti-ceps, -īpis, <i>participant.</i> | Sol'-lers, -tis, <i>shrewd.</i>     |
| Com'-pos, -ōtis, <i>master of.</i> |                                          | Sos'-pes, -itis, <i>safe.</i>       |
| Fē'-rox, -ōcis, <i>fierce.</i>     | Præ'-pes, -ētis, <i>swift.</i>           | Sup'-plex, -icis, <i>suppliant.</i> |
| In'-gens, -tis, <i>huge.</i>       | Prū'-dens, -tis, <i>prudent.</i>         |                                     |

REMARK. All present participles are declined like *præsens*; as, A'-mans. Mō'-nens. Rē'-gens. Ca'-pi-ens. Au'-di-ens.

NOTE. A few adjectives of one termination have redundant forms in *us, a, um*; see § 116.

## RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ 112. Most adjectives of the third declension form their genitive singular like nouns of the same termination.

The following may here be specified:—

1. Of those in *es* (cf. § 78) some have *-ētis*; as, *hēbes, perpes, præpes*, and *tēres*;—*inques* and *locuples* have *-ētis*;—some have *-itis*; as, *dives, sospes*, and *superstes*;—some have *-idis*; as, *dēsēs*, and *rēsēs*;—*bīpes*, and *trīpes* have *-pēdis*;—*pūbes* has *pubēris*, and *impūbes*, *impubēris* and *impūbis*.

\* Pronounced *fe-lish'-e-um*, etc. See § 10, Exc., and § 7, 3, (b.)

† Pronounced *præ-sen'-she-a*, etc.

2. *Compos* and *impos* have *-dtis*, and *exos*, *exossis*.—*Exlex* has *exlēgis*, *pernon* has *pernoctis* (§ 78), *præcox*, *præcōcis*, and *reduz*, *reducis*.—*Cælebs* has *cælibis*, (§ 77); *intercus*, *intercūtis*, and *vêtus*, *velëris*. Those in *ceps* which are compounds of *câpio*, have *-cipitis*; as, *anceps*, *præceps* (§ 78, 1); but the compounds of *ceps* from *câpio* have *-ipis*; as, *particeps*, *participis*.—Those in *cors*, compounds of *cor*, have *-cordis*; as, *concors*, *concordis* (§ 71, Exc. 2).—*Mëmor* and *immëmor* have *-ëris*.

#### ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 113. 1. Adjectives which have *e* in the nominative singular neuter have only *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 1. The ablatives *bimestre*, *calëste*, and *perenne* are found in Ovid, and *cognomine* in Virgil.

2. Comparatives and participles in *ns*, when used as participles, especially in the ablative absolute, have rather *e* than *i*; but participial adjectives in *ns* have rather *i* than *e*.

3. Adjectives of one termination have either *e* or *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 2. The following adjectives of one termination have only *e* in the ablative:—

*Bicorpor*, *bïpes*, *cælebs*, *compos*, *dëses*, *discôlor*, *hospes*, *impos*, *impûbes*, *juvënis*, *locûples*, *pauper*, *princeps*, *pûber* or *pûbes*, *sënex*, *sopes*, *superstes*, *tricorpor*, *tricuspis*, and *tripës*.

Exc. 3. The following adjectives of one termination have only *i* in the ablative:—

*Anceps*, *concors*, *discors*, *hëbes*, *immëmor*, *Iners*, *ingens*, *Inops*, *mëmor*, *par*, *præceps*, *rëcens*, *rëpens*, *vigil*, and most adjectives in *x*, especially those in *plex*.

REM. 1. *Inerte* occurs in Ovid, *recente* in Ovid and Catullus, and *præcipe* in Ennius.

REM. 2. *Præsens*, when used of things, makes the ablative in *i*; when used of persons, it has *e*.

#### NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND GENITIVE PLURAL.

§ 114. 1. The neuter of the nominative and accusative plural ends in *ia*, and the genitive plural of all genders in *ium*; but comparatives in *or*, with *vêtus*, old, and *uber*, fertile, have *a*, and *um*.

2. The accusative plural of masculine and feminine adjectives, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *is* or *ëis*, instead of *ëis*. Cf. § 86, Exc. 1.

Exc. 1. Those adjectives that have only *e* in the ablative singular, have *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. Compounds of *fâcio*, *câpio*, and of such nouns as make *um* in their genitive plural, with *cëler*, *compar*, *cicur*, *dives*, *mëmor*, *immëmor*, *præpes*, *supplex*, and *vigil*, make their genitive plural in *um*.

Exc. 3. *Dis*, *locuples*, *sons*, and *insons* have either *um* or *ium*. The poets and the later prose writers sometimes form the genitive plural of other adjectives and of participles in *ns*, by syncope, in *um*, instead of *ium*; as, *cælestum*, Virg. Ovid, etc.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

§ 115. Some adjectives are defective, others redundant.

## DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. (a.) Many adjectives denoting personal qualities or attributes want the neuter gender, unless when occasionally joined to a neuter substantive used figuratively. Such are the following:—

Bicorpor, bipes, cælebs, compos, consors, degēner, dives, impos, impubes, industrius, inops, insons, invitus, juvenis, locuples, mēmor, pauper, particeps, princeps, pūber, or pūbes, rēdux, sēnex, sons, sospes, superstes, supplex, tricorpor, vigil.

(b.) *Victrix* and *ultrix* are feminine in the singular, seldom neuter; in the plural, they are feminine and neuter. Such verbals partake of the nature both of substantives and adjectives, and correspond to masculines in *tor*. See § 102, 6, (a.)

2. The following want the genitive plural, and are rarely used in the neuter gender:—

Concōlor, dēses, hēbes, perpes, rēses, tēres, versicōlor.

3. The names of months, which are properly adjectives, have only the masculine and feminine genders.

4. Some adjectives are wholly indeclinable.

Such are *frūgi*, temperate; *nēquam*, worthless; *sūt* or *sūtis*, sufficient; the plurals *aliquot*, *idē*, *quōt*, *totidem*, *quotquot*; and the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusive, and also *mille*. Cf. § 118, 1, and 6, (b.)

5. The following adjectives are used only in certain cases:—

*Bifcem*, acc.; doubly-tissued. *Cetēra*, *cetērū*, the rest, wants the nom. sing. masc. *Decemplicem*, acc.; tenfold. *Exspes*, nom.; hopeless. *Inquies*, nom.; -stem, acc.; -ēte, abl.; restless. *Mactus*, and *macte*, nom.; *macte*, acc.; honored; -macti, nom. plur. *Necesse*, and *necessum*, nom. acc.; necessary. *Plus*, nom., acc.; pluris, gen.; more; -pl. plures, -a, nom. acc.; -ium gen.; ibus, dat., abl. Cf. § 110. *Postēra*, *postērū*, coming after, wants the nom. sing. masc. *Pōtis*, nom. sing. and pl., all genders; able. *Pōte*, nom. sing., for potest; possible. *Sep-templīcis*, gen.; -ce, abl.; seven-fold. *Siremps*, and *sirempse*, nom. and acc.; alike. *Tantundem*, nom. acc.; tantidem, gen.; tantandem, acc.; so much. *Trilicem*, acc.; trebly-tissued; *trilices*, nom. and acc. pl.

## REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

§ 116. The following adjectives are redundant in termination and declension. Those marked *r* are more rarely used.

*Acclivis*, and -us, *r*, ascending.  
*Auxiliāris*, and -ius, auxiliary.  
*Bijūgis*, and -us, yoked two together.  
*Declivis*, and -us, *r*, descending.  
*Exanimis*, and -us, *r*, lifeless.  
*Hilāris*, and -us, cheerful.  
*Imbecillis*, *r*, and -us, weak.  
*Impubes*, and -is, *r*, -is or -ēris, not grown up.  
*Inermis*, and -us, *r*, unarmed.  
*Infrēnis*, and -us, unbridled.

*Inquies*, and -ētus, restless.  
*Joculāris*, and -ius, *r*, laughable.  
*Multijūgis*, *r*, and -us, yoked many together.  
*Opulens*, and -lentus, rich.  
*Præcox*, -cōquis, and -cōquus, early ripe.  
*Proclivis*, and -us, *r*, sloping.  
*Quadrījūgis*, and -us, yoked four together.  
*Semianimis*, and -us, half alive



Semiermis, *and -us, half armed.*  
Semisomnis, *and -us, r, half asleep.*  
Singularis, *and -ius, single.*

Sublimis, *and -us, r, high.*  
Unanimis, *r, and -us, unanimous*  
Violens, *r, and -lentus, violent.*

To these may be added some adjectives in *er* and *is*; as, *saluber* and *-bris*, *célèber* and *-bris*. Cf. § 108, R. 1.

### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 117. Numeral adjectives are divided into three principal classes—*Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, and *Distributive*.

I. Cardinal numbers are those which simply denote the number of things, in answer to the question *Quot?* ‘How many?’ They are,

|                                                 |                           |                    |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Unus,                                        | <i>one.</i>               | I.                 |
| 2. Duo,                                         | <i>two.</i>               | II.                |
| 3. Tres,                                        | <i>three.</i>             | III.               |
| 4. Quattuor,                                    | <i>four.</i>              | III. or IV.        |
| 5. Quinque,                                     | <i>five.</i>              | V.                 |
| 6. Sex,                                         | <i>six.</i>               | VI.                |
| 7. Septem,                                      | <i>seven.</i>             | VII.               |
| 8. Octo,                                        | <i>eight</i>              | VIII.              |
| 9. Nōvem,                                       | <i>nine.</i>              | VIII. or IX.       |
| 10. Dēcem,                                      | <i>ten.</i>               | X.                 |
| 11. Undēcim,                                    | <i>eleven.</i>            | XI.                |
| 12. Duodēcim,                                   | <i>twelve.</i>            | XII.               |
| 13. Tredēcim,                                   | <i>thirteen.</i>          | XIII.              |
| 14. Quatuordēcim,                               | <i>fourteen.</i>          | XIII. or XIV.      |
| 15. Quindēcim,                                  | <i>fifteen.</i>           | XV.                |
| 16. Sedēcim, or sexdēcim,                       | <i>sixteen.</i>           | XVI.               |
| 17. Septendēcim,                                | <i>seventeen.</i>         | XVII.              |
| 18. Octodēcim,                                  | <i>eighteen.</i>          | XVIII.             |
| 19. Novendēcim,                                 | <i>nineteen.</i>          | XVIII. or XIX.     |
| 20. Viginti,                                    | <i>twenty.</i>            | XX.                |
| 21. Viginti unus, or<br>unus et viginti, }      | <i>twenty-one.</i>        | XXI.               |
| 22. Viginti duo, or<br>duo et viginti, etc., }  | <i>twenty-two.</i>        | XXII.              |
| 30. Trīginta,                                   | <i>thirty.</i>            | XXX.               |
| 40. Quādrāginta,                                | <i>forty.</i>             | XXXX. or XL.       |
| 50. Quinquaginta,                               | <i>fifty.</i>             | L.                 |
| 60. Sexaginta,                                  | <i>sixty.</i>             | LX.                |
| 70. Septuaginta,                                | <i>seventy.</i>           | LXX.               |
| 80. Octoginta, or octuaginta,                   | <i>eighty.</i>            | LXXX.              |
| 90. Nōnāginta,                                  | <i>ninety.</i>            | LXXX. or XC.       |
| 100. Centum,                                    | <i>a hundred.</i>         | C.                 |
| 101. Centum unus, or<br>centum et unus, etc., } | <i>a hundred and one.</i> | CI.                |
| 200. Dūcenti, -æ, a,                            | <i>two hundred.</i>       | CC.                |
| 300. Trēcenti, etc.,                            | <i>three hundred.</i>     | CCC.               |
| 400. Quādringenti,                              | <i>four hundred.</i>      | CCCC. or CD.       |
| 500. Quingenti,                                 | <i>five hundred.</i>      | IO, or D.          |
| 600. Sexcenti,                                  | <i>six hundred.</i>       | IO C, or DC.       |
| 700. Septingenti,                               | <i>seven hundred.</i>     | IO CC, or DCC.     |
| 800. Octingenti,                                | <i>eight hundred.</i>     | IO CCC, or DCCC.   |
| 900. Nongenti,                                  | <i>nine hundred.</i>      | IO CCCC, or DCCCC. |
| 1000. Mille,                                    | <i>a thousand.</i>        | CIO, or M.         |
| 2000. Duo millia, or<br>bis mille, }            | <i>two thousand.</i>      | CIO CIO, or MM.    |

|                                                        |                     |          |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|----------|
| 5000. Quinque millia, or<br>quinquies mille, }         | five thousand.      | ICD.     |
| 10000. Decem millia, or<br>decies mille, }             | ten thousand.       | CCICD.   |
| 50000. Quinquaginta millia,<br>or quinquagies mille, } | fifty thousand.     | ICDD.    |
| 100000. Centum millia, or<br>centies mille, }          | a hundred thousand. | CCCCIDD. |

§ 118. 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined; from four to a hundred inclusive they are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

For the declension of *ānus* and *tres*, see §§ 107 and 109.

*Duo* is thus declined :—

*Plural.*

| <i>M.</i>                    | <i>F.</i>  | <i>N.</i>  |
|------------------------------|------------|------------|
| <i>N.</i> dū'-o,             | du'-æ,     | du'-o,     |
| <i>G.</i> du-ŏ'-rum,         | du-ŏ'-rum, | du-ŏ'-rum, |
| <i>D.</i> du-ŏ'-bus,         | du-ŏ'-bus, | du-ŏ'-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> du'-os, or du'-o, | du'-as,    | du'-o,     |
| <i>V.</i> du'-o,             | du'-æ,     | du'-o,     |
| <i>Ab.</i> du-ŏ'-bus.        | du-ŏ'-bus. | du-ŏ'-bus. |

REMARK 1. *Duorum*, *duarum*, are often contracted into *duum*, especially in compounds; as, *duumvir*, and when joined with *millium*.—*Ambo*, both, which partakes of the nature of a numeral and of a pronoun, is declined like *duo*.

2. The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, are used in the plural only.

REM. 2. The plural of *unus* is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose singular has a different sense from the plural; as, *una nuptia*, one marriage; *una castra*, one camp. It is used also with nouns denoting several things considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. So, also, when it takes the signification of "alone" or "the same"; as, *uni Ubii*, the Ubians alone; *unis moribus vivere*,—with the same manners.

3. (a.) Thirteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, and nineteen, are often expressed by two numbers, the greater of which usually precedes, united by *et*; thus, *decem et tres*, *decem et novem*, or, omitting *et*, *decem novem*. *Octodécim* has no good authority. See *infra*, 4.

(b.) From twenty to a hundred, the smaller number with *et* is put first, or the greater without *et*; as, *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus*. Above one hundred, the greater precedes, with or without *et*; as, *centum et unus*, or *centum unus*; *trecenti sexaginta sex*, or *trecenti et sexaginta sex*. *Et* is never twice used, but the poets sometimes take *ac*, *atque*, or *que*, instead of *et*.

4. For eighteen, twenty-eight, etc., and for nineteen, twenty-nine, etc. (excepting sixty-eight, sixty-nine, and ninety-eight), a subtractive expression is more frequent than the additive form; as, *duodeviginti*, two from twenty; *undeviginti*, one from twenty; *duodetriginta*, *undetriginta*, etc. Neither *un* (*unus*) nor *duo* can be declined in these combinations. The additive forms for thirty-eight, etc. to ninety-eight, and for forty-nine, etc. to ninety-nine, except those for sixty-nine, seem not to occur.

5. (a.) Thousands are generally expressed by prefixing the smaller cardinal numbers to *millia*; as, *decem millia*, ten thousand; *ducenta millia*, two hundred thousand. As there is in Latin no unit above *mille*, a thousand, the higher units of modern numeration are expressed by prefixing the numeral adverbs to the

combination *centēna millia*; as, *decies centēna millia*, a million; *centies centēna millia*, ten millions. In such combinations *centēna millia* is sometimes omitted; as, *decies*, scil. *centēna millia*.

(b.) The poets sometimes make use of numeral adverbs in expressing smaller numbers; as, *bis sex* for *duodēcim*; *bis centum* for *ducenti*, etc.

6. *Mille* is used either as a substantive or as an adjective.

(a.) When taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number, and, in the plural, has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, etc.; as, *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, two thousand men, etc. When *mille* is a substantive, the things numbered are put in the genitive, as in the preceding examples, unless a declined numeral comes between; as, *habuit tria millia trecentos milites*.

(b.) As an adjective, *mille* is plural only, and indeclinable: as, *mille homines* a thousand men; *cum bis mille hominibus*, with two thousand men.

7. Capitals were used by the Romans to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X., which are, therefore, called *Numeral Letters*. I. denotes *one*; V. *five*; X. *ten*; L. *fifty*; and C. *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

(a.) The repetition of a numeral letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, etc. But V. and L. are never repeated.

(b.) When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater value, the less takes away its value from the greater; but being placed after, it adds its value to the greater; thus,

|             |               |                        |
|-------------|---------------|------------------------|
| IV. Four.   | V. Five.      | VI. Six.               |
| IX. Nine.   | X. Ten.       | XI. Eleven.            |
| XL. Forty.  | L. Fifty.     | LX. Sixty.             |
| XC. Ninety. | C. A hundred. | CX. A hundred and ten. |

(c.) A *thousand* was marked thus, CIO, which, in later times, was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IO, or, by contraction, D.

(d.) The annexing of the *apostrophus* or inverted C (∩) to IO makes its value ten times greater; thus, IO∩ marks *five thousand*; and IO∩∩, *fifty thousand*.

(e.) The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of ∩, to the number CIO, makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIO∩ denotes *ten thousand*; and CCCIO∩∩, *a hundred thousand*. The Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no further in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIO∩∩, CCCIO∩∩, signified *two hundred thousand*, etc.

(f.) We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters. Thus, III. denotes *three thousand*; X., *ten thousand*.

§ 119. II. *Ordinal* numbers are such as denote order or rank, and answer to the question, *Quotus?* Which of the numbers? They all end in *us*, and are declined like *bōnus*; as, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second.

III. *Distributive* numbers are those which indicate an equal division among several persons or things, and answer to the question, *Quotēni?* How many apiece? as, *singūli*, one by one, or, one to each; *bini*, two by two, or two to each, etc. They are always used in the plural, and are declined like the plural of *bōnus*, except that they usually have *ūm* instead of *ōrum* in the genitive plural. Cf. § 105, R. 4.

The following table contains the ordinal and distributive numbers, and the corresponding numeral adverbs, which answer to the question, *Quoties?* How many times?—

| <i>Ordinal.</i>                       | <i>Distributive.</i>                   | <i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>           |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Primus, <i>first.</i>              | Singŭli, <i>one by one.</i>            | Semel, <i>once.</i>               |
| 2. Secundus, <i>second.</i>           | Bini, <i>two by two.</i>               | Bis, <i>twice.</i>                |
| 3. Tertius, <i>third.</i>             | Terni, <i>or trini.</i>                | Ter, <i>thrice.</i>               |
| 4. Quartus, <i>fourth.</i>            | Quaterni.                              | Quater, <i>four times.</i>        |
| 5. Quintus, <i>fifth.</i>             | Quini.                                 | Quinques.                         |
| 6. Sextus, <i>sixth.</i>              | Seni.                                  | Sexies.                           |
| 7. Septimus, <i>seventh.</i>          | Septēni.                               | Septies.                          |
| 8. Octāvus, <i>eighth.</i>            | Octōni.                                | Octies.                           |
| 9. Nōnus, <i>ninth.</i>               | Novēni.                                | Novies.                           |
| 10. Dēcimus, <i>tenth, etc.</i>       | Dēni.                                  | Dēcies.                           |
| 11. Undecimus.                        | Undēni.                                | Undecies.                         |
| 12. Duodecimus.                       | Duodēni.                               | Duodecies.                        |
| 13. Tertius dēcimus.                  | Terni dēni.                            | Terdecies.                        |
| 14. Quartus dēcimus.                  | Quaterni dēni.                         | Quatuordecies.                    |
| 15. Quintus dēcimus.                  | Quini dēni.                            | Quindecies.                       |
| 16. Sextus dēcimus.                   | Seni dēni.                             | Sedecies.                         |
| 17. Septimus dēcimus.                 | Septēni dēni.                          | Decies et septies.                |
| 18. Octāvus dēcimus.                  | Octōni dēni.                           | Duodevicies.                      |
| 19. Nōnus dēcimus.                    | Novēni dēni.                           | Undevicies.                       |
| 20. { Vicēsimus, or }<br>vigēsimus.   | Vicēni.                                | Vicies.                           |
| 21. Vicesimus primus.                 | Vicēni singŭli.                        | Semel et vices.                   |
| 22. Vicesimus secundus.               | Vicēni bini, etc.                      | Bis et vices, etc.                |
| 30. { Tricesimus, or }<br>tricesimus. | Tricēni.                               | Tricies.                          |
| 40. Quadragēsimus.                    | Quadragēni.                            | Quadrages.                        |
| 50. Quinquagēsimus.                   | Quinquagēni.                           | Quinquages.                       |
| 60. Sexagēsimus.                      | Sexagēni.                              | Sexages.                          |
| 70. Septuagēsimus.                    | Septuagēni.                            | Septuages.                        |
| 80. Octogēsimus.                      | Octogēni.                              | Octogies.                         |
| 90. Nonagēsimus.                      | Nonagēni.                              | Nonages.                          |
| 100. Centesimus.                      | Centēni.                               | Centies.                          |
| 200. Dūcentesimus.                    | Ducēni.                                | Ducenties.                        |
| 300. Trēcentesimus.                   | Trecēni, or trecentēni.                | { Trecenties, or }<br>tricenties. |
| 400. Quadringentesimus.               | { Quadringēni, or }<br>quadringentēni. | Quadringenties.                   |
| 500. Quingentesimus.                  | Quingēni.                              | Quingenties.                      |
| 600. Sexcentesimus.                   | Sexcēni, or sexcentēni.                | Sexcenties.                       |
| 700. Septingentesimus.                | Septingēni.                            | Septingenties.                    |
| 800. Octingentesimus.                 | Octingēni.                             | Octingenties.                     |
| 900. Nongentesimus.                   | Nongēni.                               | Noningenties.                     |
| 1000. Millesimus.                     | { Millēni, or }<br>singŭla millia.     | Millies.                          |
| 2000. Bis millesimus.                 | { Bis millēni, or }<br>bina millia.    | Bis millies.                      |

§ 120. 1. In the ordinals, instead of *primus*, *prior* is used, if only two are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

2. (a.) From thirteenth to nineteenth, the smaller number is usually put first, without *et*; as, *tertius dēcimus*, but sometimes the greater with or without *et*; as, *dēcimus et tertius*, or *dēcimus tertius*.

(b.) Twenty-first, thirty-first, etc., are often expressed by *unus et vicesimus*, *unus et tricesimus*, etc., one and twentieth, etc.; and twenty-second, etc., by *duo*, or *alter et vicesimus*, etc., in which *duo* is not changed. In the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et*, or the smaller with *et*; as, *vicesimus quartus*, or *quartus et vicesimus*.

(c.) For eighteenth, etc., to fifty-eighth, and for nineteenth, etc. to fifty-ninth, the subtractive forms, *duodevicesimus*, etc., and *undevicesimus*, etc., are often used.

3. In the distributives, eighteen, thirty-eight, forty-eight, and nineteen and twenty-nine, are often expressed by the subtractives *duodeviginti*, etc., *undeviginti*, etc.

4. (a.) Distributives are sometimes used by the poets for cardinal numbers; as, *binæ spicula*, two darts. Virg. So likewise in prose, with nouns that want the singular; as, *binæ nuptiæ*, two weddings.

(b.) The singular of some distributives is used in the sense of multiplicatives; as, *binus*, twofold. So *ternus*, *quinus*, *septenus*.

5. In the numeral adverbs, for the intermediate numbers 21, 22, etc., the larger number also may be put first, either with or without *et*; and for twenty-eight times and thirty-nine times, *duodetrices* and *undequadrages* are found.

### § 121. To the preceding classes may be added the following:—

1. *Multiplicatives*, which denote how many fold, in answer to the question, *quotiplex*? They all end in *plex*, and are declined like *fēlix*; as,

|                                             |                                    |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Simplex, <i>single</i> .                    | Quintuplex, <i>fivefold</i> .      |
| Duplex, <i>twofold</i> , or <i>double</i> . | Septuplex, <i>sevenfold</i> .      |
| Triplex, <i>threefold</i> .                 | Decuplex, <i>tenfold</i> .         |
| Quadruplex, <i>fourfold</i> .               | Centuplex, <i>a hundred fold</i> . |

2. *Proportionals*, which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *duplus*, a, *um*, twice as great; so *triplus*, *quadruplus*, *octuplus*, *decipus*. They are generally found only in the neuter.

3. *Temporals*, which denote time; as, *binus*, a, *um*, two years old; so *trimus*, *quadrimus*, etc. Also, *biennius*, lasting two years, biennial; so *quadriennius*, *quinquennius*, etc. So also, *bimestris*, of two months' continuance; *trimestris*, etc., *biduus*, etc. To these may be added certain nouns, compounds of *annus* and *dies* with the cardinal numbers; as, *biennium*, *triennium*, etc., a period of two, etc. years; *biduum*, *triduum*, etc., a period of two, etc. days.

4. Adjectives in *arius*, derived from the distributives, and denoting of how many equal parts or units a thing consists; as, *binarius*, of two parts; *ternarius*, etc.

5. *Interrogatives*; as, *quot*, how many? *quotus*, of what number? *quotum*, how many each? *quoties*, how many times? Their correlatives are *tot*, *totidem*, so many; *aliquot*, some; which, with *quot*, are indeclinable; and the adverbs, *toties*, so often; *aliquoties*, several times.

6. *Fractional expressions*, which denote the parts of a thing. These are expressed in Latin by *pars* with *dimidia*, *tertia*, *quarta*, etc. Thus,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , *dimidia pars*;  $\frac{1}{3}$ , *tertia pars*, etc. When the number of parts into which a thing is divided exceeds by one only the parts mentioned, as in  $\frac{2}{3}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$ , etc. the fraction is expressed simply by *duæ*, *tres*, etc. *partes*, denoting two out of three, three out of four, etc.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 122. 1. Adjectives may be divided into two classes—those which denote a *variable*, and those which denote an *invariable*, quality or limitation.

Thus, *bonus*, good, *altus*, high, and *opacus*, dark, denote variable attributes; but *aeneus*, brazen, *triplex*, threefold, and *diurnus*, daily, do not admit of different degrees in their signification.

2. The *comparison* of an adjective is the expression of its quality in different degrees.

3. There are three degrees of comparison—the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

4. The positive simply denotes a quality, without reference to other degrees of the same quality; as, *altus*, high; *mitis*, mild.

5. The comparative denotes that a quality belongs to one of two objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to the other; as, *altior*, higher; *mitior*, milder.

6. The superlative denotes that a quality belongs to one of several objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to any of the rest; as, *altissimus*, highest; *mitissimus*, mildest.

REM. 1. Sometimes also the comparative denotes that a quality, at different times or in other circumstances, belongs in different degrees to the *same* object; as, *est sapientior quam fuit*, he is wiser than he was.

REM. 2. The comparative sometimes expresses the proportion between two qualities of the same object; as, *est doctior quam sapientior*, he is more learned than wise; that is, his learning is greater than his wisdom.

REM. 3. The comparative is also used elliptically instead of our 'too' or 'rather'; as, *vixit liberius*, he lives too freely, or, rather freely. Cf. § 256, R. 9.

REM. 4. The superlative, like the positive with *per*, (cf. § 127, 2), often indicates a high degree of a quality without direct comparison with the same quality in other objects; as, *amicus carissimus*, a very dear friend.

§ 123. 1. Degrees of a quality *inferior* to the positive may be denoted by the adverbs *minus*, less; *minime*, least, prefixed to the positive; as, *jucundus*, pleasant; *minus jucundus*, less pleasant; *minime jucundus*, least pleasant.

2. A small degree of a quality is indicated by *sub* prefixed to the positive; as, *amarius*, bitter; *subamarius*, bitterish, or, somewhat bitter.

3. An *equal* degree of a quality may be denoted by *tam* followed by *quam*, *æque* followed by *ac*, *sic* followed by *ut*, etc.; as, *hæbes, æque ac pecus*, as stupid as a brute.

§ 124. 1. The comparative and superlative in Latin, as in English, are denoted either by peculiar terminations, or by certain adverbs prefixed to the positive. Cf. § 127, 1.

2. The terminational comparative ends in 

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| Masc.        | Fem.         | Neut.        |
| <i>ior</i> , | <i>ior</i> , | <i>ius</i> ; |

 the terminational superlative in *issimus*, *issīma*, *issimūm*.

3. These terminations are added to the root of the positive; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; high, higher, highest.  
*mitis*, *mitior*, *mitissimus*; mild, milder, mildest.  
*felix*, (gen. *felicis*), *felicior*, *felicissimus*; happy, happier, happiest.

In like manner compare

|                            |                               |                                          |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Arē-tus, <i>strait</i> .   | Cru-dē'-lis, <i>cruel</i> .   | Cā'-pax, <i>capacious</i> .              |
| Cā'-rus, <i>dear</i> .     | Fer'-ti-lis, <i>fertile</i> . | Clē'-mens, (gen. -tis) <i>merciful</i> . |
| Doc'-tus, <i>learned</i> . | Lē'-vis, <i>light</i> .       | In'-ers, (gen. -tis), <i>sluggish</i> .  |

#### IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

§ 125. 1. Adjectives in *er* form their superlative by adding *rimus* to that termination; as, *acer*, active; gen. *acris*; comparative, *acrior*; superlative, *acerrimus*.

In like manner, *pauper*, *pauperrimus*. *Vetus* has a similar superlative, *veterrimus*, from the old collateral form *vetër*.

2. Six adjectives in *lis* form their superlative by adding *lissimus* to the root:—

|             |              |                |            |
|-------------|--------------|----------------|------------|
| Facilis,    | facilior,    | facillimus,    | easy.      |
| Difficilis, | difficilior, | difficillimus, | difficult. |
| Gracilis,   | gracilior,   | gracillimus,   | slender.   |
| Humilis,    | humilior,    | humillimus,    | low.       |
| Similis,    | similior,    | simillimus,    | like.      |
| Dissimilis, | dissimilior, | dissimillimus, | unlike.    |

*Imbecillus* or *imbecillis*, weak, has two forms, *imbecillissimus* and *imbecillimus*.

3. (a.) Five adjectives in *ficus* (from *facio*) derive their comparatives and superlatives from supposed forms in *ens*:—

|                          |                  |                      |             |
|--------------------------|------------------|----------------------|-------------|
| Bene <sup>ficus</sup> ,  | beneficentior,   | beneficentissimus,   | beneficent. |
| Honor <sup>ficus</sup> , | honorificentior, | honorificentissimus, | honorable.  |
| Magn <sup>ficus</sup> ,  | magnificentior,  | magnificentissimus,  | splendid.   |
| Munif <sup>ficus</sup> , | munificentior,   | munificentissimus,   | liberal.    |
| Male <sup>ficus</sup> ,  | maleficentior,   | maleficentissimus,   | hurtful.    |

(b.) Adjectives in *dicens* and *völens* form their comparatives and superlatives regularly; but instead of those positives, forms in *dicus* and *völus* are more common; as,

*Maledicens* or *dicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*, *slanderosus*.

*Benevölens*, or *-völus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*, *benevolent*.

4. These five have regular comparatives, but irregular superlatives:—

|                 |            |                         |          |
|-----------------|------------|-------------------------|----------|
| Dexter,         | dexterior, | dextrimus,              | right.   |
| Extēra, (fem.)  | exterior,  | extrēmus, or extimus,   | outward. |
| Postēra, (fem.) | posterior, | postrēmus, or postimus, | hind.    |
| Inferus,        | inferior,  | infimus, or imus,       | below.   |
| Supērus,        | superior,  | suprēmus, or summus,    | above.   |

REMARK 1. The nominative singular of *postēra* does not occur in the masculine, and that of *extēra* wants good authority.

5. The following are very irregular in comparison:—

|         |            |                |                 |          |           |  |  |
|---------|------------|----------------|-----------------|----------|-----------|--|--|
| Bōnus,  | mellior,   | optimus,       | good,           | better,  | best.     |  |  |
| Mālus,  | pējor,     | peſsimus,      | bad,            | worse,   | worst.    |  |  |
| Magnus, | mājor,     | maximus,       | great,          | greater, | greatest. |  |  |
| Parvus, | minor,     | minimus,       | little,         | less,    | least.    |  |  |
| Multus, | —          | plurimus,      | much,           | more,    | most.     |  |  |
| Multa,  | —          | plurima,       |                 |          |           |  |  |
| Multum, | plus,*     | plurimum,      |                 |          |           |  |  |
| Nēquam, | nequior,   | nequissimus,   | worthless, etc. |          |           |  |  |
| Frūgi,  | frugalior, | frugalissimus, | frugal, etc.    |          |           |  |  |

REM. 2. All these, except *magnus*, whose regular forms are contracted, either form their comparatives and superlatives from obsolete adjectives, or take them from other words of similar signification.

## DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

§ 126. 1. Seven adjectives want the positive:—

|                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Citerior, citimus, nearer.   | Prior, primus, former.     |
| Deterior, deterrimus, worse. | Propior, proximus, nearer. |
| Interior, intimus, inner.    | Ultior, ultimus, farther.  |
| Ociior, ocissimus, swifter.  |                            |

\* See § 110.

## 2. Eight want the terminational comparative :—

Consultus, consultissimus, *skilful*.  
 Inclūtus, inclūtissimus, *renowned*.  
 Invictus, invictissimus, *invincible*.  
 Invītus, invītissimus, *unwilling*.  
 Merītus, merītissimus, (very rare,) *deserving*.

Par, parissimus, (very rare), *equal*.  
 Persuāsus, persuasissimus (neuter), *persuaded*.  
 Sacer, sacrerrimus, *sacred*.

## 3. Eight have very rarely the terminational comparative :—

Apricus, apricissimus, *sunny*.  
 Bellus, bellissimus, *fine*.  
 Cōmis, comissimus, *courteous*.  
 Diversus, diversissimus, *different*.

Falsus, falsissimus, *false*.  
 Fidus, fidissimus, *faithful*.  
 Nōvus, novissimus, *new*.  
 Vētus, veterrimus, *old*.

## 4. The following want the terminational superlative :—

Adolescens, adolescentior, *young*.  
 Agrestis, agrestior, *rustic*.  
 Alacer, alacrior, *active*.  
 Ater, atrior, *black*.  
 Cæcus, cæcior, *blind*.  
 Dēsēs, desidiōr, *inactive*.  
 Diurnus, diurnior, *lasting*.  
 Infinitus, infinitior, *unlimited*.  
 Ingens, ingentior, *great*.  
 Jejūnus, jejuniōr, *fasting*.  
 Juvēnis, juniōr, *young*.  
 Licēs, licentior, *unrestrained*.  
 Longinquus, longinquior, *distant*.  
 Opimus, opimior, *rich*.

Proclivis, proclivior, *sloping*.  
 Prōnus, pronior, *bending down*.  
 Protervus, protervior, *violent*.  
 ——— sequior, *worse*.  
 Propinquus, propinquior, *near*.  
 Salūtāris, salutarior, *salutary*.  
 Sātis, sufficiens; satius, *preferable*.  
 Sātūr, saturior, *full*.  
 Sēnex, senior, *old*.  
 Silvestris, silvestrior, *woody*.  
 Sinister, sinisterior, *left*.  
 Supīnus, supīnior, *lying on the back*.  
 Surdus, surdior, *deaf*.  
 Tēres, teretior, *round*.

REMARK 1. The superlative of *juvēnis* and *adolescens* is supplied by *minimus nātus*, youngest; and that of *sēnex* by *maximus nātus*, oldest. The comparatives *minor nātus* and *māior nātus* sometimes also occur.

REM. 2. Most adjectives also in *ilis*, *ilīs*, *ālīs*, and *blīs*, have no terminational superlative.

5. Many variable adjectives have no terminational comparative or superlative. Such are,

(a.) Adjectives in *bundus*, *imus*, *inus* (except *divinus*), *drus*, most in *ivus*, and in *us* pure (except *-guus*.) Yet *arduus*, *assiduus*, *egregius*, *exiguus*, *industrius*, *perpetuus*, *pous*, *strenuus*, and *vacuus*, have sometimes a terminational comparison. So, dropping *i*, *noziōr*, *innociōr*, *sobrior*.

(b.) The following—*almus*, *calvus*, *cānus*, *clcur*, *claudus*, *degtēner*, *delirius*, *dispar*, *egēnus*, *impar*, *impiger*, *invidus*, *lācer*, *mēmōr*, *mirus*, *nūdus*, *præcox*, *præcātus*, *rādīs*, *salvus*, *scopēs*, *superstes*, *vulgāris*, and some others.

§ 127. 1. The comparative and superlative may also be formed by prefixing to the positive the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxime*, most; as, *idoneus*, fit; *magis idoneus*, *maxime idoneus*.

2. Various degrees of a quality above the positive are expressed by *admōdum*, *aliquanto*, *apprīme*, *bēne*, *imprimis*, *multum*, *oppido*, *perquam*, and *valde*, and also by *per* compounded with the positive; as, *difficilis*, difficult; *perdifficilis*, very difficult. To a few adjectives *præ* is in like manner prefixed; as, *prædūrus*, very hard.

3. The force of the comparative is increased by prefixing *etiam*, even, still, or yet; and that of both comparative and superlative, by



prefixing *longe* or *multo*, much, far; as, *longe nobilissimus*; *longe melior*; *iter multo facilius*; *multo maxima pars*.

4. *Vel*, 'even', and *quam*, with or without *possum*, 'as much as possible', before the superlative, render it more emphatic; as, *Cicero vel optimus oratorum Romanorum*. *Quam maximum potest militum numerum colligit*; *quam doctissimus*, extremely learned; *quam celerrime*, as speedily as possible.

NOTE 1. Instead of *quam* with *possum*, *quantus* is sometimes used, in the same case as the superlative; as, *Quantis maximis potuit itineribus contendit*.

NOTE 2. *Uti*, with or without *omnium*, is sometimes added to superlatives to increase their force; as, *Hoc ego uno omnium plurimum ator*. Cic. *Urben agram mihi amicissimam declinavi*, Id. It is used in like manner with *excello*.

5. All adjectives whose signification admits of different degrees, if they have no terminational comparison, may be compared by means of adverbs.

6. Instead of the comparative and superlative degrees, the positive with the prepositions *pro*, *ante*, *prater*, or *supra*, is sometimes used; as, *pro nobis beatius*, happier than we. Cic. *Ante alias pulchritudine insignis*, most beautiful. Liv. Sometimes the preposition is used in connection with the superlative; as, *Ante alias pulcherrimus omnes*. Virg.

7. Among adjectives which denote an invariable quality or limitation, and which, therefore, cannot be compared, are those denoting matter, time, number, possession, country, part, interrogation; also compounds of *jugum*, *sonnus*, *gero*, and *fero*, and many others.

## DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 128. Derivative adjectives are formed chiefly from nouns, from other adjectives, and from verbs.

I. Those derived from nouns and adjectives are called *denominatives*. The following are the principal classes:—

1. (a.) The termination *ilis*, added to the root, denotes the material of which a thing is made, and sometimes similarity; as, *aureus*, golden; *argentus*, of silver; *ligneus*, wooden; *vitreus*, of glass; *virginus*, maidenly; from *aurum*, *argentum*, etc. See § 9, Rem. 3.

(b.) Some adjectives of this kind have a double form in *neus* and *nus*; as, *eburneus* and *eburnus*, of ivory.

(c.) The termination *inus* has the same meaning; as, *adamantinus*, of adamant; *cedrinus*, of cedar; from *adamas* and *cedrus*. So, also, *enus*; as, *tetrinus*, of earth, from *terra*.

(d.) The termination *ilis* or *ius* (Greek *ιος*), and also *icus*, belong to adjectives formed from Greek names of men, and denote 'of' or 'pertaining to'; as, *Achilleus*, *Sophocleus*, *Aristotelius*, *Platonius*; *Pythagoreus* and *Pythagoricus*; *Homerius* and *Homericus*. Names in *ias* make adjectives in *iucus*; as, *Archias*, *Archiacus*. Sometimes, though rarely in the purest Latin authors, adjectives in *eus* or *ius* are formed from Latin names; as, *Marcellia* or *-ea*, a festival in honor of the Marcelli.

2. (a.) The terminations *alis*, *aris*, *arius*, *ilis*, *atilis*, *icinus*, *icus*, *ius*, *ilis*, and *inus*, denote 'belonging' 'pertaining,' or 'relating to'; as, *caputalis*, relating to the life; from *caput*,

So *comitiâlis*, *regâlîs*; *Apollinâris*, *consulâris*, *populâris*; *argentariûs*; *civîlis*, *hostîlis*, *juvenîlis*; *aquatîlis*, *fluvîatîlis*; *tribunicîus*, *patricîus*; *bellicus*, *civîcus*, *Germanicus*; *accusatorîus*, *imperatorîus*, *regîus*; *Hectorîus*; *canîus*, *equîus*, *ferîus*, *masculîus*; from *comitia*, *rex*, *Apollo*, *consul*, *populus*, *argentum*, *civis*, etc.

(b.) The termination *îlis* sometimes expresses character; as, *hostîlis*, hostile; *puerîlis*, boyish; from *hostis* and *puer*.

(c.) The termination *îus* belongs especially to derivatives from names of animals, and other living beings.

3. The termination *ariûs*, as a substantive, scil. *fâber*, etc., generally denotes profession or occupation; as, *argentariûs*, a silversmith; from *argentum*;—*coriariûs*, *statuariûs*; from *corium* and *statua*. When added to numeral adjectives, it denotes how many equal parts a thing contains. See § 121, 4.

4. The terminations *dens* and *lentus* denote abundance, fullness; as, *animîus*, full of courage; *fraudulentus*, given to fraud; from *animus* and *fraus*. So *lapidîus*, *vinîus*, *portuîus*, *turbulentus*, *sanguinolentus*, *violentus*. Before *lentus*, a connecting vowel is inserted, which is commonly *ê*, but sometimes *o*.

NOTE.—Adjectives of this class are called *amplificatives*. See § 104, 12.

5. From adjectives are formed *diminutives* in *ulus*, *cûlus*, etc., in the same manner as from nouns; as, *dulcicûlus*, sweetish; from *dulcis*. So *lentulus*, *misellulus*, *parvulus*, etc. See § 100, 3, and § 104, 11. Diminutives are sometimes formed from comparatives; as, *majoriculus*, somewhat great, somewhat hard, etc. Double diminutives are formed from *paucus*, viz *pauvulus* and *pauvillulus*; and from *bonus*, (*bênus*) are formed *bellus* and *bellulus*.

6. (a.) From the names of places, and especially of towns, are derived *patrial* adjectives in *ensis*, *îus*, *as*, and *ânus*, denoting of or belonging to such places.

(b.) Thus from *Cannæ* is formed *Cannensis*; from *Sulmo*, *Sulmonensis*. In like manner, from *castra* and *circus* come *castrensis*, *circensis*. But *Athênæ* makes *Athênensis*; and some Greek towns in *ia* and *êa* drop *i* and *e* in their adjectives; as, *Antiochensis*, *Nicomedensis*.

(c.) Those in *îus* are formed from names of places ending in *ia* and *ium*; as, *Aricia*, *Aricîus*; *Caudium*, *Caudîus*; *Capitolium*, *Capitolîus*; *Latium*, *Latîus*. Some names of towns, of Greek origin, with other terminations, also form adjectives in *îus*; as, *Tarentum*, *Tarentîus*.

(d.) Most of those in *as* are formed from nouns in *us*; some from nouns in *a*; as, *Arpinum*, *Arpînas*; *Cispêna*, *Cispênas*.

(e.) Those in *ânus* are formed from names of towns of the first declension, or from certain common nouns; as, *Alba*, *Albânus*; *Rôma*, *Românus*; *Ôma*, *Ômânus*; *Thêba*, *Thêbânus*; also from some of the second declension; as, *Tusculûm*, *Tusculânus*; *Fundû*, *Fundânus*;—*fons*, *fontânus*; *mons*, *montânus*; *urbis*, *urbânus*; *oppidum*, *oppidânus*.

(f.) Adjectives with the terminations *ânus*, *iânus*, and *îus* are formed from names of men; as, *Sulla*, *Sullânus*; *Tullius*, *Tullîanus*; *Jugurtha*, *Jugurthîus*.

(g.) Greek names of towns in *pôlis* form *patrial* adjectives in *politânus*; as, *Neapôlis*, *Neapolitânus*.

(h.) Greek names of towns generally form *patrials* in *îus*; as, *Rhodus*, *Rhodîus*; *Lacedæmon*, *Lacedæmoniûs*;—but those in *a* form them in *æus*; as, *Larissa*, *Larissæus*; *Smyna*, *Smynæus*.

(i.) From many *patrials*; as, *Britannus*, *Gallus*, *Afer*, *Persa*, *Arabs*, etc., adjectives are formed in *icus* and *ius*; as, *Britannicus*, *Gallicus*, *Africus*, *Persicus*, *Arabicus*; so *Syrus*, *Syrius*; *Thrax*, *Thracius*.

7. A large class of derivative adjectives, though formed from nouns, have the terminations of perfect participles. They generally signify *wearing* or *furnished with*; as,

*alatus*, winged; *barbatus*, bearded; *galeatus*, helmeted; *auritus*, long-eared; *turrîus*, turreted; *cornutus*, horned; from *ala*, *barba*, *galea*, *auris*, etc.

8. The termination *aneus*, annexed to the root of an adjective or participle in *us*, expresses a resemblance to the quality denoted by the primitive; as, *supervacaneus*, of a superfluous nature.

§ 129. II. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbal* adjectives. Such are the following classes:—

1. The termination *bundus*, added to the first root of the verb, with a connecting vowel, which is commonly that of the verb, (see § 150, 5,) has the general meaning of the present participle; as,

*errābundus*, *moribundus*, from *erro*, *mori*, equivalent to *errans*, *moriens*.

(a.) In many the meaning is somewhat strengthened; as, *gratulābundus*, full of congratulations; *lacrimābundus*, weeping profusely.

(b.) Most verbals in *bundus* are from verbs of the first conjugation, a few from those of the third, and but one from the second and fourth respectively, viz. *puābundus* and *lascivibundus*.

(c.) Some verbal adjectives in *cundus* have a similar sense; as, *rubicundus*, *verecundus*; from *rubeo* and *vereor*.

2. The termination *idus*, added to the root, especially of neuter verbs, denotes the quality or state expressed by the verb; as,

*algidus*, cold; *calidus*, warm; *madidus*, moist; *rapidus*, rapid; from *algeo*, *caleo*, *madeo*, *rapio*.

3. The termination *uus*, also, denotes the quality expressed by the verb; and adjectives in *uus* derived from active verbs take a passive meaning; as,

*congruus*, agreeing, from *congruo*; so, *assiduus*, *nocuus*, *innocuus*:—*irriguus*, well watered; *conspiciuus*, visible; from *irri*, *conspicio*.

4. (a.) The terminations *ilis* and *bilis*, added to the root of a verb, with its connecting vowel, denote passively, capability, or desert; as,

*amabilis*, worthy to be loved; *credibilis*, deserving credit; *placabilis*, easy to be appeased; *agilis*, active; *ductilis*, ductile; from *amo*, *credo*, *placo*; *ago*, *duco*. They are rarely active; as, *horribilis*, *terribilis*, *ferilis*; *atr per cuncta meabilis*. Plin.

(b.) In adjectives of these forms, derived from verbs of the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is *i*; sometimes, also, in those from verbs of the second conjugation, in these and other forms, *i* is used instead of *e*; as, *horribilis*, *terribilis*, from *horreo* and *terreo*.

(c.) These terminations, with the connecting vowel, are sometimes added to the third root; as, *flexilis*, *flexibilis*; *coctilis*, *coctibilis*, from *fecto* (*flea*-), etc.

5. The termination *icius* or *itius*, added to the third root of the verb, has a passive sense; as, *fictitius*, feigned; *conductitius*, to be hired; from *fin*go (*fict*-), etc.

6. The termination *ax*, added to the root of a verb, denotes an inclination, often one that is faulty; as,

*audax*, audacious; *loquax*, talkative; *rapax* rapacious; from *audeo*, *loquor*, *rapio*.

7. The termination *ivus*, annexed to the third root of a verb, denotes fitness or ability to produce the action expressed by the verb; as, *disjunctivus*, disjunctive, from *disjungo*.

8. Verbals in *tor* and *trix*, (see § 102, 6, (a.)), are often used as adjectives, especially in poetry; as, *victor exercitus*, *victrices lîtera*. In the plural they become adjectives of three terminations; as, *victôres*, *victrices*, *victricia*. So also *hospes*, especially by the later poets, is used as an adjective, having *hospita* in the feminine singular and also in the neuter plural.

§ 130. III. Adjectives derived from participles, and retaining their form, are called *participial adjectives*; as, *âmans*, fond of; *doctus*, learned.

IV. Some adjectives are derived from adverbs; as, *crastinus*, of to-morrow; *hodiernus*, of this day; from *cras* and *hodie*.

V. Some adjectives are derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, contrary, from *contra*; *postêrus*, subsequent, from *post*.

## COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 131. Compound adjectives are formed variously:—

1. Of two nouns; as, *capripes*, goat-footed—of *câper* and *pes*; *ignicômus*, having fiery hair—of *ignis* and *côma*.

NOTE.—See, respecting the connecting short *i*, in case the first part of the compound is a noun or an adjective, § 103, Rem. 1.

2. Of a noun and an adjective; as, *noctivagus*, wandering in the night—of *nox* and *vagus*. So *lucifugax*, shunning the light—of *lux* and *fugax*.

3. Of a noun and a verb; as, *corniger*, bearing horns—of *cornu* and *gêro*; *letifer*, bringing death—of *lêtum* and *fêro*. So *carnivôrus*, *causidicus*, *ignivômus*, *lucifugus*, *particeps*.

4. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *âquævus*, of the same age—of *âquus* and *ævum*; *celeripes*, swift-footed—of *cêler* and *pes*. So *centimînus*, *decennis*, *magnanimus*, *misericors*, *unanîmis*.

5. Of two adjectives; as, *centumgeminus*, a hundred-fold; *multicivus*, having many cavities; *quintusdecimûs*, the fifteenth.

6. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *brevilôquens*, speaking briefly—of *brêvis* and *lôquor*; *magnificus*, magnificent—of *magnus* and *fâcio*.

7. Of an adjective and a termination; as, *qualiscumque*, *quocumque*, *uterque*.

8. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *bicorpor*, two-bodied—of *bis* and *corpus*.

9. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *maledicax*, slanderous—of *mâle* and *dîcax*. So *antemeridiânus*, before mid-day.

10. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *beneficus*, beneficent—of *bêne* and *fâcio*; *malevôlus*, malevolent—of *mâle* and *vôlo*.

11. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *âmens*, mad—of *a* and *mens*. So *conors*, *decôlor*, *deformis*, *implûmis*, *inermis*.

12. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *concâvus*, concave; *infidus*, unfaithful. So *improvidus*, *percârus*, *prædîves*, *subalbidus*.

13. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *continûs*, uninterrupted—of *con* and *teneo*; *insciens*, ignorant—of *in* and *scio*. So *præcipuus*, *promiscuus*, *subtilis*, *superstes*.

REMARK. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to the consonant which follows it; as, *imprudens*—of *in* and *præsumo*. See § 126; and cf. § 103, R. 2.

## PRONOUNS.

§ 132. 1. A pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a noun.

2. There are eighteen simple pronouns:—

|                                    |                                |                                    |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Ego, <i>I</i> .                    | Hic, <i>this, the latter</i> . | Suus, <i>his, hers, its</i> , etc. |
| Tu, <i>thou</i> .                  | Is, <i>that or he</i> .        | Cujus? <i>whose?</i>               |
| Sui, <i>of himself</i> , etc.      | Quis? <i>who?</i>              | Noster, <i>our</i> .               |
| Ille, <i>that, the former</i> .    | Qui, <i>who</i> .              | Vester, <i>your</i> .              |
| Ipse, <i>himself</i> .             | Meus, <i>my</i> .              | Nostras, <i>of our country</i> .   |
| Iste, <i>that, that of yours</i> . | Tuus, <i>thy</i> .             | Cujas? <i>of what country?</i>     |

3. *Ego*, *tu*, and *sui*, and commonly also *quis* and its compounds, are substantives: the other pronouns, both simple and compound, are adjectives, but are often by ellipsis used as substantives.

4. *Ego*, *tu*, and *sui* are commonly called *personal pronouns*. They are a species of appellatives (§ 26, 8,) of general application. *Ego* is used by a speaker to designate himself; *tu*, to designate the person whom he addresses. Hence *ego* is of the first person, *tu* of the second. (§ 35, 2.) *Sui* is of the third person, and has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tu* are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person.

5. The remaining pronouns, except *quis* and its compounds, are adjectives, as they serve to limit the meaning of substantives; and they are pronouns, because, like substantive pronouns, they may designate any object in certain situations or circumstances.

6. *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, and *cujus*, have the same extent of signification as the pronouns from which they are derived, and are equivalent to the genitive cases of their primitives.

7. Pronouns, like substantives and adjectives, are declined; but most of them want the vocative. *Sui*, from the nature of its signification, wants also the nominative in both numbers.

8. The substantive pronouns take the gender of the objects which they denote. The adjective pronouns, like adjectives, have three genders.

## SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 133. The substantive pronouns are thus declined:—

## Singular.

|                           |                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| N. ē'-gō, <i>I</i> .      | tū, <i>thou</i> .         | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> su'-i, <i>of himself, herself, itself</i>,<br/> alb'-i,* <i>to himself, etc.</i><br/> sē, <i>himself</i>, etc. </div> </div> |
| G. mē'-i, <i>of me</i> .  | tu'-i, <i>of thee</i> .   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| D. mī'-hī, <i>to me</i> . | tīb'-ī,* <i>to thee</i> . |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Ac. mē, <i>me</i> .       | tē, <i>thee</i> .         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| V. —                      | tū, <i>O thou</i> .       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Ab. mē, <i>with me</i> .  | tē, <i>with thee</i> .    | sē, <i>with himself, etc.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

\* See § 19, 1, Hxo.

## Plural.

|                         |                    |                        |
|-------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| N. nōs, we.             | vōs, ye or you.    |                        |
| G. { nos'-trum } of us. | ves'-trum or       | su'-i, of themselves.  |
|                         | ves'-tri,          |                        |
| D. nō'-bis, to us.      | vō'-bis, to you.   | slb'-i, to themselves. |
| Ac. nōs, us.            | vōs, you.          | sē, themselves.        |
| V.                      | vōs, O ye or you.  |                        |
| Ab. nō'-bis, with us.   | vō'-bis, with you. | sē, with themselves.   |

REMARK 1. *Mē* and *mī* are ancient forms for *mīhi*. So *min'* for *mīhine*, Pers. 1, 2.

REM. 2. The syllable *mei* is sometimes annexed to the substantive pronouns, in an intensive sense, either with or without *ipse*; as, *egomet*, I myself; *mihimei ipse*, for myself. It is not annexed, however, to the genitives plural, nor to *tu* in the nominative or vocative. In these cases of *tu*, *tūde* or *tudemet* is used. In the accusative and ablative the reduplicated forms *mēmē* and *tētē* in the singular, and *sēsē* in both numbers, are employed intensively. *Mepte*, intensive, *meē* and *teē*, for *me* and *te*, and *mīs* and *tīs* for *mei* and *tui*, occur in the comic writers.

3. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are contracted from *nostrōrum*, *nostrārūm*, and *vestrōrum*, *vestrārūm*. Respecting the difference in the use of *nostrum* and *nostrī*, *vestrum* and *vestrī*, see § 212, R. 2, N. 2.

4. The preposition *cum* is affixed to the ablative of these pronouns in both numbers; as, *mecum*, *nobiscum*, etc. Cf. § 186, R. 1.

## ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 134. Adjective pronouns may be divided into the following classes:—*demonstrative*, *intensive*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *indefinite*, *possessive*, and *patrial*.

NOTE. Some pronouns belong to two of these classes.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Demonstrative pronouns are such as specify what object is meant.

They are *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, and *is*, and their compounds, and are thus declined:—

| Singular.      |            |            | Plural.      |              |              |
|----------------|------------|------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| M.             | F.         | N.         | M.           | F.           | N.           |
| N. il'-lĕ,     | il'-lā,    | il'-lūd,   | il'-li,      | il'-læ,      | il'-lā,      |
| G. il'-lĕ-us,* | il'-lĕ-us, | il'-lĕ-us, | il'-lō'-rum, | il'-lā'-rum, | il'-lō'-rum, |
| D. il'-li,     | il'-li,    | il'-li,    | il'-lis,     | il'-lis,     | il'-lis,     |
| Ac. il'-lum,   | il'-lam,   | il'-lūd,   | il'-lōs,     | il'-lās,     | il'-lā,      |
| V. il'-lĕ,     | il'-lā,    | il'-lūd,   | il'-li,      | il'-læ,      | il'-lā,      |
| Ab. il'-lō.    | il'-lā.    | il'-lō.    | il'-lis.     | il'-lis.     | il'-lis.     |

\* See § 15, 1.

*Iste* is declined like *ille*.

| Singular.  |         |         | Plural. |         |         |
|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| M.         | F.      | N.      | M.      | F.      | N.      |
| N. hīc,    | hæc,    | hōc,    | hī,     | hæ,     | hæc,    |
| G. hū-jūs, | hū-jūs, | hū-jūs, | hō-rum, | hā-rum, | hō-rum, |
| D. huic*,  | huic,   | huic,   | his,    | his,    | his,    |
| Ac. hunc,  | hanc,   | hōc,    | hōs,    | hās,    | hæc,    |
| V. hīc,    | hæc,    | hōc,    | hī,     | hæ,     | hæc,    |
| Ab. hōc.   | hāc.    | hōc.    | his.    | his.    | his.    |

| Singular.  |        |        | Plural.         |                 |                 |
|------------|--------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M.         | F.     | N.     | M.              | F.              | N.              |
| N. is,     | e'-ā,  | īd,    | ī'-ī,           | e'-æ,           | e'-ā,           |
| G. ē-jūs,  | ē-jūs, | ē-jūs, | e-ō-rum,        | e-ā-rum,        | e-ō-rum,        |
| D. e'-ī,   | e'-ī,  | e'-ī,  | ī'-is or e'-is, | ī'-is or e'-is, | ī'-is or e'-is, |
| Ac. e'-um, | e'-am, | īd,    | e'-ōs,          | e'-ās,          | e'-ā,           |
| V. —       | —      | —      | —               | —               | —               |
| Ab. e'-ō.  | e'-ā.  | e'-ō.  | ī'-is or e'-is. | ī'-is or e'-is. | ī'-is or e'-is. |

REMARK 1. Instead of *ille*, *ollus* was anciently used; whence *olli* masc. plur. in Virgil. *Illæ* fem., for *illius* and *illi*, is found in Lucretius and Cato, as also in Cato, *hæ* for *huic* fem.; *hice* for *hī*, and *hæc* for *hæ* in Plautus and Terence. *Im* for *eum*, is found in the Twelve Tables; *eū* for *ei*, and *ibus* and *ibus* for *iis*, in Plautus; *ecæ*, fem., for *ei*, and *cābus* for *iis*, in Cato.

REM. 2. From *ecce*, lo! with *ille*, *iste*, and *is*, are formed, in colloquial language, nom., *ecca*; *eccilla*, *eccillud*; acc. sing., *eccum*, *eccam*; *eccillum* (by syncope *ellum*), *eccillam*; *eccillam*; acc. plur., *eccos*, *ecca*.

REM. 3. *Istic* and *illic* are compounded of *iste* *hic*, and *ille* *hic*; or, as some say, of *iste* *ce*, and *ille* *ce*. The former sometimes retains the aspirate, as *isthic*. They are more emphatic than *ille* and *iste*.

*Istic* is thus declined:—

| Singular.     |           |                      | Plural. |          |          |
|---------------|-----------|----------------------|---------|----------|----------|
| M.            | F.        | N.                   | M.      | F.       | N.       |
| N. is'-tīc,   | is'-tæc,  | is'-tōc, or is'-tūc, | N. —    | is'-tæc, | —        |
| Ac. is'-tunc, | is'-tanc, | is'-tōc, or is'-tūc, | Ac. —   | —        | is'-tæc. |
| Ab. is'-tōc.  | is'-tāc.  | is'-tōc.             |         |          |          |

*Illic* is declined in the same manner.

REM. 4. *Ce*, intensive, is sometimes added to the several cases of *hic*, and rarely to some cases of the other demonstrative pronouns; as, *huiusce*, *huncce*, *hancce*, *hocce*, *hice*, *hæce* or *hæc*, *horunc*, *harunce*, or *harunc*, *hosce*, *hasce*, *hisce*; *illiusce*, *illace*, *illosce*, *illasce*, *illisce*; *istace*, *istisce*; *ejusce*, *isice*. When *ne*, interrogative, is also annexed, *ce* becomes *ci*; as, *hæccine*, *hoscine*, *hiscine*; *istuccine*, *istaccine*, *istoscine*; *illiccine*, *illancine*.

REM. 5. *Mōdi*, the genitive of *mōdus*, annexed to the genitive singular of demonstrative and relative pronouns, imparts to them the signification of adjectives of quality; as, *huiusmōdi* or *huiuscemōdi*, like *talis*, of this sort, such; *illiusmōdi* and *istiusmōdi*, of that sort; *cujusmōdi*, of what sort, like *qualis*; *cu-*

\* See § 9, 5.

*juscemōdī, cujusquēmodī, cujusmodicumque*, of what kind soever; *cujusdammodī*, of some kind. So also *istimōdī, cuimōdī* and *cuiusmodī*, instead of *istiusmodī, cujusmodī*, etc.

REM. 6. The suffix *dem* is annexed to *is*, forming *idem*, "the same," which is thus declined:—

| <i>Singular.</i> |                     |                     |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
|                  | <i>M.</i>           | <i>F.</i>           | <i>N.</i>           |
| <i>N.</i>        | <i>ī</i> -dem,      | <i>e</i> '-ā-dem,   | <i>ī</i> '-dem,     |
| <i>G.</i>        | <i>e</i> -jus'-dem, | <i>e</i> -jus'-dem, | <i>e</i> -jus'-dem, |
| <i>D.</i>        | <i>e</i> -ī'-dem,   | <i>e</i> -ī'-dem,   | <i>e</i> -ī'-dem,   |
| <i>Ac.</i>       | <i>e</i> -un'-dem,  | <i>e</i> -an'-dem,  | <i>ī</i> '-dem,     |
| <i>V.</i>        |                     |                     |                     |
| <i>Ab.</i>       | <i>e</i> -ō'-dem.   | <i>e</i> -ā'-dem.   | <i>e</i> -ō'-dem.   |

| <i>Plural.</i> |                                          |                                          |                                          |
|----------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
|                | <i>M.</i>                                | <i>F.</i>                                | <i>N.</i>                                |
| <i>N.</i>      | <i>ī</i> -ī'-dem,                        | <i>e</i> -æ'-dem,                        | <i>e</i> '-ā-dem,                        |
| <i>G.</i>      | <i>e</i> -o-run'-dem,                    | <i>e</i> -a-run'-dem,                    | <i>e</i> -o-run'-dem,                    |
| <i>D.</i>      | <i>e</i> -is'-dem, or <i>i</i> -is'-dem, | <i>e</i> -is'-dem, or <i>i</i> -is'-dem, | <i>e</i> -is'-dem, or <i>i</i> -is'-dem, |
| <i>Ac.</i>     | <i>e</i> -os'-dem,                       | <i>e</i> -as'-dem,                       | <i>e</i> '-ā-dem,                        |
| <i>V.</i>      |                                          |                                          |                                          |
| <i>Ab.</i>     | <i>e</i> -is'-dem, or <i>i</i> -is'-dem. | <i>e</i> -is'-dem, or <i>i</i> -is'-dem. | <i>e</i> -is'-dem, or <i>i</i> -is'-dem. |

NOTE 1. In compound pronouns, *n* before *d* is changed into *ñ*; as, *eundem*, *corundem*, etc.

NOTE 2. In Sallust *isdem*, and in Palladius *hisdem* occur for *isdem*; and Ennius in Cicero has *eodemnet* for *eddem*.

## INTENSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 135. Intensive pronouns are such as serve to render an object emphatic.

To this class belong *ipse*, and the intensive compounds already mentioned. See §§ 133, R. 2, and 134, R. 4.

*Ipse* is compounded of *is* and the suffix *pse*, and is thus declined:—

| <i>Singular.</i>    |           |           | <i>Plural.</i> |            |            |
|---------------------|-----------|-----------|----------------|------------|------------|
| <i>M.</i>           | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>M.</i>      | <i>F.</i>  | <i>N.</i>  |
| <i>N.</i> ip-sē,    | ip-sā,    | ip-sum,   | ip-sī,         | ip-sæ,     | ip-sā,     |
| <i>G.</i> ip-sī-us, | ip-sī-us, | ip-sī-us, | ip-sō-rum,     | ip-sā-rum, | ip-sō-rum, |
| <i>D.</i> ip-sī,    | ip-sī,    | ip-sī,    | ip-sis,        | ip-sis,    | ip-sis,    |
| <i>Ac.</i> ip-sum,  | ip-sam,   | ip-sum,   | ip-sōs,        | ip-sās,    | ip-sā,     |
| <i>V.</i> ip-sē,    | ip-sā,    | ip-sum,   | ip-sī,         | ip-sæ,     | ip-sā,     |
| <i>Ab.</i> ip-sō.   | ip-sā.    | ip-sō.    | ip-sia.        | ip-sia.    | ip-sia.    |

REMARK 1. *Ipse* is commonly subjoined to nouns or pronouns; as, *Jupiter ipse*, *tu ipse*, Jupiter himself, etc.; and hence is sometimes called the *adjective* pronoun.

REM. 2. A nominative *ipse*, occurs in early writers, and a superlative *ipsissimus*, his very self, is found in Plautus.

REM. 3. In old writers the *is* of *ipse* is declined, while *pse* remains undeclined; as, *eapse*, (nom. and abl.), *eampse*, and *eapse*, instead of *ipsa*, *ipsam*, and *ipso*. So also *reapse*, i. e. *re eapse*, "in fact."



## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 136. Relative pronouns are such as relate to a preceding noun or pronoun.

1. They are *qui*, who, and the compounds *quicumque* and *quisquis*, whoever. The latter are called *general* relatives.

2. In a general sense, the demonstrative pronouns are often relatives; but the name is commonly appropriated to those above specified. They serve to introduce a proposition, limiting or explaining a preceding noun or pronoun, to which they relate, and which is called the *antecedent*.

*Qui* is thus declined :—

| Singular.            |                   |                   | Plural.           |                   |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| M.                   | F.                | N.                | M.                | F.                | N.                |
| N. <i>qui</i> ,      | <i>quæ</i> ,      | <i>quod</i> ,     | <i>qui</i> ,      | <i>quæ</i> ,      | <i>quæ</i> ,      |
| G. <i>cū-jūs</i> ,   | <i>cū-jūs</i> ,   | <i>cū-jūs</i> ,   | <i>quō-rum</i> ,  | <i>quā-rum</i> ,  | <i>quō-rum</i> ,  |
| D. <i>cui</i> *,     | <i>cui</i> ,      | <i>cui</i> ,      | <i>quī-būs</i> ,  | <i>quī-būs</i> ,  | <i>quī-būs</i> ,  |
| Ac. <i>quem</i> ,    | <i>quam</i> ,     | <i>quod</i> ,     | <i>quōs</i> ,     | <i>quās</i> ,     | <i>quæ</i> ,      |
| V. <u>          </u> | <u>          </u> | <u>          </u> | <u>          </u> | <u>          </u> | <u>          </u> |
| Ab. <i>quō</i> .     | <i>quā</i> .      | <i>quō</i> .      | <i>quī-būs</i> .  | <i>quī-būs</i> .  | <i>quī-būs</i> .  |

REMARK 1. *Qui* is sometimes used for the ablative singular, in all genders, and rarely also for the ablative plural. To the ablatives *quo*, *qua*, *qui*, and *quibus*, *cum* is commonly annexed, cf. § 183, 4. Cicero uses *quicum* for *quodcum*, when an indefinite person is meant.

REM. 2. *Quis* (monosyllabic, § 9, R. 1), and *quis* are sometimes used in the dative and ablative plural for *quibus*. *Cujus* and *cui* were anciently written *qujūs* and *quoi*: and, instead of the genitive *cujus*, a relative adjective *cujus*, *a*, *um*, very rarely occurs.

3. *Quicumque*, (or *quicunque*), is declined like *qui*.

REM. 3. *Qui* is sometimes separated from *cumque* by the interposition of one or more words; as, *qua me cumque vocant terra*. Virg. A similar separation sometimes occurs in the other compounds of *cumque*.

4. *Quisquis* is thus declined :—

| Singular.              |                     |                    | Plural.                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| M.                     | F.                  | N.                 | M.                          |
| N. <i>quis-quis</i> ,  | <i>quis-quis</i> ,† | <i>quid-quid</i> , | N. <i>quī-quī</i> ,         |
| Ac. <i>quem-quem</i> , | <u>          </u>   | <i>quid-quid</i> , | D. <i>quī-bus-quī-bus</i> . |
| Ab. <i>quō-quō</i> .   | <i>quā-quā</i> .    | <i>quō-quō</i> .   |                             |

REM. 4. *Quicquid* is sometimes used for *quidquid*. *Quisquis* for *quisquis* occurs in Plautus; and *quidquid* is used adjectively in Cato R. R. 48.

\* See § 9, 5; and cf. § 206, (1.)

† Cf. § 187, R. (1.)

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 137. Interrogative pronouns are such as serve to inquire which of a number of objects is intended.

They are

|          |                       |             |                      |                                |
|----------|-----------------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Quis?    | } <i>who? what?</i>   | Ecquis?     | } <i>is any one?</i> | Cūjus? <i>whose?</i>           |
| Quisnam? |                       | Ecquisnam?  |                      | Cūjas? <i>of what country?</i> |
| Qui?     | } <i>which? what?</i> | Numquis?    |                      |                                |
| Quinam?  |                       | Numquisnam, |                      |                                |

1. *Quis* is commonly used substantively; *qui*, adjectively. The interrogative *qui* is declined like *qui* the relative.

*Quis* is thus declined:—

| Singular.  |         |         | Plural.   |           |           |
|------------|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| M.         | F.      | N.      | M.        | F.        | N.        |
| N. quis,   | quæ,    | quid,   | qui,      | quæ,      | quæ,      |
| G. cū-jūs, | cū-jūs, | cū-jūs, | quō'-rum, | quā'-rum, | quō'-rum, |
| D. cui,    | cui,    | cui,    | quī'-būs, | quī'-būs, | quī'-būs, |
| Ac. quem,  | quam,   | quid,   | quōs,     | quās,     | quæ,      |
| V. —       | —       | —       | —         | —         | —         |
| Ab. quō.   | quā.    | quō.    | quī'-būs. | quī'-būs. | quī'-būs. |

REMARK (1.) *Quis* is sometimes used by comic writers in the feminine, and even in the neuter. *Quisnam*, *quisque* and *quisquam* also occur as feminine.

REM. (2.) *Qui* is used for the ablative of *quis* in all genders, as it is for that of the relative *qui*. Cf. § 136, R. 1.

REM. (3.) *Quis* and *qui* have sometimes the signification of the indefinite pronoun *aliquis* (some one, any one), especially after the conjunctions *ec* (for *en*), *et*, *ne*, *neu*, *nisi*, *num*; and after relatives, as *quo*, *quanto*, etc. Sometimes *quis* and *qui* are used in the sense of *quidā*? what sort?

2. The compounds *quisnam* and *quinam* have respectively the signification and declension of the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*. In the poets *nam* sometimes stands before *quis*. Virg. G. 4, 445.

3. *Ecquis* and *numquis* are declined and used like *quis*; but are sometimes adjectives. Virg. Ecl. 10, 28: Cic. Att. 13, 8.

REM. (4.) *Ecquis* is sometimes found in the nominative singular feminine; and the neuter plural of *numquis* is *numqua*.

REM. (5.) *Ecquis* and *numquis* also occur, declined like the interrogative *qui*, and, like that, used adjectively.

4. *Ecquisnam* and *numquisnam* are declined like *ecquis*; but are found only in the singular;—the former in the nominative in all genders, and in the ablative masculine; the latter in the nominative masculine and accusative neuter. In the nominative feminine and in the ablative, the former is used adjectively.

5. The interrogative *cujus* is also defective:—

| <i>Singular.</i>    |           |           | <i>Plural.</i>      |
|---------------------|-----------|-----------|---------------------|
| <i>M.</i>           | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>F.</i>           |
| <i>N.</i> cū'-jūs,  | cū'-jā,   | cū'-jum,  | <i>N.</i> cū'-jæ,   |
| <i>Ac.</i> cū'-jum, | cū'-jam,  | _____     | <i>Ac.</i> cū'-jāa. |
| <i>Ab.</i> _____    | cū'-jā.   | _____     |                     |

6. *Cujas* is declined like an adjective of one termination; *cūjas*, *cujātis*. See § 139, 4.

NOTE. The interrogative pronouns are used not only in direct questions but in such dependent clauses also, as contain only an indirect question; as, e.g. in the direct question, *quis est?* who is he? in the indirect, *nescio quis sit*, I know not who he is. *Qui*, in this sense, is found for *quis*; as, *qui sit apertit*, he discloses who he is. Cf. § 265, N.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 138. Indefinite pronouns are such as denote an object in a general manner, without indicating a particular individual. They are

|                            |                               |                                     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Aliquis, some one.</i>  | <i>Quisquam, any one.</i>     | <i>Quidam, a certain one.</i>       |
| <i>Siquis, if any.</i>     | <i>Quispiam, some one.</i>    | <i>Quilibet, any one you</i>        |
| <i>Nēquis, lest any.</i>   | <i>Unusquisque, each.</i>     | <i>Quivis, please.</i>              |
| <i>Quisque, every one.</i> | <i>Aliquipiam, any, some.</i> | <i>Quis and qui, § 137, R. (3.)</i> |

NOTE. *Siquis* and *nequis* are commonly written separately, *si quis* and *ne quis*: so also *unus quisque*.

1. *Aliquis* is thus declined:—

| <i>Singular.</i>          |                |                       |
|---------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| <i>M.</i>                 | <i>F.</i>      | <i>N.</i>             |
| <i>N.</i> al'-i-quis,     | al'-i-qua,     | al'-i-quod, or -quid, |
| <i>G.</i> al-i-cū'-jus,   | al-i-cū'-jus,  | al-i-cū'-jus,         |
| <i>D.</i> al'-i-cui,      | al'-i-cui,     | al'-i-cui,            |
| <i>Ac.</i> al'-i-quem,    | al'-i-quam,    | al'-i-quod, or -quid, |
| <i>V.</i> _____           | _____          | _____                 |
| <i>Ab.</i> al'-i-quo.     | al'-i-quā.     | al'-i-quo.            |
| <i>Plural.</i>            |                |                       |
| <i>M.</i>                 | <i>F.</i>      | <i>N.</i>             |
| <i>N.</i> al'-i-qui,      | al'-i-quæ,     | al'-i-qua,            |
| <i>G.</i> al-i-quō'-rum,  | al-i-quā'-rum, | al-i-quō'-rum,        |
| <i>D.</i> a-liq'-uī-bus,* | a-liq'-uī-bus, | a-liq'-uī-bus,        |
| <i>Ac.</i> al'-i-quos,    | al'-i-quas,    | al'-i-qua,            |
| <i>V.</i> _____           | _____          | _____                 |
| <i>Ab.</i> a-liq'-uī-bus. | a-liq'-uī-bus. | a-liq'-uī-bus.        |

\* Pronounced a-līk'-uī-bus. See §§ 9, 4, and 21, 2.

2. *Siquis* and *nēquis* are declined in the same manner; but they sometimes have *quæ* in the fem. singular and neut. plural.

(a.) *Aliquis*, in the nominative singular masculine, is used both as a substantive and as an adjective;—*aliqui*, as an adjective, but is nearly obsolete. *Aliquis* in the fem. sing. occurs as an adjective in Lucretius, 4, 2, 84. *Siqui*, and *nēqui*, which are properly adjectives, are used also substantively for *siquis* and *nēquis*, and in the nominative singular masculine these two forms are equivalent. The ablatives *aliqui* and *siqui* also occur.

(b.) *Aliquid*, *siquid*, and *nēquid*, like *quid*, are used substantively; *aliquid*, etc., like *quod*, are used adjectively.

3. *Quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*, are declined like *quis*.

(a.) In the neuter singular, however, *quisque* has *quodque*, *quidque*, or *quicque*; *quisquam* has *quidquam* or *quicquam*; and *quispiam* has *quodpiam*, *quidpiam*, or *quippiam*. The forms *quidque* or *quicque*, *quidpiam* or *quippiam* are used substantively.

(b.) *Quisquam* wants the feminine (except *quamquam*, Plant. Mil. 4, 2, 68), and also the plural, and, with a few exceptions in Plautus, it is always used substantively, its place as an adjective being supplied by *ullus*. *Quispiam* is scarcely used in the plural, except in the nominative feminine, *quæpiam*.

4. *Unusquisque* is compounded of *unus* and *quisque*, which are often written separately, and both words are declined.

Thus *unusquisque*, *uniuscujusque*, *unicuique*, *unumquemque*, etc. The neuter is *unumquodque*, or *unumquidque*. It has no plural. *Unumquidquid* for *unumquidque* occurs in Plautus and Lucretius.

5. *Quidam*, *quilibet*, and *quisvis*, are declined like *qui*, except that they have both *quod* and *quid* in the neuter, the former used adjectively, the latter substantively.

NOTE. *Quidam* has usually *n* before *d* in the accusative singular and genitive plural; as, *quendam*, *quorundam*, etc. Cf. § 134, NOTE 1.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 139. 1. The possessive are derived from the genitives of the substantive pronouns, and of *quis*, and designate something belonging to their primitives.

They are *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, and *cujus*. *Meus*, *tuus*, and *suus*, are declined like *bonus*; but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine *mi*, and very rarely *meus*. Cf. § 105, R. 3. In late writers *mi* occurs also in the feminine and neuter.

2. *Cujus* also is declined like *bonus*; but is defective. See § 137, 5. It occurs only in early Latin and in legal phraseology.

3. *Noster* and *vester* are declined like *piger*. See § 106.

REMARK 1. The terminations *pte* and *met* intensive are sometimes annexed to possessive pronouns, especially to the ablative singular; as, *suoapte pondere*, by its own weight; *suoapte manu*, by his own hand. So *nostrapte culpâ*; *suoapte amicum*; *metamet culpâ*. The suffix *met* is usually followed by *ipse*; as, *Hannibal suamet ipse fraude captus abiit*. Liv.; but Sallust has *meamet facta doctre*.

REM. 2. *Suus*, like its primitive *sui*, has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. *Meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, and *vester*, are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person. See § 132, 4.

## PATRIAL PRONOUNS.

4. (a.) These are *nostras* and *cūjas*. See §§ 100, 2, and 128, 6. They are declined like adjectives of one termination; as, *nostras*, *nostrātis*, but both are defective.

(b.) *Nostras* is found in the nominative and genitive singular, in the nominative plural, (masc. and fem., *nostrātes*, neut. *nostratia*), and in the ablative, (*nostratibus*). *Cūjas* or *quōjas* occurs in the nominative, genitive and accusative (*cujātem* masc.) singular, and in the nominative plural, masc. (*cujātes*). Cf. § 137, 6.—*Nostrātis* and *cujātis* (or *quojātis*) also occur in the nominative.

## PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

5. To the adjective pronouns may be added certain adjectives of so general a meaning, that they partake, in some degree, of the character of pronouns. Of this kind are:—

(1.) (a.) *Alius*, *ullus*, *nullus*, and *nonnullus*, which answer to the question, who?

(b.) *Alter*, *neuter*, *alterūter*, *utervis*, and *uterlibet*, which answer to the question, *ūter*? which of two?

(2.) Adjectives denoting quality, size, or number, in a general way. These stand in relation to one another, and are hence called *correlatives*.

REMARK. The *relatives* and *interrogatives* of this class begin with *qu*, and are alike in form. The *indefinites* are formed from the relatives by prefixing *ali*. The *demonstratives* begin with *t*, and are sometimes strengthened by *dem*. A *general relative*, having a meaning more general than the relative, is formed by doubling the simple relative, or by affixing to it the termination *cumque*. A *general indefinite* is formed by annexing *libet* or *vis* to the relative.

(3.) Their mutual relation is denoted by the following table, with which may be compared the *adverbial correlatives*, § 191, R. 1.

| Interrog. | Demonstr.              | Relat.   | Relat. general.                      | Indefn.      | Indef general. |
|-----------|------------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|--------------|----------------|
| quālis?   | tālis,                 | quālis,  | { quālis-quālis,<br>quālescūmque,    | ———          | quālislibet,   |
| quantus?  | { tantus,<br>tantūdem, | quantus, | { quantus-quantus,<br>quantuscūmque, | aliquantus,  | quantuslibet,  |
| quōt?     | tōt, totidem,          | quōt,    | { quōt-quōt,<br>quōtuscūmque,        | aliquot,     | quōtlibet,     |
| quōtus?   | tōtus,                 | quōtus,  | quōtuscūmque,                        | (aliquōtus), | ———.           |

*Diminutives.*

|            |           |      |                  |               |      |
|------------|-----------|------|------------------|---------------|------|
| quantūlus? | tantūlus. | ———. | quantuluscūmque. | aliquantūlum. | ———. |
|------------|-----------|------|------------------|---------------|------|

NOTE 1. The suffix *cumque*, which is used in forming general relatives, is composed of the relative adverb *cum* (*quum*) and the suffix *que*, expressive of universality, as in *quisque* and in adverbs, (see § 191). *Cumque*, therefore, originally signified 'whenever.' When attached to a relative, whether a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, it renders the relative meaning more general; as, *qui*, who; *quicūque*, whoever; or, every one who.

NOTE 2. *Cujusmōdi* is sometimes used for *quālis*, and *hujusmōdi*, *istiusmōdi*, *ejusmōdi*, and *ejusdemmōdi* for *tālis*. Cf. § 184, R. 5.

## VERBS.

§ 140. A verb is a word by which something is affirmed of a person or thing.

1. That of which any thing is affirmed is called the *subject* of the verb. (2.) That which is affirmed of the subject is called the *predicate*. Cf. § 201.

3. A verb either expresses an action or state; as, *puer legit*, the boy reads; *aqua calet*, the water is warm;—or it connects an attribute with a subject; as, *terra est rotunda*, the earth is round.

4. All verbs belong to the former of these classes, except *sum*, I am, the most common use of which is, to connect an attribute with a subject. When so used, it is called the *copula*.

§ 141. Verbs are either *active* or *neuter*.

NOTE. Active and neuter verbs are sometimes called *transitive* and *intransitive*; and verbs of motion are by some grammarians divided into *active-transitive* and *active-intransitive*, according as they require, or do not require, an object after them.

I. An *active* or *transitive verb* expresses such an action as requires the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *amo te*, I love thee; *sequitur consulem*, he follows the consul.

II. A *neuter* or *intransitive verb* expresses such an action or state, as does not require the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *equus currit*, the horse runs; *gradior*, I walk.

REMARK 1. Many verbs, in Latin, are considered as neuter, which are usually translated into English by active verbs. Thus *indulgeo*, I indulge, *noceo*, I hurt, *pareo*, I obey, are reckoned among neuter verbs. In strictness, such Latin verbs denote rather a state than an action, and their sense would be more exactly expressed by the verb to *be* with an adjective; as, 'I am indulgent, I am hurtful,' etc. Some verbs in Latin, which do not usually take an object after them, are yet active, since the object is omitted by ellipsis. Thus *credo* properly signifies to *intrust*, and, in this sense, takes an object; as, *credo tibi salutem meam*, I intrust my safety to you; but by ellipsis it usually means to *believe*; as, *crede mihi*, believe me.

To verbs belong *voices*, *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*.

## VOICES.

(a.) Voice, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the relation of the agent to the action of the verb.

(b.) Most active Latin verbs have, for this purpose, two forms, which are called the *active* and *passive voices*.

1. A verb in the *active voice* represents the agent as *acting upon* some person or thing, called the *object*; as, *puer legit librum*, the boy is reading a book.

2. A verb in the *passive voice* represents the object as *acted upon* by the agent; as, *liber legitur a puëro*, a book *is read* by the boy.

REM. 2. By comparing the two preceding examples, it will be seen that they have the same meaning. The passive voice may thus be substituted at pleasure for the active, by making the object of the active the subject of the passive, and placing the subject of the active in the ablative case, with or without the preposition *a* or *ab*, according as it is a voluntary or involuntary agent. The active form is used to direct the attention especially to the agent as acting; the passive, chiefly to exhibit the object as acted upon. In the one case the object, in the other the agent, is frequently omitted, and left indefinite; as, *puer legit*, the boy is reading, scil. *librum, litteras*, etc., a book, a letter, etc.; *virtus laudatur*, virtue is praised, scil. *ab hominibus*, by men.

The two voices are distinguished from each other by peculiar terminations. Cf. § 152.

§ 142. 1. Neuter verbs have, in general, only the form of the active voice. They are, however, sometimes used impersonally in the passive voice. See § 184, 2.

2. The neuter verbs *audeo*, I dare, *fido*, I trust, *gaudeo*, I rejoice, and *soleo*, I am wont, have the passive form in the perfect and its cognate tenses; as, *ausus sum*, I dared. Hence these verbs are called *neuter passives*, or *semi-deponents*.

3. The neuter verbs *vapulo*, I am beaten, and *venco*, I am sold, have an active form, but a passive meaning, and are hence called *neutral passives*.

4. (a.) *Deponent* verbs have a transitive or intransitive signification with only the passive form. They are called *deponent verbs*, from *depono*, to lay aside, as having laid aside their active form, and their passive signification; as, *sequor*, I follow; *morior*, I die.

(b.) Some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive signification, especially in the perfect participle. These are sometimes called *common verbs*. Cf. § 162, 17.

## MOODS.

§ 143. (a.) Moods (or modes) are forms of the verb, which denote the relation of the action or state, expressed by the verb, to the mind of the speaker or to some other action.

(b.) Latin verbs have four moods—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

1. The *indicative* mood is used in independent and absolute *assertions* and *inquiries*; as, *amo*, I love; *audisne?* dost thou hear?

2. The *subjunctive* mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind; as, *si me obsécres, redibo*; if he entreat me, I will return.

3. The *imperative* mood is used in commanding, exhorting, or entreating; as, *ama*, love thou; *amanto*, they shall love.

4. The *infinitive* mood is used to denote an action or state indefinitely, without limiting it to any person or thing as its subject; as, *virtus est vitium fugere*, to shun vice is a virtue.

### TENSES.

§ 144. Tenses are forms of the verb, denoting the *time* of the action or state expressed by the verb.

1. Time admits of a threefold division, into present, past, and future; and, in each of these times, an action may be represented either as going on, or as completed. From these two divisions arise the six tenses of a Latin verb, each of which is distinguished by its peculiar terminations.

2. They are called the *present*, *imperfect*, *future*, *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses.

|         |            |                                                                    |
|---------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Present | { action   | <i>amo</i> , I love, or am loving; <i>Present tense</i> .          |
| Past    | { not com- | <i>amābam</i> , I was loving; <i>Imperfect tense</i> .             |
| Future  | { pleted;  | <i>amābo</i> , I shall love, or be loving; <i>Future tense</i> .   |
| Present | { action   | <i>amāvī</i> , I have loved; <i>Perfect tense</i> .                |
| Past    | { com-     | <i>amāveram</i> , I had loved; <i>Pluperfect tense</i> .           |
| Future  | { pleted;  | <i>amāvero</i> , I shall have loved; <i>Future perfect tense</i> . |

3. There is the same number of tenses in the passive voice, in which actions not completed are represented by simple forms of the verb, and those which are completed by compound forms.

|         |            |                                                                                        |
|---------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Present | { action   | <i>amor</i> , I am loved; <i>Present tense</i> .                                       |
| Past    | { not com- | <i>amābar</i> , I was loved; <i>Imperfect tense</i> .                                  |
| Future  | { pleted;  | <i>amābor</i> , I shall be loved; <i>Future tense</i> .                                |
| Present | { action   | <i>amātus sum</i> , or <i>fui</i> , I have been loved; <i>Perfect tense</i> .          |
| Past    | { com-     | <i>amātus eram</i> , or <i>fuēram</i> , I had been loved; <i>Pluperfect</i> .          |
| Future  | { pleted;  | <i>amātus ero</i> , or <i>fuēro</i> , I shall have been loved; <i>Future Perfect</i> . |

§ 145. I. The *present tense* represents an action as now going on, and not completed; as, *āmo*, I love, or am loving.

1. Any existing custom, or general truth, may be expressed by this tense; as, *apud Parthos, signum datur tympano*; among the Parthians, the signal is given by a drum. A general truth is sometimes also expressed by the perfect.

2. The present tense may also denote an action which has existed for some time, and which still exists; as, *tot annos bella gero*; for so many years I have waged, and am still waging war.

3. The present tense is often in narration used for the perfect indefinite. It is then called the *historical present*; as, *desiliunt ex equis, provocant in primum*; they dismount, they fly forward to the front.

II. The *imperfect tense* represents an action as going on at some past time, but not then completed; as, *amābam*, I was loving.

1. The imperfect sometimes denotes repeated or customary past action; as, *legēbam*, I was wont to read.

2. It may also denote an action which had existed for some time, and which was still existing at a certain past time; as, *audībat jamdudum verba*; he had long heard, and was still hearing the words.



3. In letters, and with reference not to the time of their being written, but to that of their being read, the imperfect is sometimes used for the present as, *expectabam*, I was expecting, (i. e. when I wrote).

4. The imperfect also sometimes denotes the *intending, preparing, or attempting* to act at a definite past time.

III. The *future tense* denotes that an action will be going on hereafter, but without reference to its completion; as, *amābo*, I shall love, or shall be loving.

IV. The *perfect tense* represents an action either as just completed, or as completed in some indefinite past time; as, *amāvi*, I have loved, or I loved.

REMARK. In the former sense, it is called the *perfect definite*; in the latter, the *perfect indefinite, historical perfect, or aorist*.

V. The *pluperfect tense* represents a past action as completed, at or before the time of some other past action or event; as, *litteras scripseram, quum nuncius venit*; I had written the letter, when the messenger arrived.

VI. The *future perfect tense* denotes that an action will be completed, at or before the time of some other future action or event; as, *quum cenavero, proficiscar*; when I shall have supped, I will go.

NOTE 1. This tense is often, but improperly, called the *future subjunctive*. It has the signification of the indicative mood, and corresponds to the *second future* in English.

NOTE 2. The imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect tenses are sometimes called *preterites* or the *preterite tenses*.

NOTE 3. The present, imperfect, and future tenses passive, in English, do not express the exact sense of those tenses in Latin, as denoting an action which is, was, or will be, going on at a certain time. Thus *laudor* signifies, not 'I am praised,' but 'I am in the act of being praised,' or, if such an expression is admissible, 'I am being praised.'

REMARK 1. The six tenses above enumerated are found only in the indicative mood.

REM. 2. The subjunctive mood, in the regular conjugation, has the present and past, but no future tenses.

NOTE 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mood have less definiteness of meaning, in regard to time, than those of the indicative. Thus the present and perfect, besides their common signs, *may or can, may have or can have, must*, in certain connections, be translated by *might, could, would, or should; might have, could have, etc.* The tenses of this mood must often, also, be translated by the corresponding tenses of the indicative. For a more particular account of the signification of each of the tenses of the subjunctive mood, see § 260.

REM. 3. The imperative mood has two tenses—a present and a future; the former for that which is to be done at once, and the latter for that which is to be done in future.

REM. 4. The infinitive mood has three tenses—the present, the perfect, and the future; the first of which denotes an incomplete, the second a completed action, and the last an action to be performed.

## NUMBERS.

§ 146. Number, in verbs, is the form by which the *unity* or *plurality* of their subject is denoted. Hence verbs, like nouns, have two numbers—the *singular* and the *plural*. Cf. § 85, 1.

## PERSONS:

§ 147. Person, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the person of their subject. Hence in each number there are three persons—the *first*, *second*, and *third*. Cf. § 85, 2.

1. The imperative *present* has only the second person in both numbers. The imperative *future* has in each number the second and third persons, but in the singular they have both the same form, *-to* in the active, and *-tor* in the passive voice.

2. As the signification of the infinitive mood is not limited to any subject, it admits no change to express either number or person.

3. The following are the terminations of the different persons of each number, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, in both voices:—

|                  | <i>Active.</i> |      |     | <i>Passive.</i> |       |       |
|------------------|----------------|------|-----|-----------------|-------|-------|
| <i>Person.</i>   | 1.             | 2.   | 3.  | 1.              | 2.    | 3.    |
| <i>Singular.</i> | o, i, or m,    | a,   | t;  | r,              | ris,  | tur;  |
| <i>Plural.</i>   | mus,           | tis, | nt. | mur,            | mini, | ntur. |

These may be called *personal terminations*.

REMARK 1. The perfect indicative active is irregular in the second person singular and plural, which end in *sti* and *stis*, and in one of the forms of the third person plural, which ends in *re*.

REM. 2. The passive form above given belongs to the simple tenses only.

REM. 3. The pronouns of the first and second persons, *ego*, *nos*; *tu* and *vos*, are seldom expressed in Latin as subjects of a finite verb, the several persons being sufficiently distinguished by the terminations of the verb.

## PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

§ 148. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, and partaking of its meaning, but having the form of an adjective.

(1.) Like a verb, it has different *voices* and *tenses*; like an adjective, it has *declension*\* and *gender*; and like both, it has two *numbers*.

(2.) Active verbs have usually *four* participles—two in the active voice, a present and a future; as, *amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love;—and two in the passive voice, a perfect and a future; as, *amatus*, loved, or having been loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

\* See §§ 106, R. 2: and 111, R.

(3.) Neuter verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

(4.) Deponent verbs, both active and neuter, may have the participles of both voices.

2. (a.) *Gerunds* are verbal nouns, used only in the oblique cases, and expressing the action or state of the verb; as, *amandī*, of loving, etc.

(b.) Like other abstract nouns, they are found only in the singular number, and by their cases supply the place of a declinable present infinitive active.

3. *Supines* also are verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative singular; as, *amātur*, to love; *amātu*, to be loved.

REMARK. These also serve in certain connections to supply the place of the infinitive present both active and passive. The supine in *um* is called the *former* supine; that in *u*, the *latter*. The former is commonly used in an active, the latter in a passive sense.

## CONJUGATION.

§ 149. 1. The conjugation of a verb is the regular formation and arrangement of its several parts, according to their voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

2. There are four conjugations, which are characterized by the vowel before *re* in the present of the infinitive active.

In the first conjugation, it is *ā* long;

In the second, . . . . *ē* long;

In the third, . . . . *ē* short;

In the fourth, . . . . *i* long.

EXCEPTION. *Do, dare*, to give, and such of its compounds as are of the first conjugation, have *a* short before *re*.

§ 150. A verb, like a noun, consists of two parts—the *root*, and the *termination*. Cf. § 40, R. 10.

1. The *first* or *general* root of a verb consists of those letters that are found in every part. This root may always be found by removing the termination of the present infinitive.

2. There are also two special roots, the first of which is found in the perfect, and is called the *second* root; the other, found in the supine or perfect participle, is called the *third* root.

3. In regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second* root is formed by adding, respectively, *āv*, *u*, and *iv*, to the *general* root; and the *third* root by a similar addition of *āt*, *it*, and *īt*.

REMARK. Many verbs, in each of the conjugations, form their second and third roots irregularly.

4. In the third conjugation, the second root either is the same as the first, or is formed from it by adding *s*; the third root is formed by adding *t*. See § 171.

NOTE. In the second and fourth conjugations, *e* and *i* before *o* are considered as belonging not to the root, but to the termination. In verbs whose second or third roots are formed irregularly, the general root often undergoes some change in the parts derived from them.

5. The vowel which unites the general root with the remaining letters of the verb, is called the *connecting vowel*. Each conjugation, except the third, is, in a great degree, distinguished by a peculiar connecting vowel, which is the same as characterizes the infinitives. See § 149, 2.

(a.) In the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is generally *ē* or *i*. In the second and fourth conjugations, and in verbs in *io* of the third, a second connecting vowel is sometimes added to that which characterizes the conjugation; as, *a* in *doceant*, *u* in *capiam*, etc.

(b.) In verbs whose second and third roots are formed irregularly, the connecting vowel often disappears, or is changed in the parts derived from those roots; but it is almost always found in the parts derived from the first root.

§ 151. 1. From the *first* root are derived, in each voice, the present, imperfect, and future indicative; the present and imperfect subjunctive; the imperative, and the present infinitive. From this root are derived also the present participle, the gerund, and the future participle passive.

2. From the *second* root are derived, in the active voice, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and the perfect infinitive.

3. (a.) From the *third* root are derived, in the active voice, the supine in *um*, and the future participle; the latter of which, with the verb *esse*, constitutes the future infinitive active.

(b.) From this root are derived, in the passive voice, the supine in *u*, and the perfect participle; from the latter of which, with the verb *sum*, are formed all the tenses which in the active are derived from the second root. The future infinitive passive is formed from the supine in *um*, and *iri*, the present infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go.

4. The present and perfect indicative, the supine in *um*, and the present infinitive, are called the *principal parts* of the verb, because from the first three the several roots are ascertained, and from the last, the characteristic vowel of the conjugation. In the passive voice, the principal parts are the present indicative and infinitive, and the perfect participle.

NOTE. As the supine in *um* is wanting in most verbs, the third root must often be determined from the perfect participle, or the future participle active.

§ 152. The following table exhibits a connected view of the verbal terminations, in all the conjugations. By annexing these to the several roots, all the parts of a verb may be formed.

## Terminations added to the First Root.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT TENSE.    |                       |                   |                       | PRESENT TENSE.    |                       |                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| SINGULAR.         |                       | PLURAL.           |                       | SINGULAR.         |                       | PLURAL.           |                       |
| Persons.          |                       | Persons.          |                       | Persons.          |                       | Persons.          |                       |
| 1.                | 2.                    | 1.                | 2.                    | 1.                | 2.                    | 1.                | 2.                    |
| 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; | 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; | 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; | 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; |
| 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; |
| 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; |
| 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       | 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       | 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       | 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       |
| IMPERFECT.        |                       |                   |                       | IMPERFECT.        |                       |                   |                       |
| 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; | 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; | 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; | 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; |
| 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; |
| 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; |
| 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       | 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       | 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       | 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       |
| FUTURE.           |                       |                   |                       | FUTURE.           |                       |                   |                       |
| 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; | 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; | 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; | 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; |
| 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; |
| 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; |
| 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       | 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       | 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       | 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT TENSE.    |                       |                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| SINGULAR.         |                       | PLURAL.           |                       |
| Persons.          |                       | Persons.          |                       |
| 1.                | 2.                    | 1.                | 2.                    |
| 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; | 1. -am, -ās, -āt; | 2. -amūs, -ātis, -āt; |
| 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 2. -am, -ās, -āt; | 3. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; |
| 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; | 3. -am, -ās, -āt; | 4. -amūt, -ātis, -āt; |
| 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       | 4. -am, -ās, -āt; |                       |



REMARK 1. In analyzing a verb, the voice, person, and number, are ascertained by the *personal* terminations. See § 147, 3. The conjugation, mood, and tense, are, in general, determined by the letter or letters which intervene between the root of the verb and the personal terminations. Thus in *amabamus*, *mus* denotes that the verb is of the active voice, plural number, and first person; *ba* denotes that it is of the indicative mood, imperfect tense; and the connecting vowel *a* determines it to be of the first conjugation. So in *amaremini*, *mini* denotes the passive voice, plural number, and second person; *re*, the subjunctive mood, imperfect tense; and *a*, as before, the first conjugation.

REM. 2. Sometimes, the part between the root of the verb and the personal termination, does not precisely determine the conjugation, mood, and tense, but only within certain limits. In such cases, the conjugation may be learned, by finding the present tense in the dictionary, and if two forms are alike in the same conjugation, they can only be distinguished by the sense. Thus *amemus* and *docemus* have the same termination; but, as *amo* is of the first, and *doces* of the second conjugation, the former is determined to be the subjunctive, the latter the indicative, present. *Regar* may be either the future indicative, or the present subjunctive—*bitumus* either the present or the perfect indicative.

§ 153. SUM, I am, is called an *auxiliary* verb, because it is used, in conjunction with participles, to supply the want of simple forms in other verbs. From its denoting existence, it is sometimes called the *substantive* verb.

REMARK. *Sum* is very irregular in those parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root. Its imperfect and future tenses, except in the third person plural of the latter, have the form of a pluperfect and future perfect. It is thus conjugated:—

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Pres. Indic. | Pres. Infm. | Perf. Indic. | Fut. Part.   |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| Sum,         | es'-sē,     | fu'-i,       | fū'-tū'-rūs. |

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present Tense.

|        | SINGULAR.                                                                                                                                               | PLURAL.                                                                                                                                        |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Person | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ sum, } I \text{ am,} \\ 2. \text{ es, } thou \text{ art,}^* \\ 3. \text{ est, } he \text{ is;} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} sū'-mūs, \text{ we are,} \\ es'-tis, \text{ ye} \dagger \text{ are,} \\ sunt, \text{ they are.} \end{array} \right.$ |

##### Imperfect.

|                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. ē'-ram, <i>I was,</i>     | ē'-rā'-mūs, <i>we were,</i> |
| 2. ē'-rās, <i>thou wast,</i> | ē'-rā'-tis, <i>ye were,</i> |
| 3. ē'-rāt, <i>he was;</i>    | ē'-rant, <i>they were.</i>  |

##### Future. *shall, or will.*

|                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. ē'-rō, <i>I shall be,</i>    | ē'-ī'-mūs, <i>we shall be,</i> |
| 2. ē'-ris, <i>thou wilt be,</i> | ē'-ī'-tis, <i>ye will be,</i>  |
| 3. ē'-rit, <i>he will be;</i>   | ē'-runt, <i>they will be.</i>  |

\* In the second person singular in English, the plural form *you* is commonly used, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es, you are.*

† The plural pronoun of the second person is either *ye* or *you*.

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

- |                                      |                                          |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-l, <i>I have been,</i>        | fu'-l-mūs, <i>we have been,</i>          |
| 2. fu-is'-ti, <i>thou hast been,</i> | fu-is'-tis, <i>ye have been,</i>         |
| 3. fu'-it, <i>he has been ;</i>      | fu'-ē-runt or rē, <i>they have been.</i> |

Pluperfect.

- |                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-ē-ram, <i>I had been,</i>      | fu-e-rā'-mūs, <i>we had been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rās, <i>thou hadst been,</i> | fu-e-rā'-tis, <i>ye had been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rāt, <i>he had been ;</i>    | fu'-ē-rant, <i>they had been.</i> |

Future Perfect. *shall or will have.*

- |                                           |                                          |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-ē-rō, <i>I shall have been,</i>    | fu-er'-l-mūs, <i>we shall have been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rās, <i>thou wilt have been,</i> | fu-er'-l-tis, <i>ye will have been,</i>  |
| 3. fu'-ē-rīt, <i>he will have been ;</i>  | fu'-ē-rint, <i>they will have been.</i>  |

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may, or can.*

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. sim, <i>I may be,</i>      | si'-mūs, <i>we may be,</i> |
| 2. sis, <i>thou mayst be,</i> | si'-tis, <i>ye may be,</i> |
| 3. sit, <i>he may be ;</i>    | sint, <i>they may be.</i>  |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. es'-sem, <i>I would be,</i>      | es-sē'-mūs, <i>we would be,</i> |
| 2. es'-sēs, <i>thou wouldst be,</i> | es-sē'-tis, <i>ye would be,</i> |
| 3. es'-sēt, <i>he would be ;</i>    | es'-sent, <i>they would be.</i> |

Perfect.

- |                                            |                                        |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-ē-rim, <i>I may have been,</i>      | fu-ēr'-l-mūs, <i>we may have been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rās, <i>thou mayst have been,</i> | fu-ēr'-l-tis, <i>ye may have been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rīt, <i>he may have been ;</i>    | fu'-ē-rint, <i>they may have been.</i> |

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

- |                                               |                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1. fu-is'-sem, <i>I would have been,</i>      | fu-is-sē'-mūs, <i>we would have been,</i> |
| 2. fu-is'-sēs, <i>thou wouldst have been,</i> | fu-is-sē'-tis, <i>ye would have been,</i> |
| 3. fu-is'-sēt, <i>he would have been ;</i>    | fu-is'-sent, <i>they would have been.</i> |

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |                                       |                                |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Pres. 1. ēs, <i>be thou,</i>          | es'-tō, <i>be ye.</i>          |
| Fut. 2. es'-tō, <i>thou shalt be,</i> | es-tō'-tē, <i>ye shall be,</i> |
| 3. es'-tō, <i>let him be ;</i>        | sun'-tō, <i>let them be.</i>   |

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. es'-sē, *to be.*

Perfect. fu-is'-sē, *to have been.*

Future. fū-tū-rūs (ī, um), es'-sē, or fō'-rē, *to be about to be.*



3. In letters, and with reference not to the time of their being written, but to that of their being read, the imperfect is sometimes used for the present as, *expectabam*, I was expecting, (i. e. when I wrote).

4. The imperfect also sometimes denotes the *intending, preparing, or attempting* to act at a definite past time.

III. The *future tense* denotes that an action will be going on hereafter, but without reference to its completion; as, *amābo*, I shall love, or shall be loving.

IV. The *perfect tense* represents an action either as just completed, or as completed in some indefinite past time; as, *amāvi*, I have loved, or I loved.

REMARK. In the former sense, it is called the *perfect definite*; in the latter, the *perfect indefinite, historical perfect, or aorist*.

V. The *pluperfect tense* represents a past action as completed, at or before the time of some other past action or event; as, *litteras scripsēram, quum nuncius vēnit*; I had written the letter, when the messenger arrived.

VI. The *future perfect tense* denotes that an action will be completed, at or before the time of some other future action or event; as, *quum cōnavēro, proficiscar*; when I shall have supped, I will go.

NOTE 1. This tense is often, but improperly, called the *future subjunctive*. It has the signification of the indicative mood, and corresponds to the *second future* in English.

NOTE 2. The imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect tenses are sometimes called *preterites* or the *preterite tenses*.

NOTE 3. The present, imperfect, and future tenses passive, in English, do not express the exact sense of those tenses in Latin, as denoting an action which is, was, or will be, going on at a certain time. Thus *laudor* signifies, not 'I am praised,' but 'I am in the act of being praised,' or, if such an expression is admissible, 'I am being praised.'

REMARK 1. The six tenses above enumerated are found only in the indicative mood.

REM. 2. The subjunctive mood, in the regular conjugation, has the present and past, but no future tenses.

NOTE 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mood have less definiteness of meaning, in regard to time, than those of the indicative. Thus the present and perfect, besides their common signs, *may* or *can*, *may have* or *can have*, must, in certain connections, be translated by *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*; *might have*, *could have*, etc. The tenses of this mood must often, also, be translated by the corresponding tenses of the indicative. For a more particular account of the signification of each of the tenses of the subjunctive mood, see § 260.

REM. 3. The imperative mood has two tenses—a present and a future; the former for that which is to be done at once, and the latter for that which is to be done in future.

REM. 4. The infinitive mood has three tenses—the present, the perfect, and the future; the first of which denotes an incomplete, the second a completed action, and the last an action to be performed.

## NUMBERS.

§ 146. Number, in verbs, is the form by which the *unity* or *plurality* of their subject is denoted. Hence verbs, like nouns, have two numbers—the *singular* and the *plural*. Cf. § 35, 1.

## PERSONS:

§ 147. Person, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the person of their subject. Hence in each number there are three persons—the *first*, *second*, and *third*. Cf. § 35, 2.

1. The imperative *present* has only the second person in both numbers. The imperative *future* has in each number the second and third persons, but in the singular they have both the same form, *-to* in the active, and *-tor* in the passive voice.

2. As the signification of the infinitive mood is not limited to any subject, it admits no change to express either number or person.

3. The following are the terminations of the different persons of each number, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, in both voices:—

|           | Active.     |      |     | Passive. |       |       |
|-----------|-------------|------|-----|----------|-------|-------|
| Person.   | 1.          | 2.   | 3.  | 1.       | 2.    | 3.    |
| Singular. | o, i, or m, | s,   | t;  | r,       | ris,  | tur;  |
| Plural.   | mus,        | tis, | nt. | mur,     | mini, | ntur. |

These may be called *personal terminations*.

REMARK 1. The perfect indicative active is irregular in the second person singular and plural, which end in *sti* and *stis*, and in one of the forms of the third person plural, which ends in *re*.

REM. 2. The passive form above given belongs to the simple tenses only.

REM. 3. The pronouns of the first and second persons, *ego*, *nos*; *tu* and *vos*, are seldom expressed in Latin as subjects of a finite verb, the several persons being sufficiently distinguished by the terminations of the verb.

## PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

§ 148. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, and partaking of its meaning, but having the form of an adjective.

(1.) Like a verb, it has different *voices* and *tenses*; like an adjective, it has *declension*\* and *gender*; and like both, it has two *numbers*.

(2.) Active verbs have usually *four* participles—two in the active voice, a present and a future; as, *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love;—and two in the passive voice, a perfect and a future; as, *amātus*, loved, or having been loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

\* See §§ 106, R. 2: and 111, R.

(3.) Neuter verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

(4.) Deponent verbs, both active and neuter, may have the participles of both voices.

2. (a.) *Gerunds* are verbal nouns, used only in the oblique cases, and expressing the action or state of the verb; as, *amandī*, of loving, etc.

(b.) Like other abstract nouns, they are found only in the singular number, and by their cases supply the place of a declinable present infinitive active.

3. *Supines* also are verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative singular; as, *amātum*, to love; *amātū*, to be loved.

REMARK. These also serve in certain connections to supply the place of the infinitive present both active and passive. The supine in *um* is called the *former* supine; that in *u*, the *latter*. The former is commonly used in an active, the latter in a passive sense.

## CONJUGATION.

§ 149. 1. The conjugation of a verb is the regular formation and arrangement of its several parts, according to their voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

2. There are four conjugations, which are characterized by the vowel before *re* in the present of the infinitive active.

In the first conjugation, it is *a* long;

In the second, . . . . *e* long;

In the third, . . . . *ē* short;

In the fourth, . . . . *i* long.

EXCEPTION. *Do, dare*, to give, and such of its compounds as are of the first conjugation, have *a* short before *re*.

§ 150. A verb, like a noun, consists of two parts—the *root*, and the *termination*. Cf. § 40, R. 10.

1. The *first* or *general* root of a verb consists of those letters that are found in every part. This root may always be found by removing the termination of the present infinitive.

2. There are also two special roots, the first of which is found in the perfect, and is called the *second* root; the other, found in the supine or perfect participle, is called the *third* root.

3. In regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second* root is formed by adding, respectively, *āv*, *u*, and *iv*, to the *general* root; and the *third* root by a similar addition of *āt*, *it*, and *īt*.

REMARK. Many verbs, in each of the conjugations, form their second and third roots irregularly.

4. In the third conjugation, the second root either is the same as the first, or is formed from it by adding *s*; the third root is formed by adding *t*. See § 171.

NOTE. In the second and fourth conjugations, *e* and *i* before *o* are considered as belonging not to the root, but to the termination. In verbs whose second or third roots are formed irregularly, the general root often undergoes some change in the parts derived from them.

5. The vowel which unites the general root with the remaining letters of the verb, is called the *connecting vowel*. Each conjugation, except the third, is, in a great degree, distinguished by a peculiar connecting vowel, which is the same as characterizes the infinitives. See § 149, 2.

(a.) In the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is generally *ē* or *i*. In the second and fourth conjugations, and in verbs in *io* of the third, a second connecting vowel is sometimes added to that which characterizes the conjugation; as, *a* in *doceant*, *u* in *capium*, etc.

(b.) In verbs whose second and third roots are formed irregularly, the connecting vowel often disappears, or is changed in the parts derived from those roots; but it is almost always found in the parts derived from the first root.

§ 151. 1. From the *first* root are derived, in each voice, the present, imperfect, and future indicative; the present and imperfect subjunctive; the imperative, and the present infinitive. From this root are derived also the present participle, the gerund, and the future participle passive.

2. From the *second* root are derived, in the active voice, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and the perfect infinitive.

3. (a.) From the *third* root are derived, in the active voice, the supine in *um*, and the future participle; the latter of which, with the verb *esse*, constitutes the future infinitive active.

(b.) From this root are derived, in the passive voice, the supine in *u*, and the perfect participle; from the latter of which, with the verb *sum*, are formed all the tenses which in the active are derived from the second root. The future infinitive passive is formed from the supine in *um*, and *iri*, the present infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go.

4. The present and perfect indicative, the supine in *um*, and the present infinitive, are called the *principal parts* of the verb, because from the first three the several roots are ascertained, and from the last, the characteristic vowel of the conjugation. In the passive voice, the principal parts are the present indicative and infinitive, and the perfect participle.

NOTE. As the supine in *um* is wanting in most verbs, the third root must often be determined from the perfect participle, or the future participle active.

§ 152. The following table exhibits a connected view of the verbal terminations, in all the conjugations. By annexing these to the several roots, all the parts of a verb may be formed.

## Terminations added to the First Root.

## ACTIVE VOICE. PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT TENSE.                                                               |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                              | FUTURE.                                                                      |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SINGULAR.                                                                    |                                                                              | FLURAL.                                                                      |                                                                              | SINGULAR.                                                                    |                                                                              | FLURAL.                                                                      |                                                                              |
| Persons.                                                                     |                                                                              | Persons.                                                                     |                                                                              | Persons.                                                                     |                                                                              | Persons.                                                                     |                                                                              |
| 1.                                                                           | 2.                                                                           | 1.                                                                           | 2.                                                                           | 1.                                                                           | 2.                                                                           | 1.                                                                           | 2.                                                                           |
| 1. -o, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -eo, -ē, -ēi;<br>3. -o, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -io, -ī, -īi;   | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; |
| IMPERFECT.                                                                   |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                              | IMPERFECT.                                                                   |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                              |
| 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| PRESENT TENSE.                                                             |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SINGULAR.                                                                  |                                                                              | FLURAL.                                                                      |                                                                              |
| Persons.                                                                   |                                                                              | Persons.                                                                     |                                                                              |
| 1.                                                                         | 2.                                                                           | 1.                                                                           | 2.                                                                           |
| 1. -o, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -eo, -ē, -ēi;<br>3. -o, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -io, -ī, -īi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; | 1. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>2. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>3. -am, -ā, -āi;<br>4. -am, -ā, -āi; |

| IMPERATIVE MOOD. |        |        |        |
|------------------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. -arē,         | -ārē,  | -arē,  | -arē.  |
| 2. -arām,        | -ārām, | -arām, | -arām. |
| 3. -arēt,        | -ārēt, | -arēt, | -arēt. |
| 4. -arēm,        | -ārēm, | -arēm, | -arēm. |
| IMPERATIVE MOOD. |        |        |        |
| 1. -ārē,         | -ārē,  | -ārē,  | -ārē.  |
| 2. -ārām,        | -ārām, | -ārām, | -ārām. |
| 3. -ārēt,        | -ārēt, | -ārēt, | -ārēt. |
| 4. -ārēm,        | -ārēm, | -ārēm, | -ārēm. |
| IMPERATIVE MOOD. |        |        |        |
| 1. -ārē,         | -ārē,  | -ārē,  | -ārē.  |
| 2. -ārām,        | -ārām, | -ārām, | -ārām. |
| 3. -ārēt,        | -ārēt, | -ārēt, | -ārēt. |
| 4. -ārēm,        | -ārēm, | -ārēm, | -ārēm. |
| IMPERATIVE MOOD. |        |        |        |
| 1. -ārē,         | -ārē,  | -ārē,  | -ārē.  |
| 2. -ārām,        | -ārām, | -ārām, | -ārām. |
| 3. -ārēt,        | -ārēt, | -ārēt, | -ārēt. |
| 4. -ārēm,        | -ārēm, | -ārēm, | -ārēm. |

NOTE. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have two connecting vowels in all the parts in which they occur in verbs of the fourth conjugation, and these vowels are the same in both.

### Terminations added to the Second and Third Roots.

The terminations of the tenses which are formed from the second and third roots, are the same in all the conjugations. Thus:—

#### ACTIVE VOICE.—Second Root.

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

| Singular. |        | Plural.   |        |
|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|
| 1. -arē,  | -ārē,  | 1. -arē,  | -ārē.  |
| 2. -arēs, | -ārēs, | 2. -arēs, | -ārēs. |
| 3. -arēt, | -ārēt, | 3. -arēt, | -ārēt. |
| 4. -arēm, | -ārēm, | 4. -arēm, | -ārēm. |

##### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| Singular. |        | Plural.   |        |
|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|
| 1. -arēs, | -ārēs, | 1. -arēs, | -ārēs. |
| 2. -arēs, | -ārēs, | 2. -arēs, | -ārēs. |
| 3. -arēt, | -ārēt, | 3. -arēt, | -ārēt. |
| 4. -arēm, | -ārēm, | 4. -arēm, | -ārēm. |

NOTE. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have two connecting vowels in all the parts in which they occur in verbs of the fourth conjugation, and these vowels are the same in both.

#### ACTIVE VOICE.—Third Root.

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

| Singular. |        | Plural.   |        |
|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|
| 1. -arē,  | -ārē,  | 1. -arē,  | -ārē.  |
| 2. -arēs, | -ārēs, | 2. -arēs, | -ārēs. |
| 3. -arēt, | -ārēt, | 3. -arēt, | -ārēt. |
| 4. -arēm, | -ārēm, | 4. -arēm, | -ārēm. |

NOTE. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have two connecting vowels in all the parts in which they occur in verbs of the fourth conjugation, and these vowels are the same in both.

REMARK 1. In analyzing a verb, the voice, person, and number, are ascertained by the *personal* terminations. See § 147, 3. The conjugation, mood, and tense, are, in general, determined by the letter or letters which intervene between the root of the verb and the personal terminations. Thus in *amaba-mus*, *mus* denotes that the verb is of the active voice, plural number, and first person; *ba* denotes that it is of the indicative mood, imperfect tense; and the connecting vowel *a* determines it to be of the first conjugation. So in *amare-mini*, *mini* denotes the passive voice, plural number, and second person; *re*, the subjunctive mood, imperfect tense; and *a*, as before, the first conjugation.

REM. 2. Sometimes, the part between the root of the verb and the personal termination, does not precisely determine the conjugation, mood, and tense, but only within certain limits. In such cases, the conjugation may be learned, by finding the present tense in the dictionary, and if two forms are alike in the same conjugation, they can only be distinguished by the sense. Thus *amémus* and *docémus* have the same termination; but, as *amo* is of the first, and *doceo* of the second conjugation, the former is determined to be the subjunctive, the latter the indicative, present. *Regar* may be either the future indicative, or the present subjunctive—*dicimus* either the present or the perfect indicative.

§ 153. SUM, I am, is called an *auxiliary* verb, because it is used, in conjunction with participles, to supply the want of simple forms in other verbs. From its denoting existence, it is sometimes called the *substantive* verb.

REMARK. *Sum* is very irregular in those parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root. Its imperfect and future tenses, except in the third person plural of the latter, have the form of a pluperfect and future perfect. It is thus conjugated:—

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Pres. Indic. | Pres. Infin. | Perf. Indic. | Fut. Part. |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------|
| Sum,         | es'-sē,      | fu'-i,       | fū-tū-rūs. |

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present Tense.

|        | SINGULAR.                                                                                                                                               | PLURAL.                                                                                                                                        |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Person | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ sum, } I \text{ am,} \\ 2. \text{ es, } thou \text{ art,}^* \\ 3. \text{ est, } he \text{ is;} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} sū'-mūs, \text{ we are,} \\ es'-tis, \text{ ye} \dagger \text{ are,} \\ sunt, \text{ they are.} \end{array} \right.$ |

##### Imperfect.

|                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. ē'-ram, <i>I was,</i>     | ē'-rā'-mūs, <i>we were,</i> |
| 2. ē'-rās, <i>thou wast,</i> | ē'-rā'-tis, <i>ye were,</i> |
| 3. ē'-rāt, <i>he was;</i>    | ē'-rant, <i>they were.</i>  |

##### Future. shall, or will.

|                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. ē'-rō, <i>I shall be,</i>    | ēr'-i-mūs, <i>we shall be,</i> |
| 2. ē'-ris, <i>thou wilt be,</i> | ēr'-i-tis, <i>ye will be,</i>  |
| 3. ē'-rit, <i>he will be;</i>   | ēr'-runt, <i>they will be.</i> |

\* In the second person singular in English, the plural form *you* is commonly used, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, you are.

† The plural pronoun of the second person is either *ye* or *you*.

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

- |                                       |                                          |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-l, <i>I have been,</i>         | fu'-l-mūs, <i>we have been,</i>          |
| 2. fu'-is'-ti, <i>thou hast been,</i> | fu'-is'-tis, <i>ye have been,</i>        |
| 3. fu'-it, <i>he has been ;</i>       | fu'-ē-runt or rē, <i>they have been.</i> |

Pluperfect.

- |                                      |                                    |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-ē-ram, <i>I had been,</i>     | fu'-ē-rā'-mūs, <i>we had been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rā, <i>thou hadst been,</i> | fu'-ē-rā'-tis, <i>ye had been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rāt, <i>he had been ;</i>   | fu'-ē-rant, <i>they had been.</i>  |

Future Perfect. *shall or will have.*

- |                                          |                                           |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-ē-rō, <i>I shall have been,</i>   | fu'-er'-ī-mūs, <i>we shall have been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rā, <i>thou wilt have been,</i> | fu'-er'-ī-tis, <i>ye will have been,</i>  |
| 3. fu'-ē-rīt, <i>he will have been ;</i> | fu'-ē-rint, <i>they will have been.</i>   |

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may, or can.*

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. sim, <i>I may be,</i>      | si'-mūs, <i>we may be,</i> |
| 2. sis, <i>thou mayst be,</i> | si'-tis, <i>ye may be,</i> |
| 3. sit, <i>he may be ;</i>    | sint, <i>they may be.</i>  |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. es'-sem, <i>I would be,</i>      | es'-sē'-mūs, <i>we would be,</i> |
| 2. es'-sēs, <i>thou wouldst be,</i> | es'-sē'-tis, <i>ye would be,</i> |
| 3. es'-sēt, <i>he would be ;</i>    | es'-sent, <i>they would be.</i>  |

Perfect.

- |                                            |                                         |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-ē-rim, <i>I may have been,</i>      | fu'-ēr'-ī-mūs, <i>we may have been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rās, <i>thou mayst have been,</i> | fu'-ēr'-ī-tis, <i>ye may have been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rīt, <i>he may have been ;</i>    | fu'-ē-rint, <i>they may have been.</i>  |

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

- |                                                |                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-is'-sem, <i>I would have been,</i>      | fu'-is'-sē'-mūs, <i>we would have been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-is'-sēs, <i>thou wouldst have been,</i> | fu'-is'-sē'-tis, <i>ye would have been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-is'-sēt, <i>he would have been ;</i>    | fu'-is'-sent, <i>they would have been.</i>  |

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |                                       |                                 |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Pres. 1. ēs, <i>be thou,</i>          | es'-tō, <i>be ye.</i>           |
| Fut. 2. es'-tō, <i>thou shalt be,</i> | es'-tō'-tē, <i>ye shall be,</i> |
| 3. es'-tō, <i>let him be ;</i>        | sun'-tō, <i>let them be.</i>    |

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. es'-sē, *to be.*

Perfect. fu'-is'-sē, *to have been.*

Future. fū-tū-rūs (ī, um), es'-sē, or fō-rē, *to be about to be.*



## PARTICIPLE.

*Future.* fū-tū'-rus, a, um, *about to be.*

§ 154. REMARK 1. A present participle *ens* seems to have been anciently in use, and is still found in the compounds *absens*, *præsens*, and *pôtens*.

REM. 2. The perfect *fui*, and its derivative tenses, are formed from an obsolete *fuo*, whence come also the participle *futūrus*, an old subjunctive present *fuam*, *fuas*, *fuat*; —, —, *fuant*, and the forms *fucimus*, perf. ind., *fuerint*, perf. subj., and *fuisset*, plup. subj.

REM. 3. From *fuo* appear also to be derived the following:—

*Subj. imperf.* fū'-rem, fū'-rēs, fū'-rēt; —, —, fū'-rent.

*Inf. pres.* fū'-rē.

These forms seem to have been contracted from *fūrem*, etc., and *fūre*. *Fūrem* is equivalent in meaning to *essem*, but the infinitive *fūre* has, in most cases, acquired a future signification, equivalent to *futūrus esse*.

REM. 4. *Siem*, *sies*, *siet*, *sient*, for *sim*, *sie*, *sit*, *sint*, are found in ancient writers, as are also *escit* for *erit*, *escunt* for *erunt*, *escē*, *escitis*, and *escent*, for *esse*, *essētis*, and *essent*.

REM. 5. Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds, *absum*, *adsum*, *dēsum*, *insum*, *intersum*, *obsum*, *præsum*, *subsum*, and *supersum*.

REM. 6. *PROSUM*, from the old form *prōd* for *prō*, and *sum*, has *d* after *pro*, when the simple verb begins with *e*; as,

*Ind. pres.* prō'-sum, prōd'-es, prōd'-est, etc.

— *imperf.* prōd'-ē-ram, prōd'-ē-rās, etc.

REM. 7. (a.) *POSSUM* is compounded of *pōtis*, *able*, and *sum*. They are sometimes written separately, and then *pōtis* is the same in all genders and numbers.

(b.) In composition, *is* is omitted in *pōtis*, and *i*, as in other cases, coming before *s*, is changed into *z*. In the infinitive, and imperfect subjunctive, *es* of the simple verb is dropped, as is also *f* at the beginning of the second root. In every other respect *possum* is conjugated like *sum*, wherever it is found; but the imperative, and the parts derived from the third root, are wanting.

*Pres. Indic.* *Pres. Infin.* *Perf. Indic.*

Pos'-sum, pos'-sē, pōt'-u-i, *I can, or I am able.*

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

pos'-sum, pō'-tēs, pō'-test;

pos'-sū-mūs, pō'-tes-tis, pos'-sunt.

pos'-sim, pos'-sis, pos'-sit;

pos'-si-mūs, pos'-si-tis, pos'-sint.

*Imperfect.*

pōt'-ē-ram, pōt'-ē-rās, pōt'-ē-rāt;

pōt'-ē-rā-mūs, -ē-rā-tis, -ē-rant.

pōt'-sem, pos'-sēs, pos'-sēt;

pos'-sē-mūs, -sē-tis, pos'-sent.

*Future.*

pōt'-ē-rō, pōt'-ē-ris, pōt'-ē-rit;

pō-tēr'-i-mūs, po-tēr'-i-tis, pōt'-ē-runt.

*Perfect.*

pōt'-u-i, pōt'-u-is-tis, pōt'-u-it;

pōt'-u-i-mūs, -is-tis, -sē-runt or -sērē.

pō-tu'-ē-rim, -ē-ris, -ē-rit;

pōt'-u-ēr'-i-mūs, -i-tis, -ē-rint.

*Pluperfect.*

pō-tu'-ē-ram, -ē-rās, -ē-rāt;      pōt-u-is'-sem, -is'-ēs, -is'-ēt;  
 pōt-u-ē-rā'-mūs, -ē-rā'-tis, -ē-rant.      pōt-u-is-ēs'-mūs, -is-ēs'-tis, -is'-sent.

*Future Perfect.*

pō-tu'-ē-rō, pō-tu'-ē-rjā, pō-tu'-ē-rīt;  
 pōt-u-ēr'-ī-mūs, pōt-u-ēr'-ī-tis, pō-tu'-ē-rint.

(No Imperative.)

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.

Pres. pos'-ēē. Perf. pōt-u-is'-ēē.

pō'-tens, able.

NOTE. The following forms are also found; *potissim* for *possum*, *potessum* for *possunt*, *potessim* and *possim* for *possum*, *posses*, *possiet* and *potessit* for *possis* and *possit*, *potessem* for *possem*, *potesse* for *posse*, and before a passive infinitive the passive forms *potestur* for *potest*, *poterātur* for *poterat*, and *possātur* for *posseset*.—*Potis* and *pote* without *est* are sometimes used for *potest*.

## § 155. FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

|                   |                   |                   |                |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>Pres. Ind.</i> | <i>Pres. Inf.</i> | <i>Perf. Ind.</i> | <i>Supine.</i> |
| A'-mō,            | ā-mā'-rē,         | ā-mā'-vī,         | ā-mā'-tum.     |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *love, do love, am loving.*

|              |            |                     |
|--------------|------------|---------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ā'-mō,     | <i>I love,</i>      |
|              | ā'-mās,    | <i>thou lovest,</i> |
|              | ā'-māt,    | <i>he loves;</i>    |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ā-mā'-mūs, | <i>we love,</i>     |
|              | ā-mā'-tis, | <i>ye love,</i>     |
|              | ā'-mant,   | <i>they love.</i>   |

Imperfect. *was loving, loved, did love.*

|              |               |                          |
|--------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ā-mā'-bam,    | <i>I was loving,</i>     |
|              | ā-mā'-bās,    | <i>thou wast loving,</i> |
|              | ā-mā'-bāt,    | <i>he was loving;</i>    |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ām-ā-bā'-mūs, | <i>we were loving,</i>   |
|              | ām-ā-bā'-tis, | <i>ye were loving,</i>   |
|              | ā-mā'-bant,   | <i>they were loving.</i> |

Future. *shall, or will.*

|              |              |                        |
|--------------|--------------|------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ā-mā'-bō,    | <i>I shall love,</i>   |
|              | ā-mā'-bis,   | <i>thou wilt love;</i> |
|              | ā-mā'-bit,   | <i>he will love;</i>   |
| <i>Plur.</i> | āmāb'-ī-mūs, | <i>we shall love,</i>  |
|              | āmāb'-ī-tis, | <i>ye will love,</i>   |
|              | ā-mā'-bunt,  | <i>they will love.</i> |

Perfect *loved, or have loved.*

|                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> š-mā'-vi,    | <i>I have loved,</i>    |
| šm-š-vis'-ti,             | <i>thou hast loved,</i> |
| š-mā'-vīt,                | <i>he has loved;</i>    |
| <i>Plur.</i> š-mā'-i-mūs, | <i>we have loved,</i>   |
| šm-š-vis'-tis,            | <i>ye have loved,</i>   |
| šm-š-vē'-runt or -rē,     | <i>they have loved.</i> |

Pluperfect *had.*

|                                |                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> š-māv'-š-ram,     | <i>I had loved,</i>      |
| š-māv'-š-rās,                  | <i>thou hadst loved,</i> |
| š-māv'-š-rāt,                  | <i>he had loved;</i>     |
| <i>Plur.</i> š-māv'-š-rā'-mūs, | <i>we had loved,</i>     |
| š-māv'-š-rā'-tis,              | <i>ye had loved,</i>     |
| š-māv'-š-rant,                 | <i>they had loved.</i>   |

Future Perfect *shall, or will have.*

|                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> š-māv'-š-rō,     | <i>I shall have loved,</i>   |
| š-māv'-š-rās,                 | <i>thou wilt have loved,</i> |
| š-māv'-š-rīt,                 | <i>he will have loved;</i>   |
| <i>Plur.</i> šm-š-vēr'-i-mūs, | <i>we shall have loved,</i>  |
| šm-š-vēr'-i-tis,              | <i>ye will have loved,</i>   |
| š-māv'-š-rint,                | <i>they will have loved.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,

Present *may, or can.*

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> š'-mem,    | <i>I may love,</i>      |
| š'-mēs,                 | <i>thou mayst love,</i> |
| š'-mēt,                 | <i>he may love;</i>     |
| <i>Plur.</i> š-mē'-mūs, | <i>we may love,</i>     |
| š-mē'-tis,              | <i>ye may love,</i>     |
| š'-ment,                | <i>they may love.</i>   |

Imperfect *might, could, would, or should.*

|                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> š-mā'-rem,    | <i>I would love,</i>      |
| š-mā'-rēs,                 | <i>thou wouldst love,</i> |
| š-mā'-rēt,                 | <i>he would love;</i>     |
| <i>Plur.</i> šm-š-rē'-mūs, | <i>we would love,</i>     |
| šm-š-rē'-tis,              | <i>ye would love,</i>     |
| š-mā'-rent,                | <i>they would love.</i>   |

Perfect *may, or can have.*

|                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> š-māv'-š-rim,    | <i>I may have loved,</i>      |
| š-māv'-š-rās,                 | <i>thou mayst have loved,</i> |
| š-māv'-š-rīt,                 | <i>he may have loved;</i>     |
| <i>Plur.</i> šm-š-vēr'-i-mūs, | <i>we may have loved,</i>     |
| šm-š-vēr'-i-tis,              | <i>ye may have loved,</i>     |
| š-māv'-š-rint,                | <i>they may have loved.</i>   |

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

|              |                   |                                 |
|--------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ăm-ă-vis'-sem,    | <i>I would have loved,</i>      |
|              | ăm-ă-vis'-sēs,    | <i>thou wouldst have loved,</i> |
|              | ăm-ă-vis'-sēt,    | <i>he would have loved ;</i>    |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ăm-ă-vis-sē'-mūs, | <i>we would have loved,</i>     |
|              | ăm-ă-vis-sē'-tīs, | <i>ye would have loved,</i>     |
|              | ăm-ă-vis'-sent,   | <i>they would have loved.</i>   |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                    |                        |                         |
|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Pres. Sing.</i> | ă'-mă,                 | <i>love thou ;</i>      |
|                    | <i>Plur.</i> ă-mă'-tē, | <i>love ye.</i>         |
| <i>Fut. Sing.</i>  | ă-mă'-tō,              | <i>thou shalt love,</i> |
|                    | ă-mă'-tō,              | <i>he shall love ;</i>  |
| <i>Plur.</i>       | ăm-ă-tō'-tē,           | <i>ye shall love,</i>   |
|                    | ă-man'-tō,             | <i>they shall love.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                 |                               |                             |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | ă-mă'-rē,                     | <i>to love.</i>             |
| <i>Perfect.</i> | ăm-ă-vis'-sē,                 | <i>to have loved.</i>       |
| <i>Future.</i>  | ăm-ă-tū'-rūs, (ă, um) es'-sē, | <i>to be about to love.</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

|                 |                      |                       |
|-----------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | ă'-mans,             | <i>loving.</i>        |
| <i>Future.</i>  | ăm-ă-tū'-rūs, ă, um, | <i>about to love.</i> |

## GERUND.

|            |             |                    |
|------------|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>G.</i>  | ă-man'-dī,  | <i>of loving,</i>  |
| <i>D.</i>  | ă-man'-dō,  | <i>for loving,</i> |
| <i>Ac.</i> | ă-man'-dum, | <i>loving,</i>     |
| <i>Ab.</i> | ă-man'-dō,  | <i>by loving.</i>  |

## SUPINE.

|                |            |                 |
|----------------|------------|-----------------|
| <i>Former.</i> | ă-mă'-tum, | <i>to love.</i> |
|----------------|------------|-----------------|

## § 156. PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

|                     |                    |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Pres. Infn.</i> | <i>Perf. Part.</i> |
| A'-mor,             | ă-mă'-rī,          | ă-mă'-tūa.         |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *am.*

|              |                                            |                                                            |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ā'-mōr,<br>ā-mā'-rīs or -rē,<br>ā-mā'-tūr, | <i>I am loved,<br/>thou art loved,<br/>he is loved ;</i>   |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ā-mā'-mūr,<br>ā-mām'-ī-nī,<br>ā-man'-tūr,  | <i>we are loved,<br/>ye are loved,<br/>they are loved.</i> |

Imperfect. *was.*

|              |                                                     |                                                               |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ā-mā'-bār,<br>ām-ā-bā'-rīs or -rē,<br>ām-ā-bā'-tūr, | <i>I was loved,<br/>thou wast loved,<br/>he was loved ;</i>   |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ām-ā-bā'-mūr,<br>ām-ā-bām'-ī-nī,<br>ām-ā-ban'-tūr,  | <i>we were loved,<br/>ye were loved,<br/>they were loved.</i> |

Future. *shall, or will be.*

|              |                                                   |                                                                         |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ā-mā'-bōr,<br>āmāb'-ē-rīs or -rē,<br>āmāb'-ī-tūr, | <i>I shall be loved,<br/>thou wilt be loved,<br/>he will be loved ;</i> |
| <i>Plur.</i> | āmāb'-ī-mūr,<br>ām-ā-bīm'-ī-nī,<br>ām-ā-bun'-tūr, | <i>we shall be loved,<br/>ye will be loved,<br/>they will be loved.</i> |

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

|              |                                                                                                       |                                                                              |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ā-mā'-tūs sum or fu'-ī,<br>ā-mā'-tūs ēs or fu-is'-tī,<br>ā-mā'-tūs est or fu'-it,                     | <i>I have been loved,<br/>thou hast been loved,<br/>he has been loved ;</i>  |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ā-mā'-tī sū-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs,<br>ā-mā'-tī es'-tīs or fu-is'-tīs,<br>ā-mā'-tī sunt, fu'ē'-runt or -rē, | <i>we have been loved,<br/>ye have been loved,<br/>they have been loved.</i> |

Pluperfect. *had been.*

|              |                                                                                                                 |                                                                             |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ā-mā'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,<br>ā-mā'-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,<br>ā-mā'-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt,              | <i>I had been loved,<br/>thou hadst been loved,<br/>he had been loved ;</i> |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ā-mā'-tī ē-rā'-mūs or fu'-ē-rā'-mūs,<br>ā-mā'-tī ē-rā'-tīs or fu'-ē-rā'-tīs,<br>ā-mā'-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant, | <i>we had been loved,<br/>ye had been loved,<br/>they had been loved.</i>   |

Future Perfect. *shall have been.*

|              |                                                                                                                 |                                                                                              |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | ā-mā'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō,<br>ā-mā'-tūs ē'-rīs or fu'-ē-rīs,<br>ā-mā'-tūs ē'-rit or fu'-ē-rit,                | <i>I shall have been loved,<br/>thou wilt have been loved,<br/>he will have been loved ;</i> |
| <i>Plur.</i> | ā-mā'-tī ēr'-ī-mūs or fu'-ēr'-ī-mūs,<br>ā-mā'-tī ēr'-ī-tīs or fu'-ēr'-ī-tīs,<br>ā-mā'-tī ē'-runt or fu'-ē-rint, | <i>we shall have been loved,<br/>ye will have been loved,<br/>they will have been loved.</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may, or can be.*

|                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> ă-měr,     | <i>I may be loved,</i>      |
| ă-mě'-rīs or -rě,       | <i>thou mayst be loved,</i> |
| ă-mě'-tūr,              | <i>he may be loved;</i>     |
| <i>Plur.</i> ă-mě'-mūr, | <i>we may be loved,</i>     |
| ă-mēm'-ī-nī,            | <i>ye may be loved,</i>     |
| ă-men'-tūr,             | <i>they may be loved.</i>   |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

|                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-rěr,    | <i>I would be loved,</i>      |
| ăm-ă-rě'-rīs or -rě,       | <i>thou wouldst be loved,</i> |
| ăm-ă-rě'-tūr,              | <i>he would be loved;</i>     |
| <i>Plur.</i> ăm-ă-rě'-mūr, | <i>we would be loved,</i>     |
| ăm-ă-rēm'-ī-nī,            | <i>ye would be loved,</i>     |
| ăm-ă-ren'-tūr,             | <i>they would be loved.</i>   |

Perfect. *may have been.*

|                                                 |                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,        | <i>I may have been loved,</i>      |
| ă-mă'-tūs sīs or fu'-ě-rīs,                     | <i>thou mayst have been loved,</i> |
| ă-mă'-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt,                     | <i>he may have been loved;</i>     |
| <i>Plur.</i> ă-mă'-tī sī'-mūs or fu'-er'-ī-mūs, | <i>we may have been loved,</i>     |
| ă-mă'-tī sī'-tīs or fu'-er'-ī-tīs,              | <i>ye may have been loved,</i>     |
| ă-mă'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint,                    | <i>they may have been loved.</i>   |

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

|                                                    |                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,      | <i>I would have been loved,</i>      |
| ă-mă'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,                   | <i>thou wouldst have been loved,</i> |
| ă-mă'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt,                   | <i>he would have been loved;</i>     |
| <i>Plur.</i> ă-mă'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs, | <i>we would have been loved,</i>     |
| ă-mă'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,              | <i>ye would have been loved,</i>     |
| ă-mă'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent,                  | <i>they would have been loved.</i>   |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                                |                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Pres. Sing.</i> ă-mă'-rě,   | <i>be thou loved;</i>       |
| <i>Plur.</i> ă-mām'-ī-nī,      | <i>be ye loved.</i>         |
| <i>Fut. Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tōr,   | <i>thou shalt be loved,</i> |
| ă-mă'-tōr,                     | <i>he shall be loved;</i>   |
| <i>Plur.</i> (ăm-ă-blīm'-ī-nī, | <i>ye shall be loved),</i>  |
| ă-man'-tōr,                    | <i>they shall be loved.</i> |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                                                |                                 |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> ă-mă'-rī,                      | <i>to be loved.</i>             |
| <i>Perfect.</i> ă-mă'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, | <i>to have been loved.</i>      |
| <i>Future.</i> ă-mă'-tum ī'-rī,                | <i>to be about to be loved.</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perfect.* ā-mā'-tūs,      loved, or having been loved.  
*Future.* ā-man'-dūs,      to be loved.

## SUPINE.

*Latter.* ā-mā'-tū,      to be loved.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

| From the first root, <i>am</i> , are derived |                |                 | From the second root, <i>amao</i> , are derived |                | From the third root, <i>amat</i> , are derived |  |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------|--|
|                                              | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i> |                                                 | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i>                                |  |
| <i>Ind. pres.</i>                            | amo,           | amor.           | <i>Ind. perf.</i>                               | amāvi,         | amātus sum, etc.                               |  |
| — <i>imperf.</i>                             | amābam,        | amābar.         | — <i>plup.</i>                                  | amavēram,      | amātus eram, etc.                              |  |
| — <i>fut.</i>                                | amābo,         | amābor.         | — <i>fut. perf.</i>                             | amavēro,       | amātus ero, etc.                               |  |
| <i>Subj. pres.</i>                           | amem,          | amer.           | <i>Subj. perf.</i>                              | amavērim,      | amātus sim, etc.                               |  |
| — <i>imperf.</i>                             | amārem,        | amārer.         | — <i>plup.</i>                                  | amavissem,     | amātus essem, etc.                             |  |
| <i>Imperat. pres.</i>                        | amā,           | amāre.          | <i>Inf. perf.</i>                               | amavisse,      | amātus esse, etc.                              |  |
| — <i>fut.</i>                                | amāto,         | amātor.         | From the third root,                            |                |                                                |  |
| <i>Inf. pres.</i>                            | amāre,         | amāri.          | <i>Inf. fut.</i>                                | amatūrus esse, | amātum iri.                                    |  |
| <i>Part. pres.</i>                           | amans,         |                 | <i>Part. fut.</i>                               | amatūrus.      |                                                |  |
| — <i>fut.</i>                                |                | amandus.        | — <i>perf.</i>                                  |                | amātus.                                        |  |
| <i>Gerund.</i>                               | amandī.        |                 | <i>Form. sup.</i>                               | amātum.        | <i>Lat. sup.</i> amātus.                       |  |

## § 157. SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* mō'-ne-ō.  
*Pres. Inf.* mō'-nē'-rē.  
*Perf. Ind.* mōn'-u-i.  
*Supine.* mōn'-i-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* mō'-ne-ōr.  
*Pres. Inf.* mō'-nē'-ri.  
*Perf. Part.* mōn'-i-tūs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I advise.*  
*Sing.* mō'-ne-ō,  
           mō'-nēs,  
           mō'-nēt;  
*Plur.* mō'-nē'-mūs,  
           mō'-nē'-tīs,  
           mō'-nent.

*I am advised.*  
*Sing.* mō'-ne-ōr,  
           mō'-nē'-ris or -rē,  
           mō'-nē'-tūr;  
*Plur.* mō'-nē'-mūr,  
           mō'-nēm'-i-nī,  
           mō'-nen'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I was advising.*  
*S.* mō'-nē'-bam,  
       mō'-nē'-bās,  
       mō'-nē'-bāt;  
*P.* mōn'-ē-bā'-mūs,  
       mōn'-ē-bā'-tīs,  
       mō'-nē'-bant.

*I was advised.*  
*S.* mō'-nē'-bār,  
       mōn'-ē-bā'-ris or -rē,  
       mōn'-ē-bā'-tūr;  
*P.* mōn'-ē-bā'-mūr,  
       mōn'-ē-bām'-i-nī,  
       mōn'-ē-ban'-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Future.

*I shall or will advise.*

*S.* mō-nē'-bō,  
mō-nē'-bis,  
mō-nē'-bit;  
*P.* mō-nēb'-i-mūs,  
mō-nēb'-i-tis,  
mō-nē'-bunt.

*I shall or will be advised.*

*S.* mō-nē'-bōr,  
mō-nēb'-ē-ris or -rē,  
mō-nēb'-i-tūr;  
*P.* mō-nēb'-i-mūr,  
mōn-ē-bīm'-i-nī,  
mōn-ē-bun'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I advised or have advised.*

*S.* mōn'-i-tūs sum or fu'-i,  
mōn'-i-tūs es or fu-is'-ti,  
mōn'-u-it;  
*P.* mōn'-i-ti sū'-mūs,  
mōn'-i-ti es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
mōn-u-ē'-runt or -rē.

*I was or have been advised.*

*S.* mōn'-i-tūs sum or fu'-i,  
mōn'-i-tūs es or fu-is'-ti,  
mōn'-i-tūs est or fu-it;  
*P.* mōn'-i-ti sū'-mūs or fu'-i-mūs,  
mōn'-i-ti es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
mōn'-i-ti sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rē.

## Pluperfect.

*I had advised.*

*S.* mō-nu'-ē-ram,  
mō-nu'-ē-rās,  
mō-nu'-ē-rāt;  
*P.* mōn-u-ē-rā'-mūs,  
mōn-u-ē-rā'-tis,  
mō-nu'-ē-rant.

*I had been advised.*

*S.* mōn'-i-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
mōn'-i-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,  
mōn'-i-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt;  
*P.* mōn'-i-ti ē-rā'-mūs or fu-e-rā'-mūs,  
mōn'-i-ti ē-rā'-tis or fu-e-rā'-tis,  
mōn'-i-ti ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have advised.*

*S.* mō-nu'-ē-rō,  
mō-nu'-ē-rīs,  
mō-nu'-ē-rīt;  
*P.* mōn-u-ēr'-i-mūs,  
mōn-u-ēr'-i-tis,  
mō-nu'-ē-rint.

*I shall have been advised.*

*S.* mōn'-i-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō,  
mōn'-i-tūs ē'-rīs or fu'-ē-rīs,  
mōn'-i-tūs ē'-rīt or fu'-ē-rīt;  
*P.* mōn'-i-ti ēr'-i-mūs or fu-ēr'-i-mūs,  
mōn'-i-ti ēr'-i-tis or fu-ēr'-i-tis,  
mōn'-i-ti ē'-runt or fu'-ē-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can advise.*

*S.* mō'-ne-am,  
mō'-ne-ās,  
mō'-ne-āt;  
*P.* mō-ne-ā'-mūs,  
mō-ne-ā'-tis,  
mō'-ne-ant.

*I may or can be advised.*

*S.* mō'-ne-ār,  
mō-ne-ā'-ris or -rē,  
mō-ne-ā'-tūr;  
*P.* mō-ne-ā'-mūr,  
mō-ne-ām'-i-nī,  
mō-ne-an'-tūr.



## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should advise.*

*S.* mǒ-ně'-rem,  
mǒ-ně'-rēs,  
mǒ-ně'-rēt;  
*P.* mǒn-ě-rē'-mūs,  
mǒn-ě-rē'-tis,  
mǒ-ně'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be advised.*

*S.* mǒ-ně'-rēr,  
mǒn-ě-rē'-rīs or -rē,  
mǒn-ě-rē'-tūr;  
*P.* mǒn-ě-rē'-mūr,  
mǒn-ě-rēm'-i-nī,  
mǒn-ě-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have advised.*

*S.* mǒ-nu'-ě-rim,  
mǒ-nu'-ě-rīs,  
mǒ-nu'-ě-rīt;  
*P.* mǒn-u-ēr'-i-mūs,  
mǒn-u-ēr'-i-tīs,  
mǒ-nu'-ě-rint.

*I may have been advised.*

*S.* mǒn'-i-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
mǒn'-i-tūs sīs or fu'-ě-rīs,  
mǒn'-i-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt;  
*P.* mǒn'-i-ti sī'-mūs or fu-ēr'-i-mūs,  
mǒn'-i-ti sī'-tīs or fu-ēr'-i-tīs,  
mǒn'-i-ti sint or fu'-ě-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have advised.*

*S.* mǒn-u-is'-sem,  
mǒn-u-is'-sēs,  
mǒn-u-is'-sēt;  
*P.* mǒn-u-is-sē'-mūs,  
mǒn-u-is-sē'-tīs,  
mǒn-u-is'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been advised.*

*S.* mǒn'-i-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
mǒn'-i-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
mǒn'-i-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
*P.* mǒn'-i-ti es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
mǒn'-i-ti es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,  
mǒn'-i-ti es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S.* mǒ'-ně, advise thou;

*P.* mǒ-ně'-tē, advise ye.

*Fut. S.* mǒ-ně'-tǒ, thou shalt advise,

mǒ-ně'-tǒ, he shall advise;

*P.* mǒn-ě-tǒ'-tē, ye shall advise,

mǒ-nen'-tǒ, they shall advise.

*Pres. S.* mǒ-ně'-rē, be thou advised;

*P.* mǒ-nēm'-i-nī, be ye advised.

*Fut. S.* mǒ-ně'-tǒr, thou shalt be advised,

mǒ-ně'-tǒr, he shall be advised;

*P.* (mǒn-ě-bīm'-i-nī, ye shall be advised.)

mǒ-nen'-tǒr, they shall be advised.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* mǒ-ně'-rē, to advise.

*Perf.* mǒn-u-is'-sē, to have advised.

*Fut.* mǒn-i-tū'-rūs es'-sē, to be about to advise.

*Pres.* mǒ-ně'-rī, to be advised.

*Perf.* mǒn'-i-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, to have been advised.

*Fut.* mǒn'-i-tum i'-rī, to be about to be advised.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* mō'-nens, *advising.**Perf.* mōn'-i-tūs, *advised.**Fut.* mōn'-i-tū'-rūs, *about to advise.**Fut.* mō-nen'-dūs, *to be advised.*

## GERUND.

*G.* mō-nen'-dī, *of advising,**D.* mō-nen'-dō, *etc.**Ac.* mō-nen'-dum,*Ab.* mō-nen'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* mōn'-i-tum, *to advise.* | *Latter.* mōn'-i-tū, *to be advised.*

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *mon*, are derived,

|                       | <i>Active.</i>    | <i>Passive.</i> |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Ind. pres.</i>     | moneo, moneor.    |                 |
| — <i>imperf.</i>      | monēbam, monēbar. |                 |
| — <i>fut.</i>         | monēbo, monēbor.  |                 |
| <i>Subj. pres.</i>    | moneam, monear.   |                 |
| — <i>imperf.</i>      | monērem, monērer. |                 |
| <i>Imperat. pres.</i> | mone, monēre.     |                 |
| — <i>fut.</i>         | monēto, monētor.  |                 |
| <i>Inf. pres.</i>     | monēre, monēri.   |                 |
| <i>Part. pres.</i>    | monens,           |                 |
| — <i>fut.</i>         | monendus.         |                 |
| <i>Gerund.</i>        | monendī.          |                 |

From the second root, *monu*, are derived,

|                     | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i>     |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| <i>Ind. perf.</i>   | monui,         | monitus sum, etc.   |
| — <i>plup.</i>      | monuēram,      | monitus eram, etc.  |
| — <i>fut. perf.</i> | monuēro,       | monitus ero, etc.   |
| <i>Subj. perf.</i>  | monuēssim,     | monitus sim, etc.   |
| — <i>plup.</i>      | monuissē,      | monitus essem, etc. |
| <i>Inf. perf.</i>   | monuisse,      | monitus esse, etc.  |

From the third root,

|                   |                 |                          |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Inf. fut.</i>  | monitūrus esse, | monitūm iri.             |
| <i>Part. fut.</i> | monitūrus,      |                          |
| — <i>perf.</i>    |                 | monitus.                 |
| <i>Form. Sup.</i> | monitum.        | <i>Lat. Sup.</i> monitu. |

## § 158. THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* rē'-gō.  
*Pres. Inf.* rēg'-ē-rē.  
*Perf. Ind.* rex'-i.  
*Supine.* rec'-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* rē'-gōr.  
*Pres. Inf.* rē'-gi.  
*Perf. Part.* rec'-tūs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present

*I rule.*  
*Sing.* rē'-gō,  
           rē'-gis,  
           rē'-gīt;  
*Plur.* rēg'-i-mūs,  
           rēg'-i-tis,  
           rē-gunt.

*I am ruled.*  
*Sing.* rē'-gōr,  
           rēg'-ē-ris or -rē,  
           rēg'-i-tūr;  
*Plur.* rēg'-i-mūr,  
           rē-gīm'-i-ni,  
           rē-gun'-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*I was ruling.*

*S.* rě-gě'-bam,  
rě-gě'-bās,  
rě-gě'-bāt;  
*P.* rěg-ě-bā'-mūs,  
rěg-ě-bā'-tis,  
rě-gě'-bant.

*I was ruled.*

*S.* rě-gě'-bār,  
rěg-ě-bā'-ris or -rě,  
rěg-ě-bā'-tūr;  
*P.* rěg-ě-bā'-mūr,  
rěg-ě-bām'-i-ni,  
rěg-ě-ban'-tūr.

## Future.

*I shall or will rule.*

*S.* rě'-gam,  
rě'-gēs,  
rě'-gēt;  
*P.* rě-gě'-mūs,  
rě-gě'-tis,  
rě-gent.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

*S.* rě'-gār,  
rě-gě'-ris or -rě,  
rě-gě'-tūr;  
*P.* rě-gě'-mūr,  
rě-gēm'-i-ni,  
rě-gen'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

*S.* rex'-i,  
rex-is'-ti,  
rex'-it;  
*P.* rex'-i-mūs,  
rex-is'-tis,  
rex-ě'-runt or -rě.

*I was or have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tūs sum or fu'-i,  
rec'-tūs es or fu-is'-ti,  
rec'-tūs est or fu-it;  
*P.* rec'-ti sū'-mūs or fu'-i-mūs,  
rec'-ti es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
rec'-ti sunt, fu-ě'-runt or -rě.

## Pluperfect.

*I had ruled.*

*S.* rex'-ě-ram,  
rex'-ě-rās,  
rex'-ě-rāt;  
*P.* rex-ě-rā'-mūs,  
rex-ě-rā'-tis,  
rex'-ě-rant.

*I had been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tūs ẽ'-ram or fu'-ě-ram,  
rec'-tūs ẽ'-rās or fu'-ě-rās,  
rec'-tūs ẽ'-rāt or fu'-ě-rāt;  
*P.* rec'-ti ẽ-rā'-mūs or fu-ẽ-rā'-mūs,  
rec'-ti ẽ-rā'-tis or fu-ẽ-rā'-tis,  
rec'-ti ẽ'-rant or fu'-ẽ-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have ruled.*

*S.* rex'-ě-rō,  
rex'-ě-rīs,  
rex'-ě-rīt;  
*P.* rex-ěr'-i-mūs,  
rex-ěr'-i-tis,  
rex'-ě-rint.

*I shall have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tūs ẽ'-rō or fu'-ě-rō,  
rec'-tūs ẽ'-rīs or fu'-ě-rīs,  
rec'-tūs ẽ'-rīt or fu'-ě-rīt;  
*P.* rec'-ti ẽr'-i-mūs or fu-ẽr'-i-mūs,  
rec'-ti ẽr'-i-tis or fu-ẽr'-i-tis,  
rec'-ti ẽ'-runt or fu'-ẽ-rint.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can rule.*

*S.* rě-gam,  
rě-gās,  
rě-gāt;  
*P.* rě-gā-mūs,  
rě-gā-tīs,  
rě-gant.

*I may or can be ruled.*

*S.* rě-gār,  
rě-gā-rīs or -rě,  
rě-gā-tūr;  
*P.* rě-gā-mūr,  
rě-gām'-ī-nī,  
rě-gan'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*

*S.* rěg'-ě-rem,  
rěg'-ě-rēs,  
rěg'-ě-rēt;  
*P.* rěg'-ě-rē-mūs,  
rěg'-ě-rē-tīs,  
rěg'-ě-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

*S.* rěg'-ě-rēr,  
rěg'-ě-rē-rīs or -rě,  
rěg'-ě-rē-tūr;  
*P.* rěg'-ě-rē-mūr,  
rěg'-ě-rēm'-ī-nī,  
rěg'-ě-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have ruled.*

*S.* rex'-ě-rim,  
rex'-ě-rīs,  
rex'-ě-rīt;  
*P.* rex'-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rex'-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
rex'-ě-rint.

*I may have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
rec'-tūs ais or fu'-ě-rīs,  
rec'-tūs sit or fu'-ě-rīt;  
*P.* rec'-tī sī'-mūs or fu'-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rec'-tī sī'-tīs or fu'-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
rec'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

*S.* rex-is'-sem,  
rex-is'-sēs,  
rex-is'-sēt;  
*P.* rex-is-sē'-mūs,  
rex-is-sē'-tīs,  
rex-is'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
rec'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
rec'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
*P.* rec'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
rec'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,  
rec'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S.* rě-gě, rule thou,*P.* rěg'-ī-tě, rule ye.*Fut. S.* rěg'-ī-tě, thou shalt rule,*rěg'-ī-tě, he shall rule;**P.* rěg'-ī-tě-tě, ye shall rule,*rě-gun'-tě, they shall rule.**Pres. S.* rěg'-ě-rě, be thou ruled;*P.* rě-gim'-ī-nī, be ye ruled.*Fut. S.* rěg'-ī-těr, thou shalt be ruled,*rěg'-ī-těr, he shall be ruled;**P.* (rě-gim'-ī-nī, ye shall, etc.)*rě-gun'-těr, they shall, etc.*

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* rēg'-ē-rē, to rule.*Perf.* rex-is'-sē, to have ruled.*Fut.* rec-tū'-rūs es'-se, to be about to rule.*Pres.* rē-gī, to be ruled.*Perf.* rec-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, to have been ruled.*Fut.* rec-tum ī-ri, to be about to be ruled.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* rē-gens, ruling.*Fut.* rec-tū'-rūs, about to rule.*Perf.* rec'-tūs, ruled.*Fut.* rē-gen'-dūs, to be ruled.

## GERUND.

*G.* rē-gen'-dī, of ruling.*D.* rē-gen'-dō, etc.*Ac.* rē-gen'-dum,*Ab.* rē-gen'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* rec'-tum, to rule.*Latter.* rec'-tū, to be ruled.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *reg*, are derived,

|                       | Active.   | Passive. |
|-----------------------|-----------|----------|
| <i>Ind. pres.</i>     | rego,     | regor.   |
| — <i>imperf.</i>      | regēbam,  | regēbar. |
| — <i>fut.</i>         | regam,    | regar.   |
| <i>Subj. pres.</i>    | regam,    | regar.   |
| — <i>imperf.</i>      | regērem,  | regērer. |
| <i>Imperat. pres.</i> | rege,     | regēre.  |
| — <i>fut.</i>         | regito,   | regitor. |
| <i>Inf. pres.</i>     | regere,   | regi.    |
| <i>Part. pres.</i>    | regens,   |          |
| — <i>fut.</i>         | regendus. |          |
| <i>Gerund.</i>        | regendū.  |          |

From the second root, *rex*, are derived,

|                     | Active.   | Passive.           |
|---------------------|-----------|--------------------|
| <i>Ind. perf.</i>   | rexī,     | rectus sum, etc.   |
| — <i>plup.</i>      | rexeram,  | rectus eram, etc.  |
| — <i>fut. perf.</i> | rexero,   | rectus ero, etc.   |
| <i>Subj. perf.</i>  | rexerim,  | rectus sim, etc.   |
| — <i>plup.</i>      | rexissem, | rectus essem, etc. |
| <i>Inf. perf.</i>   | rexisse.  | rectus esse, etc.  |

From the third root,

|                   |                |                          |
|-------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Inf. fut.</i>  | rectūrus esse, | rectum iri.              |
| <i>Part. fut.</i> | rectūrus.      |                          |
| — <i>perf.</i>    |                | rectus.                  |
| <i>Form. Sup.</i> | rectum.        | <i>Lat. Sup.</i> rectus. |

§ 159. VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation, in tenses formed from the first root, have, as connecting vowels, *ia*, *ie*, *io*, or *iu*, wherever the same occur in the fourth conjugation; but where they have only a single connecting vowel, it is the same which characterizes other verbs of the third conjugation. They are all conjugated like *cūpio*.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* cǎ'-pi-ǎ, to take.*Pres. Inf.* cǎp'-ǎ-rǎ.*Perf. Ind.* cǎ'-pi.*Supine.* cap'-tum.*Pres. Ind.* cǎ'-pi-ǎr, to be taken.*Pres. Inf.* cǎ'-pi.*Perf. Part.* cap'-tǎs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-ǎ,  
cǎ'-pǎs,  
cǎ'-pǎt;  
*P.* cǎp'-ǎ-mǎs,  
cǎp'-ǎ-tǎs,  
cǎ'-pi-unt.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-ǎr,  
cǎp'-ǎ-rǎs or -rǎ,  
cǎp'-ǎ-tǎr;  
*P.* cǎp'-ǎ-mǎr,  
cǎ'-pǎm'-ǎ-nǎ,  
cǎ'-pi-un'-tǎr.

## Imperfect.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-bam,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-bǎs,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-bǎt;  
*P.* cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-bǎ-mǎs,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-bǎ-tǎs,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-bant.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-bǎr,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-bǎ-rǎs or -rǎ,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-bǎ-tǎr;  
*P.* cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-bǎ-mǎr,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-bǎm'-ǎ-nǎ,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-ban'-tǎr.

## Future.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-am,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎs,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎt;  
*P.* cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-mǎs,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-tǎs,  
cǎ'-pi-ent.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-ǎr,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ-rǎs or -rǎ,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-tǎr;  
*P.* cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-mǎr,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎm'-ǎ-nǎ,  
cǎ'-pi-en'-tǎr.

The parts formed from the second and third roots being entirely regular, only a synopsis of them is given.

*Perf.* cǎ'-pi.*Plup.* cǎp'-ǎ-ram.*Fut. perf.* cǎp'-ǎ-rǎ.*Perf.* cap'-tǎs sum or fu'-ǎ.*Plup.* cap'-tǎs ǎ'-ram or fu'-ǎ-ram.*Fut. perf.* cap'-tǎs ǎ'-rǎ or fu'-ǎ-rǎ.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-am,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎs,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎt;  
*P.* cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-mǎs,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-tǎs,  
cǎ'-pi-ant.

*S.* cǎ'-pi-ǎr,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ-rǎs or -rǎ,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-tǎr;  
*P.* cǎ'-pi-ǎ'-mǎr,  
cǎ'-pi-ǎm'-ǎ-nǎ,  
cǎ'-pi-an'-tǎr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*S.* cǎp'-ě-rem,  
cǎp'-ě-rēs,  
cǎp'-ě-rēt;  
*P.* cǎp'-ě-rē-mūs,  
cǎp'-ě-rē-tīs,  
cǎp'-ě-rent.

*S.* cǎp'-ě-rēr,  
cǎp'-ě-rē-rīs or -rē,  
cǎp'-ě-rē-tūr;  
*P.* cǎp'-ě-rē-mūr,  
cǎp'-ě-rēm'-ī-nī,  
cǎp'-ě-ren'-tūr.

*Perf.* cēp'-ě-rim.

*Plup.* cē-pis'-sem.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim.

*Plup.* cap'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. 2. S.* cǎ'-pě; *P. 2.* cǎp'-ī-tě. | *S.* cǎp'-ě-rě; *P.* cǎ-pīm'-ī-nī.  
*Fut. 2.* cǎp-ī-tǔ, cǎp-ī-tō-tě, | cǎp'-ī-tǔr, (cǎ-pī-ēm'-ī-nī).  
— *3.* cǎp-ī-tǔ; cǎ-pi-un'-tǔ. | cǎp'-ī-tǔr; cǎ-pi-un'-tǔr.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* cǎp'-ě-rě.

*Perf.* cē-pis'-sě.

*Fut.* cap-tū-rūs es'-sě.

*Pres.* cǎ'-pī.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.

*Fut.* cap-tum ī'-rī.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* cǎ'-pi-ens.

*Fut.* cap-tū-rūs.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs.

*Fut.* cǎ-pi-en'-dūs.

## GERUND.

*G.* cǎ-pi-en'-dī, etc.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* cap'-tum.

| *Latter.* cap'-tū.

## § 160. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* au'-dī-ō.

*Pres. Inf.* au-dī'-rě.

*Perf. Ind.* au-dī'-vī.

*Supine.* au-dī'-tum.

| *Pres. Ind.* au'-dī-ōr.

*Pres. Inf.* au-dī'-rī.

*Perf. Part.* au-dī'-tūs.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I hear.*

- S.* au'-di-ě,  
au'-dis,  
au'dít;  
*P.* au-di'-mūs,  
au'-di'-tis,  
au'-di-unt.

*I am heard.*

- S.* au'-di-ör,  
au-di'-ris or -rě,  
au-di'-tür;  
*P.* au-di'-mür,  
au-dim'-i-ni,  
au-di-un'-tür.

## Imperfect.

*I was hearing.*

- S.* au-di-ě'-bam,  
au-di-ě'-bās,  
au-di-ě'-bāt;  
*P.* au-di-ě-bā'-mūs,  
au-di-ě-bā'-tis,  
au-di-ě-bant.

*I was heard.*

- S.* au-di-ě'-bār,  
au-di-ě-bā'-ris or -rě,  
au-di-ě-bā'-tür;  
*P.* au-di-ě-bā'-mür,  
au-di-ě-bām'-i-ni,  
au-di-ě-ban'-tür.

## Future.

*I shall or will hear.*

- S.* au'-di-am,  
au'-di-ēs,  
au'-di-ēt;  
*P.* au-di-ě'-mūs,  
au-di-ě'-tis,  
au'-di-ent.

*I shall or will be heard.*

- S.* au'-di-ār,  
au-di-ě'-ris or -rě,  
au-di-ě'-tür;  
*P.* au-di-ě'-mür,  
au-di-ēm'-i-ni,  
au-di-en'-tür.

## Perfect.

*I heard or have heard.*

- S.* au-di'-vi,  
au-di-vis'-ti,  
au-di'-vít;  
*P.* au-div'-i-mūs,  
au-di-vis'-tis,  
au-di-vě'-runt or -rě.

*I have been or was heard.*

- S.* au-di'-tūs sum or fu'-i,  
au-di'-tūs ēs or fu-is'-ti,  
au-di'-tūs est or fu'-it;  
*P.* au-di'-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-i-mūs,  
au-di'-tī es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
au-di'-tī sunt, fu-ě'-runt or -rě.

## Pluperfect.

*I had heard.*

- S.* au-div'-ě-ram,  
au-div'-ě-rās,  
au-div'-ě-rāt;  
*P.* au-div-ě-rā'-mūs,  
au-div-ě-rā'-tis,  
au-div-ě-rant.

*I had been heard.*

- S.* au-di'-tūs ě'-ram or fu'-ě-ram,  
au-di'-tūs ě'-rās or fu'-ě-rās,  
au-di'-tūs ě'-rāt or fu'-ě-rāt;  
*P.* au-di'-tī ě-rā'-mūs or fu-ě-rā'-mūs,  
au-di'-tī ě-rā'-tis or fu-ě-rā'-tis,  
au-di'-tī ě'-rant or fu'-ě-rant.



## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have heard.*

S. au-div'-ē-rē,  
 au-div'-ē-rīs,  
 au-div'-ē-rīt;  
 P. au-di-vēr'-ī-mūs,  
 au-di-vēr'-ī-tīs,  
 au-div'-ē-rint.

*I shall have been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs ē'-rē or fu'-ē-rē,  
 au-di'-tūs ē'-rīs or fu'-ē-rīs,  
 au-di'-tūs ē'-rīt or fu'-ē-rīt;  
 P. au-di'-tī ēr'-ī-mūs or fu-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
 au-di'-tī ēr'-ī-tīs or fu-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
 au-di'-tī ē'-runt or fu'-ē-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can hear.*

S. au'-di-am,  
 au'-di-ās,  
 au'-di-āt;  
 P. au-di-ā'-mūs,  
 au-di-ā'-tīs,  
 au'-di-ant.

*I may or can be heard.*

S. au'-di-ār,  
 au-di-ā'-rīs or -rē,  
 au-di-ā'-tūr;  
 P. au-di-ā'-mūr,  
 au-di-ām'-ī-nī,  
 au-di-an'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*

S. au-di'-rem,  
 au-di'-rēs,  
 au-di'-rēt;  
 P. au-di-rē'-mūs,  
 au-di-rē'-tīs,  
 au-di'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

S. au-di'-rēr,  
 au-di-rē'-rīs or -rē,  
 au-di-rē'-tūr;  
 P. au-di-rē'-mūr,  
 au-di-rēm'-ī-nī,  
 au-di-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have heard.*

S. au-div'-ē-rim,  
 au-div'-ē-rīs,  
 au-div'-ē-rīt;  
 P. au-di-vēr'-ī-mūs,  
 au-di-vēr'-ī-tīs,  
 au-div'-ē-rint.

*I may have been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs sim or fu'-ē-rim,  
 au-di'-tūs sis or fu'-ē-rīs,  
 au-di'-tūs sit or fu'-ē-rīt;  
 P. au-di'-tī si'-mūs or fu-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
 au-di'-tī si'-tīs or fu-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
 au-di'-tī sint or fu'-ē-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*

S. au-di-vis'-sem,  
 au-di-vis'-sēs,  
 au-di-vis'-sēt;  
 P. au-di-vis-sē'-mūs,  
 au-di-vis-sē'-tīs,  
 au-di-vis'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
 au-di'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
 au-di'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
 P. au-di'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
 au-di'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,  
 au-di'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S.* au-di', hear thou;  
*P.* au-di'-tē, hear ye.  
*Fut. S.* au-di'-tō, thou shalt hear,  
 au-di'-tō, he shall hear;  
*P.* au-di-tō'-tē, ye shall hear,  
 au-di-un'-tō, they shall hear.

*Pres. S.* au-di'-rē, be thou heard;  
*P.* au-dim'-i-ni, be ye heard.  
*Fut. S.* au-di'-tōr, thou shalt be heard,  
 au-di'-tōr, he shall be heard;  
*P.* (au-di-ēm'-i-ni, ye shall be heard,)  
 au-di-un'-tōr, they shall be heard.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* au-di'-rē, to hear.  
*Perf.* au-di-vis'-sē, to have heard.  
*Fut.* au-di-tū'-rūs es-sē, to be about to hear.

*Pres.* au-di'-rī, to be heard.  
*Perf.* au-di'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, to have been heard.  
*Fut.* au-di'-tum i'-rī, to be about to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* au-di-ēns, hearing.  
*Fut.* au-di-tū'-rūs, about to hear.

*Perf.* au-di'-tūs, heard.  
*Fut.* au-di-en'-dūs, to be heard.

## GERUND.

*G.* au-di-en'-di, of hearing.  
*D.* au-di-en'-dō, etc.  
*Ac.* au-di-en'-dum,  
*Ab.* au-di-en'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* au-di'-tum, to hear. | *Latter.* au-di'-tū, to be heard.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *aud*, are derived

|                       |                |                 |
|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------|
|                       | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i> |
| <i>Ind. pres.</i>     | audio,         | audior.         |
| — <i>imperf.</i>      | audiebam,      | audiebar.       |
| — <i>fut.</i>         | audiam,        | audiar.         |
| <i>Subj. pres.</i>    | audiam,        | audiar.         |
| — <i>imperf.</i>      | audirem,       | audirer.        |
| <i>Imperat. pres.</i> | audi,          | audire.         |
| — <i>fut.</i>         | audito,        | auditor.        |
| <i>Inf. pres.</i>     | audire,        | audiri.         |
| <i>Part. pres.</i>    | audiens,       |                 |
| — <i>fut.</i>         |                | audiendus.      |
| <i>Gerund.</i>        | audiendi.      |                 |

From the second root, *audire*, are derived, *audiri*, are derived,

|                     |                |                     |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------------|
|                     | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i>     |
| <i>Ind. perf.</i>   | audivi,        | auditus sum, etc.   |
| — <i>plup.</i>      | audiveram,     | auditus eram, etc.  |
| — <i>fut. perf.</i> | audivero,      | auditus ero, etc.   |
| <i>Subj. perf.</i>  | audiverim,     | auditus sim, etc.   |
| — <i>plup.</i>      | audivissem,    | auditus essem, etc. |
| <i>Inf. perf.</i>   | audivisse,     | auditus esse, etc.  |

From the third root,  
*Inf. fut.* auditurus esse, auditum iri.

|                   |            |                   |
|-------------------|------------|-------------------|
| <i>Part. fut.</i> | auditurus. |                   |
| — <i>perf.</i>    |            | auditus.          |
| <i>Form. sup.</i> | auditum.   | Lat. sup. audita. |

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*I was ruling.*

S. rē-gē'-bam,  
rē-gē'-bas,  
rē-gē'-bāt;  
P. rēg-ē-bā'-mūs,  
rēg-ē-bā'-tis,  
rē-gē'-bant.

*I was ruled.*

S. rē-gē'-bār,  
rēg-ē-bā'-ris or -rē,  
rēg-ē-bā'-tūr;  
P. rēg-ē-bā'-mūr,  
rēg-ē-bām'-i-nī,  
rēg-ē-ban'-tūr.

## Future.

*I shall or will rule.*

S. rē'-gam,  
rē'-ges,  
rē'-gēt;  
P. rē-gē'-mūs,  
rē-gē'-tis,  
rē-gent.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

S. rē'-gār,  
rē-gē'-ris or -rē,  
rē-gē'-tūr;  
P. rē-gē'-mūr,  
rē-gēm'-i-nī,  
rē-gen'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

S. rex'-i,  
rex-is'-ti,  
rex'-it;  
P. rex'-i-mūs,  
rex-is'-tis,  
rex-ē'-runt or -rē.

*I was or have been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs sum or fu'-i,  
rec'-tūs es or fu-is'-ti,  
rec'-tūs est or fu'-it;  
P. rec'-ti sū-mūs or fu'-i-mūs,  
rec'-ti es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
rec'-ti sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rē.

## Pluperfect.

*I had ruled.*

S. rex'-ē-ram,  
rex'-ē-rās,  
rex'-ē-rāt;  
P. rex-ē-rā'-mūs,  
rex-ē-rā'-tis,  
rex'-ē-rant.

*I had been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt;  
P. rec'-ti ē-rā'-mūs or fu-ē-rā'-mūs,  
rec'-ti ē-rā'-tis or fu-ē-rā'-tis,  
rec'-ti ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have ruled.*

S. rex'-ē-rō,  
rex'-ē-ris,  
rex'-ē-rit;  
P. rex-ēr'-i-mūs,  
rex-ēr'-i-tis,  
rex'-ē-rint.

*I shall have been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō,  
rec'-tūs ē'-ris or fu'-ē-ris,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rit or fu'-ē-rit;  
P. rec'-ti ēr'-i-mūs or fu-ēr'-i-mūs,  
rec'-ti ēr'-i-tis or fu-ēr'-i-tis,  
rec'-ti ē'-runt or fu'-ē-rint.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can rule.*

*S.* rě'-gam,  
rě'-gās,  
rě'-gāt;  
*P.* rě'-gā'-mūs,  
rě'-gā'-tis,  
rě'-gant.

*I may or can be ruled.*

*S.* rě'-gār,  
rě'-gā'-ris or -rě,  
rě'-gā'-tūr;  
*P.* rě'-gā'-mūr,  
rě'-gam'-i-ni,  
rě'-gan'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*

*S.* rěg'-ě-rem,  
rěg'-ě-rēs,  
rěg'-ě-rēt;  
*P.* rěg'-ě-rē'-mūs,  
rěg'-ě-rē'-tis,  
rěg'-ě-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

*S.* rěg'-ě-rēr,  
rěg'-ě-rē'-ris or -rě,  
rěg'-ě-rē'-tūr;  
*P.* rěg'-ě-rē'-mūr,  
rěg'-ě-rēm'-i-ni,  
rěg'-ě-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have ruled.*

*S.* rex'-ě-rim,  
rex'-ě-rīs,  
rex'-ě-rīt;  
*P.* rex'-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rex'-ēr'-ī-tis,  
rex'-ē-rint.

*I may have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
rec'-tūs sis or fu'-ě-rīs,  
rec'-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt;  
*P.* rec'-ti sī'-mūs or fu'-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rec'-ti sī'-tis or fu'-ēr'-ī-tis,  
rec'-ti sint or fu'-ē-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

*S.* rex'-is'-sem,  
rex'-is'-sēs,  
rex'-is'-sēt;  
*P.* rex'-is-sē'-mūs,  
rex'-is-sē'-tis,  
rex'-is'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tūs es'-sem or fu'-is'-sem,  
rec'-tūs es'-sēs or fu'-is'-sēs,  
rec'-tūs es'-sēt or fu'-is'-sēt;  
*P.* rec'-ti es-sē'-mūs or fu'-is-sē'-mūs,  
rec'-ti es-sē'-tis or fu'-is-sē'-tis,  
rec'-ti es'-sent or fu'-is'-sent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S.* rě'-gě, rule thou,*P.* rěg'-ī-tě, rule ye.*Fut. S.* rěg'-ī-tō, thou shalt rule,*rěg'-ī-tō, he shall rule;**P.* rěg'-ī-tō'-tě, ye shall rule,*rě-gun'-tō, they shall rule.**Pres. S.* rěg'-ě-rě, be thou ruled;*P.* rě-gim'-i-ni, be ye ruled.*Fut. S.* rěg'-ī-tōr, thou shalt be ruled,*rěg'-ī-tōr, he shall be ruled;**P.* (rě-gim'-i-ni, ye shall, etc.)*rě-gun'-tōr, they shall, etc.*

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres. rēg'-ē-rē, to rule.**Perf. rex-is'-sē, to have ruled.**Fut. rec-tū'-rūs es'-se, to be about to rule.**Pres. rē'-gī, to be ruled.**Perf. rec'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, to have been ruled.**Fut. rec'-tum i'-rī, to be about to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres. rē'-gens, ruling.**Fut. rec-tū'-rūs, about to rule.**Perf. rec'-tūs, ruled.**Fut. rē-gen'-dūs, to be ruled.*

## GERUND.

*G. rē-gen'-dī, of ruling.**D. rē-gen'-dō, etc.**Ac. rē-gen'-dum,**Ab. rē-gen'-dō.*

## SUPINES.

*Former. rec'-tum, to rule.**Latter. rec'-tū, to be ruled.*

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *reg*, are derived,

|                       | Active.         | Passive.         |
|-----------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| <i>Ind. pres.</i>     | <i>rego,</i>    | <i>regor.</i>    |
| <i>— imperf.</i>      | <i>regēbam,</i> | <i>regēbar.</i>  |
| <i>— fut.</i>         | <i>regam,</i>   | <i>regar.</i>    |
| <i>Subj. pres.</i>    | <i>regam,</i>   | <i>regar.</i>    |
| <i>— imperf.</i>      | <i>regērem,</i> | <i>regērer.</i>  |
| <i>Imperat. pres.</i> | <i>rege,</i>    | <i>regere.</i>   |
| <i>— fut.</i>         | <i>regito,</i>  | <i>regitor.</i>  |
| <i>Inf. pres.</i>     | <i>regere,</i>  | <i>regi.</i>     |
| <i>Part. pres.</i>    | <i>regens,</i>  |                  |
| <i>— fut.</i>         |                 | <i>regendus.</i> |
| <i>Gerund.</i>        | <i>regendū.</i> |                  |

From the second root, *rex*, are derived,

|                     | Active.          | Passive.                  |
|---------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Ind. perf.</i>   | <i>rexī,</i>     | <i>rectus sum, etc.</i>   |
| <i>— plup.</i>      | <i>rexeram,</i>  | <i>rectus eram, etc.</i>  |
| <i>— fut. perf.</i> | <i>rexero,</i>   | <i>rectus ero, etc.</i>   |
| <i>Subj. perf.</i>  | <i>rexerim,</i>  | <i>rectus sim, etc.</i>   |
| <i>— plup.</i>      | <i>rexissem,</i> | <i>rectus essem, etc.</i> |
| <i>Inf. perf.</i>   | <i>rexisse.</i>  | <i>rectus esse, etc.</i>  |

From the third root,

|                   |                       |                          |
|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Inf. fut.</i>  | <i>rectūrus esse,</i> | <i>rectum iri.</i>       |
| <i>Part. fut.</i> | <i>rectūrus.</i>      |                          |
| <i>— perf.</i>    |                       | <i>rectus.</i>           |
| <i>Form. Sup.</i> | <i>rectum.</i>        | <i>Lat. Sup. rectus.</i> |

§ 159. VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation, in tenses formed from the first root, have, as connecting vowels, *ia*, *ie*, *io*, or *iu*, wherever the same occur in the fourth conjugation; but where they have only a single connecting vowel, it is the same which characterizes other verbs of the third conjugation. They are all conjugated like *cāpio*.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* că'-pi-**ŭ**, *to take.**Pres. Inf.* căp'-**ě**-rě.*Perf. Ind.* cě'-pi.*Supine.* cap'-t**um**.*Pres. Ind.* că'-pi-**ŭr**, *to be taken.**Pres. Inf.* că'-pi.*Perf. Part.* cap'-t**us**.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* că'-pi-**ŭ**,  
că'-pi-s,  
că'-pi-t;  
*P.* căp'-i-m**us**,  
căp'-i-t**is**,  
că-pi-un**t**.

*S.* că'-pi-**ŭr**,  
căp'-**ě**-r**is** *or* -r**ě**,  
căp'-i-t**ur**;  
*P.* căp'-i-m**ur**,  
că-pim'-i-n**i**,  
că-pi-un'-t**ur**.

## Imperfect.

*S.* că-pi-**ě**'-bam,  
că-pi-**ě**'-bās,  
că-pi-**ě**'-bāt;  
*P.* că-pi-**ě**-bā-m**us**,  
că-pi-**ě**-bā-t**is**,  
că-pi-**ě**-bant.

*S.* că-pi-**ě**'-bār,  
că-pi-**ě**-bā-r**is** *or* -r**ě**,  
că-pi-**ě**-bā-t**ur**;  
*P.* că-pi-**ě**-bā-m**ur**,  
că-pi-**ě**-bām'-i-n**i**,  
că-pi-**ě**-ban'-t**ur**.

## Future.

*S.* că'-pi-am,  
că'-pi-ēs,  
că'-pi-ēt;  
*P.* că-pi-**ě**'-m**us**,  
că-pi-**ě**'-t**is**,  
că-pi-en**t**.

*S.* că'-pi-ār,  
că-pi-**ě**-r**is** *or* -r**ě**,  
că-pi-**ě**-t**ur**;  
*P.* că-pi-**ě**'-m**ur**,  
că-pi-**em**'-i-n**i**,  
că-pi-en'-t**ur**.

The parts formed from the second and third roots being entirely regular, only a synopsis of them is given.

*Perf.* cě'-pi.*Plup.* cěp'-**ě**-ram.*Fut. perf.* cěp'-**ě**-r**ŭ**.*Perf.* cap'-t**us** *sum* *or* fu'-i.*Plup.* cap'-t**us** **ě**-ram *or* fu'-**ě**-ram.*Fut. perf.* cap'-t**us** **ě**-r**ŭ** *or* fu'-**ě**-r**ŭ**.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* că'-pi-am,  
că'-pi-ās,  
că'-pi-āt;  
*P.* că-pi-**ā**-m**us**,  
că-pi-**ā**-t**is**,  
că-pi-an**t**.

*S.* că'-pi-ār,  
că-pi-**ā**-r**is** *or* -r**ě**,  
că-pi-**ā**-t**ur**;  
*P.* că-pi-**ā**-m**ur**,  
că-pi-**ām**'-i-n**i**,  
că-pi-an'-t**ur**.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*S.* căp'-ě-rem,  
câp'-ě-rěs,  
câp'-ě-rět;  
*P.* căp'-ě-rě-mūs,  
câp'-ě-rě-tīs,  
câp'-ě-rent.

*S.* căp'-ě-rěr,  
câp'-ě-rě-rīs or -rě,  
câp'-ě-rě-tūr;  
*P.* căp'-ě-rě-mūr,  
câp'-ě-rēm'-ī-nī,  
câp'-ě-ren'-tūr.

*Perf.* cēp'-ě-rim.

*Plup.* cē-pis'-sem.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim.

*Plup.* cap'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. 2. S.* că'-pě; *P. 2.* căp'-ī-tě. | *S.* căp'-ě-rě; *P.* că-pīm'-ī-nī.  
*Fut. 2.* căp'-ī-tǔ, căp'-ī-tǔ-tě, | căp'-ī-tǔr, (că-pī-ēm'-ī-nī,  
— 3. căp'-ī-tǔ, că-pi-un'-tǔ. | căp'-ī-tǔr; că-pi-un'-tǔr.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* căp'-ě-rě.  
*Perf.* cē-pis'-sě.  
*Fut.* cap-tū-rūs es'-sě.

*Pres.* că'-pī.  
*Perf.* cap'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.  
*Fut.* cap'-tum ī'-rī.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* că'-pi-ens.  
*Fut.* cap-tū-rūs.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs.  
*Fut.* că-pi-en'-dūs.

## GERUND.

*G.* că-pi-en'-dī, etc.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* cap'-tum.

| *Latter.* cap'-tū.

## § 160. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* au'-dī-ǎ.  
*Pres. Inf.* au-dī'-rě.  
*Perf. Ind.* au-dī'-vī.  
*Supine.* au-dī'-tum.

| *Pres. Ind.* au'-dī-ǎr.  
*Pres. Inf.* au-dī'-rī.  
*Perf. Part.* au-dī'-tūs.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I hear.*

*S.* au'-di-ě,  
au'-dis,  
au'dit;  
*P.* au-di'-mūs,  
au'-di'-tis,  
au'-di-unt.

*I am heard.*

*S.* au'-di-ör,  
au-di'-ris or -rě,  
au-di'-tür;  
*P.* au-di'-mür,  
au-dim'-i-ni,  
au-di-un'-tür.

## Imperfect.

*I was hearing.*

*S.* au-di-ě'-bam,  
au-di-ě'-bas,  
au-di-ě'-bāt;  
*P.* au-di-ě-bā'-mūs,  
au-di-ě-bā'-tis,  
au-di-ě'-bant.

*I was heard.*

*S.* au-di-ě'-bār,  
au-di-ě-bā'-ris or -rě,  
au-di-ě-bā'-tür;  
*P.* au-di-ě-bā'-mür,  
au-di-ě-bām'-i-ni,  
au-di-ě-ban'-tür.

## Future.

*I shall or will hear.*

*S.* au'-di-am,  
au'-di-es,  
au'-di-ēt;  
*P.* au-di-ě'-mūs,  
au-di-ě'-tis,  
au'-di-ent.

*I shall or will be heard.*

*S.* au'-di-ār,  
au-di-ě'-ris or -rě,  
au-di-ě'-tür;  
*P.* au-di-ě'-mür,  
au-di-ēm'-i-ni,  
au-di-en'-tür.

## Perfect.

*I heard or have heard.*

*S.* au-di'-vi,  
au-di-vis'-ti,  
au-di'-vit;  
*P.* au-div'-i-mūs,  
au-di-vis'-tis,  
au-di-vě'-runt or -rě.

*I have been or was heard.*

*S.* au-di'-tūs sum or fu'-i,  
au-di'-tūs es or fu-is'-ti,  
au-di'-tūs est or fu'-it;  
*P.* au-di'-ti sū'-mūs or fu'-i-mūs,  
au-di'-ti es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
au-di'-ti sunt, fu-ě'-runt or -rě.

## Pluperfect.

*I had heard.*

*S.* au-div'-ě-ram,  
au-div'-ě-rās,  
au-div'-ě-rāt;  
*P.* au-div'-ě-rā'-mūs,  
au-div'-ě-rā'-tis,  
au-div'-ě-rant.

*I had been heard.*

*S.* au-di'-tūs ě'-ram or fu'-ě-ram,  
au-di'-tūs ě'-rās or fu'-ě-rās,  
au-di'-tūs ě'-rāt or fu'-ě-rāt;  
*P.* au-di'-ti ě'-rā'-mūs or fu'-ě-rā'-mūs,  
au-di'-ti ě'-rā'-tis or fu'-ě-rā'-tis,  
au-di'-ti ě'-rant or fu'-ě-rant.



## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have heard.*

S. au-div'-ě-rě,  
 au-div'-ě-ris,  
 au-div'-ě-rit;  
 P. au-di-věr'-i-mūs,  
 au-di-věr'-i-tis,  
 au-div'-ě-rint.

*I shall have been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs ě-rě or fu'-ě-rě,  
 au-di'-tūs ě-ris or fu'-ě-ris,  
 au-di'-tūs ě-rit or fu'-ě-rit;  
 P. au-di'-ti ěr'-i-mūs or fu-ěr'-i-mūs,  
 au-di'-ti ěr'-i-tis or fu-ěr'-i-tis,  
 au-di'-ti ě-runt or fu'-ě-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can hear.*

S. au'-di-am,  
 au'-di-ās,  
 au'-di-āt;  
 P. au-di-ā'-mūs,  
 au-di-ā'-tis,  
 au'-di-ant.

*I may or can be heard.*

S. au'-di-ār,  
 au-di-ā'-ris or -rě,  
 au-di-ā'-tūr;  
 P. au-di-ā'-mūr,  
 au-di-ām'-i-ni,  
 au-di-an'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*

S. au-di'-rem,  
 au-di'-rēs,  
 au-di'-rēt;  
 P. au-di-rē'-mūs,  
 au-di-rē'-tis,  
 au-di'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

S. au-di'-rēr,  
 au-di-rē'-ris or -rě,  
 au-di-rē'-tūr;  
 P. au-di-rē'-mūr,  
 au-di-rēm'-i-ni,  
 au-di-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have heard.*

S. au-div'-ě-rim,  
 au-div'-ě-ris,  
 au-div'-ě-rit;  
 P. au-di-věr'-i-mūs,  
 au-di-věr'-i-tis,  
 au-div'-ě-rint.

*I may have been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
 au-di'-tūs sis or fu'-ě-ris,  
 au-di'-tūs sit or fu'-ě-rit;  
 P. au-di'-ti si'-mūs or fu-ěr'-i-mūs,  
 au-di'-ti si'-tis or fu-ěr'-i-tis,  
 au-di'-ti sint or fu'-ě-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*

S. au-di-vis'-sem,  
 au-di-vis'-sēs,  
 au-di-vis'-sēt;  
 P. au-di-vis-sē'-mūs,  
 au-di-vis-sē'-tis,  
 au-di-vis-sē'-nt.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
 au-di'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
 au-di'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
 P. au-di'-ti es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
 au-di'-ti es-sē'-tis or fu-is-sē'-tis,  
 au-di'-ti es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S.* au-di', hear thou;  
*P.* au-di'-tē, hear ye.  
*Fut. S.* au-di'-tō, thou shalt hear,  
 au-di'-tō, he shall hear;  
*P.* au-di-tō'-tē, ye shall hear,  
 au-di-un'-tō, they shall hear.

*Pres. S.* au-di'-rē, be thou heard;  
*P.* au-dim'-i-nī, be ye heard.  
*Fut. S.* au-di'-tōr, thou shalt be heard,  
 au-di'-tōr, he shall be heard;  
*P.* (au-di-ēm'-i-nī, ye shall be heard,)  
 au-di-un'-tōr, they shall be heard.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* au-di'-rē, to hear.  
*Perf.* au-di-vis'-sē, to have heard.  
*Fut.* au-di-tū'-rūs es-sē, to be about to hear.

*Pres.* au-di'-rī, to be heard.  
*Perf.* au-di-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, to have been heard.  
*Fut.* au-di'-tum i'-rī, to be about to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* au-di-ēna, hearing.  
*Fut.* au-di-tū'-rūs, about to hear.

*Perf.* au-di-tūs, heard.  
*Fut.* au-di-en'-dūs, to be heard.

## GERUND.

*G.* au-di-en'-di, of hearing.  
*D.* au-di-en'-dō, etc.  
*Ac.* au-di-en'-dum,  
*Ab.* au-di-en'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* au-di'-tum, to hear. | *Latter.* au-di'-tū, to be heard.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *aud*, are derived

|                       |                |                 |
|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------|
|                       | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i> |
| <i>Ind. pres.</i>     | audio,         | audior.         |
| — <i>imperf.</i>      | audiebam,      | audiebar.       |
| — <i>fut.</i>         | audiam,        | audiar.         |
| <i>Subj. pres.</i>    | audiam,        | audiar.         |
| — <i>imperf.</i>      | audirem,       | audirer.        |
| <i>Imperat. pres.</i> | audi,          | audire.         |
| — <i>fut.</i>         | audito,        | auditor.        |
| <i>Inf. pres.</i>     | audire,        | audiri.         |
| <i>Part. pres.</i>    | audiens,       |                 |
| — <i>fut.</i>         |                | audiendus.      |
| <i>Gerund.</i>        | audiendi.      |                 |

From the second root, *audire*, are derived,

|                     |                |                     |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------------|
|                     | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i>     |
| <i>Ind. perf.</i>   | audivi,        | auditus sum, etc.   |
| — <i>plup.</i>      | audiveram,     | auditus eram, etc.  |
| — <i>fut. perf.</i> | audivero,      | auditus ero, etc.   |
| <i>Subj. perf.</i>  | audiverim,     | auditus sim, etc.   |
| — <i>plup.</i>      | audivissem,    | auditus essem, etc. |
| <i>Inf. perf.</i>   | audivisse,     | auditus esse, etc.  |

From the third root,

*Inf. fut.* auditurus esse, auditum iri.

*Part. fut.* auditurus.

— *perf.*

*Form. sup.* auditum.

auditus.

*Lat. sup.* audita.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 161. Deponent verbs are conjugated like the passive voice, and have also all the participles and participial formations of the active voice. Neuter deponent verbs, however, want the future passive participle, except that the neuter in *dum* is sometimes used impersonally. See § 184, 8.

The following is an example of an active deponent verb of the first conjugation :—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Mi'-rör, mī-rā'-rī, mī-rā'-tūs, *to admire.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

|                   |                                 |                              |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>      | mī-rör, mī-rā'-rīs, etc.        | <i>I admire, etc.</i>        |
| <i>Imperf.</i>    | mī-rā'-bār, etc.                | <i>I was admiring.</i>       |
| <i>Fut.</i>       | mī-rā'-bör,                     | <i>I shall admire.</i>       |
| <i>Perf.</i>      | mī-rā'-tūs sum or fu'-i,        | <i>I have admired.</i>       |
| <i>Plup.</i>      | mī-rā'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram, | <i>I had admired.</i>        |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> | mī-rā'-tūs ē'-ro or fu'-ē-ro,   | <i>I shall have admired.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

|                |                                   |                              |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | mī-rēr, mī-rē'-rīs, etc.          | <i>I may admire, etc.</i>    |
| <i>Imperf.</i> | mī-rā'-rēr,                       | <i>I would admire.</i>       |
| <i>Perf.</i>   | mī-rā'-tūs sim or fu'-ē-rim,      | <i>I may have admired.</i>   |
| <i>Plup.</i>   | mī-rā'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem, | <i>I would have admired.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                 |                                       |                                             |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres. S.</i> | mī-rā'-rē, <i>admire thou ;</i>       | <i>P. mī-rām'-i-nī, admire ye.</i>          |
| <i>Fut. S.</i>  | mī-rā'-tör, <i>thou shalt admire,</i> | <i>P. (mī-rā-bīm'-i-nī, ye shall, etc.)</i> |
|                 | mī-rā'-tör, <i>he shall admire ;</i>  | <i>mī-ran'-tör, they shall, etc.</i>        |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                   |                                 |                                   |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>      | mī-rā'-rī,                      | <i>to admire.</i>                 |
| <i>Perf.</i>      | mī-rā'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, | <i>to have admired.</i>           |
| <i>Fut. Act.</i>  | mī-rā'-tū'-rūs es'-sē,          | <i>to be about to admire.</i>     |
| <i>Fut. Pass.</i> | mī-rā'-tum i'-rī,               | <i>to be about to be admired.</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

|                   |                 |                         |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>      | mī'-rans,       | <i>admiring.</i>        |
| <i>Perf.</i>      | mī-rā'-tūs,     | <i>having admired.</i>  |
| <i>Fut. Act.</i>  | mī-rā'-tū'-rūs, | <i>about to admire.</i> |
| <i>Fut. Pass.</i> | mī-ran'-dūs,    | <i>to be admired.</i>   |

## GERUND.

G. mī-ran'-di, *of admiring, etc.*

## SUPINES.

*er.* mī-rā'-tum, *to admire.* | *Latter.* mī-rā'-tū, *to be admired.*

REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

*Of the Tenses formed from the First Root.*

§ 162. 1. A few words in the present subjunctive of the first and third conjugations, in the earlier writers and in the poets, end in *im*, *is*, *it*, etc.; as, *edim*, *edēs*, *edūt*, *edimus*; *comedim*, *comedēs*, *comedūt*; for *edam*, etc. *comedam*, etc.; *dam*, *duis*, *duūt*, *duint*; and *perdim*, *perduis*, *perduūt*, *perduint*; for *dem*, etc. *perdam*, etc. from old forms *duo* and *perduo*, for *do* and *perdo*: so *creduis*, *creduūt*, and also *creduam*, *creduas*, *creduat*, for *credam*, etc. from the old form *creduo*, for *credo*. The form in *im*, etc. was retained as the regular form in *sim* and *velim*, from *sum* and *volo*, and in their compounds.

2. The imperfect indicative in the fourth conjugation, sometimes, especially in the more ancient writers, ends in *ibam* and *ibar*, for *iēbam* and *iēbar*, and the future in *ibo* and *ibor*, for *iam* and *iar*; as, *vestibāt*, Virg., *largibār*, Propert., for *vestiēbāt*, *largiēbār*; *scibo*, *opperibor*, for *sciam*, *opperiar*. *Ibam* and *ibo* were retained as the regular forms of *eo*, *queo*, and *nequeo*. Cf. § 182.

3. The termination *re*, in the second person singular of the passive voice, is rare in the present, but common in the other simple tenses.

4. The imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, *fācio*, and *fēro*, are usually written *dīc*, *duc*, *fac*, and *fer*; in like manner their compounds, except those compounds of *fācio* which change a into i; as, *effice*, *confice*; but *caſſice* also is found in Cicero; and in old writers *dice*, *edice*, *addice*, *indice*, *dūce*, *abduce*, *reduce*, *traduce*, and *fāce*. *Inger* for *ingere* is rare. *Scio* has not *sci*, but its place is supplied by *scito*, and *sciōte* is preferred to *sciite*.

5. In the imperative future of the passive voice, but especially of deponents, early writers and their imitators sometimes used the active instead of the passive form; as, *arbitrāto*, *amplexātō*, *uīto*, *nīto*; for *arbitrātor*, etc.; and *censento*, *uīnto*, *tuentō*, etc. for *censor*, etc.—In the second and third persons singular occur, also, forms in *-mīno*; as, *hortamīno*, *veremīno*, *fruimīno*; for *hortātor*, etc.

6. The syllable *er* was often added to the present infinitive passive by early writers and especially by the poets; as, *amarier* for *amāri*, *dicier* for *dici*.

*Of the Tenses formed from the Second Root.*

7. (a.) When the second root ends in *v*, a syncope and contraction often occur in the tenses formed from it, by omitting *v*, and sinking the first vowel of the termination in the final vowel of the root, when followed, in the fourth conjugation, by *s*, and in the other conjugations, by *s* or *r*; as, *audissem* for *audivissem*, *amavisti* for *amavisti*, *implerunt* for *impleverunt*, *nōram* and *nosse* for *novēram* and *novisse*.

(b.) When the second root ends in *iv*, *v* is often omitted without contraction; as, *audīro* for *audivēro*; *audīsse* for *audivisse*.

(c.) When this root ends in *s* or *x*, especially in the third conjugation, the syllables *is*, *iss*, and *iss*, are sometimes omitted in the termination of tenses derived from it; as, *evasti* for *evastisti*, *extinxi* for *extinxisti*, *divise* for *divisisti*; *extinzem* for *extinxissem*, *surrexe* for *surrexisset*; *accessis* for *accessistis*, *justi* for *jussisti*; *dixi* for *dixisti*. So *facem* for (*facissem*, i. e.) *fecissem*.

(d.) In the perfect of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, a syncope sometimes occurs in the last syllable of the root and the following syllable of the termination, especially in the third person singular; as, *fūmāt*, *audīt*, *cūpūt*; for *fūmāvīt*, *audīvīt*, *cūpīvīt*. So, also, but rarely, in the first person; as, *sepēli*, *enarrāmus*; for *sepelīvīt*, *enarrāvimus*.

8. In the third person plural of the perfect indicative active, the form in *ēr* is less common than that in *ērunt*, especially in prose.

9. Ancient forms of a future perfect in *so*, a perfect and pluperfect subjunctive in *sim* and *sem*, and a perfect infinitive in *se* sometimes occur. They may, in general, be formed by adding these terminations to the second root of the verb; as, *recepto, emissim, ausim* from the obsolete perfect, *ausi*, from *audeo, confectim* and *promissem*: *divisse* and *promisse*. But when the root ends in *a*, and frequently when it ends in *s*, only *o*, *im*, *em*, and *e*, etc. are added; as, *jusso, dāsis; intellexe, percepisset; surrexe, sumse*. *V*, at the end of the root, in the first conjugation, is changed into *s*; as, *levasso, locassim*. *U*, at the end of the root, in the second conjugation, is changed into *es*; as, *habesso, licessit*. Sometimes the vowel of the present is retained in these forms, though changed in the other parts derived from the second root; as, *capso, fazo (facso), fazim (facsim)*.

NOTE. *Fazo* expresses determination, 'I will,' or, 'I am resolved, to make, cause,' etc. The subjunctive *fazit*, etc., expresses a solemn wish; as, *di immortales fazint*. *Ausim*, etc. express doubt or hesitation, 'I might venture,' etc. The perfect in *sim* is used also in connection with the present subjunctive; as, *quæso uti tu calamitates prohibeas, defendas, averruncæque*. Cato.

10. In the ancient Latin a few examples occur of a future passive of similar form; as, *turbassitur, jussitur*, instead of *turbatum fuerit*, and *jussus fuerit*.—A future infinitive active in *ere* is also found, in the first conjugation, which is formed by adding that termination to the second root, changing, as before, *v* into *s*; as, *expugnassere, impetrassere*, for *expugnaturum esse*, etc.

### *Of the Tenses formed from the Third Root.*

11. The supine in *um*, though called one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs in fact to very few verbs, the whole number which have this supine not amounting to three hundred. The part called in dictionaries the supine in *um* must therefore, in most cases, be considered as the neuter gender of the perfect participle.

12. In the compound tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, the participle is always in the nominative case, but it is used in both numbers, and in all genders, to correspond with the number and gender of the subject of the verb; as, *amatus, -a, -um, est; amati, -æ, -a, sunt*, etc.

(1.) *Fui, fueram, fuerim, fuisset*, and *fuisse*, are seldom used in the compound tenses of deponent verbs, and not so often as *sum*, etc., in those of other verbs, but when used they have generally the same sense. It is to be remarked, however, that *fui* with the perfect participle usually denotes that which has been, but which no longer exists. In the pluperfect subjunctive, *fõrem*, etc., for *essem*, etc., are sometimes found.

(2.) But as the perfect participle may be used in the sense of an adjective, expressing a permanent state, (see § 162, 22), if then connected with the tenses of *sum* its meaning is different from that of the participle in the same connection; *epistola scripta est*, when *scripta* is a participle, signifies, the letter has been written, but if *scripta* is an adjective, the meaning of the expression is, the letter is written, and *epistola scripta fuit*, in this case, would signify, the letter has been written, or, has existed as a written one, implying that it no longer exists.

13. The participles in the perfect and future infinitive, are used only in the nominative and accusative, but in all genders and in both numbers; as, *amatus, -a, -um, esse* or *fuisse*; *amatum, -am, -um, esse* or *fuisse*; *amati, -æ, -a, esse* or *fuisse*; *amatos, -as, -a, esse* or *fuisse*; and so of the others. With the infinitive *fuisse*, *amatus*, etc. are generally to be considered as participial adjectives.

(1.) These participles in combination with *esse* are sometimes used as indeclinable; as, *cohortes ad me missum facias*. Cic. *Ad me, mea Terentia, scribis, te vicum venditurum*. Id.

*Periphrastic Conjugations.*

14. The participle in *rus*, joined to the tenses of the verb *sum*, denotes either *intention*, or *being upon the point of doing something*. This form of the verb is called the *active periphrastic conjugation*.

REMARK 1. As the performance of the act depends either on the will of the subject, on that of others, or upon circumstances, we may say, in English, in the first case, 'I intend,' and in the others, 'I am to,' or 'I am about to' (be or do any thing).

## INDICATIVE.

|                |                         |                                          |
|----------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | <i>amatūrus sum,</i>    | <i>I am about to love.</i>               |
| <i>Imperf.</i> | <i>amatūrus eram,</i>   | <i>I was about to love.</i>              |
| <i>Fut.</i>    | <i>amatūrus ero,</i>    | <i>I shall be about to love.</i>         |
| <i>Perf.</i>   | <i>amatūrus fui,</i>    | <i>I was or have been about to love.</i> |
| <i>Plup.</i>   | <i>amatūrus fuēram,</i> | <i>I had been about to love.</i>         |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                |                          |                                         |
|----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | <i>amatūrus sim,</i>     | <i>I may be about to love.</i>          |
| <i>Imperf.</i> | <i>amatūrus essem,</i>   | <i>I would be about to love.</i>        |
| <i>Perf.</i>   | <i>amatūrus fuērim,</i>  | <i>I may have been about to love.</i>   |
| <i>Plup.</i>   | <i>amatūrus fuisset,</i> | <i>I would have been about to love.</i> |

## INFINITIVE.

|              |                         |                                    |
|--------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <i>amatūrus esse,</i>   | <i>to be about to love.</i>        |
| <i>Perf.</i> | <i>amatūrus fuisse,</i> | <i>to have been about to love.</i> |

REM. 2. *Fuero* is scarcely used in connection with the participle in *rus*.

REM. 3. *Amatūrus sim* and *amatūrus essem* serve also as subjunctives to the future *amābo*. The infinitive *amatūrus fuisse* answers to the English, 'I should have loved,' so that in hypothetical sentences it supplies the place of an infinitive of the pluperfect subjunctive.

REM. 4. In the passive, the fact that an act is about to be performed is expressed by a longer circumlocution; as, in *eo est*, or *futūrum est*, *ut epistola scribatur*, a letter is about to be written. So in *eo erat*, etc., through all the tenses.

15. The participle in *dus*, with the verb *sum*, expresses *necessity* or *propriety*; as, *amandus sum*, I must be loved, or deserve to be loved. With the various moods and tenses of *sum*, it forms a *passive periphrastic conjugation*;—thus :

## INDICATIVE.

|                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>      | <i>amandus sum,</i>    |
| <i>Imperf.</i>    | <i>amandus eram,</i>   |
| <i>Fut.</i>       | <i>amandus ero,</i>    |
| <i>Perf.</i>      | <i>amandus fui,</i>    |
| <i>Plup.</i>      | <i>amandus fuēram,</i> |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> | <i>amandus fuēro.</i>  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                |                         |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | <i>amandus sim,</i>     |
| <i>Imperf.</i> | <i>amandus essem,</i>   |
| <i>Perf.</i>   | <i>amandus fuērim,</i>  |
| <i>Plup.</i>   | <i>amandus fuisset.</i> |

## INFINITIVE.

|              |                        |
|--------------|------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <i>amandus esse,</i>   |
| <i>Perf.</i> | <i>amandus fuisse.</i> |

REM. 5. The neuter of the participle in *dus* with *est* and the dative of a person, expresses the necessity of performing the action on the part of that person; as, *mihi scribendum est*, I must write, etc., and so through all the tenses.

### Participles.

16. The following perfect participles of neuter verbs, like those of active deponents, are translated by active participles:—*cenātus*, having supped; *pōtus*, having drunk; *pransus*, having dined; and sometimes *jurātus*, having sworn. So also *adultus*, *coalitus*, *conspirātus*, *interitus*, *occūsus*, *obolūtus*, and *crētus*.

For the active meaning of *usus* and its compounds, see § 183, 1.

17. (a.) The perfect participles of some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive sense; as, *adeptus libertatem*, having obtained liberty, or *adeptā libertate*, liberty having been obtained. Cf. § 142, 4, (b.)

So *abominātus*, *comitātus*, *commentātus*, *complexus*, *confessus*, *contestātus*, *detestātus*, *dignātus*, *dimensus*, *effātus*, *emensus*, *ementitus*, *emeritus*, *expertus*, *exsecrātus*, *interpretātus*, *largitus*, *machinātus*, *meditātus*, *meritātus*, *metātus*, *oblitus*, *opinatūs*, *orsus*, *pactus*, *partitus*, *perfunctus*, *periculātus*, *pollicitus*, *populātus*, *depopulātus*, *stipulātus*, *testātus*, *ultus*, *venerātus*.

(b.) The participle in *dus*, of deponent verbs, is commonly passive.

18. The perfect participles of neuter passive verbs have the signification of the active voice; as, *gavisus*, having rejoiced. But *ausus* is used both in an active and a passive sense.

19. The genitive plural of participles in *rus* is seldom used, except that of *futūrus*. *Venturōrum* is found in Ovid, *exilurārum*, *transurōrum* and *periturōrum* in Seneca, and *moriturōrum* in Augustine.

20. In the third and fourth conjugations, the gerund and future passive participle (including deponents) sometimes end in *undum* and *undus*, instead of *endum* and *endus*, especially when *i* precedes; as, *faciundum*, *audiundum*, *scribundus*. *Potior* has usually *potiundus*.

21. Many present and perfect participles are compounded with *in*, signifying not, whose verbs do not admit of such composition; they thus become adjectives; as, *inactens*, ignorant; *imparātus*, unprepared.

22. Participles, when they do not express distinctions of time, become adjectives, and as such are compared; as, *amans*, loving; *amantior*, *amantissimus*. They sometimes also become substantives; as, *præfectus*, a commander; *attempt*; *commisum*, an offence.

Many words derived from substantives, with the terminations of participles, *itus*, and *ātus*, are yet adjectives; as, *alātus*, winged; *turrītus*, etc. See § 128, 7.

### GENERAL RULES OF CONJUGATION.

which have *a* in the first root have it also in the second; as, *fācio*, *factum*;

2. The connecting vowel is often omitted in the second root, and in such cases, if *v* follows, it is changed into *u*. This happens in most verbs of the second conjugation.

REMARK. Some verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations prefix to the second root their initial consonant with the vowel which follows it, or with *ē*; as, *curro*, *cūcurri*; *fallo*, *fēfelli*. This prefix is called a *reduplication*.

NOTE 1. *Spondeo* and *sto* lose *s* in the second syllable, making *spōpondi* and *stēti*. For the verbs that take a reduplication, see §§ 165, B. 2; 168, N. 2; 171, Exc. 1, (b.)

3. Verbs which want the second root commonly want the third root also.

4. Compound verbs form their second and third roots like the simple verbs of which they are compounded; as, *audio*, *audivi*, *audītum*; *exaudio*, *exaudivi*, *exaudītum*.

NOTE 2. Some compound verbs, however, are defective, whose simples are complete, and some are complete, whose simples are defective.

Exc. 1. Compound verbs omit the reduplication; but the compounds of *do*, *sto*, *disco*, *posco*, and some of those of *curro*, retain it.

Exc. 2. Verbs which, in composition, change *a* into *e* in the first root, (see § 189, 1,) retain *e* in the second and third roots of the compound; as, *scando*, *scandi*, *scansum*; *descendo*, *descendi*, *descensum*.

Exc. 3. (a.) When *a*, *æ*, or *e*, in the first root of the simple verb, is changed in the compound into *i*, (see § 189, 2,) the same is retained in the second and third roots, in case the third root of the simple verb is a dissyllable; as, *habeo*, *hābui*, *hābitum*; *prohibeo*, *prohibui*, *prohibitum*.

(b.) But if the third root is a monosyllable, the second root of the compound has usually the same vowel as that of the simple, but sometimes changes *a* or *e* into *i*, and the third root has *e*; as, *fūcio*, *fēcī*, *factum*; *conficio*, *confēcī*, *confectum*; *tēneo*, *tēnui*, *tentum*; *retineo*, *retinui*, *retentum*; *rāpio*, *rāpui*, *raptum*; *abrūpio*, *abrūpui*, *abreptum*.

NOTE 3. The compounds of *cādo*, *āgo*, *frango*, *pango*, and *tango*, retain *a* in the third root. See § 172.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *pārio*, (*ēre*), and some of the compounds of *do* and *cādo*, are of different conjugations from their simple verbs. See *do*, *cādo* and *pārio* in §§ 165 and 172.

A few other exceptions will be noticed in the following lists.

## FORMATION OF SECOND AND THIRD ROOTS.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 164. In regular verbs of this conjugation, the second root ends in *āv*, and the third in *āt*; as, *amo*, *amāvi*, *amātum*.

The following list contains such regular verbs of this conjugation as are of most frequent occurrence.



## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have heard.*

S. au-div'-ě-rě,  
 au-div'-ě-ris,  
 au-div'-ě-rît;  
 P. au-di-věr'-î-mūs,  
 au-di-věr'-î-tis,  
 au-div'-ě-rint.

*I shall have been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs ě-rě or fu'-ě-rě,  
 au-di'-tūs ě-ris or fu'-ě-ris,  
 au-di'-tūs ě-rît or fu'-ě-rît;  
 P. au-di'-ti ěr'-î-mūs or fu-ěr'-î-mūs,  
 au-di'-ti ěr'-î-tis or fu-ěr'-î-tis,  
 au-di'-ti ě-runt or fu'-ě-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can hear.*

S. au'-di-am,  
 au'-di-ās,  
 au'-di-āt;  
 P. au-di-ā'-mūs,  
 au-di-ā'-tis,  
 au'-di-ant.

*I may or can be heard.*

S. au'-di-ār,  
 au-di-ā'-ris or -rě,  
 au-di-ā'-tūr;  
 P. au-di-ā'-mūr,  
 au-di-ām'-î-nî,  
 au-di-an'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*

S. au-di'-rem,  
 au-di'-rēs,  
 au-di'-rēt;  
 P. au-di-rě'-mūs,  
 au-di-rě'-tis,  
 au-di'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

S. au-di'-rēr,  
 au-di-rě'-ris or -rě,  
 au-di-rě'-tūr;  
 P. au-di-rě'-mūr,  
 au-di-rēm'-î-nî,  
 au-di-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have heard.*

S. au-div'-ě-rim,  
 au-div'-ě-ris,  
 au-div'-ě-rît;  
 P. au-di-věr'-î-mūs,  
 au-di-věr'-î-tis,  
 au-div'-ě-rint.

*I may have been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
 au-di'-tūs sis or fu'-ě-ris,  
 au-di'-tūs sît or fu'-ě-rît;  
 P. au-di'-ti si'-mūs or fu-ěr'-î-mūs,  
 au-di'-ti si'-tis or fu-ěr'-î-tis,  
 au-di'-ti sint or fu'-ě-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*

S. au-di-vis'-sem,  
 au-di-vis'-sēs,  
 au-di-vis'-sēt;  
 P. au-di-vis-sē'-mūs,  
 au-di-vis-sē'-tis,  
 au-di-vis'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
 au-di'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
 au-di'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
 P. au-di'-ti es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
 au-di'-ti es-sē'-tis or fu-is-sē'-tis,  
 au-di'-ti es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S.* au-di'-rě, *hear thou;*  
*P.* au-di'-tě, *hear ye.*  
*Fut. S.* au-di'-tě, *thou shalt hear,*  
 au-di'-tě, *he shall hear;*  
*P.* au-di-tě'-tě, *ye shall hear,*  
 au-di-un'-tě, *they shall*  
*hear.*

*Pres. S.* au-di'-rě, *be thou heard;*  
*P.* au-dim'-i-ni, *be ye heard.*  
*Fut. S.* au-di'-těr, *thou shalt be*  
*heard,*  
 au-di'-těr, *he shall be*  
*heard;*  
*P.* (au-di-ēm'-i-ni, *ye shall*  
*be heard,)*  
 au-di-un'-těr, *they shall*  
*be heard.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* au-di'-rě, *to hear.*  
*Perf.* au-di-vis'-sě, *to have heard.*  
*Fut.* au-di-ti'-rūs es-sě, *to be*  
*about to hear.*

*Pres.* au-di'-rī, *to be heard.*  
*Perf.* au-di'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-  
 sě, *to have been heard.*  
*Fut.* au-di'-tum i'-rī, *to be about*  
*to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* au-di-ēns, *hearing.*  
*Fut.* au-di-ti'-rūs, *about to hear.*

*Perf.* au-di'-tūs, *heard.*  
*Fut.* au-di-en'-dūs, *to be heard.*

## GERUND.

*G.* au-di-en'-di, *of hearing.*  
*D.* au-di-en'-dō, etc.  
*Ac.* au-di-en'-dum,  
*Ab.* au-di-en'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* au-di'-tum, *to hear.* | *Latter.* au-di'-tū, *to be heard.*

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *aud*, are de-  
 rived

|                       |                |                 |
|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------|
|                       | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i> |
| <i>Ind. pres.</i>     | audio,         | audior.         |
| — <i>imperf.</i>      | audiēbam,      | audiēbar.       |
| — <i>fut.</i>         | audiam,        | audiar.         |
| <i>Subj. pres.</i>    | audiam,        | audiar.         |
| — <i>imperf.</i>      | audirem,       | audirer.        |
| <i>Imperat. pres.</i> | audi,          | audire.         |
| — <i>fut.</i>         | audito,        | auditor.        |
| <i>Inf. pres.</i>     | audire,        | audiri.         |
| <i>Part. pres.</i>    | audiens,       |                 |
| — <i>fut.</i>         |                | audiendus.      |
| <i>Gerund.</i>        | audiendi.      |                 |

From the second root, *audire*, are derived,

|                     |                |                     |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------------|
|                     | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i>     |
| <i>Ind. perf.</i>   | audivi,        | auditus sum, etc.   |
| — <i>plus.</i>      | audiveram,     | auditus eram, etc.  |
| — <i>fut. perf.</i> | audivero,      | auditus ero, etc.   |
| <i>Subj. perf.</i>  | audiverim,     | auditus sim, etc.   |
| — <i>plus.</i>      | audivissem,    | auditus essem, etc. |
| <i>Inf. perf.</i>   | audivisse,     | auditus esse, etc.  |

From the third root,  
*Inf. fut.* auditurus esse, auditum iri.

*Part. fut.* auditurus.

— *perf.* auditus.

*Form. sup.* auditum. *Lat. sup.* auditus.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 161. Deponent verbs are conjugated like the passive voice, and have also all the participles and participial formations of the active voice. Neuter deponent verbs, however, want the future passive participle, except that the neuter in *dum* is sometimes used impersonally. See § 184, 8.

The following is an example of an active deponent verb of the first conjugation :—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Mi'-rör, mi-rä'-rī, mi-rä'-tūs, *to admire.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

|                   |                                |                              |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>      | mi'-rör, mi-rä'-rīs, etc.      | <i>I admire, etc.</i>        |
| <i>Imperf.</i>    | mi-rä'-bār, etc.               | <i>I was admiring.</i>       |
| <i>Fut.</i>       | mi-rä'-bör,                    | <i>I shall admire.</i>       |
| <i>Perf.</i>      | mi-rä'-tūs sum or fu'-i,       | <i>I have admired.</i>       |
| <i>Plup.</i>      | mi-rä'-tūs ē-ram or fu'-ē-ram, | <i>I had admired.</i>        |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> | mi-rä'-tūs ē-ro or fu'-ē-ro,   | <i>I shall have admired.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

|                |                                   |                              |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | mi'-rēr, mi-rē'-rīs, etc.         | <i>I may admire, etc.</i>    |
| <i>Imperf.</i> | mi-rä'-rēr,                       | <i>I would admire.</i>       |
| <i>Perf.</i>   | mi-rä'-tūs sim or fu'-ē-rim,      | <i>I may have admired.</i>   |
| <i>Plup.</i>   | mi-rä'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem, | <i>I would have admired.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                 |                                        |                                             |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres. S.</i> | mi-rä'-rē, <i>admire thou ;</i>        | <i>P. mi-rām'-i-nī, admire ye.</i>          |
| <i>Fut. S.</i>  | mi-rä'-tör, <i>thou shalt admire ;</i> | <i>P. (mi-rä-bīm'-i-nī, ye shall, etc.)</i> |
|                 | mi-rä'-tör, <i>he shall admire ;</i>   | mi-ran'-tör, <i>they shall, etc.</i>        |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                   |                                 |                                   |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>      | mi-rä'-rī,                      | <i>to admire.</i>                 |
| <i>Perf.</i>      | mi-rä'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, | <i>to have admired.</i>           |
| <i>Fut. Act.</i>  | mi-rä'-tū-rūs es'-sē,           | <i>to be about to admire.</i>     |
| <i>Fut. Pass.</i> | mi-rä'-tum i'-rī,               | <i>to be about to be admired.</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

|                   |                |                         |
|-------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>      | mi'-rans,      | <i>admiring.</i>        |
| <i>Perf.</i>      | mi-rä'-tūs,    | <i>having admired.</i>  |
| <i>Fut. Act.</i>  | mi-rä'-tū-rūs, | <i>about to admire.</i> |
| <i>Fut. Pass.</i> | mi-ran'-dūs,   | <i>to be admired.</i>   |

## GERUND.

G. mi-ran'-dī, *of admiring, etc.*

## SUPINES.

*Former.* mi-rä'-tum, *to admire.* | *Latter.* mi-rä'-tū, *to be admired.*

## REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

*Of the Tenses formed from the First Root.*

§ 162. 1. A few words in the present subjunctive of the first and third conjugations, in the earlier writers and in the poets, end in *im*, *is*, *it*, etc.; as, *edim*, *edis*, *edui*, *edimus*; *comedim*, *comedis*, *comedunt*; for *edam*, etc. *comedam*, etc.; *dum*, *duis*, *dui*, *duint*; and *perduim*, *perduis*, *perdui*, *perduint*; for *dem*, etc. *perdam*, etc. from old forms *duo* and *perduo*, for *do* and *perdo*: so *creduis*, *credui*, and also *creduam*, *creduas*, *creduat*, for *credam*, etc. from the old form *creduo*, for *credo*. The form in *im*, etc. was retained as the regular form in *sim* and *velim*, from *sum* and *volo*, and in their compounds.

2. The imperfect indicative in the fourth conjugation, sometimes, especially in the more ancient writers, ends in *ibam* and *ibar*, for *iēbam* and *iēbar*, and the future in *ibo* and *ibor*, for *iam* and *iar*; as, *vestibāt*, Virg., *largitbar*, Propert., for *vestiēbat*, *largiēbar*; *scibo*, *opperibor*, for *sciam*, *opperiar*. *Ibam* and *ibo* were retained as the regular forms of *eo*, *queo*, and *nequeo*. Cf. § 182.

3. The termination *re*, in the second person singular of the passive voice, is rare in the present, but common in the other simple tenses.

4. The imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, *fācio*, and *fēro*, are usually written *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, and *fer*; in like manner their compounds, except those compounds of *fācio* which change a into i; as, *effice*, *confice*; but *caufāce* also is found in Cicero; and in old writers *dīce*, *edīce*, *addīce*, *indīce*, *dūce*, *abdūce*, *reducē*, *tradūce*, and *fāce*. *Inger* for *ingere* is rare. *Scio* has not *sci*, but its place is supplied by *scito*, and *sciōte* is preferred to *sciē*.

5. In the imperative future of the passive voice, but especially of deponents, early writers and their imitators sometimes used the active instead of the passive form; as, *arbitrāto*, *amplexātō*, *ultō*, *nitō*; for *arbitrātor*, etc.; and *censento*, *utento*, *tuento*, etc. for *censor*, etc.—In the second and third persons singular occur, also, forms in *-mīno*; as, *hortamīno*, *veremīno*, *fruiamīno*; for *hortātor*, etc.

6. The syllable *er* was often added to the present infinitive passive by early writers and especially by the poets; as, *amarier* for *amāri*, *dicer* for *dici*.

*Of the Tenses formed from the Second Root.*

7. (a.) When the second root ends in *v*, a syncope and contraction often occur in the tenses formed from it, by omitting *v*, and sinking the first vowel of the termination in the final vowel of the root, when followed, in the fourth conjugation, by *s*, and in the other conjugations, by *s* or *r*; as, *audissem* for *audivissem*, *amasti* for *amavisti*, *implērunt* for *impleverunt*, *noīam* and *nosse* for *novēram* and *novisse*.

(b.) When the second root ends in *iv*, *v* is often omitted without contraction; as, *audīro* for *audivēro*; *audīsse* for *audivisse*.

(c.) When this root ends in *s* or *x*, especially in the third conjugation, the syllables *is*, *iss*, and *iss*, are sometimes omitted in the termination of tenses derived from it; as, *evasti* for *evastisti*, *extinxi* for *extinxisti*, *divise* for *divisisse*; *extinzem* for *extinxissem*, *surrexe* for *surrexisse*; *accessis* for *accessistis*, *iusti* for *iussisti*; *dixi* for *dixisti*. So *facem* for *(facissem, i. e.) fecissem*.

(d.) In the perfect of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, a syncope sometimes occurs in the last syllable of the root and the following syllable of the termination, especially in the third person singular; as, *fūmāt*, *audīt*, *cūpīt*; for *fūmāvit*, *audīvit*, *cūpīvit*. So, also, but rarely, in the first person; as, *sepēllī*, *enarrāmus*; for *sepelīvit*, *enarrāvimus*.

8. In the third person plural of the perfect indicative active, the form in *ēr* is less common than that in *ērunt*, especially in prose.

9. Ancient forms of a future perfect in *so*, a perfect and pluperfect subjunctive in *sim* and *sem*, and a perfect infinitive in *se* sometimes occur. They may, in general, be formed by adding these terminations to the second root of the verb; as, *recepto*, *emissim*, *ausim* from the obsolete perfect, *ausi*, from *audeo*, *confectim* and *promissim*: *divisse* and *promisse*. But when the root ends in *s*, and frequently when it ends in *s*, only *o*, *im*, *em*, and *e*, etc. are added; as, *jusso*, *dixi*; *intellexe*, *percepset*; *surrexe*, *sumse*. *V*, at the end of the root, in the first conjugation, is changed into *s*; as, *levasso*, *locassim*. *U*, at the end of the root, in the second conjugation, is changed into *es*; as, *habesso*, *licessit*. Sometimes the vowel of the present is retained in these forms, though changed in the other parts derived from the second root; as, *capso*, *fazo* (*facso*), *fazim* (*facsim*).

NOTE. *Fazo* expresses determination, 'I will,' or, 'I am resolved, to make, cause,' etc. The subjunctive *fazit*, etc., expresses a solemn wish; as, *dixi immortales fuzint*. *Ausim*, etc. express doubt or hesitation, 'I might venture,' etc. The perfect in *sim* is used also in connection with the present subjunctive; as, *quaso uti tu calamitates prohibessis, defendas, averruncesque*. Cato.

10. In the ancient Latin a few examples occur of a future passive of similar form; as, *turbassitur*, *jussitur*, instead of *turbatum fuërit*, and *jussus fuërit*.—A future infinitive active in *sere* is also found, in the first conjugation, which is formed by adding that termination to the second root, changing, as before, *v* into *s*; as, *expugnassere*, *impetrassere*, for *expugnatum esse*, etc.

### Of the Tenses formed from the Third Root.

11. The supine in *um*, though called one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs in fact to very few verbs, the whole number which have this supine not amounting to three hundred. The part called in dictionaries the supine in *um* must therefore, in most cases, be considered as the neuter gender of the perfect participle.

12. In the compound tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, the participle is always in the nominative case, but it is used in both numbers, and in all genders, to correspond with the number and gender of the subject of the verb; as, *amatus*, -a, -um, *est*; *amati*, -æ, -a, *sunt*, etc.

(1.) *Fui*, *fuëram*, *fuërim*, *fuisse*, and *fuisse*, are seldom used in the compound tenses of deponent verbs, and not so often as *sum*, etc., in those of other verbs, but when used they have generally the same sense. It is to be remarked, however, that *fui* with the perfect participle usually denotes that which has been, but which no longer exists. In the pluperfect subjunctive, *fuërem*, etc., for *essem*, etc., are sometimes found.

(2.) But as the perfect participle may be used in the sense of an adjective, expressing a permanent state, (see § 162, 22), if then connected with the tenses of *sum* its meaning is different from that of the participle in the same connection; *epistola scripta est*, when *scripta* is a participle, signifies, the letter has been written, but if *scripta* is an adjective, the meaning of the expression is, the letter is written, and *epistola scripta fuit*, in this case, would signify, the letter has been written, or, has existed as a written one, implying that it no longer exists.

13. The participles in the perfect and future infinitive, are used only in the nominative and accusative, but in all genders and in both numbers; as, *amatus*, -a, -um, *esse* or *fuisse*; *amatum*, -am, -um, *esse* or *fuisse*; *amati*, -æ, -a, *esse* or *fuisse*; *amatos*, -as, -a, *esse* or *fuisse*; and so of the others. With the infinitive *fuisse*, *amatus*, etc. are generally to be considered as participial adjectives.

(1.) These participles in combination with *esse* are sometimes used as indeclinable; as, *cohortes ad me missum facias*. Cic. *Ad me, mea Terentia, scribis, te vicum venditurum*. Id.

*Periphrastic Conjugations.*

14. The participle in *rus*, joined to the tenses of the verb *sum*, denotes either *intention*, or *being upon the point* of doing something. This form of the verb is called the *active periphrastic conjugation*.

REMARK 1. As the performance of the act depends either on the will of the subject, on that of others, or upon circumstances, we may say, in English, in the first case, 'I intend,' and in the others, 'I am to,' or 'I am about to' (be or do any thing).

## INDICATIVE.

|                |                         |                                          |
|----------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | <i>amatūrus sum,</i>    | <i>I am about to love.</i>               |
| <i>Imperf.</i> | <i>amatūrus eram,</i>   | <i>I was about to love.</i>              |
| <i>Fut.</i>    | <i>amatūrus ero,</i>    | <i>I shall be about to love.</i>         |
| <i>Perf.</i>   | <i>amatūrus fui,</i>    | <i>I was or have been about to love.</i> |
| <i>Plup.</i>   | <i>amatūrus fuëram,</i> | <i>I had been about to love.</i>         |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                |                          |                                         |
|----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | <i>amatūrus sim,</i>     | <i>I may be about to love.</i>          |
| <i>Imperf.</i> | <i>amatūrus essem,</i>   | <i>I would be about to love.</i>        |
| <i>Perf.</i>   | <i>amatūrus fuërim,</i>  | <i>I may have been about to love.</i>   |
| <i>Plup.</i>   | <i>amatūrus fuisset,</i> | <i>I would have been about to love.</i> |

## INFINITIVE.

|              |                         |                                    |
|--------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <i>amatūrus esse,</i>   | <i>to be about to love.</i>        |
| <i>Perf.</i> | <i>amatūrus fuisse,</i> | <i>to have been about to love.</i> |

REM. 2. *Fuëro* is scarcely used in connection with the participle in *rus*.

REM. 3. *Amatūrus sim* and *amatūrus essem* serve also as subjunctives to the future *amābo*. The infinitive *amatūrus fuisse* answers to the English, 'I should have loved,' so that in hypothetical sentences it supplies the place of an infinitive of the pluperfect subjunctive.

REM. 4. In the passive, the fact that an act is about to be performed is expressed by a longer circumlocution; as, in *eo est*, or *futurum est*, ut *epistola scribatur*, a letter is about to be written. So in *eo erat*, etc., through all the tenses.

15. The participle in *dus*, with the verb *sum*, expresses *necessity* or *propriety*; as, *amandus sum*, I must be loved, or deserve to be loved. With the various moods and tenses of *sum*, it forms a *passive* periphrastic conjugation;—thus :

## INDICATIVE.

|                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>      | <i>amandus sum,</i>    |
| <i>Imperf.</i>    | <i>amandus eram,</i>   |
| <i>Fut.</i>       | <i>amandus ero,</i>    |
| <i>Perf.</i>      | <i>amandus fui,</i>    |
| <i>Plup.</i>      | <i>amandus fuëram,</i> |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> | <i>amandus fuëro.</i>  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                |                         |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | <i>amandus sim,</i>     |
| <i>Imperf.</i> | <i>amandus essem,</i>   |
| <i>Perf.</i>   | <i>amandus fuërim,</i>  |
| <i>Plup.</i>   | <i>amandus fuisset.</i> |

## INFINITIVE.

|              |                        |
|--------------|------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <i>amandus esse,</i>   |
| <i>Perf.</i> | <i>amandus fuisse.</i> |

REM. 5. The neuter of the participle in *dus* with *est* and the dative of a person, expresses the necessity of performing the action on the part of that person; as, *mihi scribendum est*, I must write, etc., and so through all the tenses.

### Participles.

16. The following perfect participles of neuter verbs, like those of active deponents, are translated by active participles:—*cenātus*, having supped; *pōtus*, having drunk; *pransus*, having dined; and sometimes *jurātus*, having sworn. So also *adultus*, *coalitus*, *conspirātus*, *interitus*, *occāsus*, *obsoletus*, and *crētus*.

For the active meaning of *ōsus* and its compounds, see § 183, 1.

17. (a.) The perfect participles of some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive sense; as, *adeptus libertātem*, having obtained liberty, or *adeptā libertāte*, liberty having been obtained. Cf. § 142, 4, (b.)

So *abominātus*, *comitātus*, *commentātus*, *complexus*, *confessus*, *contestātus*, *detestātus*, *diagnātus*, *dimensus*, *effātus*, *emensus*, *ementitus*, *emeritus*, *expertus*, *exsecrātus*, *interpretātus*, *largitus*, *machinātus*, *meditātus*, *meritātus*, *metātus*, *oblātus*, *opinātus*, *orsus*, *pactus*, *parātus*, *perfunctus*, *periculātus*, *pollicitus*, *populātus*, *depopulātus*, *stipulātus*, *testātus*, *ultus*, *venerātus*.

(b.) The participle in *dus*, of deponent verbs, is commonly passive.

18. The perfect participles of neuter passive verbs have the signification of the active voice; as, *gavisus*, having rejoiced. But *ausus* is used both in an active and a passive sense.

19. The genitive plural of participles in *rus* is seldom used, except that of *futūrus*. *Venturōrum* is found in Ovid, *exilurārum*, *transiturārum* and *periturōrum* in Seneca, and *moriturōrum* in Augustine.

20. In the third and fourth conjugations, the gerund and future passive participle (including deponents) sometimes end in *undum* and *undus*, instead of *endum* and *endus*, especially when *i* precedes; as, *faciundum*, *audiundum*, *scribundus*. *Potior* has usually *potiundus*.

21. Many present and perfect participles are compounded with *in*, signifying *not*, whose verbs do not admit of such composition; they thus become adjectives; as, *inasciens*, ignorant; *imparātus*, unprepared.

22. Participles, when they do not express distinctions of time, become adjectives, and as such are compared; as, *amans*, loving; *amantior*, *amantissimus*. They sometimes also become substantives; as, *præfectus*, a commander; *ausum*, an attempt; *commissum*, an offence.

NOTE. Many words derived from substantives, with the terminations of participles, *ātus*, *ītus*, and *ūtus*, are yet adjectives; as, *alātus*, winged; *turritus*, turreted, etc. See § 128, 7.

### GENERAL RULES OF CONJUGATION.

§ 163. 1. Verbs which have *a* in the first root have it also in the third, even when it is changed in the second; as, *fācio*, *factum*; *hābeo*, *hābitum*.

2. The connecting vowel is often omitted in the second root, and in such cases, if *v* follows, it is changed into *u*. This happens in most verbs of the second conjugation.

REMARK. Some verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations prefix to the second root their initial consonant with the vowel which follows it, or with *ē*; as, *curro*, *cūcurri*; *fallō*, *fēfelli*. This prefix is called a *reduplication*.

NOTE 1. *Spondeo* and *sto* lose *s* in the second syllable, making *spōpondi* and *stīti*. For the verbs that take a reduplication, see §§ 165, B. 2; 168, N. 2; 171, Exc. 1. (b.)

3. Verbs which want the second root commonly want the third root also.

4. Compound verbs form their second and third roots like the simple verbs of which they are compounded; as, *audio*, *audīvi*, *audītum*; *exaudio*, *exaudīvi*, *exaudītum*.

NOTE 2. Some compound verbs, however, are defective, whose simples are complete, and some are complete, whose simples are defective.

Exc. 1. Compound verbs omit the reduplication; but the compounds of *do*, *disco*, *posco*, and some of those of *curro*, retain it.

Exc. 2. Verbs which, in composition, change *a* into *e* in the first root, (see § 189, 1,) retain *e* in the second and third roots of the compound; as, *scando*, *scandī*, *scansum*; *descendo*, *descendī*, *descensum*.

Exc. 3. (a.) When *a*, *æ*, or *e*, in the first root of the simple verb, is changed in the compound into *i*, (see § 189, 2,) the same is retained in the second and third roots, in case the third root of the simple verb is a dissyllable; as, *habeo*, *hābui*, *hābitum*; *prohibeo*, *prohibui*, *prohibūtum*.

(b.) But if the third root is a monosyllable, the second root of the compound has usually the same vowel as that of the simple, but sometimes changes *a* or *e* into *i*, and the third root has *e*; as, *fūcio*, *fēcī*, *factum*; *conficio*, *confēcī*, *confectum*; *tēneo*, *tēnui*, *tentum*; *retīneo*, *retīnui*, *retentum*; *rāpio*, *rāpui*, *raptum*; *abrīpio*, *abrīpui*, *abreptum*.

NOTE 3. The compounds of *cādo*, *āgo*, *frango*, *pango*, and *tango*, retain *a* in the third root. See § 172.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *pārio*, (*ēre*), and some of the compounds of *do* and *cādo*, are of different conjugations from their simple verbs. See *do*, *cādo* and *pārio* in §§ 165 and 172.

A few other exceptions will be noticed in the following lists.

## FORMATION OF SECOND AND THIRD ROOTS.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 164. In regular verbs of this conjugation, the second root ends in *āv*, and the third in *āt*; as, *amo*, *amāvi*, *amātum*.

The following list contains such regular verbs of this conjugation as are of most frequent occurrence.



NOTE. In this and subsequent lists, those verbs which are marked \* are said to have no perfect participle; those marked † to have no present participle. A dash (—) after the present, denotes that there is no second root. The participles in *rus* and *dus*, and the supines in *um* and *u* which are in use, are indicated respectively by the letters *r.*, *d.*, *m.*, and *u.* *Abundo*, for example, has no perfect participle, no supine, no participle in *dus*; but it has a present participle, and a participle in *rus*.

In the lists of irregular verbs, those compounds only are given, whose conjugation differs from that of their simples.

When *p.* is subjoined to a deponent verb, it denotes that some of the parts which have commonly an active meaning, are used either actively and passively, or passively alone. Such verbs are by some grammarians called *common*. Cf. § 142, 4, (b.)

|                                               |                                         |                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| *Abundo, <i>r.</i> to overflow.               | Destino, <i>d.</i> to design.           | Indico, <i>m. r. d.</i> to show.             |
| Accuso, <i>m. r. d.</i> to accuse.            | Dico, <i>m. r. d.</i> to dedicate.      | †Inēbrio, —, to inebriate.                   |
| †Adumbro, <i>d.</i> to delineate.             | Dicto, <i>d.</i> to dictate.            | Initio, <i>d.</i> to initiate.               |
| Edifico, <i>r. d.</i> to build.               | †Dōlo, <i>to</i> heu.                   | Inquino, <i>d.</i> to pollute.               |
| Equo, <i>r. d.</i> to level.                  | Dōno, <i>r. d.</i> to bestow.           | Instauro, <i>d.</i> to renew.                |
| Estimo, <i>r. d.</i> to value.                | Duplico, <i>r. d.</i> to double.        | Intro, <i>r. d.</i> to enter.                |
| *Ambulo, <i>m. d.</i> to walk.                | Dūro, <i>r.</i> to harden.              | Invito, <i>d.</i> to invite.                 |
| Amo, <i>r. d.</i> to love.                    | †Effigio, <i>to</i> portray.            | Irrito, <i>r. d.</i> to irritate.            |
| †Amplio, <i>d.</i> to enlarge.                | †Enucleo, <i>to</i> explain.            | Itēro, <i>u. d.</i> to do again.             |
| Appello, <i>d.</i> to call.                   | Equito, <i>to</i> ride.                 | Jacto, <i>r. d.</i> to throw.                |
| Apto, <i>d.</i> to fit.                       | Erro, <i>to</i> wander.                 | Judico, <i>r. d.</i> to judge.               |
| Aro, <i>r. d.</i> to plough.                  | Existimo, <i>u. r. d.</i> to think.     | Jūgo, <i>d.</i> to couple.                   |
| *†Ausculro, <i>to</i> listen.                 | Explōro, <i>m. d.</i> to search.        | Jugulo, <i>m. d.</i> to butcher.             |
| *†Autūmo, <i>to</i> assert.                   | Exsūlo, <i>m. r.</i> to be banished.    | Jūro, <i>d.</i> to swear.                    |
| †Bāsio, —, <i>d.</i> to kiss.                 | Fabrico, <i>d.</i> to frame.            | Labōro, <i>r. d.</i> to labor.               |
| *Bello, <i>m. r. d.</i> to wage war.          | †Fatigo, <i>r. d.</i> to weary.         | Lacēro, <i>d.</i> to tear.                   |
| †Beo, <i>to</i> bless.                        | Festino, <i>r. d.</i> to hasten.        | *Lacto, <i>to</i> suckle.                    |
| *Boo, <i>to</i> bellono.                      | Firmo, <i>r. d.</i> to strengthen.      | †Lānio, <i>d.</i> to tear in pieces.         |
| †Brēvio, <i>to</i> shorten.                   | Flagito, <i>m. d.</i> to demand.        | Lātro, <i>to</i> bark.                       |
| †Cæco, <i>to</i> blind.                       | *Flagro, <i>r.</i> to be on fire.—      | Laudo, <i>r. d.</i> to praise.               |
| †Cælo, <i>to</i> carve.                       | conflagro, <i>r.</i> —deflagro.         | Lazo, <i>d.</i> to loose.                    |
| †Calceo, <i>d.</i> to shoe.                   | Flo, <i>d.</i> to blow.                 | †Lēgo, <i>to</i> depute.                     |
| *†Calcetro, <i>to</i> kick.                   | Formo, <i>r. d.</i> to form.            | Lēvo, <i>r. d.</i> to lighten.               |
| Canto, <i>m.</i> to sing.                     | Fōro, <i>d.</i> to bore.                | Libēro, <i>r. d.</i> to free.                |
| Capto, <i>m. r. d.</i> to seize.              | †Fraudo, <i>d.</i> to defraud.          | Libo, <i>d.</i> to pour out.                 |
| †Castigo, <i>m. d.</i> to chastise.           | †Frēno, <i>to</i> bridle.               | Ligo, <i>to</i> bind.                        |
| Celēbro, <i>d.</i> to celebrate.              | †Frio, —, <i>to</i> crumble.            | †Liquo, <i>d.</i> to melt.                   |
| Cēlo, <i>d.</i> to conceal.                   | Fūgo, <i>r. d.</i> to put to flight.    | Lito, <i>to</i> appease.                     |
| Cesso, <i>d.</i> to cease.                    | †Fundo, <i>r.</i> to found.             | Lōco, <i>r. d.</i> to place.                 |
| Certo, <i>r. d.</i> to strive.                | †Fūrio, —, <i>to</i> madden.            | Lustro, <i>d.</i> to survey.                 |
| Clāmo, <i>to</i> shout.                       | †Galeo, —, <i>to</i> put on a helmet.   | Luxūrio, <i>to</i> be luxuriant.             |
| Cogito, <i>d.</i> to think.                   | Gesto, <i>d.</i> to bear.               | Mactō, <i>d.</i> to sacrifice.               |
| Concilio, <i>r. d.</i> to conciliate.         | Glācio, —, <i>to</i> congeal.           | Macūlo, <i>to</i> spot, stain.               |
| Considero, <i>r. d.</i> to consider.          | Grāvo, <i>d.</i> to weigh down.         | Mando, <i>r. d.</i> to command.              |
| Crēmo, <i>d.</i> to burn.—concrēmo, <i>r.</i> | Gusto, <i>d.</i> to taste.              | Mandūco, <i>to</i> chew.                     |
| †Creo, <i>r. d.</i> to create.                | Habito, <i>m. d.</i> to dwell.          | *Māno, <i>to</i> flow.                       |
| Crūcio, <i>d.</i> to torment.                 | *Hālo, —, <i>to</i> breathe.            | Matūro, <i>d.</i> to ripen.                  |
| Culpo, <i>r. d.</i> to blame.                 | Hīemo, <i>m.</i> to winter.             | Memōro, <i>u. d.</i> to tell.                |
| †Cūneo, <i>d.</i> to wedge in.                | *Hio, <i>d.</i> to gape.                | *Meo, <i>to</i> go.                          |
| Cūro, <i>r. d.</i> to care for.               | †Hūmo, <i>r. d.</i> to bury.            | *Migro, <i>u. r. d.</i> to depart.           |
| Damno, <i>m. r. d.</i> to condemn.            | Ignōro, <i>r. d.</i> to be ignorant of. | *Milito, <i>m. r.</i> to serve as a soldier. |
| Decōro, <i>d.</i> to adorn.                   | Impēro, <i>r. d.</i> to command.        | †Minio, <i>d.</i> to paint red.              |
| *†Delineo, <i>to</i> delineate.               | †Impetro, <i>r. d.</i> to obtain.       | Ministro, <i>d.</i> to serve.                |
| Desidēro, <i>r. d.</i> to desire.             | Inchoo, <i>r.</i> to begin.             | Mitō, <i>d.</i> to pacify.                   |
|                                               | Indāgo, <i>r. d.</i> to trace out.      | Monstro, <i>r.</i> to show.—                 |
|                                               |                                         | †demonstro, <i>d.</i>                        |
|                                               |                                         | Mūto, <i>r. d.</i> to change.                |

Narro, r. d. to tell.  
 Nāto, m. r. to swim.  
 \*Nauseo, to be sea-sick.  
 †Navigo, r. d. to sail.  
 Nāvo, r. d. to perform.  
 Nēgo, m. r. d. to deny.  
 \*No, to swim.  
 Nōmno, r. d. to name.  
 Nōto, d. to mark.  
 Nōvo, r. d. to renew.  
 Nūdo, d. to make bare.  
 Nuncūpo, r. d. to name.  
 Nuntio, m. r. to tell.—  
 renuntio, d.  
 \*Nūto, r. to nod.  
 Obsecro, m. r. d. to be-  
 seech.  
 Obtranco, r. to kill.  
 Onēro, r. d. to load.  
 Opto, d. to wish.  
 †Orbo, r. to bereave.  
 Ōno, r. d. to adorn.  
 Oro, m. r. d. to beg.  
 Pāco, d. to subdue.  
 Pāro, r. d. to prepare.  
 compāro, d. to compare.  
 Patro, r. d. to perform.  
 \*Pecco, r. d. to sin.  
 †Pio, d. to propitiate.  
 Plāco, r. d. to appease.  
 Plōro, m. d. to bewail.  
 Porto, u. r. d. to carry.  
 Postūlo, m. r. d. to de-  
 mand.  
 Privo, d. to deprive.  
 Prōbo, m. u. r. d. to ap-  
 prove.—comprōbo, m.  
 Profīgo, d. to rout.  
 Propēro, d. to hasten.  
 \*†Propino, to drink to.  
 Propitio, d. to appease.  
 Pugno, r. d. to fight.  
 Pulso, d. to beat.  
 Purgo, u. r. d. to cleanse.

Pūto, d. to reckon.  
 Quasso, d. to shake.  
 Rādio, to emit rays.  
 Rapto, d. to drag away.  
 Recupēro, m. r. d. to re-  
 cover.  
 Recūso, r. d. to refuse.  
 Redundo, to overflow.  
 Regno, r. d. to rule.  
 †Repūdīo, r. d. to reject.  
 Resēro, d. to unlock.  
 \*†Retālio, —, to retaliate.  
 Rigo, to water.  
 Rōgo, m. r. d. to ask.  
 Rōto, to whirl around.  
 Sacrifico, m. to sacrifice.  
 Sacro, d. to consecrate.  
 †Sagīno, d. to fatten.  
 Salto, r. to dance.  
 Salūto, m. r. d. to salute.  
 Sāno, r. d. to heal.  
 Sātio, to satiate.  
 †Satūro, to fill.  
 Saucio, d. to wound.  
 \*Secundo, to prosper.  
 Sēdo, m. d. to allay.  
 Servo, r. d. to keep.  
 \*†Sibilo, to hiss.  
 Sicco, d. to dry.  
 Signo, r. d. to mark out.—  
 assigno, m.  
 Simūlo, r. d. to pretend.  
 Sōcio, d. to associate.  
 \*Sornio, to dream.  
 Specto, m. r. d. to behold.  
 Spēro, r. d. to hope.  
 \*Spiro, to breathe.—con-  
 spiro. — exspiro, r. —  
 suspīro, d.  
 Spōllo, m. d. to rob.  
 Spūmo, to foam.  
 Stillo, to drop.  
 Stimūlo, to goad.  
 Stipo, to stuff.

Sūdo, to sweat.  
 Suffūco, to strangle.  
 Sugillo, d. to taunt.  
 Supēro, r. d. to overcome.  
 Suppedito, to afford.  
 \*Supplicio, m. to suppli-  
 cate.  
 \*Susurro, to whisper.  
 Tardo, to delay.  
 Taxo, d. to rate.  
 Temēro, d. to defile.  
 Tempēro, r. d. to temper.  
 —obtempēro, r. to obey.  
 Tento, m. r. d. to try.  
 Terebro, to bore.  
 Termino, r. d. to limit..  
 Titūbo, to stagger.  
 Tolēro, u. r. d. to bear.  
 Tracto, u. r. d. to handle.  
 \*†Tripūdīo, to dance.  
 Triumpho, r. to triumph.  
 Trucido, r. d. to kill.  
 Turbo, d. to disturb.  
 \*Vāco, to be at leisure.  
 \*Vapūlo, m. d. to be beat-  
 en. Cf. § 142, 3.  
 Vārio, to diversify.  
 Vasto, d. to lay waste.  
 Vellco, to pluck.  
 Verbēro, r. d. to beat.  
 \*Vestigo, to search for.  
 Vexo, d. to lease.  
 Vibro, d. to brandish.  
 Vigilo, to watch.  
 Viōlo, m. r. d. to violate.  
 Vitio, d. to vitiate.  
 Vito, u. d. to shun.  
 Ulūlo, to howl.  
 Umbro, r. to shade.  
 Vōco, r. d. to call.  
 \*Vōlo, to fly.  
 Vōro, r. to devour.  
 Vulgo, r. d. to publish.  
 Vulnēro, d. to wound.

§ 165. The following verbs of the first conjugation are either irregular or defective.

\*Crēpo, crepui, to make a noise. \*dis-  
 crēpo, -ui, or -āvi. incrēpo, -ui or  
 -āvi, -itum or -ātum. \*†percrēpo, —.  
 \*†trēcrēpo, —.  
 \*Cūbo, cubui, (perf. subj. cubāris; inf.  
 cubasse), cubitum (sup.), to recline.  
 incūbo, -ui or -āvi, d. Those com-  
 pounds of cubo which take m before  
 b, are of the third conjugation.  
 Do, dēdi, dātum, m. r. d. to give.—  
 So circumdo, pessumdo, satīdo, and

venumdo; the other compounds of do  
 are of the third conjugation. See  
 § 163, Exc. 1.  
 Dōmo, domui, domitum, r. d. to tame.  
 Frīco, fricui, frictum or fricātum, d.  
 to rub. confrīco, —, -ātum. So in-  
 frīco. defrīco, —, -ātum or -ctum.  
 Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, r. d., also juvatū-  
 rus, to help. ādjūvo, -jūvi, -jūtum,  
 m. r. d. also adjuvatūrus.  
 \*Lābo, labasse, to totter.

Lävo, lävi, *rar.* lävävi, lavätum, lautum or lötum; (*sup.*) lautum or lavätum, lavätürus, d. *to wash.* Lävo is also sometimes of the third conjugation.

\*Mico, micui, d. *to glitter.* dimlico, -ävi or -ui, -ätürus. \*emlico, -ui, -atürus. \*intermico, —. \*promlico, —, d.

Nëco, necävi or necui, necätum, r. d. *to kill.* enëco, -ävi or -ui, -ätum, or -etum, d. *†interneco*, —, -ätum.

\*†Nexo, —, *to tie.*

Plico, —, plicätum, *to fold.* duplico, -ävi, -ätum, r. d. *multiply* and *reply* *have* -ävi, -ätum. \*supplico, -ävi, m. r. *apply*, -ävi or -ui, -ätum or -itum, -itürus. *So* implicco, —, complico, -ui, -itum or -ätum. explico, -ävi or -ui, -ätum or -itum, -atürus or -itürus.

Pöto, potävi, potätum or pötum, r. r. m. m. d. *to drink.* †epöto, -ävi, -um. —\*perpöto, -ävi.

Sëco, secui, sectum, secatürus, d. *to*

*cut.*—\*circumsëco, —. \*intersëco, —, d. \*persëco, -ui. præsëco, -ui, -tum or -ätum. *So* resëco, d.

\*Söno, sonui, -atürus, d. *to sound.* \*consöno, -ui. *So* ex-, in-, per-, præ-söno. \*resöno, -ävi. \*assöno, —. *So* circumsöno and dissöno.

\*Sto, stëti, stätürus, *to stand.* \*antesto, -stëti. *So* circumsto, intersto, supersto.—*Its compounds with monosyllabic prepositions have stiti;* as, \*consto, -stiti, -statürus. *So* exsto, insto, obsto, persto. \*præsto, -stiti, -stätürus, d. \*adsto or asto, -stiti, -stätürus. \*prosto, -stiti. *So* resto, restiti: *but subj. perf.* restävërit, Propert, 2, 34, 53. \*disto, —. *So* substo and supersto.

\*Töno, tonui, *to thunder.* *So* circumtöno. attöno, -ui, -itum. intöno, -ui, -ätum. \*retöno, —.

Vëto, vetui, *rarely* ävi, vetitum, *to forbid.*

REMARK 1. The principal irregularity, in verbs of the first and second conjugations, consists in the omission of the connecting vowel in the second root, and the change of the long vowels *ä* and *ë* in the third root into *i*. The *o* remaining at the end of the second root, when it follows a consonant, is pronounced as *u*; as, *cubo*, (*cubävi*, by syncope *cubvi*), i. e. *cubui*; (*cubätum*, by change of the connecting vowel,) *cubitum*. Sometimes in the first conjugation, and very frequently in the second, the connecting vowel is omitted in the third root also; as, *juvo*, (*äre*) *jüvi*, *jütum*; *tëneo*, (*ëre*) *tënu*, *tentum*. In the second conjugation several verbs whose general root ends in *d* and *g*, and a few others of different terminations, form either their second or third root or both, like verbs of the third conjugation, by adding *s*; as, *rideo*, *risi*, *risum*.

REM. 2. The verbs of the first conjugation whose perfects take a reduplication are *do*, *sto*, and their compounds.

REM. 3. The following verbs in *eo* are of the first conjugation, viz. *beo*, *calceo*, *creo*, *cüneo*, *enucleo*, *illäqueo*, *collineo*, *delineo*, *meo*, *nauseo*, *screeo*; *eo* and its compounds are of the fourth.

§ 166. All deponent verbs, of the first conjugation, are regular, and are conjugated like *miror*, § 161; as,

Abominor, d. *to abhor.*

Adülör, d. *to flatter.*

Ämülör, d. *to rival.*

Ancillor, *to be a handmaid.*

\*Apricor, *to bask in the sun.*

Arbitror, r. d. *to think.*

Aspernor, d. p. *to despise.*

Aucüpör, r. p. *to hunt after.*

Auxillor, p. *to help.*

Aversor, d. *to dislike.*

Bacchor, p. *to revel.*

Calumnior, *to censure unfairly.*

Causor, *to allege.*

\*Comissor, m. *to revel.*

Comitor, p. *to accompany.*

Conciönör, *to harangue.*

\*Confabülör, m. *to converse together.*

Cönör, d. *to endeavor.*

†Conspicör, *to see.*

Contemplor, d. p. *to view attentively.*

CrimInör, m. p. *to complain of.*

Cunctör, d. p. *to delay.*

Deprëcor, m, r. d. p. *to deprecate,*

\*†Diglädior, *to fence.*

Dignor, d. p. *to deem worthy.*

DomInör, p. *to rule.*

Epülör, r. d. *to feast.*

\*Famülör, m. *to wait on.*

Fätür, (defect.) u. d. p. *to speak.* See § 188, 6.

†Fërior, r. *to keep holiday.*

\*Frumentor, m. *to forage.*

Fürör, m. *to steal.*

Glörör, r. d. *to boast.*

Gratülör, m. d. *to congratulate.*

|                                            |                                        |                                               |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Hariölör, to practise sooth-saying.</i> | <i>Modölör, d. p. to modulate.</i>     | <i>*Rustölör, to live in the country.</i>     |
| <i>Hortör, d. to encourage.</i>            | <i>Mörör, r. d. to delay.</i>          | <i>Sciselör, m. p. to inquire.</i>            |
| <i>Imitor, u. r. d. to imitate.</i>        | <i>†Mütör, p. to borrow.</i>           | <i>*Sölör, m. to ask.</i>                     |
| <i>Indignör, d. to disdain.</i>            | <i>Negölör, r. to traffic.</i>         | <i>Scrölör, p. to search.</i>                 |
| <i>Infilör, d. to deny.</i>                | <i>*†Nüör, to trifle.</i>              | <i>Sölör, d. to comfort.</i>                  |
| <i>Insector, to pursue.</i>                | <i>Obsölör, m. to cater.</i>           | <i>Spätör, to walk about.</i>                 |
| <i>Insidör, r. d. to lie in wait for.</i>  | <i>Obtestör, p. to beseech.</i>        | <i>Specölör, m. r. d. to spy out.</i>         |
| <i>Interpretör, p. to explain.</i>         | <i>Opörör, to work.</i>                | <i>†Stipölör, p. to bargain, stipulate.</i>   |
| <i>Jacölör, p. to hurl.</i>                | <i>Opölör, u. r. d. to think.</i>      | <i>†Suävior, d. to kiss.</i>                  |
| <i>Jöcor, to jest.</i>                     | <i>Opitölör, m. to help.</i>           | <i>Suspölör, to suspect.</i>                  |
| <i>Jöcor, r. d. p. to rejoice.</i>         | <i>†Ötör, to be at leisure.</i>        | <i>Testifölör, p. to testify.</i>             |
| <i>Lamentör, d. p. to bewail.</i>          | <i>Pabölör, m. d. to graze.</i>        | <i>Testör, d. p. to testify. So detestör.</i> |
| <i>*†Lignör, m. to gather wood.</i>        | <i>Pälör, to wander about.</i>         | <i>Tütör, to defend.</i>                      |
| <i>Luctor, d. to wrestle.</i>              | <i>Percontör, m. to inquire.</i>       | <i>Vägör, to wander.</i>                      |
| <i>Medicör, r. d. p. to heal.</i>          | <i>Periclitör, d. p. to try.</i>       | <i>Venörör, d. p. to venerate, worship.</i>   |
| <i>Meditor, p. to meditate.</i>            | <i>†Piscör, m. to fish.</i>            | <i>Venör, m. p. to hunt.</i>                  |
| <i>Mercör, m. r. d. p. to buy.</i>         | <i>Popölör, r. d. p. to lay waste.</i> | <i>Versör, to be employed.</i>                |
| <i>Minor, to threaten.</i>                 | <i>Prædör, m. p. to plunder.</i>       | <i>Vocifölör, to bawl.</i>                    |
| <i>Mirör, u. r. d. to admire.</i>          | <i>Præcor, m. u. r. d. to pray.</i>    |                                               |
| <i>Misérör, d. to pity.</i>                | <i>Proelior, to fight.</i>             |                                               |
| <i>Modérör, u. d. to govern.</i>           | <i>Recordör, d. to recollect.</i>      |                                               |
|                                            | <i>Rimör, d. to search.</i>            |                                               |
|                                            | <i>Rixör, to quarrel.</i>              |                                               |

NOTE. Some deponents of the first conjugation are derived from nouns, and signify being or practising that which the noun denotes; as, *ancilläri*, to be a handmaid; *hariöläri*, to practise soothsaying; from *ancilla* and *hariölus*.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 167. Verbs of the second conjugation end in *eo*, and form their second and third roots in *u* and *it*; as, *moneo*, *monui*, *monitum*.

The following list contains most of the regular verbs of this conjugation, and many also which want the second and third roots:—

|                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                         |                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>*Aceo, to be sour.</i>                                                                                                                            | <i>*Cläreo, —, to be bright.</i>                                                                                                                        | <i>*†perhitbeo, d. to report.</i>                         |
| <i>*Egreo, —, to be sick.</i>                                                                                                                        | <i>*Clueo, —, to be famous.</i>                                                                                                                         | <i>†posthabeo, to postpone.</i>                           |
| <i>*Albeo, —, to be white.</i>                                                                                                                       | <i>*Denseo, —, to thicken.</i>                                                                                                                          | <i>præbeo, (for præhitbeo), r. d. to afford.</i>          |
| <i>*Arceo, d. to drive away; part. adj. arctus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain. exerceo, r. d. to exercise.</i> | <i>*Diribeo, —, to sort the voting tablets.</i>                                                                                                         | <i>*præhabeo, —, d. beo, (for dehabeo), r. d. to owe.</i> |
| <i>*Areo, to be dry.</i>                                                                                                                             | <i>*Doleo, r. d. to grieve.</i>                                                                                                                         | <i>*Hæbeo, —, to be dull.</i>                             |
| <i>*Aveo, —, to covet.</i>                                                                                                                           | <i>*Egeo, r. to want.</i>                                                                                                                               | <i>*Horreo, d. to be rough.</i>                           |
| <i>*Caleo, r. to be warm.</i>                                                                                                                        | <i>*Emineo, to rise above.</i>                                                                                                                          | <i>*Humeo, —, to be moist.</i>                            |
| <i>*Calleo, —, to be hardened. *percalleo, to know well.</i>                                                                                         | <i>*Flacceo, to droop.</i>                                                                                                                              | <i>*Jaceo, r. to lie.</i>                                 |
| <i>*Calveo, —, to be bald.</i>                                                                                                                       | <i>*Fläveo, —, to be yellow.</i>                                                                                                                        | <i>*Lacteo, —, to suck.</i>                               |
| <i>*Candeo, to be white.</i>                                                                                                                         | <i>*Flöreo, to blossom.</i>                                                                                                                             | <i>*Langueo, —, to be faint.</i>                          |
| <i>*Caneo, to be hoary.</i>                                                                                                                          | <i>*Fæteo, —, to be fetid.</i>                                                                                                                          | <i>*Läteo, to lie hid.</i>                                |
| <i>*Cæreo, r. d. to want.</i>                                                                                                                        | <i>*Frigeo, —, to be cold.</i>                                                                                                                          | <i>*Lenteo, —, to be slow.</i>                            |
| <i>*Cæveo, —, to fawn.</i>                                                                                                                           | <i>*Frondeo, —, to bear leaves.</i>                                                                                                                     | <i>*Liceo, to be valued.</i>                              |
|                                                                                                                                                      | <i>Habeo, r. d. to have. The compounds, except posthabeo, change a into i; as, ad-, ex-, pro-hibeo. cohibeo, d. to restrain. inhibeo, d. to hinder.</i> | <i>*Liveo, —, to be livid.</i>                            |
|                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                         | <i>*Maceo, —, to be lean.</i>                             |
|                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                         | <i>*Mædeo, to be wet.</i>                                 |
|                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                         | <i>*Mæreo, —, to grieve.</i>                              |
|                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                         | <i>Mæreo, r. to deserve.</i>                              |

- †commēreo, to *fully deserve*. †dēmēreo, d. to *earn*. †ēmēreo, to *serve out one's time*. \*permēreo, —, to *go through service*. promēreo, to *deserve*.
- Mōneo, r. d. to *advise*. admōneo, m. r. d. to *re-mind*. commōneo, to *impress upon*. prēmōneo, to *forewarn*.
- \*Mūceo, —, to *be mouldy*. \*Nigreo, —, to *be black*. \*Niteo, to *shine*.
- Nōceo, m. r. to *hurt*. \*Oleo, to *smell*. \*Palleo, to *be pale*.
- \*Pāreo, m. r. d. to *obey*. \*Pāteo, to *be open*. Plāceo, to *please*. \*Polleo, —, to *be able*. \*Pūteo, to *stink*. \*Putreo, to *be putrid*. \*Renideo, —, to *glitter*. \*Rigeo, to *be stiff*. \*Rūbeo, to *be red*. \*Scāteo, —, to *gush forth*. \*Sēneo, —, to *be old*. \*Sileo, d. to *be silent*. \*Sordeo, —, to *be filthy*. \*Splendeo, —, to *shine*. \*Squāleo, —, to *be foul*. \*Strideo, —, to *creak*. \*Stūdeo, d. to *study*. \*Stūpeo, to *be amazed*.
- \*Sueo, —, to *be wont*. Tāceo, r. d. to *be silent*. \*Tēpeo, to *be warm*. Terreo, d. to *terrify*. So deterreo, to *deter*. †absterreo, to *deter*. †conterreo, †exterreo, †perterreo, d. to *frighten*. \*Timeo, d. to *fear*. \*Torpeo, —, to *be stiff*. \*Tūmeo, to *swell*. \*Vāleo, r. to *be able*. \*Vēgeo, —, to *arouse*. \*Vieo, —, to *plait*. Pa. viētus, *shriveled*. \*Vigeo, to *flourish*. \*Vireo, to *be green*. \*Uveo, —, to *be moist*.

§ 168. The following verbs of the second conjugation are irregular in their second or third roots or in both.

NOTE 1. As the proper form of verbs of the first conjugation is, o, *avi, ātum*, of the fourth *io, ivi, itum*, so that of the second would be *eo, evi, ētum*. Very few of the latter conjugation, however, retain this form, but most of them, as noticed in § 165, Rem. 1, drop in the second root the connecting vowel, *ē*, and those in *veo* drop *vē*; as, *cāveo*, (*cāvēvi*) *cavi*, (*cāvētum* or *cāvitum*) *cautum*. Others, imitating the form of those verbs of the third conjugation whose general root ends in a consonant, add *s* to form the second and third roots. Cf. § 165, Rem. 1, and § 171.

NOTE 2. Four verbs of the second conjugation take a reduplication in the parts formed from the second root, viz. *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo*. See § 163, Rem.

- Abōleo, -ēvi, -itum, r. d. to *efface*.  
 \*Algeo, alsī, to *be cold*.  
 Ardeo, arsi, arsum, r. to *burn*.  
 Audeo, ausus sum, (*rarely ausi, whence ausim*, § 183, R. 1,) r. d. to *dare*.  
 Augeo, auxi, auctum, r. d. to *increase*.  
 Cāveo, cāvi, cautum, m. d. to *beware*.  
 Censeo, censui, censum, d. to *think*.  
 recenseo, -ui, -um or -itum. \*per-censeo, -ui. \*succenseo, -ui, d.  
 Cileo, civi, cītum, to *excite*. There is a cognate form, *cio*, of the fourth conjugation, both of the simple verb and of its compounds. The penult of the participles *excitus* and *concitus* is common, and that of *accitus* is always long.
- \*Conniveo, -nivi, to *wink at*.  
 Dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, d. to *blot out*.  
 Dōceo, docui, doctum, d. to *teach*.  
 \*Fāveo, fāvi, fautūrus, to *favor*.  
 \*Ferveo, ferui, to *boil*. Sometimes *fervo*, vi, of the third conjugation.  
 Fleo, flēvi, flētum, r. d. to *weep*.  
 Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum, d. to *cherish*.
- \*Fulgeo, fulsi, to *shine*. Fulgo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.  
 Gaudeo, gavissus sum, r. to *rejoice*. § 142, 2.  
 \*Hæreo, hæsi, hæsurus, to *stick*. So *ad-, co-, in-, ob-hæreo*; but \*subhæreo, —.  
 Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, r. d. to *indulge*.  
 Jūbeo, jussi, jussum, r. d. to *order*.  
 \*Lūceo, luxi, to *shine*. pollūceo, -luxi, -luctum.  
 \*Lūgeo, luxi, d. to *mourn*.  
 \*Māneo, mansi, mansum, m. r. d. to *remain*.  
 Misceo, miscui, mistum or mixtum, mistūrus, d. to *mix*.  
 Mordeo, momordi, morsum, d. to *bite*.  
 remordeo, -di, -morsum, r.  
 Mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, r. d. to *move*.  
 Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, d. to *soothe*.  
 permulceo, permulsi, permulsum and permulctum, to *rub gently*.  
 \*Mulgeo, mulsi or mulxi, to *milk*.  
 emulgeo, —, emulsum, to *milk out*.

Neo, nēvi, nētum, *to spin*.

\*Pāveo, pāvi, *d. to fear*.

\*Pendeo, pependi, *to hang*. \*impendeo, —, propendo, —, propensum.

Pleo, (obsolete). compleo, -ēvi, -ētum, *to fill*. So the other compounds.

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, *r. to dine*.

Rideo, risi, risum, *m. r. d. to laugh*.

\*Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, *m. r. to sit*.

The compounds with monosyllabic prepositions change *ē* into *i*, in the first root; as, insideo, insēdi, insessum.

\*disideo, -sēdi. So praesideo, and rarely circumsideo.

Soleo, solitus sum and rarely solui, *to be accustomed*. § 142, 2.

\*Sorbeo, sorbui, *to suck in*. So \*exsorbeo: but \*resorbeo, —. \*absorbeo, -sorbui or -sorpsi.

Spondeo, sponondi, sponsum, *to promise*. See § 163, Rem.

\*Strideo, Idi, *to whiz*.

Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, *r. d. to advise*.

Tēneo, tēnuī, tentum, *r. d. to hold*. The compounds change *ē* into *i* in the first and second roots; as, detineo, detinui, detentum. \*attineo, -tinui. So pertineo.

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, *to wipe*. Tergo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.

Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, *to shear*. The compounds have the perfect tondi.

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, *d. to twist*.

Torreo, torrui, tostum, *to roast*.

\*Turgeo, tursi, *to swell*.

\*Urgeo or urgueo, ursi, *d. to urge*.

Video, vidi, vīsum, *m. u. r. d. to see*.

Vōveo, vōvi, vōtum, *d. to vow*.

### § 169. Impersonal Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Dēcet, decuit, *it becomes*.

Lībet, libuit or libitum est, *it pleases, is agreeable*.

Līcet, licuit or licitum est, *it is lawful, or permitted*.

Līquet, liquit, *it is clear, evident*.

Misēret, miseruit or miseritum est, *it moves to pity; misēret me, I pity*.

Oportet, oportuit, *it behooves*.

Pīget, piguit or pigitum est, *d. it troubles, grieves*.

Pōnitet, pōnituit, pōnitūrus, *d. it repents; pōnitet me, I regret*.

Pūdet, puduit or puditum est, *d.; it shames; pudet me, I am ashamed*.

Tādet, tādut or tāsūm est, *it disgusts or wearies*. pertādet, pertāsūm est.

NOTE. Lūbet is sometimes written for lībet, especially in the comic writers.

### § 170. Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Fāteor, fassus, *r. d. p. to confess*. The compounds change *ā* into *i* in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, confiteor, confessus, *d. p. to acknowledge*. \*fdiffiteor, *to deny*. profiteor, professus, *d. p. to declare*. Liceor, licitus, *to bid a price*.

\*Mēdeor, *d. to cure*.

Mēreor, meritus, *to deserve*.

Misēreor, miseritus or misertus, *to pity*.

Polliceor, pollicitus, *p. to promise*.

Reor, rātus, *to think, suppose*.

Tueor, tultus, *d. p. to protect*.

Vēreor, veritus, *d. p. to fear*.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 171. In the third conjugation, when the first root ends with a consonant, the second root is regularly formed by adding *s*; when it ends with a vowel, the first and second roots are the same: the third root is formed by adding *t*; as, carpo, carpsi, carptum; arguo, argui, argūtum.

In annexing *s* and *t*, certain changes occur in the final consonant of the root:—

1. The palatals *c*, *g*, *qu*, and also *h*, at the end of the first root, form with *s* the double letter *x* in the second root; in the third root, *c* remains, and the others are changed into *c* before *t*; as, dico, (dicī, i. e.), dixi, dictum; rego, (regī, i. e.), rexi, rectum; vōlo, veki, vectum; cōquo, coxi, coctum.

NOTE. *Fluo* and *struo* form their second and third roots after the analogy of verbs whose first root ends in a palatal or *h*.

2. *B* is changed into *p* before *s* and *t*; as, *scribo*, *scripsi*, *scriptum*.

3. *D* and *t*, before *s*, are either dropped, or changed into *s*; as, *claudio*, *clausi*; *cēdo*, *cessi*; *mīlto*, *mihi*. Cf. § 56, I, Rem. 1. After *m*, *p* is sometimes inserted before *s* and *t*; as, *sūmo*, *sumpsi*, *sumptum*. *R* is changed to *s* before *s* and *t* in *gēro* and *ūro*.

4. Some other consonants are dropped, or changed into *s*, in certain verbs.

Exc. 1. Many verbs whose first root ends in a consonant, do not add *s* to form the second root.

(a.) Of these, some have the second root the same as the first, but the vowel of the second root, if a monosyllable, is long; as,

|       |         |        |           |         |         |        |
|-------|---------|--------|-----------|---------|---------|--------|
| Bibo, | Excūdo, | Ico,   | Mando,    | Scābo,  | Solvo,  | Verro, |
| Edo,  | Fōdio,  | Lambo, | Prehendo, | Scando, | Strīdo, | Verro, |
| Emo,  | Fūgio,  | Lēgo,  | Psallo,   | Sido,   | Tollo,  | Volvo; |

to which add the compounds of the obsolete *cando*, *fendo*, and *nūo*.

(b.) Some make a change in the first root. Of these, some change a vowel, some drop a consonant, some prefix a reduplication, others admit two or more of these changes; as,

|                |                |              |
|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| Ago, āgi.      | Cāpio, cēpi.   | Fācio, fēci. |
| Findo, fīdi.   | Frango, frēgi. | Fundo, fūdi. |
| Jācio, jēci.   | Linguo, liqui. | Rumpo, rūpi. |
| Scindo, scīdi. | Sisto, stīti.  | Vinco, vīci. |

Those which have a reduplication are

|                     |                 |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Cādo, cēcīdi.       | Cādo, cēcīdi.   | Cāno, cēcīni.   |
| Curro, cūcurri.     | Disco, didici.  | Fallo, fēfelli. |
| Pāgo, (obs.) pēpigi | Parco, pēperci. | Pārio, pēpēri.  |
| and pēgi.           | Pēdo, pēpēdi.   | Pello, pēpūli.  |
| Pēndo, pēpendi.     | Pōsco, pōposci. | Pungo, pūpūgi.  |
| Tango, tētigi.      | Tēndo, tētēdi.  | Tundo, tūtūdi.  |

Exc. 2. Some, after the analogy of the second conjugation, add *u* to the first root of the verb; as,

|                 |          |              |         |        |
|-----------------|----------|--------------|---------|--------|
| Alo, alui, etc. | Consūlo, | Gēmo,        | Rāpio,  | Trēmo, |
| Cōlo,           | Depso,   | Gēno, (obs.) | Strēpo, | Vōlo,  |
| Compesco,       | Frēmo,   | Mōlo,        | Texo,   | Vōmo.  |

*Mēto*, *messui*; and *pōno*, *pōnui*; add *su*, with a change in the root.

Exc. 3. The following, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, add *iv* to the first root:—

|           |          |          |                                   |                   |
|-----------|----------|----------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| Arcesso,  | Cūpio,   | Lācesso, | Rūdo,                             | Tēro, dropping ē. |
| Cāpresso, | Incesso, | Pēto,    | Quāro, with a change of r into s. |                   |

Exc. 4. The following add *v*, with a change in the root; those in *no* and *scō* dropping *n* and *sc*, and those having *er* before *n* changing it to *rē* or *rā*:—

|         |          |         |         |       |                 |
|---------|----------|---------|---------|-------|-----------------|
| Cresco, | Pasco,   | Scisco, | Sperno, | Lino, | Sēro,           |
| Nosco,  | Quiesco, | Cerno,  | Sterno, | Sino, | to <i>son</i> . |

Exc. 5. (a.) The third root of verbs whose first root ends in *d* or *t*, and some in *g*, add *s*, instead of *t*, to the root, either dropping the *d*, *t*, and *g*, or changing them into *s*; as, *claudio*, *clausum*; *dēfendo*, *dēfensum*; *cēdo*, *cessum*; *flecto*, *flexum*; *figo*, *fixum*. But the compounds of *do* add *ū*; as, *perdo*, *perditum*.

(b.) The following, also, add *s*, with a change of the root:—

|           |        |        |         |        |
|-----------|--------|--------|---------|--------|
| Excello,  | Fallo, | Pello, | Spargo, | Verro. |
| Percello, | Mergo, | Præmo, | Vello,  |        |

Exc. 6. The following add *t*, with a change of the root; those having *n*, *nc*, *ng*, *ngu*, or *mp* at the end of the first root dropping *n* and *m* in the third:—

|        |         |        |        |         |          |        |
|--------|---------|--------|--------|---------|----------|--------|
| Cerno, | Fingo,  | Gëro,  | Sëro,  | Sperno, | Stringo, | Uro,   |
| Côlo,  | Frango, | Rumpo, | Sisto, | Sterno, | Tëro,    | Vinco; |

to which add the compounds of *linguo*, and verbs in *sco* with the second root in *v*; the latter drop *sc* before *t*; as, *nosco*, *nôti*, *nôtum*; except *pasco*, which drops *c* only.

Exc. 7. (a.) The following have *û*:—

|                             |         |       |                     |                                             |
|-----------------------------|---------|-------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Bibo,                       | Elicio, | Môlo, | Pôno,               | with a change of <i>ôn</i> into <i>ôs</i> . |
| Gëno, (obs. form of gigno,) | Vômo,   | Sîno, | dropping <i>n</i> . |                                             |

(b.) The following, like verbs of the fourth conjugation, add *û* to the first root:—

|          |          |        |                                           |                     |
|----------|----------|--------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Arcesso, | Cûpio,   | Pëto,  | Tëro,                                     | dropping <i>ë</i> . |
| Fâcesso, | Lâcesso, | Quëro, | with a change of <i>r</i> into <i>s</i> . |                     |

For other irregularities occurring in this conjugation, see § 172-174.

§ 172. The following list contains most of the simple verbs, both regular and irregular, in the third conjugation, with such of their compounds as require particular notice:—

*Acuo*, *âcui*, *âcutum*, d. to sharpen.

*Ago*, *ëgi*, *actum*, r. d. to drive. So *circumago*, *côgo*, and *përâgo*. \**ambigo*, —, to doubt. So *sâtâgo*. The other compounds change *â* into *i*, in the first root; as, *exigo*, *exëgi*, *ex-actum*, to drive out. \**prôdigo*, *-ëgi*, to squander. See § 189, 2.

*Alo*, *âlui*, *altum*, and later *âltum*, d. to nourish.

\**Ango*, *anxi*, to strangle.

*Arguo*, *argui*, *argûtum*, d. to convict.

*Arcesso*, *-cessivi*, *-cessitum*, r. d. to call for. Pass. inf. *arcessitri* or *arcessi*.

\**Bâtuo*, *bâtui*, d. to beat.

*Bibo*, *bibi*, *bibitum*, d. to drink.

\**Câdo*, *cêcidi*, *câsurus*, to fall. The compounds change *â* into *i*, in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as, *occido*, *-cidi*, *-câsum*, r. to set.

*Cædo*, *cêcidi*, *cæsum*, r. d. to cut. The compounds change *æ* into *i*, and drop the reduplication; as, *occido*, *-cidi*, *-cîsum*.

*Cando*, (obsolete,) synonymous with *candeo* of the second conjugation. Hence *accendo*, *-cendi*, *-censum*, d. to kindle. So *incendo*, *succendo*.

\**Câno*, *cêcîni*, d. to sing. The compounds change *â* into *i*; as, \**conciño*,

*-cînuî*. So *occîno*, *præcîno*. \**accîno*, —. So *incîno*, *intercîno*, *succîno*, *recîno*.

\**Capesso*, *-jvi*, r. d. to undertake.

*Câpio*, *cêpi*, *captum*, r. d. to take. So *antêcâpio*. The other compounds change *â* into *i*, in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, *dêcîpio*, *dêcêpi*, *dêceptum*.

*Carpo*, *carpsi*, *carptum*, d. to pluck. The compounds change *a* into *e*; as, *dêcerpo*, *dêcerpsi*, *dêcerptum*.

*Cêdo*, *cessi*, *cessum*, r. to yield.

*Cello*, (obsolete,) *excello*, *-cellui*, *-culsum*, to excel. \**antêcello*, —. So *præcello*, *rêcello*. *percello*, *-cûli*, *-culsum*, to strike.

*Cerno*, *crêvi*, *crêtum*, d. to decree.

\**Cerno*, —, to see.

*Cingo*, *cînxî*, *cîncitum*, d. to gird.

\**Clango*, —, to clang.

*Claudo*, *clausi*, *clausum*, r. d. to shut.

The compounds change *au* into *û*; as, *occludo*, *occlûsi*, *occlûsum*, to shut up.

\*†*Clauco*, —, to limp.

\*†*Clêpo*, *clêpsi*, rarely *clêpi*, to steal.

*Côlo*, *côlui*, *cultum*, d. to till. †*occulô*,

*-cûlui*, *-cultum*, d. to hide.

*Cômo*, *compsi*, *comptum*, to deck.

\**Compesco*, *-pescui*, to restrain.



Consūlo, -sūlui, -sultum, m. r. d. to *consult*.

Cōquo, coxi, coctum, m. d. to *cook*.

Crēdo, crēddi, crēditum, r. d. to *believe*.

\*Cresco, crēvi, to *grow*. concreresco, -crēvi, -crētum.

Cūbo is of the first conjugation. Cf. § 165. \*accumbo, -cūbui, to *lie down*.

\*Cūdo, —, to *forge*. excūdo, -cūdi, -cūsum, d. to *stamp*.

Cūpio, cūplvi, cūpitum, d. to *desire*. Subj. imperf. cūpiret. *Lucr.* 1, 72.

\*Curro, cūcurri, cursurus, to *run*. concurro, succurro, and transcurro, drop the reduplication; the other compounds sometimes drop, and sometimes retain it; as, dēcurro, dēcurri, and dēcūcurri, dēcursum. \*antēcurro, —. So circumcurro.

\*Dēgo, dēgi, d. to *live*.  
Dēmo, dempsi, demptum, r. d. to *take away*.

†Depso, depsvi, depstum, to *knead*.

Dico, dixi, dictum, u. r. d. to *say*.

\*Disco, didici, discitūrus, d. to *learn*.

\*Dispesco, —, to *separate*.

Divido, divisi, divisum, r. d. to *divide*.

Do is of the first conjugation. abdo, -didi, -ditum, d. to *hide*. So condo, indo. addo, -didi, -ditum, r. d. to *add*. So dēdo, ēdo, prōdo, reddo, trādo, vendo. †dido, -didi, -ditum, to *distribute*. So abdo, subdo. perdo, -didi, -ditum, m. r. d. abscondo, -di or -didi, -ditum or -sum.

Dūco, duxi, ductum, m. r. d. to *lead*.

Edo, ēdi, ēsum, m. u. r. d. to *eat*.

Exuo, exui, exūtum, d. to *strip off*.

Emo, ēmi, emptum, r. d. to *buy*. So coēmo. The other compounds change ē to i; as, exlmo, -ēmi, -emptum.

Fācesso, -cessi, -cessitum, to *execute*.

Fācio, fēcī, factum, m. u. r. d. to *do*. Compound with a preposition, it changes ā into i in the first root, and into e in the third, makes -fice in the imperative, and has a regular passive. Compound with other words, it retains ā when of this conjugation, makes fāc in the imperative, and has the passive, fio, factum. See § 180.

Fallo, fēfelli, falsum, d. to *deceive*.

\*rēfello, -felli, d. to *refuse*.

Fendo, (obsolete.) dēfendo, -fendi, -fensum, m. u. r. d. to *defend*. offendo, -fendi, -fensum, d. to *offend*.

Fēro, tūli, lātum, r. d. to *bear*. See § 179. A perfect tūli is rare. Its compounds are affēro, attūli, allātum;

aufēro, abstūli, ablātum; diffēro, distūli, dilātum; confēro, contūli, collātum; infēro, intūli, illātum; offēro, obtūli, oblātum; effēro, extūli, elātum; suffēro, sustūli, sublātum; and circum-, per-, trans-, dē-, prō-, antē-, prāfēro, -tūli, -lātum.

\*Fervo, vi, to *boil*. Cf. ferveo, 2d conj.

Fido, —, fīsus, to *trust*. See § 182, 18. confido, confisus sum or confidi, to *rely on*. diffido, diffisus sum, to *distrust*.

Figo, fixi, fixum, r. rarely fīctum, to *fix*.

Findo, fīdi, fīsum, d. to *cleave*.

Fingo, finxi, fīctum, d. to *feign*.

Flecto, flexi, flexum, r. d. to *bend*.

\*Fligo, flīxi, to *dash*. So confīgo. affīgo, -flīxi, -fīctum, to *afflict*. So inflīgo. prōdīgo is of the first conjugation.

Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, (fluctum, obs.) r. to *flow*.

Fōdio, fōdi, fossum, d. to *dig*. Old pres. inf. pass. fōdiri: so also ef-fōdiri.

Frango, frēgi, fractum, r. d. to *break*. The compounds change a into i, in the first root; as, infringo, infrēgi, infractum, to *break in upon*.

\*Frēmo, frēmui, d. to *roar, howl*.

Frendo, —, frēsus or frēsum, to *gnash*.

Frigo, frīxi, frīctum, rarely frīxum, to *roast*.

\*Fūgio, fūgi, fūgitūrus, d. to *flee*.

\*Fulgo, —, to *flash*.

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, r. d. to *pour*.

\*Fūro, —, to *rage*.

\*Gēmo, gēmui, d. to *groan*.

Gēro, gessi, gestum, r. d. to *bear*.

Gigno, (obsolete gēno,) gēnui, gēnitum, r. d. to *beget*.

\*Glisco, —, to *grow*.

\*Glābo, —, to *peel*. deglābo, —, -gluptum.

Gruo, (obsolete.) \*congruo, -grui, to *agree*. So ingruo.

Ico, ici, ictum, r. to *strike*.

Imbuo, imbui, imbutum, d. to *imbue*.

\*Incesso, -cessivi or -cessi, to *attack*.

†Induo, indui, indūtum, r. d. to *put on*.

Jācio, jēcī, jactum, d. to *cast*. The compounds change ā into i in the first root, and into e in the third. (§ 163, Exc. 3); as, rejēcio, rejēcī, rejectum.

Jungo, junxi, junctum, r. d. to *join*.

Lācesso, -cessivi, -cessitum, r. d. to *provoke*.

Lācio, (obsolete.) The compounds change ā into i; as, allīcio, -lexi, -lectum, d. to *allure*. So illicio, pellicio. illicio, -licui, -licitum, to *draw out*.

**Lædo, læsi, læsum, m. r. to hurt.** *The compounds change æ into i; as, illido, illisi, illisum, to dash against.*

\***Lambo, lambi, to lick.**

**Lêgo, lêgi, lectum, r. d. to read.** *So allêgo, perlêgo, praelêgo, relêgo, sublêgo, and translêgo; the other compounds change ê into i; as, colligo, collêgi, collectum, to collect. But the following add s to form the second root; § 171, 1; diligo, -lexi, -lectum, to love. intelligo, -lexi, -lectum, u. r. d. to understand. negligo, -lexi, -lectum, r. d. to neglect.*

**Lingo, —, linctum, d. to lick.** \***delingo, —, to lick up.**

**Lino, lvi or lêvi, litum, d. to daub.**

\***Linguo, liqui, d. to leave.** relinquo, -liqui, -lictum, r. d. delinquo, -liqui, -lictum. *So derelinquo.*

**Lûdo, lûsi, lûsum, m. r. to play.**

\***Luo, lui, luitûrus, d. to atone.** abluo, -lui, -lûtum, r. d. diluo, -lui, -lûtum, d. *So eluo.*

**Mando, mami, mansum, d. to chew.**

**Mergo, mersi, mersum, r. d. to dip.** *So immergo; but pres. inf. pass. immergeri, Col. 5, 8.*

**Mêto, messui, messum, d. to reap.**

**Mêto, metui, metûtum, d. to fear.**

\***Mingo, minxi, mictum, (sup.) to make water.**

**Minuo, minui, minûtum, d. to lessen.**

**Mitto, misi, missum, r. d. to send.**

**Mûlo, mûlui, mûltum, to grind.**

**Mungo, (obsolete.) emungo, -munxi, -munctum, to wipe the nose.**

**Necto, nexi, nexum, d. to knit.** innecto, -nexui, -nexum. *So annecto, connecto.*

\***Ningo or -guo, ninxi, to snow.**

**Nosco, nôvi, nôtum, d. to learn.** agnosco, -nôvi, -nltum, d. to recognize. cognosco, -nôvi, -nltum, u. r. d. to know. *So recognosco.* \*internosco, nôvi, to distinguish between. præcognosco, —, præcognitum, to fore-know.

\***ignosco, —.** *So prænosco.* ignosco, -nôvi, -nôtum, d. to pardon.

**Nûbo, nupsi, or nupta sum, nuptum, m. r. to marry.**

**Nuo, (obsolete.) to nod.** \*abnuo, -nui, -nuitûrus, d. to refuse. \*annuo, -nui. *So innuo, renuo.*

\***Olo, ôlui, to smell.**

**Pando, —, passum or pansum, to open.** *So expando.* dispando, —, pansum.

**Pago, (obs. the same as paco whence pascor.) pêpigi, pactum, to bargain: hence**

**Pango, panxi or pëgi, pactum, panctû-**

**rus, d. to drive in.** compingo, -pëgi, -pactum. *So impingo.* \*oppango, -pëgi. \*depango, —. *So repango, suppingo.*

\***Parco, pêperci rarely parsi, parsûrus, to spare.** *Some of the compounds change a to e; as, \*comparco or comperco.* \*imperco, —.

**Pario, pêperi, partum, pâritûrus, d. to bring forth.** *The compounds are of the fourth conjugation.*

**Pasco, pâvi, pastum, m. r. d. to feed.**

**Pecto, —, pexum, and pectitum, d. to comb.** *So depecto. repecto.*

\***Pëdo, pêpëdi.** \*oppëdo, —.

**Pello, pêpûli, pulsum, d. to drive.** *Its compounds are not reduplicated.*

**Pendo, pêpendi, pensum, r. to weigh.** *The compounds drop the reduplication. See § 163, Exc. 1.*

**Pëto, pêtëvi, pëtëtum, m. u. r. d. to ask.**

**Pingo, pinxi, pictum, to paint.**

**Pinso, pinsi, pinsitum, pinsum or pis-**

**tum, to pound.**

\***Plango, planxi, planetûrus, to lament.**

**Plaudo, plausi, plausum, d. to clap, applaud.** *So applaudo.* \*circumplaudo, —. *The other compounds change au into ô.*

**Plecto, —, plexum, d. to twine.**

\***Pluo, plui or plûvi, to rain.**

**Pôno, pôsui, (anciently poslvi), pôs-**

**litum, r. d. to place.**

\*†**Porricio, —, to offer sacrifice.**

\***Posco, pôposci, d. to demand.**

**Prehendo, { -di, -sum, r. d. to seize.**

**Prëmo, pressi, pressum, r. d. to press.** *The compounds change ê into i, in the first root; as, imprimo, impressi, impressum, to impress.*

**Prômo, prompsi, promptum, r. d. to bring out.**

\***Psallo, psalli, to play on a stringed instrument.**

**Pungo, pûpûgi, punctum, to prick.** compungo, -punxi, -punctum. *So dispungo, expungo.* interpungo, —, -punctum. \*repungo, —.

**Quæro, quæsi, quæsîtum, m. r. d. to seek.** *The compounds change æ into i; as, requiro, requisivi, requisitum, to seek again.*

**Quâtio, —, quassum, to shake.** *The compounds change quâ into cti; as, concûtio, -cussi, -cussum, d. discûtio, -cussi, -cussum, r. d.*

**Quiesco, quîevi, quîetum, r. d. to rest.**

**Râdo, râsi, râsum, d. to shave.**

**Râpio, râpui, raptum, r. d. to snatch.**

*The compounds change ê into i in the*

Lāvo, lāvi, *rar.* lāvāvi, lavātum, lautum or lōtum; (*sup.*) lautum or lavātum, lavātūrus, d. *to wash.* Lāvo is also sometimes of the third conjugation.

\*Mico, micui, d. *to glitter.* dimico, -āvi or -ui, -atūrus. \*emico, -ui, -atūrus. \*internico, —. \*promico, —, d.

Nēco, necāvi or necui, necātum, r. d. *to kill.* enēco, -āvi or -ui, -ātum, or -ctum, d. *to internēco*, —, -ātum.

\*†Nexo, —, *to tie.*

Plico, —, plicātum, *to fold.* duplico, -āvi, -ātum, r. d. *multiply* and *repliko* have -āvi, -ātum. \*supplico, -āvi, m. r. *applied*, -āvi or -ui, -ātum or -itum, -itūrus. *So* implico. —complico, -ui, -itum or -ātum. explico, -āvi or -ui, -ātum or -itum, -atūrus or -itūrus.

Pōto, potāvi, potātum or pōtum, r. r. m. m. d. *to drink.* tepōto, -āvi, -um. —perpōto, -āvi.

Sēco, secui, sectum, secatūrus, d. *to*

*cut.*—\*circumsēco, —. \*intersēco, —, d. \*persēco, -ui. præsēco, -ui, -tum or -ātum. *So* resēco, d.

\*Sōno, sonui, -atūrus, d. *to sound.* \*consōno, -ui. *So* ex-, in-, per-, præsōno. \*resōno, -āvi. \*assōno, —. *So* circumsōno and dissōno.

\*Sto, stēti, stātūrus, *to stand.* \*antesto, -stēti. *So* circumsto, intersto, supersto.—*Its compounds with monosyllabic prepositions have* stiti; as, \*consto, -stīti, -statūrus. *So* exsto, insto, obsto, persto. \*præsto, -stīti, -stātūrus, d. \*adsto or asto, -stīti, -stātūrus. \*prosto, -stīti. *So* resto, restīti: *but subj. perf.* restāverit, Propert, 2, 34, 53. \*disto, —. *So* substo and supersto.

\*Tōno, tonui, *to thunder.* *So* circumtōno. attōno, -ui, -itum. intōno, -ui, -ātum. \*retōno, —.

Vēto, vetui, *rarely* āvi, vetitum, *to forbid.*

REMARK 1. The principal irregularity, in verbs of the first and second conjugations, consists in the omission of the connecting vowel in the second root, and the change of the long vowels *ā* and *ē* in the third root into *i*. The *e* remaining at the end of the second root, when it follows a consonant, is pronounced as *u*; as, *cubo*, (*cubāvi*, by syncope *cubvi*), i. e. *cubui*; (*cubātum*, by change of the connecting vowel,) *cubitum*. Sometimes in the first conjugation, and very frequently in the second, the connecting vowel is omitted in the third root also; as, *juvo*, (*āre*) *juvi*, *jūtum*; *tēno*, (*ēre*) *tēnuī*, *tentum*. In the second conjugation several verbs whose general root ends in *d* and *g*, and a few others of different terminations, form either their second or third root or both, like verbs of the third conjugation, by adding *s*; as, *rideo*, *risi*, *risum*.

REM. 2. The verbs of the first conjugation whose perfects take a reduplication are *do*, *sto*, and their compounds.

REM. 3. The following verbs in *eo* are of the first conjugation, viz. *deo*, *calceo*, *creo*, *cineo*, *enucleo*, *illāqueo*, *collineo*, *delineo*, *meo*, *nauseo*, *screeo*; *eo* and its compounds are of the fourth.

§ 166. All deponent verbs, of the first conjugation, are regular, and are conjugated like *miror*, § 161; as,

Abominor, d. *to abhor.*

Adūlor, d. *to flatter.*

Emūlor, d. *to rival.*

Ancillor, *to be a handmaid.*

\*Aprior, *to bask in the sun.*

Arbitror, r. d. *to think.*

Aspernor, d. p. *to despise.*

Aucūpor, r. p. *to hunt after.*

Auxilior, p. *to help.*

Aversor, d. *to dislike.*

Bacchor, p. *to revel.*

Calumnior, *to censure unfairly.*

Causor, *to allege.*

\*Comissor, m. *to revel.*

Comitor, p. *to accompany.*

Conciōnor, *to harangue.*

\*Confabūlor, m. *to converse together.*

Cōnor, d. *to endeavor.*

†Conspicor, *to see.*

Contemplor, d. p. *to view attentively.*

Crimīnor, m. p. *to complain of.*

Cunctor, d. p. *to delay.*

Deprēcor, m, r, d. p. *to deprecate,*

\*†Diglādior, *to fence.*

Dignor, d. p. *to deem worthy.*

Domīnor, p. *to rule.*

Epūlor, r. d. *to feast.*

\*Famūlor, m. *to wait on.*

Fātur, (defect.) u. d. p.

*to speak. See § 188, 6.*

†Fērior, r. *to keep holiday.*

\*Frumentor, m. *to furage.*

Fūrōr, m. *to steal.*

Glōrior, r. d. *to boast.*

Gratūlor, m. d. *to congratulate.*

|                                     |                                 |                                        |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Hariölör, to practise sooth-saying. | Modölör, d. p. to modulate.     | *Rustlöör, to live in the country.     |
| Hortör, d. to encourage.            | Mörör, r. d. to delay.          | Sciscölör, m. p. to inquire.           |
| Imitor, u. r. d. to imitate.        | †Mütör, p. to borrow.           | *Scölör, m. to ask.                    |
| Indignör, d. to disdain.            | Negötör, r. to traffic.         | Scrütör, p. to search.                 |
| Infilör, d. to deny.                | *†Nüör, to trifle.              | Sölör, d. to comfort.                  |
| Insector, to pursue.                | Obsönör, m. to cater.           | Spätör, to walk about.                 |
| Insidior, r. d. to lie in wait for. | Obtestör, p. to beseech.        | Specölör, m. r. d. to spy out.         |
| Interprötör, p. to explain.         | Opérör, to work.                | †Stipölör, p. to bargain, stipulate.   |
| Jacölör, p. to hurl.                | OpInör, u. r. d. to think.      | †Suävior, d. to kiss.                  |
| Jöcor, to jest.                     | Opitölör, m. to help.           | Suspleör, to suspect.                  |
| Jöcor, r. d. p. to rejoice.         | †Ötör, to be at leisure.        | Testiflöör, p. to testify.             |
| Lamentör, d. p. to bewail.          | Pabölör, m. d. to graze.        | Testör, d. p. to testify. So detestör. |
| *†Lignör, m. to gather wood.        | Pälör, to wander about.         | Tütör, to defend.                      |
| Luctor, d. to wrestle.              | Percontör, m. to inquire.       | Vägör, to wander.                      |
| Medicör, r. d. p. to heal.          | Periclltör, d. p. to try.       | Venörör, d. p. to venerate, worship.   |
| Meditor, p. to meditate.            | †Piscör, m. to fish.            | Venör, m. p. to hunt.                  |
| Mercör, m. r. d. p. to buy.         | Popölör, r. d. p. to lay waste. | Versör, to be employed.                |
| Minor, to threaten.                 | Prædör, m. p. to plunder.       | Vociflöör, to bawl.                    |
| Mirör, u. r. d. to admire.          | Précör, m. u. r. d. to pray.    |                                        |
| Misérör, d. to pity.                | Prællör, to fight.              |                                        |
| Modérör, u. d. to govern.           | Recordör, d. to recollect.      |                                        |
|                                     | Rimör, d. to search.            |                                        |
|                                     | Rixör, to quarrel.              |                                        |

NOTE. Some deponents of the first conjugation are derived from nouns, and signify *being or practising* that which the noun denotes; as, *ancilläri*, to be a handmaid; *hariöläri*, to practise soothsaying; from *ancilla* and *hariötus*.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 167. Verbs of the second conjugation end in *eo*, and form their second and third roots in *u* and *it*; as, *moneo*, *monui*, *monitum*.

The following list contains most of the regular verbs of this conjugation, and many also which want the second and third roots:—

|                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| *Aceo, to be sour.                                                                                                                            | *Cläreo, —, to be bright.                                                                                                                        | *†perhıbeo, d. to report.                         |
| *Egreo, —, to be sick.                                                                                                                        | *Clueo, —, to be famous.                                                                                                                         | †posthabeo, to postpone.                          |
| *Albeo, —, to be white.                                                                                                                       | *Denseo, —, to thicken.                                                                                                                          | præbeo, (for præhibeo), r. d. to afford.          |
| *Arceo, d. to drive away; part. adj. arctus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain. exerceo, r. d. to exercise. | *Dirıbeo, —, to sort the voting tablets.                                                                                                         | *præhibeo, —, dēbeo, (for dehabeo), r. d. to owe. |
| *Areo, to be dry.                                                                                                                             | *Döleo, r. d. to grieve.                                                                                                                         | *Hēbeo, —, to be dull.                            |
| *Aveo, —, to covet.                                                                                                                           | *Egeo, r. to want.                                                                                                                               | *Horreo, d. to be rough.                          |
| *Caleo, r. to be warm.                                                                                                                        | *Emıneo, to rise above.                                                                                                                          | *Hımeo, —, to be moist.                           |
| *Calleo, —, to be hardened. *percalleo, to know well.                                                                                         | *Flacceo, to droop.                                                                                                                              | *Jıceo, r. to lie.                                |
| *Calveo, —, to be bald.                                                                                                                       | *Fläveo, —, to be yellow.                                                                                                                        | *Lacteo, —, to suck.                              |
| *Candeo, to be white.                                                                                                                         | *Flöreo, to blossom.                                                                                                                             | *Langueo, —, to be faint.                         |
| *Cäneo, to be hoary.                                                                                                                          | *Fæteo, —, to be fetid.                                                                                                                          | *Läteo, to lie hid.                               |
| *Cäreo, r. d. to want.                                                                                                                        | *Frigeo, —, to be cold.                                                                                                                          | *Lenteo, —, to be slow.                           |
| *Cıveo, —, to fawn.                                                                                                                           | *Frondeo, —, to bear leaves.                                                                                                                     | *Lıceo, to be valued.                             |
|                                                                                                                                               | Häbeo, r. d. to have. The compounds, except posthabeo, change a into i; as, ad-, ex-, pro-hıbeo. cohıbeo, d. to restrain. inhıbeo, d. to hinder. | *Liveo, —, to be livid.                           |
|                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                  | *Mädeo, to be wet.                                |
|                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                  | *Märeo, —, to grieve.                             |
|                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                  | Märeo, r. to deserve.                             |

- †commēreo, to *fully deserve*. †dēmēreo, d. to *earn*. †emēreo, to *serve out one's time*. \*†permēreo, —, to *go through service*. promēreo, to *deserve*.
- Mōneo, r. d. to *advise*. admōneo, m. r. d. to *re-mind*. commōneo, to *impress upon*. prēmōneo, to *forewarn*.
- \*Mūceo, —, to *be mouldy*. \*Nigreo, —, to *be black*. \*Niteo, to *shine*. Nōceo, m. r. to *hurt*. \*Oleo, to *smell*. \*Palleo, to *be pale*.
- \*Pāreo, m. r. d. to *obey*. \*Pāteo, to *be open*. Plāceo, to *please*. \*Polleo, —, to *be able*. \*Pūteo, to *stink*. \*Putreo, to *be putrid*. \*Renideo, —, to *glitter*. \*Rigeo, to *be stiff*. \*Rūbeo, to *be red*. \*Scāteo, —, to *gush forth*. \*Sēneo, —, to *be old*. \*Sileo, d. to *be silent*. \*Sordeo, —, to *be filthy*. \*Splendeo, —, to *shine*. \*Squāleo, —, to *be foul*. \*Strideo, —, to *creak*. \*Stūdeo, d. to *study*. \*Stūpeo, to *be amazed*.
- \*Sueo, —, to *be wont*. Tūceo, r. d. to *be silent*. \*Tūpeo, to *be warm*. Terreo, d. to *terrify*. So deterreo, to *deter*. †absterreo, to *deter*. †conterreo, †exterreo, †perterreo, to *frighten*. \*Timeo, d. to *fear*. \*Torpeo, —, to *be stiff*. \*Tūceo, to *swell*. \*Vāleo, r. to *be able*. \*Vēgeo, —, to *arouse*. \*Vieo, —, to *pluit*. Pa. viētus, *shrivelled*. \*Vigeo, to *flourish*. \*Vireo, to *be green*. \*Uveo, —, to *be moist*.

§ 168. The following verbs of the second conjugation are irregular in their second or third roots or in both.

NOTE 1. As the proper form of verbs of the first conjugation is, o, *āvi, ātum*, of the fourth io, *ivi, itum*, so that of the second would be eo, *ēvi, ētum*. Very few of the latter conjugation, however, retain this form, but most of them, as noticed in § 165, Rem. 1, drop in the second root the connecting vowel, ē, and those in *veo* drop *vē*; as, *cāveo*, (*cāvēvi*) *cāvi*, (*cāvētum* or *cāritum*) *cautum*. Others, imitating the form of those verbs of the third conjugation whose general root ends in a consonant, add *s* to form the second and third roots. Cf. § 165, Rem. 1, and § 171.

NOTE 2. Four verbs of the second conjugation take a reduplication in the parts formed from the second root, viz. *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo*. See § 163, Rem.

- Abdōleo, -ēvi, -itum, r. d. to *efface*.  
 \*Algeo, alsī, to *be cold*.  
 Ardeo, arsi, arsum, r. to *burn*.  
 Audeo, ausus sum, (*rarely ausi, whence ausim*, § 183, R. 1.) r. d. to *dare*.  
 Augeo, auxi, auctum, r. d. to *increase*.  
 Cāveo, cāvī, cautum, m. d. to *beware*.  
 Censeo, censui, censum, d. to *think*.  
 recenseo, -ui, -um or -itum. \*per-  
 censeo, -ui. \*succenseo, -ui, d.  
 Cicio, civi, citum, to *excite*. *There is a cognate form, cio, of the fourth conjugation, both of the simple verb and of its compounds. The penult of the participles excitus and concitus is common, and that of accitus is always long.*  
 \*Conniveo, -nivi, to *wink at*.  
 Dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, d. to *blot out*.  
 Dōceo, docui, doctum, d. to *teach*.  
 \*Fāveo, fāvi, fautūrus, to *favor*.  
 \*Ferveo, ferui, to *boil*. *Sometimes fervo, vi, of the third conjugation.*  
 Fleo, flēvi, flētum, r. d. to *weep*.  
 Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum, d. to *cherish*.  
 \*Fulgeo, fulsi, to *shine*. *Fulgo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.*  
 Gaudeo, gavissus sum, r. to *rejoice*. § 142, 2.  
 \*Hæreo, hæsi, hæsurus, to *stick*. *So ad-, co-, in-, ob-hæreo; but \*subhæreo, —.*  
 Indulgeo, induli, indultum, r. d. to *indulge*.  
 Jūbeo, jussi, jussum, r. d. to *order*.  
 \*Lūceo, luxi, to *shine*. *polliceo, —, -iustum.*  
 \*Lūgeo, luxi, d. to *mourn*.  
 \*Māneo, mansi, mansurus, to *remain*.  
 Misco, misculi, mistatus, m. r. d. to *mix*.  
 \*Mordeo, morsui, morsurus, d. to *bite*.  
 \*Mortuo, mortui, mortuus, r. d. to *die*.  
 \*Mulleo, mulsi, mulsum, to *beat*.  
 \*Nūceo, nūxi, nūxum, to *beget*.  
 \*Oleo, olei, olitum, to *smell*.  
 \*Pāleo, pāsi, pāsum, to *be open*.  
 \*Pūleo, pūsi, pūsum, to *stink*.  
 \*Putreo, putui, putrum, to *be putrid*.  
 \*Rūbeo, rūsi, rūsum, to *be red*.  
 \*Scāleo, scāsi, scāsum, to *gush forth*.  
 \*Sēleo, sēsi, sēsum, to *be old*.  
 \*Sileo, silei, silium, to *be silent*.  
 \*Sordeo, sorui, sorsum, to *be filthy*.  
 \*Splendeo, splendi, splensum, to *shine*.  
 \*Squāleo, squāsi, squāsum, to *be foul*.  
 \*Strideo, stridi, stridum, to *creak*.  
 \*Stūdeo, stūdi, stūsum, to *study*.  
 \*Stūpeo, stūpi, stūsum, to *be amazed*.  
 \*Tūceo, tūsi, tūsum, to *be silent*.  
 \*Torpeo, torpi, torpidum, to *be stiff*.  
 \*Tūceo, tūsi, tūsum, to *swell*.  
 \*Vāleo, vāsi, vāsum, to *be able*.  
 \*Vēgeo, vēsi, vēsum, to *arouse*.  
 \*Vieo, vici, victum, to *pluit*.  
 \*Vigeo, vixi, vixum, to *flourish*.  
 \*Vireo, vixi, vixum, to *be green*.  
 \*Uveo, uvi, uvum, to *be moist*.

Neo, nēvi, nētum, *to spin.*

\*Pāveo, pāvi, d. *to fear.*

\*Pendeo, pependi, *to hang.* \*impendeo, —, propendeo, —, propensum.

Pleo, (obsolete), compleo, -ēvi, -ētum,

*to fill.* So the other compounds.

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, r. *to dine.*

Rideo, risi, risum, m. r. d. *to laugh.*

\*Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, m. r. *to sit.*

The compounds with monosyllabic prepositions change ē into i, in the first root; as, insideo, insēdi, insessum.

\*disideo, -sēdi. So praesideo, and rarely circumasideo.

Sōleo, solitus sum and rarely solui, *to be accustomed.* § 142, 2.

\*Sorbeo, sorbui, *to suck in.* So \*exsorbeo; but \*resorbeo, —. \*absorbeo, -sorbui or -sorpsi.

Spondeo, spondedi, sponsum, *to promise.* See § 153, B. 2.

\*Strideo, stridi, *to creak.*

Subdeo, subēdi, subessum, d. *to advise.* Teneo, tenebatur, tēdi, tētum. The compounds change ē into i in the first and second roots: as, deteneo, detēdi, detentum. \*subdeo, -sēdi. So perideo.

Tergeo, tervi, tervum, *to wipe.* Tergo, of the third conjugation, is not in use.

Tondeo, tōdebi, tōdum, *to shear.* The compounds have the perfect tōdi.

Torqueo, torvi, tortum, d. *to twist.*

Torreo, torui, tortum, *to roast.*

\*Turgeo, tursi, *to swell.*

\*Urgeo or urgiō, urxi, d. *to urge.*

Video, vidi, visum, m. a. r. d. *to see.*

Voveo, vovi, vovum, d. *to vow.*

### § 169. Impersonal Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Dēcet, decuit, *it becomes.*

Libet, libuit or libitum est, *it pleases, is agreeable.*

Licet, licuit or licitum est, *it is lawful, or permitted.*

Liquet, liquit, *it is clear, evident.*

Misēret, miseruit or miseritum est, *it moves to pity; misēret me, I pity.*

Oportet, oportuit, *it behooves.*

Piget, piguit or pigitum est, d. *it troubles, grieves.*

Poenitet, poenituit, poenitum est, d. *it repents; poenitet me, I regret.*

Pūdet, puduit or puditum est, d. *it shames; pudet me, I am ashamed.*

Tædet, tædult or tædum est, *it disgusts or wearies.* peritædet, peritædum est.

NOTE. Libet is sometimes written for libet, especially in the comic writers.

### § 170. Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Fāteor, fassus, r. d. p. *to confess.* The compounds change ā into i in the first root, and into e in the third; as, confiteor, confessus, d. p. *to acknowledge.*

\*diffiteor, *to deny.* profiteor, professus, d. p. *to declare.*

Lāceor, licitus, *to bid a price.*

\*Mēdeor, d. *to cure.*

Mēreor, meritus, *to deserve.*

Misēreor, miseritus or misertus, *to pity.*

Polliceor, pollicitus, p. *to promise.*

Reor, ratus, *to think, suppose.*

Tueor, tultus, d. p. *to protect.*

Vēreor, veritus, d. p. *to fear.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

Third conjugation, when the first root ends in a vowel, the second root is regularly formed by adding the vowel *i*, the first and second roots are the same, formed by adding *t*; as, carpo, carpsi, carpitum.

Changes occur in the final consonant

at the end of the first root, form with *a* in the third; as, dico, dicisti, dictum; rego, registi, regitum; cogo, cogisti, cognitum.

NOTE. *Fluo* and *struo* form their second and third roots after the analogy of verbs whose first root ends in a palatal or *h*.

2. *B* is changed into *p* before *s* and *t*; as, *scribo, scripsi, scriptum*.

3. *D* and *t*, before *s*, are either dropped, or changed into *s*; as, *claudio, clausi; cædo, cessi; mitto, misi*. Cf. § 56, I, Rem. 1. After *m*, *p* is sometimes inserted before *s* and *t*; as, *sûmo, sumpsi, sumptum*. *R* is changed to *s* before *s* and *t* in *gêro* and *ûro*.

4. Some other consonants are dropped, or changed into *s*, in certain verbs.

Exc. 1. Many verbs whose first root ends in a consonant, do not add *s* to form the second root.

(a.) Of these, some have the second root the same as the first, but the vowel of the second root, if a monosyllable, is long; as,

|       |         |        |           |         |         |        |
|-------|---------|--------|-----------|---------|---------|--------|
| Bibo, | Excûdo, | Ico,   | Mando,    | Scâbo,  | Solvo,  | Verro, |
| Edo,  | Fôdio,  | Lambo, | Prehendo, | Scando, | Strîdo, | Verto, |
| Emo,  | Fûgio,  | Lêgo,  | Psallo,   | Sido,   | Tollo,  | Volvo; |

to which add the compounds of the obsolete *cando, fendo, and nuo*.

(b.) Some make a change in the first root. Of these, some change a vowel, some drop a consonant, some prefix a reduplication, others admit two or more of these changes; as,

|                |                |              |
|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| Ago, âgi.      | Câpio, cêpi.   | Fâcio, fêci. |
| Findo, fidi.   | Frango, frêgi. | Fundo, fûdi. |
| Jâcio, jêci.   | Linquo, liqui. | Rumpo, rūpi. |
| Scindo, scîdi. | Sisto, stîti.  | Vinco, vici. |

Those which have a reduplication are

|                     |                 |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Câdo, cêcidi.       | Cædo, cêcidi.   | Câno, cêcîni.   |
| Curro, cûcurri.     | Disco, didici.  | Fallo, fêfelli. |
| Pâgo, (obs.) pêpigi | Parco, pêperci. | Pârio, pêpêri.  |
| and pêgi.           | Pêdo, pêpêdi.   | Pello, pêpûli.  |
| Pendo, pêpendi.     | Posco, pôposci. | Pungo, pûpûgi.  |
| Tango, têtigi.      | Tendo, têtendi. | Tundo, tûtûdi.  |

Exc. 2. Some, after the analogy of the second conjugation, add *u* to the first root of the verb; as,

|                |          |              |         |        |
|----------------|----------|--------------|---------|--------|
| Alo,alui, etc. | Consûlo, | Gêmo,        | Râpio,  | Trêmo, |
| Côlo,          | Depso,   | Gêno, (obs.) | Strêpo, | Vôlo,  |
| Compesco,      | Frêmo,   | Môlo,        | Texo,   | Vômo.  |

*Mêto, messui*; and *pôno, pôui*; add *su*, with a change in the root.

Exc. 3. The following, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, add *û* to the first root:—

|           |          |          |                                                  |                   |
|-----------|----------|----------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Arcesso,  | Cûpio,   | Lâcesso, | Rûdo,                                            | Têro, dropping ê. |
| Câpresso, | Incesso, | Pûto,    | Quaro, with a change of <i>r</i> into <i>s</i> . |                   |

Exc. 4. The following add *v*, with a change in the root; those in *no* and *sco* dropping *n* and *sc*, and those having *er* before *n* changing it to *rê* or *râ*:—

|         |          |         |         |       |         |
|---------|----------|---------|---------|-------|---------|
| Cresco, | Pasco,   | Scisco, | Sperno, | Lino, | Sêro,   |
| Nosco,  | Quiesco, | Cerno,  | Sterno, | Sino, | to sou. |

Exc. 5. (a.) The third root of verbs whose first root ends in *d* or *t*, and some in *g*, add *s*, instead of *t*, to the root, either dropping the *d*, *t*, and *g*, or changing them into *s*; as, *claudio, clausum; dēfendo, dēfensum; cædo, cessum; flecto, flexum; figo, fixum*. But the compounds of *do* add *û*; as, *perdo, perdûm*.

(b.) The following, also, add *s*, with a change of the root:—

|           |        |        |         |        |
|-----------|--------|--------|---------|--------|
| Excello,  | Fallo, | Pello, | Spargo, | Verro. |
| Percello, | Mergo, | Præmo, | Vello,  |        |

Exc. 6. The following add *t*, with a change of the root; those having *n*, *nc*, *ng*, *ngu*, or *mp* at the end of the first root dropping *n* and *m* in the third:—

|        |         |        |        |         |          |        |
|--------|---------|--------|--------|---------|----------|--------|
| Cerno, | Fingo,  | Gëro,  | Sëro,  | Sperno, | Stringo, | Uro,   |
| Côlo,  | Frango, | Rumpo, | Sisto, | Sterno, | Tëro,    | Vinco; |

to which add the compounds of *linguo*, and verbs in *eco* with the second root in *v*; the latter drop *sc* before *t*; as, *nosco*, *nôvi*, *nôtum*; except *pasco*, which drops *c* only.

Exc. 7. (a.) The following have *û*:—

|                             |        |                           |                                                   |
|-----------------------------|--------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Bibo,                       | Elcio, | Môlo,                     | Pôno, with a change of <i>ôn</i> into <i>ôs</i> . |
| Gëno, (obs. form of gigno,) | Vômo,  | Sîno, dropping <i>n</i> . |                                                   |

(b.) The following, like verbs of the fourth conjugation, add *û* to the first root:—

|          |          |                                                  |                           |
|----------|----------|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Arcesso, | Cûpio,   | Pëto,                                            | Tëro, dropping <i>ë</i> . |
| Fâcesso, | Lâcesso, | Quëro, with a change of <i>r</i> into <i>s</i> . |                           |

For other irregularities occurring in this conjugation, see § 172-174.

§ 172. The following list contains most of the simple verbs, both regular and irregular, in the third conjugation, with such of their compounds as require particular notice:—

Acno, âcui, âcûtum, d. to sharpen.

Ago, âgi, actum, r. d. to drive. So circumago, cogo, and pêrago. \*ambigo, —, to doubt. So sâtâgo. The other compounds change â into *i*, in the first root; as, exigo, exêgi, ex-actum, to drive out. \*prôdigo, -êgi, to squander. See § 189, 2.

Alo, âlui, altum, and later âltum, d. to nourish.

\*Ango, anxi, to strangle.

Arguo, argui, argûtum, d. to convict.

Arcesso, -cessivi, -cessitum, r. d. to call for. Pass. inf. accessiri or arcessi.

\*Bâtuo, bâtui, d. to beat.

Bibo, bibi, bibitum, d. to drink.

\*Câdo, cêcidi, cäsûrus, to fall. The compounds change â into *i*, in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as, occido, -cidi, -cîsum, r. to set.

Cædo, cêcidi, cæsum, r. d. to cut. The compounds change æ into *i*, and drop the reduplication; as, occido, -cidi, -cîsum.

Cando, (obsolete,) synonymous with candeo of the second conjugation. Hence accendo, -cendi, -censum, d. to kindle. So incendio, succendo.

\*Câno, cêcini, d. to sing. The compounds change â into *i*; as, \*conclino,

-cînuî. So occîno, præcîno. \*accîno, —. So inclino, intercîno, succîno, reclîno.

\*Capesso, -ivi, r. d. to undertake.

Câpio, cêpi, captum, r. d. to take. So antêcâpio. The other compounds change â into *i*, in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, dêcîpio, dêcêpi, dêceptum.

Carpo, carpsi, carptum, d. to pluck. The compounds change a into *e*; as, dêcerpo, dêcerpsi, dêcerptum.

Cêdo, cessi, cessum, r. to yield.

Cello, (obsolete,) excello, -cellui, -culsum, to excel. \*antêcello, —. So præcello, rêcello. percello, -cûli, -culsum, to strike.

Cerno, crêvi, crêtum, d. to decree.

\*Cerno, —, to see.

Cingo, cînxî, cinctum, d. to gird.

\*Clango, —, to clang.

Claudo, clausi, clausum, r. d. to shut. The compounds change au into *û*; as, occlûdo, occlûsi, occlûsum, to shut up.

\*†Claudo, —, to limp.

\*†Clêpo, clêpsi, rarely clêpi, to steal.

Côlo, côlui, cultum, d. to till. †occlûlo, -cûlui, -cultum, d. to hide.

Cômo, compsi, comptum, to deck.

\*Compesco, -pescui, to restrain.



**Consūlo**, -sūlui, -sultum, m. r. d. to *consult*.

**Cōquo**, coxi, coctum, m. d. to *cook*.

**Crēdo**, crēdīdi, crēditum, r. d. to *believe*.

\***Cresco**, crēvi, to *grow*. concresco, -crēvi, -crētum.

**Cūbo** is of the first conjugation. Cf. § 165. \***accumbo**, -cūbui, to *lie down*.

So the other compounds which insert m.

\***Cūdo**, —, to *forge*. excūdo, -cūdi, -cūsum, d. to *stamp*.

**Cūpio**, cūpiui, cūpitum, d. to *desire*. *Subj. imperf.* cūpiret. *Lucr.* 1, 72.

\***Curro**, cūcurri, cursūrus, to *run*. concurreo, succurro, and transcurro, drop the reduplication; the other compounds sometimes drop, and sometimes retain it; as, decurro, decurri, and decūcurri, decursum. \***antecurro**, —. So circumcurro.

\***Dēgo**, dēgi, d. to *live*.

**Dēmo**, dempsi, demptum, r. d. to *take away*.

†**Depso**, depsi, depstum, to *knead*.

**Dico**, dixi, dictum, u. r. d. to *say*.

\***Disco**, didici, discitūrus, d. to *learn*.

\***Dispesco**, —, to *separate*.

**Divido**, divisi, divisum, r. d. to *divide*.

**Do** is of the first conjugation. abdo, -didi, -ditum, d. to *hide*. So condo, indo. addo, -didi, -ditum, r. d. to *add*. So dēdo, ēdo, prōdo, reddo, trādo, vendo. †**dido**, -didi, -ditum, to *distribute*. So abdo, subdo. perdo, -didi, -ditum, m. r. d. abscondo, -di or -didi, -ditum or -sum.

**Dūco**, duxi, ductum, m. r. d. to *lead*.

**Edo**, ēdi, ēsum, m. u. r. d. to *eat*.

**Exuo**, exui, exūtum, d. to *strip off*.

**Emo**, ēmi, emptum, r. d. to *buy*. So *coēmo*. The other compounds change ē to i; as, exīmo, -ēmi, -emptum.

**Fācisco**, -cessi, -cessitum, to *execute*.

**Fācio**, fēci, factum, m. u. r. d. to *do*.

Compounded with a preposition, it changes ā into i in the first root, and into e in the third, makes -fice in the imperative, and has a regular passive. Compounded with other words, it retains ā when of this conjugation, makes fice in the imperative, and has the passive, fio, factum. See § 180.

**Fallo**, felli, falsum, d. to *deceive*.

\***refello**, -felli, d. to *refute*.

**Fendo**, (obsolete.) dēfendo, -fendi, -fensum, m. u. r. d. to *defend*. offendo, -fendi, -fensum, d. to *offend*.

**Fēro**, tūli, lātum, r. d. to *bear*. See § 179. A perfect tūli is rare. Its compounds are affēro, attūli, allātum;

aufero, abstūli, ablātum; diffēro, distūli, dilātum; confēro, contūli, collātum; infēro, intūli, illātum; offero, obtūli, oblātum; effēro, extūli, elātum; suffēro, sustūli, sublātum; and circum-, per-, trans-, dē-, prō-, antē-, praefero, -tūli, -lātum.

\***Fervo**, vi, to *boil*. Cf. ferveo, 2d conj.

**Fido**, —, fisis, to *trust*. See § 162, 18. confido, confisus sum or confidi, to *rely on*. diffido, diffisus sum, to *distrust*.

**Figo**, fixi, fixum, r. rarely fictim, to *fix*. Findo, fidi, fissum, d. to *cleave*.

**Fingo**, finxi, fictim, d. to *feign*.

**Flecto**, flexi, flexum, r. d. to *bend*.

\***Fligo**, flixi, to *dash*. So confligo. affligo, -fixi, -fictim, to *afflict*. So infligo. prōfligo is of the first conjugation.

**Fluo**, fluxi, fluxum, (fluctum, obs.) r. to *flow*.

**Fodio**, fōdi, fossum, d. to *dig*. Old pres. inf. pass. fōdiri: so also effōdiri.

**Frango**, frēgi, fractum, r. d. to *break*. The compounds change a into i, in the first root; as, infringo, infrēgi, infractum, to *break in upon*.

\***Frēmo**, frēmui, d. to *roar, howl*.

**Frendo**, —, frēsūm or frēsūm, to *gnash*.

**Frigo**, frixi, frictum, rarely frixum, to *roast*.

\***Fūgio**, fūgi, fūgitūrus, d. to *flee*.

\***Fulgo**, —, to *flash*.

**Fundo**, fūdī, fūsūm, r. d. to *pour*.

\***Fūro**, —, to *rage*.

\***Gēmo**, gēmui, d. to *groan*.

**Gēro**, gessi, gestum, r. d. to *bear*.

**Gigno**, (obsolete gēno,) gēnui, gēntum, r. d. to *beget*.

\***Glisco**, —, to *grow*.

\***Glūbo**, —, to *peel*. deglūbo, —, -gluptum.

**Gruo**, (obsolete.) \***congruo**, -grui, to *agree*. So ingruo.

**Ico**, ici, ictum, r. to *strike*.

**Imbuo**, imbui, imbūtum, d. to *imbue*.

\***Incesso**, -cessivi or -cessi, to *attack*.

†**Induo**, indui, indūtum, to *put on*.

**Jācio**, jēci, jactum, d. to *cast*. The

compounds change ā into e in the first root, and into e in the third.

**Jungo**, junxi, junctum, to *join*.

**Lūdo**, -lūxi, -lūxi, to *play*.

**olito**, —, to *oil*.

**re**, —, to *re*.

**So**, —, to *so*.

**um**, —, to *um*.



- first and second roots, and into e in the third; as, dirpio, -ripui, -reptum, m. r. So eripio and præripio.*
- Rēgo, rexi, rectum, r. d. to rule.** *The compounds change ē into i, in the first root; as, dirigo, direxi, directum.*
- \*pergo, (for perrigo), perrexī, r. to go forward. surgo (for surrigo), surrexi, surrectum, r. d. to rise. So porrigo (for prorigo), to stretch out.**
- \*Rēpo, repsi, to creep.**
- Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, r. to gnaw. ab-, ar-, e-, ob-, præ-rōdo, want the perfect.**
- \*Rūdo, rudīvi, to bray.**
- Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, r. d. to break.**
- Ruo, rui, rūtum, ruitūrus, to fall. diruo, -rui, -rūtum, d. So obruo. \*coruo, -rui. So irruo.**
- \*Sāpio, sapivi, to be wise. The compounds change ā into i; as, \*resipio, -alpīvi or -alpui. \*desipio, —, to be silly.**
- \*†Scābo, scābi, to scratch.**
- Scalpo, scalpsi, scalpum, to engrave.**
- Sālo or sallo, — salsum, to salt.**
- \*Scando, —, d. to climb. The compounds change a into e; as, ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, r. d. descendo, descendi, (anciently descendidi,) descensum.**
- Scindo, scidi, (anciently sciscidi), scissum, d. to cut.**
- Seisco, scivi, scitum, d. to ordain.**
- Scribo, scripsi, scriptum, r. d. to write.**
- Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, d. to carve.**
- Sēro, sēvi, sātum, r. d. to sow. consēro, -sēvi, -situm. So insēro, r., and obsēro.**
- Sēro, —, sertum, to entwine. Its compounds have -sēruī; as, assēro, -sēruī, -sertum, r. d.**
- \*Sēro, serpsi, to creep.**
- \*Sido, sidi, to settle. Its compounds have generally sēdi, sessum, from sedeo.**
- \*Sino, sivi, sitūrus, to permit. desino, desivi, desitum, r. § 284, R. 3, Exc. 2.**
- Sisto, stiti, stātum, to stop. \*absisto, -stiti. So the other compounds; but circumstisto wants the perfect.**
- Solvo, solvi, solūtum, r. d. to loose.**
- Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, r. d. to spread. The compounds change a into e; as, respergo, -spersi, -spersum; but with circum and in, a sometimes remains.**
- Spēcio, (obsolete.) The compounds change ē into i, in the first root; as, aspicio, aspexi, aspectum, d. to look at. inspicio, inspexi, inspectum. r. d.**
- Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, d. to despise.**
- \*†Spuo, spui, to spit. \*respuo, respui, d.**
- Stātuo, stātui, stātūtum, d. to place. The compounds change ā into i; as, instituo, institui, institūtum, to institute.**
- Sterno, strāvi, strātum, d. to strew.**
- \*Sternuo, sternui, to sneeze.**
- \*Sterto, —, to snore. \*†desterto, destertui.**
- \*Stinguo, —, to extinguish. distinguo, distinxī, distinctum. So exstinguo, r. d.**
- \*Strēpo, strēpui, to make a noise.**
- \*Strido, stridi, to creak.**
- Stringo, strinxī, strictum, r. d. to bind or tie tight.**
- Struo, struxī, structum, d. to build.**
- Sūgo, suxi, suctum, r. d. to suck.**
- Sūmo, sumpsī, sumptum, r. d. to take.**
- Suo, —, sūtum, d. to sew. So consuo, dissuo. insuo, -sui, sūtum. \*asuo, —.**
- Tāgo, (very rare), to touch. Hence**
- Tango, tēgi, tactum, r. d. to touch. The compounds change a into i in the first root, and drop the \*reduplication; as, contingo, contigi, contactum, r.**
- Tēgo, texi, tectum, r. d. to cover.**
- \*Temno, —, d. to despise. contemno, -tempsi, -temptum, d.**
- Tendo, tētendi, tentum or tensum, to stretch. The compounds drop the reduplication; as, extendo, -tendi, -tentum or -tensum. So in-, oe-, and re-endo. detendo has tensum. The other compounds have tentum.**
- \*†Tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe. Tergo, of the second conjugation has the same second and third roots.**
- Tēro, trivi, tritum, d. to rub.**
- Texo, texui, textum, d. to weave.**
- Tingo or tinguo, tinxī, tinctum, r. d. to moisten, tinge.**
- \*Tollo, anciently tētūli, rarely tolli, d. to raise. The perfect and supine sustūli and sublātum from suffēro take the place of the perfect and supine of tollō and sustollō. \*sustollō, —, r. to raise up, to take away. \*attollō, —. So extollō.**
- Trāho, traxi, tractum, r. d. to draw.**
- \*Trēmo, trēmui, d. to tremble.**
- Tribuo, tribui, tributum, r. d. to ascribe.**
- Trūdo, trūsi, trūsium, to thrust.**
- Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum or tūsium, to beat. The compounds drop the reduplication, and have tūsium. Yet cōntunsum, detunsum, obtunsum, and retunsum, are also found.**
- Ungo, (or -guo), unxi, unctum, d. to anoint.**

Uro, ussi, ustum, d. *to burn.*

\*Vādo, —, *to go.* So supervādo. *The other compounds have vāsi; as, \*evādo, evāsi, r. So pervādo; also invādo, r. d.*

Vēho, vexti, vectum, r. *to carry.*

Vello, velli or vulsi, vulsum, d. *to pluck.* So avello, d., divello, evello, d., revello, revelli, revulsum. *The other compounds have velli only, except intervello, which has vulsi.*

\*Vergo, versi, *to incline.*

Verro, —, versum, d. *to brush.*

Verto, verti, versum, r. d. *to turn.* See § 174, Note.

Vinco, vici, victum, r. d. *to conquer.*

\*Viso, —, d. *to visit.*

\*Vivo, vixi, victurus, d. *to live.*

\*Vōlo, vōlui, velle (*for vōlere*), *to be willing.* See § 178.

Volvo, volvi, vōlūtum, d. *to roll.*

Vōmo, vōmui, vōmītum, r. d. *to vomit.*

REMARK. Those verbs in *to* (and deponents in *ior*), of the third conjugation, which are conjugated like *cipio* (page 115) are, *cāpio, cāpio, faciō, fōcio, fūgio, fūgio, pārio, quārio, rāpio, sūpio, compounds of lācio and spēcio, and grādior, mōdior, pātor, and mōdior*: but compare *mōdior* in § 174, and *ōrior*, and *pōrior* in § 177.

### Inceptive Verbs.

§ 173. Inceptive verbs in general either want the third root, or adopt that of their primitives: (see § 187, II, 2). Of those derived from nouns and adjectives, some want the second root, and some form it by adding *u* to the root of the primitive.

In the following list, those verbs to which *s* is added, have a simple verb in use from which they are formed:—

\*Acesco, ācui, s. *to grow sour.*

\*Agressco, —, *to grow sick.*

\*Albesco, —, s. *to grow white.*

\*Alesco, —, s. *to grow.* coalesco, -alui, -altum, *to grow together.*

\*Ardesco, arsi, s. *to take fire.*

\*Aresco, —, s. *to grow dry.* \*exaresco, -arui. *So inaresco, peraresco.*

\*Augesco, auxi, s. *to increase.*

\*Cālesco, cālui, s. *to grow warm.*

\*Calvesco, —, s. *to become bald.*

\*Candesco, candui, s. *to grow white.*

\*Cānesco, cānui, s. *to become hoary.*

\*Clāresco, clārui, s. *to become bright.*

\*Condormisco, -dormivi, s. *to go to sleep.*

\*Conficesco, -ficiui, *to become silent.*

\*Crebresco, crebui and crebrui, *to increase.*

\*Crūdesco, crūdui, *to become violent.*

\*Ditesco, —, *to grow rich.*

\*Dulcesco, —, *to grow sweet.*

\*Dūresco, dūrui, *to grow hard.*

\*Evīlesco, evīui, *to become worthless.*

\*Extimesco, -timui, *to fear greatly.*

\*Fātesco, —, *to gape.*

\*Flaccesco, flaccui, s. *to wilt.*

\*Fervesco, fervui, s. *to grow hot.*

\*Flōresco, flōrui, s. *to begin to flourish.*

\*Frācesco, frācui, *to grow rancid.*

\*Frigesco, —, s. *to grow cold.* \*perfrigesco, -frixi. *So refrigesco.*

\*Frondesco, —, s. *to put forth leaves.*

\*Frūtītesco, —, *to put forth shoots.*

\*Gēlasco, —, s. *to freeze.* So \*congēlasco, —, s. *to congeal.*

\*Gēmisco, —, s. *to begin to sigh.*

\*Gemmascō, —, *to begin to bud.*

\*Gēnērasco, —, s. *to be produced.*

\*Grandesco, —, *to grow large.*

\*Grāvesco, —, *to grow heavy.*

\*Hāresco, —, s. *to adhere.*

\*Hēbesco, —, s. *to grow dull.*

\*Horresco, horruī, s. *to grow rough.*

\*Hūmesco, —, s. *to grow moist.*

\*Ignesco, —, *to become inflamed.*

\*Indōlesco, -dōlui, d. *to be grieved.*

\*Insōlesco, —, *to become haughty.*

\*Intēgrasco, —, *to be renewed.*

\*Jūvēnesco, —, *to grow young.*

\*Languesco, languī, s. *to grow languid.*

\*Lāpīdesco, —, *to become stone.*

\*Lātesco, —, *to grow broad.*

\*Lātesco, *to be concealed.* s. \*delltesco, -litui; \*oblitesco, -litui.

\*Lentesco, —, *to become soft.*

\*Līquesco, —, s. *to become liquid.*

\*dēlīquesco, -līcui.

\*Lūcesco, —, s. *to grow light, to dawn.*

\*Lūtesco, —, s. *to become muddy.*

\*Mācesco, —, s. } *to grow lean.*

\*Macresco, —

\*remacresco, -macrui,

\*Mādesco, mādui, s. *to grow moist.*

- †commēreo, to *fully deserve*. †dēmēreo, d. to *earn*. tēmēreo, to *serve out one's time*. \*†permēreo, —, to *go through service*. promēreo, to *deserve*.
- Mōneo, r. d. to *advise*. admōneo, m. r. d. to *re-mind*. commōneo, to *impress upon*. prēmōneo, to *forewarn*.
- \*Mūceo, —, to *be mouldy*. \*Nigreo, —, to *be black*. \*Niteo, to *shine*. Nōceo, m. r. to *hurt*. \*Oleo, to *smell*. \*Palleo, to *be pale*.
- \*Pāreo, m. r. d. to *obey*. \*Pāteo, to *be open*. Plāceo, to *please*. \*Polleo, —, to *be able*. \*Pūteo, to *stink*. \*Putreo, to *be putrid*. \*Renideo, —, to *glitter*. \*Rigeo, to *be stiff*. \*Rūbeo, to *be red*. \*Scāteo, —, to *gush forth*. \*Sēneo, —, to *be old*. \*Sileo, d. to *be silent*. \*Sordeo, —, to *be filthy*. \*Splendeo, —, to *shine*. \*Squāleo, —, to *be foul*. \*Strideo, —, to *creak*. \*Stūdeo, d. to *study*. \*Stūpeo, to *be amazed*.
- \*Sueo, —, to *be wont*. Tāceo, r. d. to *be silent*. \*Tēpeo, to *be warm*. Terreo, d. to *terrify*. So deterreo, to *deter*. †absterreo, to *deter*. †conterreo, †exterreo, †perterreo, to *frighten*. \*Timeo, d. to *fear*. \*Torpeo, —, to *be stiff*. \*Tūmeo, to *swell*. \*Vāleo, r. to *be able*. \*Vēgeo, —, to *arouse*. \*Vieo, —, to *plait*. Pa. viētus, *shriveled*. \*Vigeo, to *flourish*. \*Vireo, to *be green*. \*Uveo, —, to *be moist*.

§ 168. The following verbs of the second conjugation are irregular in their second or third roots or in both.

NOTE 1. As the proper form of verbs of the first conjugation is, o, *āvi*, *ātum*, of the fourth *io*, *ivi*, *itum*, so that of the second would be *eo*, *ēvi*, *ētum*. Very few of the latter conjugation, however, retain this form, but most of them, as noticed in § 165, Rem. 1, drop in the second root the connecting vowel, *ē*, and those in *veo* drop *vē*; as, *cāveo*, (*cāvēvi*) *cāvi*, (*cāvētum* or *cāvltum*) *cautum*. Others, imitating the form of those verbs of the third conjugation whose general root ends in a consonant, add *s* to form the second and third roots. Cf. § 165, Rem. 1, and § 171.

NOTE 2. Four verbs of the second conjugation take a reduplication in the parts formed from the second root, viz. *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo*. See § 163, Rem.

- Abdōleo, -ēvi, -ltum, r. d. to *efface*.  
 \*Algeo, alsī, to *be cold*.  
 Ardeo, arsi, arsum, r. to *burn*.  
 Audeo, ausus sum, (rarely ausi, whence ausim, § 183, R. 1,) r. d. to *dare*.  
 Augeo, auxi, auctum, r. d. to *increase*.  
 Cāveo, cāvi, cautum, m. d. to *beware*.  
 Censeo, censui, censum, d. to *think*.  
 recenseo, -ui, -um or -ltum. \*per-censeo, -ui. \*succenseo, -ui, d.  
 Cieo, civi, citum, to *excite*. There is a cognate form, cio, of the fourth conjugation, both of the simple verb and of its compounds. The penult of the participles excitus and cecitus is common, and that of accitus is always long.
- \*Conniveo, -nivi, to *wink at*.  
 Dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, d. to *blot out*.  
 Dōceo, docui, doctum, d. to *teach*.  
 \*Fāveo, fāvi, fantūrus, to *favor*.  
 \*Ferveo, ferui, to *boil*. Sometimes feruo, vi, of the third conjugation.  
 Fleo, flēvi, flētum, r. d. to *weep*.  
 Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum, d. to *cherish*.
- \*Fulgeo, fulsi, to *shine*. Fulgo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.  
 Gaudeo, gavisus sum, r. to *rejoice*. § 142, 2.  
 \*Hāreo, hāsi, hāsūrus, to *stick*. So ad-, co-, in-, ob-hāreo; but \*subhāreo, —.  
 Indulgeo, induli, indultum, r. d. to *indulge*.  
 Jūbeo, jussi, jussum, r. d. to *order*.  
 \*Lūceo, luxi, to *shine*. pollūceo, -luxi, -ltum.  
 \*Lūgeo, luxi, d. to *mourn*.  
 \*Māneo, mansi, mansum, m. r. d. to *remain*.  
 Misceo, miscui, mistum or mixtum, mistūrus, d. to *mix*.  
 Mordeo, momordi, morsum, d. to *bite*.  
 remordeo, -di, -morsum, r.  
 Mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, r. d. to *move*.  
 Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, d. to *soothe*.  
 permulceo, permulsi, permulsum and permulctum, to *rub gently*.  
 \*Mulgeo, mulsi or mulxi, to *milk*.  
 emulgeo, —, emulsum, to *milk out*.

Neo, nēvi, nētum, *to spin.*

\*Pāveo, pāvi, d. *to fear.*

\*Pendeo, pependi, *to hang.* \*impendeo, —, propendo, —, propensum. Pleo, (obolete). compleo, —ēvi, —ētum, *to fill.* So the other compounds.

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, r. *to dine.*

Rideo, risi, risum, m. r. d. *to laugh.*

\*Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, m. r. *to sit.*

The compounds with monosyllabic prepositions change ē into i, in the first root; as, insideo, insēdi, insessum.

\*disideo, —sēdi. So præsideo, and rarely circumsideo.

Soleo, solitus sum and rarely solui, *to be accustomed.* § 142, 2.

\*Sorbeo, sorbui, *to suck in.* So \*exsorbeo: but \*resorbeo, —. \*absorbeo, —sorbui or —sorpsi.

Spondeo, sponondi, sponsum, *to promise.* See § 163, Rem.

\*Strideo, Idi, *to whiz.*

Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, r. d. *to advise.*

Tēneo, tēnuī, tentum, r. d. *to hold.* The compounds change ē into i in the first and second roots; as, detineo, detinui, detentum. \*attineo, —tinui. So pertineo.

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, *to wipe.* Tergo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.

Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, *to shear.* The compounds have the perfect tondi.

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, d. *to twist.*

Torreo, torrui, tostum, *to roast.*

\*Turgeo, tursi, *to swell.*

\*Urgeo or urgueo, ursi, d. *to urge.*

Video, vidi, visum, m. u. r. d. *to see.*

Vōveo, vōvi, vōtum, d. *to vow.*

### § 169. Impersonal Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Dēcet, decuit, *it becomes.*

Lībet, libuit or libitum est, *it pleases, is agreeable.*

Līcet, licuit or licitum est, *it is lawful, or permitted.*

Līquet, liquit, *it is clear, evident.*

Misēret, miseruit or miseritum est, *it moves to pity; misēret me, I pity.*

Oportet, oportuit, *it behooves.*

Pīget, piguit or pigitum est, d. *it troubles, grieves.*

Pōnitet, poenituit, poenitūrus, d. *it repents; poenitet me, I regret.*

Pūdet, puduit or puditum est, d.; *it shames; pudet me, I am ashamed.*

Tādet, tæduit or tæsum est, *it disgusts or wearies.* pertædet, pertæsum est.

NOTE. Lībet is sometimes written for libet, especially in the comic writers.

### § 170. Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Fāteor, fassus, r. d. p. *to confess.* The compounds change ē into i in the first root, and into e in the third; as, confiteor, confessus, d. p. *to acknowledge.* \*fdiffiteor, *to deny.* profiteor, professus, d. p. *to declare.*

Līceor, licitus, *to bid a price.*

\*Mēdeor, d. *to cure.*

Mēreor, meritus, *to deserve.*

Misēreor, miseritus or misertus, *to pity.*

Polliceor, pollicitus, p. *to promise.*

Reor, rātus, *to think, suppose.*

Tueor, tultus, d. p. *to protect.*

Vēreor, veritus, d. p. *to fear.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 171. In the third conjugation, when the first root ends with a consonant, the second root is regularly formed by adding *s*; when it ends with a vowel, the first and second roots are the same: the third root is formed by adding *t*; as, carpo, carpsi, carptum; arguo, argui, argūtum.

In annexing *s* and *t*, certain changes occur in the final consonant of the root:—

1. The palatals *c*, *g*, *qu*, and also *h*, at the end of the first root, form with *s* the double letter *x* in the second root; in the third root, *c* remains, and the others are changed into *c* before *t*; as, dico, (dicī, i. e.), dixi, dictum; rego, (regī, i. e.), rexi, rectum; vōho, vœxi, vectum; cōquo, coxi, coctum.

NOTE. *Fluo* and *struo* form their second and third roots after the analogy of verbs whose first root ends in a palatal or *h*.

2. *B* is changed into *p* before *s* and *t*; as, *scribo, scripsi, scriptum*.

3. *D* and *t*, before *s*, are either dropped, or changed into *s*; as, *claudio, clausi; cēdo, cessi; mitto, misi*. Cf. § 56, I, Rem. 1. After *m*, *p* is sometimes inserted before *s* and *t*; as, *sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum*. *R* is changed to *s* before *s* and *t* in *gēro* and *ūro*.

4. Some other consonants are dropped, or changed into *s*, in certain verbs.

Exc. 1. Many verbs whose first root ends in a consonant, do not add *s* to form the second root.

(a.) Of these, some have the second root the same as the first, but the vowel of the second root, if a monosyllable, is long; as,

|       |         |        |           |         |         |        |
|-------|---------|--------|-----------|---------|---------|--------|
| Bībo, | Excūdo, | Ico,   | Mando,    | Scābo,  | Solvo,  | Verro, |
| Edo,  | Fōdio,  | Lambo, | Prehendo, | Scando, | Strīdo, | Verto, |
| Emo,  | Fūgio,  | Lēgo,  | Psallo,   | Sido,   | Tollo,  | Volvo; |

to which add the compounds of the obsolete *cando, fendo, and nuo*.

(b.) Some make a change in the first root. Of these, some change a vowel, some drop a consonant, some prefix a reduplication, others admit two or more of these changes; as,

|                |                |              |
|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| Ago, ēgi.      | Cāpio, cēpi.   | Fācio, fēci. |
| Findo, fidi.   | Frango, frēgi. | Fundo, fūdi. |
| Jācio, jēci.   | Linquo, liqui. | Rumpo, rūpi. |
| Scindo, scīdi. | Sisto, stīti.  | Vinco, vici. |

Those which have a reduplication are

|                     |                 |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Cādo, cēcidi.       | Cædo, cēcidi.   | Cāno, cēcīni.   |
| Curro, cūcurri.     | Disco, didici.  | Fallo, fēfelli. |
| Pāgo, (obs.) pēpigi | Parco, pēperci. | Pārio, pēpēri.  |
| and pēgi.           | Pēdo, pēpēdi.   | Pello, pēpūli.  |
| Pendo, pēpendi.     | Posco, pōposci. | Pungo, pūpūgi.  |
| Tango, tētigi.      | Tendo, tētēdi.  | Tundo, tūtūdi.  |

Exc. 2. Some, after the analogy of the second conjugation, add *u* to the first root of the verb; as,

|                 |           |              |         |        |
|-----------------|-----------|--------------|---------|--------|
| Alo, alui, etc. | Constūlo, | Gēmo,        | Rāpio,  | Trēmo, |
| Cōlo,           | Depsco,   | Gēno, (obs.) | Strēpo, | Vōlo,  |
| Compesco,       | Frēmo,    | Mōlo,        | Texo,   | Vōmo.  |

*Mēto, messui*; and *pōno, pōnui*; add *su*, with a change in the root.

Exc. 3. The following, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, add *u* to the first root:—

|           |          |          |        |                                           |
|-----------|----------|----------|--------|-------------------------------------------|
| Arcesso,  | Cūpio,   | Lācesso, | Rūdo,  | Tēro, dropping <i>ē</i> .                 |
| Cāpresso, | Incesso, | Pēto,    | Quaro, | with a change of <i>r</i> into <i>s</i> . |

Exc. 4. The following add *v*, with a change in the root; those in *no* and *seo* dropping *n* and *sc*, and those having *er* before *n* changing it to *rē* or *rā*:—

|         |          |         |         |       |                 |
|---------|----------|---------|---------|-------|-----------------|
| Cresco, | Pasco,   | Scisco, | Sperno, | Lino, | Sēro,           |
| Nosco,  | Quiesco, | Cerno,  | Sterno, | Sino, | to <i>sou</i> . |

Exc. 5. (a.) The third root of verbs whose first root ends in *d* or *t*, and some in *g*, add *s*, instead of *t*, to the root, either dropping the *d*, *t*, and *g*, or changing them into *s*; as, *claudio, clausum; dēfendo, dēfensum; cēdo, cessum; flecto, flexum; figo, fixum*. But the compounds of *do* add *ū*; as, *perdo, perdūtum*.

(b.) The following, also, add *s*, with a change of the root:—

|           |        |        |         |        |
|-----------|--------|--------|---------|--------|
| Excello,  | Fallo, | Pello, | Spargo, | Verro. |
| Percello, | Mergo, | Præmo, | Vello,  |        |

Exc. 6. The following add *t*, with a change of the root; those having *n*, *nc*, *ng*, *ngu*, or *mp* at the end of the first root dropping *n* and *m* in the third:—

|        |         |        |        |         |          |        |
|--------|---------|--------|--------|---------|----------|--------|
| Cerno, | Fingo,  | Gëro,  | Sëro,  | Sperno, | Stringo, | Uro,   |
| Côlo,  | Frango, | Rumpo, | Sisto, | Sterno, | Tëro,    | Vinco; |

to which add the compounds of *linguo*, and verbs in *aco* with the second root in *v*; the latter drop *sc* before *t*; as, *nosco*, *nôvi*, *nôtum*; except *pasco*, which drops *c* only.

Exc. 7. (a.) The following have *û*:—

|                             |         |                           |                                                   |
|-----------------------------|---------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Bibo,                       | Elicio, | Môlo,                     | Pôno, with a change of <i>ôn</i> into <i>ôs</i> . |
| Gëno, (obs. form of gigno,) | Vômo,   | Sîno, dropping <i>n</i> . |                                                   |

(b.) The following, like verbs of the fourth conjugation, add *û* to the first root:—

|          |          |                                                  |                           |
|----------|----------|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Arcesso, | Cûpio,   | Pëto,                                            | Tëro, dropping <i>ë</i> . |
| Fâcesso, | Lâcesso, | Quëro, with a change of <i>r</i> into <i>s</i> . |                           |

For other irregularities occurring in this conjugation, see § 172-174.

§ 172. The following list contains most of the simple verbs, both regular and irregular, in the third conjugation, with such of their compounds as require particular notice:—

*Acuo*, *âcui*, *âcutum*, d. *to sharpen*.

*Ago*, *ëgi*, *actum*, r. d. *to drive*. So *circumago*, *côgo*, and *përâgo*. \**ambigo*, —, *to doubt*. So *sâtâgo*. The other compounds change *â* into *i*, in the first root; as, *exigo*, *exëgi*, *exactum*, *to drive out*. \**prôdigo*, *-ëgi*, *to squander*. See § 189, 2.

*Alo*, *âlui*, *altum*, and later *âltum*, d. *to nourish*.

\**Ango*, *anxi*, *to strangle*.

*Arguo*, *argui*, *argûtum*, d. *to convict*.

*Arcesso*, *-cessivi*, *-cessitum*, r. d. *to call for*. Pass. inf. *arcessiri* or *arcessi*.

\**Bâtuo*, *bâtui*, d. *to beat*.

*Bibo*, *bibi*, *bibitum*, d. *to drink*.

\**Câdo*, *cêcidi*, *câsurus*, *to fall*. The compounds change *â* into *i*, in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as, *occido*, *-cidi*, *-câsum*, r. *to set*.

*Cædo*, *cêcidi*, *cæsum*, r. d. *to cut*. The compounds change *æ* into *i*, and drop the reduplication; as, *occido*, *-cidi*, *-cîsum*.

*Cando*, (obsolete,) synonymous with *candeo* of the second conjugation. Hence *accendo*, *-cendi*, *-censum*, d. *to kindle*. So *incendo*, *succendo*.

\**Câno*, *cêcîni*, d. *to sing*. The compounds change *â* into *i*; as, \**conciño*,

*-cînuî*. So *oceîno*, *præcîno*. \**accîno*, —, *to incline*, *intercîno*, *succîno*, *recîno*.

\**Capesso*, *-jvi*, r. d. *to undertake*.

*Câpio*, *cêpi*, *captum*, r. d. *to take*. So *antêcâpio*. The other compounds change *â* into *i*, in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, *dêcîpio*, *dêcêpi*, *dêceptum*.

*Carpo*, *carpsi*, *carptum*, d. *to pluck*. The compounds change *a* into *e*; as, *dêcerpo*, *dêcerpsi*, *dêcerptum*.

*Cêdo*, *cessi*, *cessum*, r. *to yield*. *Cello*, (obsolete,) *excello*, *-cellui*, *-culsum*, *to excel*. \**antêcello*, —, *So præcello*, *recello*. *percello*, *-cûli*, *-culsum*, *to strike*.

*Cerno*, *crêvi*, *crêtum*, d. *to decree*. \**Cerno*, —, *to see*.

*Cingo*, *cînxî*, *cinctum*, d. *to gird*.

\**Clango*, —, *to clang*.

*Claudo*, *clausi*, *clausum*, r. d. *to shut*. The compounds change *au* into *û*; as,

*occlûdo*, *occlûsi*, *occlûsum*, *to shut up*.

\*†*Clauo*, —, *to limp*.

\*†*Clêpo*, *clêpsi*, rarely *clêpi*, *to steal*. *Côlo*, *côlui*, *cultum*, d. *to till*. †*occlûlo*,

*-cûlui*, *-cultum*, d. *to hide*.

*Cûmo*, *compsi*, *comptum*, *to deck*.

\**Compesco*, *-pescui*, *to restrain*.



Constūlo, -sūlui, -sultum, m. r. d. to *consult*.

Cōquo, coxi, coctum, m. d. to *cook*.

Crēdo, crēdidi, crēditum, r. d. to *believe*.

\*Cresco, crēvi, to *grow*. concreresco, -crēvi, -crētum.

Cūbo is of the first conjugation. Cf.

§ 165. \*accumbo, -cūbui, to *lie down*. So the other compounds which insert m.

\*Cūdo, —, to *forge*. excūdo, -cūdi, -cūsum, d. to *stamp*.

Cūpio, cūplvi, cūptum, d. to *desire*. *Subj. imperf.* cūpiret. *Lucr.* 1, 72.

\*Curro, cūcurri, cursurus, to *run*. concurro, succurro, and transcurro, drop the reduplication; the other compounds sometimes drop, and sometimes retain it; as, decurro, decurri, and decūcurri, decursum. \*antecurro, —. So circumcurro.

\*Dēgo, dāgi, d. to *live*.

Dēmo, dempsi, demptum, r. d. to *take away*.

†Depso, depsum, depstum, to *knead*.

Dico, dixi, dictum, u. r. d. to *say*.

\*Disco, didici, discitūrus, d. to *learn*.

\*Dispesco, —, to *separate*.

Divido, divisi, divisum, r. d. to *divide*.

Do is of the first conjugation. abdo, -didi, -ditum, d. to *hide*. So condo, indo, addo, -didi, -ditum, r. d. to *add*. So dēdo, ēdo, prōdo, reddo, trādo, vendo. †didō, -didi, -ditum, to *distribute*. So abdo, subdo, perdo, -didi, -ditum, m. r. d. abscondo, -di or -didi, -ditum or -sum.

Dūco, duxi, ductum, m. r. d. to *lead*.

Edo, ēdi, ēsum, m. u. r. d. to *eat*.

Exuo, exui, exūtum, d. to *strip off*.

Emo, ēmi, emptum, r. d. to *buy*. So cōemo. The other compounds change ē to i; as, exīmo, -ēmi, -emptum.

Fācesso, -cessi, -cessitum, to *execute*.

Fācio, fēci, factum, m. u. r. d. to *do*. Compounded with a preposition, it changes ā into i in the first root, and into e in the third, makes -fice in the imperative, and has a regular passive. Compounded with other words, it retains ā when of this conjugation, makes fāc in the imperative, and has the passive, fīo, factum. See § 180.

Fallo, fēfelli, falsum, d. to *deceive*.

\*rēfello, -felli, d. to *refute*.

Fendo, (obsolete.) dēfendo, -fendi, -fensum, m. u. r. d. to *defend*. offendo, -fendi, -fensum, d. to *offend*.

Fēro, tūli, lātum, r. d. to *bear*. See § 179. A perfect tūlū is rare. Its compounds are affēro, attūli, allātum;

aufēro, abstūli, ablātum; diffēro, distūli, dilātum; confēro, contūli, collātum; infēro, intūli, illātum; offēro, obtūli, oblātum; effēro, extūli, elātum; suffēro, sustūli, sublātum; and circum-, per-, trans-, dē-, prō-, antē-, praefero, -tūli, -lātum.

\*Fervo, vi, to *boil*. Cf. ferveo, 2d conj.

Fido, —, fīsus, to *trust*. See § 162, 18. confido, confisus sum or confīdi, to *rely on*. diffīdo, diffisus sum, to *distrust*.

Figo, fīxi, fīxum, r. rarely fīctum, to *fix*.

Findo, fīdi, fīsum, d. to *cleave*.

Fingo, fīxi, fīctum, d. to *fiegn*.

Flecto, flexi, flexum, r. d. to *bend*.

\*Fligo, flīxi, to *dash*. So confligo, affligo, -flīxi, -fīctum, to *afflict*. So infligo. prōfligo is of the first conjugation.

Fluo, flūxi, fluxum, (fluctum, obs.) r. to *flow*.

Fōdio, fōdi, fossum, d. to *dig*. Old pres. inf. pass. fūdri: so also efūdri.

Frango, frēgi, fractum, r. d. to *break*. The compounds change ā into i, in the first root; as, infringo, infrēgi, infractum, to *break in upon*.

\*Frēmo, frēmui, d. to *roar, howl*.

Frendo, —, frēsūm or fressum, to *gnash*.

Frigo, frīxi, frīctum, rarely frīxum, to *roast*.

\*Fūgio, fūgi, fūgitūrus, d. to *flee*.

\*Fulgo, —, to *flash*.

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, r. d. to *pour*.

\*Fūro, —, to *rage*.

\*Gēmo, gēmui, d. to *groan*.

Gēro, gessi, gestum, r. d. to *bear*.

Gigno, (obsolete) gēno, gēnui, gēnitum, r. d. to *beget*.

\*Glisco, —, to *grow*.

\*Glūbo, —, to *peel*. deglūbo, —, -gluptum.

Gruo, (obsolete.) \*congruo, -grui, to *agree*. So ingruo.

Ico, ici, ictum, r. to *strike*.

Imbuo, imbui, imbtūm, d. to *imbue*.

\*Incesso, -cessivi or -cessi, to *attack*.

†Induo, indui, indūtum, r. d. to *put on*.

Jācio, jēci, jactum, d. to *cast*. The compounds change ā into i in the first root, and into e in the third. (§ 163, Exc. 8); as, rejicio, rejēci, rejectum.

Jungo, junxi, junctum, r. d. to *join*.

Lācesso, -cessivi, -cessitum, r. d. to *provoke*.

Lācio, (obsolete.) The compounds change ā into i; as, allicio, -lexi, -lectum, d. to *allure*. So illicio, pellicio. allicio, -licui, -lictum, to *draw out*.

**Lædo**, læsi, læsum, m. r. to hurt. The compounds change *æ* into *i*; as, illido, illisi, illisum, to dash against.

\***Lambo**, lambi, to lick.

**Lêgo**, lêgi, lectum, r. d. to read. So allêgo, perlêgo, prælêgo, relêgo, sublêgo, and translêgo; the other compounds change *ê* into *i*; as, colligo, collêgi, collectum, to collect. But the following add *s* to form the second root; § 171, 1; diligo, -lexi, -lectum, to love. intelligo, -lexi, -lectum, u. r. d. to understand. negligo, -lexi, -lectum, r. d. to neglect.

**Lingo**, —, linctum, d. to lick. \*delingo, —, to lick up.

**Lino**, livi or lêvi, litum, d. to daub.

\***Linguo**, liqui, d. to leave. relinquo, -liqui, -dictum, r. d. delinquo, -liqui, -dictum. So derelinquo.

**Lûdo**, lûsi, lûsum, m. r. to play.

\***Luo**, lui, luitûrus, d. to atone. abluo, -lui, -lûtum, r. d. diluo, -lui, -lûtum, d. So eluo.

**Mando**, mami, mansum, d. to chew.

**Mergo**, mersi, mersum, r. d. to dip. So immergo; but pres. inf. pass. immergêri, Col. 5, 9, 8.

**Mêto**, messui, messum, d. to reap.

**Mêto**, metui, metûtum, d. to fear.

\***Mûngo**, minxi, mictum, (sup.) to make water.

**Mînuo**, mînui, mînûtum, d. to lessen.

**Mîtto**, misi, missum, r. d. to send.

**Môlo**, môlui, môlitum, to grind.

**Mungo**, (obsolete.) emungo, -munxi, -munctum, to wipe the nose.

**Necto**, nexi, nexum, d. to knit. innecto, -nexui, -nexum. So annecto, connecto.

\***Ningo** or -guo, ninxi, to snow.

**Nosco**, nôvi, nôtum, d. to learn. agnosco, -nôvi, -nîtum, d. to recognize.

cognosco, -nôvi, -nîtum, u. r. d. to know. So recognosco. \*internosco,

nôvi, to distinguish between. præcognosco, —, præcognitum, to fore-know.

\***dignosco**, —. So prænosco. ignosco, -nôvi, -nôtum, d. to pardon.

**Nûbo**, nupsi, or nupta sum, nuptum, m. r. to marry.

**Nuo**, (obsolete.) to nod. \*abnuo, -nui, -nuitûrus, d. to refuse. \*annuo, -nui. So innuo, renuo.

\***Olo**, ôlui, to smell.

**Pando**, —, passum or pansum, to open. So expando. dispando, —, pansum.

**Pago**, (obs. the same as paco whence pascor.) pêpigi, pactum, to bargain: hence

**Pango**, panxi or pêgi, pactum, panctû-

rus, d. to drive in. compingo, -pêgi, -pactum. So impingo. \*oppango, -pêgi. \*depango, —. So repango, suppingo.

\***Parco**, pêperci rarely parsi, parsûrus, to spare. Some of the compounds change *a* to *e*; as, \*comparoo or comperco. \*imperco, —.

**Pario**, pêperi, partum, pâritûrus, d. to bring forth. The compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

**Pasco**, pâvi, pastum, m. r. d. to feed.

**Pecto**, —, pexum, and pectûm, d. to comb. So depecto. repecto.

\***Pêdo**, pêpêdi. \*oppêdo, —.

**Pello**, pêpûli, pulsus, d. to drive. Its compounds are not reduplicated.

**Pendo**, pêpendi, pensum, r. to weigh. The compounds drop the reduplication. See § 163, Exc. 1.

**Pêto**, pêtîvi, pêtîtum, m. u. r. d. to ask.

**Pingo**, pinxi, pictum, to paint.

**Pinso**, pinsi, pinsitum, pinsum or pistum, to pound.

\***Plango**, planxi, planctûrus, to lament. Plaudo, plausi, plausum, d. to clap, applaud. So applaudo. \*†circumplaudo, —. The other compounds change *au* into *o*.

**Plecto**, —, plexum, d. to twine.

\***Pluo**, plui or plûvi, to rain.

**Pôno**, pôsui, (anciently posîvi), pôsitum, r. d. to place.

\*†**Porricio**, —, to offer sacrifice.

\***Posco**, pôposci, d. to demand.

**Prehendo**, { -di, -sum, r. d. to seize.

**Prendo**, {

**Prêmo**, pressi, pressum, r. d. to press. The compounds change *ê* into *i*, in the first root; as, imprîmo, impressi, impressum, to impress.

**Prômo**, prompsi, promptum, r. d. to bring out.

\***Psallo**, psalli, to play on a stringed instrument.

**Pungo**, pûpûgi, punctum, to prick.

compungo, -punxi, -punctum. So dispungo, expungo. interpungo, —, -punctum. \*repungo, —.

**Quêro**, quêsîvi, quêsîtum, m. r. d. to seek. The compounds change *æ* into *i*; as, requîro, requisîvi, requisîtum, to seek again.

**Quâtio**, —, quassum, to shake. The compounds change *quâ* into *cû*; as, concûtio, -cussi, -cussum, d. discûtio, -cussi, -cussum, r. d.

**Quiesco**, quîêvi, quîêtum, r. d. to rest.

**Râdo**, râsi, râsum, d. to shave.

**Râpio**, râpui, raptum, r. d. to snatch.

The compounds change *ê* into *i* in the

*first and second roots, and into e in the third; as, diripio, -ripui, -reptum, m. r. So eripio and praeipio.*

**Rēgo, rexi, rectum, r. d. to rule.** *The compounds change ē into i, in the first root; as, dirigo, direxi, directum. \*pergo, (for perrigo), perrexi, r. to go forward. surgo (for surrigo), surrexi, surrectum, r. d. to rise. So porrigo (for prorigo), to stretch out.*

**\*Rēpo, repsi, to creep.**

**Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, r. to gnaw.** *ab-, ar-, e-, ob-, prae-rōdo, want the perfect.*

**\*Rūdo, rudīvi, to bray.**

**Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, r. d. to break.**

**Ruo, rui, rūtum, ruitūrus, to fall.** *diruo, -rui, -rūtum, d. So obruo.*

**\*corruo, -rui. So irruo.**

**\*Sāpio, sapiui, to be wise.** *The compounds change ā into i; as, \*resipio, -sipiui or -alpiui. \*desipio, —, to be silly.*

**\*†Scābo, scābi, to scratch.**

**Scalpo, scalpei, sculptum, to engrave.**

**Sālo or sallo, — salsum, to salt.**

**\*Scando, —, d. to climb.** *The compounds change a into e; as, ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, r. d. descendo, descendi, (anciently descendidi,) descensum.*

**Scindo, scīdi, (anciently sciscīdi), scissum, d. to cut.**

**Seisco, scīvi, scītum, d. to ordain.**

**Scribo, scripsi, scriptum, r. d. to write.**

**Sculpo, sculpti, sculptum, d. to carve.**

**Sēro, sēvi, sātum, r. d. to sow.** *consēro, -sēvi, -sītum. So insēro, r., and obsēro.*

**Sēro, —, sertum, to entwine.** *Its compounds have -sērui; as, assēro, -sērui, -sertum, r. d.*

**\*Serpō, serpsi, to creep.**

**\*Sīdo, sīdi, to settle.** *Its compounds have generally sēdi, sessum, from sedeo.*

**\*Sīno, sīvi, sītūrus, to permit.** *desīno, desīvi, desītum, r. § 284, R. 3, Exc. 2.*

**Sisto, stīti, stātum, to stop.** *\*absisto, -stīti. So the other compounds; but circumsisisto wants the perfect.*

**Solvo, solvi, sōlūtum, r. d. to loose.**

**Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, r. d. to spread.** *The compounds change a into e; as, respergo, -spersi, -spersum; but with circum and in, a sometimes remains.*

**Spēcio, (obsolete.)** *The compounds change ē into i, in the first root; as, aspicio, aspexi, aspectum, d. to look at. inspicio, inspexi, inspectum. r. d.*

**Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, d. to despise.**

**\*†Spuo, spui, to spit.** *\*respuo, respui, d.*

**Stātuo, stātui, stātūtum, d. to place.**

*The compounds change ā into i; as, instituo, institui, institūtum, to institute.*

**Sterno, strāvi, strātum, d. to strew.**

**\*Sternuo, sternui, to sneeze.**

**\*Sterto, —, to snore.** *\*†desterto, destertui.*

**\*Stinguo, —, to extinguish.** *distinguo, distinxi, distinctum. So extinguo, r. d.*

**\*Strēpo, strēpui, to make a noise.**

**\*Strido, strīdi, to creak.**

**Stringo, strinxī, strictum, r. d. to bind or tie tight.**

**Struo, struxi, structum, d. to build.**

**Sūgo, suxi, suctum, d. to suck.**

**Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, r. d. to take.**

**Suo, —, sūtum, d. to sew.** *So consuo, dissuo. insuo, -sui, sūtum. \*asuo, —.*

**Tāgo, (very rare), to touch.** *Hence*

**Tango, tēgi, tactum, r. d. to touch.**

*The compounds change a into i in the first root, and drop the t<sup>h</sup>eduplication; as, contingo, contēgi, contactum, r.*

**Tēgo, texi, tectum, r. d. to cover.**

**\*Temno, —, d. to despise.** *contemno, -tempsi, -temptum, d.*

**Tendo, tētēdi, tentum or tensum, to stretch.** *The compounds drop the reduplication; as, extendo, -tēdi, -tentum or -tensum. So in-, ex-, and re-tendo. detendo has tensum. The other compounds have tentum.*

**\*†Tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe.** *Tergeo, of the second conjugation has the same second and third roots.*

**Tēro, trivi, tritum, d. to rub.**

**Texo, texui, textum, d. to weave.**

**Tingo or tinguo, tinxi, tinctum, r. d. to moisten, tinge.**

**\*Tollo, anciently tētūli, rarely tolli, d. to raise.** *The perfect and supine sustūli and sublātum from suffēro take the place of the perfect and supine of tollō and sustollō. \*sustollō, —, r. to raise up, to take away. \*attollō, —. So extollō.*

**Trāho, traxi, tractum, r. d. to draw.**

**\*Trēmo, trēmui, d. to tremble.**

**Tribuo, tribui, tribūtum, r. d. to ascribe.**

**Trūdo, trūsi, trūsūm, to thrust.**

**Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum or tūsūm, to beat.** *The compounds drop the reduplication, and have tūsūm. Yet cōtunsum, detunsum, obtunsum, and retunsum, are also found.*

**Ungo, (or -guo), unxi, unctum, d. to anoint.**

Uro, ussi, ustum, d. to burn.

\*Vado, —, to go. So supervado. The other compounds have vāsi; as, \*evādo, evāsi, r. So pervado; also invādo, r. d.

Veho, vext, vectum, r. to carry.

Vello, velli or vulsi, vulsum, d. to pluck. So avello, d., divello, evello, d., revello, revelli, revulsum. The other compounds have velli only, except intervello, which has vulsi.

\*Vergo, versi, to incline.

Verro, —, versum, d. to brush.

Verto, verti, versum, r. d. to turn. See § 174, Note.

Vinco, vici, victum, r. d. to conquer.

\*Viso, —, d. to visit.

\*Vivo, vixi, victurus, d. to live.

\*Volo, vólui, velle (for vólere), to be willing. See § 178.

Volvo, volvi, vólutum, d. to roll.

Vomo, vómui, vómitum, r. d. to vomit.

REMARK. Those verbs in *to* (and deponents in *ior*), of the third conjugation, which are conjugated like *cipio* (page 115) are, *cipio, cipio, fácio, fácio, fugio, fácio, pário, quádo, rópio, ápio*, compounds of *lacio* and *specio*, and *grádior, mótor, pátor*, and *mótor*: but compare *mótor* in § 174, and *órior*, and *pórior* in § 177.

### Inceptive Verbs.

§ 173. Inceptive verbs in general either want the third root, or adopt that of their primitives: (see § 187, II, 2). Of those derived from nouns and adjectives, some want the second root, and some form it by adding *u* to the root of the primitive.

In the following list, those verbs to which *s* is added, have a simple verb in use from which they are formed:—

\*Acesco, ácui, s. to grow sour.

\*Ægesco, to grow sick.

\*Albesco, —, s. to grow white.

\*Alesco, —, s. to grow. coalesco, -alui, -altum, to grow together.

\*Ardesco, arsi, s. to take fire.

\*Aresco, —, s. to grow dry. \*exaresco, -arui. So inaresco, peraresco.

\*Augesco, auxi, s. to increase.

\*Calesco, cálui, s. to grow warm.

\*Calvesco, —, s. to become bald.

\*Candesco, candui, s. to grow white.

\*Cānesco, cānui, s. to become hoary.

\*Clāresco, clārui, s. to become bright.

\*Condomisco, -dormivi, s. to go to sleep.

\*Conticesco, -ticui, to become silent.

\*Crebresco, crebui and crebui, to increase.

\*Crūdesco, crūdui, to become violent.

\*Ditesco, —, to grow rich.

\*Dulcesco, —, to grow sweet.

\*Dūresco, dūrui, to grow hard.

\*Evilesco, evilui, to become worthless.

\*Extimesco, -timui, to fear greatly.

\*Fātesco, —, to gape.

\*Flaccesco, flaccui, s. to wilt.

\*Fervesco, ferbui, s. to grow hot.

\*Flōresco, flōrui, s. to begin to flourish.

\*Frāresco, frācui, to grow rancid.

\*Frīgesco, —, s. to grow cold. \*perfrīgesco, -frīxi. So refrīgesco.

\*Frondesco, —, s. to put forth leaves.

\*Frūtesco, —, to put forth shoots.

\*Gēlasco, —, s. to freeze. So \*congēlasco, s. to congeal.

\*Gēmisco, —, s. to begin to sigh.

\*Gemmasco, —, to begin to bud.

\*Gēnerasco, —, s. to be produced.

\*Grandesco, —, to grow large.

\*Grāvesco, —, to grow heavy.

\*Haresco, —, s. to adhere.

\*Hēbesco, —, s. to grow dull.

\*Horresco, horrui, s. to grow rough.

\*Hūmesco, —, s. to grow moist.

\*Ignesco, —, to become inflamed.

\*Indōlesco, -dōlui, d. to be grieved.

\*Insōlesco, —, to become haughty.

\*Intēgrasco, —, to be renewed.

\*Jūvēnesco, —, to grow young.

\*Languesco, languui, s. to grow languid.

\*Lāpidesco, —, to become stone.

\*Lātesco, —, to grow broad.

\*Lātesco, to be concealed. s. \*delltesco, -litui; \*obltesco, -litui.

\*Lentescio, —, to become soft.

\*Liquesco, —, s. to become liquid.

\*dellquesco, -licui.

\*Lūcesco, —, s. to grow light, to dawn.

\*Lūtesco, —, s. to become muddy.

\*Mācesco, —, s. } to grow lean.

\*Macresco, —

\*remaresco, -macrui.

\*Mādesco, mādui, s. to grow moist.

- \**Marcesco*, —, s. to pine away.  
 \**Mātresco*, *mātrui*, s. to ripen.  
 \**Misresco*, *misēui*, s. to pity.  
 \**Mitesco*, —, to grow mild.  
 \**Mollesco*, —, to grow soft.  
 \**Mutesco*, —, to become dumb. \**obmutesco*, *obmūtui*.  
 \**Nigresco*, *nigrui*, s. to grow black.  
 \**Nitesco*, *nitui*, s. to grow bright.  
 \**Nōtesco*, *nōtui*, to become known.  
 \**Obbrūtesco*, —, to become brutish.  
 \**Obdormisco*, —, s. to fall asleep.  
 \**Obsurdesco*, *surdui*, to grow deaf.  
 \**Ocalleco*, *callui*, to become callous.  
 \**Olesco*, (scarcely used.) \**ābōlesco*, *ōlēvi*, s. to cease. *ādōlesco*, *ōlēvi*, ultum, s. to grow up. *exōlesco*, *ōlēvi*, *ōlētum*, to grow out of date. *So obōlesco*. *inōlesco*, *ōlēvi*, *ōlētum*, d. to grow in or on.  
 \**Pallesco*, *pallui*, s. to grow pale.  
 \**Pātesco*, *pātui*, s. to be opened.  
 \**Pāvesco*, *pāvi*, s. to grow fearful.  
 \**Pertimesco*, *timui*, d. to fear greatly.  
 \**Pinguesco*, —, to grow fat.  
 \**Pūbesco*, —, to come to maturity.  
 \**Puērasco*, —, to become a boy.  
 \**Pūtesco*, —, s. } to become putrid.  
 \**Putresco*, —, s. }  
 \**Rāresco*, —, to become thin.  
 \**Rēspisco*, *alpiui*, s. to recover one's senses.  
 \**Rigesco*, *rigui*, s. to grow cold.  
 \**Rūbesco*, *rūbui*, s. to grow red. \**ērūbesco*, *rūbui*, d.  
 \**Sānesco*, —, to become sound. \**consānesco*, *sānui*.  
 \**Sēnesco*, *sēnui*, s. d. to grow old. *So consēnesco*.  
 \**Sentisco*, —, s. to perceive.  
 \**Siccesco*, —, to become dry.  
 \**Silesco*, *silui*, s. to grow silent.  
 \**Sōlidesco*, —, to become solid.  
 \**Sordesco*, *sordui*, s. to become filthy.  
 \**Splendesco*, *splendui*, s. to become bright.  
 \**Spūmesco*, —, to begin to foam.  
 \**Stērlesco*, —, to become barren.  
 \**Stūpesco*, *stūpui*, s. to become astonished.  
*Suesco*, *suevi*, *suetum*, s. to become accustomed.  
 \**Tābesco*, *tābui*, s. to waste away.  
 \**Tēnēresco* and *-asco*, —, to become tender.  
 \**Tēpesco*, *tēpui*, s. to grow warm.  
 \**Torpesco*, *torpui*, s. to grow torpid.  
 \**Trēmisco*, —, s. to begin to tremble.  
 \**Tūmesco*, *tūmui*, s. } to begin to swell.  
 \**Turgesco*, —, s. }  
 \**Uvesco*, —, to become moist.  
 \**Vālesco*, —, s. to become strong.  
 \**Vānesco*, —, to vanish. \**ēvānesco*, *ēvānui*.  
 \**Vētērasco*, *vētērāvi*, to grow old.  
 \**Viresco*, *virui*, s. to grow green.  
 \**Vivesco*, *vixi*, s. to come to life. \**rēvivisco*, *-vixi*.

### § 174. Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

- Apiscor*, *aptus*, to get. The compounds change ā into i in the first root, and into e in the third; as, *ādpiscor*, *ādeptus*. *So indispiscor*.  
*Expertiscor*, *expectectus*, to awake.  
 \**Fātiscor*, to gape or crack open. The compounds change ā into ē; as, *dēfētiscor*, *-fessus*.  
*Fruor*, *fruitus* or *fructus*, *fruitūrus*, d. to enjoy.  
*Fungor*, *functus*, r. d. to perform.  
*Grādior*, *gressus*, to walk. The compounds change ā into ē; as, *aggrēdior*, *aggressus*, r. d. *Inf. pres. aggrēdi* and *aggrēdiri*; so, *progrēdi* and *progrēdiri*; and *pres. ind. egrēditur*, *Plaut.*  
 \**Irascor*, to be angry.  
*Lābor*, *lapsus*, r. to fall.  
 \**Liquor*, to melt, flow.  
*Lōquor*, *lōcūtus*, r. d. to speak.  
*Miniscor*, (obsolete.) *commīniscor*, *commentus*, p. to invent. \**rēmīniscor*, to remember.  
*Mōrior*, (*mōri*, rarely *mōrtiri*), *mortuus*, *mōrtitūrus*, d. to die. *So emōrtiri*, *Plaut.* for *emōri*.  
*Nanciscor*, *nactus* or *nanctus*, to obtain.  
*Nascor*, *nātus*, *nascitūrus*, u. to be born.  
*Nitor*, *nixus* or *nisus*, *nislūrus*, to lean upon.  
*Obliviscor*, *oblītus*, d. p. to forget.  
*Pāciscor*, *pactus*, d. to bargain. *So dēpāciscor*.  
*Pātiōr*, *passus*, r. d. to suffer. *perpētior*, *-pessus*.  
*From plecto*, to twine, come, *amplector*, *amplexus*, d. p. *complector*, *complexus*, p. *So circumplector*.  
*Prōficeiscor*, *prōfectus*; r. to depart.  
*Quēror*, *questus*, m. u. d. to complain.  
 \**Ringor*, to snarl.  
*Sēquor*, *sēcūtus*, r. d. to follow.  
*Tuor*, *tūtus*, to protect.  
 \**Vescor*, d. to eat.  
*Ulciscor*, *ultus*, m. d. p. to avenge.  
*Utor*, *ūtus*, r. d. to use.

**NOTE.** *Dēvertor, prāvortor, rēvertor*, compounds of *verto*, are used as deponents in the present and imperfect tenses; *rēvertor* also, sometimes, in the perfect.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

- § 175. Verbs of the fourth conjugation regularly form their second root in *iv*, and their third in *it*; as, *audio, audivi, auditum*.

The following list contains most regular verbs of this conjugation :—

*Audio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, m. u. r. d. to hear.  
 \**Cio*, *civi*, to excite. Ct. *cio*, § 168.  
*Condio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, to season.  
*Custodio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, d. to guard.  
 \**Dormio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, m. r. d. to sleep.  
*Erudio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, d. to instruct.  
*Expedio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, d. to disentangle.  
*Finio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, r. d. to finish.  
 \**Gestio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, to exult; desire.  
*Impedio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, r. d. to entangle.  
*Insanio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, to be mad.  
*Irritio*, -*ivi* or *ii*, to enmare.  
*Lenio*, -*ivi* or *ii*, d. to mitigate.  
*Mollio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, d. to soften.

\**Mugio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, to bellow.  
*Munio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, r. d. to fortify.  
*Mutio*, -*ivi*, to mutter.  
*Nutrio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, d. to nourish.  
*Partio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, r. d. to divide.  
*Pollo*, -*ivi*, d. to polish.  
*Punio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, d. to punish.  
*Rēdimio*, -*ivi*, to crown.  
*Scio*, -*ivi*, u. r. to know.  
*Servio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, m. r. d. to serve.  
*Sōpio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, to lull asleep.  
*Stābilio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, to establish.  
*Tinnio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, r. d. to tinkle.  
*Vestio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, to clothe.

- § 176. The following list contains those verbs of the fourth conjugation which form their second and third roots irregularly, and those which want either or both of them.

**REMARK.** The principal irregularity in verbs of the fourth conjugation arises from following the analogy of those verbs of the third conjugation whose first root ends in a consonant; as, *sēpio, sepsi, septum*. A few become irregular by syncope; as, *vēnio, vēni, ventum*.

*Amicio*, -*ui* or -*xi*, *amictum*, d. to clothe.  
 \**Balbūtio*, —, to stammer.  
*Bullio*, *ii*, *itum*, to bubble.  
 \**Cēcūtio*, —, to be dim-sighted.  
 \**Cambio*, —, to exchange.  
 \**Dementio*, —, to be mad.  
*Effūtio*, —, to babble.

*Eo*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*, r. d. to go. The compounds have only *ii* in the perfect, except *ōbeo*, *præeo*, and *sūbeo*, which have *ivi* or *ii*. All the compounds want the supine and perfect participles, except *ādeo*, *ambio*, *īneo*, *ōbeo*, *prætereō*, *sūbeo*, *circūmeo* or *circueo*, *rēdeo*, *transeo*, and \**†vēneo*, *vēni*, r. (from *vēnum eo*), to be sold.

*Farcio*, *farsi*, *fartum* or *fartum*, to cram. The compounds generally change *a* to *e*; as, *rēfercio*, -*fersi*, -*fertum*, but *con-* and *ef-*, -*farcio* and -*fercio*.

*Fastidio*, -*ii*, -*itum*, d. to loathe.

\**Fērio*, —, d. to strike.

\**Fērōcio*, —, to be fierce.  
*Fulcio*, *fulsi*, *fultum*, d. to prop up.  
 \**Gannio*, —, to yelp, bark.  
 \**Glōcio*, —, to cluck as a hen.  
 \**Glūtio*, *ivi*, or *glūtii*, to swallow.  
*Grandio*, —, to make great.  
 \**Grunnio*, *grunnii*, to grunt.  
*Haurio*, *hausi*, *rar.* *haurii*, *haustum*, *rar.* *haustum*, *hausturus*, *hausurus*, u. d. to draw.  
 \**Hinnio*, —, to neigh.  
 \**Ineptio*, —, to trifle.  
 \**Lascivio*, *lascivii*, to be wanton.  
 \**Ligūrio*, *ligūrui*, to feed delicately.  
 \**Lippio*, —, r. to be blear-eyed.  
 \**Obedio*, *obedi*, r. to obey.  
*Pārio* is of the third conjugation, but its compounds are of the fourth, changing *ā* to *ē*; as, *āpērio*, *āpērui*, *āpertum*, r. d. to open. *Sōpērio*, d. *compērio*, *compēri*, *compertum*, rarely *dep.* *compērior*, to find out. *Sō repērio*, r. d.

**Pāvio**, —, *pāvītum*, to beat.

\***Prārio**, —, to itch.

**Queo**, *quvi* or *quili*, *qultum*, to be able.

So \***nēqueo**.

\***Raucio**, —, r. to be hoarse.

\***Rūgio**, —, to roar as a lion.

**Sævio**, *sævil*, *itum*, r. to rage.

\***Sāgio**, —, to perceive keenly.

\***Sālio**, *sāli* or *sālii*, to leap. The

compounds change ā into ī; as, \***abs-**

**lilio**, —. So **circumālilio**. \***asslilio**, -ui.

So **disālilio**, **insālilio**. \***dēsālilio**, -ui or -li.

So **exālilio**, **rēālilio**, **subālilio**. \***transāl-**

**lilio**, -ui or -lvi, d. So **prōālilio**.

**Sālio**, —, *itum*, r. d. to salt.

**Sancio**, *sanxi*, *sanctum* or *sanctum*, d.

to ratify, sanction.

**Sarcio**, *sarsi*, *sartum*, d. to patch.

**Sarrio**, -lvi or -ui, *sarritum*, d. to weed, hoe.

\***Scātūrio**, —, to gush out.

**Sentio**, *sensi*, *sensum*, r. to feel.

**Sēpēlio**, *sēpēlivi* or -ii, rar. *sēpēli*, *sē-*

*pultum*, r. d. to bury.

**Sēpio**, *sepsi*, *septum*, d. to hedge in.

\***Singultio**, —, to sob, hiccup.

\***Sittio**, *sittii*, to thirst.

**Suffio**, -ii, -itum, d. to fumigate.

\***Tussio**, —, to cough.

\***Vāgio**, *vāgil*, to cry.

**Vēnio**, *vēni*, *ventum*, r. to come.

**Vincio**, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, r. d. to bind.

**NOTE.** Desiderative verbs want both the second and third roots, except these three;—\***ēstūrio**, —, *ēstiritus*, r. to desire to eat; \***nuptūrio**, -lvi, to desire to marry; \***partūrio**, -lvi, to be in travail. See § 187, II. 3.

### § 177. Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

**Assentior**, *assensus*, r. d. p. to assent.

**Blandior**, *blanditus*, to flatter.

**Largior**, *largitus*, p. to give, bestow.

**Mentior**, *mentitus*, r. p. to lie.

**Mētor**, *mensus* or *mētitus*, d. p. to

measure.

**Mōlior**, *mōlitus*, d. p. to strive, toil.

**Ordior**, *orsus*, d. p. to begin.

**Orior**, *ortus*, *ōritūrus*, d. to spring up.

Except in the present infinitive, this verb seems to be of the third conjugation.

**Pērior**, (*obs. whence pēritus*.) *ex-*

*pērior*, *expertus*, r. d. to try.

*oppērior*, *oppertus* or *oppēritus*, d. to

wait for.

**Partior**, *partitus*, d. to divide.

**Pōtior**, *pōtitus*, r. d. to obtain, enjoy.

In the poets the present indicative and imperfect subjunctive are sometimes of the third conjugation.

**Sortior**, *sortitus*, r. to cast lots.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 178. Irregular verbs are such as deviate from the common forms in some of the parts derived from the first root.

They are *sum*, *vōlo*, *fēro*, *ēdo*, *fio*, *eo*, *queo*, and their compounds.

*Sum* and its compounds have already been conjugated. See § 153. In the conjugation of the rest, the parts which are irregular are fully exhibited, but a synopsis only, of the other parts is, in general, given. Some parts of *volo* and of its compounds are wanting.

1. *Vōlo* is irregular only in the present of the indicative and infinitive, and in the present and imperfect of the subjunctive.

**REMARK.** It is made irregular partly by syncope, and partly by a change in the vowel of the root. In the present infinitive also and in the imperfect subjunctive, after *ē* was dropped, *r* following *l* was changed into *l*; as, *velēre* (*velre*) *velle*; *velērem* (*velrem*) *vellem*.

*Pres. Indic.*

*vō'-lō,*

*Pres. Infin.*

*vel'-lē,*

*Perf. Indic.*

*vōl'-u-i,*

*to be willing, to wish.*

## INDICATIVE.

|                                             |                                |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Pres. S.</i> vŏ'-lě, vis, vult;          | <i>Perf.</i> vŏl'-u-i.         |
| <i>P.</i> vŏl'-ŭ-mūs, vul'-tīs, vŏ'-lunt.   | <i>Plup.</i> vŏ-lu'-ě-ram.     |
| <i>Imperf.</i> vŏ-lě'-bam, vŏ-lě'-bās, etc. | <i>Fut. perf.</i> vŏ-lu'-ě-rŏ. |
| <i>Fut.</i> vŏ'-lam, vŏ'-lēs, etc.          |                                |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                                                 |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Pres. S.</i> vĕ'-lim, vĕ'-lis, vĕ'-lit;      | <i>Perf.</i> vŏ-lu'-ě-rim.  |
| <i>P.</i> vĕ-lī'-mūs, vĕ-lī'-tīs, vĕ'-lint.     | <i>Plup.</i> vŏl-u-is'-sem. |
| <i>Imperf. S.</i> vel'-lem, vel'-lēš, vel'-lēt; |                             |
| <i>P.</i> vel-lē'-mūs, vel-lē'-tīs, vel'-lent.  |                             |

## INFINITIVE.

|                            |
|----------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> vel'-lē.      |
| <i>Perf.</i> vŏl-u-is'-sĕ. |

## PARTICIPLE.

|                        |
|------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> vŏ'-lens. |
|------------------------|

**NOTE.** *Volt* and *vults*, for *vult* and *vultis*, and *vin'*, for *vine* are found in Plautus and other ancient authors.

2. *Nŏlo* is compounded of the obsolete *nĕ* (for *non*) and *vŏlo*. The *v* of *vŏlo* after *nĕ* is dropped, and the vowels (*ĕ ō*) are contracted into *ŏ*.

|                     |                     |                     |                         |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Pres. Infin.</i> | <i>Perf. Indic.</i> |                         |
| nŏ'-lĕ,             | nol'-lē,            | nŏl'-u-i,           | <i>to be unwilling.</i> |

## INDICATIVE.

|                                               |                                |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Pres. S.</i> nŏ'-lĕ, non'-vis, non'-vult;  | <i>Perf.</i> nŏl'-u-i.         |
| <i>P.</i> nŏl'-ŭ-mūs, non-vul'-tīs, nŏ'-lunt. | <i>Plup.</i> nŏ-lu'-ě-ram.     |
| <i>Imperf.</i> nŏ-lĕ'-bam, -bās, -bāt, etc.   | <i>Fut. perf.</i> nŏ-lu'-ě-rŏ. |
| <i>Fut.</i> nŏ'-lam, -lēs, -lēt, etc.         |                                |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                                                 |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Pres. S.</i> nŏ'-lim, nŏ'-lis, nŏ'-lit;      | <i>Perf.</i> nŏ-lu'-ě-rim.  |
| <i>P.</i> nŏ-lī'-mūs, nŏ-lī'-tīs, nŏ'-lint.     | <i>Plup.</i> nŏl-u-is'-sem. |
| <i>Imperf. S.</i> nol'-lem, nol'-lēš, nol'-lēt; |                             |
| <i>P.</i> nol-lē'-mūs, nol-lē'-tīs, nol'-lent.  |                             |

## IMPERATIVE.

|                                                |                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>                                | <i>Future.</i>                                  |
| <i>Sing. 2.</i> nŏ'-lī; <i>Plur.</i> nŏ-lī-tĕ. | <i>Sing. 2.</i> nŏ-lī-tŏ,                       |
|                                                | <i>3.</i> nŏ-lī'-tŏ; <i>Plur.</i> nŏl-i-tŏ'-tĕ, |
|                                                | nŏ-lun'-tŏ.                                     |

## INFINITIVE.

|                            |
|----------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> nol'-lē.      |
| <i>Perf.</i> nŏl-u-is'-sĕ. |

## PARTICIPLE.

|                        |
|------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> nŏ'-lens. |
|------------------------|

**NOTE.** In *non-vis*, *non-vult*, etc. of the present, *non* takes the place of *ne*, but *nĕvis* and *nĕvult* also occur in Plautus.



3. *Mālo* is compounded of *māgis* and *vōlo*. In composition *māgis* drops its final syllable, and *vōlo* its *v*. The vowels (*ā ō*) are then contracted into *ā*.

| <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Pres. Infin.</i> | <i>Perf. Indic.</i>  |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| mā'-lō,             | mal'-lē,            | māl'-u-i, to prefer. |

## INDICATIVE.

|                                               |                                |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Pres. S.</i> mā'-lō, mā'-vis, mā'-vult;    | <i>Perf.</i> māl'-u-i.         |
| <i>P.</i> māl'-ū-mūs, mā'-vul'-tis, mā'-lunt. | <i>Plup.</i> mā-lu'-ē-ram.     |
| <i>Imperf.</i> mā-lē'-bam, -bās, etc.         | <i>Fut. perf.</i> mā-lu'-ē-rō. |
| <i>Fut.</i> mā'-lam, -lēs, etc.               |                                |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                                                 |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Pres. S.</i> mā'-lim, mā'-lis, mā'-lit;      | <i>Perf.</i> mā-lu'-ē-rim.  |
| <i>P.</i> mā-lī'-mūs, mā-lī'-tis, mā'-lint.     | <i>Plup.</i> māl-u-is'-eem. |
| <i>Imperf. S.</i> mal'-lem, mal'-lēs, mal'-lēt; |                             |
| <i>P.</i> mal-lē'-mūs, mal-lē'-tis, mal'-lent.  |                             |

## INFINITIVE.

|                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> mal'-lē. | <i>Perf.</i> māl-u-is'-ē. |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|

NOTE. *Māvōlo*, *māvōlunt*; *māvōlet*; *māvēlim*, *māvēlis*, *māvēlit*; and *māvellem*; for *mālo*, *mālunt*, etc., occur in Plautus.

§ 179. *Fēro* is irregular in two respects:—1. Its second and third roots are not derived from the first, but from otherwise obsolete verbs, viz. *tūlo* for *tollo*, and *tlao*, sup. *tlātum*, by aphæresis, *lātum*:—2. In the present infinitive active, in the imperfect subjunctive, and in certain parts of the present indicative and imperative, of both voices, the connecting vowel is omitted. In the present infinitive passive, *r* is doubled.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

|                                        |                                             |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres. Indic.</i> fē'-rō, (to bear.) | <i>Pres. Indic.</i> fē'-rōr, (to be borne.) |
| <i>Pres. Infin.</i> fer'-rē,           | <i>Pres. Infin.</i> fer'-rī,                |
| <i>Perf. Indic.</i> tū'-li,            | <i>Perf. Part.</i> lā'-tūs.                 |
| <i>Supine.</i> lā'-tum.                |                                             |

## INDICATIVE.

## Present.

|                                           |                                        |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> fē'-rō, fers, fert;             | fē'-rōr, fer'-ris or -rē, fer'-tūr;    |
| <i>P.</i> fēr'-i-mūs, fer'-tis, fē'-runt. | fēr'-i-mūr, fē-rim'-i-nī, fē-run'-tūr. |

|                                 |                                                |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Imperf.</i> fē-rē'-bam.      | <i>Imperf.</i> fē-rē'-bār.                     |
| <i>Fut.</i> fē'-ram, -rēs, etc. | <i>Fut.</i> fē'-rār, -rē'-ris or -rē'-rē, etc. |
| <i>Perf.</i> tū'-li.            | <i>Perf.</i> lā'-tūs sum or fu'-i.             |
| <i>Plup.</i> tū'lē'-ram.        | <i>Plup.</i> lā'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram.      |
| <i>Fut. perf.</i> tū-lē-rō.     | <i>Fut. perf.</i> lā'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō.   |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                                     |                                                 |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> fě'-ram, -rās, etc.    | <i>Pres.</i> fě'-rār, -rā'-rīs or -rā'-rě, etc. |
| <i>Imperf.</i> fer'-ram, -rēs, etc. | <i>Imperf.</i> fer'-rēr, -rē'-rīs, etc.         |
| <i>Perf.</i> tū'-lē-rim.            | <i>Perf.</i> lā'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim.          |
| <i>Plup.</i> tū'-lis'-sem.          | <i>Plup.</i> lā'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem.     |

## IMPERATIVE.

|                         |                       |                          |                           |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Pres. S.</i> fēr,    | <i>P.</i> fer'-tě.    | <i>Pres. S.</i> fer'-rě, | <i>P.</i> fě-rīm'-i-ni.   |
| <i>Fut. S.</i> fer'-tő, | <i>P.</i> fer-tő'-tě, |                          |                           |
| fer'-tő;                | fě-run'-tő.           | <i>Fut. S.</i> fer'-tör, | <i>P.</i> (fě-rēm'-i-ni.) |
|                         |                       | fer'-tör.                | fě-run'-tör.              |

## INFINITIVE.

|                                |                                           |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> fer'-rě.          | <i>Pres.</i> fer'-ri.                     |
| <i>Perf.</i> tū'-lis'-sě.      | <i>Perf.</i> lā'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě. |
| <i>Fut.</i> lā-tū'-rūs es'-sě. | <i>Fut.</i> lā'-tum i'-ri.                |

## PARTICIPLES.

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> fě'-rens.  | <i>Perf.</i> lā'-tūs.    |
| <i>Fut.</i> lā-tū'-rūs. | <i>Fut.</i> fě-ren'-dūs. |

## GERUND.

fě-ren'-di, etc.

## SUPINES.

Former. lā'-tum.

Latter. lā'-tū.

NOTE. In the comic writers the following reduplicated forms are found in parts derived from the second root, viz. *tetālī*, *tetulisti*, *tetālī*, *tetulērunt*; *tetulēro*, *tetulērūt*; *tetulisse*, and *tetulisse*.

§ 180. *Fto*, 'to become,' is properly a neuter verb of the third conjugation, having only the parts derived from the first root; but it is used also as a passive of *fācio*, from which it takes those parts of the passive which are derived from the third root, together with the participle in *dus*. The infinitive present has been changed from the regular form *fiērē* to *fiērē*.

*Pres. Indic.* *Pres. Infin.* *Perf. Part.*

fi'-ō, fi'-ē-ri, fac'-tūs, to be made or to become.

## INDICATIVE.

|                                           |                                               |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres. S.</i> fi'-ō, fis, fit;          | <i>Perf.</i> fac'-tūs sum or fu'-i.           |
| <i>P.</i> fi-mūs, fi'-tūs, fi'-unt.       | <i>Plup.</i> fac'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram.    |
| <i>Imperf.</i> fi-ē'-bam, fi-ē'-bās, etc. | <i>Fut. perf.</i> fac'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō. |
| <i>Fut.</i> fi'-am, fi'-ēs, etc.          |                                               |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                                     |                                              |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> fi'-am, fi'-ās, etc.   | <i>Perf.</i> fac'-tūs sim or fu'-ē-rim.      |
| <i>Imp.</i> fi'-ē-ram, ē'-rēs, etc. | <i>Plup.</i> fac'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem. |

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. Sing.* fi; *Plur.* fi'-tě.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* fi'-ě-ri.

*Perf.* fac'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.

*Fut.* fac'-tum i'-ri.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perf.* fac'-tūs.

*Fut.* fā-ci-en'-dūs.

## SUPINE.

*Latter.* fac'-tū.

NOTE. The compounds of *fācio* which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive; as, *calefācio*, to warm; passive, *calefio*; but those which change *a* into *i* form the passive regularly. (Cf. *fucio* in the list, § 172.) Yet *confit*, *dēfit*, and *infit*, occur. See § 183, 12, 13, 14.

§ 181. *Edo*, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation; but in the present of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, and in the imperfect of the subjunctive, it has also forms similar to those of the corresponding tenses of *sum*:—Thus.

## INDICATIVE.

*Present.*

*S.* ě'-dō,

ě'-dis,

ě'-dit,

(or

ēs,

est);

*P.* ěd'-i-tūs,

ěd'-i-tīs,

ě'-dunt.

(or

es'-tīs),

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Imperfect.*

*S.* ěd'-ě-rem,

ěd'-ě-rēs,

ěd'-ě-rēt,

(or es'-sem,

es'-sēs,

es'-sēt);

*P.* ěd'-ě-rē-mūs,

ěd'-ě-rē-tīs,

ěd'-ě-rent,

(or es'-sē-mūs,

es'-sē-tīs,

es'-sent).

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres, S.* ě'-dě,

*P.* ěd'-i-tě,

(or ēs;

es'-tě).

*Fut. S.* ěd'-i-tō,

*P.* ěd'-i-tō'-tě, ě-dun'-tō.

(or es'-tō,

es-tō'-tě).

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* ěd'-ě-rě, (or es'-sě).

## PASSIVE.

*Pres.* ěd'-i-tūr, (or es'-tūr).

*Imperf.* ěd'-ě-rē-tūr, (or es'-sē-tūr).

NOTE. (a.) In the present subjunctive, *ēdim*, *ēdis*, etc., are found, for *ēdam*, *ēdās*, etc.

(b.) In the compounds of *ēdo*, also, forms resembling those of *sum* occur. *Ambēdo* has the participles *ambens* and *ambēsus*; *comēdo* has *comēsus*, *comesurus*, and rarely *comesus*; and *adēdo* and *exēdo* have *adēsus* and *exēsus*.

§ 182. *Eo* is irregular in the parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root, except the imperfect subjunctive and the present infinitive. In these, and in the parts formed from the second and third roots, it is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

NOTE. *Eo* has no first root, and the parts usually derived from that root, consist, in this verb, of terminations only.

| <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Pres. Infin.</i> | <i>Perf. Indic.</i> | <i>Perf. Part.</i> |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| e'-ō,               | i'-rē,              | i'-vī,              | i'-tum, to go.     |

## INDICATIVE.

|                |                                   |                   |                                 |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | <i>S.</i> e'-ō, is, It;           | <i>Fut.</i>       | i'-bō, i'-bīs, i'-bit, etc.     |
|                | <i>P.</i> i'-mūs, i'-tis, e'-unt. | <i>Perf.</i>      | i'-vī, i'-vis'-tī, i'-vīt, etc. |
| <i>Imperf.</i> | <i>S.</i> i'-bam, i'-bas, i'-bāt; | <i>Plup.</i>      | iv'-ē-ram, iv'-ē-rās, etc.      |
|                | <i>P.</i> i-bā'-mūs, etc.         | <i>Fut. perf.</i> | iv'-ē-rō, iv'-ē-rīs, etc.       |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                |                              |              |                                |
|----------------|------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | e'-am, e'-ās, e'-āt, etc.    | <i>Perf.</i> | iv'-ē-rim, iv'-ē-rīs, etc.     |
| <i>Imperf.</i> | i'-rem, i'-rēs, i'-rēt, etc. | <i>Plup.</i> | i'-vis'-sem, i'-vis'-sēs, etc. |

## IMPERATIVE.

|                 |           |           |           |
|-----------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Pres. S.</i> | i,        | <i>P.</i> | i'-tē.    |
| <i>Fut. 2.</i>  | i'-tō,    |           | i-tō'-tē, |
|                 | 3. i'-tō; |           | e-un'-tō. |

## INFINITIVE.

|              |                   |
|--------------|-------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | i'-rē.            |
| <i>Perf.</i> | i-vis'-sē.        |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | i-tū'-rūs es'-sē. |

## PARTICIPLES.

|              |                                   |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | i'-ens, ( <i>gen.</i> e-un'-tis.) |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | i-tū'-rūs, a, um.                 |

## GERUND.

|                |
|----------------|
| e-un'-dī,      |
| e-un'-dō, etc. |

REMARK 1. In some of the compounds the forms *eam*, *ies*, *iet* occur, though rarely, in the future; as, *redeam*, *redies*, *abiet*, *exiet*, *prodiēt*. *Istis*, *issem*, and *isse*, are formed by contraction for *ivistis*, *ivissem*, and *ivisse*. See § 182, 7.

REM. 2. In the passive voice are found the infinitive *tri*, and the third persons singular *iur*, *idātur*, *ibitur*, *itum est*, etc.; *eātur*, *irētur*, *eundum est*, etc., which are used impersonally. See § 184, 2, (a.)

REM. 3. The compounds of *eo*, including *vēneo*, are conjugated like the simple verb, but most of them have *it* in the perfect rather than *ti*. See under *eo* in § 176. *Adeo*, *anteo*, *ineo*, *prætereo*, *sūbeo*, and *transeo*, being used actively, are found in the passive voice. *Iniētur* occurs as a future passive of *ineo*. *Ambio* is regular, like *audīo*, but has either *ambibat* or *ambiēbat*.

NOTE. *Queo*, I can, and *nequeo*, I cannot, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the imperative mood and the gerund, and their participles rarely occur. They are sometimes found in the passive voice, before an infinitive passive.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 183. (1.) Defective verbs are those which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, or persons.

REMARK. There are many verbs which are not found in all the tenses, numbers, and persons, exhibited in the paradigms. Some, not originally defective, are accounted so, because they do not occur in the classics now extant. Others are in their nature defective. Thus, the first and second persons of the passive voice must be wanting in many verbs, from the nature of their signification.

(2.) The following list contains such verbs as are remarkable for wanting many of their parts:—

- |                               |                              |                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Odi, <i>I hate.</i>        | 6. Fāri, <i>to speak.</i>    | 11. Cēdo, <i>tell, or give me.</i> |
| 2. Cēpi, <i>I have begun.</i> | 7. Quæso, <i>I pray.</i>     | 12. Confit, <i>it is done.</i>     |
| 3. Mēmīni, <i>I remember.</i> | 8. Ave, } <i>hail, or</i>    | 13. Dēfit, <i>it is wanting.</i>   |
| 4. Aio, }                     | 9. Salve, } <i>farewell.</i> | 14. Infīt, <i>he begins.</i>       |
| 5. Inquam, } <i>I say.</i>    | 10. Apāge, <i>begone.</i>    | 15. Ovat, <i>he rejoices.</i>      |

1. Odi, cēpi, and mēmīni are used chiefly in the perfect and in the other parts formed from the second root, and are thence called *preteritive* verbs. Odi has also a deponent form in the perfect:—  
Thus,

IND. perf. ō-di or ō-sus sum; plup. ōd'-ē-ram; fut. perf. ōd'-ē-ro.  
SUBJ. perf. ōd'-ē-rim; plup. ōd'-is-sem.  
INF. perf. ōd'-is-se; fut. ō-sū'-rum es'-se.  
PART. fut. ō-sū'-rus; perf. ō'-sus.

NOTE 1. Exōsus and pērōsus, like ōsus, are used actively. Odiuit, for ōdī, occurs, M. Anton. in Cic. Phil. 13, 19: and odiendū in Appuleius.

2. IND. perf. cōp'-pi; plup. cōp'-ē-ram; fut. perf. cōp'-ē-ro.  
SUBJ. perf. cōp'-ē-rim; plup. cōp'-is-sem.  
INF. perf. cōp'-is-se; fut. cōp'-tū'-rum es'-se.  
PART. fut. cōp'-tū'-rus; perf. cōp'-tus.

NOTE 2. In Plautus are found a present, cōpio, present subjunctive, cōpiam, and infinitive, cōpere. Before an infinitive passive, cōpius est, etc., rather than cōpi, etc., are commonly used.

3. IND. perf. mēm'-l-ni; plup. mēm'-l-n-ē-ram; fut. perf. mēm'-l-n-ē-ro.  
SUBJ. perf. mēm'-l-n-ē-rim; plup. mēm'-l-n-is-sem.  
INF. perf. mēm'-l-n-is-se.  
IMPERAT. 2 pers. S. mēm-men'-to; P. mēm-en-tō'-tē.

NOTE 3. Odi and mēmīni have, in the perfect, the sense of the present, and, in the pluperfect and future perfect, the sense of the imperfect and future; as, fugiet atque odierit. Cic. In this respect, novi, I know, the perfect of nosco, to learn, and consuevi, I am wont, the perfect of consuesco, I accustom myself, agree with odi and mēmīni.

4. IND. pres. ai'-o,\* a'-is, a'-it; —, —, ai'-unt.\*  
— imp. ai-ē'-bam, ai-ē'-bās, ai-ē'-bāt; ai-ē'-bā-mūs, ai-ē'-bā'-tis, ai-ē'-bant.  
SUBJ. pres. —, ai'-ās, ai'-āt; —, —, ai'-ant.  
IMPERAT. pres. a'-i. PART. pres. ai'-ens.

NOTE 4. Ais with ne is contracted to ain' like vidēn', ābin': for videme, ābine. The comic writers use the imperfect aibas, aibat and ābant, which are dissyllabic.

5. IND. pres. in'-quam, in'-quīs, in'-quīt; in'-quī-mūs, in'-quī'-tis, in'-qui-unt.  
— imp. —, in'-qui-ē'-bāt, and in'-quī'-bāt; —, —, in'-qui-ē'-bant.  
— fut. —, in'-qui-ēs, in'-qui-ēt; —, —, —.  
— perf. —, in'-quis'-tj, in'-quīt; —, —, —.  
SUBJ. pres. —, in'-qui-ās, in'-qui-āt; —, in'-qui-ā'-tis, in'-qui-ant.  
IMPERAT. in'-quē, in'-quī-to.

6. IND. pres. —, —, fā'-tūr; fut. fā'-bōr, —, fāb'-l-tūr.  
— perf. fātus est; plup. fātus ēram.  
IMPERAT. fā'-rē. PART. pres. fāns; perf. fā'-tūs; fut. fān'-dūs.  
INFIN. pres. fā'-rī or fā'-rī-ēr. GERUND. gen. fān'-dī; abl. fān'-dō.  
SUPINE, fā'-tū.

\*Pronounced a'-yo, a'-yunt, etc., wherever the diphthong ai is followed by a vowel. See § 8, 1.

*Interfari* has the forms *interfatur*, *interfata est*, *interfari*, *interfatus*, and *interfatus*.—*Effari* has *effabor*, *effabere*, *effatus est*, *effatus sunt*; *imperat. effare*; *effari*, *effatus*, *effandus*, *effandu*; *effatu*.—*Præfari* occurs in the following forms, *præfatur*, *præfamur*; *præfabantur*; *præfärer*; *præfarentur*; *præfati sumus*; *præfatus fuero*; *imperat. præfatio*, *præfatio*; *præfatus*, *præfatus*, *præfandus*; *præfando*.—*Prófari* has *profatur*, *profata est*, *profata sunt*, *profatus* and *profatus*.

7. IND. *pres.* *quæ'-so*, —, *quæ'-sit*; *quæ'-ũ-mũs*, —, —.  
INF. *pres.* *quæs'-e-rẽ*.

8. IMPERAT. *ũ-vẽ*, *ũ-vẽ'-tẽ*; *ũ-vẽ'-to*. INF. *ũ-vẽ'-rẽ*.  
NOTE. *Avẽre* and *salvẽre* are often used with *jũbeo*.

9. IND. *pres.* *sal'-ve-o*; *fut.* *sal-vẽ'-bĩs*. INF. *pres.* *sal-vẽ'-rẽ*.  
IMPERAT. *sal'-vẽ*, *sal-vẽ'-tẽ*; *sal-vẽ'-to*.

10. IMPERAT. *ũp'-ũ-gẽ*. So *age* with a subject either singular or plural.

11. IMPERAT. *ing.* *cẽ'-do*; *pl.* *cet'-tẽ* for *cẽd'-i-tẽ*. Hence *cẽdodum*.

12. IND. *pres.* *con'-fĩt*; *fut.* *con-fĩ'-et*.

SUBJ. *pres.* *con-fĩ'-at*; *imperf.* *con-fĩ'-ẽ-rẽt*. INF. *pres.* *con-fĩ'-ẽ-rĩ*.

13. IND. *pres.* *dẽ'-fĩt*; *pl.* *dẽ-fĩ'-unt*; *fut.* *dẽ-fĩ'-ẽt*. SUBJ. *pres.* *dẽ-fĩ'-at*.  
INF. *pres.* *dẽ-fĩ'-ẽ-rĩ*. So *ef-fĩ'-ẽ-rĩ*, and *in-ter-fĩ'-ẽ-rĩ*. *Plaut*; and *in-ter-fĩ'-at*. *Lucr*.

14. IND. *pres.* *in'-fĩt*; *pl.* *in-fĩ'-unt*.

15. IND. *pres.* *ũ'-vãt*. SUBJ. *pres.* *ũ'-vẽt*; *imperf.* *ũ-vã'-rẽt*.

PART. *pres.* *ũ'-vãns*; *perf.* *ũ-vã'-tũs*; *fut.* *ũv-ã-tũ'-rũs*. GERUND, *ũ-vãn'-dũ*.

REMARK 1. Among defective verbs are sometimes, also, included the following:—*Fõrem*, *fõres*, etc., *fĩrẽ*, (see § 154, R. 3.) *Ausim*, *ausis*, *ausit*; *ausim*. *Fazẽ* and *fazim*, *fazis*, *fazit*; *fazimus*, *fazitũs*, *fazimũ*. *Fazem*. The form in *o* is an old future perfect; that in *im* a perfect, and that in *em* a pluperfect subjunctive. See § 182, 7, (c.), and 9.

REM. 2. In the present tense, the first person singular, *fũro*, to be mad, and *dor* and *der*, from *dõ*, to give, are not used. So in the imperative *sci*, *cũpe* and *polle*, from *scio*, *cũpio*, and *polleo*, do not occur.

REM. 3. A few words, sometimes classed with defectives, are formed by contraction from a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis* for *si vis*, *sultis* for *si vultis*, *sodes* for *si audes* (for *audies*).

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 184. (a.) Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a *personal* subject.

(b.) The subject of an impersonal verb in the active voice is, for the most part, either an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause; but in English the neuter pronoun, *it*, commonly stands before the verb, and represents such clause; as, *me delectat scribẽre*, *it* delights me to write. Sometimes an accusative depending on an impersonal verb takes, in English, the place of a subject; as, *me misẽret tui*, I pity thee.

1. Impersonal verbs in the active voice are conjugated in the several conjugations like *delectat*, it delights; *dẽcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *evẽnĩt*, it happens; thus:—

|                   | 1st Conj.      | 2d Conj.   | 3d Conj.     | 4th Conj.  |
|-------------------|----------------|------------|--------------|------------|
| <b>IND. Pres.</b> | delectat,      | dēcet,     | contingit,   | evēnit,    |
| <b>Imp.</b>       | delectābat,    | decēbat,   | contingēbat, | eveniēbat, |
| <b>Fut.</b>       | delectābit,    | decēbit,   | continget,   | eveniet,   |
| <b>Perf.</b>      | delectāvit,    | decuit,    | contigit,    | evēnit,    |
| <b>Plup.</b>      | delectāverat,  | decuērat,  | contigērat,  | evenērāt,  |
| <b>Fut. perf.</b> | delectāverit.  | decuērit.  | contigērit.  | evenērīt.  |
| <b>SUB. Pres.</b> | delectet,      | deceat,    | contingat,   | eveniat,   |
| <b>Imp.</b>       | delectāret,    | decēret,   | contingēret, | eveniret,  |
| <b>Perf.</b>      | delectāverit,  | decuērit,  | contigērit,  | evenērīt,  |
| <b>Plup.</b>      | delectavisset. | decuisset. | contigisset. | evenisset. |
| <b>INF. Pres.</b> | delectāre,     | decēre,    | contingēre,  | evenire,   |
| <b>Perf.</b>      | delectavisse.  | decuisse.  | contigisse.  | evenisse.  |

2. (a.) Most *neuter* and many *active* verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, by changing the personal subject of the active voice into an ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as,

*Illī pugnant;* or *pugnātur ab illis*, they fight. *Illī querunt*, or *queritur ab illis*, they ask. Cf. § 141, Rem. 2.

(b.) In the passive form, the subject in English is, commonly, either the *agent*, expressed or understood, or an *abstract* noun formed from the verb; as,

*Pugnātum est*, we, they, etc. fought; or, the *battle* was fought. *Concurritur*, the *people* run together; or, there is a *concourse*.

(c.) Sometimes the English subject in the passive form is, in Latin, an oblique case dependent on the verb; as, *favētur tibi*, thou art favored.

The following are the forms of impersonal verbs in the several conjugations of the passive voice:—

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

|                |                          |                        |                        |                        |
|----------------|--------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>Pres.</b>   | pugnātur,                | favētur,               | curritur,              | venitur,               |
| <b>Imp.</b>    | pugnābātur,              | favebātur,             | currebātur,            | veniebātur,            |
| <b>Fut.</b>    | pugnābitur,              | favebitur,             | currētur,              | venietur,              |
| <b>Perf.</b>   | pugnātum est or fuit,    | fautum est or fuit,    | cursum est or fuit,    | ventum est or fuit,    |
| <b>Plup.</b>   | pugnātum erat or fuērat, | fautum erat or fuērat, | cursum erat or fuērat, | ventum erat or fuērat, |
| <b>Fut. p.</b> | pugnātum erit or fuērit. | fautum erit or fuērit. | cursum erit or fuērit. | ventum erit or fuērit. |

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

|              |                            |                          |                          |                          |
|--------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>Pres.</b> | pugnētur,                  | faveātur,                | currātur,                | veniātur,                |
| <b>Imp.</b>  | pugnārētur,                | faverētur,               | currerētur,              | venirētur,               |
| <b>Perf.</b> | pugnātum sit or fuērit,    | fautum sit or fuērit,    | cursum sit or fuērit,    | ventum sit or fuērit,    |
| <b>Plup.</b> | pugnātum esset or fuisset. | fautum esset or fuisset. | cursum esset or fuisset. | ventum esset or fuisset. |

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

|              |                          |                        |                        |                        |
|--------------|--------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>Pres.</b> | pugnāri,                 | favēri,                | curri,                 | veniri,                |
| <b>Perf.</b> | pugnātum esse or fuisse, | fautum esse or fuisse, | cursum esse or fuisse, | ventum esse or fuisse, |
| <b>Fut.</b>  | pugnātum iri.            | fautum iri.            | cursum iri.            | ventum iri.            |

3. In like manner, in the periphrastic conjugation, the neuter gender of the participle in *dus*, both of active and neuter verbs, is used impersonally with *est*, etc., and the dative of the person; as, *mihi scribendum fuit*, I have been obliged to write; *moriendum est omnibus*, all must die. See § 162, 15, R. 5.

REMARK 1. Grammarians usually reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, all of which are of the second conjugation, viz. *décet*, *libet*, *licet*, *liquet*, *miseret*, *oportet*, *piget*, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, and *taedet*. (See § 169.) Four of these, *décet*, *libet*, *licet*, and *liquet* occur also in the third person plural, but without personal subjects. There seems, however, to be no good reason for distinguishing the verbs above enumerated from other impersonal verbs. The following are such other verbs as are most commonly used impersonally:—

(a.) In the first conjugation:—

|                         |                                  |                               |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Constat, it is evident. | Văcat, there is leisure.         | Pugnătur, a battle is fought. |
| Juvat, it delights.     | Certătur, there is a contention. | Stătur, they stand firm.      |
| Præstat, it is better.  | Peccătur, a fault is committed.  |                               |
| Restat, it remains.     |                                  |                               |
| Stat, it is resolved.   |                                  |                               |

(b.) In the second conjugation:—

|                           |                                              |                                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Appăret, it appears.      | Pertinet, it pertains.                       | Persuadătur, he, they, etc. are persuaded.       |
| Attinet, it belongs to.   | Plăcet, it pleases.                          | Pertăsum est, he, they, etc. are disgusted with. |
| Displicet, it displeases. | Flătur, we, etc. weep, or, there is weeping. | Silătur, silence is maintained.                  |
| Dălet, it grieves.        | Nocătur, injury is inflicted.                |                                                  |
| Miserătur, it distresses. |                                              |                                                  |
| Pătet, it is plain.       |                                              |                                                  |

(c.) In the third conjugation:—

|                             |                            |                             |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Accădit, it happens.        | Miserescit, it distresses. | Desinătur, there is an end. |
| Conducit, it is useful.     | Sufficit, it suffices.     | Scribitur, it is written.   |
| Contingit, it happens.      | Creditur, it is believed.  | Vivătur, we, etc. live.     |
| Fallit, or } it escapes me; | Curritur, people run.      |                             |
| Făgit me, } I do not know.  |                            |                             |

(d.) In the fourth conjugation:—

|                                         |                                 |                           |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Convănit, it is agreed upon; it is fit. | Expădit, it is expedient.       | Scătur, it is known.      |
| Evenit, it happens.                     | Dormătur, we, they, etc. sleep. | Itur, they, etc. go.      |
|                                         |                                 | Venătur, they, etc. come. |

(e.) Among irregular verbs:—

|                       |                                   |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Fit, it happens.      | Prăterit me, it is unknown to me. | Răfert, it concerns.  |
| Intăret, it concerns. | Prădest, it avails.               | Săbit, it occurs.     |
| Obest, it is hurtful. |                                   | Supărest, it remains. |

(f.) To these may be added verbs signifying the state of the weather, or the operations of nature. The subject of these may be *Jupiter*, *deus*, or *cælum*, which are sometimes expressed. Of this kind are the following:—

|                             |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Fulget, } it lightens.      | Lapădat, it rains stones.   | Tănat, it thunders.        |
| Fulgurat, } it grows light. | Lucescit, } it grows light. | Vesperascit, } evening     |
| Fulminat, } it freezes.     | Illucescit, } it snows.     | Advesperascit, } ap-       |
| Gelat, it freezes.          | Ningit, it rains.           | Invesperascit, } proachet. |
| Grandinat, it hails.        | Pluit, it rains.            |                            |

*Lapădat*, *ningit*, and *pluit* are also used impersonally in the passive voice,



**REM. 2.** Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, let it delight. In the passive voice, their perfect participles are used only in the neuter.

**REM. 3.** Most of the impersonal verbs want participles, gerunds, and supines; but *panitet* has a present participle, futures in *rus* and *aus*, and the gerund. *Pudet* and *piget* have also the gerund and future passive participle.

**REM. 4.** Most of the above verbs are also used personally, but frequently in a somewhat different sense; as, *ut Tiberis inter eos et pons interesset*, so that the Tiber and bridge were between them.

## REDUNDANT VERBS.

§ 185. Redundant verbs are those which have different forms to express the same meaning.

Verbs may be redundant in *termination*; as, *fabrīco* and *fabrīcor*, to frame;—in conjugation; as, *lāvo*, *-āre*, and *lāvō*, *-ēre*, to wash;—or in certain tenses; as, *ōdi* and *ōsus sum*, I hate.

1. The following deponent verbs, besides their passive form, have an active form in *o*, of the same meaning, but which is, in general, rarely used. A few, however, which are marked *r.*, occur more rarely than the corresponding forms in *o*.

|                                      |                                 |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Abominor, to abhor.                  | Fabrīcor, to frame.             | Oscitor, to gape.                     |
| Adūlor, to flatter.                  | Fenēror, to lend on interest.   | Pacificor, <i>r.</i> to make a peace. |
| Altercor, to dispute.                | Fluctuor, to fluctuate.         | Palpor, to caress.                    |
| Amplexor, to embrace.                | Frustror, to disappoint.        | Partior, to divide.                   |
| Arbitror, to suppose.                | Fructuor, to sprout.            | Popūlor, to lay waste.                |
| Argitor, to prate.                   | Impertior, <i>r.</i> to impart. | Pūnior, to punish.                    |
| Assentior, to assent.                | Jurgo, to quarrel.              | Ruminor, to ruminate.                 |
| Aucipor, to hunt after.              | Lacrimor, <i>r.</i> to weep.    | Sciscitor, to inquire.                |
| Augūror, to foretell.                | Ludiflor, to ridicule.          | Sortior, to cast lots.                |
| Aurigor, to drive a chariot.         | Luxūrior, <i>r.</i> to be rank. | Stabūlor, to stable.                  |
| Auspīcor, to take the auspices.      | Medīcor, to heal.               | Tueor, to defend.                     |
| Cachinnor, <i>r.</i> to laugh aloud. | Mēreor, to deserve.             | Tumultuor, to be in confusion.        |
| Comitor, to accompany.               | Mētor, to measure.              | Tūtor, to defend.                     |
| Commentor, to deliberate.            | Misēreor, to commiserate.       | Ūtor, to use.                         |
| Convivor, to feast together.         | Modēror, to moderate.           | Urīnor, to dive.                      |
| Cunctor, (cont.), to delay.          | Munēror, <i>r.</i> to bestow.   | Velīfīcor, to set sail.               |
| Dignor, to deem worthy.              | Nictor, <i>r.</i> to wink.      | Venēror, to reverence.                |
| Depascor, to feed upon.              | Nūtrior, <i>r.</i> to nourish.  | Vocīfīcor, to bowl.                   |
| Elucubror, to elaborate.             | Obsōnor, to cater.              |                                       |
|                                      | Opīnor, to suppose.             |                                       |

2. The following verbs are redundant in conjugation:—

|                            |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Boo, -āre, } to roar.      | Fulgeo, -āre, } to shine.  | Sōno, -āre, } to sound.    |
| Boo, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }     | Fulgo, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }   | Sōno, -ēre, } to sound.    |
| Bullo, -āre, } to boil.    | Lāvo, -āre, } to wash.     | Strīdeo, -ēre, } to creak. |
| Bullio, -īre, } }          | Lāvo, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }    | Strīdo, -ēre, } }          |
| Cleo, -āre, } to excite.   | Līno, -ēre, } to anoint.   | Tergeo, -ēre, } to wipe.   |
| Cio, -īre, <i>r.</i> }     | Līno, -īre, <i>r.</i> }    | Tergo, -ēre, } }           |
| Denso, -āre, } to thicken. | Nicto, -āre, } to wink.    | Tueor, -ēre, } to protect. |
| Denseo, -ēre, } }          | Nicto, -ēre, } }           | Tuor, -ī, <i>r.</i> }      |
| Ferveo, -ēre, } to boil.   | Sālo, -ēre, } to salt.     |                            |
| Fervo, -ēre, } }           | Sālio, -īre, } }           |                            |
| Fōdio, -ēre, } to dig.     | Scāteo, -ēre, } to abound. |                            |
| Fōdio, -īre, <i>r.</i> }   | Scāto, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }   |                            |

Those marked *r.* are rarely used.

*Mörör, örör, and pörör*, also, are redundant in conjugation in certain parts. See in lists §§ 174 and 177.

§ 186. 1. Some verbs are spelled alike, or nearly alike, but differ in conjugation, quantity, pronunciation, or signification, or in two or more of these respects.

Such are the following:—

|                                     |                                  |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Abdicō, -äre, to abdicate.          | Edo, -äre, to eat.               | Nitor, -i, to strive.              |
| Abdicō, -äre, to refuse.            | Edo, -äre, to publish.           | Obséro, -äre, to lock up.          |
| Accido, -äre, to fall upon.         | Edüco, -äre, to educate.         | Obséro, -äre, to sow.              |
| Accido, -äre, to cut down.          | Edüco, -äre, to draw out.        | Oecido, -äre, to fall.             |
| Addo, -äre, to add.                 | Efféro, -äre, to make wild.      | Oecido, -äre, to kill.             |
| Adeo, -äre, to go to.               | Efféro, -äre, to carry out.      | Opërio, -äre, to cover.            |
| Aggëro, -äre, to heap up.           | Excido, -äre, to fall out.       | Opëror, -äri, to work.             |
| Aggëro, -äre, to heap upon.         | Excido, -äre, to cut off.        | Oppërior, -äri, to wait for.       |
| Allëgo, -äre, to depute.            | Fërio, -äre, to strike.          | Pando, -äre, to bend.              |
| Allëgo, -äre, to choose.            | Fërio, -äre, to bear.            | Pando, -äre, to extend.            |
| Appello, -äre, to call.             | Fërior, -äri, to keep holiday.   | Päro, -äre, to prepare.            |
| Appello, -äre, to drive to.         | Frigeo, -äre, to be cold.        | Päreo, -äre, to appear.            |
| Cädo, -äre, to fall.                | Frigo, -äre, to fry.             | Pärio, -äre, to bring forth.       |
| Cädo, -äre, to cut.                 | Fügo, -äre, to put to flight.    | Pärio, -äre, to balance.           |
| Cädo, -äre, to yield.               | Fügo, -äre, to fly.              | Pendeo, -äre, to hang.             |
| Cäleo, -äre, to be hot.             | Fundo, -äre, to found.           | Pendo, -äre, to weigh.             |
| Calleo, -äre, to be hard.           | Fundo, -äre, to pour out.        | Percölo, -äre, to filter.          |
| Cäno, -äre, to sing.                | Incido, -äre, to fall into.      | Percölo, -äre, to adorn.           |
| Cäneo, -äre, to be gray.            | Incido, -äre, to cut into.       | Permäneo, -äre, to remain.         |
| Cäreo, -äre, to want.               | Indico, -äre, to show.           | Permäno, -äre, to flow through.    |
| Cäro, -äre, to card wool.           | Indico, -äre, to proclaim.       | Prædico, -äre, to publish.         |
| Cëlo, -äre, to conceal.             | Inficio, -äre, to stain.         | Prædico, -äre, to foretell.        |
| Cælo, -äre, to carve.               | Infittior, -äri, to deny.        | Prödo, -äre, to betray.            |
| Censeo, -äre, to think.             | Intercido, -äre, to happen.      | Prödeo, -äre, to come forth.       |
| Sentio, -äre, to feel.              | Intercido, -äre, to cut asunder. | Recëdo, -äre, to retire.           |
| Claudo, -äre, to shut.              | Jäceo, -äre, to lie.             | Recëdo, -äre, to fall back.        |
| Claudo, -äre, to be lame.           | Jäcio, -äre, to throw.           | Recido, -äre, to cut off.          |
| Colligo, -äre, to bind together.    | Läbo, -äre, to totter.           | Reddo, -äre, to return.            |
| Colligo, -äre, to collect.          | Läbor, -i, to glide.             | Rëdeo, -äre, to return.            |
| Cölo, -äre, to strain.              | Lacto, -äre, to suckle.          | Rëfero, -äre, to bring back.       |
| Cölo, -äre, to cultivate.           | Lacto, -äre, to deceive.         | Rëfërio, -äre, to strike back.     |
| Compello, -äre, to accost.          | Lëgo, -äre, to depute.           | Rëlego, -äre, to remove.           |
| Compello, -äre, to force.           | Lëgo, -äre, to read.             | Rëlego, -äre, to read over.        |
| Concido, -äre, to cut to pieces.    | Liceo, -äre, to be lawful.       | Sëdo, -äre, to ally.               |
| Concido, -äre, to fall.             | Liceor, -äri, to bid for.        | Sëdeo, -äre, to sit.               |
| Conscendo, -äre, to embark.         | Liquo, -äre, to melt.            | Sido, -äre, to sink.               |
| Conscendo, -äre, to tear to pieces. | Liqueo, -äre, to be manifested.  | Sëro, -äre, to sow.                |
| Consterno, -äre, to terrify.        | Liquor, -i, to melt.             | Sëro, -äre, to entwine.            |
| Consterno, -äre, to strew over.     | Mäno, -äre, to flow.             | Succido, -äre, to fall under.      |
| Decido, -äre, to fall down.         | Mäneo, -äre, to stay.            | Succido, -äre, to cut down.        |
| Decido, -äre, to cut off.           | Mando, -äre, to command.         | Vädo, -äre, to go.                 |
| Decipio, -äre, to deceive.          | Mando, -äre, to eat.             | Vädor, -äri, to bind over by bail. |
| Despicio, -äre, to dote.            | Mëto, -äre, to reap.             | Vëneo, -äre, to be sold.           |
| Deligo, -äre, to tie up.            | Mëtor, -äri, to measure.         | Vënio, -äre, to come.              |
| Deligo, -äre, to choose.            | Mëtior, -äri, to pity.           | Vënör, -äri, to hunt.              |
| Diligo, -äre, to love.              | Mëtuo, -äre, to fear.            | Vincio, -äre, to bind.             |
| Dico, -äre, to say.                 | Misëror, -äri, to pity.          | Vinco, -äre, to conquer.           |
| Dico, -äre, to dedicate.            | Mörör, -äri, to delay.           | Völo, -äre, to fly.                |
|                                     | Mörör, -i, to die.               | Völo, velle, to be willing.        |
|                                     | Niteo, -äre, to glitter.         |                                    |

## 2. Different verbs have sometimes the same perfect; as,

|                                 |                                  |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Acceo, acui, <i>to be sour.</i> | Fulcio, fulsi, <i>to prop.</i>   | Paveo, pavi, <i>to fear.</i>     |
| Acuo, acui, <i>to sharpen.</i>  | Luceo, luxi, <i>to shine.</i>    | Pasco, pavi, <i>to feed.</i>     |
| Cresco, crevi, <i>to grow.</i>  | Lugeo, luxi, <i>to mourn.</i>    | Pendeo, pependi, <i>to hang.</i> |
| Cerno, crevi, <i>to decree.</i> | Mulceo, mulsi, <i>to soothe.</i> | Pendo, pependi, <i>to weigh.</i> |
| Fulgeo, fulsi, <i>to shine.</i> | Mulgeo, mulsi, <i>to milk.</i>   |                                  |

To these add some of the compounds of *sto* and *sisto*.

## 3. Different verbs have sometimes, also, the same supine or perfect participle; as,

|                                  |                                      |                                   |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Frigo, frictum, <i>to rub.</i>   | Pango, pactum, <i>to drive in.</i>   | Pätior, passus, <i>to suffer.</i> |
| Frigo, frictum, <i>to roast.</i> |                                      | Teneo, tentum, <i>to hold.</i>    |
| Mäneo, mansum, <i>to remain.</i> | Paciscor, pactus, <i>to bargain.</i> | Tendo, tentum, <i>to stretch.</i> |
|                                  |                                      | Verro, versum, <i>to brush.</i>   |
| Mando, mansum, <i>to chew.</i>   | Pando, passum, <i>to extend.</i>     | Verto, versum, <i>to turn.</i>    |

## DERIVATION OF VERBS.

§ 187. Verbs are derived either from nouns, from adjectives, or from other verbs.

I. Verbs derived from nouns or adjectives are called *denominatives*.

1. (a.) Active denominatives are generally of the first conjugation; those which are neuter, of the second. They are usually formed by adding respectively *o* and *eo* to the root; as,

## FROM NOUNS.

## Actives.

|                                      |
|--------------------------------------|
| Armo, <i>to arm,</i> (arma.)         |
| Fraudo, <i>to defraud,</i> (fraus.)  |
| Nomino, <i>to name,</i> (nomen.)     |
| Numero, <i>to number,</i> (numerus.) |

## Neuters.

|                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|
| Flüreo, <i>to bloom,</i> (flos.)            |
| Frondeo, <i>to produce leaves,</i> (frons.) |
| Luceo, <i>to shine,</i> (lux.)              |
| Vireo, <i>to flourish,</i> (vis.)           |

## FROM ADJECTIVES.

|                                         |                                        |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Albo, <i>to whiten,</i> (albus.)        | Albeo, <i>to be white,</i> (albus.)    |
| Celebro, <i>to frequent,</i> (celëber.) | Calveo, <i>to be bald,</i> (calvus.)   |
| Libëro, <i>to free,</i> (liber.)        | Fläveo, <i>to be yellow,</i> (flävus.) |

(b.) Sometimes a preposition is prefixed in forming the derivative; as,

|                                               |                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Coacervo, <i>to heap together,</i> (acervus.) | Extirpo, <i>to extirpate,</i> (stirps.) |
| Excävo, <i>to excavate,</i> (cävus.)          | Illäqueo, <i>to inamare,</i> (läqueo.)  |

2. Many deponents of the first conjugation, derived from nouns, express the exercise of the character, office, etc., denoted by the primitive; as, *architector*, to build; *comitor*, to accompany; *fävor*, to steal; from *architectus*, *cömes*, and *für*.

3. Such as denote resemblance or imitation are called *imitatives*; as, *cornitor*, to imitate a crow, from *cornix*; *Gräcor*, to imitate the Greeks. Some of these end in *isso*; as, *patrisso*, to imitate a father.

II. Verbs derived from other verbs are either *frequentatives*, *inceptives*, *desideratives*, *diminutives*, or *intensives*.

1. *Frequentatives* express a repetition, or an increase of the action expressed by the primitive.

(a.) They are all of the first conjugation, and are formed by adding *o* to the third-root; as, *dōmo*, (*dōmīt-*) *dōmīto*. So *adjūvo*, *adjūto*; *dīco*, *dīcto*; *gēro*, *gēsto*. In verbs of the first conjugation, *ā* of the root is often changed into *ū*; as, *clāmo*, to cry, (*clamāt-*) *clamīto*, to cry frequently.

(b.) A few frequentatives are formed by adding *ūto* to the first root of the primitive; as, *āgo* (*āg-*) *āgūto*. So *lāleo*, *lāttūto*; *nosco*, *nosctūto*; *quæro*, *quærūto*.

(c.) Frequentatives, from primitives of the second, third, and fourth conjugations, sometimes serve again as primitives, from which new frequentatives are formed; as, *dīco*, *dīcto*, *dīctūto*; *curro*, *curso*, *curstūto*; *vēnio*, *vento*, *ventūto*. Sometimes the second or intermediate form is not in use.

(d.) Some frequentatives are deponent; as, *minītor*, from *minor* (*mināt-*); *versor*, from *verto* (*vers-*). So *amplexor*, *sector*, *lōquitor*, from *amplector*, *sēquor*, and *lōquor*.

(e.) When verbs of this class express simply an increase of the action denoted by the primitive, they are, by some grammarians, called *intensives*.

2. *Inceptives*, or *inchoatives* mark the beginning of the action or state expressed by the primitive.

(a.) They all end in *sco*, and are formed by adding that termination to the root of the primitive, with its connecting vowel, which, in the third conjugation, is *i*; as, *cāleo*, to be hot; *cālesco*, to grow hot.

So *lābo*, (*āre*), *lābasco*; *ingēmo*, (*ēre*), *ingēmisco*; *obdormio*, (*ire*), *obdormisco*. *Hisco* is contracted for *hiasco*, from *hio*, (*āre*).

(b.) Most inceptives are formed from verbs of the second conjugation.

(c.) Some inceptives are formed from nouns and adjectives by adding *asco* or *esco* to the root; as, *puérasco*, from *puer*; *jūvenesco*, from *jūvenis*.

NOTE. Inceptives are all neuter, and of the third conjugation. See § 173.

Some verbs in *sco*, which are not inceptives, are active; as, *disco*, *posco*.

3. *Desideratives* express a desire of doing the act denoted by the primitive.

(a.) They are formed from the third root, by adding *ūrio*; as, *cāno*, to sup, (*cānāt-*) *cānātūrio*, to desire to sup.

(b.) Desideratives are all of the fourth conjugation. See § 176, Note.

(c.) Verbs in *ūrio*, having *u* long, are not desideratives; as, *prūrio*, *līgūrio*.

4. *Diminutives* denote a feeble or trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the root of the primitive; as, *conscribillo*, to scribble, from *conscribo*.

They are few in number, and are all of the first conjugation.

5. *Intensives* denote eager action. They are usually formed by adding *so*, *esso*, or *isso* to the root of the primitive; as, *fācesso*, to act earnestly—from *fācio*.

So *cāpesso*, *incesso*, from *cāpio* and *incēdo*. *Concīpisco*, to desire greatly, though in form an intensive, is, in its signification, an intensive.

NOTE. Verbs of all these classes have sometimes simply the meaning of their primitives.

## COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

## § 188. Verbs are compounded variously :—

1. Of a noun and a verb; as, *edifico, belligero, lucrifacio*. See § 108, R. 1.
2. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *amplifico, multiplico*.
3. Of two verbs; as, *caléfacio, madéfacio, patéfacio*.

REM. In verbs of this class, the first part, which is a verb of the second conjugation, loses its final *o*; the second part is always the verb *facio*.

4. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *benéfacio, maledico, sūtigo, nolo, negligo*.
5. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *addūco, excōlo, prōdo, subrepto, discerno, stjungo*.
6. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *pernocto, irrētio*.

§ 189. In composition with particles, the vowels *a* and *e* and the diphthong *æ* in the radical syllable of the simple verb are often changed in the compound.

1. The following simple verbs in composition change *a* into *e* :—

|         |        |          |        |         |         |         |
|---------|--------|----------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| Arceo,  | Carpō, | Farcio,  | Jacto, | Pārio,  | Patro,  | Spargo, |
| Candeo, | Damno, | Fātsior, | Lacto, | Partio, | Sacro,  | Tracto. |
| Capto,  | Fallo, | Grādior, | Mando, | Pātor,  | Scando, |         |

Exc. *A* is retained in *amando, pramando, desacro, and retracto*; *pradamno, and pertracto* sometimes also occur. *A* is also changed into *e* in *occento* from *canto*, and *anhēlo* from *hālo*; *comperco* also is found.

2. The following, in the first root, change *ā* and *ē* into *ī*; viz.

āgo, cādo, ēgeo, ēmo, frango, pangō, prēmō, rēgo, sēdeo, spēcio, tango.

3. These change *ā* and *ē*, in the first and second roots, into *ī*; viz.

sāllo, *to leap*, sāpio, tāceo, and tēneo.

4. These change *ā* into *ī*, and *æ* into *ī*, in all the roots; viz.

hābeo, lācio, lāteo, plāceo, stātuo; cædo, lædo, and quæro.

5. The following change *ā*, in the first root, into *ī*, and in the third root into *e*; viz.

cāno, cāpio, fāteor, jācio, rāpio, and āpiscor.

Exc. (a.) *A* is retained in *circumāgo, perāgo, salāgo*; *antēhābeo, posthābeo, depango, repango, complāceo, and perplāceo*. *Occāno* and *recāno* also sometimes occur. *E* is retained in *coēmo, circumsedeo, and supersēdeo*. *Antēcāpio* and *antēcīpio* are both used; so also are *superjācio* and *superjīcio*.

(b.) *Cōgo* and *dēgo* are formed, by contraction, from *con, de*, and *āgo*; *dēmo*, *prōmo* and *sūmo*, from *de, pro, sub*, and *ēmo*; *prābeo*, and perhaps *dēbeo*, from *præ, de*, and *hābeo*; *pergo* and *surgo*, from *per, sub*, and *rēgo*.

NOTE 1. *Facio*, compounded with a preposition, changes *d* into *t* in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, *afficio, affēci, affectum*. Some compounds of *facio* with nouns and adjectives, change *d* into *t*, and also drop *i* before *o*, and are of the first conjugation; as, *significo, latifico, magnifico*. *Spēcio* forms some compounds in the same manner; as, *conspicor* and *suspīcor*.

NOTE 2. *Lēgo*, compounded with *con, de, di, e, inter, nec*, and *se*, changes *l* into *t*, in the first root; as, *colligo, negligo*, etc.; but with *ad, præ, per, re, sub*, and *trans*, it retains *l*; as, *allēgo*.

NOTE 3. *Calco* and *salto*, in composition, change *a* into *u*; as, *inculco, insulto*. *Plaudo* changes *au* into *ō*; as, *explōdo*; except *applaudo*. *Audīo* changes *au* into *ē* in *obēdīo*. *Causo, claudo*, and *quātīo*, drop *a*; as, *accūsō, rēclādo, percūtīo*. *Jūro* changes *ū* into *ē* in *dējūro* and *pējūro*, but *dējūro*, also, is in use.

NOTE 4. In the compounds of *cæveo*, *mæneo*, and *træho*, *d* remains unchanged, and so also does *æ* in the compounds of *hæreo*.

NOTE 5. The simple verbs with which the following are compounded are not used:—

|           |                   |          |          |           |          |
|-----------|-------------------|----------|----------|-----------|----------|
| Dēfendo,  | Impedio,          | Confuto, | Instigo, | Conniveo, |          |
| Offendo,  | Imbuo,            | Rēfuto,  | Impleo,  | Percello, |          |
| Expērior, | Compello, (-āre,) | Ingruo,  | Compleo, | Induo,    | and some |
| Expēdio,  | Appello, (-āre,)  | Congruo, | Rēnideo, | Exuo,     | others.  |

For the changes produced in prepositions by composition with verbs see § 186.

## PARTICLES.

§ 190. 1. *Particles* are those parts of speech which are neither declined nor conjugated. They are divided into four classes—*adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

NOTE. A word may sometimes belong to two or more of these classes, according to its connection.

## ADVERBS.

2. An adverb is a particle used to modify or limit the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as,

Bēne et sapienter dixit, he spoke *well* and *wisely*; Cūmis egregie fīdēlis, a *remarkably* faithful dog; Nīmis valde laudāre, to praise *too much*. Compare § 277, R. 1.

3. Adverbs, in regard to their *signification*, are divided into various classes; as, adverbs of *place*, *time*, *manner*, etc., and some belong to either class according to their connection.

4. In regard to their *etymology*, adverbs are either *primitive* or *derivative*.

REMARK. Among primitive adverbs are here classed not only such as cannot be traced to any more remote root, but also all which are not included in the regular classes of derivative adverbs hereafter mentioned.

## PRIMITIVE ADVERBS.

§ 191. The primitive adverbs are few in number, when compared with the derivatives, and most of them are contained in the following lists marked I, II, and III.

### I. Adverbs of Place and Order.

|                            |                          |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| ideo, so far, as far.      | ālcūbi, somewhere.       | ālcquōversum, toward     |
| ādūc, to this place.       | ālcundē, from some       | some place.              |
| adversūa, } opposite,      | place.                   | ālcundē, from another    |
| adversum, } over against,  | ālcū, to another place.  | place.                   |
| exadversūa, —um, } toward. | ālcquā, in some way.     | circā, } around.         |
| ālcā, by another way.      | ālcorsum, toward another | circum, }                |
| ālcās, in another place.   | er place.                | circulār, on every side. |
| ālcibi, elsewhere.         | ālcquō, to some place.   | circumcircā, all around. |

*citra, on this side.*

*citro, hither.*

*contra, over against.*

*cōram, before.*

*dēhinc, henceforth.*

*deinceps, successively.*

*deinde, after that.*

*dēniquē, finally.*

*dēnuo, again.*

*deorsum, downward.*

*dextrorsum, toward the right.*

*eā, that way.*

*eādem, the same way.*

*eō, to that place, thither.*

*eōdem, to the same place.*

*exinde, after that.*

*extrā, without.*

*extrinsecūs, from without.*

*fōrās, out of doors.*

*fōris, without.*

*hāc, this way.*

*hactēnūs, thus far.*

*hic, here.*

*hinc, hence.*

*hūc, hither.*

*hūcuscūq̄, thus far.*

*hōrsūm, hitherward.*

*ibi, there.*

*ibidem, in the same place.*

*illāc, that way.*

*illuc, there.*

*illinc, thence.*

*illō, thither.*

*illōrsūm, thitherward.*

*illūc, thither.*

*indē, thence.*

*indīdem, from the same place.*

*infrā, below, beneath.*

*Inibi, in that place.*

*intrinsecūs, from within.*

*intrā, intro, } within.*

*introrsum, } within.*

*intūs, } within.*

*istāc, that way.*

*istic, there.*

*istinc, thence.*

*istō, istūc, thither.*

*juxtā, near, alike.*

*nēcūbi, lest any where.*

*neutro, to neither side.*

*neutrūbi, to neither place, to neither side.*

*nullibi, } no where.*

*nusquam, } no where.*

*pēnlūs, within.*

*pōnē, post, behind, back.*

*porro, onward.*

*prōcūl, far.*

*prōpē, proptēr, near.*

*prorsum, forward.*

*prōtlūs, onward.*

*quā? in which way?*

*quāquā, } what way*

*quācumque, } soever.*

*quāquē, wheresoever.*

*quālibēt, } in every way.*

*quāvis, } in every way.*

*quō? whither?*

*quōd, } how far.*

*quouscūq̄, } how far.*

*quōpiam, } to some place.*

*quōquam, } to some place.*

*quōquō, } whither.*

*quōcumquē, } soever.*

*quōquōversūs, toward every side.*

*quorsum? whitherward?*

*quōvis, } to every place.*

*quōlibēt, } to every place.*

*retro, } backward,*

*retrosūm, } back.*

*russum, } back.*

*sicūbi, if any where.*

*sicundē, if from any place.*

*sinistrorsum, toward the left.*

*subtēr, beneath.*

*sūpēr, suprà, above, on top.*

*sum, upward.*

*tum, then, in the next place.*

*ubi? where?*

*ubicumquē, } wherever,*

*ubiubi, } wheresoever.*

*ūbilibēt, } any where,*

*ūbiquē, } every where.*

*ūblivis, } every where.*

*ultrā, ultro, beyond.*

*undē? whence?*

*undēlibēt, } from every*

*undēvis, } where.*

*undēquē, } where.*

*undeundē, } whence-*

*undēcūmquē, } soever.*

*uspiam, } somewhere,*

*usquam, } any where.*

*asquē, all the way.*

*usquēquāquē, in all ways.*

*utrimquē, on both sides.*

*utrō? which way?*

*utrōbi? in which place?*

*utrōbiquē, in both places.*

*utrōquē, to both sides.*

*utrōquēversum, toward both sides.*

REMARK 1. (a.) The interrogative adverbs of place, *ubi?* where? *undē?* whence? *quō?* whither? and *quā?* in what way? have relation to other adverbs formed in a similar manner, thus constituting a system of *adverbial correlatives* similar to that of the pronominal adjectives. See § 139, 5, (8.)

(b.) As in the case of the pronominal correlatives, the *interrogative* and *relative* forms are alike, beginning with *u* or *qu*. The *demonstratives* are formed from *is*, which is strengthened by *dem*, and the *indefinite* from *aliquis*. The *general relatives* and the *general indefinites* or *universals*, like those of the pronominal adjectives, are made, the former by doubling the simple relatives or by appending to them the termination *cumquē*, 'soever,' and the latter by adding *quē*, *vis*, or *libēt*. Thus:

| Interrog.    | Demonstr.                       | Relat.       | Gen. Relat.                            | Indefin.        | Gen. Indefin.                                           |
|--------------|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ubi?</i>  | <i>ibi,</i><br><i>ibidem,</i>   | <i>ubi,</i>  | <i>ūbiubi,</i><br><i>ūbicumquē,</i>    | <i>ālicubi,</i> | <i>ūbiquē,</i><br><i>ūbivis,</i><br><i>ūbilibēt.</i>    |
| <i>undē?</i> | <i>indē,</i><br><i>indīdem,</i> | <i>undē,</i> | <i>undeundē,</i><br><i>undēcūmquē,</i> | <i>ālcundē,</i> | <i>undīquē,</i><br><i>undēvis,</i><br><i>undēlibēt.</i> |
| <i>quō?</i>  | <i>eō,</i><br><i>eōdem,</i>     | <i>quō,</i>  | <i>quōquō,</i><br><i>quōcumquē,</i>    | <i>āliquō,</i>  | <i>quōvis,</i><br><i>quōlibēt.</i>                      |
| <i>quā?</i>  | <i>eā,</i><br><i>eādem.</i>     | <i>quā.</i>  | <i>quāquā,</i><br><i>quācumquē.</i>    | <i>āliquā.</i>  | <i>quāvis,</i><br><i>quālibēt.</i>                      |

(c.) To those answering to *ubi*? may be added *dñbi*, *nulñbi*, and *inibi*, the latter being a strengthened form of *ibi*. In like manner *diundē*, *utrimquē*, *intrinsecūs*, and *extrinsecūs* may be added to those answering to *undē*? and *adō* to those answering to *quō*? So also to *utrō*? answer *utrōquē* and *neutrō*.

(d.) The demonstratives *ibi*, *indē*, and *eō* are used only in reference to relative sentences which precede; but more definite demonstratives are formed from the pronouns *hic*, *istē*, and *illē*, answering in like manner to *ubi*? *undē*? and *quō*? These together with the preceding correlatives are, in the following table, arranged respectively under their several interrogatives *ubi*? *undē*? *quō*? *quā*? and *quorsum*?—Thus:

| <i>ubi</i> ?      | <i>undē</i> ?      | <i>quō</i> ?    | <i>quā</i> ?    | <i>quorsum</i> ?    |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| <i>hic</i> ,      | <i>hinc</i> ,      | <i>hūc</i> ,    | <i>hāc</i> ,    | <i>hōrsum</i> ,     |
| <i>istic</i> ,    | <i>istinc</i> ,    | <i>istūc</i> ,  | <i>istāc</i> ,  | <i>istorsum</i> ,   |
| <i>illic</i> ,    | <i>illinc</i> ,    | <i>illūc</i> ,  | <i>illāc</i> ,  | <i>illorsum</i> ,   |
| <i>ibi</i> ,      | <i>indē</i> ,      | <i>eō</i> ,     | <i>eā</i> ,     | _____               |
| <i>ibidem</i> ,   | <i>indidem</i> ,   | <i>eōdem</i> ,  | <i>eādem</i> ,  | _____               |
| <i>alibi</i> ,    | <i>aliundē</i> ,   | <i>aliō</i> ,   | <i>aliā</i> ,   | <i>aliorsum</i> ,   |
| <i>allicubi</i> . | <i>allicundē</i> . | <i>aliquō</i> . | <i>aliquā</i> . | <i>aliquorsum</i> . |

(e.) *Hic*, *hinc*, *hāc*, refer to the place of the speaker; *istic*, *istinc*, *istūc*, to the place of the second person or person addressed; and *illic*, *illinc*, *illūc*, to that of the third person or the person or thing spoken of. Cf. § 207, R. 23, (a.) and (d.)

(f.) The interrogative adverbs *ubi*, *undē*, *quō*, *quā*, etc. are often used without a question, simply as adverbs of place; as, *In eam partem iūros, atque ibi futūros Helvetios, ubi eos Cæsar constitūisset*.

(g.) In consequence of a transfer of their meaning, some of the adverbs of place, as, *hic*, *ibi*, *ubi*, *hinc*, *indē*, *hactenus*, etc., become also adverbs of time, and some of them are used also as conjunctions.

## II. Adverbs of Time.

*actūtum*, immediately.

*abhinc*, from this time.

*ādeo*, so long (as).

*ādñc*, until now, still.

*ālās*, at another time.

*āquamdiū*, for awhile.

*āquandō*, at some time.

*āquōtiēs*, several times.

*antē*, before.

*antēā*, previously.

*antēhāc*, formerly.

*bis*, twice. (see § 119).

*circitēr*, about, near.

*crās*, tomorrow.

*cum* or *quum*, when.

*deinceps*, in succession.

*deindē* or *dein*, thereupon.

*exindē* or *exin*, afterwards.

*dēhinc*, from this time.

*dēmum*, at length.

*dēnque*, lastly.

*diū*, long.

*dūdum*, previously.

*eouquē*, so long.

*hērē* or *hēri*, yesterday.

*hic*, here, hereupon.

*hinc*, from this time, since.

*hōdiē*, to-day.

*ibi*, then, thereupon.

*identidem*, now and then,

repeatedly.

*illicō*, immediately.

*indē*, after that, then.

*interdum*, sometimes.

*intērim*, meanwhile.

*itērum*, again.

*jam*, now, already.

*jamdiū*, long ago.

*jamdūdum*, long ago.

*jamjam*, presently.

*jampridem*, long since.

*mōdo*, just now.

*mox*, soon after.

*nondum*, not yet.

*nonnumquam*, sometimes.

*nūdiūs tertius*, three days

ago.

*nunc*, now.

*numquam*, never.

*nūpēr*, lately.

*olim*, formerly.

*pārumpēr*, for a short

time.

*pērendiūs*, two days hence.

*porro*, hereafter, in fu-

ture.

*post*, *postēā*, afterwards.

*posthāc*, hereafter.

*postridiē*, the day after.

*pridem*, long since.

*pridiē*, the day before.

*prōtinūs*, instantly.

*quamdiū*? how long?

*quandō*? when?

*quandocūquē*, when-

ever.

*quandocūquē*, at some time.

*quātēr*, four times.

*quōād*? how long?

*quousquē*? how long?

*quondam*, formerly.

*quōtidīē*, daily.

*quōtiēs*? how often?

*quum* or *cum*, when.

*rursūs*, again.

*sæpē*, often.

*sēmēl*, once.

*sempēr*, always.

*stātīm*, immediately.

*sūbindē*, immediately, now

and then.

*tamdiū*, so long.

*tandem*, at length.

*tantispēr*, for so long.

*tēr*, thrice.

*tōtiēs*, so often.

*tum*, tunc, then.

*ubi*, when, as soon as.

*umquam*, ever.

*usquē*, until, ever.

*ūt* or *uti*, as, as soon as

when.



## III. Adverbs of Manner, Quality, Degree, etc.,

adeo, so, to that degree.

admodum, very much.

aliter, otherwise.

ceu, as, like as.

cūr? why?

duntaxat, only, at least.

etiam, also, truly, yes.

etiamnunc, also, besides.

etiamtum, also, besides.

fērē, almost, nearly.

fermē, almost, nearly.

fortassē, perhaps.

frustrā, in vain.

grātis, freely.

haud, not.

haudquāquam, by no means.

hūcuscūq̄, so far.

identidem, constantly.

immō, nay, on the contrary.

itā, so.

item, just so, also.

itidem, in like manner.

juxtā, equally, alike.

magis, more.

mōdo, only.

nā or nē, truly, verily.

nē, not.

nēdum, much less.

nempē, truly, forsooth.

nēquāquam, by no means.

neutiquam, means.

nimirum, certainly, to be sure.

nimis, too much.

nimum, too much.

nōn, not.

omnino, altogether, only.

pænē, almost.

pālam, openly.

pārītēr, equally.

pārum, too little.

paulatim, by degrees.

pēnitūs, wholly.

pērindē, just as.

proindē, as though.

perquam, very much.

plērumquē, for the most part, commonly.

pōtius, rather.

porro, moreover, then.

præter, beyond, except.

præsertim, particularly.

prōfecto, truly.

prōptēr, almost, near.

prōpēmōdum, almost.

prorsūs, wholly.

quam, how much, as.

quamobrem, wherefore.

quārē? why? wherefore?

quāsi, as if, as it were.

quēmadmodum, as.

quidem, indeed.

equidem, indeed.

quōmōdō? how? in what manner?

quōquē, also.

ritē, duly.

saltem, at least.

sānē, truly.

sāt, enough.

sātis, enough.

sātius, rather.

scilicet, truly, to wit.

sēcūs, otherwise.

seorsum, separately.

seorsūs, separately.

sic, so.

sicut, so as, as.

sicuti, so as, as.

simul, together.

singillatim, one by one.

solum, only, alone.

tam, so, so much.

tamquam, like, as if.

tantopere, so greatly.

tantum, so much, only.

tantummōdō, only.

tēmē, at random.

unā, together.

usquequāq̄, in all points, in all ways.

ut, as.

utī, as.

utiquē, at any rate, certainly.

utpōtē, as, inasmuch as.

valdē, very much.

vel, even.

velūt, as, like as, for

velūtī, example.

vicissim, in turn, again.

videlicet, clearly, to wit.

vix, scarcely.

REM. 2. Adverbs denoting quality, manner, etc., are sometimes divided into those of, 1. Quality; as, *bēnē, malē*. 2. Certainty; as, *certē, planē*. 3. Contingence; as, *fortē*. 4. Negation; as, *haud, nōn, nē, immō*. 5. Affirmation; as, *nae, quidem, utiquē, nempē*. 6. Swearing; as, *herclē*. 7. Explaining; as, *videlicet, utpōtē*. 8. Separation; as, *seorsum*. 9. Joining together; as, *simul, unā*. 10. Interrogation; as, *cūr? quārē?* 11. Quantity or degree; as, *sātis, adeo*. 12. Excess; as, *perquam, maximē*. 13. Defect; as, *pārum, pænē*. 14. Preference; as, *pōtius, sātius*. 15. Likeness; as, *itā, sic*. 16. Unlikeness; as, *aliter*. 17. Exclusion; as, *tantum, solum*.

REM. 3. *Nōn* is the ordinary Latin negation. *Haud* signifies either 'not at all,' or 'not exactly.' It is used by the comic and later writers in all combinations, but in the authors of the best age its use is more especially limited to its connection with adjectives and adverbs denoting a measure; as, *haud multum, haud magnum, haud parvū, haud mediocris, haud paulo, haud prōcul, haud longe*, especially *haud sâne* in connection with other words; as, *haud sâne facile, res haud sâne difficilis, haud sâne intelligo*; also *haud quisquam, haud umquam, haud quāquam*. With verbs *haud* is scarcely used until Livy and Tacitus, except in the common phrase *haud scio an*, which is equivalent to *nescio an*.—*Nē*, (or *nē*) is the primitive Latin negative particle, signifying *no* or *not*. It is used in this sense and as an adverb, (a) with *quidem* to make an emphatic negation of the word standing between them; as, *nē in oppidis quidem*, not even in the towns; (b) in composition as in *nescio, nefas*, neuter, etc.; (c) with imperatives and

subjunctives used as imperatives; as, *Nē pueri, nē tanta animis assuescite bella.* Virg. So, also, in wishes and asseverations; as, *Nē id Jupiter sineret*, may Jupiter forbid it. Liv. *Ne vivam, si scio*, may I die, if I know. Cic.; and in concessive and restrictive clauses; as, *Ne fuerit*, suppose there was not. Cic. *Sint misericordes in furibus ararii, ne illis sanguinem nostram largiantur*, only let them not, etc. Cic. So *dum ne, dummodo ne, modo ne, dum quidem ne*; and in intentional clauses with *ut*.—*Immo*, as a negative, substitutes something stronger in the place of the preceding statement, which is denied; as, *Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima, sed*, etc. Cic. It may often be translated by 'nay,' or 'nay even.'

REM. 4. *Quidem* gives particular emphasis to a word or an idea, and then answers to our 'certainly' or 'indeed,' but frequently, especially with a pronoun, it merely adds emphasis. *Equidem*, which is considered as a compound of *ego* and *quidem*, is used exclusively in this sense by Cicero, Virgil, and Horace, but by other and particularly by later writers it is used like *quidem*.—*Nempe*, 'surely,' is often used ironically, when we refute a person by concessions which he is obliged to make, or by deductions. In other connections it may be translated 'namely.'

REM. 5. *Sic, ita, tam*, as also *tantopere*, and *adeo* signify 'so.' *Sic* is more particularly the demonstrative 'so,' or 'thus'; as, *sic se res habet.* *Ita* defines or limits more accurately, and is equivalent to our 'in such a manner,' or 'only in so far'; as, *ita defendito, ut neminem laedas.* Frequently, however, *ita* has the signification of *sic*, but *sic* has not the limiting sense of *ita*.—*Tam*, 'so much,' generally stands before adjectives and adverbs, and increases the degree; before vowels *tantopere* is generally used instead of *tam*.—*Adeo*, 'to that degree' or 'point,' increases the expression to a certain end or result. Hence it forms the transition to the conclusion of an argument or to the essential part of a thing; and Cicero employs it to introduce the proofs of what he has previously alleged; as, *Id adeo ex ipso senatus consulto cognoscite*, and always in such case puts *adeo* after a pronoun.

REM. 6. *Umquam*, 'ever,' and *usquam*, 'somewhere,' like *quisquam*, require a negation in the sentence, and thus become equivalent to *numquam* and *nusquam*. A negative question, however, may supply the place of a negative proposition; as, *num tu eum umquam vidisti?*—*Uspiam*, like *quispiam*, is not negative, but is the same as *aliqui*, but strengthened, just as *quispiam* is the same as *aliquis*. So, also, *quopiam* is used affirmatively, and *quoquam* negatively.—*Jam*, with a negative, answers to our 'longer'; as, *Nihil jam spero*, I no longer hope for any thing. When used to connect sentences it signifies 'further,' or 'now.'—*Usque* is commonly accompanied by the prepositions *ad, in, ab, or ex*. It rarely signifies 'ever and anon'; as, *Naturam expellas furcā, tamen usque recurret.* Hor.—*Nuper, modo, and mox* are relative and indefinite.—*Dudum*, 'previously,' or 'before,' in relation to a time which has just passed away, may often be translated 'just before.'—*Jamdudum* signifies 'long before,' or 'long since.' With the poets *jamdudum* contains the idea of impatience, and signifies 'without delay,' 'forthwith'; as, *Jamdudum sumite penas.* Virg.—*Tandem*, 'at length,' also expresses the impatience with which a question is put.

REM. 7. *Tunc* is 'then,' 'at that time,' in opposition to *nunc*, 'now': *Tum* is 'then,' as the correlative of *quum*, 'when'; as, *quum omnes adessent, tum ille exorsus est dicere*, when all were present, then he began to speak. Without a relative sentence *tum* signifies 'hereupon,' or 'thereupon'; but a relative sentence may always be supplied. The same difference exists between *etiam nunc* and *etiam tum*, 'still,' or 'yet'; and between *nunc ipsum* and *tum ipsum*; *quummaxime* and *tummaxime*, 'just,' or 'even then'; for *etiam nunc, nunc ipsum* and *quum maxime* refer to the present; but *etiam tum, tum ipsum*, and *tummaxime*, to the past.

## DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 192. Adverbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and participles.

## I. From Nouns.

1. Of these a few end in *im* (generally *ātim*), and denote manner; as,

*grēgātīm*, in herds; *membrātīm*, limb by limb; *vicissātīm*, or more frequently, *vicissim*, by turns; from *grex*, *membrum*, and *vicis*.

2. Some end in *itus*, and denote origin or manner; as, *cælitus*, from heaven; *funditus*, from the bottom; *radicitus*, by the roots; from *cælum*, *fundus*, and *radix*.

3. Some are merely the different cases of nouns used adverbially; as,

(a.) Some adverbs of time; as, *mānē*, *noctū*, *diū*, *temporē* or *tempōri*, *instāt*, *prīncipiō*, *mōdo*.—(b.) Adverbs of place; as, *fōris*, *fōras*.—(c.) Adverbs of manner; as, *spontē*, *fortē*, *grātis* or *grātis*, *ingrātis*, *vulgo*, *partim*.

## II. From Adjectives and Participles.

By far the greater number of derivative adverbs come from adjectives and participles (present and perfect), and end in *ē* and *tēr*.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, are formed by adding *ē* to the root; as,

*agrē*, scarcely; *altē*, high; *libērē*, freely; *longē*, far; *misērē*, miserably; *plēnē*, fully; *doctē*, learnedly; *ornātē*, elegantly; from *agr*, *altus*, *liber*, *longus*, *miser*, *plenus*, *doctus*, and *ornatus*. *Bēnē*, well, is from *bonus*, or an older form *bēnus*.

REMARK. A few adverbs in *e* differ in meaning from their adjectives; as, *sānē*, certainly; *valdē*, very; from *sānus*, sound, well; and *validus*, strong.

Exc. 1. A few adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, add *ŭtēr*, *ŭtus*, *im*, or *ātīm* to the root; as,

*nāvītēr*, actively; *antiquitūs*, anciently; *divinitūs*, divinely; *privātīm*, privately; *tuātīm*, after your manner; *singulātīm*, *singillātīm*, *sigillātīm*, or *singultīm*, severally; *cæsim*, *carptīm*, *sensim*, *stātīm*, etc. from *nāvus*, *antiquus*, *divinus*, *privatus*, *tuus*, *singuli*, *cæsus*, *carptus*, etc.

Exc. 2. Some adverbs are formed with two or more of the above terminations with the same meaning; as, *dūrē*, *dūrtēr*; *firmē*, *firmītēr*; *nāvē*, *nāvītēr*; *largē*, *largītēr*; *lūcūlentē*, *lūcūlentēr*; *turbūlentē*, *turbūlentēr*: so *cautē* and *cautīm*; *hūmānē*, *hūmānitēr*, and *hūmānitūs*; *publicē* and *publicitūs*.

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the third declension, are formed by adding *ŭtēr* to the root, except when it ends in *t*, in which case *ēr* only is added; as,

*acūtēr*, sharply; *fēlicitēr*, happily; *turpitēr*, basely;—*ēlegantēr*, elegantly; *prudentēr*, prudently; *āmantēr*, lovingly; *propērantēr*, hastily; from *acer*, *fēlix*, *turpis*, *ēlegans*, *prudens*, *āmans*, and *propērans*. So also from the obsolete *ālis* for *alius*, and *prōptis*, (neuter *prōptē*), come *ālītēr* and *prōptēr* for *prōptītēr*.

Exc. From *audax* comes by syncope *audactēr*; from *fortis* comes *fortītēr*; from *omnis*, *omnino*; from *ŭbēr*, *ŭbertim*; and from *nēquam*, *nēquitēr*.

3. From the cardinal numerals are formed numeral adverbs in *ies*; as,

*quingües*, *decies*, from *quingui* and *decem*. So *toties* and *quoties*, from *tot* and *quot*. See § 119.

4. Some adverbs are merely certain cases of adjectives. Such are,

(a.) Ablatives in *o*, from adjectives and participles of the second declension; as, *cito*, quickly; *continuo*, immediately; *falso*, falsely; *crebro*, frequently; *merito*, deservedly; *incópnato*, unexpectedly; *fortuito*, by chance; *auspicio*, auspiciously; *consulo*, designedly; and a few in *a* from adjectives of the first declension; as, *recta*, straight on; *una*, together. In like manner, *repente*, suddenly, from *repens*; and *peregre* or *peregrini*, from *peregrer*.

(b.) Nominatives or accusatives of the third declension in the neuter singular; as, *facile*, *difficile*, *recens*, *sublime*, and *impune*; and some also of the second declension; as, *ceterum*, *plerumque*, *multum*, *plurimum*, *potissimum*, *paulum*, *nimum*, *parum*, and the numeral adverbs, *primum*, *iterum*, *tertium*, *quartum*, etc. which have also the termination in *o*, and so also *postrimum* (*o*), and *ultimum* (*o*). The neuter plural sometimes occurs also, especially in poetry; as, *multa genere*; *tristia ululare*; *crebra ferire*.

(c.) Accusatives of the first declension; as, *bifariam*, *trifariam*, *multifariam*, *omnifariam*, etc. scil. *partem*.

NOTE 1. The forms in *e* and *o* from adjectives of the second declension have generally the same meaning, but *vere* and *vero* have a somewhat different sense. *Vere*, truly, is the regular adverb of *verus*, true; but *vero* is used in answers, in the sense of 'in truth,' or 'certainly.' In this use it is added to the verb used in the question; as, *adjuvisti héri in convivio?* The affirmative answer is *ego vero adfui*, or without the verb, *ego vero*, and negatively, *minime vero*; and as *vero* thus merely indicates a reply, it is often untranslatable into English.—*Certe*, on the other hand, usually takes the meaning of the adjective *certus*, while *certe* often signifies 'at least'; as, *victi sumus, aut, si dignitas vinci non potest, fracti certe*; but *certe* is frequently used in the sense of 'certainly,' especially in the phrase *certe scio*.

NOTE 2. Some adjectives, from the nature of their signification, have no corresponding adverbs. Of some others, also, none occur in the classics. Such are *amens*, *divus*, *discors*, *gnarus*, *rudis*, *trux*, *inbellis*, *immobilis*, and similar compounds. In place of the adverbs formed from *vetus* and *fidus*, *vetusté* and *antiqué* are used for the former, and *fideliér* for the latter, from *vetustus*, *antiquus*, and *fidélis*.

III. From the adjective pronouns are derived adverbs of place, etc. (See § 191, Rem. 1.)

REMARK. The terminations *o* and *uc* denote the place *whither*, instead of the accusative of the pronoun with a preposition; as, *eo* for *ad eum locum*; *huc* for *ad hunc locum*; the terminations *de* and *inc* denote the place *from which*; *i* and *ic*, the place *in which*; and *a* and *ac*, the place *by or through which*; as, *ea*; *vid* or *parte* being understood.

IV. (a.) A few adverbs are derived from prepositions; as, *subtus*, beneath; from *sub*; *propter*, near; from *propté*. (b.) *Mordicus* and *versus* are derived from the verbs *mordeo* and *verto*.

REMARK. Diminutives are formed from a few adverbs; as, *clam*, *clanculum*; *primum*, *primulum*; *celerus*, *celeriusculé*; *sapius*, *sapiusculé*; *bené*, *bellé*, *bellissimé*.

## COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

## § 193. Adverbs are compounded variously:—

1. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *postridie*, *quotidie*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *quantopere*, *tantopere*, *tantummodo*, *solummodo*, *multimodis*, *quibuscumque*—of *postero die*, *magno opere*, etc.
2. Of a pronoun and a noun; as, *hodie*, *quare*, *quomodo*—of *hoc die*, *quid re*, etc.
3. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nuncius*, *sepenumero*—of *nunc dies*, etc.
4. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *comminus*, *eminus*, *illico*, *obiter*, *extemplo*, *obviam*, *postmodo*, *admodum*, *propedem*—of *con*, *e*, and *manus*; in and *locus*; etc.
5. Of an adjective and a pronoun; as, *atque* or *atquin*, *ceteroque* or *ceteroquin*—of *alius* and *qui*, i. e. *aliis quo* (*modo*), etc.
6. Of a pronoun and an adverb; as, *aliquamdiu*, *allicubi*—of *aliquis*, *diu*, and *ibi*; *nequaquam* and *nequaquam*—of *ne* and *quisquam*.
7. Of two verbs; as, *illicet*, *scilicet* *videlicet* of *ire*, *scire*, *videre*, and *licet*.
8. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *quolibet*, *ubivis*, *undelibet*. So *deinceps*—from *dein* and *cipio*; *duntaxat*—from *dum* and *tazo*.
9. Of a participle with various parts of speech; as, *deorsum*, *dextrorsum*, *horeum*, *retrosum*, *sursum*—of *de*, *dexter*, *hic*, *retro*, *super*, and *versus* or *versus*.
10. Of two adverbs; as, *jamdudum*, *quamdiu*, *tandiu*, *cummazime*, *tummazime*, *quousque*, *sicut*.
11. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *denuo*, *imprimis*, *cumprimis*, *apprime*, *incassum*—of *de novo*, in *primis*, etc.
12. Of a preposition and a pronoun; as, *quapropter*, *postea*, *interea*, *propterea*, *hactenus*, *quatenus*, *aliquatenus*, *eatenus*—of *propter quod*, *post ea* or *eam*, etc.
13. Of a preposition and an adverb; as, *abhinc*, *adhuc*, *derепente*, *interdum*, *interdum*, *interdum*, *persepe*.
14. Of two or three prepositions; as, *insuper*, *propterea*, *inde*, *dein*, *deinde*, *perinde*.
15. Of a conjunction and an adverb; as, *neubi*, *sicubi*—of *ne*, *si*, and *allicubi*.
16. Of an adverb and a termination scarcely used except in composition; as, *thidem*, *pdrumpere*, *quandocumque*, *ubique*, *utcumque*.
17. Of three different parts of speech; as, *fortitudo*—of *fortis*, *ad*, *in*, *quemadmodum*, *quamobrem*, etc.
18. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *nimirum*, *utpote*.
19. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *quantumvis*, *quantumlibet*.

## Signification of certain Compound and Derivative Adverbs.

1. The adverbs *continuo*, *protinus*, *statim*, *confestim*, *s subito*, *repente* and *derепente*, *actutum*, *illico*, *illicet*, *extemplo*, signify in general 'directly' or 'immediately'; but, strictly, *continuo* means, 'immediately after'; *statim*, 'without delay'; *confestim*, 'directly'; *s subito*, 'suddenly, unexpectedly'; *protinus*, 'farther', viz. in the same direction, and hence, 'without interruption'; *repente* and *derепente*, 'at once', opposed to *sensim*, 'gradually', (see Cic. Off. 1, 33); *actutum*, 'instantaneously', i. e. *eodem actu*; *illico*, and more rarely *illicet*, 'forthwith, the instant', (Virg. AEn. 2, 424, Cic. Mur. 10); so also *extemplo*, (Liv. 41, 1).
2. *Præsertim*, *præcipue*, *imprimis*, *cumprimis*, *apprime*, are generally translated 'principally', but, properly, *præsertim* is 'particularly', and sets forth a particular circumstance with emphasis; *præcipue*, from *præcipio*, has reference to privilege, and signifies 'especially'; *imprimis* and *cumprimis*, signify 'principally', or 'in preference to others'; and *apprime*, 'before all', 'very', is used

## § 194, 195. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.—PREPOSITIONS. 163

in pure Latin to qualify and strengthen only adjectives. *Admodum* properly signifies 'according to measure,' that is, 'in as great a measure as can be,' 'very, exceedingly.' With numerals it denotes approximation, 'about.' *Admodum nihil* and *admodum nullus* signify 'nothing at all' and 'no one at all.'

3. *Modo* is the usual equivalent for 'only.' *Solum*, 'alone,' 'merely,' points to something higher or greater. *Tantum*, 'only,' 'merely,' intimates that something else was expected. The significations of *solum* and *tantum* are strengthened by *modo*, forming *solummodo* and *tantummodo*. *Suntaxat*, 'only, solely,' is not joined with verbs. It also signifies 'at least,' denoting a limitation to a particular point. *Saltem* also signifies 'at least,' but denotes the reduction of a demand to a minimum; as, *Eripe mihi hunc dolorem, aut minue saltem*.

4. *Frustrā* implies a disappointed expectation; as in *frustra nescipere labores*. *Negucquam* denotes the absence of success, as in Hor. Carm. 1, 8, 21. *Incassum*, composed of *in* and *cassum*, 'hollow' or 'empty,' signifies 'to no purpose'; as, *iela incassum jacere*.

### COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 194. 1. Adverbs derived from adjectives with the terminations *ē* and *tēr*, and most of those in *o*, are compared like their primitives.

2. The comparative, like the neuter comparative of the adjective, ends in *iūs*; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *ūs* into *e*; as,

*dūrē, dūriūs, dūristimē; faciļē, faciļiūs, faciļimē; ācrtīlēr, ācrtiūs, ācerrimē; rārō, rārīūs, rārīssimē; mātūrē, mātūriūs, mātūrīssimē* or *mātūrīssimē*.

3. Some adverbs have superlatives in *ō* or *um*; as, *mēritīssimō, plūrīnum, primō* or *prīmum, pōtīssimū*.

4. If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, (see §§ 125, 126), that of the adverb is so likewise; as,

*bēnē, mēliūs, optīmē; mālē, pējūs, pessīmē; pārū, minūs, minimē; multū, plūs, plūrīnum*; —, *priūs, primō* or *prīmum*; —, *ōciūs, ōcīssimē*; —, *dētēriūs, dētērrimē*; —, *pōtiūs, pōtīssimē* or *pōtīssimū*; *mērtitō*, —, *mērtīssimō*; *sātīs, sātīūs*, —. *Māgis, maxīmē*, (from *magnūs*), has no positive; *nūpēr, nūperrimē*, has no comparative. *Prōpē, prōpiūs, proxīmē*; the adjective *prōpiōr* has no positive in use. The regular adverb in the positive degree from *ubēr* is wanting, its place being supplied by *ubertim*, but *ubēriūs* and *uberrimē* are used. So instead of *tristitēr, tristē*, the neuter of *tristis*, is used, but the comparative *tristīūs* is regular; and from *ācōrs* only *ācōrdiūs*, the comparative, is in use.

5. *Diū* and *scēpē*, though not derived from adjectives, are yet compared;—*diū, diūtīūs, diūtīssimē*; *scēpē, scēpiūs, scēpīssimē*. A comparative *tempēriūs*, from *tempērī* or *tempōrī*, also sometimes occurs. So *sētūs, sētīūs*.

6. Adverbs, like adjectives, are sometimes compared by prefixing *māgis* and *maxīmē*; as, *māgis āpērtē, maxīmē accommodātā*.

### PREPOSITIONS.

§ 195. 1. A preposition is a particle which expresses the relation between a noun or pronoun and some preceding word.

2. Prepositions express the relations of persons or things, either to one another, or to actions and conditions; as, *āmor meus erga te*, my love toward thee; *eo ad te*, I go to thee.

3. Some prepositions have the noun or pronoun which follows them in the accusative, some, in the ablative, and some, in either the accusative or the ablative.

4. Twenty-six prepositions have an accusative after them:—

|                                |                           |                             |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ad, to, towards, at, for.      | extrā, without, beyond.   | post, after, since, behind. |
| adversus, } against,           | infra, under, beneath.    | præter, past, before.       |
| adversum, } towards.           | inter, between, among,    | against, beyond, besides.   |
| ante, before.                  | during.                   | propē, near by, nigh.       |
| apud, at, with, near, be-      | intrā, within.            | proptēr, near, on account   |
| fore, in presence of.          | juxtā, near to, next to.  | of.                         |
| circā, } around, about.        | ob, for, on account of,   | secundum, after, behind,    |
| circum, } around, about.       | before.                   | along, next to, accord-     |
| circiter, about, near.         | pēnēs, in the power of,   | ing to.                     |
| cis, } on this side, within.   | with.                     | supra, above, over.         |
| citra, } on this side, within. | pēr, through, throughout, | trans, over, beyond.        |
| contra, against, opposite.     | by, during.               | ultra, beyond.              |
| ergā, towards, opposite.       | pōnē, behind.             |                             |

5. Eleven prepositions have after them an ablative:—

|                           |                            |                           |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| ā, } from, after, by.     | dē, from, down from, af-   | præ, before, for, on ac-  |
| ab, } from, after, by.    | ter, of, concerning.       | count of, in comparison   |
| abs, } from, after, by.   | ē, } out of, from, of, by, | with.                     |
| absquē, without, but for. | ex, } after.               | prō, before, for, instead |
| cōram, before, in pres-   | pālam, before, in pres-    | of, according to.         |
| ence of.                  | ence of.                   | sinē, without.            |
| cum, with.                |                            | tēnūs, as far as, up to.  |

6. Five prepositions take after them sometimes an accusative, and sometimes an ablative:—

|                                |                          |                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| clam, without the knowl-       | sub, under, about, near. | supr, above, over; upon, |
| edge of.                       | subtēr, under, beneath.  | concerning.              |
| In, in, on; to, into, against. |                          |                          |

REMARK 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the noun or pronoun whose relation they express. They sometimes, however, stand after it. Cf. § 279, 10.

REM. 2. *A* is used only before consonants; *ab* before vowels, and frequently before consonants, though rarely before labials: *abs* is obsolete, except in the phrase *abs te*.

*E* is used only before consonants, *ex* before both vowels and consonants.

REM. 3. *Versus*, which follows its noun, (cf. § 235, R. 3), *usquē*, and *exadversus* (-um), sometimes take an accusative, *stimul* and *prœcū*, an ablative, and are then by some called prepositions. *Secū*, with an accusative, occurs in Pliny and Cato.

REM. 4. Many of the prepositions, especially those which denote place, are also used as adverbs. Cf. § 191.

### Signification and Use of certain Prepositions.

REM. 5. (a.) *Ad* denotes direction, and answers to the questions Whither? and Till when? as, *Venio ad te*. *Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragœdus fecit*. *Cic*. It also denotes a fixed time; as, *ad hōram*, at the hour; *ad tempus aliquid facere*,—at the right time. But sometimes *ad tempus* denotes 'for a time.' Sometimes, also, *ad* denotes the approach of time; as, *ad lucem*, *ad vesperam*, *ad extremum*, towards day-break, etc.; and also the actual arrival of a time; as, *ad prima signa vērīs profectus*, at the first sign of Spring.

(b.) In answer to the question Where? *ad* signifies 'near' a place; as, *ad urbem esse*; *ad portas urbis*; *pugna navalis ad Tenedum*. It is used like *in*, 'at,' in such phrases as *ad adem Bellona*, or, without *adem*, *ad Opis*; *negotium habere ad portum*.—With numerals it may be rendered 'to the amount of' or 'nearly'; as, *ad ducentos*. It is also used like *circler* without any case; as, *Occisus ad hominum millibus quatuor*.—The phrase *omnes ad unum* signifies, 'all without exception,' 'every one.'

(c.) *Ad* often denotes an object or purpose, and hence comes its signification of 'in respect to'; as, *homo ad labores belli impiger*. It is also used in figurative relations to denote a model, standard, or object of comparison, where we say 'according to,' or 'in comparison with'; as, *ad modum*, *ad effigiem*, *ad similitudinem*, *ad speciem alicujus rei*; *ad normam*, etc. *ad voluntatem alicujus facere aliquid*. *Ad verbum* signifies, 'word for word'; *nihil ad hanc rem*, 'nothing in comparison with this thing.'

REM. 6. *Apud* expresses nearness to, and was primarily used of persons as *ad* was applied to things. *Apud* also denotes rest, and *ad* direction, motion, etc. Hence it signifies 'with,' both literally and figuratively. With names of places it signifies 'near,' like *ad*; as, *Mile pugnatum est apud Caudium*. But in early writers, *apud* is used for *in*; as, *Augustus apud urbem Nolum extinctus est*.—at Nola.—With *me*, *te*, *se*, or the name of a person, it signifies 'at the house' or 'dwelling off'; as, *Fuisti apud Læcam illa nocte*.—Before appellatives of persons having authority in regard to any matter, it is translated 'before,' 'in the presence of'; as, *apud judices*, *apud prætorem*, *apud populum*.—It is also used with names of authors, instead of *in* with the name of their works; as, *Apud Xenophontem*, but we cannot say *in Xenophonte*.

REM. 7. *Adversus*, *contra*, and *erga* signify 'opposite to.' *Contra* denotes hostility, like our 'against'; *erga*, a friendly disposition, 'towards'; and *adversus* is used in either sense. But *erga* sometimes occurs in a hostile sense.

REM. 8. *Intra* signifies 'within,' in regard both to time and place. In regard to place it is used in answer to both questions Where? and Whither? It denotes time either as an entire period, when it is equivalent to 'during,' or as 'unfinished,' when it corresponds with 'under,' or 'before the expiration of.'

REM. 9. *Për*, denoting place, signifies, 'through,' and also 'in,' in the sense of 'throughout.'—With the accusative of persons it signifies 'through,' 'by the instrumentality of.' It often expresses the manner; as, *për literas*, by letter; *për injuriam*, with injustice, criminally; *për iram*, from or in anger; *për simulationem*, *për speciem*, *për causam*, under the pretext; *për occasionem*, on the occasion; *për ridiculum*, in a ridiculous manner.—It sometimes signifies 'on account of'; as, *për valetudinem*, on account of illness.—*Për me licet*,—so far as I am concerned.

REM. 10. *A* or *ab*, denoting time, is used with nouns, both abstract and concrete, with the same general meaning; as, *a primâ ætate*, *ab ineunte ætate*, *ab initio ætatis*, *ab infantia*, *a pueritia*, *ab adolescentiâ*; and, *a puero*, *a pueris*, *ab adolescentulo*, *ab infante*, all of which signify 'from an early age.' So also, *a parvis*, *a parvulo*, *a tenore*, *a teneris unguiculis*, which expressions are of Greek origin.—*Ab initio*, *a principio*, *a primo*, properly denote the space of time from the beginning down to a certain point; as, *Urbem Romam a principio reges habuere*, i. e. for a certain period after its foundation. But frequently *ab initio* is equivalent to *initio*, in the beginning.—The adherents or followers of a school are often named from its head; as, *a Platone*, *ab Aristotelle*, etc.—In comic writers *ab* is sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *ancilla ab Andriâ*.—In a figurative sense it signifies 'with regard to'; as, *ab equitatu firmus*.—With names of persons it also denotes relationship, and signifies 'on the side of'; as, *Augustus a matre Magnum Pompeium artissimo contingebat gradu*,—on his mother's side.—*Stâtim*, *confestim*, *recens ab aliquâ re*, 'immediately after.'—*Ab itinere aliquid facere*, to do a thing while on a journey.

REM. 11. *Cum* is used not only to designate accompanying persons but also accompanying circumstances; as, *cum aliquo ire*; *hostes cum detrimento sumi*



*depulsi*. It signifies also 'in,' i. e. 'dressed in'; as, *cum tunica pullā sedere*. With verbs implying hostility, it signifies 'with,' in the sense of 'against'; as, *cum aliquo bellum gerere*; *cum aliquo queri*, to complain of or against.

REM. 12. *Dē* commonly signifies 'concerning,' 'about.' Hence *traditur dē Homēro* is very different from *traditur ab Homēro*; in the former, Homer is the object, in the latter the agent.—In the epistolary style, when a new subject is touched upon, *dē* signifies 'in regard to,' 'as respects'; as, *dē frātre, confido ita esse, ut semper volui*.—It often signifies 'down from'; and also 'of,' in a partitive sense; as, *hōmo dē plēbe, unus dē populo*.—From its partitive signification arises its use in denoting time; as, *in comitium dē nocte venire*, i. e. even by night, or spending a part of the night in coming; hence *multā dē nocte, mediā dē nocte*, 'in the depth of night,' 'in the middle of the night'.—In other cases, also, it is used for *ex* or *ab*; as, *Audivi hoc dē parente meo puer*. Cic.; especially in connection with *emēre, mercāri, conducere*. *Triumphum agere dē Gallis* and *ex Gallis* are used indiscriminately.—Sometimes, like *secundum*, it signifies 'in accordance with,' 'after'; as, *dē consilio meo*:—sometimes it denotes the manner of an action; as, *denuo, dē integro*, afresh; *dē improviso*, unexpectedly; *dē industriā*, purposely:—*quā dē re, quā dē causā, quibus dē causis*, for which reason or reasons.

REM. 13. *Ex*, 'from,' 'out of.' *Ex equo pugnare*, to fight on horseback; so *ex itinere scribere*: *ex adverso*, *ē regione*, opposite; *ex omni parte*, in or from all parts.—*Ex vino* or *ex aquā coquere* or *bibere*, i. e. 'with wine,' etc. are medical expressions.—It sometimes denotes manner; as, *ex animo laudare*, to praise heartily; *ex sententiā* and *ex voluntate*, according to one's wish.—It is also, like *dē*, used in a partitive sense; as, *unus ē plēbe, unus ē multis*.

REM. 14. *In*, with the accusative, signifying 'to' or 'into,' denotes the point towards which motion proceeds; as, *in aedem ire*; or the direction in which a thing extends; as, *dēcem pēdes in altitudinem*, in height; so, also, it denotes figuratively the object towards which an action is directed, either with a friendly or a hostile design; as, *amor in patriam, odium in malos ciues, in milites liberālis; oratio in aliquem*, a speech against some one.—It also denotes a purpose; as, *pecunia data est in rem militārem*. *Pax data Philippo in has lēges est*, on these conditions.—With words denoting time, it expresses a predetermination of that time, like 'for'; as, *invitare aliquem in postērum diem*, for the following day. *In diem vivere*, to live only for the day; *in futūrum, in postūrum, in reliquum*, for the future; *in aeternum, in perpetuum*, forever; *in præsens*, for the present: with all these adjectives *tempus* may be supplied. *In* with *singuli*, expressed or understood, denotes a distribution, and may be translated 'to,' 'for,' 'on,' 'over'.—*In singulos dies*, or simply *in dies*, with comparatives and verbs denoting increase, signifies 'from day to day'.—In some phrases it denotes the manner of an action; as, *servilem in modum, mirum in modum*; so *in universum*, in general; *in commune*, in common; *in vicem*, alternately, or, instead of; *in alicujus locum aliquid petere*, in the place, or, instead of.

REM. 15. *In*, with the ablative, signifies 'in,' 'on,' 'upon,' and answers to the question, Where? When a number or quantity is indicated, it signifies 'among,' and is equivalent to *intēr*. It may sometimes be translated 'with,' or 'notwithstanding'; as, *In summā copiā oratōrum, nemo tamen Cicerōnis laudem aequavit*.—With nouns which by themselves denote time, such as *secūlum, annus, mensis, dies, nox, vesper*, etc., the time, in answer to the question When? is expressed by the simple ablative; but *in* is used with words which acquire the signification of time only by such connection; as, *in consulātu, in principio, in bello*; but even with these *in* is sometimes omitted, but is usually retained in connection with the gerund or gerundive; as, *in legendo, in legendis libris*. *In præsenti*, or *in præsentiā*, signifies 'at the present moment,' 'for the present'.—*Est in eo, ut aliquid fiat* signifies that something is on the point of happening.

## PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

**§ 196.** Most of the prepositions are used also in forming compound words. In composition, they may be considered either in reference to their form, or their force.

I. (a.) Prepositions in composition sometimes retain their final consonants, and sometimes change them, to adapt them to the sounds of the initial consonants of the words with which they are compounded. In some words, both forms are in use; in others, the final consonant or consonants are omitted.

1. *A*, in composition, is used before *m* and *v*; as, *amoveo*, *avello*, and sometimes before *f* in *afui* and *aföre*, for *abfui* and *abföre*. *Ab* is used before vowels, and before *d*, *f*, *h*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *r*, and *s*; as, *abjuro*, *abrogo*, etc. *Ab*s occurs only before *c*, *g*, and *t*; as, *abscondo*, *absque*, *abstineo*. In *aspello*, *asperor*, and *asporto*, the *b* of *abs* is dropped; in *aufëro* and *aufugio*, it is changed into *u*.

2. *Ad* remains unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *m*, *v*. It often changes *d* into *c*, *f*, *g*, *l*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t*, before those letters respectively; as, *accedo*, *affëro*, *aggrëdior*, *allëgo*, *annitor*, *appöno*, *arrigo*, *assëguor*, *attollo*. Its *d* is usually omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and before *gn*; as, *aspergo*, *aspicio*, *agnosco*, *agnäus*. Before *g*, the *d* is changed into *c*; as, *acquirö*.

3. *Ante* remains unchanged, except in *antictipo* and *antisto*, where it changes *e* to *i*; but *antesto* also occurs.

4. *Circum* in composition remains unchanged, only in *circumëo* and its derivatives the *m* is often dropped; as, *circueo*, *circuitus*, etc.

5. *Cum* (in composition, *com*), retains *m* before *b*, *m*, *p*; as, *combibo*, *committo*, *compöno*: before *l*, *n*, *r*, its *m* is changed into those letters respectively; as, *colligo*, *connitor*, *corripio*: before other consonants, it becomes *n*; as, *condüco*, *conjungo*. Before a vowel, *gn* or *h*, *m* is commonly omitted; as, *cöto*, *coopio*, *cognosco*, *cohabito*; but it is sometimes retained; as, *comëdo*, *cömes*, *cömitor*. In *cögo* and *cögito* a contraction also takes place; as, *cöägo*, *cögo*, etc. In *combüro*, *b* is inserted.

6. *Ex* is prefixed to vowels, and to *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*; as, *exëo*, *exigo*, *excurro*, *exhëeo*, *expëdio*. Before *f*, *x* is assimilated, and also rarely becomes *ec*; as, *effëro*, or *ecfëro*. *S* after *x* is often omitted; as, *exëguor*, for *exëguor*; in *excidium* (from *excingendo*), *s* is regularly dropped. *E* is prefixed to the other consonants; as, *ëbbo*, *ëdico*, except in *eclex*. Before these however, with the exception of *n* and *r*, *ex* is sometimes used; as, *exmëveo*. *E* is sometimes used before *p*; as, *ëpöto*.

7. *In* remains unchanged before a vowel. Before *b*, *m*, *p*, it changes *n* into *m*; as, *imbuo*, *immitto*, *impöno*: before *l* and *r*, *n* is assimilated; as, *illägo*, *irrëtio*: before *gn*, *n* is omitted; as, *ignärus*. Before the other consonants *in* is unchanged. In some compounds, *in* retains *d* before a vowel, from an ancient form *indus*; as, *indigëna*, *indägeo*, *indolesco*. So anciently *induperätor*, for *imperätor*.

8. *Inter* remains unchanged, except in *intelligo* and its derivatives, in which *r* before *l* is assimilated.

9. *Ob* remains unchanged before vowels and generally before consonants. Its *b* is assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*; as, *occurro*, *officio*, *oggannio*, *oppëto*. In *omitto*, *b* is dropped. An ancient form *obs*, analogous to *abs* for *ab*, is implied in *obsolesco*, from the simple verb *oleo*, and in *ostendo*, for *obstendo*.

10. *Per* is unchanged in composition, except in *pellicio* and sometimes in *pelläceo*, in which *r* is assimilated before *l*. In *pëjëro*, *r* is dropped.

11. *Post* remains unchanged, except in *pömerium* and *pömeridiänus*, in which *st* is dropped.

12. *Pro* and *præter* in composition remain unchanged, except that *pro* is shortened before a vowel. Cf. § 283, II. Exc. 1.

13. *Pro* has sometimes its vowel shortened, (cf. § 285, 2, Exc. 5) and, to avoid hiatus, it sometimes takes *d* before a vowel; as, *prōdeo*, *prōdesse*, *prōdigo*. Before verbs beginning with *r* and *l*, *pro* sometimes becomes *por* and *pol*; as, *porrigo*, *pollicor*.

14. *Sūb* in composition remains unchanged before a vowel and before *b*, *d*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *s*, *t*, *v*. Before *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, *p*, *r*, its *b* is regularly assimilated; as, *succēdo*, *suffēro*, *suggēro*, *summōveo*, *supplicō*, *surripio*. Before *c*, *p*, and *t*, it sometimes takes the form *sus* from *sub*, analogous to *abs* and *obs*; as, *suscipio*, *suspendo*, *sustollo*: *b* is omitted before *s*, followed by a consonant; as, *suspicio*.

15. *Subter* and *sūper* in composition remain unchanged.

16. *Trans* remains unchanged before a vowel. It omits *s* before *s*; as, *transcendo*: in *trādo*, *trādūco*, *trāgicio*, and *trāno*, *ns* is commonly omitted.

(b.) The following words are called *inseparable prepositions*, because they are found only in composition:—

*Ambi* or *amb*, (Greek ἀμφί), around, about. *Rēd* or *rē*, again, back. *Vē*, not. *Dis* or *di*, asunder. *Sē*, apart, aside.

1. *Amb* is always used before a vowel; as, *ambāges*, *ambarvālis*, *ambēdo*, *ambigo*, *ambio*, *ambūro*: except *ampulla*, *amācio*, and *anhēlo*. Before consonants it has the forms *ambi*; as, *ambidens*, *ambifūriam*, *ambivium*: *am*; as, *amplector*, *ampulo*: or *an*; as, *anceps*, *anfractus*, *anguiro*.

2. *Dis* is prefixed to words beginning with *c*, *p*, *q*, *s* before a vowel, *t*, and *h*; as, *discutio*, *dispōno*, *disquiro*, *distendo*, *dishiasco*: but *disertus* is formed from *dissero*; before *f*, *s* is changed into *f*; as, *diffēro*: in *dirimo*, and *diribeo* (from *dis habeo*), *s* becomes *r*. *Di* is prefixed to the other consonants, and to *s* when followed by a consonant; as, *didūco*, *dimitto*, *distinguo*, *dispicio*. But both *dis* and *di* are used before *j*; as, *disjungo*, *dijūdico*, and before *r* in *rumpo*.

3. *Rēd* is used before a vowel or *h*; *rē* before a consonant; as, *rēdīmo*, *rēdeo*, *rēdhībeo*, *rēdigo*, *rēddēlo*, *rēdundo*;—*rējicio*, *rēpōno*, *rēvertor*. But *rēd* is used before *do*; as, *reddo*. The connecting vowel *i* is found in *rēditivus*; and in the poetical forms *relligio*, *reliquie*, and sometimes in *reccido* the *d* is assimilated. In later writers *re* is sometimes found before a vowel or *h*.

4. *Sē* and *vē* are prefixed without change; as, *sēcēdo*, *sēcūrus*; *vēgrandis*, *vēcors*.

§ 197. II. Prepositions in composition usually add their own signification to that of the word with which they are united; but sometimes they give to the compound a meaning different from that of its simples. The following are their most common significations:—

1. *Ab*, or *ab*, away, from, down; entirely; un-. With verbs it denotes removal, disappearance, absence; as, *aufēro*, *abitor*, *absum*. With adjectives it denotes absence, privation; as, *āmēns*, *absōnus*.

2. *Ad*, to, toward; at, by. In composition with verbs *ad* denotes (a) motion to, (not into), as, *accēdo*; (b) addition, as, *ascribo*; (c) nearness, as, *assideo*; (d) assent, favor, as, *annuo*, *arrideo*; (e) repetition and hence intensity, as, *accido*; (f) at, in consequence of, as, *arrigo*. It is sometimes augmentative, rarely inchoative.

3. *Ambi*, around, about, on both sides.

4. *Circum*, around, about, on all sides.

5. *Cōm* or *cōn*, together, entirely. In composition with verbs it denotes (a) union, as, *concurro*, *consūlo*; (b) completeness, as, *combūro*, *conficio*; (c) with effort, as, *conjicio*, *conclāmo*; (d) in harmony, as, *consōno*, *consentio*; (e) on or over, like the English *be-*, as, *collino*, to besmear.

6. *Contra*, against, opposite.

7. *Dē*, off, away, through, over, down; entirely; very, extremely. With verbs *dē* denotes (a) *down*; as, *dēmitto*; as, *dētondeo*; (c) *absence*; as, *dēsūm*, *dēhābeo*; (d) *prevention*; as, *dēhortor*; (e) *unfriendly feeling*; as, *despicio*, *dērideo*.—With adjectives *dē* denotes (a) *down*; as, *dēclivis*; (b) *without*; as, *dēmens*.

8. *Dis*, asunder, apart, in pieces, in two; dis-, un-; very greatly. With verbs *dis* denotes (a) *division*; as, *divido*, *dilābor*; (b) *difference*; as, *discrēpo*, *dissentio*; (c) *the reverse of the simple notion*; as, *displaceo*, *diffido*; (d) *intensity*; as, *dilaudo*.—With adjectives *dis* denotes *difference*; as, *discolor*, *discors*.

9. *E*, or *ex*, out, forth, away, upward, without, -less, un-; utterly, completely, very. With verbs it denotes (a) *out*; as, *exeo*, *eximo*, *ēlāboro*; (b) *removal of something*; as, *ēdormio*; (c) *publicity*; as, *ēdico*; (d) *ascend*; as, *exsisto*; (e) *completeness*; as, *ēdisco*, *exūro*; (f) with denominative verbs, *change of character*; as, *expio*, *effero* (āre); (g) *removal of what is expressed by the noun whence the verb is derived*; as *ēnōdo*; (h) *the reversal of the fundamental idea*; as, *explico*; (i) *distance*; as, *exaudio*.—With adjectives formed from substantives it denotes *absence*; as, *exsomnia*.

10. *In*, with verbs, signifies in, on, at; into, against; as, *inhābito*, *induo*, *ingēmo*, *ineo*, *illido*. With adjectives, un-, in-, im-, il-, ir-, not; as, *ignōtus*, *inhospitālis*, *immortālis*. Some of its compounds have contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives; as, *intectus*, *part.*, covered, *adj.*, uncovered.

11. *Inter*, between, among, at intervals.

12. *Ob*, with verbs, signifies to, towards; as, *ōbeo*, *ostendo*; against; as, *oblucor*, *obornatio*; at, before; as, *obambulo*, *obversor*; upon; as, *occulco*; over; as, *obduco*.

13. *Per*, with verbs, denotes, through, thoroughly, perfectly, quite; as, *perdāco*, *perficio*, *perdo*; with adjectives, through, very; as, *pernoxa*, *perlēvis*.

14. *Post*, after, behind.

15. *Præ* in composition with verbs denotes (a) *before* in place; as, *præmitto*; (b) *by* or *past*; as, *præfluo*; (c) *in command*; as, *præsum*, *præficio*; (d) *superiority*; as, *præsto*; (e) *before* in time; as, *prædico*, *præcerpo*; at the extremity; as, *præfuro*.—With adjectives, (a) *before* in place or time; as, *præceps*, *præsciū*; (b) *very*; as, *præaltus*, *præclārus*.

16. *Præter*, past, by, beyond, besides.

17. *Prō*, before, forward, forth, away, down; for; openly; as, *prōlūdo*, *porrigo*, *prōterreo*, *prōtēro*, *prōcūro*, *prōfiteor*.

18. *Rē*, again, against, back, re-, un-, away; greatly; as, *rēfloreſco*, *rēpendo*, *rēferio*, *rēfigo*, *rēcondo*.

19. *Sē*, without, aside, apart; as, *sēcūro*, *sēpōno*, *sēcēdo*, *sēcūrus*.

20. *Sūb*, up, from below upwards, under. With verbs *sūb* also signifies (a) *assistance*; as, *subvenio*; (b) *succession*; as, *succino*; (c) *in place of*; as, *sufficio*; (d) *near*; as, *subsum*; (e) *secretly, clandestinely*; as, *surrīpio*, *subdūco*; (f) *something, a little*; as, *subrideo*, *sūbaccūso*.—With adjectives it signifies, *slightly, rather*; as, *sūboscūrus*, *sūbabsurdus*, *sūbācidus*.

21. *Subter*, beneath, under, from under, secretly, privately.

22. *Sūper*, above, over, left over, remaining, super-; as, *sūpersēdeo*, *sūpersum*, *sūperstes*, *sūperdāneus*.

23. *Trans*, over, across, through; beyond; as, *trādo*, *transeo*, *transfigo*, *transalpīnus*.

24. *Vē*, not, without; very; as, *vēgrandis*, *vēcors*; *vēpallidus*.

REMARK. In composition the preposition seems often to add nothing to the signification of the word with which it is compounded.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 198. A conjunction is a particle which connects words or propositions.

The most usual conjunctions are,

|                           |                             |                                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| atque, } and, as; than.   | nē, lest, that not.         | quō, in order that.               |
| ac, } and, as; if.        | -nē, whether.               | quoad, as long as, until.         |
| ac si, as if.             | nēque or nēc, neither, nor. | quōd, because, but.               |
| adeo, so that, so.        | nēque...nēque, } neither,   | quodsi, but if.                   |
| an, } whether.            | nēc...nēc, } ...nor.        | quoniam, that not.                |
| anne, } whether.          | nēque...nēc, } neither,     | quoniam, since, because.          |
| annon, whether or not.    | nēc...nēque, } ...nor.      | quōquē, also.                     |
| antēquam, before.         | necnē, or not.              | quum or cum, when, since,         |
| at, ast, but.             | nēquē, neither, nor.        | because.                          |
| at enim, but indeed.      | nēquē or nēc...ēt, } not    | quum...tum, both...and.           |
| atqui, but.               | nēquē or nēc...quē, } on    | sēd, but.                         |
| attāmēn, but yet.         | the one hand, but on the    | sicūt, } so as, just as, as.      |
| aut, either, or.          | other.                      | sicūtī, } so as, just as, as.     |
| aut...aut, either...or.   | nēve or neu, nor, and not.  | si, if.                           |
| autem, but.               | nēve...nēve, } neither...   | si modo, if only.                 |
| cōtērum, but, however.    | neu...neu, } nor.           | simul, } as soon                  |
| ceu, as, like as, as if.  | ni, nisi, unless.           | simulac (-atquē) } as.            |
| cum or quum, since.       | num, whether.               | sīn, but if, if however.          |
| dōnēc, as long as, until. | præūt, in comparison with.  | sivē or seu, or if.               |
| dum, provided, while, as  | proūt, according as, just   | sivē...sivē, } whether...or.      |
| long as, until.           | as, as.                     | seu...seu, } whether...or.        |
| dummōdō, if but, if only. | proinde, hence, therefore.  | siquidem, if indeed, since.       |
| enimvērō, in very deed.   | proptēreā, therefore, for   | tāmēn, however, still.            |
| enim, } for.              | that reason.                | tāmetsi, although.                |
| ētēnim, } for.            | postquam, after, since.     | tamquam, as if.                   |
| eō, therefore.            | priusquam, before.          | tum...tum, both...and.            |
| equidem, indeed.          | quam, as, than.             | undē, whence.                     |
| ergo, therefore.          | quamvis, although.          | ūt, } that, as that, so that,     |
| et, and.                  | quando, quandōquidem,       | ūtī, } to the end that.           |
| et...et } both...and;     | whereas, since.             | ūt si, as if.                     |
| et...quē, } as well...as. | quamquam, although.         | utrum, whether.                   |
| et...nēque or nēc, on the | quāpropter, } wherefore.    | -vē, } either, or.                |
| one hand, but not on the  | quārē, } wherefore.         | vēl, } either...or.               |
| other.                    | quamobrem, } wherefore.     | vēl...vēl, either...or.           |
| etiam, also.              | quōcircā, } although,       | vēlūt, } even as, just as,        |
| etiamsi, } although,      | quantumvis, } although,     | vēlūtī, } like as.                |
| etsi, } though.           | quamlibet, } however.       | vērō, truly, but indeed.          |
| iccirco, } therefore.     | quāsi, as if, just as.      | vērūm, but.                       |
| ideo, } therefore.        | -quē, and.                  | vēruntāmēn, yet, notwithstanding. |
| igitūr, } therefore.      | -quē...ēt, } both...and;    | vērūm-enim vērō, but in-          |
| itāquē, } as well...as.   | -quē...quē, } as well...as. | deed.                             |
| licēt, though, although.  | quā, because.               |                                   |
| mōdō, provided.           | quān, but that, that not.   |                                   |
| nam, namquē, for.         | quippē, because.            |                                   |

Conjunctions, according to their different uses, are divided into two general classes,—coördinate and subordinate.

1. Coördinate conjunctions, are such as join coördinate or similar constructions; as,

*Luna et stellæ fulgebant.* The moon and the stars were shining. *Concitant venti, fugiuntque nubes.* The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. *Difficile factu est, sed conabor tamen.* It is difficult to accomplish, but still I will try.

Coördinate conjunctions include the following subdivisions, viz. *copulative, disjunctive, adverbative, illative, and most of the causal conjunctions.*

II. Subordinate conjunctions are such as join dissimilar constructions; as,

Edo, *ut vivam*, I eat that I may live. Pyrrhus rex in itinere incidit in canem, *qui interfecti hominis corpus custodiēbat*. Mergi pullos in aquam jussit, *ut bibērent*, quoniam esse nollent.

Subordinate conjunctions include all those connectives which unite subordinate or dependent clauses. These are the *concessive, illative, final, conditional, interrogative, and temporal* conjunctions, and the *causals quod, quum, quoniam*, etc. To these may be added also the relatives whether pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

The following paragraphs contain a specification of the several conjunctions comprised in each of the preceding subdivisions, and remarks respecting their particular import and use as connectives.

1. COPULATIVE conjunctions connect things that are to be considered jointly; as, *et, ac, atque*, the enclitic *quē*, which, combined with the negation belonging to the verb, becomes *nēquē* or *nēc*, and, the negation being doubled, *nēc nōn* or *nēquē nōn*, it becomes again affirmative and equivalent to *et*. To these are to be added *etiam* and *quodquē*, with the adverbials *item* and *etide m*.

REMARK. (a.) *Et* and *quē* differ in this, *et* connects things which are conceived as different, and *quē* adds what belongs to, or naturally flows from them. *Et*, therefore, is copulative and *quē* adjective. Hence, in an enumeration of words, *quē* frequently connects the last of the series, and by its means the preceding idea is extended without the addition of any thing which is generically different. In connecting propositions *quē* denotes a consequence, and is equivalent to 'and therefore.'

(b.) *Ac* never stands before vowels, *atque* chiefly before vowels, but also before consonants.—*Atque*, being formed of *ad* and *quē*, properly signifies 'and also,' 'and in addition,' thus putting things on an equality, but giving emphasis to the latter. In the beginning of a proposition, which is explanatory of that which precedes, *atque* or *ac* introduces a thing with great weight, and may be rendered 'now'; and in answers; as, *Cognostine hos versus? Ac memoriter*, it is rendered 'yes, and that.' *Ac* being an abridged form of *atque* loses somewhat of its power in connecting single words, and its use alternates with that of *et*; it is preferred in subdivisions, whereas the main propositions are connected by *et*.

(c.) *Nēquē*, compounded of the ancient *nē* for *nōn* and *quē*, is used for *et nōn*. *Et nōn* itself is used, when only one idea or one word of a proposition is to be negated; as, *patior et non moleste fero*; and also when our 'and not' is used for 'and not rather' to correct an improper supposition; as, *Si quam Rubrius injuriam suo nomine ac non impulsu tuo fecisset*. Cic. *Et nōn* is commonly found also in the second clause of a sentence when *et* precedes, but *nēquē*, also, is often used in this case. *Nēc nōn* or *nēquē nōn*, in classical prose, is not used like *et* to connect nouns, but only to join propositions, and the two words are separated. In later writers, however, they are not separated and are equivalent to *et*.

(d.) *Etiam* has a wider extent than *quodquē*, for it contains the idea of our 'even,' and it also adds a new circumstance, whereas *quodquē* denotes the addition of a thing of a similar kind. Hence *etiam* is properly used to connect sentences, while *quodquē* refers to a single word. *Etiam* signifies 'and further,' *quodquē*, 'and so,' 'also.' *Quodquē* always follows the word to which it refers, *etiam* in similar cases is usually placed before it, but when it connects propositions its place is arbitrary. *Et*, too, in classical prose, is sometimes used in the sense of 'also.' So often is *nōn modo—sed et*, 'not only—but also,' or 'but even.'

(e.) Copulative conjunctions are often repeated in the sense of 'both—and,' 'as well—as,' 'not only—but also.' *Et—et* is of common occurrence; so, in later writers, but rarely in Cicero, *et—quē*; *quē—et* connect single words, but not in Cicero; *quē—quē*, occur for the most part only in poetry, or in connection with the relative.—Negative propositions are connected in English by 'neither—nor,' and in Latin by *nēquē—nēquē*, *nēc—nēc*, *nēquē—nēc*, and rarely by *nēc—nēquē*. Propositions, one of which is negative and the other affirmative 'on the one hand—but not on the other,' or, 'not on the one hand—but on the other,' are connected by *et—nēquē* or *nēc*, *nēquē* or *nēc—et*, and occasionally by *nēc* or *nēquē—quē*.

2. DISJUNCTIVE conjunctions connect things that are to be considered separately; as, *aut*, *vēl*, the enclitic *vē*, and *sivē* or *seu*.

REMARK. (a.) *Aut* and *vēl* differ in this; *aut* indicates a difference of the object, *vēl*, a difference of expression, i. e. *aut* is objective, *vēl*, subjective. *Vēl* is connected with the verb *velle*, and is generally repeated, *vēl—vēl*, 'choose this or choose this,' and the single *vēl* is used by Cicero only to correct a preceding expression, and commonly combined with *dicam*, *pōtius*, or *etiām*.—Hence by ellipsis *vēl* has acquired the signification of the adverb, 'even,' and so enhances the signification of the word modified by it; as, *Quam Sophocles vel optime scripsērit Electram*, where *bene* is to be supplied before *vēl*, and the latter is used for the purpose of correcting the preceding expression. Cf. § 127, 4. By means of its derivation from *velle* it has, also, the signification of 'for example' or 'to take a case,' for which *vēlūt* is more frequently used.—(b.) *Vē*, the apocopated *vēl*, leaves the choice free between two or more things, and in later but good prose *vēl* is used in the same manner.

(c.) *Sivē* commonly retains the meaning of *si*, and is then the same as *vēl si*, but sometimes loses it, and is then equivalent to *vēl*, denoting a difference of name; as, *Vocabulum sivē appellatio*. Quint. The form *seu* is rarely used by Cicero except in the combination *seu pōtius*.—(d.) *Aut* and *vē* serve to continue the negation in negative sentences, where we use 'nor'; as, *nōn—aut*, where *nōn—nēquē* also may be used. They are used also in negative questions; as, *Nūm leges nostras moresvē novit?* Cic.; and after comparatives; as, *Doctrina paulo asperior, quam veritas aut natura patiatur*. Cic. It is only when both ideas are to be united into one that a copulative is used instead of *aut* and *vē*.—

(e.) 'Either—or' is expressed in Latin by *aut—aut*, denoting an opposition between two things, one of which excludes the other, or by *vēl—vēl*, denoting that the opposition is immaterial in respect to the result, so that the one need not exclude the other; as, *Vci imperatōre vel milite me utimini*. Sall.—*Sivē—sivē* is the same as *vēl si—vēl si*, and retains the meaning of *vēl—vēl*. If nouns only are opposed to each other, an uncertainty is expressed as to how a thing is to be called; as, *Crētum leges, quas sive Jupiter sive Minos sanxit*; i. e. I do not know whether I am to say Jupiter or Minos.

3. COMPARATIVE conjunctions express a comparison. These are, *ūt* or *ūtī*, *sicūt*, *vēlūt*, *prout*, *prout*, the poetical *ceu*, *quam*, *tamquam*, (with and without *si*), *quāsi*, *ūt si*, *ac si*, with *ac* and *atquē*, when they signify 'as.'

REMARK. *Ac* and *atquē* signify 'as' or 'than' after adverbs and adjectives which denote similarity or dissimilarity; as, *aequē, justā, pār* and *pārtēr, pēriendē* and *proindē, prō eō, similis* and *similiter, dissimilis, tālis, tōtidem, aliū* and *altēr, contrā, secūs, contrārius*.—*Quam* is rarely used after these words, except when a negative particle is joined with *alius*; as, *Virtus nihil aliud est, quam, etc.*; and *et* and *quē* do not occur in this connection.—*Ac* is used for *quoniam*, after comparatives, in poetry and occasionally by late prose writers; as, *Artius atque hedera*. Hor. *Insanius ac si*. Id.

4. CONCESSIVE conjunctions express a concession, with the general signification 'although.' These are *etsi*, *etiāmsi*, *tāmsi*, or *tāmsi*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*, *quamlibet*, *licet*, *et in the sense of 'even if' or 'although,'* and *quum* when it signifies 'although.'

REMARK. *Tāmen* and other particles signifying 'yet,' 'still,' are the correlatives of the concessive conjunctions; as, *Ut desint vires, tāmen est laudanda*

*voluntas*. Ovid. The adverb *quidem* becomes a concessive conjunction, when it is used to connect propositions and is followed by *sed*.—*Quamquam*, in absolute sentences, sometimes refers to something preceding, which it limits and partly nullifies; as, *Quamquam quid loquor?* Yet why do I speak?

5. **CONDITIONAL** conjunctions express a condition, their fundamental signification being 'if.' These are *si*, *sin*, *nisi* or *ni*, *si modo*, *dummodo*, 'if only,' 'if but,' (for which *dum* and *modo* are also used alone), *dummodo nē*, or simply *modo nē* or *dum nē*.

**REMARK.** (a.) In order to indicate the connection with a preceding proposition, the relative *quod*, which in such case loses its signification as a pronoun, and may be rendered, 'nay,' 'now,' 'and,' or 'then,' is frequently put before *si* and sometimes before *nisi* and *etsi*, so that *quodsi* may be regarded as one word, signifying 'now if,' 'but if,' or 'if then.' It serves especially to introduce something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. It sometimes signifies 'although.' *Quodnisi* signifies 'if then—not,' and *quodetsi*, 'nay, even if.' *Quod* is found also before *quum*, *ubi*, *quā*, *quoniam*, *nē*, *utnam*, and even before the relative pronoun.

(b.) *Ni* and *nisi* limit a statement by introducing an exception, and thus differ from *si nōn*, which introduces a negative case. It is often immaterial whether *nisi* or *si nōn* is used, but the difference is still essential. *Si nōn* is used when single words are opposed to one another, and in this case *si minūs* may be used instead of *si nōn*.—If after an affirmative proposition its negative opposite is added without a verb, our 'but if not' is commonly expressed in prose by *si minūs* or *sin minūs* or *sin aliter*; as, *Educ tecum etiam omnes tuos; si minūs, quam plurimos*. Cic.; rarely by *si nōn*.

6. **ILLATIVE** conjunctions express an inference or conclusion, with the general signification of 'therefore,' 'consequently.' These are *ergo*, *igitur*, *itāquē*, *eō*, *ideo*, *iccirco*, *proindē*, *propterea*, and the relative conjunctions, *quapropter*, *quārē*, *quamobrem*, *quōcirca*, *undē*, 'wherefore.'

**REMARK.** *Ergo* and *igitur* denote a logical inference.—*Itāquē*, 'and thus,' expresses the relation of cause in facts.—*Ideo*, *iccirco*, and *propterea*, 'on this account,' express the agreement between intention and action.—*Eō*, 'on this account,' or 'for this purpose,' is more frequently an adverb of place.—*Proindē*, 'consequently,' implies an exhortation.—*Undē*, 'whence,' is properly an adverb of place.—*Adēo*, 'so that,' or simply 'so,' is also properly an adverb. *Hinc*, 'hence,' and *indē*, 'thence,' continue to be adverbs.

7. **CAUSAL** conjunctions express a cause or reason, with the general signification of 'for' and 'because.' These are *nam*, *namquē*, *enim*, *etēnim*, *quid*, *quōd*, *quōniam*, *quippē*, *quum*, *quando*, *quandōquidem*, *siquidem*; and the adverbs *nimirum*, *nempē*, *scilicet*, and *videlicet*.

**REMARK.** (a.) *Nam* is used at the beginning of a proposition, *enim*, after the first or second word. *Nam* introduces an objective reason, and *enim* merely a subjective one. There is the same difference between *namquē* and *etēnim*. *Namquē*, however, though constantly standing at the beginning of a proposition in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, is in later writers often put after the beginning. *Enim* in the sense of *at enim* or *sed enim* is sometimes, by comic writers, put at the beginning of a proposition.—*Nam*, *enim*, and *etēnim* are often used in the sense of 'namely,' or 'to wit,' to introduce an explanation of something going before. *Nimirum*, *videlicet*, and *scilicet* likewise answer to our 'namely' or 'viz.' *Nimirum*, compounded of *nī* and *mīrum*, and signifying 'a wonder if not,' is used as a connective in the sense of 'undoubtedly' or 'surely,' and implies strong confidence in the truth of the proposition with which it is connected.—*Videlicet* and *scilicet* introduce an explanation, with this difference that *videlicet* generally indicates the true, and *scilicet* a wrong explanation. Sometimes, however, *nam*, *enim*, *etēnim*, *nimirum*, and *videlicet* are used in an ironical sense, and *scilicet* introduces a true reason.—*Nempē*, 'surely,' often assumes a sarcastic meaning when another person's concession is taken for the purpose of refuting him.—(b.) *Quid* and *quōd* indicate a defini-



nite and conclusive reason, *quoniam*, (i. e. *quum jam*), a motive.—*Ideo*, *iccirco*, *propterea quod*, and *quid*, are used without any essential difference, except that *quid* introduces a more strict and logical reason, whereas *quoniam*, signifying 'now as,' introduces important circumstances.—*Quando*, *quandocumque*, and *siquidem* approach nearer to *quoniam* than to *quid*, as they introduce only subjective reasons. *Quandocumque* denotes a reason implied in a circumstance previously mentioned; *siquidem*, a reason implied in a concession. In *siquidem* the meaning of *si* is generally dropped, but it sometimes remains, and then *si* and *quidem* should be written as separate words; as, *O fortunatam rempublicam, si quidem hanc sententiam eiecit.* Cic.—*Quippe*, with the relative pronoun or with *quum*, introduces a subjective reason. When used elliptically without a verb it signifies 'forsooth' or 'indeed.' Sometimes it is followed by a sentence with *enim*, and in this way gradually acquires the signification of *nam*.

8. FINAL conjunctions express a purpose, object, or result, with the signification of 'in order that,' or 'in order that not.' These are *ut* or *utrum*, *quod*, *ne* or *ut ne*, *neve* or *neu*, *quin* and *quominus*.

REMARK. *Ut*, as a conjunction, indicates either a result or a purpose, 'so that,' and 'in order that.' When indicating a result, if a negative is added to it, it becomes *ut non*; when indicating a purpose, if the negative is added, it becomes *ne* or *ut ne*, but *ut non* also is very rarely used for *ne*.—*Neve* (i. e. *vel ne*) signifies either 'or in order that not,' or 'and in order that not.' *Ut ne* is a pleonasm, not differing perceptibly from *ne*. It is used more frequently by Cicero than by other writers. *Quo ne* for *ne* occurs once in Horace.

9. ADVERSATIVE conjunctions, express opposition, with the signification of 'but.' These are *sed*, *autem*, *verum*, *vero*, *at* (poetical *ast*), *et*, *enim*, *atque*, *tamen*, *atamen*, *sedtamen*, *veruntamen*, *at vero*, (*enimvero*), *verumenim*, *verum*, *vero*, *ceterum*.

REMARK. (a.) *Sed* denotes a direct opposition, and interrupts the narrative or argument; *autem* marks a transition, and denotes at once a connection and an opposition. *Porro*, 'further,' denotes progression and transition but not opposition, except in later authors.—*Verum* has a similar relation to *vero* as *sed* to *autem*. *Verum*, while it denotes opposition, contains also an explanation. *Vero* connects things which are different, but denotes the point in favor of which the decision should be. It thus forms the transition to something more important, as in the phrase, *Illud vero plane non est ferendum*, i. e. that which I am about to mention. In affirmative answers *vero* is often added to the verb; as, *Dasne? Do vero*. Hence, when the protasis supplies the place of a question, it is sometimes introduced into the apodosis merely to show that it contains an answer. Hence also *vero* alone signifies 'yes,' like *sane*, *ita*, and *etiam*.—*Enimvero*, 'yes, truly,' 'in truth,' does not denote opposition. It sometimes, like *vero*, forms the transition to that which is most important. The compound *verum enimvero* denotes the most emphatic opposition.

(b.) *At* denotes that that which is opposed is equivalent to that which precedes. It frequently follows *si*, in the sense of 'yet,' or 'at least'; as, *etiam non sapientissimus, at amicissimus*. It is especially used to denote objections whether of the speaker himself or of others. *At enim* introduces a reason for the objection implied in *at*.—By *atque*, 'but still,' 'but yet,' or 'nevertheless,' we admit what precedes, but oppose something else to it; as, *Magnum narras, viz credibile. Atque sic habet*. Hor. So, also, when that which is admitted, is made use of to prove the contrary. Finally, *atque* is used in syllogisms, when a thing is assumed which had before been left undecided; in this case it does not denote a direct opposition of facts, and may be translated by 'now,' 'but,' 'but now.'—*Ceterum*, properly 'as for the rest,' is often used by later writers for *sed*.—*Contra ea*, in the sense of 'on the other hand,' is used as a conjunction. So *adeo* with a pronoun, when it may be translated 'just,' 'precisely,' 'even,' 'indeed,' or an intensive 'and.'

10. TEMPORAL conjunctions, express time. These are *quum*, *quum primum*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *ubi*, *postquam*, *antequam*, and *priusquam*, *quando*, *simulac* or *simulatque*, or *simul* alone, *dum*, *usque dum*, *donec*, *quoad*.

REMARK. *Ut* and *sibi*, as particles of time, signify 'when.' *Dum*, *dōnc*, and *quoad* signify either 'as long as,' or 'until.' *Dum* often precedes *interea* or *interim*, and both *dum* and *dōnc* are often preceded by the adverbs *usque*, *usque cō* or *usque adeo*.

11. INTERROGATIVE conjunctions indicate a question. These are, *num*, *utrum*, *ān*, and the enclitic *nē*. This, when attached to the three preceding particles, forming *numnē*, *utrumnē*, and *annē*, does not affect their meaning. With *nōn* it forms a special interrogative particle *nonnē*. To these add *ec* and *ēn*, as they appear in *ecquis*, *ecquando*, and *enumquam*, and *numquid* and *ecquid*, when used simply as interrogative particles.

REMARK. (a.) The interrogative particles have no distinct meaning by themselves in direct questions, but only serve to give to a proposition the form of a question. In direct speech the interrogative particles are sometimes omitted, but in indirect questions they are indispensable, except in the case of a double question, where the first particle is sometimes omitted.—*Ecquid* and *numquid*, as interrogative particles, have the meaning of *num*, *quid* in this case having no meaning, but they must be carefully distinguished from the interrogative pronouns *ecquid* and *numquid*. *En*, or when followed by a *q*, *ec* is, like *num*, *nē*, and *ān*, an interrogative particle, but is always prefixed to some other interrogative word.

(b.) In direct questions, *num* and its compounds *numnē*, *numnam*, *numquid*, *numquidnam*, and the compounds with *ēn* or *ec* suppose that the answer will be 'no'; as, *Num putas me tam dementem fuisse?* But *ecquid* is sometimes used in an affirmative sense. In general the negative sense of these particles does not appear in indirect questions.

(c.) *Nē* properly denotes simply a question, but it is used sometimes affirmatively and sometimes negatively. When *nē* is attached, not to the principal verb but to some other word, a negative sense is produced; as, *mene istud potuisse facere putas?* Do you believe that I would have done that? The answer expected is 'no.' When attached to the principal verb *nē* often gives the affirmative meaning, and the answer expected is 'yes.'—*Nonnē* is the sign of an affirmative question; as, *Canis nonne lupo similis est?*—*Utrum*, in accordance with its derivation from *iter*, which of two, is used only in double questions whether consisting of two or more. It is sometimes accompanied by *nē*, which is usually separated from it by one or more words; as, *Utrum, taceanne an prædicem?* In later writers, however, *utrumnē* is united into one word. *Nē* is rarely appended to interrogative adjectives, but examples of such use are sometimes found in poetry; as, *uternē; quōnē malo; quantanē*. In a few passages it is even attached to the relative pronoun.

(d.) *An* is not used as a sign of an indirect question before the silver age; when so used it answers to 'whether.' It is used by Cicero exclusively in a second or opposite question, where we use 'or'; as, *Si sitis, nihil interest utrum aqua sit, an vinum; nec refert, utrum sit aureum poculum, an vitreum, an manus conctoa*. Sen. In direct interrogations, when no interrogative clause precedes, *ān*, *annē*, *ān vērō* are likewise used in the sense of 'or,' that is in such a manner that a preceding interrogation is supplied by the mind; as, *Invitus te offendi, an putas me delectari laudendis hominibus?* Here we may supply before *an putas*, etc. the sentence, 'Do you believe this?'—*An*, after a preceding question, is rendered by 'not,' and it then indicates that the answer cannot be doubtful; as, *A rebus gerendis senectus abstrahit. Quibus? An his, quæ geruntur juventute ac virtute?* Is it not from those kinds of business, which? etc. Here we may suppose *aliisne?* to be supplied before *an his?* Is it from other kinds of business, or from those? etc. Such questions may be introduced by *nonnē*, but without allusion to an opposite question, which is implied in *ān*.

(e.) To the rule that *ān*, in indirect questions, is used exclusively to indicate a second or opposite question, there is one great exception, for it is employed in single indirect questions after such expressions as *dubito*, *dubium est*, *incertum est*, *delibero*, *hæsitō*, and especially after *nescio* or *haud scio*, all of which denote uncertainty, but with an inclination to the affirmative; as, *Si per se virtus sine*

*fortuna ponderanda sit, dubito an hunc primum omnium ponam*, If virtue is to be estimated without reference to its success, I am not certain whether I should not prefer this man to all others. Nep. It is not Latin to say *dubito annon* for *dubito an*.—*Nescio an*, or *haud scio an* are used quite in the sense of 'perhaps,' so that they are followed by the negatives *nullus*, *nemo*, *numquam*, instead of *ullus*, *quisquam* and *umquam*. When the principal verb is omitted, *an* is often used in the sense of *aut*; as, *Themistocles, quum ei Simonides, an quis alius, artem memoria polliceretur*, etc. In such cases *incertum est* is understood, and in Tacitus is often supplied.—The conjunction *si* is sometimes used in indirect interrogations instead of *num*, like the Greek *ei*, and it is so used by Cicero after the verb *experiōr*.

NOTE 1. The conjunctions *-ne*, *-que*, *-ve*, are not used alone, but are always affixed to some other word, and are hence called *enclitica*.

NOTE 2. Some words here classed with conjunctions are also used as adverbs, and many classed as adverbs are likewise conjunctions; that is, they at the same time qualify verbs, etc., and connect propositions; as, *Ceteris in rebus, quum venit calamitas, tum detrimentum accipitur*. In other concerns, when misfortune comes, then damage is received.

NOTE 3. Conjunctions, like adverbs, are variously compounded with other parts of speech, and with each other; as, *atque*, (i. e. *adque*), *iccirco* or *idcirco*, (i. e. *id-circa*), *ideo*, *namque*, etc. In some, compounded of an adverb and a conjunction, each of the simple words retains its meaning, and properly belongs to its own class; as, *etiam* (*et jam*) and now; *itaque*, and so; *neque* or *nec*, and not.

## INTERJECTIONS.

§ 199. An interjection is a particle used in exclamation, and expressing some emotion of the mind.

The most usual interjections are,

|                                    |                                          |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| ah! ah! alas!                      | hem! oh! indeed! well! hah! alas! alack! |
| aha! aha! ah! haha!                | heu! oh! ah! alas!                       |
| apagè! away! begone!               | heus! ho! ho there! hark! halloo!        |
| âtât! or atatte! oh! ah! alas! lo! | hui! hah! ho! oh!                        |
| au! or hau! oh! ah!                | iô! ho! hurrah! huzzah!                  |
| eccè! lo! see! behold!             | ô! o! oh! ah!                            |
| ehem! ha! what!                    | ôh! oh! o! ah!                           |
| ehen! ah! alas!                    | ôhè! ho! halloo! ho there!               |
| èho! elodum! ho! soho!             | ôho! oho! aha!                           |
| eiâ! or heiâ! ah! ah ha! indeed!   | oi! hoy! alas!                           |
| ên! lo! see! behold!               | pâpæ! strange! wonderful!                |
| eu! well done! bravo!              | phui! joh! fugh!                         |
| eugè! well done! good!             | phy! pish! tush!                         |
| euax! } huzzah! hurrah!            | prô! or prôh! oh! ah!                    |
| eucè! }                            | st! hist! whist! hush!                   |
| ha! hold! ho!                      | tatæ! so! strange!                       |
| ha! ha! he! hâ! ha!                | væ! ah! alas! woe!                       |
| hei! ah! wo! alas!                 | vah! vaha! ah! alas! oh!                 |

REMARK 1. An interjection sometimes denotes several different emotions. Thus *vah* is used to express wonder, grief, joy, and anger.

REM. 2. Other parts of speech may sometimes be regarded as interjections; as, *pax*, 'be still! So *indignum*, *infandum*, *malum*, *misèrum*, *miserabile*, *nèfas*, when used as expressions of astonishment, grief, or horror; and *macte* and *macti*, as expressions of approbation. In like manner the adverbs *næ*, *perfecto*, *cito*, *bene*, *belle*, the verbs *quæso*, *præcor*, *oro*, *obsecro*, *amâbo*, *âge*, *âgite*, *cûdo*, *audes*, (for *si audes*), *sus*, *sultis*, (for *si vis* and *si vultis*), *âgèsis*, *âgèdum*, and *âgite dum*, and the interrogative *quid*? what? used as exclamations.

REM. 3. With the interjections may also be classed the following invocations of the gods : *hercúles, hercúle, hercúle*; or *mehercúles, mehercúle, mehercúle*; *medius fidúis, mecastor, ecastor, ectre, pol, edepol, equirine, per deum, per deum immortálem, per deos, per Jovem, prò (or pròh) Júpiter, prò dii immortáles, prò deum fidem, prò deum atque hominúum fidem, prò deum immortálium* (scil. *fidem*), etc.

## SYNTAX.

§ 200. 1. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences.

2. A sentence is a thought expressed in words; as, *Cánes latrant*, The dogs bark.

3. All sentences are either

(1.) DECLARATIVE; as, *Venti spirant*, The winds blow:—

(2.) INTERROGATIVE; as, *Spirantne venti?* Do the winds blow?—

(3.) EXCLAMATORY; as, *Quam vehēmenter spirant venti!* How fiercely the winds blow!—or

(4.) IMPERATIVE; as, *Venti, spiráte*, Blow, winds.

4. The mood of the verb in the first three classes of sentences is either the indicative or the subjunctive; in imperative sentences it is either the imperative or the subjunctive.

5. A sentence may consist either of one proposition or of two or more propositions connected together.

## PROPOSITIONS.

§ 201. 1. A proposition consists of a *subject* and a *predicate*.

2. The subject of a proposition is that of which something is affirmed.

3. The predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject.

Thus, in the proposition, *Equus currit*, The horse runs, *equus* is the subject and *currit* is the predicate.

NOTE. The word *affirm*, as here used, includes all the various significations of the verb, as expressed in the several moods.

4. Propositions are either *principal* or *subordinate*.

5. A principal proposition is one which makes complete sense by itself; as,

*Phocion fuit perpétuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset*, *Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.*

6. A **subordinate proposition** is one which, by means of a subordinate conjunction, is made to depend upon or limit some part of another proposition; as,

*Phœcion fuit perpétuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset, Phœcion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.*

7. Subordinate propositions are used either as *substantives, adjectives, or adverbs*, and are accordingly called *substantive, adjective or adverbial propositions or clauses*.

8. Substantive clauses are connected with the propositions on which they depend by means of the final conjunctions *ut, ne, quo, quin*, etc., sometimes by *quod*, and, in clauses containing an indirect question, by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, adverbs and conjunctions. See §§ 262 and 265.

REMARK. A dependent substantive clause often takes the form of the accusative with the infinitive, and in that case has no connective; as, *Gaudeo te valere*.

9. Adjective clauses are connected by means of relatives, both pronouns and pronominal adjectives; as, *qui, quâlis, quantus*, etc. Adverbial clauses are connected either by relative adverbs of place and time, (§ 191, R. 1, (b.)), or by temporal, conditional, concessive, comparative, and sometimes by causal conjunctions.

10. A sentence consisting of one proposition is called a *simple sentence*; as,

*Cadunt fôlia, The leaves fall. Semirâmis Babylonem condidit.*

11. A sentence consisting of a principal and one or more subordinate propositions is called a *complex sentence*; as,

*Qui fit, ut nemo contentus vivat? How happens it, that no one lives content? Quis ego sim, me rogitas, You ask me, who I am.*

12. A sentence consisting of two or more principal propositions, either alone or in connection with one or more subordinate propositions, is called a *compound sentence*; as,

*Spirant venti et cadunt fôlia, The winds blow, and the leaves fall.*

13. The propositions composing a complex or a compound sentence are called its *members* or *clauses*; the principal proposition is called the *leading clause*, its subject, the *leading subject*, and its verb, the *leading verb*.

## SUBJECT.

§ 202. 1. The subject also is either *simple, complex, or compound*.

2. The simple subject, which is also called the *grammatical subject*, is either a noun or some word standing for a noun; as,

*Aves volant, Birds fly. Tu lêgis, Thou readest. A est vōcâlis, A is a vowel. Mentîri est turpe, To lie is base.*

3. The complex subject, called also the *logical subject*, consists of the simple subject with its modifications; as,

*Conscientia bene actæ vitæ est jucundissima, The consciousness of a well spent life is very pleasant. Here conscientia is the grammatical, and conscientia bene actæ vitæ the complex, subject.*

4. The compound subject consists of two or more simple or complex subjects to which a single predicate belongs; as,

*Lūna et stellæ fulgebant.* The moon and stars were shining. *Grammaticæ et mūsicæ iunctæ fuerunt,* Grammar and music were united. *Semper hōnos nōmenque tuum laudesque manebunt.*

REMARK. Words are said to *modify* or *limit* other words, when they serve to explain, describe, define, enlarge, restrict, or otherwise qualify their meaning.

5. Every sentence must contain a subject and a predicate, called its *principal* or *essential* parts: any sentence may also receive additions to these, called its *subordinate* parts.

### *Complex or Modified Subject.*

6. The complex subject is formed by adding other words to the simple subject. All additions to the subject, like the subject itself, are either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

I. *Simple additions.* The subject may be modified by adding:—

1. A *single word*:—

(1.) A noun in the same case; as,

*Nos consules dēsūmus,* We consuls are remiss. *Mūcius augur multa narrāvit,* Mucius the augur related many things.

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case, modifying or limiting the subject; as,

*Amor multitudinis commōvētur,* The love of the multitude is excited. *Cura mei,* Care for me. *Viribus usus,* Need of strength.

(3.) An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle; as,

*Fūgit invida ætas,* Envious time flies. *Mea māter est bēnigna.* *Dūcūt agmina Penthēsilea fūrens.* *Litēra scripta mānet.*

2. A *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

*Sōpor in grāmīne.* *Oppida sine præsīdio.* *Receptio ad te.*

3. A *dependent adjective clause* introduced by *qui, quālis, quantus,* etc.; as,

*Lēve fit, quod bēne fertur, ōnus,* The burden, which is borne well, becomes light. *Litēre, quas scripsisti, acceptæ sunt.* *Ut, quālis (ille) habēri vellet, talis esset.* *Tanta est inter eos, quanta maxīma esse pōtest, mōrum dīstantia.*

II. *Complex additions.* The subject may be modified:—

1. By a *word* to which other words are added.

(1.) When the word to which other words are added is a noun or pronoun, it may be modified in any of the ways above mentioned.

(2.) When it is an adjective it may be modified:—

(a.) By an adverb either simple or modified; as,

*Erat exspectatio valde magna.* *Præsidium non nimis firmum.*

(b.) By a noun in an oblique case; as,

*Major pietate,* Superior in piety. *Contentionis cupidus,* Fond of contention. *Patri similis,* Like his father. *Nudus membra.* *Iuvenes patre digni.*

(c.) By an infinitive, a gerund, or a supine; as,

*Inuētus* vinci, Not accustomed to be conquered. *Vēnandi stātū* deus, Fond of hunting. *Mirābile* dictu, Wonderful to tell.

(d.) By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case; as,  
*Rudis* in rēpublica, Unskilled in civil affairs. *Ab* equitātū *fīrmus*. *Ceter* in pugnam. *Prōnus* ad fidem.

(e.) By a subordinate clause; as,

*Mēlior est certa* pax, quam spērāta victōria, A certain peace is better than an expected victory. *Dūbius* sum, quid faciā.

(3.) When it is a participle, it may be modified like a verb. See § 203.

2. By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case to which other words are added; as,

*De* victōria Cēsāris *fāma* *perfertur*, A report concerning Cæsar's victory is brought.

REMARK 1. As the case following the preposition is that of a noun or pronoun, it may be modified like the subject in any of the foregoing ways.

REM. 2. The preposition itself may be modified by an adverb, or by a noun or adjective in an oblique case; as,

*Longe ultra*, Far beyond. *Multo ante noctem*, Long before night. *Sexennio post Vēios captos*, Six years after the capture of Veii.

3. By a subordinate clause, to whose subject or predicate other words are added.

REMARK. These additions may be of the same form as those added to the principal subject or predicate of the sentence.

III. Compound additions. The subject may be modified:—

1. By two or more nouns in the same case as the subject, connected by a coördinate conjunction; as,

*Consules*, Brūtus et Collatinus, The consuls, Brutus and Collatinus.

2. By two or more oblique cases of a noun or pronoun connected coördinately; as,

*Vitæque* necisque *pōtestas*. *Pēriculorum et* libōrum *incitāmentum*.

3. By two or more adjectives, adjective pronouns, or participles, connected coördinately; as,

*Græve bellum* *perdiūtū* *namque*. *Animi* *tēnēri* *atque* *molles*.

4. By two or more adjective clauses connected coördinately; as,  
*Et* qui *fēcēre*, *et* qui *facta* *aliōrum* *scripsēre*, *multi* *laudantur*. Sall.

5. By two or more of the preceding modifications connected coördinately; as,

*Genus* *hominum* *agreste*, *sine* *legibus*, *sine* *imperio*, *liberum*, *atque* *solūtum*.

REM. 1. A modified grammatical subject, considered as one complex idea, may itself be modified; as,

*Omnia* *tua* *consilia*, All thy counsels. Here *omnia* modifies, not *consilia*, but the complex idea expressed by *tua consilia*. So *Triginta* *nāves* *longæ*. *Præpō-*  
*tans* *finitimus* *rex*.

REM. 2. An infinitive, with the words connected with it, may be the logical subject of a proposition ; as,

*Virtus est vitium fugere, To shun vice is a virtue.*

REM. 3. A clause, or any member consisting of two or more clauses, may be the logical subject of a proposition ; as,

*E cælo descendit 'Nosce te ipsum.' Equum est, ut hoc facias.*

REM. 4. The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a proposition is put in the nominative, when the verb of the predicate is a finite verb ; but when the verb is in the infinitive, the subject is put in the accusative.

NOTE 1. A verb in any mood, except the infinitive, is called a *finite* verb.

NOTE 2. In the following pages, when the term *subject* or *predicate* is used alone, the grammatical subject or predicate is intended.

## PREDICATE.

§ 203. 1. The predicate, like the subject, is either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

2. The simple predicate, which is also called the *grammatical* predicate, is either a single finite verb, or the copula *sum* with a noun, adjective, and rarely with an adverb ; as,

*Sol lūcet, The sun shines. Multa animalia rēpunt, Many animals creep. Brevis est voluptas, Pleasure is brief. Eurōpa est pēninsula, Europe is a peninsula. Rectissime sunt apud te omnia.*

3. The complex predicate, called also the *logical* predicate, consists of the simple predicate with its modifications ; as,

*Scipio fūdīt Annibālis cōpias, Scipio routed the forces of Hannibal. Here fūdīt is the grammatical, and fūdīt Annibālis cōpias the logical predicate.—So, Rōmulus Rōmānæ conditor urbis fuit.*

4. The compound predicate consists of two or more simple or complex predicates belonging to the same subject ; as,

*Prōbitas laudātur et alget, Honesty is praised and neglected. Lēti vis rāpuit, rāpiētque gentes. Lucius Catilīna fuit magnā vi et animi et corpōris, sed ingenio malo pravōque.*

### *Complex or Modified Predicate.*

5. The complex predicate is formed by adding other words to the simple predicate. All additions to the predicate, like the predicate itself, are either simple, complex, or compound.

I. *Simple additions.* The predicate may be modified by adding:—

1. A single word;—

(1.) A noun or adjective in the same case as the subject. This occurs after certain neuter verbs and passive verbs of naming, calling, etc. (See § 210, R. 3.) ; as,

*Servus fit libertinus, The slave becomes a freedman. Servius Tullius rex declaratus. Aristides justus est appellatus. Incēdo regina.*

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case ; as,

*Spe vivimus, We live by hope Deus regit mundum, God rules the world.*



## (3.) An adverb either simple or modified ; as,

*Sæpe venit*, He came *often*. *Festina lente*, Hasten *slowly*. *Litteras facile discuntur*. *Chremes nimis graviter cruciatur adolescentulum*.

## (4.) An infinitive mood ; as,

*Opto discere*, He desires *to learn*. *Audeo dicere*. *Ver esse cuperat*.

2. A phrase consisting of a preposition and its case ; as, *Venit ad urbem*, He came *to the city*.

3. A dependent substantive or adverbial clause ; as,

*Vereor ne reprehendar*, I fear *that I shall be blamed*. *Zenonem*, quum Athēnis essem, *audiebam frequenter*. *Fac cogites*.

## II. Complex additions. The predicate may be modified :—

1. By a word to which other words are added.

REMARK. These words are the same as in the corresponding cases of complex additions to the subject. See § 202, II.

2. By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case, to which other words are added. See complex additions to the subject, § 202.

3. By a subordinate clause, to whose subject or predicate other words are added. See complex subject, § 202, II, 3.

REM. 2. Each of the words constituting a proposition may be modified by two or more additions not dependent on, nor connected with each other, and consisting either of single words, phrases, or dependent clauses ; as, *Agamemnonis belli gloria*. *Paternum datum erga Romanos*. *Mens sibi conscia recti*. *Eos maxime interest, te valere*. *Ago tibi gratias*. *Meipsum Inertiæ condemno*. *Eos hoc moneo*. *In quo te accuso*. *Monet eum, ut suspiciones vitet*.

III. Compound additions. 1. The predicate may be modified by two or more words, phrases, or clauses, joined together by a coördinate conjunction. See Compound additions to the subject, § 202, III.

2. The leading verb is usually either in the indicative or imperative mood, but sometimes in the subjunctive or the historical infinitive.

3. The members of a compound sentence are connected by coördinate conjunctions ; those of a complex sentence by some relative word, or by a subordinate conjunction.

4. Instead of a dependent clause connected by a conjunction, a noun and participle, or two nouns, sometimes stand as an abridged proposition ; as,

*Bello confecto discessit*, i. e. *quum bellum confectum esset, discessit*, The war being finished, or when the war was finished, he departed. *Nil desperandum*, Teucro duce.

5. An infinitive may be modified like the verb of a predicate.

6. Agreement is the correspondence of one word with another in gender, number, case, or person.

7. A word is said to govern another, when it requires it to be put in a certain case or mood.

8. A word is said to depend on another, when its case, gender, number, mood, tense, or person, is determined by that word.

9. A word is said to follow another, when it depends upon it in construction, whatever may be its position in the sentence.

## APPOSITION.

§ 204. A noun, annexed to another noun or to a pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case; as,

*Urbs Rōma*, The city *Rome*. *Nos consules*, We *consuls*. So *Apud Herodōtum*, patrem *historiæ*, *sunt innumerabiles fabulæ*, In Herodotus, the father of history, etc. Cic. *Lapides silices*, flint stones. Liv. *Ante me consulem*, Before I was consul. *Fons cui nōmen Arēthūsa est*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) A noun, thus annexed to another, is said to be in *apposition* to it. It is generally added for the sake of explanation, identification, or description; sometimes it denotes character or purpose; as, *Ejus fugæ comitem me adiunxi*, I added myself, as a companion of his flight; and sometimes the time, cause, reason, etc., of an action; as, *Alexander puer*, Alexander when a boy. *Cito sēnex scribere historiā instituit*. Suet.

(b.) A noun in apposition, like an adjective used as an epithet, (§ 205, N. 2,) assumes the attribute denoted by it as belonging to the noun which it limits, while the predicate-nominative affirms it. Hence both nouns belong to the same part of the sentence, whether subject or predicate. In cases of apposition, there seems to be an ellipsis of the ancient participle *ens*, being; *qui est*, who is; *qui vocatur*, who is called; or the like.

REM. 2. If the annexed noun has a form of the same gender as the other noun, it takes that form; as, *Usus magister egregius*. Plin. *Philosophia magistra vitæ*. Cic. If the annexed noun is of the common gender, the adjective qualifying it takes the gender of the preceding noun; as, *Laurus fidiſsima custos*.

REM. 3. The annexed noun sometimes differs from the other in gender or in number; as, *Duo fulmina bellī, Scipiadas*, clādem *Libyæ*. Virg. *Milyēna, urbs nobilis*. Cic. *Tulliola, deliciæ nostræ*. Id.;—and sometimes in both; as, *Nāte, meæ vires*. Virg. *Nos, animæ viles, inhumāta infletūque turba*. Id.

REM. 4. The substantive pronoun is sometimes omitted before the word in apposition to it; as, *Consul dixi*, scil. *ēgo*; (I) the consul said. And instead of the substantive pronoun, a possessive adjective pronoun is sometimes used; as, *Tua dōmus, talis viri*. Cic. See § 211, R. 3, (b.)

REM. 5. A noun may be in apposition to two or more nouns, and, in such case, is usually put in the plural; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius*, tribūni *plēbis*, M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribunes of the people. Cæs. *Publius et Servius Sullæ, Servī filii*. Sall. *Tib. et Gaius Gracchi*. Cic. *Orationes L. et C. Aureliorum Orestarum*. Id. But sometimes in the singular; as, Cn. et L. Domitius. Cic.

(1.) So when the nouns are connected by *cum*, the annexed noun taking the case of the former; as, *Dicæarchum vērō cum Aristoxēno, doctos sâne homines, omittamus*. Cic.

(2.) If the nouns are proper names of different genders, a masculine noun is annexed rather than a feminine, when both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque rēges legātī missi sunt*. Liv.

REM. 6. The annexed noun is sometimes in the genitive; as, *Urbeſ Patāvī locavit*, The city of Patavium. Virg. *Plurimus Eridāni amnis*. Id. *Arbōrem fici nunquam vidērat*. Cic. *In oppido Antiochiæ*. Id. *Rupili et Persi par*. Hor.

REM. 7. The name of a town in the genitive occurs with an ablative in apposition to it; as, *Corinthi Achaia urbe*; At Corinth, a city of Achaia. Tac. *Antiochia, celebrī urbe*. Cic. See § 221, Note, and § 254, Rem. 3.

REM. 8. (a.) A proper name, after *nōmen* or *cognōmen*, with a verb followed by a dative, is put in apposition either to *nōmen*, etc., or to the dative, the latter by a species of attraction; as, *Fons, cui nōmen Arēthūsa est*. Cic. *Stirps viriſſa, cui Ascanium parentes dātere nōmen*. Liv. *Nōmen Arctūro est mihi*, I have the

name *Arcturus*. Plant. *Cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo additur*. Virg. *Cui Egerio inditum nōmen*. Liv.—(b.) The name may also be put in the genitive; as, *Nōmen Mercūrii est mihi*. Plant. *Q. Metellus, cui Macedonici nōmen inditum erat*. Vell. Cf. R. 8.—(c.) In *illa ætas, cui sectinus Aurea nōmen*, Ov. Met. 15, 96, *Aurea* is used as an indeclinable noun, instead of *Auream* (scil. *ætatem*); or *Aurea*, dat. (scil. *ætati*).

REM. 9. A clause may supply the place of one of the nouns; as, *Ogileti oratōrem institui—rem arduam*, Let him reflect that an orator is training—a difficult thing. Quint.—So also a neuter adjective used substantively; as, *Triste lūpus stabūlis*, The wolf, a sad thing to the folds. Virg. *Vārium et mutabile semper femina*. Id.

REM. 10. Sometimes the former noun denotes a whole, and its parts are expressed by nouns in apposition to it; as, *Onerāria, pars maxima ad Ægimūrum*,—*aliæ adversus urbem ipsam delatæ sunt*, The ships of burden were carried, the greatest part, to Ægimurus,—others opposite to the city itself. Liv. *Pictōres et poëtæ suum quisque opus a vulgo considerāri vult*. Cic. In the construction of the ablative absolute, *quisque* remains in the nominative, though the word to which it is in apposition is in the ablative; as, *Multis sibi quisque impērium petentibus*. Sall. J. 18. So also, in Liv. 26, 29, *quisque* remains in the nominative although the word to which it is in apposition is in the accusative with the infinitive.

To this rule may be subjoined that which relates to the agreement of interrogative and responsive words.

REM. 11. The principal noun or pronoun in the answer to a question, must be in the same case as the corresponding interrogative word; as,

*Quis hērūs est tibi?* Amphitruo, scil. *est*. Who is your master? Amphitruo (is.) Plant. *Quid quæris?* Librum, scil. *quæro*. What are you looking for? A book. *Quōtā hōrā venisti?* Sextā. At what hour did you come? At the sixth.

NOTE 1. Instead of the genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding possessive pronoun is often used, agreeing with its noun; as, *Cūjus est liber?* Meus, (not *Mei*.) (See § 211, Rem. 3, (b.)) So *cūjum* for genitive *cūjus*? *Cūjum pēcus?* an *Melibæi*? Non; *vērūm Ægōnis*. Virg.

NOTE 2. Sometimes the rules of syntax require the responsive to be in a different case from that of the interrogative; as, *Quanti emisisti?* *Viginti* minis. *Damnatusne es furti?* Imo *alio* crimine. See §§ 214, R. 1, and 217, R. 2.

## ADJECTIVES.

§ 205. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns, in gender, number, and case; as,

*Bōnus vir*, A good man.

*Benigna māter*, A kind mother.

*Triste bellum*, A sad war.

*Spe amissā*, Hope being lost.

*Bōnos viros*, Good men.

*Vānæ lēges*, Useless laws.

*Minācia verba*, Threatening words.

*Hæc res*, This thing.

So, *Mea māter est benigna*.

*Hæc lēges vānæ sunt*.

NOTE 1. Adjectives, according to their meaning, (§ 104), are divided into two classes—*qualifying* and *limiting*—the former denoting some *property* or *quality* of a noun; as, a *wise* man, lead is *heavy*; the latter *defining* or *restricting* its meaning; as, *this* man, *ten* cities. To the former class belong such adjectives as denote a property or quality, including all participles and participial adjectives; to the latter, the adjective pronouns, pronominal adjectives, and numerals.

**NOTE 2.** An adjective, participle, or pronoun, may either be used as an epithet to modify a noun, or, with the copula *sum*, may constitute a predicate. In the former case the quality is *assumed*, in the latter it is *asserted*. In both cases, the rule for their agreement is, in general, the same. See § 210, R. 1.

**NOTE 3.** Any word or combination of words added to a noun to modify or limit its meaning is of the nature of an adjective.

**NOTE 4.** In the following remarks, the word *adjective* is to be considered as including participles, either alone or combined with the auxiliary *sum*, and also adjective pronouns, unless the contrary is intimated.

**REMARK 1.** An adjective agrees also with a substantive pronoun, taking its gender from that of the noun for which the pronoun stands; as, *Ipse capellas eger ago*, scil. *ego*, *Melibæus*; Virg. *Fortunâte puer, tu nunc eris alter ab illo*. Id. *Ut se totum ei tradêret*. Nep. *O me misêrum* (spoken by a man), *misêram me* (spoken by a woman). So *salvi sumus*, *salvæ sumus*, scil. *nos*, masculine or feminine.—In general propositions which include both sexes, the pronouns are considered masculine; as, *Nos fruges consumere nati*. Hor.

**REM. 2.** An adjective may belong to each of two or more nouns, and in such case is put in the plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective agrees with them in gender, as well as in number; as,

*Læpus et agnus siti compulsi*, A wolf and a lamb, constrained by thirst. Phæd. *Sicilia Sardiniaque amissæ*. Liv.

When the nouns are of different genders,

(1.) If they denote living things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; as,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt*, My father and mother are dead. Ter. So also *utque* in the singular. *Procumbit uterque*, scil. *Deucalion et Pyrrha*. Ovid.

(2.) If they denote things without life, the adjective is generally neuter; as,

*His genus, ætas, eloquentia præpe æquâlia fuere*, Their family, age, and eloquence, were nearly equal. Sall. *Regna, impéria, nobilitates, honores, divitiæ in casu sita sunt*. Cic. *Huic bella, rapinæ, discordia civilis, grata fuere*. Sall. *Anima atque animus, quamvis integra recens in corpus eunt*. Lucr.

**NOTE.** When nouns denoting things without life are of the same gender (either masculine or feminine), but of different numbers, the adjective is sometimes neuter; as, *Cræso et vita et patrimonii partes, et urbs Barce concessa sunt*. Just.; sometimes also when both nouns are in the singular number; as, *Plerosque velocitas et regio hostibus ignara tutata sunt*. Sall. *Nox atque præda remorata sunt*. Id.

(3.) If one of the nouns denotes an animate, and another an inanimate thing, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes takes the gender of that which has life; as,

*Numidæ atque signa militaria obscurati sunt*, The Numidians and the military standards were concealed. Sall. *Romani regem regnumque Macedoniæ sua futura sciunt*. Liv. *Jâne, fac æternos pacem pacisque ministros*. Ovid.

**Exc. to REM. 2.** The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood with the rest; as,

*Sociis et rege recepto*, Our companions and king having been recovered. Virg. *Agri omnes et maria*. Cic. *Cognitum est salutem, liberos, famam, fortunas esse carissimas*. Cic.

**NOTE.** A noun in the singular, followed by an ablative with *cum*, has sometimes a plural adjective, the gender being the same as if the nouns were connected by *et*; as, *Filiam cum filio accitos*. Liv. *Ilia cum Luuso de Nūmītrōe sāti*. Ovid. *Filiū Alexandri cum matrē in arcem custōdiendos mītit*. Just.

**REM. 3. (1.)** An adjective qualifying a collective noun is often put in the plural, taking the gender of the individuals which the noun denotes; as,

*Pars certāre pārāti*, A part, prepared to contend. Virg. *Pars per agros dilapsi. .... suam quisque spem exsēquentes*. Liv. *Supplex turba erant sine iudice tūti*. Ovid. This construction always occurs when the collective noun is the subject of a plural verb. See § 209, R. 11.

(2.) Sometimes, though rarely, an adjective in the singular takes the gender of the individuals; as, *Pars arduus altis pulvērulentus ēquis fūrit*. Virg. *Pars una dūcum—fractus morbo*. Ovid.

(3.) Sometimes other nouns, which only in a figurative sense denote human beings, have by *synesis* an adjective of a different gender from their own, referring to the words which they include; as, *Lidūm Cypudque agro mulotāti*, Latium and Capua were deprived of their land. Liv. *Cipitia conjūratiōnis virgis cæsi ac sēcūri percussi sunt*. Id. *Auxilia irāti*. Id. So after *millia*; as, *Duo millia Tyrīōrum, crucibus affixi*. Curt. Cf. § 823, 3, (4.)

**REM. 4.** Two adjectives in the singular are sometimes joined to a plural noun; as, *Māria Tyrhēnum atque Adriaticum*, The Tuscan and Adriatic seas. Liv. *Cum lēgiōnibus sēcundā et tertiā*. Liv. *Circa portas Collinam Esquilinamque*. Id. But sometimes the noun is in the singular; as, *Inter Esquilinam Collinamque portam*. Id. *Lēgio Martia et quarta*. In comic writers, an adjective or participle in the singular is sometimes used with a plural pronoun; as, *Nobis præsente*. Plant. *Absente nobis*. Ter.

**REM. 5.** A participle which should regularly agree with the subject of a proposition, when placed after the noun of the predicate, (a) sometimes takes the gender and number of the latter; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*. Not every error is to be called folly. Cic. *Gens universa Vēnētī appellāti*. Liv. (b.) Sometimes also it agrees with a noun following the subject and in apposition to it; as, *Cōrinthum, patres vestri, tōtius Græciæ lūmen, extinctam esse vōluerunt*. Cic.; or (c) with the noun of a subordinate sentence; as, *Illōrum urbem ut prōpugnāctūm oppōsitū esse barbāris*. Nep.

**REM. 6.** When the subject of an infinitive is omitted after a dative of the same signification, (§ 239, R. 1,) an adjective in the predicate, belonging to that subject, is sometimes put in the dative; as, *Mihi negligenti esse non licuit*, i. e. *me negligentem esse mihi non licuit*. Cic. *Da mihi justo sanetōque vidēri*. Hor. A noun is sometimes expressed with the adjective; as, *Vobis necesse est fortibus esse viris*. Liv. But the adjective often agrees with the omitted subject; as, *Expēdit bonas esse vōbis*, scil. *vos*. Ter. *Sī civi Rōmāno licet esse Gādītānum*. Cic.

**REM. 7. (1.)** An adjective is often used alone, especially in the plural, the noun, with which it agrees, being understood; as,

*Bōni sunt rārī*, scil. *hōmīnes*, Good (men) are rare. *Cæsar suos misit*, scil. *mīlites*, Cæsar sent his (soldiers). *Dextra*, scil. *mānus*, The right (hand). *Impientur pinguis fērinæ*, scil. *carnis*. Virg. *Hiberna*, scil. *castra*. *Altum*, scil. *mare*. *Quartāna*, scil. *febris*. *Immortāles*, scil. *Dī*. Lucr. *Amantium*, scil. *hōmīnum*. Ter. *Illum indignanti similem, similemque minanti aspiciētes*, scil. *hōmīni*. Virg. *Tibi primas dēfēro*, scil. *partes*. Cic. *Respice prætēritum*, scil. *tempus*, which is often omitted, as in *ex quo*, *ex eo*, and *ex illo*, scil. *tempore*. *Cognōci ex mēōrum omnium litēris*, scil. *amicōrum*. Cic. So patrial adjectives; as, *Missi ad Parthum Armēniumque legātī*, scil. *rēgem*. In *Tusculāno*, scil. *practicō*.

**NOTE 1.** The noun to be supplied with masculine adjectives is commonly *homines*, but when they are possessives, it is oftener *amici*, *militēs*, *cives*, or *pro-pinqui*.

**NOTE 2.** The noun to be supplied is often contained in a preceding clause.

(2.) An adjective in the neuter gender, without a noun, is often used substantively, where, in English, the word *thing* or *things* is to be supplied; as,

*Bōnum*, a good thing; *mālum*, a bad thing, or, an evil. So *honestum*, *vetrum*, *turpe*; and in the plural, *bōna*, *māla*, *turpia*, *lēvia*, *caelestia*, etc. *Labor omnia vincit*, Labor overcomes all things. Virg.

**NOTE 1.** The Latins generally preferred adding *res* to an adjective, to using its neuter as a substantive. But sometimes, when *res* is used, an adjective or pronoun referring to it is put in the neuter instead of the feminine; as, *Earum rerum utrumque*. Cic. *Humānārum rerum fortūna plerūque regit*. Sall. *Illud te rogo, sumptus ne parcas ullā in re, quod ad vāletudinē opus sit*. Cic. *Omnium rerum mors est extremum*. Cic.

**NOTE 2.** Instead of *thing* or *things*, other words may sometimes be supplied, as the sense requires. With a preposition, neuter adjectives form adverbial phrases; as, *A primo*, At first. Plaut. *Per mutua*, Mutually. Virg. *In primis*, In the first place. *Ad hoc*, or *Ad huc*, Moreover, besides.

(3.) Adjectives used substantively often have other adjectives agreeing with them; as, *Alia omnia*, All other (things.) Plin. *Iniquissimi mei*, My greatest enemies. *Familiāris meus*. Cic. *Iniquus noster*. Id. *Iusta funebria*. Liv. *Jovis omnia plena*. scil. sunt. Virg.

**REM. 8. (a.)** Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such, may be used substantively, and take a neuter adjective in the singular number; as, *Supremum vāle dixit*, He pronounced a last farewell. Ovid. *Dulce et decorum est pro patriā mori*. Hor. *Velle enim cuique est*. Pers. *Cras istud quando venis?* Mart. *J. Redibo actūm*. A. Id. *actūm diu est*. Plaut. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cetera latus*. Hor. (b.) In the poets and later prose writers the adjective, as in Greek, is sometimes in the neuter plural; as, *Ut Aeneas pelāgo jactetur*—*nōta tibi*. Virg.

**REM. 9. (a.)** Adjectives and adjective pronouns, instead of agreeing with their nouns, are sometimes put in the neuter gender, with a partitive signification, and their nouns in the genitive; as, *Multum temporis*, for *multum tempus*; much time. *Id rei*, for *ea res*; that thing. So, plus *eloquentiae*, the other form not being admissible with *plus*. (See § 110, (b.)) Neuter adjectives are used in like manner in the plural; as, *Vana rerum*, for *vāne res*. Hor. *Plerūque humanarum rerum*. Sall. Cf. § 212, R. 3, N. 4. But in some such examples, the adjective seems to be used substantively, according to Rem. 7, (2); as, *Acuta belli*. Hor. *Telluris operta*. Virg. *Summa pectoris*.

**NOTE.** The adjectives thus used participatively in the singular, for the most part, signify quantity. See § 212, Rem. 3, Note 1.

**REM. 10.** A neuter adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the nominative or accusative, both singular and plural; as, *Dulce videntem Lalagen amabo, dulce loquentem*. Hor. *Magnum stridens*. Virg. *Arma horrendum sonuere*. Id. *Multa deos venerati sunt*. Cic. *Hodie aut summum cras*. Id. See § 192, II. 4, (b.)

**REM. 11. (a.)** A noun is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Nemo miles Romanus*, No Roman soldier. Liv. *Nemo fere adolescens*. Cic. *Vir nemo bonus*. Id. Cf. § 207, R. 31, (c.) *Tiberim accolis fluvii orbatum*. Tac. *Incola turba*. Ovid. The poets use in this manner the Greek patronymics in *as* and *is*; as, *Pelias hasta*. Ovid. *Laurus Parnasis*. Id. *Ursa Libydis*. Virg. Cf. also § 129, 8.

(b.) An adverb is also sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Nēque enim ignāri sēmus ante mōrūm*; i. e. *antiquorum* or *præteritorum*. Virg. *Nunc hominum mores*. Plaut.

REM. 12. (a.) An adjective or adjective pronoun, used partitively, stands alone, and commonly takes the gender of the genitive plural, which depends upon it; but when it is preceded by a noun of a different gender, to which it refers, it usually takes that gender, but sometimes that of the genitive; as, *Elephanto belluorum nulla est prudentior*, No beast is wiser than the elephant. Cic. *Indus, qui est omnium fluminum maximus*. Cic. *Velocissimum omnium animalium est delphinus*. Plin. See § 212, Rem. 2.—(b.) So also with *de*, *ex*, *in*, *apud*, *inter*, etc., with the ablative or accusative instead of the partitive genitive. See § 212, R. 2, N. 4.

(c.) When a collective noun follows in the genitive singular, (§ 212, R. 2.) the adjective takes the gender of the individuals which compose it; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*, The bravest man of our state. Cic. *Maximus stirpis*. Liv.

REM. 13. (a.) When a possessive pronoun or adjective is used instead of the genitive of its primitive or of its corresponding noun (see § 211, R. 3, (b.) and (c.) and R. 4), an adjective agreeing with that genitive is sometimes joined with such possessive; as, *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, The fault of me alone cannot be corrected. Cic. *Noster duorum eventus*. Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*. Cic. *Pugna Römāna stabilis suo pondere incumbentium in hostem*. Liv.

(b.) Sometimes a noun in the genitive is expressed, in apposition to the substantive pronoun for which the possessive stands; as, *Pectus tuum, hominis simplicis*. Cic.

REM. 14. An adjective, properly belonging to the genitive, is sometimes made to agree with the noun on which the genitive depends, and *vice versa*; as, *Ædificatiōis tuæ constium for tuum*, Your design of building. Cic. *Accusantes violati hospitii fœdus, for violatum*. Liv. *Ad majōra initia rerum discentibus fatis, for majōrum*. Id. *Iis nominibus civitatum, quibus ex civitatibus, etc., for earum civitatum*. Cæs.

REM. 15. (a.) An adjective agreeing with a noun is sometimes used, instead of an adverb qualifying a verb, especially in poetry; as, *Ecce venit Telamon propèrus*, Lo, Telamon comes in haste. Ovid. *Læti pacem agitantibus, for læte*. Sall. *Æneas se matutinus agebat, for mane*. Virg. *Nec lepus gregibus nocturnus obambulat, i. e. by night*. Id.

(b.) So *nullus* is used for *non*; as, *Mementi timetis nullus moneas*, Though you do not suggest it. Ter. *Sequitur ab armis nullus discedit*. Cic. *Prior, primus, princeps, propior, proximus, solus, unus, ultimus, multus, idus*, and some others, are used instead of their neuters, adverbially; as, *Priori Rëmo augurium venisse fertur*. Liv. *Hispania postrëma omnium provinciãrum perdomita est*. Liv. *Scævola solos novem menses Asiae præfuit*, Only nine months. Cic. *Unum hoc dico*, This only I say. Id. This is sometimes done, for want of an adverb of appropriate meaning; as, *Pronus cecidit*. Ovid. *Frequentes concenserant*. Sall.

(c.) In such expressions, *tu*, in the nominative, sometimes takes an adjective in the vocative, and *vice versa*; as, *Sic venias hodiernæ*. Tibull. *Salve, primus omnium parens patriæ appellâte*. Plin.

REM. 16. (a.) A noun is often qualified by two or more adjectives; and sometimes the complex idea, formed by a noun with one or more adjectives, is itself qualified by other adjectives, which agree in gender, etc. with the noun.

(b.) When several adjectives, each independently of the other, qualify a noun, if they precede it, they are almost always connected by one or more conjunctions; as, *Multa et variâ et copiosa oratione*. Cic. If they follow it, the conjunction is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted; as, *Vir altus et excellens*. Cic. *Actio, varia, vehemens, plena veritatis*. Id.

(c.) But when one of the adjectives qualifies the noun, and another the complex idea formed by the first with the noun, the conjunction is always omitted; as, *Periculosissimum civile bellum*, A most dangerous civil war. Cic. *Malam domesticam disciplinam*. Id. So with three or more adjectives; *Externos multos claros viros nominarem*. Cic. Cf. § 202, III., R. 1.

REM. 17. The first part, last part, middle part, etc., of any place or time are generally expressed in Latin by the adjectives *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *intimus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, and *cetera*; as,

*Média nox*, The middle of the night. *Summa arbor*, The top of a tree. *Supremos montes*, The summits of the mountains. But these adjectives frequently occur without this signification; as, *Ab extremo complectu*, From the last embrace. Cic. *Infimo loco natus*, Of the lowest rank. Id.

REM. 18. The participle of the compound tenses of verbs, used impersonally in the passive voice, is neuter; as, *Ventum est*. Cic. *Itum est in viscera terræ*. Ovid. *Scribendum est mihi*. See § 184, 2 and 3.

## RELATIVES.

§ 206. REM. 19. (a.) Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person, but their case depends on the construction of the clause to which they belong; as,

*Puer qui legit*, The boy who reads. *Ædificium quod exstruxit*, The house which he built. *Littera quas dedi*, The letter which I gave. *Non sum qualis eram*, I am not such as I was. Hor. So *Deus cujus munere vivimus*, cui nullus est similis, quem colimus, a quo facta sunt omnia, est æternus. *Addictus Herminippo, et ab hoc ductus est*. *Aquila, quantus frangit ilices*. Hor.

NOTE 1. This rule includes all adjectives and adjective pronouns which relate to a noun in a preceding clause. Its more common application, however, is to the construction of the demonstrative pronouns and the relative *qui*.

NOTE 2. When a pronoun refers to the mere words of a sentence, it is said to be used logically. *Qui* and *is* are so used, and sometimes also *hic* and *ille*.

(b.) The relative may be considered as placed between two cases of the same noun, either expressed or understood, with the former of which it agrees in gender, number, and person, and with the latter in gender, number, and case.

(1.) Sometimes both nouns are expressed; as,

*Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent*, There were only two routes, by which routes they could leave home. Cæs. *Cruëllissimo bello, quäle bellum nulla umquam barbaria gessit*. Cic. But it is most frequent with the word *dies*; as, *Fore in armis certo die, qui dies futurus erat*, etc. Cic. The repetition of the substantive is necessary, when, for any reason, it becomes doubtful to which of two or more preceding substantives the relative refers.

(2.) Usually the antecedent noun only is expressed; as,

*Animum rege, qui, nisi paret, impèrat*, Govern your passions, which rule, unless they obey. Hor. *Tanta multitudinis, quantam caput urbs nostra, concursus est ad me factus*. Cic. *Quot capitum vivunt, totidem studiorum millia*. Hor.

(3.) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, especially when the relative clause, as is frequently the case, precedes that of the antecedent; as,

*Quibus de rebus ad me scripsisti, coram videbitur*; scil. *de rebus*, In regard to the things of which you wrote to me, we will consider when we meet. Cic. *In quem primum egressi sunt locum, Troja vocatur*; scil. *locus*. Liv. *Quantã vi expetunt, tantã defendunt*. *Qualesque visus eram vidisse viros, ex ordine tales aspicio*. Ovid.



(a.) The place of the antecedent is sometimes supplied by a demonstrative pronoun; as, *Ad quas res optissimū ērimus, in iis potissimum elaborābimus.* Cic. But the demonstrative is often omitted when its case is the same as that of the relative, and not unfrequently, also, when the cases are different. When the relative clause precedes that of the antecedent, *is* is expressed only for the sake of emphasis. Hence we find such sentences as, *Maximum ornāmentum amicitiae tollit, qui ex eā tollit vtrūcūque.* Cic. *Terra quod accepi, nunquam sine iurā reddā.* Id.—The demonstrative adjectives and adverbs are in like manner often omitted before their corresponding relatives; *istis* before *quālis*, *tantus* before *quantus*, *inde* before *unde*, *ibi* before *ubi*, etc.

(b.) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, even when the relative clause does not precede; as, *Quis non mālūrum quas amor cūras habet, hęc inter obliuiscitur?* Hor.

(4.) Sometimes neither noun is expressed; this happens especially when the antecedent is designedly left indefinite, or when it is a substantive pronoun; as,

*Qui bēne lātuit, bēne vixit,* scil. *hōmo*, (He) who has well escaped notice, has lived well. Ovid. *Sunt quos curriculū pulvērē Olympiū collēgisse jūvat,* scil. *hōmīnes*, There are whom it delights, i. e. Some delight. Hor. *Non habeo quod te accūsem,* scil. *id propter quod.* Cic. *Non solum sapiens vidēris, qui hinc abis, sed etiam beātus,* scil. *tu.* Cic.

(5.) The relative is sometimes either entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit; Tyrii tenuere cōlōni,* scil. *quam* or *eam*, There was an ancient city (which) Tyrian colonists possessed, Virg.; or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, even when, if supplied, its case would be different; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, nēque in priore pugnā adjuerant, Rōmānos invadunt, for et qui non in priore,* etc. Sall.

(6.) (a.) The relative sometimes takes the case of the antecedent, instead of its own proper case; as, *Quum scribas et aliquid agas eōrum, quōrum consuesti, for quae.* Cic. *Raptim quibus quisque pōtērat elātis, exhibant,* for *is, quae quisque efferre pōtērat, elātis.* Liv.

(b.) The antecedent likewise sometimes takes the case of the relative, the substantive placed either preceding or following the pronoun; as, *Urbem quam statuo vestra est, for urbs.* Virg. *Eunūchum quem dēdisti nobis, quas turbas dēdit!* for *Eunūchus.* Ter. *Naucratem quem convēnire vōlui, in navi non erat.* Plaut. *Atque illi, quōrum cōmœdia prisca virōrum est, for atque illi viri, quōrum est.* Hor. *Illi, scripta quibus cōmœdia prisca viris est, for illi viri, quibus.* Id. *Quos pueros miserum, epistolam mihi attulerunt.* Cic.

These constructions are said to occur by *attraction*.

(7.) (a.) An adjective, which properly belongs to the antecedent, is sometimes placed in the relative clause, and agrees with the relative; as, *Inter jocos, quos inconditos jaciunt, for jocos inconditos, quos,* etc. Amidst the rude jests which they utter. Liv. *Verbis, quae magna volunt.* Virg. *Cālbre, quem multum habet.* Cic.

(b.) This is the common position of the adjective, when it is a *numeral*, a *comparative*, or a *superlative*; as, *Nocte quam in terris ultimam egit,* The last night which he spent upon earth. *Æsulōpius, qui primus vulnus obligāvisse dicitur.* Cic. *Omniis pāre, quae nunc pulcherrima Nautae dat senior,* Listen to the excellent advice, which, etc. Virg. Some instances occur in which an adjective belonging to the relative clause, is placed in that of the antecedent; as, *Quum venissent ad vāda Volaterrāna, quae nōminantur,* Which are called Volaterran. Cic.

(8.) When to the relative or demonstrative is joined a noun explanatory of its antecedent, but of a different gender or number, the relative or demonstrative usually agrees with that noun; as,

*Santonēs non longe a Tolosātium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in provinciâ.* The Santones are not far distant from the borders of the Toloseates, which state is in the province. Cæs. *Ante comitiâ, quod tempus haud longe aberat.* Sall. *Romæ fânium Diânæ pópuli Lâtini cum pópulo Rômâno fêcērunt: ea erat confessio cõpūt rērum Rômam esse; i. e. that thing or that act.* Liv. *Si omnia faciendâ sunt, quæ amici vellent, non amicitia tâles, sed conjurâtiões putandâ sunt; i. e. such things or such connections.* Cic. So, *Ista quidem vis, Surely this is force. Ea ipsa causa bellî fuit, for id ipsum.* Hither also may be referred such explanatory sentences as, *Qui meus amor in te est, Such is my love for you.* Cic.

(9.) If the relative refers to one of two nouns, denoting the same object, but of different genders, it agrees with either; as,

*Flâmē est Arar quod in Rhodânū influit.* Cæs. *Ad flâmē Oxum perventum est, qui turbidus semper est.* Curt.

(10.) When, in a relative clause containing the verb *sum* or a verb of naming, esteeming, etc., a predicate-noun occurs of a different gender from the antecedent, the relative commonly agrees with the latter; but when the preceding noun is to be explained and distinguished from another, the relative agrees with the former; as,

*Nâturæ vultus quem dicere Chaos,* The appearance of nature which they called chaos. Ovid. *Genus hómīnū quod Hêlotes vocâtur.* Nep. *Animal, quem vocâmus hómīnem,* The animal whom we call man. Cic. *Locus in carcerē, quod Tullianū appellâtur.* Sall. *Pecuniarū conquestio; eos esse bellî civis nervos dictitans Mucianus.* Tac.

(11.) The relative sometimes agrees with a noun, either equivalent in sense to the antecedent, or only implied in the preceding clause; as,

*Abundantiâ eârū rērum, quæ mortâles primâ putant,* An abundance of those things, which mortals esteem most important. Sall. Cf. § 205, R. 7, (2.) N. 1. But sometimes when a neuter adjective used substantively has preceded, *res* with a relative follows; as, *Permulta sunt, quæ dici possunt, quâ re intelligâtur.* Cic. *Fâtale monstrum, quæ, etc., scil. Cleopâtra.* Hor. Cf. § 323, 3, (4.)

(a.) A relative or demonstrative pronoun, referring to a collective noun, or to a noun which only in a figurative sense denotes a human being, sometimes takes the gender and number of the individuals which the noun implies; as, *Equitâtum, quos.* Sall. *Genus, qui prēmuntur.* Cic. *Sênâtus—ii.* Sall.

(b.) A pronoun in the plural often follows a noun in the singular, referring not only to the noun but to the class of persons or things to which it belongs; as, *Democritum omittâmus; nihil est enim apud istos, quod, etc.* i. e. with Democritus and his followers. Cic. *Dionysius negavit se jure illo nigro quod cænos cõpūt erat, dēlectâtum. Tum is, qui illa cõrerat, etc.* Id.

(12.) The antecedent is sometimes implied in a possessive pronoun; as, *Omnes laudare fortūnas meas, qui nâtum idli ingēnio prædittum habērem;* scil. *mei,* All were extolling my fortune, who, etc. Ter. *Id mea mētime refert, qui sum nâtu mæximus.* Id. *Nostrum consilium laudandum est, qui nôtuērīm, etc.* Cic.; or in a possessive adjective; as, *Servili tumultu, quos, etc.* Cæs.

(13.) (a.) Sometimes the antecedent is a proposition; the relative then is commonly neuter; as, *Postremò, quod difficillimū inter mortâles, gloriâ invidiam viciisti,* Finally, you have overcome envy with glory, which, among men, is most difficult. Sall. *Equidē exspectâbam jam tuas litéras, idque cum multis.* Cic.

(b.) In such instances, *id* is generally placed before the relative pronoun, referring to the idea in the antecedent clause; as, *Sive, id quod constat, Plutinis studiis audiendū fuit.* Cic. *Diem consumi vôlebant, id quod fêcērunt.* Id.

(c.) Sometimes *is*, referring to a clause, agrees with a noun following; as, *Idem velle atque idem nolle, ea dēum firma amicitia est.* Sall.

(14.) *Quod*, relating to a preceding statement, and serving the purpose of transition, is often placed at the beginning of a sentence after a period, where it may be translated by 'nay,' 'now,' or 'and.' It is thus used especially before *et*, *etsi*, and *nisi*; as, *Quodsi illinc inanis profugiasse, tamen ista tua fuga nefaria iudicaretur*, i. e. and even if you had fled without taking any thing with you, still, etc. Cic. Verr. 1, 14. *Quodsi*, 'if then,' is especially used in introducing something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. Sometimes also it is equivalent to 'although.' *Quodnisi* signifies 'if then—not'; as, *Quodnisi ego meo adventu illius conatus aliquantulum repressissem, tam multos*, etc. *Quodetsi* is 'nay, even if'; as, *Quodetsi ingens magnis praediti quidam dicendi copiam sine ratione consequuntur, ars tamen est duce certior*.—*Quod* is found also before *quum*, *ubi*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *ne* and *utnam*, where the conjunction alone would seem to be sufficient; as, *Quod utnam illum, cuius impio facinore in has miseras projectus sum, eodem haec simulantem videam*. Sall. It is so used even before a relative in Cic. Phil. 10, 4, *fin.*—*Quod*, in such examples, seems to be an accusative, with *propter* or *ad* understood.

(15.) (a.) A relative is always plural, when referring to two or more nouns in the singular. If the nouns are of different genders, the gender of the relative is determined by Rem. 2, page 185; as, *Ninus et Semiramis, qui Babylona condiderant*, Ninus and Semiramis, who had founded Babylon. Vell. *Crebro finali et tibicine, quæ sibi sumpserat*. Cic. *Ex summa lætitia atque lascivia, quæ diuturna quies pepererat*. Sall. *Naves et captivos quæ ad Chium capta erant*. Liv.

(b.) If the antecedents are of different persons, the relative follows the first person rather than the second or third, and the second rather than the third; as, *Tu et pater, qui in convivio eratis*. *Ego et tu, qui eramus*. Cf. § 209, R. 12, (7.)

(16.) The relative adjectives *quod*, *quantus*, *qualis*, are construed like the relative *qui*. They have generally, in the antecedent clause, the corresponding demonstrative words, *ist*, *tantus*, *talis*; but these are also often omitted. Frequently also the order of the clauses is reversed, so that the relative clause precedes the demonstrative.

(17.) *Qui*, at the beginning of a sentence, is often translated like a demonstrative; as, *Quæ quum ita sint*, Since these (things) are so. Cic.

(18.) The relative *qui* with *sum* and either a nominative or the ablative of quality, is used in explanatory clauses, instead of *pro*, 'in accordance with,' or 'according to'; thus, instead of *Tu, pro tuâ prudentiâ, quid optimum factus sit, videbis*. Cic., we may say, *quæ tua est prudentiâ, or, quâ prudentiâ es*. So, *Vellus tantummodo, quæ tua virtus, expugnabis*. Hor. *Quâ prudentiâ es, nihil te fugiet*. Cic.

(19.) A relative clause is sometimes used for the purpose of denoting by circumlocution the person of the agent in a definite but not permanent condition; as, *It, qui audiunt*, or *qui adsunt*, i. e. the hearers, the persons present. So, also, a relative clause is used for the English expression 'above mentioned'; as, *Ex libris quos dixi or quos ante (supra) laudavi*: and the English 'so called,' or 'what is called,' is expressed by *quem, quam, quod vocant*, or by *qui, quæ, quod vocatur, dicitur*, etc.; as, *Nec Hermas hos, quos vocant, imponi (Athēnis) licebat*. Cic. *Vestra, quæ dicitur, vita, mors est*. Id.

(20.) Relative and demonstrative adverbs (see § 191, R. 1), are frequently used instead of relative and demonstrative pronouns with prepositions; as, *Id, unde te audivisse dicis*, i. e. a quo. Cic. *Diotrice apud illos sunt, aut tibi illi volunt*, i. e. apud quos. Sall. *Huic ab adolescentiâ bella intestina, cædes, raptus, discordia civis, grâta fuere*, Ibiq. juventutem exercui, i. e. in iis, in these things. Sall.

(21.) With *quam qui* and the superlative after *tam* the verb of the relative clause is sometimes omitted; as, *Tam mihi gratum id erit, quam quod gratissimum*. Cic. *Tam enim sum amicus reipublicæ, quam qui maxime*. Id. *Tam eum mitis, quam qui lenissimus*. Id. So also with *ut qui* without *tam*; as, *Te semper sic colam et tuebor, ut quem diligentissime*. Id.

## DEMONSTRATIVES.

§ 207. REM. 20. The oblique cases of the personal pronoun of the third person (*him, her, etc.*) are commonly expressed in prose by the oblique cases of *is, ea, id*. *Hic* and *ille*, however, being more emphatic, take the place of *is, ea, id*, in lyric poetry, and occasionally in prose also, when particular emphasis is intended. The cases of *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, also, are employed for this purpose, when the individuality of the person is to be distinctly expressed. In reflexive sentences, the oblique cases of the pronoun of the third person, are regularly supplied by *sui, sibi, se*; and it is only when the person of the leading subject is to be referred to with particular emphasis, that *ipse* is used instead of *sui*.

REM. 21. The demonstrative pronouns, *is* and *ille*, are sometimes used, especially with *quidem*, where a corresponding word in English is unnecessary; as, *Sapientia stûdium vêtus id quidem in nostris, sed tamen*, etc. Cic. *O hominem semper illum quidem mihi optum, nunc vëro etiam suavem*. Id. *Quem nèque fides, nèque iurandum, nèque illum misericordia, repressit*, Whom neither fidelity, nor an oath, nor pity, has restrained. Ter. *Is* when used for the sake of emphasis seems sometimes in English to be superfluous; as, *Male se res habet, quum, quod virtute efficit debet, id tentatur pecunia*. Cic.

REM. 22. *Sic, ita, id, hoc, illud*, are often used redundantly as a preliminary announcement of a subsequent proposition, and are added to the verb on which this proposition depends; as, *Sic a maioribus suis accèperant, tanta populi Romani esse beneficia, ut*, etc. Cic. *Te illud admoneo, ut quòtidiè mēdtere, resistendum esse iracundie*. Id. *Hoc tibi persuadeas velim, me nihil omisisse*, I wish you to be persuaded of this—that I have omitted nothing. These pleonastic additions have generally no influence on the construction of propositions, but in a few instances they are followed by *ut*; as, *De cuius dicendi copîa sic accèptimus*, ut, etc. Cic. *Ita enim definiit, ut perturbatio sui*, etc. Id. In the phrase *hoc, illud, or id agere ut*, the pronoun is established by custom and is necessary. See § 273, 1. (a.)

REM. 23. (a.) *Hic* 'this' refers to what is near to the speaker either in place or time, *ille* 'that' to what is more remote. Hence *hic* sometimes refers to the speaker himself, and *hic homo* is then the same as *ego*. On this account *hic* is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. When reference is made to two things previously mentioned, *hic* commonly refers to the latter, *ille* to the former, and the pronouns are arranged in the same order, as the objects to which they relate; as, *Ignavia corpus hebētat, labor firmat*; *illa matrem senectutem, hic longam adolescentiam reddit*, Sloth enervates the body, labor strengthens it; the former produces premature old age, the latter protracted youth. Cels.

(b.) But the order is often reversed, so that *hic* refers to the object first mentioned, and *ille* to the one mentioned last; as, *Sic deus et virgo est*; *hic spe celer, illa timore*. Ovid. So when *alter...alter*, 'the one...the other,' refer to two things mentioned before, the previous order is sometimes observed and sometimes reversed; but wherever there is ambiguity the order is reversed, so that the first *alter* refers to the last object. Sometimes *hic...hic* are used instead of *hic...ille*. So *ille...ille* sometimes denote 'the one...the other.'

(c.) *Hic* and *ille* have the same relation to time present and past as *nunc* and *tunc*, see § 277; and hence whatever, in speaking of present time, is expressed by *hic* and its derivative adverbs, *hic, hinc, huc*, and *adhuc*, is expressed by *illu* and its derivatives, when it is spoken of as belonging to past time.

REM. 24. *Ille*, when not in opposition to *hic*, is often used to denote that which is of general notoriety; as, *Magno illi Alexandro similimus*, Very like Alexander the Great. Vell. *Medea illa*, The celebrated Medea. Cic. Hence *ille* is sometimes added to other pronouns, to refer to something discussed before; as, *Accebat visere, quis ille tot per annos opes nostras sprevisset*. Tac. *Ille* is sometimes translated *this*; as, *Unum illud dico*, This only I say. Cic. *Ille*

sometimes marks a change of persons, and may then be translated 'the other'; as, *Vercingellorix omnem Cæsari præfiscitur. Ille* (scil. *Cæsar*) *oppidum Novodunum oppugnare instituit. Cæsar*.

REM. 25. *Iste* properly refers to the person addressed, and for this reason is called the demonstrative of the second person.—*Ille* refers to the person spoken of, and is hence called the demonstrative of the third person. Thus *iste liber* is thy book, but *ille liber* is the book of which we are speaking. Hence, in letters, *hic* and its derivatives are used of the writer; *iste* and its derivatives of the person addressed; *ille*, etc., of some other person or thing. See § 191, R. 1, (c.) *Iste* from its frequent forensic use, and its application to the opponent, often denotes contempt.

REM. 26. (a.) *Is* does not, like *hic*, *ille*, and *iste*, denote the place or order of the object to which it relates, but either refers without particular emphasis to something already mentioned or to something which is to be defined by the relative *qui*. *Hic*, *is*, or *ille*, may be used in this way before the relative, but only *hic* or *is* after it; as, *Qui docet, is discit*, or *hic discit*, but not *ille discit*, unless some individual is referred to.

(b.) *Is* before a relative or *ut* has sometimes the sense of *tālis*, such, denoting a class; as, *Nēque enim tu es, qui quid sis nescias*, Nor are you such a person, as not to know what you are. Cic.; sometimes it has the force of *idem*; as, *vos* —ii. Cic. Manil. 12.

(c.) If the noun to which *is* refers is to receive some additional predicate, we must use *et is*, *atque is*, *isque*, *et is quidem*, and with a negative *nec is*; as, *Vincula vērō, et ea sempiterna*, etc. Cic. *Unā in dōmo, et ea quidem angusta*, etc. Id. *Adolescentes aliquot, nec ii tēnui lōco orti*, etc. Liv. *Sed is* is used when the additional predicate is opposed to the preceding; as, *Sēnitatē in sēnitatē probō, sed eam, sicut alia, mōdicam*. Cic. The neuter *et id*, or *idque*, serves to introduce an addition to the preceding proposition; as, *Quancūq; te, Marce fili, annum jam audientem Cratippum, idque Athēnis*, etc.

(d.) *Is* is not expressed when it would be in the same oblique case as the preceding noun to which it refers; as, *Pater amat liberos et tamen castigat. Multos illustrat fortuna, dum vexat*.

(e.) When in English 'that' or 'those' is used instead of the repetition of the preceding substantive, *is* is never used in Latin, and *ille* only in later authors. In such cases the noun is commonly not repeated in Latin, and no pronoun is used in its place; as, *Philippus hostium manus sæpe citavit, suorum effugere non valuit*, those of his own subjects. Curt. Sometimes the substantive is repeated; as, *Judicii civitatis cum judicii principis certant*. Vell. Sometimes a possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive depending on the omitted substantive; as, *Tarentiū fabulas studiōse lego*, Plautinis minus delector: and sometimes instead of the genitive or a possessive adjective the name of the person itself is put in the case which the verb governs; as, *Si cum Lycurgo et Dracōne et Solōne nostras lēges conferre volueritis*. Cic.—In Cicero *hic* and *ille*, when the preceding substantive is understood, retain their demonstrative signification, and therefore do not merely supply the place of the omitted substantive; as, *Nullam enim virtutē aliam mercedem desiderat, præter hanc*, i. e. the one of which I am speaking. Cic.

REM. 27. (a.) *Idem*, as denoting a subject which stands in equal relations to two different predicates, often supplies the place of *item* or *etiam*, 'also,' 'at the same time,' or of *tamen*, 'yet,' if the things are apparently inconsistent; as, *Musici, qui erant quondam iidem poætæ*, Musicians, who formerly were poets also. Cic. *Euphrates et Tigris magno aquarum divortio iter percurrunt; iidem* (and yet) *paullatim in arctius coeunt*.

(b.) *Et ipse*, on the other hand, denotes that the same predicate belongs to two subjects. It is rendered by 'too' or 'also'; as, *Antoninus Commodus nihil pœternum habuit, nisi quod contra Germānos feliciter et ipse pugnavit, for item or ipse quōque*. Eutr.—So, also, *nec ipse* is used in the sense of 'neither'; as, *Primis repulsi Maharbal cum majore robore virōrum missus nec ipse eruptionem cohortium sustinuit*. Liv.

(c.) *Idem* is sometimes repeated in the sense of 'at once,' denoting the union of qualities which might be thought incompatible; as, *Fuere quidam qui idem ornate idem versute dicent*, There have been some who could speak at once elegantly and artfully. Cic.

(d.) 'The same as' is variously expressed in Latin, by *idem* with *qui*, *ac* or *atque*, *quam*, *quasi*, *ut* or *cum*; as, *Verres idem est qui fuit semper*, Verres is the same as he has always been. Cic. *Vita est eadem ac fuit*. Liv. *Disputatōnem exponimus iisdem fere verbis ut actum est*. Cic. *Eandem constitui potestatem quam si*, etc. Cic. *Eodem loco res est, quasi ea pecunia legata non esset*. Id. *Hunc ego eodem mecum patre gentium*, etc. So also poetically with the dative; as, *Eadem illis sōpitu quiete est*. Lucr. Cf. § 222, R. 7.

#### IPSE, INTENSIVE OR ADJUNCTIVE.

REM. 28. (a.) *Ipse*, when used with a substantive pronoun taken reflexively, agrees either with such pronoun or with the subject of the proposition, according as either is emphatic; as, *Agam per me ipse*, I will do it myself. Cic. *Non ego mecum* (i. e. *ut dñi me consolentur*); *me ipse consolor*. Cic. *Accusandorum, a cuius crudelitate vosmet ipsi armis vindicastis*. Liv.—Cn. Pompeium omnibus, Lentulum mihi ipsi antepōno. Cic. *Pac ut te ipsum custodias*. Id. *Deforme est de se ipsum predicare*. Id.—But Cicero often construes *ipse* as the subject, even where the emphasis belongs to the object; as, *Quid est negotii continere eos, quibus præsidi, si te ipse contineas?*

(b.) When *ipse* is joined with a possessive pronoun used reflexively, it usually takes the case of the subject; as, *Meam ipse legem neglgo*; not *meam ipsius*, according to § 211, R. 3, (a). So, *Si ex scriptis cognosci ipsi suis potuissent*. Cic. *Eam fraudem vestra ipsi virtute citastis*. Liv. But the genitive is necessary when the possessive does not refer to the subject; as, *Tua ipsius causa hoc feci*. And it is sometimes found where the case of the subject should be used; as, *Conjecturam de tuo ipsius studio cēperis*, instead of *ipse*.—(c.) *Ipse* is sometimes used as reflexive without *sui*; as, *Omnes boni, quantum in ipsis fuit, Cæsarem occiderunt*. Cic.

(d.) *Ipse*, with nouns denoting time or number, expresses exactness, and may be rendered, 'just,' 'precisely'; or 'very,' 'only'; as, *Dyrhachio sum profectus ipso illo die, quo lex est data de nobis*, on the very day. Cic. *Triginta dies erant ipsi, quum has dabam literas, per quos nullas a vobis accēperam*, just thirty days. Id. *Et quisquam dubitabit—quam facile imperio atque exercitu socios et vectigalia conservaturus sit, qui ipso nomine ac rūmore defendērūt*, by his very name, or, by his name only. Id.

#### GENERAL RELATIVES.

REM. 29. *Quicumque*, *quisquis*, and the other general relatives (see § 189, 5, R.), are, in classical prose, always connected with a verb, and form the protasis. *Quicumque* is commonly used as an adjective, and *quisquis* as a substantive; but the neuter *quodcumque* is used as a substantive with a following genitive; as, *Quodcumque militum*; and, on the other hand, *quisquis* is rarely an adjective; as, *Quisquis erit vix color*. Hor.; and even the neuter *quidquid* is used in the same manner; as, *Quisquis honos timuli, quidquid solamen humandi est*. Virg. *Quicumque* seems sometimes even in Cicero equivalent to *omnis* or *quicvis*; as, *Quae sanari poterunt, quicumque ratione sanabo*, What can be cured, I will cure by every possible means. Cic. Yet *possum* is rather to be supplied;—'in whatever way I can.' But in later writers *quicumque* is frequently used in the absolute sense for *quicvis* or *quilibet*; as, *Cicéronem quicumque eorum fortiter opposuerim*. Quint. *Qualicumque* and *quantiscumque* are likewise used in an absolute sense by ellipsis; as, *Tu non concupisces quantiscumque ad libertatem pervenire!* At any price, be it ever so high. Sen. So *quisquis* is occasionally used, not as a relative, but as an indefinite pronoun.—*Siquis* often seems to stand as a relative, like the Greek *ὅστις* for *ὅςτις*, 'whoever'; but it always contains the idea of 'perhaps'; as, *Nuda fere Alpium cacumina sunt, et si quid est patuli, obrunt nives*. Liv.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

REM. 30. (a.) *Aliquis* and *quispiam* are particular and affirmative, corresponding to the English *some one*; as, *Hæreditas est pecunia, quam morte aliquis ad quempiam pervenit jure*, An inheritance is property which, at the death of some one, falls to some (other) one by law. Cic. *Multi sine doctrinâ aliquid omnium generum et artium consequuntur*. Id.

(b.) *Aliquis* is more emphatic than the indefinite pronoun *quis*. (See § 137, (3.)) Hence *aliquis* stands by itself, but *quis* is commonly connected with certain conjunctions or relative words, but these are sometimes separated from it by one or more words. Sometimes, however, *quis* is used without such conjunctions or relatives; as, *Morbus aut egestas aut quid ejusmodi*. Cic. *Detrahère quid de aliquo*. Id. *Injuriam cui facere*. Id. So, *Dixit quis*, Some one might say. But even after those conjunctions which usually require *quis*, *aliquis* is used when employed antithetically and of course emphatically; as, *Timébat Pompeius omnia, ne aliquid eos timeretis*. Cic. In English the emphasis of *aliquis* is sometimes expressed by 'really'; as, *Sensus moriendi, si aliquis esse potest, is ad exiguum tempus durat*. Cic.—*Quispiam*, also, is sometimes used like *quis* after *si*, etc., and sometimes stands alone; as, *Quæret fortasse quispiam*.

REM. 31. (a.) *Quisquam*, 'any one,' and *ullus*, 'any,' are universal. Like *unquam* and *usquam* they are used in propositions which involve a universal negative, or which express an interrogation with a negative force, or a condition (usually with *si* or *quasi*); also, after comparatives, after the adverb *vix*, and the preposition *sine*; as, *Næque ex castris Cæcilinæ quisquam omnium discesserat*, Nor had any one departed from the camp of Catiline. Sall. *Nec ullo casu potest contingere, ut ulla intermissio fiat officii*. Cic. *An quisquam potest sine perturbatissime mentis irasci?* Id. *Tetrior hic tyrannus Syracusânis fuit, quam quisquam superiorum*. Id. *Vix quidquam spei est*. Sen. But after the dependent negative particles *ne*, *nève*, and the negative interrogative particle *num*, *quis* and not *quisquam* is used.

(b.) But *quisquam* and *ullus* after *si* are often used not in a negative sense, but instead of *aliquis* or *quis*, serving only to increase the indefiniteness which would be implied in the latter pronouns; as, *Aut enim nemo, quod quidem magis credo, aut, si quisquam, ille sapiens fuit, if any man*. Cic. Hence, ultimately, even without *si*, where the indefiniteness is to be made emphatic, *quisquam*, *ullus*, *unquam* and *usquam* were used; as, *Quamdiu quisquam erit, qui te defendere audeat, vives*. Cic. *Bellum maxime omnium memorabile, quæ umquam gesta sunt, scripturus sum*. Tac.

(c.) *Ullus* is properly an adjective, but *quisquam* is commonly used without a noun, except it is a word denoting a person; as, *Quicumque civi*, To any citizen. *Cujusquam oratoris eloquentiam*. Hence *quisquam* corresponds to the substantive *nemo* and *ullus* to the adjective *nullus*. *Nemo* is often used with other substantives denoting male persons so as to become equivalent to the adjective *nullus*; as, *nemo pictor, nemo adolescens*, and even *homo nemo*. Cic. *Quisquam* is sometimes used in a similar manner; as, *quisquam homo, quisquam civis*. On the other hand *nullus* and *ullus* are used as substantives instead of *nemo* and *quisquam*, especially the genitive *nullius* and the ablative *nullo*.

REM. 32. (a.) *Alius*, like *ullus*, though properly an adjective, is sometimes used like a pronoun. It is often repeated, or joined with an adverb derived from it, in the same proposition, which may be translated by two separate propositions, commencing respectively with 'one...another'; as, *Aliud aliis videtur optimum*, One thing seems best to one, another to another. Cic. *Aliis aliunde periculum est*, Danger threatens one from one source, another from another; or, Danger threatens different persons from different sources. Ter. *Dionysium alter cum aliis de nobis locutum audiebam*. Cic.—*Alter* is used in the same manner when only two persons are spoken of, but there are no adverbs derived from it; as, *Alter in alterum causam conferunt*, They accuse each other.

(b.) *Alius*, repeated in different propositions, is also translated 'one...another'; as, *Aliud agitur, aliud simulatur*, One thing is done, another pretended. Cic. *Alter loquitur, alter scribit*, like *alter ac* or *atque*, He speaks otherwise than he writes. So *Aliud loquitur, aliud scribit*.

(c.) *Uterque*, 'each of two,' is always used by Cicero in the singular number, when only two individuals are spoken of. Its plural, *utrique*, is used only when each of two parties consists of several individuals; as, *Macedones—Tyrii, utrique*. But in other good prose writers the plural *utrique* is occasionally used in speaking of only two; as, *Utrique Dionysii*. Nep. Cf. § 209, R. 11, (4.)

REM. 33. (a.) *Quidam* differs from *aliquis* by implying that a person or thing, though indefinitely described, is definitely known; as, *Quidam de collegis nostris*, A certain one of our colleagues. Cic. *Scis me quoddam tempore Mithridatum venisse tecum*. Id.

(b.) *Quidam* is sometimes used for *some*, as opposed to the whole, or to others; as, *Excesserunt urbe quidam, alii mortem sibi consecraverunt*, Some departed from the city, others destroyed themselves. Liv. Hence it is used to soften an expression, where in English we say 'so to speak,' etc.; as, *Milvo est quoddam bellum naturale cum corvo*, A kind of natural warfare. Cic. *Fuit enim illud quoddam cæcum tempus servitutis*. Id. *Et enim omnes artes quas ad humanitatem pertinent, habent quoddam commune vinculum et quasi cognatione quædam inter se continentur*. Id.—*Tumquam* is used for the same purpose, and also *ut ita dicam*.

REM. 34. *Quivis* and *quilibet*, 'any one,' and *unusquisque*, 'each,' are universal and absolute; as, *Omnia sunt ejusmodi quibus ut perspicere possit*, All are of such a nature that any one can perceive. Cic. *Hic opud majores nostros adhibebatur peritus, nunc quilibet*. Id. *Natura unumquemque trahit ad discendum*. A negative joined with them denies only the universality which they imply; as, *Non cuivis homini contingit adire Cynthum*, i. e. not to every man without distinction. Hor. *Cuiquam* would have made the negation universal.

REM. 35. (a.) *Quisque* signifies *each*, *every one*, distributively or relatively, and generally stands without a noun; as, *Quod cuique obagit, id quisque tenet*, Let each one keep what has fallen to each. Cic. Hence it is used particularly after relative and interrogative pronouns and adverbs; as, *Scipio pollicetur sibi maxime curæ fore, ut omnia civitatibus, quæ cûjuscusque fuissent, restituerentur*. Cic. *Ut prædicti posset, quid cuique eveniatur*, et quo quisque fato natus esset. Id. *Cur sint quidque quaris: recte omnino*. Id. *Quo quisque est solertior, hoc docet laboriosus*. Id. *Ut quisque optime dicit, ita maxime dicendi difficultatem timet*. Id. And hence the expression *quotusquisque* in the sense of 'how few among all.' It is also used distributively after numerals; as, *Decimus quisque sorte lectus*, Every tenth man. Quinto quoque anno, In every fifth year. So also after *suus*; as, *Sui cuique liberi carissimi: suum cuique placet*. (Respecting the order of the words, cf. § 279, 14: and respecting *quisque* in the nominative in apposition to a noun or pronoun in the ablative absolute or in the accusative with the infinitive, see § 204, R. 10.)

(b.) *Quisque* with a superlative, either in the singular or the plural, denotes universality, and is generally equivalent to *omnes* with the positive; as, *doctissimus quisque*, Every learned man, i. e. all the learned; but often, also, in connection with the verb, it retains the idea of a reciprocal comparison, and is to be rendered by the superlative; as, *In omni arte optimum quidque rarissimum*, The best is the rarest. Cic. *Altissima quæque flumina minimo sono labuntur*, The deepest rivers flow with the least sound. Curt. With *primus*, it denotes the *first possible*; as, *Primo quoque tempore*, As soon as possible. Cic.

#### POSSESSIVES.

REM. 36. (a.) The possessive pronouns *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester*, are joined to nouns, to indicate an action or possession of the persons denoted by their primitives; as, *Tutus amor meus est tibi*, My love is secure to you. Ovid. *Tuam ricem dolere soleo*. Cic.—These pronouns, as in English, when belonging to two substantives, are generally expressed but once, even when the substantives are of different genders; as, *amor tuus ac iudicium de me*.

(b.) But these pronouns are sometimes used when the persons to which they refer are the objects of an action, feeling, etc.; as, *Nam neque tuâ negligentia, neque odio id fecit tuo*, For he did it neither through neglect nor hatred of you. Ter. See § 211, R. 3.



(c.) The possessive pronouns, especially when used as reflexives, are often omitted; as, *Quo révertar? in patriam? scil. meam*, Whither shall I return? to (my) country? Ovid. *Dextrâ mûnëra porrexit*, scil. *suâ*. Id. But they are expressed when emphasis or contrast is intended, where in English 'own' might be added to the pronoun; as, *Ego non dicam, tâmen id pôterius cum ânimis vestris cõglâre*. Cic.

(d.) When besides the person of the subject, that of a remote object also occurs in the proposition, the possessive pronoun will refer to the latter; as, *Patris ânimum mihi rêconciliasti*, i. e. *patri mei ânimum* rather than *tui*.

(e.) As reflexives, *meus*, etc., are translated my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their; or my own, thy own, his own, etc.

#### THE REFLEXIVES *SUI* AND *SUUS*.

§ 208. REM. 37. (a.) *Sui* and *suus* properly refer to the subject of the proposition in which they stand; as,

*Oppidâni factus in se ac suos fœdum consciscunt*, The citizens decide on a foul crime against themselves and their friends. Liv.

(b.) They continue to be used in successive clauses, if the subject remains the same; as,

*Ipse se quisque diligit, non ut âlquam a se ipse mercêdem exigat caritâtis suæ, sed quod per se sibi quisque carus est*. Cic.

(1.) In dependent clauses, in which the subject does not remain the same, the reflexives are commonly used in references to the leading subject, when the thoughts, language, purposes, etc., of that subject are stated; as,

*Ariovistus prædicârit, non sêse Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intâlisse*, Ariovistus declared that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him. Cæs. *Hômërum Colôphônii civem esse dicunt suum*, The Colophonians say that Homer is their citizen. Cic. *Tyrannus pëtivit ut se ad âmicitiâam tertium ascriberent*. Id. But sometimes, to avoid ambiguity, the cases of *is* or *ille* are used in such clauses in references to the leading subject; as, *Helvétii sêse Allobrogës vi coactûros existimâbant, ut per suos fines eos ire pôtrentur*. Cæs. Here *suos* refers to the subject of the dependent clause, and *eos* to *Helvétii*, the subject of the leading clause. And sometimes, even in the same dependent clause, two reflexive pronouns are used, referring to different persons; as, *Scýthus pëtebant, ut régis sui filiâam matrimônio sibi jungêret*. Curt.

(2.) If, however, the leading subject, whose thoughts, etc., are expressed, is indefinite, the reflexives relate to the subject of a dependent clause; as,

*Mêdëam prædicant* (scil. *hômînes*) *in fugâ frâtris sui membra in iis locis, quâ se pârens persëquëritur, dissipâvisse*. Cic. *Ipsum rêgem trâdunt ôperâtum his sacrîs se abdidiisse*. Liv.

(3.) (a.) When the leading verb is in the passive voice, the reflexive often refers not to its subject, but to that which would be its subject in the active voice; as,

*A Cæsâre invitôr ut sim sibi légâtus*, i. e. *Cæsar me invitât*, I am invited by Cæsar to become his lieutenant. Cic.

(b.) So when the subject is a thing without life, the reflexive may relate to some other word in the sentence, which denotes a thing having life; as,

*Cânium tam fida custôdia quid significat âliud, nisi se ad hôminum commodâtiles esse gênerâtos?* Cic.

(4.) Instead of *sui* and *suus*, whether referring to a leading or a subordinate subject, *ipse* is sometimes used, to avoid ambiguity from the similarity of both numbers of *sui*, and also to mark more emphatically than *suus*, the person to whom it relates; as,

*Jugurtha legatos misit, qui ipsi liberisque vitam peterent*, Jugurtha sent ambassadors to ask life for himself and his children. Sall. *Ea molestissime ferre homines debent, quæ ipsorum culpâ contracta sunt*.

(5.) In the plural number, with *inter*, *se* only is used, if the person or thing referred to is in the nominative or accusative; *se* or *ipse*, if in any other case; as,

*Frâtes inter se quum formâ, tum moribus similes*, Brothers resembling each other both in person and character. Cic. *Feras inter sese conciliat natura*. Cic. *Incidunt aliquæ a doctis etiam inter ipsos mutuo reprehensa*. Quint.

(6.) (a.) When reference is made not to the subject of the proposition, but to some other person or thing, *hic*, *is*, or *ille*, is generally used, except in the cases above specified; as,

*Themistocles servum ad Xerxem misit, ut ei nuntiaret, suis verbis, adversarios ejus in fugâ esse*, Themistocles sent his servant to Xerxes, to inform him (Xerxes), in his (Themistocles') name, that his (Xerxes') enemies were upon the point of flight. Nep.

(b.) But when no ambiguity would arise, and especially when the verb is of the first or second person, *sui* and *suus* sometimes take the place of the demonstrative pronouns; as,

*Suam rem sibi salvam sistam*, I will restore his property entire to him. Plaut.

(c.) On the contrary, the demonstratives are sometimes used for the reflexives; as,

*Helvetii persuadent Rauracis, ut inâ cum iis profisciscantur*, The Helvetii persuade the Rauraci to go with them. Cæs.—In some instances, a reflexive and a demonstrative are used in reference to the same person; as, *Ita se gessit* (scil. Ligarius) *ut ei pacem esse expeditet*. Cic. *C. Claudii fratris per sui fratris parentisque ejus manea*. Liv.—Sometimes the reflexives refer to different subjects in the same sentence; as, *Ariovistus respondit, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse* (Cæs.); where *se* refers to Ariovistus, and *sua* to neminem.

(7.) (a.) *Suus* often refers to a word in the predicate of a sentence, and is then usually placed after it; as,

*Hunc cives sui ex urbe ejecerunt*, Him his fellow-citizens banished from the city. Cic. *Titurius quum procul Ambiorigem, suos cohortantem, conspexisset*. Cæs.

(b.) *Suus*, and not *hujus*, is used when a noun is omitted; as, *Octavius quem sui* (scil. amici) *Cæsarem salutabant*, Octavius, whom his followers saluted as Cæsar.

(c.) *Suus* is also commonly used when two nouns are coupled by *cum* but not when they are connected by a conjunction; as,

*Ptolemæus amicos Demetrii cum suis rebus dimisit*, Ptolemy dismissed the friends of Demetrius with their effects. Just.

(8.) *Suus* sometimes denotes *fit*, *favorable*; as,

*Sunt et sua dona parenti*, There are likewise for my father suitable presents. Virg. *Ut liberator ille populi Romani oppeteretur tempora sua*. Liv. *Alphenus utebatur populo sane suo*. Cic. Sometimes it signifies *peculiar*; as, *Molles sua terra sâvas*, scil. mittunt, i. e. the frankincense for which their country was famous. Virg. *Fessoque sopor suus occupat artus*. Id.

## NOMINATIVE.

## SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE AND VERB.

§ 209. (a.) The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative.

NOTE 1. (a.) A verb in any mood except the infinitive is called a finite verb. (b.) In historical writing the nominative is sometimes joined with the present infinitive instead of the imperfect indicative. Cf. R. 5.

(b.) A verb agrees with its subject-nominative, in number and person; as,

*Ego lēgo*, I read.

*Tu scribis*, Thou writest.

*Equus currit*, The horse runs.

*Nos lēgimus*, We read.

*Vos scribitis*, You write.

*Equi currunt*, Horses run.

NOTE 2. The imperative singular is sometimes used in addressing several persons; as, *Huc nātas adice septem*, scil. *vos*, *Thebaides*. Ovid. Met. 6, 182. So *Adde defectionem Italia*, scil. *vos, milites*. Liv. 26, 41.

REMARK 1. (a.) The nominatives *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, are seldom expressed, the termination of the verb sufficiently marking the person; as,

*Cūpio*, I desire; *vivis*, thou livest; *hābēmus*, we have. See § 147, 3.

(b.) But when emphasis or opposition is intended, the nominatives of the first and second persons are expressed; as, *Ego rēges ejeci*, *vos tyrannos intrōdūctis*, I banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Auct. ad Her. Nos, nos, *dīco aperte*, *consūles dēsūmus*. Cic. *Tu es patrōnus*, *tu pater*. Ter. In indignant questions and addresses *tu* is expressed; as, *Tu in fōrum prōdire*, *tu lācra conspēcere*, *tu in hōrum conspectum vēire cōnāris*? Auct. ad Her.

REM. 2. The nominative of the third person is often omitted:—

(1.) When it has been expressed in a preceding proposition:—

(a.) As nominative; as, *Mōsa prōfuit ex monte Vāsēgo*, *et in Ocednum infuit*. Cæs.; or (b) in an oblique case; as, *Cursōrem misērunt*, *ut id nuntiāret*, scil. *cursor*. Nep.; or (c) in a possessive adjective; as, *Et vēreor quo se Jūnōia vertant Iloptia*; *haud tanto cessabit cardine rērum*, scil. *illa*, i. e. *Jūnō*. Virg. Æn. I. 672.

(2.) When it is a general word for *person* or *thing*:—

Thus *hōmines* is often omitted before *aiunt*, *dicunt*, *fērunt*, etc.; as, *Ut aiunt*, As they say. Cic. *Maxime admirantur eum*, *qui pecūniā non mōvētur*. Id.—*So bene est*, *bene hābet* or *bene agitur*, It is well; as, *Si vales*, *bene est*, *ego valeo*. Cic. *Quum melius est*, *grātulor dis*. Afran. *Optime hābet*, Nothing can be better. Plaut. *Bene hābet*: *jacta sunt fundāmēta defēnsiōnis*. Cic. *Bene agitur pro noxia*. Plaut.

NOTE 3. This omission of the nominative is common in the clause preceding a relative; as, *Qui Bāvium non ōdit*, *amet tua carmina*, *Mævi*, scil. *hōmo*, Let him who hates not Bavius, love your verses, Mævius. Virg. *Vasīatur agri quod inter urbem ac Fidēnas est*, scil. *id spātium*. Liv. *Sunt quos jivat*...scil. *hōmines*, There are (those) whom it delights. Hor. *Est qui nec vêtēris pōcula Massici apernit*, scil. *hōmo*. Hor. Here *sunt quos* and *est qui* are equivalent to *quidam*, *aliquis*, or *aliqui*. So, *Est quod gaudeas*, There is (reason) why you should rejoice. Cic. *Nēque erat cur fallere vellent*. Ovid. *Est ubi id vāleat*. Cic. *Est*, *quum non est satius*, etc. Auct. ad Her. In the latter cases, the adverbs are equivalent to *in quo*, scil. *lōco*, *tempōre*.

REM. 3. (1.) The nominative is *wanting* before verbs denoting the state of the weather, or the operations of nature; as,

*Fulgurat*, It lightens. Plin. *Ningit*, It snows. Virg. *Lucescēbat*, It was growing light. Liv. *Jam advesperascit*. Cic.

(2.) The nominative is also wanting before the third person singular of the passive of neuter verbs, and of active verbs used impersonally; as,

*Fāvērur tibi a me*, Thou art favored by me. *Ejus orātioni vehēmenter ab omnibus reclamātum est*. Cic. Proinde ut bene virtutur, diu vivitur. Plaut. *Ad exitum ventum est*. Sen. Actum est de império. See § 184, 2: and cf. § 229, R. 5, (b.)

NOTE 4. A nominative, however, is expressed before the passive of some neuter verbs, which, in the active voice, are followed by an accusative; as, *Pugna pugnata est*. Cic. See § 232, (1.)

(3.) It is wanting also before the neuter of the future passive participle with *est*; as,

*Si ris me flere dölendum est primum ipsi tibi*, If you wish me to weep, you yourself must first grieve. Hor. Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. Juv. *Ad villam revertendum est*. Cic.

(4.) The nominative is also wanting before the impersonal verbs *misēret*, *pœnitēt*, *pūdet*, *tædet*, and *piget*; as,

*Eos ineptiarum pœnitēt*, They repent of their follies. Cic. *Misēret te aliorum, tui te nec misēret nec pūdet*. Plaut. *Me civitatis morum piget tædetque*. Sall.—In such examples, the sense will sometimes permit us to supply *fortuna*, *conditio*, *mémoria*, etc. So in the expression, *Venit in mentem*, It came into mind; as, *In mentem venit de speculo*, scil. *cogitatio*, etc. Plaut.—An infinitive or a subjunctive clause sometimes forms the subject of these verbs; as, *Te id nullo modo pūduit facere*, To do that by no means shamed you. Ter. *Non pœnitēt me*, quantum profecerim. Cic.

(5.) The subject of the verb is sometimes an infinitive or a neuter participle (either alone or with other words), one or more propositions, or an adverb. (Cf. § 202, R. 2 and 3: and § 274, R. 5, (b.)) The verb is then in the third person singular; as,

*Vacare culpā magnum est solātium*, To be free from fault is a great consolation. *Næque est te fallere quidquam*, To deceive you in any thing is not (possible). Virg. *Mentiri non est meum*. Plaut. Te non istud audivisse mirum est, That you have not heard that is wonderful. Cic. 'Summum jus, summa injuria,' *factum est jam tritum sermōne proverbium*. Id. *Ni degenerātum in aliis huc quōque decōri offecisset*. Liv. (Cf. § 274, R. 5, (b.)) *Sin est ut velis manere illam apud te*. Ter. *Nec profuit Hydræ crescere per damnum, geminasque resumere vires*. Ovid. *Dic mihi, cras istud, Postūme, quando veni?* Tell me, Postumus, when does that to-morrow come? Mart. *Parumne campis atque Neptūno super fūsum est Lātini sanguinis?* Hor.

(a.) This construction is especially common with impersonal verbs; as, *Oratorem irasci non dēet*, That an orator should be angry, is not becoming. Cic. *Hoc fieri et oportet et opus est*. Id. *Me pēdibus delectat claudere verba*. Hor. *Intrest omnium recte facere*. Cic. *Cāsu accidit*, ut, id quod Rōmæ audierat, primus nuntiāret. Id. Sometimes a neuter pronoun is interposed between a proposition and its verb; as, *Impūne facere quæ libet*, id est *regem esse*. Sall. Cf. § 208, (18.), (a.)

(6.) The nominative is also wanting before *pōest*, *cæpit* or *cæptum est*, *incipit*, *destinū*, *dēbet*, *sōlet*, and *vidētur*, when followed by the infinitive of an impersonal verb; as,

*Pigere eum facti caput.* It began to repent him (i. e. he began to repent) of his conduct. Just. *Sapientia est una, quæ præceptrice, in tranquillitate vivi potest.* Cic. *Tendere solet avaros impendit.* Quint.

REM. 4. The verb is sometimes omitted; as,

*Di meliôra pia,* scil. *dent* or *vêlent*, May the gods grant better things to the pious. Virg. *Vêrum hæc hæc ténus,* scil. *diximus.* Cic. *Pertineo* is understood in such expressions as *nihil ad me, nihil ad rem; Quid hoc ad Epicûrum?* What does this concern Epicurus? *Quorsus hæc?* i. e. *quorsus hæc pertinet?* What is that for?—*Pârâbo* is to be supplied, in *Quo mihi hanc rem?* Of what use is this to me? and, *Unde mihi aliquam rem?* Whence am I to get any thing? as, *Quo mihi bibliothêcas?* Sen. *Unde mihi lîpidem?* Hor. A tense of *fûcio* is often to be supplied, as in *Recte ille, melius hî; Bène Chrysippus, qui docet.* Cic. *Nihil per vim unquam Clodius, omnia per vim Milo.* Id. *Quæ quum dixisset, Cotta finem.* Id. So, also in the phrases *nihil aliud quam; quid aliud quam; nihil præterquam*, which signify 'merely'; as, *Tisaphernes nihil aliud quam bellum comparâvit.* Nep. This verb is in like manner omitted with *nihil amplius quam; nihil minus quam*, and in the phrase *si nihil aliud.*—*Ait* or *inquit* is sometimes omitted in introducing the direct words of another, and more frequently in relating a connected conversation; as, *Tum ille; hic ego; huic ego.* *Dicit* is sometimes omitted in quoting a person's words; as, *Scite Chrysippus: ut glâci causâ râginam, sic præter mundum cêtera omnia aliôrum causâ esse gènêrâta.* Cic.—After *per* in adjurations *oro, rôgo* or *prêcor* is often omitted; as, *Per ego vos deos patrios, vindicâte ab ultimo dedêcôrê nômen gentemque Persârûm;* i. e. *per deos patrios vos oro, vindicâte.* Curt. This omission is most common with the copula *sum*; as, *Nam Polydorus ego,* scil. *sum.* For I am Polydorus. Virg. And *so est* and *sunt* are often omitted with predicate adjectives, and especially in proverbial phrases; as, *Quot hómînes tot sententiæ.* Ter. *Omnia præclâra rara,* scil. *sunt.* Cic. So also *est* and *sunt* are often omitted in the compound tenses of the passive voice; as, *Agro mulctâtî,* scil. *sunt.* Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 3.

NOTE 5. In Latin, as in English, a verb is often joined to one of two connected nominatives and understood with the other, and that even when the persons are different; as, *magis ego te amo, quam tu me,* scil. *amas.* After a negative verb a corresponding positive verb is sometimes to be supplied; as, after *nêgo, dico,* after *vêto, jûbeo*, and in this case *et* takes the signification of *sed.* Cf. § 323, 1, (2.), (b.)

NOTE 6. Sometimes, when the verb of an appended proposition is omitted, its subject is attracted to the case of a noun in the leading proposition with which is joined a participle of the omitted verb; as, *Hannibal Minûcium, mâtistrum êquitum, pâri ac dictâtorem dôlo productum in prælium, fûgâvit,* i. e. *pâri ac dictâtôr dôlo productus fuêrat.* Nep. Hann. 5. So Liv. 34, 32.

REM. 5. In the historic style the nominative is sometimes found with the present infinitive; as,

*Intêrim quôtidie Cæsar Æduos frumentum flâgitâre,* Meanwhile Cæsar was daily demanding corn of the Ædui. Cæs. *Nos pâvidi trêpidâre mêtû.* Virg. *Id horrendum ferri.* Id.

NOTE 7. The infinitive in this construction is called the *historical infinitive*, and is used instead of the imperfect indicative to express in a lively manner a continued or repeated action or condition.

REM. 6. The relative *qui* may refer to an antecedent either of the first, second, or third person; and its verb takes the person of the antecedent; as,

*Ego qui lêgo,* I who read. *Tu qui scribis,* Thou who writest. *Equus qui currit,* The horse which runs. *Vos qui quæritis,* You who ask.

REM. 7. (a.). Verbs in the first person plural, and the second person singular, are sometimes used to express general truths; as,

*Quam multa facimus causâ amicorum!* How many things we do (i. e. men do) for the sake of friends! Cic. *Si vis me flere, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi,* Whoever wishes me, etc. Hor.

(b.) *Nos* is often used for *ego*, and *noster* for *meus*; and even when the pronoun is not expressed, the verb is frequently put in the first person plural instead of the first person singular. The genitive *nostri* is used for *mei*, but *nostrum* always expresses a real plurality.

REM. 8. The accusative is sometimes used for the nominative by attraction. See § 206, (6.) (b.)

REM. 9. The verb sometimes agrees with the *predicate-nominative*, especially if it precedes the verb; as, *Amantium ira amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love. Ter. *Lôca, quæ proxima Carthaginem, Nûmidia appellâtur*. Sall. And sometimes it agrees with the nearest subject of a subordinate sentence; as, *Sed ei cariôra semper omnia, quam decus atque pûdicitia fuit*. Sall. Cat. 25.

REM. 10. In cases of apposition, the verb commonly agrees with the noun which is to be explained; as, *Tulliolâ, dëlleiciæ nostræ, flâgitat*. Cic. But sometimes the verb agrees, not with the principal nominative, but with a nearer noun in apposition to it; as, *Tungri, civitas Gallia, fontem habet insignem*, The Tungri, a state of Gaul, has a remarkable fountain. Plin. *Côrioli oppidum captum (est)*. Liv.

REM. 11. A collective noun has sometimes, especially in poetry, a plural verb; as,

*Pars epulis onêrant mensas*, Part load the tables with food. Virg. *Turbæ ruunt*. Ovid. *Atria turbæ ténent; vêniant lève vulgus euntque*. Id.

(1.) (a.) A plural verb, joined to a collective noun, usually expresses the action, etc., of the *individuals* which that noun denotes. In Cicero, Sallust, and Cæsar, this construction scarcely occurs in simple sentences; but it is often used, when the subject of the verb is expressed not in its own, but in a preceding clause; as, *Hoc idem gènêri hûmânô vênit, quod in terrâ collocâtî sint*, because they (scil. *hómînes*) live on earth. Cic. In Livy it occurs more frequently; as, *Iocros omnis multitúdo abeunt*.

(b.) Abstract nouns are sometimes used collectively, instead of their concretes; as, *nóbilitas* for *nóbiles*, *jûventus* for *jûvenes*, *vicinia* for *vicini*, *sercitiûm* for *serri*, *lêvis armâtûra* for *lêviter armâtî*, etc. (c.) *Miles*, *êques*, *pêdes*, and similar words are sometimes used collectively for the soldiery, the cavalry, etc.

(2.) When two or more clauses have the same collective noun as their subject, the verb is frequently singular in the former, and plural in the latter; as, *Jam ne nocte quidem turbæ ex eo lóco dilâbêbâtur, refractârosque carcêrem minâbantur*. Liv. *Gens eadêm, quæ te crûdêlî Daunia bellô insêquitur, nus sî pellant, nihil ubi fôre crêdunt*. Virg.

(3.) *Tantum*, followed by a genitive plural, has sometimes a plural verb, like a collective noun; as, *Quid huc tantum hómînûm incêdunt?* Why are so many men coming hither? Plaut.

(4.) A plural verb is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, after *utrumque* and *quisque*, *pars...pars*, *alius...alius*, and *alter...alterum*, on account of the idea of plurality which they involve; as, *Utrique eôrûm ex castris exercitum educunt*, Each of them leads his army from the camp. Cæs. *Intinus quisque libértorûm vincti abreptique (sunt)*. Tac. *Alius alium, ut prælium incipiant, circumspectant*. Liv. Cf. § 207, R. 32, (c.)

NOTE 8. This construction may be explained by passages like the following, in which the plural is placed first, and then the singular, denoting its parts; *Cêteri, suo quisque tempóre, âderunt*. Liv. *Decemviri perturbâtî alius in aliam partem castrôrûm discurrunt*. Id. See § 204, R. 10.

**REM. 12.** Two or more nominatives singular, not in apposition, generally have a plural verb; as,

*Fūr irāque mentem* præcipitant, Fury and rage hurry on (my) mind. Virg. *Dum alas, mētus, māgister*, prohibebant. Ter.

(1.) If the predicate belongs to the several nominatives jointly, the verb is always plural; as, *Grammaticæ quondam ac mūsæe junctæ fuērunt*. Quint.

(2.) A verb in the singular is often used after several nominatives singular, especially if they denote things without life; as,

*Mens enim, et ratio et consilium in senibus* est. Cic. *Beneficentia, liberalitas, bonitas, justitia funditus* tollitur. Id.

**NOTE 9.** This construction is most common when the several nominatives, as in the preceding examples, constitute, as it were, but one idea. So also the compound subject *Sēnātus pōpulusque Rōmānus* has always a predicate in the singular. The same construction sometimes, especially in the poets, occurs with names of persons; as, *Gorgias, Thrāsýmāchus, Prōdāgoras, Prōdāchus, Hippas in hōnōre* fuit. Cic. *Quin et Prōmētheus et Pēlōpis pārens dulci laborum* dēcliptur sōno. Hor. When the nominatives denote both persons and things, the verb is commonly plural; as, *Citio consilium et Pompeius* obsunt. Liv.

(3.) When one of the nouns is plural, the verb is generally so; but sometimes it is singular, when the plural noun does not immediately precede it; as, *Dii te pēnātes patrique, et patris imāgo, et dōmus rēgia, et in dōmo rēgale sōlium, et nōmen Tarquiniū* creat vocatque rēgem. Liv.

(4.) When each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, the verb agrees with the last; as, *Hoc et ratio doctis, et nēcessitas barbāris, et mos gentibus, et fēris nātūra ipsa* præscripsit. This, reason has dictated to the learned, and necessity to barbarians, and custom to nations, and nature itself to wild beasts. Cic. *Et ego, et Cicero meus* flagitābit. Id. *Tum setas viresque, tum arcta glōria ānimum* stimulat. Liv. So when the subject consists of two infinitives; as, *Et facere, et pati fortia, Rōmānum* est. Cic. *Unus et alter* always takes a singular verb; as, *Dicit unus et alter breviter*. Cic. *Unus et alter* assultur pūnus. Hor.

(5.) When the nominatives are connected by *aut*, sometimes the plural, but commonly the singular, is used; as,

*Si Sōcrātes aut Antisthēnes* diceret, If Socrates or Antisthenes should say. Cic. *Ut quosque stūdiū privātū aut grātia* occupāverunt. Liv.

(a.) The plural is necessary with disjunctives, if the subject includes the first or second person; as, *Quod in Dēcemtrīs nēque ego nēque Cēsar* habiti essemus. Cic.—(b.) With *aut...aut* and *nec...nec* the singular is preferred, but with *seu...seu* and *tam...quam* the verb is in the plural.

(6.) A nominative singular, joined to an ablative by the preposition *cum*, sometimes has a singular but more frequently a plural verb; as, *Dōmitius cum Messalā certus esse* videbatur. Cic. Bocchus, *cum peditibus, postremam Rōmānōrum aciem* invadunt, Bocchus, with his foot-soldiers, attacks the rear of the Roman army. Sall. *Ipsē dux, cum aliquot principibus*, capiuntur. Liv.

(7.) If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb is of the first person rather than the second or third, and of the second rather than the third; as,

*Si tu et Tullia* vāletis, *ego et Cicero* vālemus, If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well. Cic. *Itac nēque ego nēque tu* fecimus. Ter. *Ego pōpulusque Rōmānus bellum* iūdæo faciōque. Liv.

(a.) Yet sometimes the verb agrees in number and person with the nearest nominative, and is understood with the other; as, *Vos ipsi et sēnātus* frēquens restitit. This is always the case when the action of the verb is qualified with reference to each nominative separately; as, *Ego misere tu* fēlicitatē vivis.

REM. 13. The interjections *en*, *ecce*, and *O*, are sometimes followed by the nominative; as,

*En Priamus! Lo Priam! Virg. En ego, vester Ascānius. Id. Ecce hōmo Catēnus! Cic. Ecce tua lītra. Id. O vir fortis atque amicus! Ter.*

### PREDICATE-NOMINATIVE.

§ 210. A noun in the predicate, after a verb neuter or passive, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; as,

(a.) When the subject is in the nominative; *Ira fūror brevis est*, Anger is a short madness. *Hor. Ego vōcor Lyconides*, I am called Lyconides. *Plant. Ego incēdo regina*, I walk a queen. *Virg. Caius et Lūcius frātres fuērunt. Cic.—* So (b.) when the subject is in the accusative with the infinitive; *Jūdicem me esse vōlo. Cic.*

(c.) Sometimes also a *dative*, denoting the same object, both precedes and follows a verb neuter or passive. See § 227, N.—And (d.) a predicate ablative sometimes follows passive participles of *choosing*, *naming*, etc.; as, *Consūlībūs certioribus factis. Liv. See § 257, R. 11.*

(e.) If the predicate noun has a form of the same gender as the subject, it takes that form; as, *Licentia corruptrix est mōrum. Cf. § 204, R. 2.—(f.)* But if the subject is neuter, the noun of the predicate, if it has both a masculine and a feminine form, takes the former; as, *Tempus vitæ māgister est.*

(g.) An infinitive may supply the place of a predicate nominative. See § 269, R. 4.

REMARK 1. (a.) Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, standing in the predicate, after verbs neuter or passive, and relating to the subject, agree with it in gender, number, and case.

(b.) When the subject consists of two or more nouns, the gender and number of such predicate adjectives are determined by § 205, R. 2.

REM. 2. (a.) The noun in the predicate sometimes differs in gender and number from the subject; as, *Sanguis erant lacrimæ*, Her tears were blood. *Ovid. Captivi multum præda fuērunt. Liv.*

(b.) So when a subject in the singular is followed by an ablative with *cum*, the predicate is plural; as, *Exsiles esse jubet L. Tarquinius cum conjuge et liberis. Liv.*

REM. 3. The verbs which most frequently have a noun, etc., in the predicate agreeing in case, etc., with their subject, are:—

(1.) The *copula sum*; as, *Ego Jovis sum filius. Plant. Disce esse pater. Ter.* The predicate with *sum* may be an adverb of place, manner, etc.; as, *Quod est longe aliter. Cic. Rectissime sunt apud te omnia*, Every thing with you is in a very good condition. *Id.;* or a noun in an oblique case; as, *Nūmen aine tūre est. Ovid. Sunt nobis mitia pōma. Virg.*

(2.) Certain neuter verbs denoting *existence*, *position*, *motion*, etc.; as, *vivo, exsisto, appareo, cado, eo, evado, fugio, incedo, jaceo, maneo, sēdeo, sto, venio*, etc. Thus, *Rex circuibat pēdes*, The king went round on foot. *Plin. Quos judicabat non posse orātōres evadere. Cic. Ego huic causæ patrōnus exstiti. Cic. Qui sit, ut nemo contentus vivat!*

(3.) The passive of verbs denoting,

(a.) To *name* or *call*; as, *appellor, dicor, nōminor, nuncipor, perhibeor, adīator, scribor, inscribor, vōcor*. Thus, *Cognōmine Justus est appellātus*, He was called by the surname Just. *Nep. Aristotēs olivæ dicitur inventor. Cic.*



(b.) To choose, render, appoint, or constitute; as, *constituor, creor, declātor, designor, eligor, fio, reddor, renūncior*. Thus, *Dux a Rōmānis electus est Q. Fabius. Postquam ēphēbus factus est. Nep. Certior factus sum.*

(c.) To esteem or reckon; as, *censeor, cognoscor, crēdor, deprehēndor, existimor, dācor, fēror, habēor, iudicor, mēmōror, nūmēror, pātor, repērior, videor*. Thus, *Crēdēbar sanguinis auctor ego. Ovid. Mālim vidēri timidus quam pārūm prūdēns. Cic.*

NOTE 1. With several passives of the last class, when followed by a predicate-nominative, etc., an infinitive of *sum* is expressed or understood; as, *Amens mihi fuisse videor*, I think I was beside myself. *Cic.* But the dative of the first person is sometimes omitted after *videor*; as, *Satis dōcuisse videor*. *Id.*—*Asilius prūdēns esse putābātur*. *Id.* So with *dācor* (to be said), and *perhibeor*; as, *Vērus patrie dicēris esse pater. Mart. Ille ne locūtus sine mercede existimet. Phæd.*

NOTE 2. *Audīo* is sometimes used by the poets like *appellor*; as, *Tu rexque paterque audisti coram. Hor.*

REM. 4. A predicate-nominative is used after many other verbs to denote a purpose, time, or circumstance of the action; as, *Cōmes additus Œolides*, Œolides was added as a companion. *Virg. Lūpus obambulat nocturnus. Id. Appāret liquido sublimis in æthere Nisus. Id.* So with an active verb; *Audiri hoc puer. Cic. Sāpiens nil f'acit invitus. Id. Rempūblicam dēfendē adōlescens. Id. Cf. § 204, R. 1.*

NOTE 3. Instead of the predicate-nominative, a dative of the end or purpose sometimes occurs (see § 227); sometimes an ablative with *pro*; as, *audācia pro mūro est*; and sometimes the ablatives *lōco* or *in nūmēro* with a genitive; as, *ille est mihi pārentis lōco*; *in hostium nūmēro habētur*.

REM. 5. The noun *opus*, signifying 'need,' is often used as a predicate after *sum*. It is, in such cases, translated by the adjectives *needful, necessary, etc.*; as, *Dux nobis et auctor opus est. Cic. Multi opus sunt dōves. Varr. (Dixit) aurum et ancillas opus esse. Ter. Usus* also is occasionally so construed.

REM. 6. When the pronoun, which is the subject of an infinitive, is omitted, the case of the predicate is sometimes, in the poets, attracted into that of the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends; as, *Uxor invicti Jōvis esse necis, i. e. te esse uxorē. Hor. Rētulit Ajax esse Jōvis prōnēpos. Ovid.*

## GENITIVE.

### GENITIVE AFTER NOUNS.

§ 211. A noun which limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive; as,

*Amor glōriæ*, Love of glory; *Arma Achillis*, The arms of Achilles; *Pāter patriæ*, The father of the country; *Vitium iræ*, The vice of anger; *Nēmōrum custos*, The guardian of the groves; *Amor habendī*, Love of possessing.

NOTE 1. In the first example, *amor* denotes love in general; *glōriæ* limits the affection to the particular object, glory. Such universally is the effect of the genitive, depending upon a noun. Hence the limitation of a noun by a genitive resembles that which is effected by an adjective. In each the noun limited constitutes with its limitation only a single idea.

REMARK 1. The genitive denotes various relations, the most common of which are those of *Source*; as, *Rādii sōlis*, The rays of the sun;—*Cause*; as, *Dolor podagræ*, The pain of the gout;—*Effect*; as, *Artifex mundi*, The Creator of the world;—*Connection*; as, *Pāter consūlis*, The father of the consul;—*Possession*; as, *Dōmus Cæsaris*, The house of Cæsar;—*Object*; as, *Cōgitatio dīcūsus rei*, A thought of something;—*Purpose*; as, *Appārātus triumphī*, Preparation for a triumph;—A whole; as, *Pars hōminum*, A part

of men; this is called the *partitive* genitive;—*Character* or *Quality*; as, *Adolescens summæ audaciæ*, A youth of the greatest boldness;—*Material* or *Component Parts*; as, *Montes auri*, Mountains of gold; *Acervus scutiorum*, A heap of shields;—*Time*; as, *Frumentum dierum decem*, Corn for ten days. Sall.

REM. 2. The genitive is called *subjective* or *active*, when it denotes either that to which a thing belongs, or the *subject* of the action, feeling, etc., implied in the noun which it limits. It is called *objective* or *passive*, when it denotes the *object* affected by such action, or towards which such feeling is directed; as,

*Subjective.*

*Facta virorum*, Deeds of men.  
*Dolor animi*, Grief of mind.  
*Junonis ira*, The anger of Juno.

*Objective.*

*Odium vitii*, Hatred of vice.  
*Amor virtutis*, Love of virtue.  
*Desiderium otii*, Desire of leisure.

(a.) Whether a genitive is subjective or objective, is to be determined by the meaning of the words, and by their connection. Thus, *providentia Dei* signifies God's providence, or that exercised by him; *timor Dei*, the fear of God, or that exercised towards him. The same or similar words, in different connections, may express both significations. Thus, *metus hostium*, fear of the enemy, may mean, either the fear felt by the enemy, or that felt by their opponents. So *vulnus Ulixis* (Virg. *Æn.* 2, 436.) denotes the wound which Ulysses had given; *vulnus Æneæ*, (Id. *Æn.* 12, 323.) that which Æneas had received.

(b.) The relation expressed by the English *possessive case* is subjective, while that denoted by *of* with its case is either subjective or objective.

(c.) The objective genitive is of very extensive use in Latin in the limitation of verbal nouns and adjectives, whatever may be the construction of the verbs from which such nouns and adjectives are derived, whether they take an accusative or some other case or even a preposition.

(d.) When ambiguity would arise from the use of the objective genitive, a preposition with an accusative or ablative is commonly used; as, *Amor in rempublicam*, for *reipublicæ*, Love to the state. Cic. *Odium erga Romanos*, for *Romanorum*. Nep. *Cura de salute patriæ*, for *salutis*. Cic. *Prælator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*. Sall. Sometimes both constructions are combined; as, *Révèrentia adversus homines et optimi cuiusque et reliquorum*. Cic. *Off.* 1, 28.

NOTE. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition, especially with *vox*, *nomen*, *verbum*, etc.; as, *vox voluptatis*, the word pleasure; *nomen amicitiae*, the word *amicitia*; *domini appellatio*. This is usual when the genus is defined by the species; as, *arbor fici*, a fig-tree; *flos violæ*, a violet; *virtus continentiae*, the virtue of abstinence; and in geographical names; as, *oppidum Antiöchiæ*. Cf. § 204, R. 6.—Cicero frequently uses a genitive in this manner with *genus* and *causa*; as, *Unum genus est eorum, qui*, etc. *Duae sunt causæ, una pudoris, altera sceleris*.—So, also, the genitive of gerunds; as, *Triste est nomen ipsum cærendi*, The very word to want is sad. Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) A substantive pronoun in the genitive, limiting the meaning of a noun, is commonly objective; as,

*Cura mei*, Care for me. Ovid. *Pars tui*, Part of thee. Id. *Vestri curam agite*. Curt. This genitive is used especially with verbal substantives in *or*, *iz* and *io*; as, *Accusator mei*. Cic. *Nimia astimatio sui*. Id. *Rationem et sui et aliorum habere*. Id.

(b.) Instead of the *subjective* or *possessive* genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding adjective pronoun is commonly used; as,

*Liber meus*, not *liber mei*, my book. *Cura mea*, My care, i. e. the care exercised by me. Cic. *Tuas literas expecto*. Id. Yet the subjective genitive of a substantive pronoun sometimes occurs; as, *Tui unus studio*, By the zeal of yourself alone. Cic.

(c.) And not unfrequently, also, an adjective pronoun occurs instead of the objective genitive; as, *Mea injuria*, Injury to me. Sall. So, *Invidia tua*, Envy of thee. *Fiducia tua*, Confidence in thee. Plaut. *Spes mea*, The hope placed in me. With *causa* the adjective pronoun, and never the genitive, is used; as, *Mea causa*, For my sake. Plaut.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead, also, of the subjective genitive of a noun, a possessive adjective is often used; as, *Causa regia*, for *causa regis*. Cic. *Hérilla filius*, for *héri filius*. Id. *Evandrius ensis*, for *Evandri*. Virg. *Herculeus labor*, for *Herculis*. Hor. *Civilis furor*, for *civium*. Hor. So, also, for the objective genitive, *Méus hostilis*, Fear of the enemy. Sall.

(b.) The genitive of the person implied in the adjective pronoun or possessive adjective, or an adjective agreeing with such genitive, is sometimes added as an apposition; as, *Vestra ipsorum causa hoc feci*. In the poets and later prose writers a participle also is found agreeing with such implied genitive; as, *Mea scripta vulgo rectare timentis*. Hor. Cf. § 204, R. 4, and § 205, R. 13.

REM. 5. In the predicate after *sum*, and sometimes after other verbs, the dative is used like the objective genitive; as,

*Idem amor exitium pécóri (est), pécórique mägistro*. Virg. *Vitis ut arboribus decóri est, ut vitibus úva*—*Tu decus omne tuis*. Virg. In this passage the dative *decóri* and the nominative *decus* are used with no difference of meaning. Cf. § 227, R. 4. *Auctor fui sénatui*. Cic. *Muræna légatus Lúculo fuit*. Id. *Erii ille mihi semper deus*. Virg. *Huic causæ patrónus exstiti*. Cic. *Huic ego me bello dícem prófiteor*. Id. *Se tertium (esse) cui fátum fóret urbis pótri*. Id.—*Cum P. Africáno sénatus égit, ut légatus frátri próficiscératur*. Id. *Cæsar tégumenta gáleis milites ex vimínibus fácere jubet*. Cæs. *Trinóbantibus Cæsar impérat—frumentum exercitui*. Id. *Quod néque instidia consúli procédébant*. Sall. *Quem exitum tantis malis spérarent?* Id. *Sanctus vir et ex sententia ambobus, scil. qui fuit*. Id. See § 227, R. 4.

NOTE. The dative in the preceding examples has been thought by some grammarians to depend on the nouns connected with it; as, *exitium, decus, auctor, légatus, deus, patrónus*, etc.; by others it has been held to depend on these nouns in connection with the verbs, and not upon either separately; but the better opinion seems to be that, which makes such datives grammatically dependent upon the verbs only, though logically connected also with the nouns.

(1.) Instead, also, of the possessive genitive, a dative of the person may follow a verb, when its act has relation to the body or possessions of such person; as,

*Sese omnes flentes Cæsári ad pèdes prójecerunt*, They all, weeping, cast themselves at the feet of Cæsar. Cæs. *Cui corpus porrigitur*, For whom the body, i. e. whose body, is extended. Virg. *Tum vero exarsit jüveni dólór casibus ingens*. Id. *Transfigitur scütum Pulfióni*. Cæs.

REM. 6. When the limiting noun denotes a *property, character, or quality*, it has an adjective agreeing with it, and is put either in the genitive or the ablative; as,

*Vir exempli recti*, A man of correct example. Liv. *Adolescens summæ audácia*, A youth of the greatest boldness. Sall. *Fossa pèdum viginti*, A ditch of twenty feet, (i. e. in width). Cæs. *Hamilear sæcum duxit filium Hannibálem annórum novém*. Nep. *Athénieneses déligunt Périclem, spectáre virtútis vírum*. Just. *Quinquáginta annórum impérium*. Id. *Iter unius diét*. Cic. *Pulchritúdine eximíá femína*, A woman of exquisite beauty. Cic. *Maximo nátu filius*, The eldest son. Nep. *L. Cútilina fuit magná vi et ánimo et corpóris, sed ingénio málo právoque*. Sall. *Spélunca infinitá altitúdine*. Cic.—Sometimes both constructions occur in the same proposition; as, *Lentulum nostrum, eximíá spe, summæ virtútis adolescentem*. Cic.

(1.) A genitive sometimes supplies the place of the adjective; and the noun denoting the property, etc., is then always put in the ablative; as, *Est bos cervi figurâ*,...of the form of a stag. Cæs. *Uri spëcie et cölöre tauri*. Id. *Frítez palmi altitüdine*. Plin. *Clävi digiti pollicis crassitüdine*. Cæs.

(2.) All the qualities and attributes of persons and things, whether inherent or accidental, may be thus expressed by the genitive and ablative of quality, provided the substantives are immediately connected; as, *fossa quindécim pëdum*; *hómo antiquâ virtüte*. It hence follows that such genitives and ablatives, when used to express duration of time or extent of space, are distinguished from the cases in which the accusative is required, since the latter case always follows adjectives or verbs; as, *fossa quindécim pëdes läta*: *puer decem annos natus*. Cf. § 236.

(3.) Whether the genitive or the ablative of quality is preferable in particular cases, can frequently be determined only by reference to classical authority; but, in general, the genitive is used more frequently to express inherent qualities than such as are merely accidental, while the ablative is used indifferently for either purpose. In speaking of transitory qualities or conditions the ablative is always used; as, *Magno timóre sum*, I am in great fear. Cic. *Böno animo sum*. Id. *Quanto fuerim dölöre mëmisi*. Id. *Maximo hönöre Servius Tullius erat*. Liv. With plural substantives the genitive is rare; while in expressions of measure it is used rather than the ablative.

(4.) An accusative instead of a genitive of quality is used with *sëcus* (sex), *gënus* and *pondo*; as, *Libërorum capítum virile sëcus ad decem millia capta*, i. e. of the male sex, instead of *sexüs virilis*. Liv. So *gënus*, when joined with a pronoun, as *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*, or with *omne*, is used for *hujus*, *ejus*, *omnis*, etc., *gëneris*; as, *Oratïones aut aliquid id gënus scribere*,—of that kind. Cic. *Concedere nugas hoc gënus*. Hor. So *pondo* is joined as an indeclinable word to the accusatives *libram* and *libras*; as, *Dictätör cörönam auream libram pondo in Capítölío Jövi donum posuit*,...a pound in weight. Liv. Cf. § 236, R. 7.

(5.) The genitive *mödi* with an adjective pronoun supplies the place of a pronoun of quality; as, *cujusmödi libri*, the same as *quälës libri*, what kind of books; *hujusmödi libri*, i. e. *tales libri*, such books. So, also, *gëneris* is used, but less frequently.

(6.) With the genitive of measure are often connected such ablatives as *longitüdine*, *lätitüdine*, etc., or in *longitüdinem*, etc.; as, *fossa decem pëdum lätitüdine*; but the genitive does not depend on these words.

(7.) *Sum* may be followed by either the genitive or the ablative of quality with an ellipsis of the word limited, which, with the genitive, is *hómo*, *res*, *négötium*, *pröprium* or *pröprius*, etc., and with the ablative, *præditus*, *instructus*, *ornatus*, etc. Cf. Rem. 8, and §§ 244, and 249, I.

REM. 7. (1.) The limited noun is sometimes omitted; as, *O misëras sortis!* scil. *hómines*; O (men) of wretched fortune! Lucan. *Ad Diänæ*, scil. *adëm*. Ter. *Hectöris Andrömäche*, scil. *uzor*. Virg. *Suspiciönis vitandæ*, scil. *causæ*. Tac. So *filius* or *filia*; as, *Hannibal Gisgónis*.

(2.) The omitted noun may sometimes be supplied from the preceding words; as, *Cujus pëcus? an Mëlibei?* Non; *vërum Ægónis*, scil. *pëcus*. Virg. An adjective is often expressed referring to the noun omitted; as, *Nullam virtus diäm mercëdem desidërat, præter hanc* (scil. *mercëdem*) *laudis*. Cic.

REM. 8. The limited noun is often wanting in the predicate of a sentence after *sum*. This usually happens,

(1.) When it has been previously expressed; as,

*Hæc domus est Cæsäris*. This house is Cæsar's. *Nömen auræ tam sepe vocatum esse pütans Nymphæ*. Ovid. *Naves inërtiäs, quärum minor nulla erat duum millium amphörum*, i. e. *quärum minor nulla erat quam nävis duum*, etc. Cic.

(2.) When it is a general word denoting a person, an animal, etc.; as,

*Thucydides, quæ ejusdem ætatis fuit*, scil. *homo*, Thucydides, who was of the same age. Nep. *Mulum ei detrahit, quod diuina erat civitatis*, scil. *homo* or *civis*. Id. *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque*, scil. *adolescens*. Id. *Summi ut sint laboris efficiunt*, scil. *animalia*. Cæs. (*Claudius*) *somni brevissimi erat*. Suet. *Miræ sum diacritate*. Cic. *Vulgus ingenio mobili erat*. Sall. *Non est jaris sui*, He is not his own master. Lucan. *Polestatis sua esse*. Liv. *Suorumque rerum erant*. Id. Cf. Rem. 6, (7.)

(3.) When it is a general word denoting *thing*, for which, in English, the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic*, etc., are commonly supplied; as,

*Témérité est florētis ætatis, prudentia senectutis*, Rashness is (the characteristic) of youth, prudence of old age. Cic. *Est hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis*. Cæs. *So, stultitia est; est levitatis*, etc., which are equivalent to *stultitia est, levitatis est*. *Omnia hostium erant*. *A paucis tui, quod mulierum esset*. Sall.

(a.) This happens especially when the subject of the verb is an infinitive, or an entire clause, in which case, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, *mei, tui*, etc., the neutrals of the possessives, *meum, tuum*, etc., are used; as, *Adolescentis est majores natu revereeri*, It is (the duty) of a youth to reverence the aged. Ovid. *Cujusvis hominis est errare, nullus nisi insipientis in errore perseverare*. Cic. *Pauperis est numerare pecus*. Ovid. *So especially moris est; as, Negavit moris esse Græcorum, ut in convivio virorum accumbere mulieres*, the same as *morem esse Græcorum*. Cic. *Nihil tam aquande libertatis esse*. Liv. *So when the verb is omitted; Tamen officii duxit, exorare patrem*, scil. *esse*. Suet. *Non est mentiri meum*. Ter. *Tuum est, M. Cato, videre quid agatur*.

(b.) Instead of the genitive of a substantive, also, the neuter of a possessive adjective derived from it is sometimes used; as, *Humanum est errare*, To err is human. Ter. *Et facere et pati fortia Romanum est*. Liv.

(4.) The same construction sometimes occurs after *facio*, and some other verbs mentioned in § 230, *esse* being understood; as, *Asia Romanorum facta est*, Asia became (a possession) of the Romans. Just. *Agrum sua ditionis fecisse*. Liv.

(5.) The limited noun is sometimes wanting, when it is a general word, though not in the predicate after *sum*; as, *Magni formica laboris*, scil. *animal*. The ant (an animal) of great labor. Hor. *So Ei venit in mentem poolestatis tuæ*, scil. *memoria*, or the like. Cic.

NOTE. When the noun which is wanting denotes a *thing*, grammarians sometimes supply *negotium, officium, manus, opus, res, causa*, etc. It is an instance of a construction common in Latin, to omit a noun when a general idea is intended. See § 205, Rem. 7, (2.)

REM. 9. The limiting noun also is sometimes omitted; as,

*Tria millia*, scil. *passuum*. In most cases of this kind, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, is expressed in the genitive.

REM. 10. Two genitives sometimes limit the same noun, one of which is commonly subjective, and the other objective; as,

*Agamemnonis belli gloria*, Agamemnon's glory in war. Nep. *Illius administrationis provincia*. Cic. *Eorum diurnæ consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta*. Cæs. *Orbitas reipublicæ talium virorum*. Cic. *Pro veteribus Helveticorum injuriis populi Romani*. Cæs.

REM. 11. *Opus* and *usus* are rarely limited by a genitive or accusative, but generally by an ablative, of the thing needed; as,

*Argenti opus fuit*, There was need of money. Liv. *Ad consilium pendendum temporis opus esse*. Id. *Proemii non semper usus est*. Quint. *Si quo operum eorum usus est*. Liv. *Puero opus est cibum*. Plaut. *Usus est hominem astutem*. Id. See § 243.

REM. 12. The relation denoted by the genitive in Latin, is generally expressed, in English, by *of*, or by the possessive case. Cf. R. 2, (b.) The objective genitive may often be rendered by some other preposition; as,

*Rēmediū dōloris*, A remedy for pain. *Injūria patris*, Injury to a father. *Descensus Averni*, The descent to Avernus. *Ira belli*, Anger on account of the war. *Pōtestas rei*, Power in or over a thing.

NOTE. Certain limitations of nouns are made by the accusative with a preposition, and by the ablative, either with or without a preposition. Cf. § 202, 6, I. and II.

### GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVES.

§ 212. Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and adverbs, denoting a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole; as,

*Pars civitātis*, A part of the state. *Nulla sōrōrum*, No one of the sisters. *Aliquis philosophōrum*, Some one of the philosophers. *Quis mortāliū?* Who of mortals? *Māior iuvēnum*, The elder of the youths. *Doctissimū Rōmānōrum*, The most learned of the Romans. *Multum pecūniæ*, Much (of) money. *Satis eloquentiæ*, Enough of eloquence. *Ubīnam gentiū simus?* Where on earth are we?

NOTE. The genitive thus governed denotes either a *number*, of which the partitive designates one or more individuals; or a *whole*, of which the partitive designates a portion. In the latter sense, the genitive of common and abstract nouns commonly follows either the neuter of adjectives and adjective pronouns, or adverbs; and that of material nouns depends on substantives signifying quantity, weight or measure; as, *mēdimnum tritici*, a bushel of wheat; *libra farris*; *jāgērū agrī*; *magna vis auri*.

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting a part are *pars*, *nēmo*, *nihil*, etc., and also nouns denoting measure, weight, etc.; as, *mōdius*, *mēdimnum*, and *libra*; as,

*Nēmo nostrum*, No one of us. *Maxima pars hōmīnum*. *Nihil hūmānārū rērum*. Cic. *Dimidium militum*. Liv. *Mēdimnum tritici*. Cic.

REM. 2. Adjectives and adjective pronouns, denoting a part of a number, including partitives and words used partitively, comparatives, superlatives, and numerals, are followed by the genitive plural, or by the genitive singular of a collective noun.

(1.) Partitives (§104, 9.); as, *ullus, nullus, solus, alius, ūter, ūterque, ūtercumque, ūtervis, ūterlibet, neuter, alter, utrūter, aliquis, quidam, quispiam, quisque, quisque, quisquam, quicumque, unusquisque, quis? qui? quō? quōtus? quōtusquisque? isti, illi, quōdā, nonnulli, plerique, multi, pauci, mediū*. Thus, *Quisquis deōrum*, Whoever of the gods. Ovid. *Consulū alter*, One of the consuls. Liv. *Multi hōmīnum*, Many men. Plin. *Et mediū iuvēnum ibat*; i. e. between. Ovid. For the gender of adjectives used partitively, see § 205, R. 12.

(2.) Words used partitively; as, *Expeditū militum*, The light-armed (of the) soldiers. Liv. *Dēlecti equitum*. Id. *Vētrēs Rōmānōrum dūcum*. Vell. *Sūpēri deōrum*, The gods above. Hor. *Sancte deōrum*. Virg. *Dēgēnērēs cānum*. Plin. *Piscium fēminæ*. Id.

(3.) Comparatives and superlatives; as, *Doctior iuvēnum*. *Orātōrum prae-tantissimū*. *Eloquentissimū Rōmānōrum*. *Optimū omnium*.

(4.) Numerals, both cardinal and ordinal; also the distributive *singuli*; as, *Equitum centum quinquaginta interfecti*, A hundred and fifty of the horsemen were killed. Curt. *Sapientum octāvus*. Hor. *Singulos vestrum*. Curt.

(5.) The meaning is often nearly the same, whether the partitive adjective agrees in case and number with a noun, or takes such noun after it in the genitive; as, *Doctissimus Rōmānorum*, or, *doctissimus Rōmānus: Alter consūlum, or alter consul.* But the genitive cannot be used, when the adjective includes the same number of things as that of which the whole consists; as, *Veniāmus ad rivos, qui duo supersunt;* not *quorum duo*, since these are all, though we say in English, 'of whom two survive.'

NOTE 1. (a.) The comparative with the genitive denotes one of two individuals or classes; the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *Māior frātrum*, The elder of two brothers. *Maximus frātrum*, The eldest of three or more.

(b.) In like manner, *ūter, alter, and neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis, dñus, and nullus*, to a whole consisting of more than two; as, *Ūter nostrum?* Which of us (two)? *Quis vestrum?* Which of you (three or more)?

NOTE 2. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as partitive genitives, in preference to *nostrī* and *vestrī*, and are always joined with *omnium* even when the genitive is a subjective one; as, *Patria, quæ communis est omnium nostrum pārena.* Cic. But *vestrum* sometimes occurs in other connections also without a partitive meaning; as, *Quis erit tam cupidus vestrum.* Cic.

NOTE 3. The partitive word is sometimes omitted; as, *Fies nobilium tu quodque fontium*, scil. *ūnus.* Hor. *Centies sestertium*, scil. *centēna milia.*

NOTE 4. The noun denoting the whole, after a partitive word, is often put in the ablative, with the prepositions *de, e, ex,* or *in*, or in the accusative, with *apud* or *inter*; as, *Nemo de iis. Alter ex censoribus.* Liv. *Unus ex multis.* Cic. *Acerrimus ex sensibus.* Id. *Thales, qui sapientissimus in septem fuit.* Id. *Primus inter omnes.* Virg. *Cræsus inter rēges opulentissimus.* Sen. *Apud Helveticos nobilissimus.*

NOTE 5. The whole and its parts are frequently placed in apposition, distributively; as, *Interfectores, pars in forum, pars Syracusas pergit.* Liv. See § 204, R. 10.

NOTE 6. *Cuncti* and *omnes*, like partitives, are sometimes followed by a genitive plural; as, *Attalus Mæcedonum fere omnibus persuasit.* Attalus persuaded almost all the Macedonians. Liv. *Cunctos hominum.* Ovid. *Cunctas provinciarum.* Plin.

NOTE 7. In the following passage, the genitive singular seems to be used like that of a collective noun: *Totius autem injustitiæ nulla capitālior est.* etc. Cic. Off. 1, 13. The phrase *Rem nullo modo probabilem omnium* (Cic. Nat. Deor. 1, 27.), seems to be used for *Rem nullo omnium modorum probabilem.*

REM. 3. The genitive denoting a whole, may depend on a neuter adjective or adjective pronoun. With these the genitive singular is commonly used; as,

*Plus eloquentiæ.* More (of) eloquence. *Tantum fidei.* So much fidelity. *Id temporis.* That time. *Ad hoc ætatis.* Sometimes the genitive plural; as, *Id intersiderum.* Ter. *Armorum quantum.* Cæs.

NOTE 1. (a.) Most neuter adjectives used partitively denote quantity; as, *tantum, quantum, aliquantum, plus, minus, minimum, dimidium, multum, nimium, parvum, plurimum, reliquum;* with the compounds and diminutives, *tantulum, tantundem, quantulum, quantulumcumque,* etc.; to which add *medium, summum, ultimum, aliud,* etc. The pronouns thus used are *hoc, id, illud, istud, idem, quod, quid,* with their compounds, *aliquid, quidquid, quippiam, quidquam, quodcumque.*

(b.) Most of these adjectives and pronouns may either agree with their nouns, or take a genitive; but the latter is more common. *Tantum, quantum, aliquantum,* and *plus*, when they denote quantity, are used with a genitive only, as are also *quid* and its compounds, when they denote a part, sort, etc., and *quod* in the sense of *quantum*. Thus, *Quantum crevit Nilus, tantum spel in anum est.* Sen. *Quid mulieris uxorē habes?* What kind of a woman... Ter.

*Aliquid formæ.* Cic. *Quid hoc rei est?* What does this mean? Ter. *Quod auri, quod argenti, quod ornamentorum fuit, id Verres abstulit.*

NOTE 2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, when followed by a genitive, are to be accounted substantives, and in this construction are found only in the nominative and accusative.

NOTE 3. Sometimes the genitive after these adjectives and pronouns is a neuter adjective, of the second declension, without a noun; as, *Tantum boni*, So much good. *Si quid habes novi*, If you have any thing new. Cic. *Quid reliquit est?* Ter. *Nihil* is also used with such a genitive; as, *Nihil incerti*, No sincerity. Cic. This construction occurs very rarely with neuter adjectives in *ē* of the third declension, and only in connection with neuters of the second declension; as, *Si quidquam non dico civilis sed humani esset*. Liv.

NOTE 4. In the poets and in the prose writers later than Cicero, neuter adjectives in the plural number are sometimes followed by a genitive, either singular or plural, with a partitive signification; as, *Extrēma imperiī*, The frontiers of the empire. Tac. *Pontes et viarum angusta*, The bridges and the narrow parts of the roads. Id. *Opaca locorum*. Virg. *Antiqua fœderum*. Liv. *Cuncta camporum*. Tac. *Exercent colles, atque horum asperissima pascunt*. Virg. Cf. § 205, R. 9.

REM. 4. The adverbs *sāt*, *sātis*, *pārum*, *nīmīs*, *ābunde*, *largit̃er*, *affāt̃im*, and *partim*, used partitively, are often followed by a genitive; as,

*Sat ratiōnis*, Enough of reason. Virg. *Sātis eloquentiæ, pārum sapientiæ*, Enough of eloquence, (yet) but little wisdom. Sall. *Nīmīs insidiarum*. Cic. *Terroris et fraudis ābunde est*. Virg. *Auri et argenti largit̃er*. Plaut. *Copiarum affāt̃im*. Liv. *Quum partim illorum mihi familiārrissimi essent*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The above words, though generally adverbs, seem, in this use, rather to be nouns or adjectives.

NOTE 2. (a.) The genitives *gentium*, *terrārum*, *loci*, and *locorum*, with certain adverbs of place, strengthen their meaning; as, *Usquam terrārum*. Just. *Usquam gentium*. Any where whatever. Plaut. *Ubi terrārum sumus?* Where in the world are we? Cic. *Abire quo terrārum possent*. Liv. *Ubi sit loci*. Plin. *Eo loci*, equivalent to *eo loco*, In that place. Tac. *Eodem loci res est*. Cic. *Nesciro quo loci esset*. Id. But the last three examples might perhaps more properly be referred to Rem. 3.

(b.) The adverbs of place thus used are *ubi*, *ubīnam*, *ubique*, *ubique*, *ubique*, *ubique*, *unde*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *quo*, *quocumque*, *quovis*, *quodquo*, *aliquo*, *hic*, *huc*, *eo*, *eodem*. *Loci* also occurs after *ibi* and *ibidem*; *gentium* after *longe*; as, *Ibi loci*, In that place. Plin. *Abes longe gentium*. Cic. So, *minime gentium*, By no means. Ter. *Vicinia* in the genitive is used by the comic writers after *hic* and *huc*; as, *Hic proxima viciniā*. Plaut. *Huc viciniā*. Ter. Cf. § 221, R. 3, (4.)

NOTE 3. *Huc*, *eo*, *quo*, when used figuratively to express a degree, are joined also with other genitives; as, *Eo insolentiæ furorisque processit*, He advanced to such a degree of insolence and madness. Plin. *Huc enim malorum ventum est*. Curt. *Hucne rerum venimus?* Have we come to this? Pers. *Eo miseriarum cénire*, To such a pitch of misery. Sall. *Quo amentia progressi sitis*. Liv.

NOTE 4. The genitives *loci*, *locorum*, and *temporis*, appear to be redundant after the adverbs *adhuc*, *inde*, *interea*, *postea*, *tum*, and *tunc*, in expressions denoting time; as, *Adhuc locorum*, Till now. Plaut. *Inde loci*, After that. Lucr. *Interea loci*, In the mean time. Ter. *Postea loci*, Afterwards. Sall. *Tum temporis*, and *tunc temporis*, At that time. Just. *Locorum* also occurs after *id*, denoting time; as, *Ad id locorum*, Up to that time. Sall. Cf. R. 3.

NOTE 5. When the genitive *ejus* occurs after *quoad*, in such connections as the following: *Quoad ejus facere poteris*. Cic.; or passively, *Quoad ejus fieri possit*, As far as may be. Cic.; the *ejus* refers to the preceding clause; literally, as much of it as possible.



(b.) To choose, render, appoint, or constitute; as, *constituor, creor, declaror, designor, eligor, fio, reddor, renuncior*. Thus, *Dux a Rōmānis electus est Q. Fabius. Postquam ēphēbus factus est. Nep. Certior factus sum.*

(c.) To esteem or reckon; as, *censeor, cognoscor, crēdor, deprehendor, existimor, dācor, fēror, habēor, iudicor, mēmōror, nūmēror, pātor, repēror, videor*. Thus, *Crēdebār sanguinis auctor ēgo. Ovid. Mālim vidēri timidus quam pārum prudens. Cic.*

NOTE 1. With several passives of the last class, when followed by a predicate-nominative, etc., an infinitive of *sum* is expressed or understood; as, *Amens mihi fuisse videor*, I think I was beside myself. Cic. But the dative of the first person is sometimes omitted after *videor*; as, *Sātis dōcuisse videor*. Id.—*Attilius prudens esse putābātur*. Id. So with *dācor* (to be said), and *perhibeor*; as, *Vērus patriæ dicēris esse pāter*. Mart. *Hoc ne locūtus sine mercede existimer*. Phæd.

NOTE 2. *Audīo* is sometimes used by the poets like *appellor*; as, *Tu rexque pāterque audisti cōram*. Hor.

REM. 4. A predicate-nominative is used after many other verbs to denote a purpose, time, or circumstance of the action; as, *Cōmes additus Eōlides*, Eolides was added as a companion. Virg. *Lūpus obambulat nocturnus*. Id. *Appāret liquido sublimis in cethere Nisus*. Id. So with an active verb; *Audiri hoc puer*. Cic. *Sipiens nil j'acit invitus*. Id. *Rempubicam defendi* adolescens. Id. Cf. § 204, R. 1.

NOTE 3. Instead of the predicate-nominative, a dative of the end or purpose sometimes occurs (see § 227); sometimes an ablative with *pro*; as, *audācia pro mūro est*; and sometimes the ablatives *lōco* or *in nūmēro* with a genitive; as, *ille est mihi pārentis lōco*; *in hostium nūmēro habētur*.

REM. 5. The noun *opus*, signifying 'need,' is often used as a predicate after *sum*. It is, in such cases, translated by the adjectives *needful, necessary, etc.*; as, *Dux nobis et auctor opus est*. Cic. *Multi opus sunt boves*. Varr. (*Dixit*) *aurum et ancillas opus esse*. Ter. *Usus* also is occasionally so construed.

REM. 6. When the pronoun, which is the subject of an infinitive, is omitted, the case of the predicate is sometimes, in the poets, attracted into that of the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends; as, *Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis*, i. e. *te esse uxorem*. Hor. *Rētūlit Ajax esse Jovis prōnēpos*. Ovid.

## GENITIVE.

### GENITIVE AFTER NOUNS.

§ 211. A noun which limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive; as,

*Amor glōriæ*, Love of glory; *Arma Achillis*, The arms of Achilles; *Pāter patriæ*, The father of the country; *Vitium iræ*, The vice of anger; *Nēmōror cūstos*, The guardian of the groves; *Amor habendī*, Love of possessing.

NOTE 1. In the first example, *amor* denotes love in general; *glōriæ* limits the affection to the particular object, glory. Such universally is the effect of the genitive, depending upon a noun. Hence the limitation of a noun by a genitive resembles that which is effected by an adjective. In each the noun limited constitutes with its limitation only a single idea.

REMARK 1. The genitive denotes various relations, the most common of which are those of *Source*; as, *Rādii solis*, The rays of the sun;—*Cause*; as, *Dolor podagræ*, The pain of the gout;—*Effect*; as, *Artifex mundi*, The Creator of the world;—*Connection*: as, *Pāter consilis*, The father of the consul;—*Possession*; as, *Dōmus Cæsaris*, The house of Cæsar;—*Object*; as, *Cōgitatio dūcūjus rei*, A thought of something;—*Purpose*; as, *Apprātus triumphī*, Preparation for a triumph;—A whole; as, *Pars hōmīnum*, A part

of men; this is called the *partitive* genitive;—*Character* or *Quality*; as, *Adolescens summæ audaciæ*, A youth of the greatest boldness;—*Material* or *Component Parts*; as, *Montes auri*, Mountains of gold; *Acerus scutidrum*, A heap of shields;—*Time*; as, *Frumentum dierum decem*, Corn for ten days. Sall.

REM. 2. The genitive is called *subjective* or *active*, when it denotes either that *to which a thing belongs*, or the *subject* of the action, feeling, etc., implied in the noun which it limits. It is called *objective* or *passive*, when it denotes the *object* affected by such action, or towards which such feeling is directed; as,

*Subjective.*

*Facta virorum*, Deeds of men.  
*Dolor animi*, Grief of mind.  
*Iunonis ira*, The anger of Juno.

*Objective.*

*Odium vitii*, Hatred of vice.  
*Amor virtutis*, Love of virtue.  
*Desiderium otii*, Desire of leisure.

(a.) Whether a genitive is subjective or objective, is to be determined by the meaning of the words, and by their connection. Thus, *providentia Dei* signifies God's providence, or that exercised by him; *amor Dei*, the fear of God, or that exercised towards him. The same or similar words, in different connections, may express both significations. Thus, *metus hostium*, fear of the enemy, may mean, either the fear felt by the enemy, or that felt by their opponents. So *vulnus Ulixis* (Virg. *Æn.* 2, 436.) denotes the wound which Ulysses had given; *vulnus Enææ*, (Id. *Æn.* 12, 323.) that which Æneas had received.

(b.) The relation expressed by the English *possessive case* is subjective, while that denoted by *of* with its case is either subjective or objective.

(c.) The objective genitive is of very extensive use in Latin in the limitation of verbal nouns and adjectives, whatever may be the construction of the verbs from which such nouns and adjectives are derived, whether they take an accusative or some other case or even a preposition.

(d.) When ambiguity would arise from the use of the objective genitive, a preposition with an accusative or ablative is commonly used; as, *Amor in rempublicam*, for *reipublicæ*, Love to the state. Cic. *Odium erga Romanos*, for *Rōmānorum*. Nep. *Cura de salute patriæ*, for *salutis*. Cic. *Prædator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*. Sall. Sometimes both constructions are combined; as, *Rerentia adversus homines et optimi cuiusque et reliquorum*. Cic. Off. 1, 28.

NOTE. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition, especially with *vox*, *nomen*, *verbum*, etc.; as, *vox voluptatis*, the word pleasure; *nomen amicitiae*, the word *amicitia*; *dōmini appellatio*. This is usual when the genus is defined by the species; as, *arbor fici*, a fig-tree; *flos violæ*, a violet; *virtus continentiae*, the virtue of abstinence; and in geographical names; as, *oppidum Antiöchiæ*. Cf. § 204, R. 6.—Cicero frequently uses a genitive in this manner with *genus* and *causa*; as, *Unum genus est eorum, qui*, etc. *Dua sunt causæ, una pudoris, altera sceleris*.—So, also, the genitive of gerunds; as, *Triste est nomen ipsum cærendi*, The very word to want is sad. Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) A substantive pronoun in the genitive, limiting the meaning of a noun, is commonly objective; as,

*Cura mei*, Care for me. Ovid. *Pars tui*, Part of thee. Id. *Vestri curam agite*. Curt. This genitive is used especially with verbal substantives in *or*, *iz* and *io*; as, *Accusator mei*. Cic. *Nimia astimatio sui*. Id. *Rationem et sui et aliorum habere*. Id.

(b.) Instead of the *subjective* or *possessive* genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding adjective pronoun is commonly used; as,

*Liber meus*, not *liber mei*, my book. *Cura mea*, My care, i. e. the care exercised by me. Cic. *Tuas literas exspecto*. Id. Yet the subjective genitive of a substantive pronoun sometimes occurs; as, *Tui animi studio*, By the zeal of yourself alone. Cic.

(c.) And not unfrequently, also, an adjective pronoun occurs instead of the objective genitive; as, *Mea injuria*, Injury to me. Sall. So, *Invidia tua*, Envy of thee. *Fiducia tua*, Confidence in thee. Plant. *Spes mea*, The hope placed in me. With *causâ* the adjective pronoun, and never the genitive, is used; as, *Meâ causâ*, For my sake. Plant.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead, also, of the subjective genitive of a noun, a possessive adjective is often used; as, *Causa régia*, for *causa régis*. Cic. *Hérilis filius*, for *héri filius*. Id. *Evandrius ensis*, for *Evandri*. Virg. *Herculeus labor*, for *Herculis*. Hor. *Civilis furor*, for *civium*. Hor. So, also, for the objective genitive, *Méus hostilis*, Fear of the enemy. Sall.

(b.) The genitive of the person implied in the adjective pronoun or possessive adjective, or an adjective agreeing with such genitive, is sometimes added as an apposition; as, *Vestrâ ipsórum causâ hoc fêci*. In the poets and later prose writers a participle also is found agreeing with such implied genitive; as, *Mea scripta vulgo recitare timentis*. Hor. Cf. § 204, R. 4, and § 205, R. 13.

REM. 5. In the predicate after *sum*, and sometimes after other verbs, the dative is used like the objective genitive; as,

*Idem amor exitium pécóri (est), pécóriæque mägistro*. Virg. *Vitis ut arboribus decóri est, ut vitibus úvæ*—*Tu decus omne tuis*. Virg. In this passage the dative *decóri* and the nominative *decus* are used with no difference of meaning. Cf. § 227, R. 4. *Auctor fui senátui*. Cic. *Muræna légatus Lúculo fuit*. Id. *Erit ille mihi semper deus*. Virg. *Huic causæ patrónus exstiti*. Cic. *Huic ego me bello ducem prófiteor*. Id. *Se tertium (esse) cui fátum fóret urbis pórtiri*. Id.—*Cum P. Africáno senátus egit, ut légatus frátri prófiscerétur*. Id. *Cæsar légumenta gálcis milites ex viminibus facere jubet*. Cæs. *Trinóbantibus Cæsar impérat—frumentum exercitui*. Id. *Quod neque instidæ consúli procédébant*. Sall. *Quem exitum tantis mális spérarent?* Id. *Sanctus vir et ex sententia ambobus*, scil. *qui fuit*. Id. See § 227, R. 4.

NOTE. The dative in the preceding examples has been thought by some grammarians to depend on the nouns connected with it; as, *exitium, decus, auctor, légatus, deus, patrónus*, etc.; by others it has been held to depend on these nouns in connection with the verbs, and not upon either separately; but the better opinion seems to be that, which makes such datives grammatically dependent upon the verbs only, though logically connected also with the nouns.

(1.) Instead, also, of the possessive genitive, a dative of the person may follow a verb, when its act has relation to the body or possessions of such person; as,

*Sese omnes flentes Cæsári ad pèdes prójécerunt*, They all, weeping, cast themselves at the feet of Cæsar. Cæs. *Cui corpus porrigitur*, For whom the body, i. e. whose body, is extended. Virg. *Tum vèro exarsit jùveni dólór ossibus ingens*. Id. *Transfigitur scátum Pulfóni*. Cæs.

REM. 6. When the limiting noun denotes a *property, character, or quality*, it has an adjective agreeing with it, and is put either in the genitive or the ablative; as,

*Vir exempli recti*, A man of correct example. Liv. *Adólescens summis audácia*, A youth of the greatest boldness. Sall. *Fossa pèdum viginti*, A ditch of twenty feet, (i. e. in width). Cæs. *Hannícar sècum duxit filium Hannibálem annórum novem*. Nep. *Athénienses déligunt Périclem*, spectátæ virtútis vírum. Just. *Quinquaginta annórum impérium*. Id. *Iter unius diéi*. Cic. *Pulchritúdine eximíâ fémína*, A woman of exquisite beauty. Cic. *Maximo nátu filius*, The eldest son. Nep. *L. Cúttina fuit magnâ ví et ánimo et corpóris, sed ingénio málo právóque*. Sall. *Spélunca inímitâ altitúdine*. Cic.—Sometimes both constructions occur in the same proposition; as, *Lentíulum nostrum, eximíâ spe, summe virtútis adólescentem*. Cic.

(1.) A genitive sometimes supplies the place of the adjective; and the noun denoting the property, etc., is then always put in the ablative; as, *Est bos cervi figurâ*,...of the form of a stag. Cæs. *Uri spëcie et cölöre tauri*. Id. *Frâtez palmi altitudîne*. Plin. *Clâvi digiti pollicis crassitudîne*. Cæs.

(2.) All the qualities and attributes of persons and things, whether inherent or accidental, may be thus expressed by the genitive and ablative of quality, provided the substantives are immediately connected; as, *fossa quindëcim pëdum*; *homo antiquâ virtûte*. It hence follows that such genitives and ablatives, when used to express duration of time or extent of space, are distinguished from the cases in which the accusative is required, since the latter case always follows adjectives or verbs; as, *fossa quindëcim pëdes lâta*: *puer dëcem annos natus*. Cf. § 238.

(3.) Whether the genitive or the ablative of quality is preferable in particular cases, can frequently be determined only by reference to classical authority; but, in general, the genitive is used more frequently to express inherent qualities than such as are merely accidental, while the ablative is used indifferently for either purpose. In speaking of transitory qualities or conditions the ablative is always used; as, *Magno timóre sum*, I am in great fear. Cic. *Bônô animo sum*. Id. *Quanto fuërim dölöre mêmîniati*. Id. *Maximo honóre Servius Tullius erat*. Liv. With plural substantives the genitive is rare; while in expressions of measure it is used rather than the ablative.

(4.) An accusative instead of a genitive of quality is used with *sëcus* (sex), *gënus* and *pondo*; as, *Libërorum cäpîtum virile sëcus ad dëcem milia capta*, i. e. of the male sex, instead of *sexus virilis*. Liv. So *gënus*, when joined with a pronoun, as *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*, or with *omne*, is used for *hujus*, *ëjus*, *omnis*, etc., *gëneris*; as, *Orâtiones aut aliquid id gënus scribere*,—of that kind. Cic. *Concedere nugas hoc gënus*. Hor. So *pondo* is joined as an indeclinable word to the accusatives *libram* and *libras*; as, *Dictator crônam auream libram pondo in Cäpitôlio Jovi donum posuit*,...a pound in weight. Liv. Cf. § 238, R. 7.

(5.) The genitive *môdi* with an adjective pronoun supplies the place of a pronoun of quality; as, *cujusmôdi libri*, the same as *quales libri*, what kind of books; *hujusmôdi libri*, i. e. *tales libri*, such books. So, also, *gëneris* is used, but less frequently.

(6.) With the genitive of measure are often connected such ablatives as *longitudîne*, *lätitudîne*, etc., or *in longitudînem*, etc.; as, *fossa dëcem pëdum lätitudîne*; but the genitive does not depend on these words.

(7.) *Sum* may be followed by either the genitive or the ablative of quality with an ellipsis of the word limited, which, with the genitive, is *homo*, *res*, *negotium*, *prôprium* or *prôprius*, etc., and with the ablative, *prædictus*, *instructus*, *ornatus*, etc. Cf. Rem. 8, and §§ 244, and 249, l.

REM. 7. (1.) The limited noun is sometimes omitted; as, *O misëra sortis!* scil. *hômînes*; *O* (men) of wretched fortune! Lucan. *Ad Diânæ*, scil. *cedem*. Ter. *Hecôrüs Andrômache*, scil. *uxor*. Virg. *Suspiciônis citandæ*, scil. *causâ*. Tac. So *filius* or *filia*; as, *Hannibal Gisgônis*.

(2.) The omitted noun may sometimes be supplied from the preceding words; as, *Cujum pëcus? an Mëlibæi?* *Non*; *verum Egônis*, scil. *pëcus*. Virg. An adjective is often expressed referring to the noun omitted; as, *Nullam virtus âham mercëdem dësidërat, præter hanc* (scil. *mercëdem*) *ludis*. Cic.

REM. 8. The limited noun is often wanting in the predicate of a sentence after *sum*. This usually happens,

(1.) When it has been previously expressed; as,

*Hæc domus est Cæsâris*, This house is Cæsar's. *Nômen auræ tam sæpe vocatum esse pîtanis Nymphæ*. Ovid. *Naves onërrârias, quârûm minor nulla erat duum millium amphôrum*, i. e. *quârûm minor nulla erat quam nâvis duum*, etc. Cic.

(2.) When it is a general word denoting a person, an animal, etc.; as,

*Thucydides, qui ejusdem ætatis fuit*, scil. *homo*, Thucydides, who was of the same age. Nep. *Mulum ei detraxit, quod diuena erat civilitas*, scil. *homo* or *civis*. Id. *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque*, scil. *adolescens*. Id. *Summi ut sint laboris efficiunt*, scil. *animadverbia*. Cæs. (*Claudius*) *somni brevissimi erat*. Suet. *Mirā sum alacritate*. Cic. *Vulgus ingenio mobili erat*. Sall. *Non est juris sui*, He is not his own master. Lucan. *Potestatis suæ esse*. Liv. *Suorumque rerum erant*. Id. Cf. Rem. 6, (7.)

(3.) When it is a general word denoting *thing*, for which, in English, the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic*, etc., are commonly supplied; as,

*Témertatis est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis*, Rashness is (the characteristic) of youth, prudence of old age. Cic. *Est hoc Gallica consuetudinis*. Cæs. *So, stultitia est; est levitatis*, etc., which are equivalent to *stultitia est, levitas est*. *Omnia hostium erant*. *A paucis emi, quod multorum esset*. Sall.

(a.) This happens especially when the subject of the verb is an infinitive, or an entire clause, in which case, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, *mei, tui*, etc., the neuters of the possessives, *meum, tuum*, etc., are used; as, *Adolescentis est majores natu revereri*, It is (the duty) of a youth to reverence the aged. Ovid. *Cujusvis hominis est errare, nullius nisi insipientis in errore perseverare*. Cic. *Pauperis est numerare pecus*. Ovid. *So especially moris est; as, Negavit moris esse Græcorum, ut in convivio virorum accumbèrent mulieres*, the same as *morem esse Græcorum*. Cic. *Nihil tam æquandis libertatis esse*. Liv. *So when the verb is omitted; Tamen officii duxit, exorare patrem, scil. esse*. Suet. *Non est mentiri meum*. Ter. *Tuum est, M. Cato, videre quid agatur*.

(b.) Instead of the genitive of a substantive, also, the neuter of a possessive adjective derived from it is sometimes used; as, *Humanum est errare*, To err is human. Ter. *Et facere et pati fortia Romanum est*. Liv.

(4.) The same construction sometimes occurs after *facio*, and some other verbs mentioned in § 230, *esse* being understood; as, *Asia Romanorum facta est*, Asia became (a possession) of the Romans. Just. *Agrum suæ ditionis fecisse*. Liv.

(5.) The limited noun is sometimes wanting, when it is a general word, though not in the predicate after *sum*; as, *Magni formica laboris*, scil. *animal*, The ant (an animal) of great labor. Hor. *So Et venit in mentem potestatis tuæ*, scil. *memoria*, or the like. Cic.

NOTE. When the noun which is wanting denotes a *thing*, grammarians sometimes supply *negotium, officium, manus, opus, res, causa*, etc. It is an instance of a construction common in Latin, to omit a noun when a general idea is intended. See § 206, Rem. 7, (2.)

REM. 9. The *limiting* noun also is sometimes omitted; as,

*Tria millia*, scil. *passuum*. In most cases of this kind, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, is expressed in the genitive.

REM. 10. Two genitives sometimes limit the same noun, one of which is commonly subjective, and the other objective; as,

*Agamemnonis belli gloria*, Agamemnon's glory in war. Nep. *Illius administrationis provincia*. Cic. *Ebrum diem consuetudine itineris nostri exercitibus perspecta*. Cæs. *Orbitas reipublicæ talium virorum*. Cic. *Pro veteribus Helvetiorum injuriis populi Romani*. Cæs.

REM. 11. *Opus* and *usus* are rarely limited by a genitive or accusative, but generally by an ablative, of the thing needed; as,

*Argenti opus fuit*, There was need of money. Liv. *Ad consilium pensandum temporis opus esse*. Id. *Procerum non semper usus est*. Quint. *Si quo operis eorum usus est*. Liv. *Puero opus est cibum*. Plaut. *Uus est hominem astutem*. Id. See § 243.

REM. 12. The relation denoted by the genitive in Latin, is generally expressed, in English, by *of*, or by the possessive case. Cf. R. 2, (b.) The objective genitive may often be rendered by some other preposition; as,

*Rēmedium dōloris*, A remedy for pain. *Injūria patris*, Injury to a father. *Descensus Averni*, The descent to Avernus. *Ira belli*, Anger on account of the war. *Pōtestas rei*, Power in or over a thing.

NOTE. Certain limitations of nouns are made by the accusative with a preposition, and by the ablative, either with or without a preposition. Cf. § 202, 6, I. and II.

### GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVES.

§ 212. Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and adverbs, denoting a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole; as,

*Pars civitātis*, A part of the state. *Nulla sōrōrum*, No one of the sisters. *Aliquis philosophōrum*, Some one of the philosophers. *Quis mortālium?* Who of mortals? *Māior jūvēmum*, The elder of the youths. *Doctissimus Rōmānōrum*, The most learned of the Romans. *Multum pecūniæ*, Much (of) money. *Sitis eloquentiæ*, Enough of eloquence. *Ubinam gentium simus?* Where on earth are we?

NOTE. The genitive thus governed denotes either a *number*, of which the partitive designates one or more individuals; or a *whole*, of which the partitive designates a portion. In the latter sense, the genitive of common and abstract nouns commonly follows either the neuter of adjectives and adjective pronouns, or adverbs; and that of material nouns depends on substantives signifying quantity, weight or measure; as, *mēdīmnum tritici*, a bushel of wheat; *libra farris*; *jūgērūm agrī*; *magna vis auri*.

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting a part are *pars*, *nēmo*, *nihil*, etc., and also nouns denoting measure, weight, etc.; as, *mōdius*, *mēdīmnum*, and *libra*; as,

*Nēmo nostrum*, No one of us. *Māxima pars hōmīnum*. *Nihil hūmānārūm rērum*. Cic. *Dimīdium militūm*. Liv. *Mēdīmnum tritici*. Cic.

REM. 2. Adjectives and adjective pronouns, denoting a part of a number, including partitives and words used partitively, comparatives, superlatives, and numerals, are followed by the genitive plural, or by the genitive singular of a collective noun.

(1.) Partitives (§104, 9); as, *ullus*, *nullus*, *sōlus*, *alius*, *ūter*, *ūterque*, *ūtercumque*, *ūtervis*, *ūterlibet*, *neuter*, *alter*, *altérūter*, *aliquis*, *quidam*, *quispiam*, *quisque*, *quisque*, *quisquam*, *quicumque*, *unusquisque*, *quis*? *qui*? *quōt*? *quōtus*? *quōtusquisque*? *is*, *aliquot*, *nonnulli*, *plērique*, *multi*, *pauca*, *mēdius*. Thus, *Quisquis deōrum*, Whoever of the gods. Ovid. *Consūlūm alter*, One of the consuls. Liv. *Multi hōmīnum*, Many men. Plin. *Et mēdius jūvēmum ibat*; i. e. between. Ovid. For the gender of adjectives used partitively, see § 205, R. 12.

(2.) Words used partitively; as, *Expēditī militūm*, The light-armed (of the) soldiers. Liv. *Dēlecti ēgittum*. Id. *Vētēres Rōmānōrum dūcum*. Vell. *Sūpēri deōrum*, The gods above. Hor. *Sancte deōrum*. Virg. *Dēgēnēres cānum*. Plin. *Piscium fēminæ*. Id.

(3.) Comparatives and superlatives; as, *Doctior jūvēmum*. *Orātōrum præsantissimū*. *Eloqūentissimū Rōmānōrum*. *Optimū omnium*.

(4.) Numerals, both cardinal and ordinal; also the distributive *singūli*; as, *Equitū centum quinquāginta interfecti*, A hundred and fifty of the horsemen were killed. Curt. *Sāpientū octāvus*. Hor. *Singūlos vestrū*. Curt.

(5.) The meaning is often nearly the same, whether the partitive adjective agrees in case and number with a noun, or takes such noun after it in the genitive; as, *Doctissimus Rōmānūrum*, or, *doctissimus Rōmānus: Alter consūlum, or alter consul.* But the genitive cannot be used, when the adjective includes the same number of things as that of which the whole consists; as, *Veniāmus ad rēros, qui duo supersunt; not quōrum duo*, since these are all, though we say in English, 'of whom two survive.'

NOTE 1. (a.) The comparative with the genitive denotes one of *two* individuals or classes; the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *Māior frātrūm*, The elder of two brothers. *Maximū frātrūm*, The eldest of three or more.

(b.) In like manner, *ūter, alter, and neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis, alius*, and *nullus*, to a whole consisting of more than two; as, *Uter nostrūm?* Which of us (two)? *Quis vestrūm?* Which of you (three or more)?

NOTE 2. *Nostrūm* and *vestrūm* are used as partitive genitives, in preference to *nostrī* and *vestrī*, and are always joined with *omnium* even when the genitive is a subjective one; as, *Patria, quæ communis est omnium nostrūm pātrna*. Cic. But *vestrūm* sometimes occurs in other connections also without a partitive meaning; as, *Quis erit tam cupidus vestrūm*. Cic.

NOTE 3. The partitive word is sometimes omitted; as, *Fies nobilium tu quōque fontium*, scil. *unus*. Hor. *Centies sestertium*, scil. *centēna milia*.

NOTE 4. The noun denoting the whole, after a partitive word, is often put in the ablative, with the prepositions *de, e, ex, or in*, or in the accusative, with *apud or inter*; as, *Nemo de iis. Alter ex censōribus*. Liv. *Unus ex multis*. Cic. *Acerrimus ex sensibus*. Id. *Thales, qui sapientissimus in septem fuit*. Id. *Primus inter omnes*. Virg. *Cræsus inter rēges opulentissimus*. Sen. *Apud Helvētios nobilissimus*.

NOTE 5. The whole and its parts are frequently placed in apposition, distributively; as, *Interfectōres, pars in fōrum, pars Syracūsas pergunt*. Liv. See § 204, R. 10.

NOTE 6. *Cuncti* and *omnes*, like partitives, are sometimes followed by a genitive plural; as, *Attalus Mācedōnūm fere omnibus persuāsit*, Attalus persuaded almost all the Macedonians. Liv. *Cunctos hōminūm*. Ovid. *Cunctas provinciārum*. Plin.

NOTE 7. In the following passage, the genitive singular seems to be used like that of a collective noun: *Tōtius autem injustitiæ nulla capitālior est*, etc. Cic. Off. 1, 13. The phrase *Rem nullo mōdo probābilem omnium* (Cic. Nat. Deor. 1, 27,) seems to be used for *Rem nullo omnium mōdōrum probābilem*.

REM. 3. The genitive denoting a whole, may depend on a neuter adjective or adjective pronoun. With these the genitive singular is commonly used; as,

*Plus eloquentiæ*, More (of) eloquence. *Tantum fidei*, So much fidelity. *Id temporis*, That time. *Ad hoc ælatis*. Sometimes the genitive plural; as, *Id miseriārum*. Ter. *Armōrum quantum*. Cæs.

NOTE 1. (a.) Most neuter adjectives used partitively denote quantity; as, *tantum, quantum, aliquantum, plūs, minus, minūm, dimidiūm, multum, nimum, paulum, plurimum, reliquum*; with the compounds and diminutives, *tantūlūm, tantundem, quantūlūm, quantūlūmcumque*, etc.; to which add *mediūm, summum, ultimum, aliud*, etc. The pronouns thus used are *hoc, id, illud, istud, idem, quod, and quid*, with their compounds, *aliquid, quiddid, quippiam, quidquam, quodcumque*.

(b.) Most of these adjectives and pronouns may either agree with their nouns, or take a genitive; but the latter is more common. *Tantum, quantum, aliquantum*, and *plūs*, when they denote quantity, are used with a genitive only, as are also *quid* and its compounds, when they denote a part, sort, etc., and *quid* in the sense of *quantum*. Thus, *Quantum crēvit Nilus, tantum spei in annum est*. Sen. *Quid mulieris uxorē habēs?* What kind of a woman... Ter.

*Aliquid formæ.* Cic. *Quid hoc rei est?* What does this mean? Ter. *Quod auri, quod argenti, quod ornamentorum fuit, id Verres abstulit.*

NOTE 2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, when followed by a genitive, are to be accounted substantives, and in this construction are found only in the nominative and accusative.

NOTE 3. Sometimes the genitive after these adjectives and pronouns is a neuter adjective, of the second declension, without a noun; as, *Tantum boni*, So much good. *Si quid habes novi*, If you have anything new. Cic. *Quid reliqui est?* Ter. *Nihil* is also used with such a genitive; as, *Nihil sinceri*, No sincerity. Cic. This construction occurs very rarely with neuter adjectives in the third declension, and only in connection with neuters of the second declension; as, *Si quidquam non dico civilis sed humani esset*. Liv.

NOTE 4. In the poets and in the prose writers later than Cicero, neuter adjectives in the plural number are sometimes followed by a genitive, either singular or plural, with a partitive signification; as, *Extréma imperii*, The frontiers of the empire. Tac. *Pontes et viarum angusta*, The bridges and the narrow parts of the roads. Id. *Opaca locorum*. Virg. *Antiqua fœderum*. Liv. *Cuncta camporum*. Tac. *Exercent colles, atque horum asperitima pascunt*. Virg. Cf. § 205, R. 9.

REM. 4. The adverbs *sât*, *sâtis*, *pâr*, *nîmis*, *âbunde*, *largitèr*, *affâtim*, and *partim*, used partitively, are often followed by a genitive; as,

*Sat ratiônis*, Enough of reason. Virg. *Sâtis eloquentiæ, pâr*, *sâpientiæ*, Enough of eloquence, (yet) but little wisdom. Sall. *Nîmis insidiarum*. Cic. *Terroris et fraudis âbunde est*. Virg. *Auri et argenti largitèr*. Plaut. *Côpiâr*, *affâtim*. Liv. *Quum partim illorum mihi familiârisimi essent*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The above words, though generally adverbs, seem, in this use, rather to be nouns or adjectives.

NOTE 2. (a.) The genitives *gentium*, *terrâr*, *loci*, and *locorum*, with certain adverbs of place, strengthen their meaning; as, *Uaquam terrâr*. Just. *Uaquam gentium*, Any where whatever. Plaut. *Ubi terrâr sanus?* Where in the world are we? Cic. *Abire quo terrâr possent*. Liv. *Ubi sit loci*. Plin. *Eo loci*, equivalent to *eo loco*, In that place. Tac. *Eodem loci res est*. Cic. *Nescire quo loci esset*. Id. But the last three examples might perhaps more properly be referred to Rem. 3.

(b.) The adverbs of place thus used are *ubi*, *ubnam*, *ubicumque*, *ubiubi*, *ubtris*, *ubique*, *unde*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *quo*, *quocumque*, *quoriz*, *quôquo*, *âlquo*, *hic*, *huc*, *eo*, *eodem*. *Loci* also occurs after *ibi* and *ibidem*; *gentium* after *longe*; as, *Ibi loci*, In that place. Plin. *Abes longe gentium*. Cic. So, *intime gentium*, By no means. Ter. *Vicinia* in the genitive is used by the comic writers after *hic* and *huc*; as, *Illic proxima viciniæ*. Plaut. *Huc viciniæ*. Ter. Cf. § 221, R. 3, (4.)

NOTE 3. *Huc*, *eo*, *quo*, when used figuratively to express a degree, are joined also with other genitives; as, *Eo insolentiæ furorisque processit*, He advanced to such a degree of insolence and madness. Plin. *Huc enim malorum ventum est*. Curt. *Hucne rerum venimus?* Pers. *Quo amens aggressi sitis*. Liv.

NOTE 4. The genitives *loci*, *locorum* after the adverbs *adhuc*, *interdum*, *interea*, *loci*, In the mean time, and *tunc temporis*, denoting time; as, *Ad*

NOTE 5. When the following: *Quoad*, *possit*, As far as may be; as much of it as possible.

be redundant expressions denoting that. Lucr. Il. *Tum tempus* after *id*,

connections as *id ejus fieri*; literally,



NOTE 6. *Prædie* and *postdie*, though reckoned adverbs, are followed by a genitive, depending on the noun *dies* contained in them; as, *Prædie ejus diæ*, lit. On the day before that day, i. e. The day before. Cic. *Prædie insidiarum*, The day before the ambush. Tac. *Postdie ejus diæ*, The next day. Cæs. When they are followed by an accusative, *ante* or *post* is understood. Cf. § 238, 1, (6.)

NOTE 7. Adverbs in the superlative degree, like their adjectives, are followed by a genitive; as, *Optime omnium*, Best of all. Cic.

### GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 213. A noun, limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the objective genitive, to denote the relation expressed in English by *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*; as,

|                                            |                                            |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>Avidus laudis</i> , Desirous of praise. | <i>Plena timoris</i> , Full of fear.       |
| <i>Appetens gloriæ</i> , Eager for glory.  | <i>Egênus aquæ</i> , Destitute of water.   |
| <i>Mémor virtutis</i> , Mindful of virtue. | <i>Doctus fandi</i> , Skilful in speaking. |

So, *Nescia mens fâti*, The mind ignorant in regard to fate. Virg. *Impôtens iræ*, lit. Powerless in respect to anger, i. e. unable to control it. Liv. *Hómínes expertes veritâtis*, Men destitute of truth. Cic. *Lactis abundans*, Abounding in milk. Virg. *Terra fêrax arborum*, Land productive of trees. Plin. *Ténax propósti vir*, A man tenacious of his purpose. Hor. *Æger ânimi*, Sick in mind. Liv. *Locus médius jûguli summique læcerti*, i. e. between. Ovid. *Mórum diversus*. Tac. *Opêrum solutus*. Hor. *Liber labôrum*. Id. *Intêger vitæ scêlerisq; purus*, Upright in life, and free from wickedness. Hor. *Vini pollens Liber*. Plant.

From the above examples, it will be seen that the genitive after an adjective is sometimes translated by other words besides *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, though the relation which it denotes remains the same. Cf. 211, R. 12.

REMARK 1. The following classes of adjectives, which, as denoting a relation to a thing, are called *relative adjectives* (§ 104, 13), are frequently limited by a genitive; viz. (1.) *Verbals* in *az*; as, *côpaz*, *édaz*, *fêrax*, *fûgaz*, *pervôcax*, *lénax*, etc.—(2.) *Participials* in *ns*, and a few in *tus*, with their compounds; as, *âmans*, *appêtens*, *cûpiens*, *efficiens*, *pâtians*, *impâtians*, *sitiens*;—*consultus*, *doctus*, *sólutus*.—(3.) Adjectives denoting *desire* or *aversion*; as, *âcrus*, *âvidus*, *cûpidus*, *stûdiôsus*;—*participiation*; as, *particeps*, *affinis*, *consors*, *exors*, *expers*, *inops*;—*knowledge*, *experience*, *capacity*, and their contraries; as, *callidus*, *compos*, *consciûs*, *gnârus*, *ignârus*, *pêritus*, *impêritus*, *impos*, *pôtens*, *impôtens*, *prûdens*, *imprûdens*, *expertus*, *inexpertus*, *consciûs*, *insciûs*, *nesciûs*, *insólens*, *insólitus*, *insuêtus*, *rûdis*, *sollers*;—*memory* and *forgetfulness*; as, *mémor*, *immémor*, etc.—*certainty* and *doubt*; as, *cêrtus*, *incêrtus*, *ambigûs*, *dûbiûs*, *suspensûs*;—*care* and *negligence*; as, *ancius*, *solicitûs*, *prôvidus*, *imprôvidus*, *sêcûrus*;—*fear* and *confidence*; as, *pâvidus*, *timidus*, *trêpidus*, *impâvidus*, *fidens*, *intêrritus*;—*guilt* and *innocence*; as, *noxius*, *reus*, *suspectus*, *compertus*, *mânifestus*, *innociûs*, *innôcens*, *insons*;—*plenty* and *want*; as, *âbundans*, *plênus*, *dîves*, *sâtus*, *largo*, *inops*, *egênus*, *inânis*, *pauper*, *parcus*, *sólutus*, *vâcûus*.

(a.) In the poets and later prose writers, many other adjectives, particularly those which express mental emotions, are in like manner limited by a genitive, especially by *ânimi*, *ingénii*, *mentis*, *iræ*, *militiæ*, *belli*, *labôris*, *rêrum*, *evi*, *fâtûri*, *môrum*, and *fidei*.

REM. 2. The limiting genitive, by a Greek construction, sometimes denotes a *cause* or *source*, especially in the poets; as, *Lassus mârîs*, et viârûm, *militiæque*. Hor. *Fessus viæ*. Stat. *Fessus mârîs*. Hor. *Attônitus serpentis*. Sil. *Mens intêrrita lêtî*. Ovid.

REM. 3. Participles in *ns*, when used as *such*, take after them the same case as the verbs from which they are derived; as, *Se amans*, Loving himself. Cic. *Adre terram appêtens*. Id.

REM. 4. Instead of the genitive, denoting *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, a different construction is sometimes used after many of these adjectives; as,

(1.) An infinitive or a subjunctive clause; as, *Certus ire*, Determined to go. Ovid. *Cantāre pēriti*. Virg. *Fēlicior unguēre tēla*. Id. *Anxius quid facto opus sit*. Sall. *Vive mēmor quam sis aevi brevis*. Hor.—So *aliēnus, avidus, callidus, cupidus, firmus, frēquens, gnārus, impōtens, inops, latus, largus, liber, pōtens, mēmor, dubius*, etc.

(2.) An accusative with a preposition; as, *Ad rem dēdior*. Ter. *Avidus in dirēptionē*. Liv. *Animus cōpaz ad praecepta*. Ovid. *Ad cāsum fortunamque fēlix*. Cic. *Ad fraudem callidus*. Id. *Diligens ad custodiendum*. Id. *Negligentior in patrem*. Just. *Vir ad disciplinam pēritus*. Cic. *Ad bella rādīs*. Liv. *Pōtens in res bellicas*. Id. *Alacer ad mālēficiā*. Cic. *Inter bellum et pacem nihil mēdiū est*. Id.—So with *ad*, *fērtilis, firmus, infirmus, pōtens, stērilis*, etc.—with *in*, *cupidus, parvus, pōtens, prōdīgus*, etc.

(3.) An accusative without a preposition, chiefly in the poets; as, *Nūdus membra*, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os, hūmērosque deo similis*. Id. *Cētera fulvus*. Hor. *Cuncta pollens*. Sen. Ag. See § 234, II.

(4.) An ablative with a preposition; as, *Avidus in pēcūnis*, Eager in regard to money. Cic. *Anxius de famā*. Quint. *Rādīs in jure civili*. Cic. *Pēritus de agricultūrā*. Varr. *Prūdēs in jure civili*. Cic. *Reus de vi*. Id. *Pūrus ab cultu hūmāno*. Liv. *Certior factus de re*. Cic. *Sollicitus de re*. Id. *Sūper scelēre suspectus*. Sall. *Inops ab amicis*. Cic. *Pauper in aere*. Hor. *Mōdicus in cultu*. Plin. *Ab aquis stērilis*. Apul. *Cōpiōsus a frūmento*. Cic. *Ab eq̄uitātū firmus*. Id. So with *in*, *immōdicus, parvus, ūber* :—with *ab*, *aliēnus, beātus, ex-torris, immānis, inops, liber, nūdus, orbis, vācuus*.

(5.) An ablative without a preposition; as, *Arte rādīs*, Rude in art. Ovid. *Regni crimine insons*. Liv. *Compos mente*. Virg. *Prūdēs consilio*. Just. *Eger pēdibus*. Sall. *Prestans ingēnio*. Cic. *Mōdicus sēveritatē*. Tac. *Nihil in salū vācuū*. Cic. *Amor et melle et felle est fēcundissimū*. Plant. *Mēdius Pol-luce et Castōre*. Ovid. Cf. Rem. 5.

In many instances, the signification of the accusative and ablative after adjectives differs, in a greater or less degree, from that of the genitive.

REM. 5. As many of the adjectives, which are followed by a genitive, admit of other constructions, the most common use of each, with particular nouns, can, in general, be determined only by recourse to the dictionary, or to the classics. Some have,

(1.) The genitive only; as, *bēnignus, cāpaz, exsors, impos, impōtens, insatiā-bilis, irritus, libērālis, mōdicus, mūnificus, praelargus*, and many others.

(2.) The genitive more frequently; as, *compos, consors, egēnus, exhēres, expers, fērtilis, indīgus, inops, parvus, particeps, pauper, prōdīgus, prosper, stērilis*.

(3.) The genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *dives, fēcundus, fēraz, im-mūnis, inānis, immōdicus, jējūnus, largus, nimius, opulētus, pēritus, plēnus, pō-tens, pūrus, rēfertus, sātur, ūber, vācuus*.

(4.) The ablative more frequently; as, *abundans, aliēnus, cassus, cōpiōsus, ex-torris, firmus, fētus, frēquens, grāvīdus, grāvis, infirmus, liber, locuples, latus, mactus, nūdus, onustus, orbis, pollens, sātīātus, truncus, vālidus, vānuus*.

(5.) The ablative only; as, *beātus, crēber, densus, mūtillus, tūmidus, turgidus*.

For the ablative after many of the preceding adjectives, see § 250.

REM. 6. Some adjectives usually limited by a dative, sometimes take a genitive instead of the dative; as, *similis, dissimilis*, etc. See § 222, R. 2.

REM. 7. Many adjectives in addition to the genitive or ablative denoting *of* or *in respect to*, take also another case to express a different relation; as, *Mens tibi conscia recti*. Cf. § 222, R. 3. *Conscius* has also sometimes the dative instead of the genitive of the thing; as, *conscius huic facinōri*. Cic.

## GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 214. *Sum*, and verbs of *valuing*, are followed by a genitive, denoting *degree of estimation*; as,

*A me argentum, quanti est, sūmito*, Take of me so much money as (he) is worth. Ter. *Magni aestimābat pecūniam*, He valued money greatly. Cic. *Ager nunc plūris est, quam tunc fuit*. Id. *Tanti est*, It is worth so much; and, absolutely, It is worth while. Cic. *Hūjus non fācio*, I don't care *that* for it.

REMARK 1. (a.) Verbs of valuing are joined with the genitive, when the value is expressed in a *general* or *indefinite* manner by:—

(1.) A neuter adjective of quantity; as, *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris, magni, permagni, plūrimi, mazimi, minimi, parvi, tantidem, quantumque, quantūvis, quantūlibet*, but only very rarely *multi* and *mājōris*.

(2.) The nouns *assis, flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, tērucū*, and also *peni* and *hūjus*.

(b.) But if the price or value of a thing is a *definite* sum, or is expressed by a *substantive*, other than *assis, flocci*, etc., it is put in the ablative. Cf. § 252.

REM. 2. The verbs of valuing are *aestimo, existimo, dūco, fācio, fio, hābeo, pendo, puto, deputo, iazo*. Thus, *Ut quanti quisque se ipse fāciat, tanti fiat ob amicis*, That as much as each one values himself, so much he should be valued by his friends. Cic. *Sed quia parvi id dūcēret*. Id. *Hōnōres si magni non putāmus*. Id. *Non assis fācis?* Catull. *Nēque quod dixi, flocci existimat*. Plaut.

NOTE 1. (a.) The phrase *æqui bōni*, or *æqui bōnique fācio*, or *consūlo*, I take a thing in good part, am satisfied with it, may be classed with genitives of value; as, *Nos æqui bōnique fācimus*. Liv. So, *Bōni consūluit* Plin.—(b.) A genitive of price is joined also to *ceno, hābito, dōceo*, etc.; as, *quanti hābitas?* what rent do you pay for your house or lodging? *quanti dōcet?* what are his terms in teaching?

NOTE 2. After *aestimo*, the ablatives *magno, permagno, parvo, nihilo*, are sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *Dāta magno aestimas, accepta parvo*. Sen. *Pro nihilo*, also, occurs after *dūco, hābeo*, and *puto*; and *nihil* with *aestimo* and *mōror*. Cf. § 231, R. 6.

NOTE 3. The neuter adjectives above enumerated, and *hūjus*, may be referred to a noun understood, as *prētiū, aris, pondēris, mōmenti*; and may be considered as limiting a preceding noun, also understood, and denoting some person or thing; as, *Aestimo te magni*, i. e. *hōminem magni prētiū*. *Scio epus ordinis auctoritatem semper apud te magni fuisse*, i. e. *rem magni mōmenti*. The words *assis*, etc., may also be considered as depending on an omitted noun; as, *prētiū, aris*, etc.

REM. 3. Statements of *price*, also, when *general* or *indefinite*, are put in the genitive after verbs of *buying, selling, letting, and hiring*; as,

*Mercātōres non tantidem vendunt, quanti emērunt*. Cic. *Nulla pestis hāmāno gēnēri plūris stetit, quam ira*. Sen.

NOTE 1. Verbs of buying, selling, etc., are *emo, vendo*, the neutral passive, *emēo, consto, prōsto*, and *liceo*, to be exposed for sale.

NOTE 2. With verbs of buying, selling, etc., the ablatives *magno, permagno, plūrimo, parvo, minimo*, and *nihilo* are often used instead of the genitive; as, *Non pōtēst parvo res magna constāre*. Sen. *Quanti emēre possum minimo?* What is the lowest price I can buy at? Plaut. Sometimes also the adverbs *cāre, bōne*, and *māle* take the place of the genitive or ablative of price.

§ 215. (1.) *Misëreor, misëresco*, and the impersonals *misëret, pænitet, püdet, tædet, and piget*, are followed by a genitive of the object in respect to which the feeling is exercised; as,

*Misërenimî sociörum*, Pity the allies. Cic. *Misërescite régis*, Pity the king. Virg. *Mea mäter, tui me misëret, mei piget*, I pity you, and am dissatisfied with myself. Acc. *Eos ineptiarum pænitet*. Cic. *Frätiris me püdet pigetque*. Ter. *Me ciuitätis morum piget tædetque*. Sall. So the compound *distædet*; *Haud quod tui me, neque dömi distædeat*. Plaut.; and the passive; *Numquam suscepti negötiî eum pertasum est*. Nep. *Lentitudinis eörum pertassa*. Tac. *Misëritum est me tuarum fortunarum*. Ter. *Cave te fratrum misëreätur*. Cic. *Püdet (me) deörum höminumque*, I am filled with shame in reference both to gods and men. Liv.

NOTE 1. *Misërescit* is sometimes used in the same manner as *misëret*; as, *Nunc te misërescat mei*. Ter. *Misëreo*, as a personal verb, also, occurs with a genitive; as, *Ipse sui misëret*. Lucr.

REMARK. The genitive after the above impersonals seems to depend on some general word constituting the grammatical subject of such verbs, and signifying, *matter, business, fact, case, circumstances, conduct, character, etc.*, cf. § 211, R. 8, (3); and § 209, R. 3, (4.) Instead of the genitive with its omitted noun, an infinitive or clause with *quod* or with an interrogative particle is sometimes used as a subject; as, *Non me hoc jam dicere püdebit*. Cic. *Non pænitet me quantum profecerim*, I am not dissatisfied with my progress. Id. These verbs have also sometimes a nominative; as, *Me quidem hæc conditio non pænitet*. Plaut. *Non te hæc pudent?* Ter.

NOTE 2. *Misëret* occurs with an accusative of the object, instead of a genitive; as, *Menedemi vicem misëret me*. Ter. So, also, *Pertasus ignäviam suam*. Suet.

NOTE 3. (a.) These impersonals, as active verbs, take also an accusative of the person exercising the feeling which they express. See § 229, R. 6.—(b.) And sometimes also the accusative of the *neuter pronouns* and of *nihil*, denoting to what degree the feelings are exercised; as, *Sequitur ut nihil (stipientem,) pænitet*. Cic. Cf. § 232, (3.)

(2.) *Sätägo* is sometimes followed by a genitive denoting *in what respect*; as,

*Is sätägit rerum suarum*, He is busily occupied with his own affairs. Ter. This compound is often written separately, and in either case the genitive seems to depend upon *sat*. See § 212, R. 4. *Agito*, with *sat*, in like manner, is followed by a genitive; as, *Nunc ägitas sat tüte tuarum rerum*. Plaut.

§ 216. *Rëcordor, mëmini, rëminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, are followed by a genitive or accusative of the object remembered or forgotten; as,

*Plägitörum suörum rëcordäbitur*. Cic. *Omnes gradus ætätis rëcordor tuæ*, I call to mind all the periods of your life. Id. *Mëmini vivörum*, I am mindful of the living. Id. *Nümëros mëmini*, I remember the measure. Virg. *Rëminisci vëtëris fämæ*. Nep. *Dulces möriens rëminiscitur* Argos. Virg. *Rëminisci ämicos*. Ovid. *Oblitus sui*. Virg. *Injüriarum obliviscitur*. Nep. *Obliviscor injürias*. Cic. *Obliviscere Graios*. Virg.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the thing remembered or forgotten is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective, it is always put in the accusative. An accusative of the *person* with these verbs is unusual, except that *mëmini*, when referring to a contemporary, always takes an accusative of the person; as, *Cinnam mëmini*. Cic.

## GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 214. *Sum*, and verbs of *valuing*, are followed by a genitive, denoting *degree of estimation*; as,

*A me argentum, quanti est, sūmito*, Take of me so much money as (he) is worth. Ter. *Magni aestimābat pecūniam*, He valued money greatly. Cic. *Ager nunc plūris est, quam tunc fuit*. Id. *Tanti est*, It is worth so much; and, absolutely, It is worth while. Cic. *Hūjus non fācio*, I don't care *that* for it.

REMARK 1. (a.) Verbs of valuing are joined with the genitive, when the value is expressed in a *general* or *indefinite* manner by:—

(1.) A neuter adjective of quantity; as, *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris, magni, permagni, plurimi, maximi, minimi, parvi, tantidem, quantumcumque, quantūvis, quantūlibet*, but only very rarely *multi* and *mājōris*.

(2.) The nouns *assis, flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, tērucū*, and also *pensi* and *hūjus*.

(b.) But if the price or value of a thing is a *definite sum*, or is expressed by a *substantive*, other than *assis, flocci*, etc., it is put in the ablative. Cf. § 252.

REM. 2. The verbs of valuing are *aestimo, existimo, dūco, fācio, fto, hābeo, pendo, pūto, depūto, tazo*. Thus, *Ut quanti quisque se ipse fāciat, tanti fiat ab amicis*, That as much as each one values himself, so much he should be valued by his friends. Cic. *Sed quia parvi id dūceret*. Id. *Hōnōres si magni non pūtemus*. Id. *Non assis fācis?* Catull. *Nēque quod dixi, flocci existimat*. Plaut.

NOTE 1. (a.) The phrase *æqui bōni, or æqui bōnique fācio, or consūlo*, I take a thing in good part, am satisfied with it, may be classed with genitives of value; as, *Nos æqui bōnique fācimus*. Liv. So, *Bōni consūluit* Plin.—(b.) A genitive of price is joined also to *ceno, hābito, dōceo*, etc.; as, *quanti dōcet?* what rent do you pay for your house or lodging? *quanti dōcet?* what are his terms in teaching?

NOTE 2. After *aestimo*, the ablatives *magno, permagno, parvo, nihilo*, are sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *Dāta magno aestimas, accepta parvo*. Sen. *Pro nihilo*, also, occurs after *dūco, hābeo*, and *pūto*; and *nihil* with *aestimo* and *mōror*. Cf. § 231, R. 5.

NOTE 3. The neuter adjectives above enumerated, and *hūjus*, may be referred to a noun understood, as *prētiū, aris, pondēris, mōmenti*; and may be considered as limiting a preceding noun, also understood, and denoting some person or thing; as, *Aestimo te magni*, i. e. *hōminem magni prētiū*. *Scio ejus ordinis auctoritatem semper apud te magni fuisse*, i. e. *rem magni mōmenti*. The words *assis*, etc., may also be considered as depending on an omitted noun; as, *prētiū, rem*, etc.

REM. 3. Statements of *price*, also, when *general* or *indefinite*, are put in the genitive after verbs of *buying, selling, letting, and hiring*; as,

*Mercātores non tantidem vendunt, quanti emērunt*. Cic. *Nulla pestis hāmāno gēnēri plūris stēit, quam ira*. Sen.

NOTE 1. Verbs of buying, selling, etc., are *ēmo, vendo*, the neutral passive, *vēno, consto, prōsto*, and *liceo*, to be exposed for sale.

NOTE 2. With verbs of buying, selling, etc., the ablatives *magno, permagno, plurimo, parvo, minimo*, and *nihilo* are often used instead of the genitive; as, *Non pōtest parvo res magna constāre*. Sen. *Quanti emēre possum minimo?* What is the lowest price I can buy at? Plaut. Sometimes also the adverbs *cāre, bōne*, and *māle* take the place of the genitive or ablative of price.

§ 215. (1.) *Misereor, miseresco*, and the impersonals *misēret, pœnitet, pūdet, tædet, and piget*, are followed by a genitive of the object in respect to which the feeling is exercised; as,

*Miseremini sociorum*, Pity the allies. Cic. *Miserescite regis*, Pity the king. Virg. *Mea mater, tui me miseret, mei piget*, I pity you, and am dissatisfied with myself. Acc. *Eos ineptiarum pœnitet*. Cic. *Frātris me pūdet pigetque*. Ter. *Me civitatis morum piget tædetque*. Sall. So the compound *distædet; Haud quod tui me, neque dōmi distædeat*. Plaut.; and the passive; *Numquam suscepti nēgōti eum pertasum est*. Nep. *Lentitudinis eorum pertassa*. Tac. *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*. Ter. *Cave te fratrum misereatur*. Cic. *Pūdet (me) deorum hominumque*, I am filled with shame in reference both to gods and men. Liv.

NOTE 1. *Miserescit* is sometimes used in the same manner as *misēret*; as, *Nunc te miserecat mei*. Ter. *Misereo*, as a personal verb, also, occurs with a genitive; as, *Ipse sui misēret*. Lucr.

REMARK. The genitive after the above impersonals seems to depend on some general word constituting the grammatical subject of such verbs, and signifying, *matter, business, fact, case, circumstances, conduct, character, etc.*, cf. § 211, R. 8, (3); and § 209, R. 3, (4.) Instead of the genitive with its omitted noun, an infinitive or clause with *quod* or with an interrogative particle is sometimes used as a subject; as, *Non me hoc jam dicere pūdebit*. Cic. *Non pœnitet me quantum profecerim*, I am not dissatisfied with my progress. Id. These verbs have also sometimes a nominative; as, *Me quidem hæc conditio non pœnitet*. Plaut. *Non te hæc pudent?* Ter.

NOTE 2. *Misēret* occurs with an accusative of the object, instead of a genitive; as, *Menedemi vicem misēret me*. Ter. So, also, *Pertasus ignaviam suam*. Suet.

NOTE 3. (a.) These impersonals, as active verbs, take also an accusative of the person exercising the feeling which they express. See § 229, R. 6.—(b.) And sometimes also the accusative of the neuter pronouns and of *nil*, denoting to what degree the feelings are exercised; as, *Sequitur ut nihil (sapientem), pœnitent*. Cic. Cf. § 232, (3.)

(2.) *Sātāgo* is sometimes followed by a genitive denoting in what respect; as,

*Is sātāgit rerum suarum*, He is busily occupied with his own affairs. Ter. This compound is often written separately, and in either case the genitive seems to depend upon *sat*. See § 212, R. 4. *Agito*, with *sat*, in like manner, is followed by a genitive; as, *Nunc agitas sat tute tuarum rerum*. Plaut.

§ 216. *Rēcor, rēcor, rēminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, are followed by a genitive or accusative of the object remembered or forgotten; as,

*Flāgtiorum suorum rēcorābitur*. Cic. *Omnes gradus ætātis rēcoror tua*, I call to mind all the periods of your life. Id. *Mēmīni vivorum*, I am mindful of the living. Id. *Nūmeros mēmīni*, I remember the measure. Virg. *Rēminisci vōlētis fāmæ*. Nep. *Dukes moriens rēminiscitur Argos*. Virg. *Rēminisci amicōs*. Ovid. *Oblitus sui*. Virg. *Injūriarum obliviscitur*. Nep. *Obliviscor injūrias*. Cic. *Obliviscere Graios*. Virg.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the thing remembered or forgotten is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective, it is always put in the accusative. An accusative of the person with these verbs is unusual, except that *mēmīni*, when referring to a contemporary, always takes an accusative of the person; as, *Cinnam mēmīni*. Cic.

(5.) The meaning is often nearly the same, whether the partitive adjective agrees in case and number with a noun, or takes such noun after it in the genitive; as, *Ductissimus Rōmānōrum*, or, *doctissimus Rōmānus*: *Alter consūlum*, or *alter consul*. But the genitive cannot be used, when the adjective includes the same number of things as that of which the whole consists; as, *Veniūmus ad rivos*, qui duo *sūpersunt*; not *quōrum duo*, since these are all, though we say in English, 'of whom two survive.'

NOTE 1. (a.) The comparative with the genitive denotes one of *two* individuals or classes; the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *Māior frātrum*, The elder of two brothers. *Maximus frātrum*, The eldest of three or more.

(b.) In like manner, *ūter*, *alter*, and *neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis*, *quid*, and *nullus*, to a whole consisting of more than two; as, *Ūter nostrum*? Which of us (two)? *Quis vestrum*? Which of you (three or more)?

NOTE 2. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as partitive genitives, in preference to *nostrī* and *vestrī*, and are always joined with *omnium* even when the genitive is a subjective one; as, *Patria, quæ communis est omnium nostrum pārens*. Cic. But *vestrum* sometimes occurs in other connections also without a partitive meaning; as, *Quis erit tam cupidus vestrum*. Cic.

NOTE 3. The partitive word is sometimes omitted; as, *Fies nobilium tu quōque fontium*, scil. *ūnus*. Hor. *Centies sestertium*, scil. *centēna millia*.

NOTE 4. The noun denoting the whole, after a partitive word, is often put in the ablative, with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*, or in the accusative, with *apud* or *inter*; as, *Nemo de iis*. *Alter ex censoribus*. Liv. *Unus ex multis*. Cic. *Acerrimus ex sensibus*. Id. *Thales, qui sapientissimus in septem fuit*. Id. *Primus inter omnes*. Virg. *Cræsus inter reges opulentissimus*. Sen. *Apud Helvêtios nobilissimus*.

NOTE 5. The whole and its parts are frequently placed in apposition, distributively; as, *Interfectores, pars in fōrum, pars Syracūsas pergunt*. Liv. See § 204, R. 10.

NOTE 6. *Cuncti* and *omnes*, like partitives, are sometimes followed by a genitive plural; as, *Attalus Mæcēdonum fere omnibus persuasit*. Attalus persuaded almost all the Macedonians. Liv. *Cunctos hominum*. Ovid. *Cunctas provinciārum*. Plin.

NOTE 7. In the following passage, the genitive singular seems to be used like that of a collective noun: *Totius autem injustitiæ nulla captatior est*, etc. Cic. Off. 1, 13. The phrase *Rem nullo modo probabilem omnium* (Cic. Nat. Deor. 1, 27,) seems to be used for *Rem nullo omnium modorum probabilem*.

REM. 3. The genitive denoting a whole, may depend on a neuter adjective or adjective pronoun. With these the genitive singular is commonly used; as,

*Plus eloquentiæ*, More (of) eloquence. *Tantum fidei*, So much fidelity. *Id temporis*, That time. *Ad hoc celātis*. Sometimes the genitive plural; as, *Id miscrōrum*. Ter. *Armōrum quantum*. Cæs.

NOTE 1. (a.) Most neuter adjectives used partitively denote quantity; as, *tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, *plus*, *minus*, *minutum*, *dimidium*, *multum*, *nimium*, *paulum*, *plurimum*, *reliquum*; with the compounds and diminutives, *tantulum*, *tantundem*, *quantulum*, *quantulumcumque*, etc.; to which add *mediū*, *sumum*, *ultimum*, *aliud*, etc. The pronouns thus used are *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *istud*, *idem*, *quod*, and *quid*, with their compounds, *aliquid*, *quidquid*, *quippiam*, *quidquam*, *quodcumque*.

(b.) Most of these adjectives and pronouns may either agree with their nouns, or take a genitive; but the latter is more common. *Tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, and *plus*, when they denote quantity, are used with a genitive only, as are also *quid* and its compounds, when they denote a part, sort, etc., and *quod* in the sense of *quantum*. Thus, *Quantum crevit Nilus, tantum spel in annum est*. Sen. *Quid mulieris uxorem habes?* What kind of a woman... Ter.

*Aliquid formæ.* Cic. *Quid hoc rei est?* What does this mean? Ter. *Quod auri, quod argenti, quod ornamentorum fuit, id Verres abstulit.*

NOTE 2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, when followed by a genitive, are to be accounted substantives, and in this construction are found only in the nominative and accusative.

NOTE 3. Sometimes the genitive after these adjectives and pronouns is a neuter adjective, of the second declension, without a noun; as, *Tantum boni*, So much good. *Si quid habes novi*, If you have any thing new. Cic. *Quid reliqui est?* Ter. *Nihil* is also used with such a genitive; as, *Nihil sinceri*, No sincerity. Cic. This construction occurs very rarely with neuter adjectives in *ē* of the third declension, and only in connection with neuters of the second declension; as, *Si quidquam non dico civilis sed humani esset*. Liv.

NOTE 4. In the poets and in the prose writers later than Cicero, neuter adjectives in the plural number are sometimes followed by a genitive, either singular or plural, with a partitive signification; as, *Extrēma imperiī*, The frontiers of the empire. Tac. *Pontes et viarum angusta*, The bridges and the narrow parts of the roads. Id. *Opaca locorum*. Virg. *Antiqua fœderum*. Liv. *Cuncta camporum*. Tac. *Exercent colles, atque horum asperissima pascunt*. Virg. Cf. § 205, R. 9.

REM. 4. The adverbs *sāt*, *sātis*, *pārum*, *nīmis*, *ābunde*, *largiter*, *affātum*, and *partim*, used partitively, are often followed by a genitive; as,

*Sat ratiōis*, Enough of reason. Virg. *Sātis eloquentiæ, pārum adpientiæ*, Enough of eloquence, (yet) but little wisdom. Sall. *Nimis insidiarum*. Cic. *Terroris et fraudis ābunde est*. Virg. *Auri et argenti largiter*. Plaut. *Cōpiarum affātum*. Liv. *Quum partim illorum mihi familiārisimi essent*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The above words, though generally adverbs, seem, in this use, rather to be nouns or adjectives.

NOTE 2. (a.) The genitives *gentium*, *terrārum*, *loci*, and *locorum*, with certain adverbs of place, strengthen their meaning; as, *Usquam terrarum*. Just. *Usquam gentium*, Any where whatever. Plaut. *Ubi terrarum sumus?* Where in the world are we? Cic. *Abire quo terrarum possent*. Liv. *Ubi sit loci*. Plin. *Eo loci*, equivalent to *eo loco*, In that place. Tac. *Eodem loci res est*. Cic. *Nesciro quo loci esset*. Id. But the last three examples might perhaps more properly be referred to Rem. 3.

(b.) The adverbs of place thus used are *ubi*, *ubīnam*, *ubicunque*, *ubiūbi*, *ubivis*, *ubique*, *unde*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *quo*, *quocumque*, *quovis*, *quouo*, *aliquo*, *hic*, *huc*, *eo*, *eodem*. *Loci* also occurs after *ibi* and *ibidem*; *gentium* after *longe*; as, *Ibi loci*, In that place. Plin. *Abes longe gentium*. Cic. So, *minime gentium*, By no means. Ter. *Vicinie* in the genitive is used by the comic writers after *hic* and *huc*; as, *Hic proximæ viciniae*. Plaut. *Huc viciniae*. Ter. Cf. § 221, R. 3, (4.)

NOTE 3. *Huc*, *eo*, *quo*, when used figuratively to express a degree, are joined also with other genitives; as, *Eo insolentiæ furorisque processit*, He advanced to such a degree of insolence and madness. Plin. *Huc enim malorum ventum est*. Curt. *Hucne rerum venimus?* Have we come to this? Pers. *Eo miserrimum venire*, To such a pitch of misery. Sall. *Quo æmentie progressi sitis*. Liv.

NOTE 4. The genitives *loci*, *locorum*, and *temporis*, appear to be redundant after the adverbs *adhuc*, *inde*, *interea*, *postea*, *tum*, and *tunc*, in expressions denoting time; as, *Adhuc locorum*, Till now. Plaut. *Inde loci*, After that. Lucr. *Interea loci*, In the mean time. Ter. *Postea loci*, Afterwards. Sall. *Tum temporis*, and *tunc temporis*, At that time. Just. *Locorum* also occurs after *id*, denoting time; as, *Ad id locorum*, Up to that time. Sall. Cf. R. 3.

NOTE 5. When the genitive *ejus* occurs after *quoad*, in such connections as the following: *Quoad ejus facere poteris*. Cic.; or passively, *Quoad ejus fieri possit*, As far as may be. Cic.; the *ejus* refers to the preceding clause; literally, as much of it as possible.



NOTE 6. *Prædie* and *postdiē*, though reckoned adverbs, are followed by a genitive, depending on the noun *diēs* contained in them; as, *Prædie ejus diē*, lit. On the day before that day, i. e. The day before. Cic. *Prædie insidiarum*, The day before the ambush. Tac. *Postdiē ejus diē*, The next day. Cæs. When they are followed by an accusative, *ante* or *post* is understood. Cf. § 238, 1, (6.)

NOTE 7. Adverbs in the superlative degree, like their adjectives, are followed by a genitive; as, *Optime omnium*, Best of all. Cic.

### GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 213. A noun, limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the objective genitive, to denote the relation expressed in English by *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*; as,

|                                            |                                            |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>Acidus laudis</i> , Desirous of praise. | <i>Plēna timōris</i> , Full of fear.       |
| <i>Appētens glōriæ</i> , Eager for glory.  | <i>Egēnus aquæ</i> , Destitute of water.   |
| <i>Mēmor virtūtis</i> , Mindful of virtue. | <i>Doctus fandi</i> , Skilful in speaking. |

So, *Nescia mens fātī*, The mind ignorant in regard to fate. Virg. *Impōtens iræ*, lit. Powerless in respect to anger, i. e. unable to control it. Liv. *Hōmīnes expertes vērītātis*, Men destitute of truth. Cic. *Lactis abundans*, Abounding in milk. Virg. *Terra fēraz arbōrum*, Land productive of trees. Plin. *Tēnaz propōsiti vir*, A man tenacious of his purpose. Hor. *Æger animi*, Sick in mind. Liv. *Locus mēdius jūgūli summique lācerti*, i. e. between. Ovid. *Morūm adversus*. Tac. *Opērum solūtus*. Hor. *Liber lābōrum*. Id. *Intēger vitæ scōlēriæque pūrus*, Upright in life, and free from wickedness. Hor. *Vini pollens Liber*. Plant.

From the above examples, it will be seen that the genitive after an adjective is sometimes translated by other words besides *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, though the relation which it denotes remains the same. Cf. 211, R. 12.

REMARK 1. The following classes of adjectives, which, as denoting a relation to a thing, are called *relative adjectives* (§ 104, 13), are frequently limited by a genitive; viz. (1.) *Verbals* in *ax*; as, *cōpax*, *ēdax*, *fēraz*, *fūgaz*, *pervicax*, *tēnaz*, etc.—(2.) *Participials* in *ns*, and a few in *tus*, with their compounds; as, *amans*, *appētens*, *cūpiens*, *efficiens*, *pātiens*, *impātiens*, *sitiens*;—*consultus*, *doctus*, *solūtus*.—(3.) Adjectives denoting *desire* or *aversion*; as, *avārus*, *avidus*, *cupidus*, *studiosus*; *fastidiosus*;—*participation*; as, *parūceps*, *affinis*, *consors*, *exsors*, *expers*, *inops*;—*knowledge*, *experience*, *capacity*, and their contraries; as, *callidus*, *compos*, *consciū*, *gnārus*, *ignārus*, *pēritus*, *impēritus*, *impos*, *pōtens*, *impōtens*, *prūdēns*, *imprūdēns*, *expertus*, *inexpertus*, *consciū*, *inasciū*, *nesciū*, *insolēns*, *insolūtus*, *insuētus*, *rūdis*, *sollers*;—*memory* and *forgetfulness*; as, *mēmor*, *immēmor*, etc.;—*certainly* and *doubt*; as, *certus*, *incertus*, *ambiguus*, *dubius*, *suspensū*;—*care* and *negligence*; as, *anxiū*, *solicitū*, *providū*, *improvidū*, *secūrus*;—*fear* and *confidence*; as, *pavidū*, *timidū*, *trēpidū*, *impavidū*, *fidēns*, *interritū*;—*guilt* and *innocence*; as, *noxius*, *reus*, *suspectus*, *compertus*, *manifestus*, *innociū*, *innocēns*, *insons*;—*plenty* and *want*; as, *abundans*, *plēnus*, *dives*, *sātus*, *largus*, *inops*, *egēnus*, *inānis*, *pauper*, *parcus*, *solūtus*, *vacuus*.

(a.) In the poets and later prose writers, many other adjectives, particularly those which express mental emotions, are in like manner limited by a genitive, especially by *animi*, *ingēni*, *mentis*, *iræ*, *militiæ*, *belli*, *lābōris*, *rērum*, *artū*, *fātis*, *mōrum*, and *fidei*.

REM. 2. The limiting genitive, by a Greek construction, sometimes denotes a *cause* or *source*, especially in the poets; as, *Lassus maris*, et viarum, *militiæque*. Hor. *Fessus viæ*. Stat. *Fessus maris*. Hor. *Attōnitus serpenti*. Sil. *Mens interrīta lēti*. Ovid.

REM. 3. Participles in *ns*, when used as such, take after them the same case as the verbs from which they are derived; as, *Se amans*, Loving himself. Cic. *Mitre terram appētens*. Id.

REM. 4. Instead of the genitive, denoting *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, a different construction is sometimes used after many of these adjectives; as,

(1.) An infinitive or a subjunctive clause; as, *Certus ire*, Determined to go. Ovid. Cantāre *pēriti*. Virg. *Fēlicior unguēre tēla*. Id. *Anzius quid facto opus sit*. Sall. *Vive mēmōr quam sis ævi brēvis*. Hor.—So *aliēnus, avidus, callidus, cupidus, firmus, frēquens, gnārus, impōtens, inops, letus, largus, liber, pollens, mēmōr, dubius*, etc.

(2.) An accusative with a preposition; as, *Ad rem avidior*. Ter. *Avidus in direptiones*. Liv. *Animus cōpax ad praecepta*. Ovid. *Ad cāsum fortunamq̃ue fēlix*. Cic. *Ad fraudem callidus*. Id. *Diligens ad custodiendum*. Id. *Negligentior in patrem*. Just. *Vir ad disciplinam pēritus*. Cic. *Ad bella rūdus*. Liv. *Pōtens in res bellicas*. Id. *Alacer ad mālēficia*. Cic. *Inter bellum et pācem nihil mēdiū est*. Id.—So with *ad*, *fētilis, firmus, infirmus, pōtens, stērilis*, etc.—with *in*, *cupidus, parvus, pōtens, prodigus*, etc.

(3.) An accusative without a preposition, chiefly in the poets; as, *Nūdus membra*. Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os, hūmērosq̃ue deo similis*. Id. *Cātera fulvus*. Hor. *Cuncta pollens*. Sen. Ag. See § 234, II.

(4.) An ablative with a preposition; as, *Avidus in pēcūniis*, Eager in regard to money. Cic. *Anzius de fāmā*. Quint. *Rūdus in jūre civili*. Cic. *Pēritus de agricultūrā*. Varr. *Prūdēns in jūre civili*. Cic. *Reus de vi*. Id. *Pārus ab cultu hūmāno*. Liv. *Certior factus de re*. Cic. *Sollicitus de re*. Id. *Sūper scelēre suspectus*. Sall. *Inops ab amicis*. Cic. *Pauper in ære*. Hor. *Mōdicus in cultu*. Plin. *Ab aquis stērilis*. Apul. *Cōpiōsus a frūmento*. Cic. *Ab equitātū firmus*. Id. So with *in*, *immōdicus, parvus, uber*:—with *ab*, *aliēnus, beātus, exhorris, immūnis, inops, liber, nūdus, orbis, vācuus*.

(5.) An ablative without a preposition; as, *Arte rūdus*, Rude in art. Ovid. *Regni crimine insons*. Liv. *Compos mente*. Virg. *Prūdēns consilio*. Just. *Eger pēdibus*. Sall. *Præstans ingēnio*. Cic. *Mōdicus sēvērītātē*. Tac. *Nihil insidiis vācuus*. Cic. *Amor et melle et felle est fēcundissimū*. Plaut. *Mēdius Polūce et Castōre*. Ovid. Cf. Rem. 5.

In many instances, the signification of the accusative and ablative after adjectives differs, in a greater or less degree, from that of the genitive.

REM. 5. As many of the adjectives, which are followed by a genitive, admit of other constructions, the most common use of each, with particular nouns, can, in general, be determined only by recourse to the dictionary, or to the classics. Some have,

(1.) The genitive only; as, *bēnignus, cōpax, exsors, impos, impōtens, insatiābilis, irritus, libērālis, mōdicus, mūnificus, praelargus*, and many others.

(2.) The genitive more frequently; as, *compos, consors, egēnus, exhēres, expers, fētilis, indigus, inops, parvus, particeps, pauper, prodigus, prosper, stērilis*.

(3.) The genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *dives, fēcundus, fērox, immūnia, tnānis, immōdicus, jējānus, largus, nimius, opulētus, pēritus, plēnus, pōtens, pārus, rēfertus, sātur, uber, vācuus*.

(4.) The ablative more frequently; as, *abundans, aliēnus, cassus, cōpiōsus, exhorris, firmus, fētus, frēquens, grāvīdus, grāvis, infirmus, liber, locuples, letus, mactus, mīdus, onustus, orbis, pollens, satiātus, truncus, vālidus, viduus*.

(5.) The ablative only; as, *beātus, creber, densus, mūtillus, tūmidus, turgidus*.

For the ablative after many of the preceding adjectives, see § 250.

REM. 6. Some adjectives usually limited by a dative, sometimes take a genitive instead of the dative; as, *similis, dissimilis*, etc. See § 222, R. 2.

REM. 7. Many adjectives in addition to the genitive or ablative denoting *of* or *in respect to*, take also another case to express a different relation; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. Cf. § 222, R. 3. *Conscius* has also sometimes the dative instead of the genitive of the thing; as, *conscius huic faciñōri*. Cic.

## GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 214. *Sum*, and verbs of *valuing*, are followed by a genitive, denoting *degree of estimation*; as,

*A me argentum, quanti est, sūmito*, Take of me so much money as (he) is worth. Ter. *Magni aestimābat pecūniam*, He valued money greatly. Cic. *Ager nunc plūris est, quam tunc fuit*. Id. *Tanti est*, It is worth so much; and, absolutely, It is worth while. Cic. *Hūjus non fācio*, I don't care *that* for it.

REMARK 1. (a.) Verbs of valuing are joined with the genitive, when the value is expressed in a *general* or *indefinite* manner by:—

(1.) A neuter adjective of quantity; as, *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris, magni, permagni, plūrimi, mazīmi, minīmi, parvi, tantidem, quantumque, quantūvis, quantūlibet*, but only very rarely *multi* and *mājōris*.

(2.) The nouns *assis, flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, tērucū*, and also *pensi* and *hūjus*.

(b.) But if the price or value of a thing is a *definite* sum, or is expressed by a *substantive*, other than *assis, flocci*, etc., it is put in the *ablative*. Cf. § 252.

REM. 2. The verbs of valuing are *aestimo, existimo, dūco, fācio, fio, hābeo, pendo, pūto, depūto, tazo*. Thus, *Ut quanti quisque se ipse fāciat, tanti fiat ab amicis*, That as much as each one values himself, so much he should be valued by his friends. Cic. *Sed quia parvi id dūcēret*. Id. *Hōnōres si magni non pūtāmus*. Id. *Non assis fācis?* Catull. *Nēque quod dixi, flocci existimat*. Plaut.

NOTE 1. (a.) The phrase *aequi bōni*, or *aequi bōnique fācio*, or *consūlo*, I take a thing in good part, am satisfied with it, may be classed with genitives of value; as, *Nos aequi bōnique fāctimus*. Liv. So, *Bōni consūluit Plin.*—(b.) A genitive of price is joined also to *ceno, hābito, dōceo*, etc.; as, *quanti hābitas?* what rent do you pay for your house or lodging? *quanti dōcet?* what are his terms in teaching?

NOTE 2. After *aestimo*, the ablatives *magno, permagno, parvo, nihilo*, are sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *Dāta magno aestimas, accepta parvo*. Sen. *Pro nihilo*, also, occurs after *dūco, hābeo*, and *pūto*; and *nihil* with *aestimo* and *mōror*. Cf. § 231, R. 5.

NOTE 3. The neuter adjectives above enumerated, and *hūjus*, may be referred to a noun understood, as *prētii, aris, pondēris, mōmenti*; and may be considered as limiting a preceding noun, also understood, and denoting some person or thing; as, *Aestimo te magni*, i. e. *hōminem magni prētii*. *Scio ejus ordinis auctoritātē semper apud te magni fuisse*, i. e. *rem magni mōmenti*. The words *assis*, etc., may also be considered as depending on an omitted noun; as, *prētio, rem*, etc.

REM. 3. Statements of *price*, also, when *general* or *indefinite*, are put in the genitive after verbs of *buying, selling, letting, and hiring*; as,

*Mercātōres non tantidem vendunt, quanti emērunt*. Cic. *Nulla pestis hāmāno gēnēri plūris stētī, quam ira*. Sen.

NOTE 1. Verbs of buying, selling, etc., are *emo, vendo*, the neutral passive, *vēneo, consto, prōsto*, and *liceo*, to be exposed for sale.

NOTE 2. With verbs of buying, selling, etc., the ablatives *magno, permagno, plūrimo, parvo, minīmo*, and *nihilo* are often used instead of the genitive; as, *Non pōtēst parvo res magna constāre*. Sen. *Quanti emēre possum minīmo?* What is the lowest price I can buy at? Plaut. Sometimes also the adverbs *cāre, dēne*, and *māle* take the place of the genitive or ablative of price.

§ 215. (1.) *Misereor, miseresco*, and the impersonals *misēret, pœnitet, pūdet, tædet, and piget*, are followed by a genitive of the object in respect to which the feeling is exercised; as,

*Miseremini sociorum*, Pity the allies. Cic. *Miserescite regis*, Pity the king. Virg. *Mea mater, tui me miseret, mei piget*, I pity you, and am dissatisfied with myself. Acc. *Eos ineptiarum pœnitet*. Cic. *Frātris me pūdet pigetque*. Ter. *Me civitatis morum piget tædetque*. Sall. So the compound *distædet; Haud quod tui me, neque dōmi distædeat*. Plaut.; and the passive; *Numquam suscepti negōtii eum pertasum est*. Nep. *Lentitudinis eorum pertasa*. Tac. *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*. Ter. *Cave te fratrum misereatur*. Cic. *Pūdet (me) deorum hominumque*, I am filled with shame in reference both to gods and men. Liv.

NOTE 1. *Miserescit* is sometimes used in the same manner as *misēret*; as, *Nunc te miserescat mei*. Ter. *Misereo*, as a personal verb, also, occurs with a genitive; as, *Ipse sui miseret*. Lucr.

REMARK. The genitive after the above impersonals seems to depend on some general word constituting the grammatical subject of such verbs, and signifying, *matter, business, fact, case, circumstances, conduct, character, etc.*, cf. § 211, R. 3, (3); and § 209, R. 3, (4.) Instead of the genitive with its omitted noun, an infinitive or clause with *quod* or with an interrogative particle is sometimes used as a subject; as, *Non me hoc jam dicere pūdebit*. Cic. *Non pœnitet me quantum profecerim*, I am not dissatisfied with my progress. Id. These verbs have also sometimes a nominative; as, *Me quidem hæc conditio non pœnitet*. Plaut. *Non te hæc pudent?* Ter.

NOTE 2. *Misēret* occurs with an accusative of the object, instead of a genitive; as, *Menedemi vicem misēret me*. Ter. So, also, *Pertasus ignāviam suam*. Suet.

NOTE 3. (a.) These impersonals, as active verbs, take also an accusative of the person exercising the feeling which they express. See § 229, R. 6.—(b.) And sometimes also the accusative of the *neuter pronouns* and of *nihil*, denoting to what degree the feelings are exercised; as, *Sequitur ut nihil (aspicientem) pœniteat*. Cic. Cf. § 232, (3.)

(2.) *Sātāgo* is sometimes followed by a genitive denoting *in what respect*; as,

*Is sātāgit rerum suarum*, He is busily occupied with his own affairs. Ter. This compound is often written separately, and in either case the genitive seems to depend upon *sat*. See § 212, R. 4. *Agito*, with *sāt*, in like manner, is followed by a genitive; as, *Nunc agitas sat tute tuarum rerum*. Plaut.

§ 216. *Rēcordor, mēmīni, rēmīniscor*, and *oblīviscor*, are followed by a genitive or accusative of the object remembered or forgotten; as,

*Flāgtiorum suorum rēcordābitur*. Cic. *Omnes grādus ætātis rēcordor tuæ*, I call to mind all the periods of your life. Id. *Mēmīni vivorum*, I am mindful of the living. Id. *Nūmeros mēmīni*, I remember the measure. Virg. *Rēmīnisci v̄tēris fāmæ*. Nep. *Dulces mōriens rēmīniscitur* Argos. Virg. *Rēmīnisci amīcos*. Ovid. *Oblitus sui*. Virg. *Injūriarum oblīviscitur*. Nep. *Oblīviscor injūrias*. Cic. *Oblīviscere* Graios. Virg.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the thing remembered or forgotten is expressed by a *neuter pronoun* or adjective, it is always put in the accusative. An accusative of the *person* with these verbs is unusual, except that *mēmīni*, when referring to a contemporary, always takes an accusative of the person; as, *Cinānam mēmīni*. Cic.

(b.) An infinitive or a dependent clause sometimes follows these verbs; as, *Memento mihi supplicias ferre*. Plaut. *Esse quoque in fatis reminiscitur*, affore tempus, quo matre, etc. Ovid. *Oblii quid deceat*. Hor. *Memini te scribere*. Cic. *Quæ sum passura recorder*. Ovid.

REM. 2. *Recordor* and *memini*, to remember, are sometimes followed by an ablative with *de*; as, *Petimus ut de suis liberis recorderetur*. Cic. *De pallâ memento*. Plaut.

REM. 3. *Memini*, signifying to make mention of, has a genitive, or an ablative with *de*; as, *Næque hujus rei meminit*. poetæ. Quint. *Meministi de exsiliis*. Cic. With *venit mihi in mentem*, the person or thing may be made the subject of *venit*; as, *Miseræ ubi venit in mentem mortis metus*. Plaut. *Venit hoc mihi in mentem*; or an infinitive or subjunctive clause may supply the place of the subject:—for the genitive with this phrase, as in *Solet mihi in mentem venire illius temporis*, see § 211, R. 8, (5.) The genitive with *recordor* is very rare.

§ 217. Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive denoting the crime; as,

*Arguit me furti*, He charges me with theft. *Alterum accusat probri*, He accuses another of villany. *Meipsum inertiae condemno*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) To this rule belong the verbs of

Accusing; *accuso*, *ago*, *arcesso*, *arguo*, *citō*, *dēfēro*, *incrēpo*, *incuso*, *inimulo*, *postulo*, and more rarely *alligo*, *anquiro*, *astringo*, *capto*, *incrēpilo*, *urgeo*, *interrogo*, *reum ago* or *facio*, *alicui diem dico*, *cum aliquo ago*.—Convicting; *convincō*, *coarguo*, *prehendo*, *teneor*, *obstringor*, *obligor*.—Condemning; *damno*, *condemno*, *infamo*, and more rarely *judico*, *noto*, *plector*.—Acquitting; *absolvo*, *libero*, *purgo*, and rarely *solvo*. To the verbs of accusing, etc., may be added the adjectives denoting guilt and innocence, which likewise take a genitive. Cf. § 218, R. 1, (8.)

(b.) The genitives which follow these verbs are, *audacia*, *avaritia*, *caecia*, *falsi*, *furti*, *ignavia*, *impietatis*, *injuriarum*, *levitatis*, *majestatis*, *maleficii*, *mendacii*, *paricidii*, *peccati*, *peculatus*, *proberi*, *prodicionis*, *rei capitalis*, *repētundarum*, *sceleris*, *stultitiae*, *tēmēritatis*, *timoris*, *vaniitatis*, *veneficii*, etc.

REM. 2. (a.) Instead of the genitive, an ablative with *de* is often used after *accuso*, *dēfēro*, *anquiro*, *arguo*, *postulo*, *damno*, *condemno*, *absolvo*, and *purgo*; as, *Accusare de negligentia*. Cic. *De vi condemnati sunt*. Id. *De repētundis est postulatus*. Id. Sometimes with *in*, after *accuso*, *coarguo*, *convincō*, *teneor*, and *deprehendor*; as, *In quo te accuso* (Cic.); and after *libero*, with *a* or *ab*; as, *A scelere liberati sumus*. Cic. *Accuso* and *damno* with *inter* occur in the phrases *inter sicarios accusare*, etc., to charge with assassination.

(b.) With some of the above verbs, an ablative without a preposition is often used; as, *Liberare culpā*. Cic. *Crimen quo argui posset*. Nep. *Proconsilem postulaverat repētundis*. Tac. This happens especially with general words denoting crime; as, *scelus*, *maleficio*, *peccatum*, etc.; as, *Me peccato solvo*. Liv. The ablatives *crimine* and *nōmine*, without a preposition, are often inserted before the genitive; as, *Arcessere aliquem crimine ambitus*. Liv. *Nōmine scelleris conjurationisque damnati*. Cic.; and when not so inserted they are to be understood.

(c.) Sometimes a clause takes the place of the genitive; as, *Eum accusabant quod societatem fecisset*. Nep. So the infinitive with the accusative. *Quid? quod me—arguit serum accessisse?* Ovid.

REM. 3. (a.) The punishment is commonly expressed by the genitive; as, *captivis*, *mortis*, *multæ*, *pecuniæ*, *quadrupli*, *octupli*; but sometimes by the ablative; as, *capite*, *morte*, *multâ*, *pecuniâ*; and always by this case when a definite sum is mentioned; as, *quindécim millibus æris*: or the accusative with *ad* or *in*;

as, *ad pecuniam, ad bestias, ad metalla, in metallum, in expensas*;—sometimes, though rarely, in the poets, by the dative; as, *Damnatus morti*. Lucr.—(b.) *Voti* or *votivum*, and less frequently *voto* or *votis damnari*, signifies 'to be condemned to fulfil one's vow,' and is consequently equivalent to 'to obtain what one wishes.' So also in the active voice, *Damnabis tu quoque votis*. Virg. *Perdo* is used by Plautus as a verb of accusing, with *captis*; *Quem ego captis perdam*, will charge with a capital offence. So *capite* or *captis periclitari*, Plaut., signifies 'to be in peril of one's life.' With *plecto* and *plector*, *caput* is used in the ablative only.—(c.) *Damni infecti* is put in the genitive (depending upon *nomine* understood) after *satisdo*, *promitto*, *stipulari*, *repromitto*, and *caveo*; as, *Si quis in patrie demoliendo damni infecti promiserit*. Cic.

REM. 4. *Accuso, incuso*, and *insimulo*, instead of the genitive, sometimes take the accusative, especially of a neuter pronoun; as, *Si id me non accusas*. Plaut. *Quæ me incusaveras*. Ter. *Sic me insimulare falsum facinus*. Plaut. See § 231, Rem. 5.

REM. 5. (a.) The following verbs of accusing, etc., are not followed by a genitive of the crime, but, as active verbs, by an accusative:—*calumniar, carpere, corripio, criminor, culpo, excuso, multo, punio, reprehendo, sugillo, tazo, tradico, vitupero*; as, *Culpare infecunditatem agrorum*. Colum. *Excusare errorem et adolescentiam*. Liv.

(b.) This construction also sometimes occurs with *accuso, incuso, arguo*, and *inarguo*; as, *Ejus avaritiam perfidiamque accusarat*. Nep. *Culpam arguo*. Liv. With *multo*, the punishment is put in the ablative only, without a preposition; as, *Exstiliis, morte mulantur*. Cic.

§ 218. Verbs of admonishing, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive of the person or thing respecting which the admonition is given; as,

*Milites temporis monet*, He admonishes the soldiers of the occasion. Tac. *Admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suæ*. Sall.

NOTE. The verbs of admonishing are *monéo, admoneo, commoneo*, and *commonefacio*.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing sometimes have an ablative with *de*; as, *De re de Telluris me admones*. Cic.—sometimes an accusative of a pronoun or adjective in the neuter gender; as, *Eos hoc monéo*. Cic. *Illud me admoneo*. Id.; and in the passive, *Multa admoneamur*. Id.—rarely also a noun in the accusative; as, *Eam rem nos locus admonuit*. Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing are also often followed by an infinitive or clause; as, *Soror alma monet succedere Lauso Turnum*, His sister admonishes Turnus to take the place of Lausus. Virg. *Monet, ut suspiciones vitet*. Cæsar. *Sed eos hoc monéo, desinunt furere*. Cic. *Monet rationem framenti esse habendam*. Hirt. *Immortalia ne speres monet annus*. Hor. *Discipulos id unum monéo, ut, etc.* Quint. *Monéo quid facto opus sit*. Ter. See § 273, 2.

§ 219. *Rêfert* and *intérest* are followed by a genitive of the person or thing whose concern or interest they denote; as,

*Humánitatis rêfert*, It concerns human nature. Plin. *Rêfert omnium antemadvertis in malos*. Tac. *Intérest omnium recte facere*, It concerns all to do right. Cic.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive of the substantive pronouns, the adjective pronouns *mea, tua, sua, nostra*, and *vestra*, are used; as,

*Mea nihil rêfert*, It does not concern me. Ter. *Illud mea magni intérest*, That greatly concerns me. Cic. *Tua et mea maxime intérest, te valere*. Cic. *Magnis reipublicæ intérest quam mea*. Id. *Magni intérest Cicéronis, vel mea potius, vel mehercule utriusque, me intervenire dicenti*. Id.

**NOTE.** *Rēfert* rarely occurs with the genitive, but often with the pronouns *mea*, *tua*, etc., and most frequently without either such pronoun or a genitive; as, *quid rēfert? magni* or *magnopere rēfert*.

**REM. 2.** In regard to the case of these adjective pronouns, grammarians differ. Some suppose that they are in the accusative plural neuter, agreeing with *commōda* or the like understood; as, *Intērest mea*, i. e. *est inter mea*, It is among my concerns. *Rēfert tua*, i. e. *rēfert se ad tua*, It refers itself to your concerns. Others think that they are in the ablative singular feminine, agreeing with *re*, *causā*, etc., understood, or in the dative. The better opinion seems to be, that they are in the accusative feminine for *meam*, *tuam*, *suam*, etc., that *rēfert* was originally *rem fert*, and that hence the *e* of *rēfert* is long.

**REM. 3.** Instead of the genitive, an accusative with *ad* is sometimes used; as, *Ad hōnorem meum intērest quam primum urbem me venire*. Cic. *Quid id ad me aut ad meam rem rēfert*. Plaut.—sometimes, though rarely, an accusative without a preposition; as, *Quid te igitur retūlit?* Plaut—or a dative; as, *Dic quid rēferat intra nātūra fines viventi*. Hor.

**REM. 4.** The subject of these verbs, or the thing which is of interest or importance, is sometimes expressed by a neuter pronoun; as, *Id mea minime rēfert*. Ter. *Hoc vehēmenter intērest respūbica*. Cic.; and sometimes by an infinitive with its accusative, or *ut*, or an interrogative particle with a subjunctive clause; as, *multum mea intērest te esse diligētem*, or *ut diligens sis*, or *utrum diligens sis nec ne*. When the infinitive alone is used with *rēfert* or *intērest*, the preceding subject is understood; as, *omnium intērest recte fācere*, scil. *se*.

**REM. 5.** The degree of interest or importanee is expressed by adverbs or by neuter adjectives, etc., in the accusative or genitive; as, *magis*, *magnopere*, *vehēmenter*, *pārum*, *minime*, etc.; *multum*, *plūs*, *plūrimum*, *nihil*, *aliquid*, etc.; *tanti*, *quanti*, *magni*, *permagis*, *plūris*. But *minimo* *discrimine rēfert* is found in *Juv.* 5, 123.

**§ 220.** Many verbs which are usually otherwise construed, are sometimes followed by a genitive. This rule includes

1. Certain verbs denoting an affection of the mind; *ango*, *discrucior*, *excrucio*, *fullo*, *pendeo*, which are followed by *animi*; *dēcipior*, *dēsipio*, *fallor*, *fastidio*, *invideo*, *miror*, *vēreor*; as, *Absurde facis, qui angas te animi*. Plaut. *Me animi fallit*. Lucr. *Dēcipitur lābōrum*. Hor. *Dēsipiēbam mentis*. Plaut. *Iustitię prius mirer belline lābōrum*. Virg.

2. The following, in imitation of the Greek idiom; *abstineo*, *dēsino*, *purgo*. Hor.; *dēsisto*. Virg.; *laudo*, *prōhibeo*. Sil.; *lēvo*, *participo*. Plaut.; *libero*. Liv.; *dissolvo*. Tibull.: compare *liber lābōrum*; *opērum vācuis*; *pūrus scōleris*. § 213.

3. Some verbs denoting to fill, to abound, to want or need, to free, which are commonly followed by an ablative. Such are *abundo*, *cāreo*, *compleo*, *expleo*, *impleo*, *ēgeo*, *indigeo*, *sāturo*, *obsāturo*, *scōteo*; as, *Adōlescentem suę tēmētātis implet*. He fills the youth with his own rashness. Liv. *Animum explese flammę*. Virg. *Egeo consilii*. Cic. *Non tam artis indigent quam lābōris*. Id. See §§ 249 and 250, (2.)

4. *Pōtior*, which also is usually followed by an ablative; as, *Urbi pōtior*. To make oneself master of the city. Sall. *Pōtiri regni* (Cic.), *hostium* (Sall.), *rerum*. To make oneself master of the world. Cic. *Pōtio* (active) occurs in Plautus; as, *Eum nunc pōtuit servitūtis*. He has made him partaker of slavery. In the same writer, *pōtius est hostium* signifies, 'he fell into the hands of the enemy.' So, also, *Aliquem compōtire prędę* or vōti. App. So, *Rerum adeptus est*. Tac. *Dōminātiōnis āpisci*. Id. *Regnāvūt pōpūlōrum*. Hor.

## GENITIVE OF PLACE.

§ 221. 1. The name of a town in which any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; as,

*Habitat Miletū*, He lives at Miletus. Ter. *Quid Rōmæ faciā?* What can I do at Rome? Juv. *Hercūles Tyri maxime colitur*. Cic.

NOTE. For the construction of nouns of the third declension or plural number, see § 254. The following appears to be the best explanation that has been given of this diversity of construction, depending solely on the number or declension of the noun. The name of the town 'where' or 'in which' is probably neither in the genitive nor the ablative, but always, as in Greek, in the dative. Since the genitive and dative are alike in the singular of the first declension and the dative and ablative plural are the same in all declensions, such examples as *Rōmæ* and *Athēnis* present no difficulty. In the third declension the dative and ablative singular were anciently alike, and in such ablatives as *Athēni*, *Carthāgini*, *Lacedæmoni*, the old form remains, see § 82, Exc. 5, (c.) In the second declension there was an old dative in *ai*, as in Greek, which was commonly changed to *o*, but sometimes to *i*: and the latter is still found in *nulli*, *uni*, etc., see § 107, and in the adjective pronouns; as, *illi*, etc.

REMARK 1. Names of islands and countries are sometimes put in the genitive, like names of towns; as, *Ithacæ vitēre*, To live in Ithaca. Cic. *Corcyra fuitus*. Id. *Cydon plārtumum Cyprī vixit*, *Timōtheus Lesbī*. Nep. *Quum Miltiades domum Chersonēsī habuit*. Id. *Crētæ jussit considere Apollo*. Virg. *Rōmæ Nemiſceque faciēdra ejus mēmōrat*. Sall.

REM. 2. (a.) Instead of the genitive, the ablative of names of towns of the first and second declension and singular number, is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, *Rez Tyro decēdit*, The king dies at Tyre. Just. *Et Cōrintho et Athēnis et Lacedæmonē nunciāta est victōria*. Id. *Pons quem ille Abydō fecerat*. Id. *Hujus exemplar Rōmā nullum habemus*. Vitruv. *Non Labye, non ante Tyro*. Virg. For the explanation of this apparent anomaly, see the preceding note; in accordance with which it may be remarked, that the adverbs of place, *ibi*, *ibi, ibidem*, *alibi*, *alibi, hic*, *illic*, *istic*, etc., appear from their form to be ancient datives.—(b.) When the noun is qualified by an adjective, it is put, not in the genitive, but in the ablative with *in*; as, *In ipsā Alexandriā*. Cic. And poetically without *in*; *Gēnus Longā nostrum dōminābitur Albā*. Virg.—(c.) When *urbs*, *oppidum*, *lōcus*, etc., follow the genitive of place as appositions, they are put in the ablative either with, or, more rarely, without, *in*; as, *Archias Antiōchiæ nātus est, cēlebri quondam urbe*. Cic. *Cives Rōmānos Neāpoli*, in cēleberrimo oppido sæpe vidimus. Id. But when *in urbe*, etc., precede the name of a town, the latter also is put in the ablative; as, *In oppido Citio*. Nep.; and but very rarely in the genitive; as, *Cassius in oppido Antiōchiæ est*,—in the town of Antioch. Cic., where the genitive depends on *oppido*.

REM. 3. The genitives *dōmi*, *militiæ*, *belli*, and *hūmi*, are construed like names of towns; as,

*Tenuit se dōmi*, He staid at home. Cic. *Vir dōmi clārus*. Liv. *Spargit hūmi jussus dentes*,—on the ground. Ovid. *Militiæ* and *belli* are thus used, especially when opposed to *dōmi*; as, *Una semper militiæ et dōmi fuitus*,—both at home and in the camp. Ter. So *Dōmi militiæque*. Cic. *Et dōmi et militiæ*. Id. *Militiæ dōmique*. Liv. *Militiæ et dōmi*. Ter. *Belli dōmique*, in war and in peace. Hor.

(1.) *Dōmi* is thus used with the possessives *mea*, *tuas*, *sua*, *nostræ*, *vestræ*, and *aliēnæ*; as, *Dōmi nostræ vixit*, He lived at my house. Cic. *Apud eum sic fui tamquam meæ dōmi*. Id. *Sacrificium, quod aliēnæ dōmi fieret invisere*. Id. But with other adjectives, an ablative, generally with a preposition, is used; as, *In vicinā dōmo*. Ovid. *Paternā dōmo*. Id. Sometimes also with the possessives; as, *Meā in dōmo*. Hor. *In dōmo suā*. Nep. So, instead of *hūmi*, 'upon the ground';



*hūmo* is sometimes used, with or without a preposition; as, *In hūmo drēnded.* Ovid. *Sēdere hūmo nūdā.* Id.

(2.) When a genitive denoting the possessor follows, either *dōmī* or *in dōmo* is used; as, *Deprehensus dōmī Cēsāris.* Cic. *Dōmī illius fuisti.* Id. *In dōmo Cēsāris.* Id. *In dōmo ejus.* Nep.

(3.) The ablative *dōmo* for *dōmī* also occurs, but not in Cicero; as, *Ego id nunc expērior dōmo.* Plaut. *Dōmo se tēnere.* Nep. *Dōmo abditus.* Suet. *Bello for bellī* is found in Livy—*Dōmī bellōque.* So, also, *hūmo* for *hūmī*; *Strātus hūmo.* Stat. *Figit hūmo plantas.* Virg.: and in *hūmo lūmen figit.* Ovid.

(4.) *Terræ* is sometimes used like *hūmī*; as, *Sacra terræ cēlātīmus.* Liv. *Proiectus terræ.* Virg. *Ignes terræ condūt.* Luc. So, also, *ārēna*; *Truncum reliquit ārēna.* Virg.: and *vicinīe*; *Proxima vicinīe hābitat.* Plaut.

(5.) The genitive of names of towns, *dōmī*, *militiā*, etc., is supposed by some to depend on a noun understood; as, *urbe, oppido, castris, solo, loco, tempore*, etc., but see a different explanation above in Note.

#### GENITIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

II. Certain adverbs are followed by the genitive. See § 212, R. 4.

III. The genitive plural sometimes depends on the preposition *tēnus*; as,

*Cūmārum tēnus*, As far as Cumæ. Cœl. *Crārum tēnus.* Virg. *Littrum tēnus.* Id. *Urbium Orcyræ tēnus.* Liv.—For the ablative after *tēnus*, and for the place of the preposition, see § 241, and R. 1.

#### DATIVE.

§ 222. 1. The dative is the case of reference, as it denotes the object with reference to which the subject acts, or in reference to which it possesses any specified quality; or, in other words, the object for which, to the benefit or loss of which, any thing is or is done. Hence, in distinction from the dative of the end (§ 227) the dative of reference is called *dativus commodi et incommodi*, the dative of advantage and disadvantage; as,

*Scribo vōbis hunc librum*, I write this book for you. *Prōsum tibi*, or *Tibi utilis sum*, I am useful to you.

2. Hence the dative of advantage and disadvantage may be used (a) with adjectives and particles whose meaning is incomplete unless the object is mentioned in reference to which the quality exists. (b) With verbs both transitive and intransitive. If transitive they take an accusative of the nearer and a dative of the remoter object, if intransitive they take a dative only. (c) With certain verbs compounded with prepositions, after which the dative is used instead of the case which the preposition, if separate, would govern. (d) After a few verbal substantives derived from verbs which govern a dative.

#### DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

3. A noun limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the dative, to denote the object to which the quality is directed; as,

*Utilis agris*, Useful to the fields Juv. *Jucundus amicis*, Agreeable to his friends. Mart. *Inimicus quieti*, Unfriendly to rest. Id. *Charta inutilis scribendo*, Paper not useful for writing. Plin.

NOTE. The dative is commonly translated by the prepositions *to* or *for*; but sometimes by other prepositions, or without a preposition.

REMARK 1. Adjectives signifying *useful, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, inclined, ready, easy, clear, equal*, and their opposites, also those signifying *near*, many compounded with *con*, and verbals in *bilis*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Felix tuis*, Propitious to your friends. Virg. *Oratio ingrata Gallis*, A speech displeasing to the Gauls. Cæs. *Amicus tyrannidi*, Friendly to tyranny. Nep. *Labori inhabilis*, Unsuitable to labor. Colum. *Patri similis*, Like his father. Cic. *Nihil tam est Lybie diversum, quam Isocrates*. Aptum tempori. Id. *Malo pronus*. Sen. *Promptus seditiōni*. Tac. *Cuius facile est*. Ter. *Mihi certum est*. Cic. *Par fratri tuo*. Id. *Falsa veris finitima sunt*. Id. *Oculi concordes corpori*. Colum. *Multis bonis flebilis*. Hor. *Mors est terribilis iis, quorum*, etc. Cic.

(a.) The following are some of the adjectives included in Rem. 1, viz. *gratus, acceptus, dulcis, jucundus, latus, suavis; ingratus, insuavis, injucundus, molestus, gravis, acerbus, odiosus, tristis;—utilis, inutilis, bonus, saluber, salutaris, fructuosus; edammitosus, damnosus, funestus, noxius, pestifer, perniciosus, exitiosus;—amicus, benivolus, carus, familiaris, æquus, fidus, fidelis, propitius, secundus; inimicus, adversus, amicus, alienus, contrarius, infestus, infidus, iniquus, iratus;—aptus, accommodatus, appositus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus; ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens;—æqualis, par, impar, dispar, similis, dissimilis, absterilis, discolor;—pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus;—facilis, difficilis;—apertus, conspicuus, manifestus, perspicuus, obscurus, certus, compertus, notus, ambigus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, molitius;—vicinus, finitimus, confinis, conterminus, propior, proximus, cognatus, consolor, concors, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consorsus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, continens*.

(b.) Many adjectives of other significations, including some compounds of *ob, sub*, and *super*, as *obnoxius, obviuus, subjectus, supplex*, and *superstes*, are also followed by a dative of the object.

(c.) After verbals in *bilis*, the dative is usually rendered by the preposition *by*; as, *Tibi credibilis sermo*, A speech credible to you, i. e. worthy to be believed by you. Ovid.

(d.) The expression *dicto audiens*, signifying obedient, is followed by the dative; as, *Syracusanis nobis dicto audientes sunt*. Cic. *Audiens dicto fuit jussis magistratum*. Nep. In this phrase, *dicto* is a dative limiting *audiens*, and the words *dicto audiens* seem to form a compound equivalent to *obediens*, and, like that, followed by a dative; thus, *Nec plebs nobis dicto audiens atque obediens sit*. Liv. So *dicto obediens*; as, *Futura es dicto obediens, annon, patri*? Plaut.

REM. 2. (a.) The adjectives *æqualis, affinis, alienus, cognominis, communis, contrarius, fidus, insuetus, par, dispar, peculiarius, proprius, propinquus, acer, similis, assimilis, consimilis, socius, vicinus, superstes, supplex*, and some others, instead of a dative of the object, are sometimes followed by a genitive; as, *Par hujus*, Equal to him. Lucan. *Proprium est oratoris ornate dicere*. Cic. But most of these words, when thus used, seem rather to be taken substantively; as, *Æqualis ejus*, His contemporary. Cic.

(b.) *Similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis, par* and *dispar*, take the genitive, when an internal resemblance, or a resemblance in character or disposition, is to be expressed, and hence we always find *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, similis*; as, *Plures reges Römuli quam Nümæ similes*. Liv.

(c.) *Amicus, inimicus*, and *familiaris*, owing to their character as substantives, take a genitive even in the superlative; as, *Homo amicissimus nostrorum hominum*,—very friendly to our countrymen. Cic. On the other hand, *hostis*, though a substantive, is sometimes used like an adjective, being modified by

an adverb, and taking an object in the dative; as, *Expectantibus omnibus quisnam esset tam impius, tam dēmens, tam diis hominibusque hostis, qui, etc.* Cf. § 277, R. 1.

REM. 3. Some adjectives with the dative are followed by another case denoting a different relation; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*, A mind conscious to itself of rectitude. Virg. See § 213, R. 7.

REM. 4. Many adjectives, instead of the dative of the object, are often followed by an accusative with a preposition.

(1.) Adjectives signifying useful, fit, and the opposite, take an accusative of the thing with *ad*, but only a dative of the person; as, *Homo ad nullam rem utilis*. Cic. *Locus aptus ad insidias*. Id.

(2.) Adjectives denoting motion or tendency, take an accusative with *ad* more frequently than a dative; as, *Piger ad pœnas, ad prœmia velox*, Ovid; *Ad aliquem morbum prœclivior*, Cic.; *Ad omne facinus prœratus*, Id.; *Prœsum ad fidem*, Liv.;—sometimes with *in*; as, *Celer in pugnam*. Sil.

(3.) Many adjectives, signifying an affection of the mind, may have an accusative of the object with *in*, *erga*, or *adversus*, instead of the dative; as, *Fidelis in filios*. Just. *Mâter acerba in suos partus*. Ovid. *Grâtus erga me*. Cic. *Grâtum adversus te*. Id. So *Disimilis in dōminum*. Tac.

(4.) Adjectives signifying like, equal, common, etc., when plural, are often followed by the accusative with *inter*; as, *Inter se similes*. Cic. *Hæc sunt inter eos communiâ*. Id. *Inter se diversi*. Id.

REM. 5. *Prœpior* and *proximus*, instead of the dative, have sometimes, like their primitive *prœpe*, an accusative; as, *Quod vitium prœpius virtutem erat*. Sall. *P. Crassus proximus mâre Oceânum hiêmârat*. Cæsar. *Ager, qui proximus finem Mëgâlôpôlitânûm est*. Liv. Cf. § 238, 1.

REM. 6. (a.) Some adjectives, instead of the dative, have at times an ablative with a preposition. Thus, *par, communis, consentâneus, discors*, with *cum*; as, *Quem parem cum libëris fecisti*. Sall. *Consentâneum cum iis litëris*. Cic. *Civitas sæcum discors*. Liv. So *aliënus* and *diversus* with *a* or *ab*; as, *Aliënus a me*, Ter.; *A ratiōne diversus*, Cic.; or without a preposition; as, *Aliënum nostrâ âmicitiâ*. Id.—(b.) *Frētus*, which regularly takes the ablative, is in Livy construed with the dative; as, *fortünæ frētus*; *nulli rei frētus*, etc. Cf. § 244.—(c.) The participial adjectives *junctus* and *conjunctus*, instead of the dative, take sometimes the ablative either with or without *cum*.

REM. 7. *Idem* is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Jupiter omnibus idem*. Virg. *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*. Hor. In the first example, *omnibus* is a dative of the object; in the second, the dative follows *idem*, in imitation of the Greek construction with *αὐτῷ*, and is equivalent to *quod occidens*, or *quod facit is, qui occidit*. *Similis* is construed in the same manner in Hor. Sat. 1, 3, 123. *Idem* is generally followed not by a case, but by *qui*, *ac*, *atque*, *ut*, *quâsi*, or *quam*; sometimes by the preposition *cum*. Cf. § 207, R. 27, (d.) *Similis* and *par* are sometimes, like *idem*, followed by *ac* and *atque*.

REM. 8. Some verbal substantives are followed by the dative, when derived from verbs governing the dative; as, *Justitia est otēmpëratiō scriptis lëgibus institutisque populo-rum*. Cic. *Trăditio dñcijus rei alteri*. Id. *Exprobratiō cuiquam vëtëris fortunæ*. Liv.

NOTE. A dative of the object often follows *esse* and other verbs, in connection with a predicate nominative or accusative, but such dative is dependent, not on the noun, but on the verb. Cf. § 227, R. 4.

## DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 223. A noun limiting the meaning of a verb, is put in the dative, to denote the *object* to or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as,

*Mea domus tibi patet*, My house is open to you. Cic. *Pars optare locum tecto*, A part choose a site for a building. Virg. *Tibi sēris, tibi mētis*, You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself. Plant. *Licet nēmīni contra patriam ducere exercitum*, It is not lawful for any one to lead an army against his country. Cic. *Hoc tibi promitto*, I promise you this. Id. *Iteret latēri lētālis arundo*. Virg. *Surdo fabulam narras*. Hor. *Mihi responsum dedit*. Virg. *Sic eos non vobis fertis arātra, boves*. Id. *Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam*. Cic. *Apertat habendo ense*. Virg.

NOTE. The dative is thus used after all verbs, whether transitive or intransitive, personal or impersonal, and in both voices, provided their signification admits a reference to a remoter object, for whom or to whose benefit or injury any thing is done. In the passive voice, from their nature, neuter verbs can only be so construed impersonally. Cf. § 142, 1, and § 222, 2.

REMARK 1. The dative after many verbs is rendered not by *to* or *for*, but by other prepositions, or without a preposition. Many intransitive Latin verbs are translated into English by verbs transitive, and the dative after them is usually rendered like the object of a transitive verb.—Most verbs after which the signs *to* and *for* are not used with the dative, are enumerated in this and the following sections.

REM. 2. Many verbs signifying to favor, please, trust, assist, and their contraries, also to command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, and be angry, take a dative of the object.

NOTE. The neuter verbs comprehended in this rule generally express in the verbal form the meaning of those adjectives, which are followed by the dative, (cf. § 222, R. 1.) Thus, (a.) *Ille tibi favet*, She favors you, or is favorable to you. Ovid. *Mihi placēbat Pompōnius, minime displicēbat*. Cic. *Qui sibi fidit*. Hor. *Non licet sua commodi causā nocere altēri*. Cic. *Non intulitur illi ætati sed iudicium facietur*. Id. *Desperat salutis sue*. Id. *Næque mihi vestra decreta auxiliantur*. Sull. *Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique*. Hor. *Obēdire et parere voluntati*. Cic. *Quoniam factioni inimicorum resistere nequiverit*. Sull. *Mihi minabatur*. Cic. *Irasci inimicis*. Cæs.

(b.) So *Adulor*, *assentior*, *blandior*, *commōdo*, *faveo*, *gratificor*, *grator*, *gratūlor*, and its verbal *gratūlabundus*, *ignosco*, *indulgeo*, *lenōctnor*, *palpor*, *parco*, *plaudo*, *respondeo*, *studeo*, *supparātor*; *amūlor*, *incommōdo*, *invideo*, *noceo*, *obsum*, *officio*;—*arideo*, *plāceo*; *displīceo*;—*credo*, *fido*, *confido*; *despēro*, *diffido*;—*adminiculor*, *auxilior*, *mēdeor*, *mēdicor*, *optūlor*, *patrōctnor*, *prōsum*, *subvēnio*, *succurro*; *dēsum*, *insidiar*;—*impēro*, *mando*, *mōdēror*, *præcipio*, *tempēro*; *ausculto*, *morigēror*, *obēdio*, *obscundō*, *obsequor*, *obtempēro*, *pareo*, *dicto audiens sum*;—*ancillor*, *famūlor*, *ministro*, *servio*, *inservio*, *præstōlor*;—*adversor*, *refrāgor*, *obsto*, *obtreco*, *reluctor*, *rēntor*, *rēpugno*, *rēsisto*, and, chiefly in the poets, *bello*, *certo*, *luctor*, *pugno*;—*minor*, *commīnor*, *interminor*;—*irascor*, *succenseo*, *stōmāchor*.—To these may be added *aquo*, *adaquo*, *conctior*, *dēgēnēro*, *excello*, *nūdo*, *supplēto*, *prædicor*, *receptio* (to promise), *renūncio*, *sūdeor*, *persuādeo*, *disuādeo*, *supplicor*, *vāco*, *videor*, and sometimes *misceo* and *lāteo*:—also the impersonals *accidit*, *convēnit*, *conducit*, *contingit*, *dēcet*, *dōlet*, *expēdit*, *licet*, *libet*, or *libet*, *liquet*, *placet*, etc.—(c.) Intransitive verbs governing a dative are often used impersonally in the passive with the same case; as, *mihi intulitur*, I am envied. *Mihi maledicitur*, I am reviled. *Mihi parcitur*, I am spared. Hor. *Hoc persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

(1.) (a.) Many of the above verbs, which, as intransitive, take the dative, sometimes become transitive and are followed by an accusative; as, *adulor*, *ausculto*, *blandior*, *dēgēnēro*, *despēro*, *indulgeo*, *lāteo*, *mēdeor*, *mēdicor*, *mōdēror*, *obtreco*, *præstōlor*, *prōvideo*, etc.; as, *Adulāri* aliquem. Cic. *Hanc cæce dēgēnēres*. Ovid. *Indulgeo* me. Ter. *Huius adventum præstolans*. Cæs. *Prōvidere* rem frumentariam. Id.—Sometimes also by a preposition and the ablative or accusative; as, *A Stōicis dēgēnērāvī Pānatiū*. Cic. *De rēpublicā despērāre*. Id. *Obtrectārent* inter se. Nep.—or by a dependent clause; as, *Quæ despērāt tractāta nītescere posse, relīquit*. Hor.

(b.) Others, as transitive verbs, have, with the dative, an accusative, expressed or understood; as, *impéro, mando, ministro, minor, comminor, interminor, precipio, récipio, renuncio*, etc.; as, *Equites imperat civitatibus*; where *cogendos* is perhaps to be supplied. He enjoins upon the states the providing of cavalry. Cæs. See § 274, R. 5. *Ministrare victum dñci*. Varr. *Dēflagrationem urbi et lūlis tōti minabatur*. Cic.

(c.) *Æquo* and *adæquo* are construed with the accusative and either the dative or *cum* with the ablative.—*Invideo* takes either a single dative of the person or thing, a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; as, *Hōnorem mihi incident*. Hor.; or, when *invidere* is used in the sense of *privare*, a dative of the person and an ablative of the thing; as, *Non invidērunt laude suā mulieribus*. Liv. In Horace, by a Greek construction, the genitive is once used instead of the accusative or ablative of the thing; as, *Nēque ille sēpōtis cūeris nec longē invidet athena*.

(d.) *Cedo*, used transitively, takes a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; but sometimes the thing is expressed by the ablative; as, *cēdere dñci possessionē hortōrum*. So, also, *concedo tibi locum*, or *concedo tibi loco*.

(2.) Many verbs which, from their significations, might be included in the above classes, are, as transitive verbs, only followed by an accusative; as, *delecto, jūeo, adjūeo, adjūto, lædo, offendo*, etc.—*Jūbeo* is followed by the accusative with an infinitive, and sometimes by the accusative alone, or the dative with the infinitive or subjunctive; as, *Jūbeo te bēne spirāre*. Cic. *Læx jūbet ea quæ faciēda sunt*. Id. *Ubi Britannico jussit exsurgere*. Tac. *Quibus jussērāt, ut instantibus rēsistērēt*. Id.—*Fido* and *confido* are often followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition; as, *Fidēre cursu*. Ovid. Cf. § 246.

§ 224. Many verbs compounded with these eleven prepositions, *ad, antē, cōn, in, intēr, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, and supēr*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Annus ceptis*, Be favorable to our undertakings. Virg. *Rōmānis ēquītibz lītēra affēruntur*, Letters are brought to the Roman knights. Cic. *Anticellere* omnibus, To excel all. Id. *Anticellit* Iræ religiōnem. Nep. *Audetque viris concurrere virgo*. Virg. *Exercitum exercitui, dūces dūcibus comparare*. Liv. *Imminet* his aēr. Ovid. *Pēcōri signum impressit*. Virg. *Nox prælio intervēnit*. Liv. *Interdixit* histriōnibus scēnam. Suet. *Meis commōdis officiis et obstas*. Cic. *Cum se hostium tēlis objēcissent*. Id. *Posthūui mea sēria lūdo*. Virg. *Certāmini præsēdit*. Suet. *Hibernis Labiūnum prapōnuī*. Cæs. *Gēnibus prēcumbere*. Ovid. *Misēris succurrere disco*. Virg. *Iis subsidia submittebat*. Cæs. *Timidis supervēnit* *Ægle*. Virg.

NOTE 1. This rule implies that the compound retains the meaning of the preposition; and the dative following such compound is then used instead of the case governed by the preposition. When such compounds are transitive they have with the dative an accusative also, like other transitive verbs.

1. *Accēdo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adēquito, adhæreo, adjāceo, adno, adnāto, adsto, adstipulor, adsum, adversor, affuīgeo, allabor, allādo, annuo, appāreo, applaudo, appropinquo, arripō, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo; addo, adhībeo, adicio, adjungo, admōveo, adverte, advolvo, affēro, affigo, alligo, appūno, applico, aspergo*.

2. *Anticēdo, anticello, anteco, antesto, antevēnio, anteverto;—antifēro, antihabeo, antipōno*.

3. *Cōhæreo, collādo, concīno, congruo, consentio, consūno, consuesco, convīvo*, and, chiefly in the poets, *cōeo, concumbo, concuro, contendo;—confēro, conjungo, compāro, compōno*.

4. *Incido, incūbo, incumbo, indormio, ingēmisco, inhæreo, inhio, innascor, insilio, insideo, insisto, insio, insūdo, insulto, invādo, invigilo, illacrimo, illādo, imminēco, immōrior, immōror, impendeo, insum;—immisceo, impertio, impōno, imprimo, incido, inclādo, induo, infēro, ingēro, injicio, insēro, inspergo, insuesco, inūro*.

5. *Intercēdo, interclādo, interclādo, interjūceo, intermīco, intersum, intervēnio;—interdico, interjicio, interpōno*.

6. *Obambulo, oberro, obegusto, obductor, obmurmuro, obrepo, obsto, obristo, obstripe, obsum, obrecto, obvenio, obversor, occumbo, occuro, occurso, officio;—obduca, objicio, effero, affundo, oppono.*

7. *Postfero, posthabeo, postpono, postpulo, postscribo.*

8. *Præcedo, præcurro, præco, prælaceo, præminuo, præmitto, præideo, præsum, prævaleo, prævertor;—præfero, præfacio, præpono.*

9. *Præcumbo, præfacio, præpugno, prospicio, prævideo.*

10. *Succedo, succresco, succumbo, succurro, sufficio, suffragor, subdeleo, subjacea, subrepo, subsum, subvenio;—subdo, subjicio, subjugo, submitto, suppono, substerno.*

11. *Supercurro, supersto, supersum, supervenio, superoto.*

NOTE 2. In some verbs compounded with prepositions the meaning of the preposition is lost. Such compounds are either not followed by a dative, or the case depends, not on the preposition, but on the signification of the verb, according to § 223.

REMARK 1. (a.) Some verbs, compounded with *ab, de, ex, circum,* and *contra,* are occasionally followed by the dative; as, *absuam, desum, delabor, despero, excido, circumdo, circumfundo, circumjaceo, circumjicio, contradico, contraeo;* as, *Serta capiti delapsa,* The garlands having fallen from his head. Virg. *Numquid nummi exciderunt tibi?* Plaut. *Tigris urbi circumfunditur.* Plin. *Sibi desperans.* Cæs.—(b.) *Circumdo* and *circumfundo* take either an accusative of the thing with a dative of the person, or an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person; as, *circumdo altius custodias,* or *circumdo aliquem custodias.* *Aspergo, impingo, dono, imperto, exuo, and induo,* are construed in the same manner. Cf. § 251, R. 2.

REM. 2. Some verbs of repelling and taking away (most of which are compounds of *ab, de, ex,* or *ex,*) are sometimes followed by the dative, though more commonly by the ablative; as, *abigo, abrogo, abscindo, aufero, damno, arceo, defendo, demo, depello, derogo, detraho, eripio, eruo, excutio, eximo, extorqueo, extraho, exuo, prohibeo, surripio.* Thus, *Nec mihi te eripient,* Nor shall they take you from me. Ovid. *Solatium pecóri defendite.* Virg. *Hunc arcibus pecóri.* Id. So rarely *abrumpo, alieno, furor, and rapio.*

REM. 3. Some verbs of differing (compounds of *dis* or *dis*) likewise occur with the dative, instead of the ablative with the preposition *ab,* or poetically with the ablative alone; as, *différo, discrepo, discordo, dissensio, distideo, disto;* as, *Quantum simplex hilarisque nepoti discrepet, et quantum discordest, parvus avaro.* Hor. *Distabit infido scurræ amicus.* Hor. *Græcis Tuscânica stâtu differtunt.* Quint. *Comædia differt sermóni.* Hor. So likewise *misceo;* as, *Mista modestiæ gravitas.* Cic.

REM. 4. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, especially with *ad, con,* and *in,* instead of the dative, either constantly or occasionally take the case of the preposition, which is frequently repeated. Sometimes, also, a preposition of similar signification is used; as, *Ad primam vocem timidas advertitis aures.* Ovid. *Nemo eum antecessit.* Nep. *Saxa rides sola coalescere calce.* Lucr. *Infuerunt omnia in ignem.* Cæs. *Silex incumbbat ad amnem.* Virg. *Innicus moderamine navis.* Ovid. *In Pansam fratrem innixus.* Plin. *Conferre hanc perem cum illo bello.* Cic. In this substitution of one preposition for another, *ad* is used for *in,* and *in* for *ad;* *ab* for *ex;* *ad, ante, contra,* and *in,* for *ob;* *ad* and *ante,* for *pro.*

REM. 5. Neuter verbs of motion or of rest in a place, when compounded with the prepositions, *ad, ante, con, in,* etc., either take the dative, or, acquiring an active signification, are followed by the accusative; as, *Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt,* The Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in valor. Cæs. *Uterque, Isocratem alate præcurrit.* Cic. So *præco, præsto, præcerto, præcello.* See § 233, (3.)

§ 225. I. Verbs compounded with *satis, bene,* and *male,* are followed by the dative; as,

*Et naturæ et legibus satisfecit.* He satisfied both nature and the laws. Cic. *Tibi di benediciant omnes.* May all the gods bless you. Plaut. But also, *Amicum erga bene feci.* Id. *Malediciti utrique.* Hor. So *satisco, benedico, maledicō.*

NOTE. These compounds are often written separately; and the dative always depends not on *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, but on the simple verb. So, also, *bene* and *male* *atque* *volo*; as, *Tibi bene ex animo volo.* Ter. *Illi ego ex omnibus optime volo.* Plaut. *Non sibi male vult.* Petron. In like manner *valere dico*, and *vale dico*; as, *Augustus discens (e caris) sedentibus singulis valere dicebat.* Suet. *Tibi valēdicere non flet grātis.* Sen.—In late writers *benedico* and *maledico* sometimes take the accusative.

II. Verbs in the passive voice are sometimes followed by a dative of the agent, chiefly in the poets and the later prose writers; as, *Quidquid in hac causā mihi susceptum est.* Cic. *Nēque cernitur ulli.* Nor is he seen by any one. Virg. *Nulla tuarum audita mihi nēque visa sororum.* Id. *Barbārus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli.* Ovid. But the agent after passives is usually in the ablative with *a* or *ab*. See § 248, I.

III. The participle in *dus* is followed by a dative of the agent; as,

*Unda omnibus enaviganda.* The wave over which (we) all must pass. Hor. *Nōbis, cum semel occidit brevis lux, Nox est perpētua una dormienda.* Catull. *Adhibenda est nobis diligentia.* We must use diligence. Cic. *Vestigia summorum hominum sibi tuenda esse dicit.* Id. *Si vis me flere, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi.* Hor. *Faciendum mihi pūctum, ut responderem.* Id.

REMARK 1. The dative is sometimes wanting when the agent is indefinite; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.* Juv. *Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites, est.* Liv. In such examples, *tibi, vobis, nobis, hominibus*, etc., may be supplied. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

REM. 2. The participle in *dus* sometimes, though rarely, has, instead of the dative of the agent, an ablative with *a* or *ab*; as, *Non eos in deorum immortalium numero venerandos a vobis et colendos putatos?* Cic. *Hec a me in dicendo præteritunda non sunt.* Id.—The dative after participles in *dus* is by some referred to § 226.

IV. Verbs signifying motion or tendency are followed by an accusative with *ad* or *in*; as,

*Ad templum Palladis ibant.* Virg. *Ad prætorem hominem trahit.* Cic. *Vergit ad septemtriones.* Cæs. *In conspectum venire.* Nep.

So *curro, duco, fero, festino, fūgio, inclino, lego, mitto, pergo, porto, præcipito, præpero, tendo, tollo, vado, verto*.

REMARK 1. So likewise verbs of calling, exciting, etc.; as, *Eurum ad se vocat.* Virg. *Provocasse ad pugnam.* Cic. So *animo, hortor, incito, invito, lacesso, stimulo, suscito*; to which may be added *attineo, conformo, pertineo*, and *specto*.

REM. 2. But the dative is sometimes used after these verbs; as, *Clamor in coelo.* Virg. *Dum tibi literas meae veniant.* Cic. *Grægem vitæ compellere hisbico.* Virg. *Sedibus hunc refer ante suis.* Id. After *venio* both constructions are used at the same time; as, *Venit mihi in mentem.* Cic. *Venit mihi in suspicionem.* Nep. *Eum venisse Germanis in amicitiam cognoverat.* Cæs. *Pro-pinquo* (to approach) takes the dative only.

REM. 3. Sometimes also verbs signifying motion are followed by an accusative of place without a preposition, a supine in *um*, an infinitive, or an adverb of place; as, *Romam profectus est.* *Ite domum.* *Rus ibam.* *Lavinia venit lit-tora.* Virg. *Nēque ego te derisum venio.* Plaut. *Non nos Libycos populāre penates venimus.* Virg. *Huc venit.* Plaut. See §§ 237, 276, II. 271, N. 2.

REM. 4. After *do, scribo, or mitto literas*, the person for whom they are written or to whom they are sent, is put either in the dative or in the accusative with *ad*; as, *Ex eo loco tibi literas ante dederamus.* Cic. *Vulturcius literas tibi*

ad Catilinam dātas esse, dicebat. Id. Cæsar scribit Labiēno cum, etc. Cæs. Ad me Cælius de te scripsit. Cic. But to give one a letter to deliver is also expressed by *dāre lītēras dācui*, and also the delivery of the letter by the bearer.

§ 226. *Est* is followed by a dative denoting a *possessor*;—the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

*Est* thus used may generally be translated by the verb *to have* with the dative as its subject; as, *Est mihi dōmi pater*, I have a father at home. Virg. *Sunt nobis mitia pōma*, We have mellow apples. Id. *Grātia nobis opus est tua*, We have need of your favor. Cic. *Innocentiæ plus periculis quam honoris est*. Sall. *An nescis longas rēgibus esse manus?* Ovid. So with an infinitive as the subject, *Nec tibi sū duros dācuisse in prælia dentes*. Tib. 4, 3, 3. The first and second persons of *sum* are not thus construed.

REMARK 1. Hence *mihi est nōmen* signifies, I have the name, my name is, or I am called. The proper name is put either in the nominative, the dative, or the genitive. See § 204, R. 8. So also *cognōmen*, *cognōmentum*, and, in Tacitus, *vocābūlum*, *est mihi*.—Sometimes, also, a possessive adjective agreeing with *nōmen*, etc., supplies the place of the proper name; as, *Est mihi nōmen Tarcūnium*. Gell. *Mercūriale impōsuere mihi cognōmen*. Hor.

REM. 2. The dative is used with a similar signification after *fōre*, *suppētū*, *abest*, *deest*, and *dēfit*; as, *Pauper enim non est, cui rerum suppētū ūsus*. Hor. *Si mihi cauda fōret, cercōpithēcus eram*. Mart. *Dēfuit ars vōbis*. Ovid. *Non dēfōre Arsācidis virtutem*. Tac. *Lac mihi non dēfit*. Virg. *Hoc unum illi abfuit*. Cic.

REM. 3. With the dative of the person after *est* Sallust and Tacitus sometimes join, by a Greek idiom, *vōlens*, *cūpiens*, and *invitus*; as, *Quia neque plēbi militia vōlenti (esse) putābatur*. Because the common people were not thought to like the war. Sall. *Ut quibusque bellum invitū aut cūpiētibz erat*, According as each liked or disliked the war. Tac.

#### DATIVE OF THE END OR PURPOSE.

§ 227. *Sum*, and several other verbs, are followed by two datives, one of which denotes the *object to which*, the other the *end for which*, any thing is, or is done; as,

*Mihi maxima est cūræ*, It is a very great care to me. Cic. *Spēro nobis hanc conjunctionem vōluptāti fōre*, I hope this union will afford us pleasure. Id. *Mātri puellam dōno dēdi*. Ter. *Fābio laudi dātum est*. Cic. *Vitio id tibi vertunt*. Plaut. *Id tibi hōnōri hābētur*. Cic. *Mātūravit collēgæ vēnire auxilio*. Liv. *Cui bōno fuit?* To whom was it an advantage? Cic.

REMARK 1. The verbs after which two datives occur, are *sum*, *fōre*, *fio*, *do*, *dōno*, *dāco*, *hābeo*, *rēlinquo*, *tribuo*, *verto*; also *curro*, *eo*, *mitto*, *prōficiscor*, *vēnio*, *appēno*, *asigno*, *cēdo*, *comparo*, *pāteo*, *suppēdūto*, *ēmo*, and some others.

REM. 2. The dative of the *end or purpose* is often used after these verbs, without the dative of the object; as,

*Exemplo est formica*, The ant is (serves for) an example. Hor. *Absentium bōna divisim fuere*. Liv. *Rēliquit pignōri putāmina*. Plaut. *Quos esui et pōtui sunt*. Gell. *Esse dērisui*, To be a subject of ridicule. Tac. *Rēceptui cāmēre*, To sound a retreat. Cæs. *Aliquid dōti dācare*, To set out as dowry. Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) The verb *sum*, with a dative of the end, may be variously rendered; as by the words *brings*, *affords*, *serves*, *does*, etc. The sign *for* is often omitted with this dative, especially after *sum*; instead of it, *as*, or some other particle, may at times be used; as,



*Ignavia erit tibi magno dēdēcōri*, Cowardice will bring great disgrace to you. Cic. *Hæc res est argumentō*, This thing is an argument, or serves as an argument. Id. *Hoc vitio mihi dant*, This they set down as a fault in me. *Universos cūræ habuit*. Suet. *Una res erat magno ūsui*. .... was of great use. Lucil. *Quod tibi magnopere cordi est, mihi vehēmenter displicet*, What is a great pleasure, an object of peculiar interest to you, etc. Id.

(b.) Sometimes the words *fit*, *able*, *ready*, etc., must be supplied, especially before a gerund or a gerundive; as, *Quum solvendo civitates non essent*, .... not able to pay. Cic. *Dicitur, qui ōnēri fērendo essent*. Liv. *Quæ restinguendo igni fōrent*. Liv. *Rādix ejus est vescendo*. Plin.

REM. 4. Instead of the dative of the end, a predicate nominative or accusative is sometimes used; as, *Nātūrā tu illi pāter es*, By nature you are his father. *Amor est exitium pecōri*: or the purpose is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; as, *Alcui cōmes est ad bellum*. Cic. *Se Rēmīs in clientelam dēcābant*. Cæs.: or by the ablative with *pro*; as, *Innocentia pro mālivolentiā dūci capiti*. Sall. *Alcibus sunt arbores pro cūbillibus*. Cæs.

REM. 5. Instead, also, of the dative of the end or purpose, *quo?* to what end? for what purpose? why? sometimes occurs, with an accusative, which generally depends on a verb understood, or with an infinitive or a clause; as, *Quo mihi fortunam, si non conceditur ūti?* Hor. *Quo tibi, Pasiphaë, pretiōsas sūmre vestes?* Ovid.

REM. 6. After *do* and other similar active verbs an accusative of the purpose is found in apposition; as, *Lātini cōronam auream Jōvi donum in Cāpitōlium mittunt*. Liv. *Alcui cōmitem esse dātum*. Cic. Cf. § 204, R. 1; and § 230, R. 2.

NOTE. The dative, instead of the accusative, is sometimes used after the infinitive, when a dative precedes, and the subject of the infinitive is omitted; as, *Vōbis necesse est fortibus esse viris*. Liv. *Maximo tibi et civi et dūci evādere contigit*. Val. Max. See §§ 205, R. 6, and 239, R. 1.

## DATIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

§ 228. Some particles are followed by the dative of the object; as,

1. Some adverbs derived from adjectives; as,

*Prōpius Tiberi quam Thermōpylis*. Nep. *Proxime castris*, Very near to the camp. Cæs. *Prōpius stābūlis armenta tēnerent*. Virg. *Congruenter nātūræ, convenienterque vivere*, Agreeably to nature. Cic. *Epicūrus quam sibi constanter convenienterque dicit, non laborat*. Id. *Nēmīni nimium bene est*. Afran. *Mihi numquam in vitā fuit mēlius*. Hor. *Vivere vitæ hōminum amice*. Cic. *Bene mihi, bene vōbis*. Plaut. So, *Mihi obviam vēnisti*. Cic. *In certāmina sævo comminus ire viro*. Sil. *Quæstōres provinciæ mihi præsto fuērunt*. Cic. *Sāmos est exaduersum Milēto*. App.

REMARK. *Prōpius* and *proxime*, like their primitive *prōpe*, are sometimes construed with *a* and the ablative; as, *Prōpe a meis ædibus*. Cic. *Stellas errantes prōpius a terris*. Id. *A Surā proxime est Philiscum, oppidum Parthorum*. Plin.

2. Certain prepositions, especially in comic writers; as, *Mihi clam est*, It is unknown to me. Plaut. *Contra nobis*. Id. But in such instances they seem rather to be used like adjectives.

3. Certain interjections; as, *Hei mihi!* Ah me! Virg. *Væ mihi!* Wo is me! Ter. *Væ victis esse!* Liv. *Væ misero mihi*. Plaut. *Item tibi*. Id. *Ecce tibi*. Cic.

NOTE. (a.) The dative of the substantive pronouns seems sometimes nearly redundant, but it always conveys the expression of a lively feeling, and is therefore termed *dātivus ethicus*; as,

*Fur mihi es*, .... in my opinion. Plaut. *An ille mihi liber, cui mulier impetrat?* Cic. *Tongilium mihi eduxit.* Id. *Ubi nunc nobis deus ille magister?* Virg. *Ecce tibi Sēbōsus!* Cic. *Hem tibi tālentum argenti!* Philippiū est. Plaut. *Sibi* is sometimes subjoined quite pleonastically to *suis*; as, *Suo sibi glādio hunc jāgulo.* Plaut. *Ignōrans suo sibi servit patri.* Id. *Sibi suo tempore.*

(b.) The following phrases also occur with *volo* and a reflexive pronoun: *quid tibi vis?* what do you want? *quid sibi iste vult?* what does he want? *quid vult sibi hęc oratio?* what does this speech mean? *quid hęc sibi dona vult?* what is the meaning of these presents? or, what is their object?

## ACCUSATIVE.

### ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 229. The object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative; as,

*Lēgatos mittunt*, They send ambassadors. Cæs. *Animus movet corpus*, The mind moves the body. Cic. *Da vñiam hanc*, Grant this favor. Ter. *Eum imitātī sunt*, They imitated him. Cic. *Pisces Sýri vñerantur.* Id.

REMARK 1. A transitive verb, with the accusative, often takes a genitive, dative, or ablative, to express some additional relation; as,

*Te convinco amentię*, I convict you of madness. Cic. *Da locum mēlioribus*, Give place to your betters. Ter. *Solvit se Teucria luctu*, Troy frees herself from grief. Virg. See those cases respectively.

REM. 2. Such is the difference of idiom between the Latin and English languages, that many verbs considered transitive in one, are used as intransitive in the other. Hence, in translating transitive Latin verbs, a preposition must often be supplied in English; as, *Ut me caveret*, That he should beware of me. Cic. On the other hand, many verbs, which in Latin are intransitive, and do not take an accusative, are rendered into English by transitive verbs; as, *Ille mihi favet*, He favors me: and many verbs originally intransitive acquire a transitive signification.

REM. 3. The verb is sometimes omitted:—

1. To avoid its repetition; as, *Eventum sēnatus, quem (scil. dāre) vidēbitur, dabit.* Liv.

2. The interrogative interjection *quid?* what? depends on *ais* or *censes*. So also *quid vēro?* *quid igitur?* *quid ergo?* *quid ēnim?* which are always followed by another question, and both questions may be united into one proposition, the first serving merely to introduce the interrogation. With *quid postea?* *quid tum?* supply *sequitur*. With *quid quod*, occurring in transitions, *dicam de eo* is omitted, but it may be rendered 'nay,' 'nay even,' 'but now,' 'moreover,' etc., without an interrogation.—*Dicam* is also to be supplied with *quid multa?* *quid plūra?* *ne multa;* *ne multis;* *ne plūra*. The infinitive *dicere* is also sometimes omitted; as, *Nimis multa videor de me.* Cic. *Perge reliqua.* Id.

REM. 4. The accusative is often omitted:—

1. When it is a reflexive pronoun; as, *Nox præcipitat, scil. se.* Virg. *Tum prōra avertit.* Id. *Eo lavātum, scil. me.* Hor.

The reflexives are usually wanting after *abdo*, *abstineo*, *accingo*, *adæquo*, *æquo*, *agglōmēro*, *augeo*, *cēdō*, *congrēntino*, *continuo*, *dēclino*, *dēcōquo*, *dēsino*, *diffēro*, *dāro*, *erumpo*, *flecto*, *dēfecto*, *facesso*, *incipio*, *incitno*, *insinuo*, *irrumo*, *jungo*, *lavo*, *lazo*, *lénio*, *māituro*, *mollio*, *mōvō*, *māto*, *pōno*, *præcipiō*, *prōrumo*, *quātio*, *rēmīto*, *retracto*, *sēdo*, *sisto*, *stābilo*, *suppedito*, *tardo*, *tēneo*, *tendo*, *trāficio*, *transmitto*, *turbo*, *vārio*, *vergo*, *verto*, *dēvorto*, *rēvorto*, *vestio*, *vibro*; and more rarely after many others.

2. When it is something indefinite, has been previously expressed in any case, or is easily supplied; as, *Ego, ad quos scribam, nescio, scil. lītras.* Cic. *De quo et lēvum tgi diligenter, et scripsi ad te.* Id. *Bēne fēcit Silius.* Id. *Ducit in hostem, scil. exercitum.* Liv.

REM. 5. An infinitive, or one or more substantive clauses, may supply the place of the accusative after an active verb; as,

*Da mihi fallere.* Hor. *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum.* Id. *Cupio me esse clementem.* Cic. *Athēnienses stultuerunt ut naves conscenderent.* Id. *Vereor ne a doctis reprehendar.* Id. *Eue, Bacche, sonat.* Ovid. Sometimes both constructions are united; as, *Di Iram miserantur inānem amborum, et tantos mortālibus esse lābores.* Virg.—Respecting the infinitive with and without a subject-accusative after an active verb, see § 270–273; and for the subjunctive after such verbs, see § 272.

(a.) In such constructions, the *subject* of the dependent clause is sometimes put in the accusative as the *object* of the leading verb; as, *Nosti Marcellum, quam tardus sit, for Nosti quam tardus sit* Marcellus. Cic. *Illum, ut vivat, optat.* Ter. *At te ego faciam, ut minus valeas.* Plaut.

(b.) An ablative with *de* may also supply the place of the accusative, by the ellipsis of some general word denoting *things, facts, etc.*, modified by such ablative; as, *De repūblīcā vestrā paucis accipe.* Sall. Compare a similar omission of a *subject* modified by *de* and the ablative, § 209, R. 3, (2.)

REM. 6. The impersonal verbs of feeling, *miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, piget, miserescū, misērētur*, and *pertæsum est*, are followed by an accusative of the person exercising the feeling, and a genitive of the object in respect to which it is exercised. Cf. § 215, (1.); as,

*Eorum nos miseret,* We pity them. Cic. The impersonal *Vēritum est* also occurs with such an accusative; *Quos non est vēritum pōnere*, etc. Cic.

REM. 7. *Jūvat, delectat, fallit, fugit, præterit, and decet*, with their compounds, take an accusative of the person; as,

*Te hildri animo esse valde me jūvat,* That you are in good spirits greatly delights me. Cic. *Fugit me ad te scribere.* Cic. *Illud aliūrum quam sit difficile, te non fugit.* Id. *Nec vero Cæsārem fēfellit.* Cæs. *Fūcis, ut te decet.* Ter. So also when used personally; as, *Parvum parva decet.* Hor.; but *decet* often takes the accusative of the person with the infinitive; as, *Hanc maculam nos decet effūgere.* Ter.; and in comic writers a dative; as, *Vobis decet.* Ter.

For *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, after *refert* and *intērest*, see § 219, R. 1: and for the accusative by attraction, instead of the nominative, see § 206, (6.), (b.)

§ 230. Verbs signifying to name or call; to choose, render or constitute; to esteem or reckon, which in the passive voice have two nominatives, are followed in the active voice by two accusatives, one of the *object* and the other of the *predicate*. Cf. § 210, R. 3, (3.); as,

*Urbem ex Antiōchi patris nōmine Antiōchiām vocāvit,* He called the city Antioch, etc. Just. *Lūdōs facis me,* You make game of me. Plaut. *Me consūlem fecistis.* Cic. *Iram bene Ennius Initium dixit insanīæ.* Id. *Ancum Marcium regem pōpulus creāvit.* Liv. *Sulpiciūm accusatōrem suūm nūmērābat, non compētītorem.* Cic. *Quum vos testes habeam.* Nep.

NOTE 1. The following are among the verbs included in this rule, viz. *appello, dico, nōmino, nunciō, pērhībeo, sālūto, scribo* and *inscribo, vōco*; *cāpio, constituō, creō, dēclāro, dēligo, dēsigno, dico, eligo, facio, efficio, instituo, lēgo, prōdo, reddo, rēnunciō*; *dāco, dignor, existimo, habēo, iudico, nūmero, pūto, repērio, intelligo, invēnio, se prābere* or *prastāre*, etc.

NOTE 2. An ablative with *ex* occurs, though rarely, instead of the accusative of the object; as, *Fortūna me, qui liber fuēram, servum fecit, e summo infimūm.* Plaut. Cf. *Qui recta prāva faciunt.* Ter.

NOTE 3. An infinitive may supply the place of the objective accusative; as, *Sic stimulasse vocat crimen.* Ovid.:—and sometimes of the predicate accusative

also; as, *Si rep̄r̄re v̄cas amitt̄re certius; aut si sc̄ire ubi sit rep̄r̄re v̄cas.* Id. So also an adjective may supply the place of the predicate accusative; as, *Præbuit se dignum suis maj̄oribus.* Cic. *Ass̄drem certior̄em faciunt.* Cæs.

REMARK 1. After verbs signifying to esteem or reckon, one of the accusatives is often the subject, and the other the predicate, of *esse* expressed or understood; as,

*Eum av̄arum possim̄us existim̄are.* Cic. *Talem se imp̄r̄torem præbuit.* Nep. *Præsta te eum, qui mihi es cognit̄us.* Cic. *Mercūrium omnium inventorem artium f̄erunt; hunc viarum atque itin̄erum dūcem arbitrantur.* Cæs.; or an adjective supplies the place of the predicate accusative; as, *Ne me existim̄aris ad m̄nendū esse prop̄ensior̄em.* Cic.

NOTE 4. Instead of the predicate accusative, (1) *pro* with the ablative sometimes follows *p̄t̄o*, *dūco*, and *habeo*, but denotes only an approximation; as, *Aliquid pro certo hab̄ere* or *p̄t̄are.* *Ea pro falsis dūcūt.* Sall. *Aliquem pro hoste hab̄ere.* Cæs.—So also in with the ablative; as, *Nihil præter virtutem in bonis hab̄ere.* Cic. *Aliquem in nūm̄ro hostium dūcere.* Cic.—and the ablative without in; as, *Uti vos affinium lōco dūcerem.* Sall.—So also *e* or *ex* with the ablative; as, (*Uk*) *fāc̄eret quod e rēp̄blicā fidēque suā dūceret.* Liv.—Sometimes (2) the genitive; as, *Officii dūzit exor̄are filias patrem.* Suet. (See § 211, R. 8, (8.)) So with a genitive or an ablative of price or value; as, *P̄t̄are aliquem nihilo.* Cic. *Non hab̄eo nauci Marsum auḡrem.* Enn.—and sometimes (3) a dative; as, *Quando tu me hab̄es desp̄cātui.* Plaut.—or an adverb; as, *Egre hab̄uit, filium id pro p̄rentē ausum.* Liv. And (4) *ad* or *in* with the accusative; as, *Lōca ad hibernācula lēgere.* Liv. *Aliquem in Patres lēgere.* Id.: or (5) the genitive depending on the ablative of cause, manner, etc.; as, *Qui servitūtem dōditiōis nōmine appellant.* Cæs.

REM. 2. Many other verbs, besides their proper accusative, take a second, denoting a purpose, time, character, etc.

Such are *do*, *tribuo*, *sūmo*, *p̄t̄o*, *pōno*, *adjungo*, *ascribo*, *cognosco*, *accio*, *fingo*, *significo*, etc.; as,

*Quare ejus fāḡz cōmitem me adjunḡerem.* Cic. *Hōm̄num op̄inio sōcium me ascribit tuis laudibus.* Id. *Quos ego sim toties jam dēdignāta m̄rtos.* Virg. *Hunc igitur rēgem agnosct̄mus, qui Philippum dēdignātur patrem?* Curt. *Filiam tuam mihi uxorem posco.* Plaut. *P̄t̄it hanc Sāt̄urnia m̄nus.* Ovid. Such constructions may often be referred to apposition, or to an ellipsis of *esse*.

§ 231. Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, and *cēlo* (to conceal), are followed by two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; as,

*Hoc te rēh̄ementer rōgo.* Cic. *Illud te ōro, ut,* etc. Id. *Rōgo te nummos,* I ask you for money. Mart. *Posce deos v̄niam,* Ask favor of the gods. Virg. *Quum lēgent quib̄ m̄usicam dōcuerit Ep̄aminondam,* When they shall read who taught Ep̄aminondas music. Nep. *Antigōnus iter omnes cēlat,* Antigonus conceals his route from all. Id. *Dēp̄recāri deos m̄la.* Sen. *Quōd̄ie Cæsar Œduos fr̄umentum fāgit̄are.* Cæs. *Multa deos ōrans.* Virg.

REMARK 1. This rule includes the verbs of asking and demanding, *flāgit̄o*, *efflāgit̄o*, *obsecro*, *ōro*, *exōro*, *contendo*, *percontor*, *posco*, *reposco*, *consūlo*, *pr̄cor*, *dēp̄recor*, *rōgo*, and *interrogō*, which, with the accusative of the person, take the accusative of the neuter pronouns *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*, *quid*, more frequently than that of a substantive; of teaching, *dūceo*, *ēdūceo*, *dēdūceo*, and *ērūdio*, which last has two accusatives only in the poets. *Admōneo* and *consūlo* are rarely found with two accusatives; as, *Consūlam hanc rem amicos.* Plaut. *Eam rem nos lōcus admōnuīt.* Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the accusative of the person, verbs of asking and demanding often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; as, *Non dēb̄bam abs te has l̄t̄ras posc̄ere.* Cic. *V̄niam ōrēmus ab ipso.* Virg. *Istud v̄lēbam ex te percont̄ari.* Plaut.

REM. 3. (a.) Instead of the accusative of the thing, the ablative with *de* is sometimes used; as, *Sic ego te eisdem de rebus interrōgem.* Cic. De itinere hostium senatum docet. Sall. *Basus noster me de hoc libro celavit.* Cic. Cf. § 229, R. 5, (b.). (b.) Sometimes also instead of the accusative of the thing an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause is used; as, *Deos precari debetis,* ut urbem defendant. Cic. *Ut doceam Rullum posthac tacere.* Id. *Dociui id non fieri posse.* Id. *Docent eum qui vir Sex. Roscius fuerit.* Id. (c.) With verbs of teaching, the instrument by means of which the art is practised is put in the ablative; as, *Aliquem fidibus docere.* Cic. *Docere aliquem armis.* Liv. *Literæ* may be used either in the accusative or in the ablative; as, *Te literas doceo.* Cic. *Doctus Græcis literis.* Id.

REM. 4. Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, are not followed by two accusatives; as, *exigo, peto, postulo, quero, scitor, sciscitor*, which, with the accusative of the thing, take an ablative of the person with the preposition *ab, de, or ex; imbuo, instituo, instruo*, etc., which are sometimes used with the ablative of the thing, generally without a preposition, and are sometimes otherwise construed; as, *Instruere aliquem ad discendum.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) Many active verbs with the accusative of the person, take also an accusative denoting in what respect or to what degree the action of the verb is exerted.

(b.) The accusative of degree, etc., is commonly *nihil*, a neuter pronoun, or a neuter adjective of quantity; as, *Nom quo me aliquid juvare posses.* Cic. *Pauca pro tempore milites hortatus.* Sall. *Id adjuta me.* Ter. *Næque est te fallere quidquam.* Virg. Cf. § 232, (8.)

REM. 6. By a similar construction, *genus* and *seculus*, 'sex,' are sometimes used in the accusative, instead of the genitive of quality; as, *Nullas hoc genus vigiliæ vigilarunt.* Gell. So, *Omnes muliebri sæculo.* Suet. Cf. 211, R. 6, (4.)

§ 232. (1.) Some neuter verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred signification to their own; as,

*Vitam jucundam vivere,* To live a pleasant life. Plaut. *Mirum somniavi somnium,* I have dreamed a wonderful dream. Id. *Furere hunc furorem.* Virg. *Istam pugnam pugnabo.* Plaut. *Pugnare dicenda Mæsis proelia.* Hor. *Lusum insolentem ludere.* Id. *Si non servitutem serviat.* Plaut. *Quæror haud faciles questus.* Stat. *Juravi verissimum jusjurandum.* Cic. *Ignotas jubet ire vias.* Val. Flacc. So, also, *Ire exsequias,* To go to a funeral. Ter. *Ire supplicias,* To go to one's assistance. *Ire infitias,* To deny. This expression is equivalent to *infittior*, and may like that take an accusative; as, *Si hoc unum adjunxero, quod nemo eat infittias.* Nep.: or the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Næque infittias imus Stelliam nostram provinciam esse.* Liv. *Ut eum gaudium gauderemus.* Cæsar. ad Cic. *Proficisci magnum iter.* Cic. *Pollux ilque reditque viam.* Virg. This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective.

(2.) Verbs commonly neuter are sometimes used transitively, and are then followed by an accusative.

Accusatives are thus used with *oleo* and *sapio*, and their compounds, *redoleo, respicio*; as, *Olet unguenta,* He smells of perfumes. Ter. *Olere perëgrinum,* To have a foreign smell. Cic. *Orationes ridolentes antiquitatem.* Id. *Mella herbam eam sapiunt,* The honey tastes of that herb. Plin. *Uva piceum respiciens.* Id. So, *Sitio honores.* Cic. *Carnem pluit.* Liv. *Claudius æleam studiōssime luit.* Suet. *Erumpere diu coercitum iram in hostes.* Liv. *Libros evigilare.* Ovid. *Præire verba.* Liv. *Nec vox hominem sonat.* Virg. *Sūdare mella.* Id. *Morientem nōmine clānat.* Id. *Quis post vina gravem militiam aut paupერიem crepat?* Hor. *Omnes una nūnet nox.* Id. *Ingrati animi crimen horreo.* Cic. *Ego meas quæror fortūnas.* Plaut. *Vivere Bacchanalia.* Juv. *Pastorem sollaret uti Cyclops, rogabat.* Hor. So the passive; *Nunc agrestem Cyclops mōvetur.* Id. *Xerxes quum mære ambulavisset, terram navigasset.* Cic. *Quis stadium currit.* Id. *Communia jura migrare.* Id. *Te volo colloqui.* Plaut. *Ea disserere mātū.* Cic.

*Corydon ardebat* Alexin. Virg. *Stygias jura vimus undas*. Ovid. *Navigat æquor*. Virg. *Currimus æquor*. Id. *Pascuntur sylvas*. Id.

NOTE 1. Accusatives are found in like manner after *ambulo, calleo, doleo, equito, fleo, gaudeo, gemo, glorior, horreo, laetor, latro, nato, palleo, paveo, pereo, depereo, predo, queror, rideo, scio, sibilo, taceo, tremo, trepido, vado, venio*, etc.

(3.) Neuter verbs and sometimes adjectives also may be followed by an accusative denoting *in what respect*, or *to what degree*, the feeling, condition, etc., is manifested; as,

*Nihil lāboro*. Cic. *Num id lacrimat virgo?* Does the maid weep on that account? Ter. *Multa alia peccat*. Cic. *Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achivi*. Hor. *Nec tu id indignari posses*. Liv. *Illud mihi letandum video*. Cic. *Illud valde tibi assentior*. Id. *Idem gloriari*. Id. *Hæc glorians*. Liv. *Hoc studet unum*. Hor.—So, *Id operam do*, I strive for this. Ter. *Consilium petis, quid tibi sim auctor*. Cic. *Quod quidam auctores sunt*, Which is attested by some authors. Liv. *Nil nostri miserere?* Virg.—*Nihil Rōmāna plebs similis*. Liv. *Senatus nihil sane intentus*. Sall. These limiting accusatives have commonly the force of adverbs, particularly *nihil*, which is used like an emphatic *son* in the sense of 'in no way,' 'in no respect.' So *non nihil*, 'to some extent,' 'in some measure.'

NOTE 2. In the above and similar examples, the prepositions *ob, propter, per, ad*, etc., may often be supplied. This construction of neuter verbs is most common with the neuter accusatives *id, quid, quidquam, aliquid, quicquid, quod, nihil, nonnihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, unum, multa, pauca, alia, cetera, omnia*, etc. Cf. § 256, R. 16, N.

§ 233. Many verbs are followed by an accusative depending upon a preposition with which they are compounded.

(1.) Active verbs compounded with *trans, ad, and circum*, have sometimes two accusatives, one depending upon the verb, the other upon the preposition; as,

*Omnem equitatum pontem transducit*, He leads all the cavalry over the bridge. Cæs. *Agessilæus Hellespontum copias trajecit*. Nep. *Petræus jusjurandum adigit Afranium*. Cæs. *Roscillum Pompeius omnia sua præsidia circumduxit*. Id. *So, Pontus scōpulos superjicit undam*. Virg. So, also, *adverto* and *induco* with *animum*; as, *Id animum advertit*. Cæs. *Id quod animum induxerat paulisper non tenuit*. Cic. So, also, *injicio* in Plautus—*Ego te manum injiciam*.

(2.) Some other active verbs take an accusative in the passive voice depending upon their prepositions; as,

*Magicas accingier artes*, To prepare oneself for magic arts. Virg. In prose writers the *ad* is in such cases repeated; as, *accingi ad consilium*. Liv. *Classis circumvehitur arcem*. Id. *Quod anguis dōmi vectem circumjectus fuisset*. Cic. *Locum prætervectus sum*. Id.

(3.) Many neuter verbs, especially verbs of motion, or of rest in a place, when compounded with prepositions which govern an accusative, become transitive, and accordingly take an accusative; as,

*Gentes quæ mare illud adjacent*, The nations which border upon that sea. Nep. *Obsequiare agmen*. Curt. *Incidunt mæstos locos*. Tac. *Translucit flammæ*. Ovid. *Successere tecta*. Cic. *Ludorum diebus, qui cognitionem intervenerant*. Tac. *Adire provinciam*. Suet. *Caveat ne proelium ineat*. Cic. *Ingrèdi iter pedibus*. Cic. *Excurrere horti quos modo præteribamus*. Id.

NOTE. To this rule belong many of the compounds of *ambulo, cædo, curro, eo, equito, fleo, gradior, labor, no* and *nato, repo, salio, scando, vado, vehor, venio, vado*;—*cubo, flecto, sedeo, sisto, sto*, etc., with the prepositions included in § 224, and with *ex*.

**REMARK 1.** Some neuter verbs compounded with prepositions which govern an ablative, in like manner become transitive, and are followed by an accusative; as,

*Nēmīnem convēni*, I met with no one. *Cic. Qui societatem coiēris*. *Id. Aversari* hōnōres. *Ovid. Ursi arborem aversi dērepunt*. *Plin. Edormi* crāpūllam. *Cic. Egressus* exsiliū. *Tac. Ecādūque* celer ripam. *Virg. Excēdere* nūmērū. *Tac. Exire* līnen. *Ter. Tibur aqua fertilē praeflunt*. *Hor.*

**REM. 2.** After verbs both active and neuter, compounded with prepositions which take an accusative, the preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as,

*Cæsar se ad nēmīnem adjunxit*. *Cic. Multitudinem* trans Rhēnum in Galliam transducere. *Cæs.—In Galliam invāsit* *Antōnius*. *Cic. Ad me adire* quodam mēmīni. *Id. Orator peragrat* per ānimos hōmīnum. *Id. Ne in sēnātum accēdīrem*. *Id. Regina* ad templū incescit. *Virg. Juxta gēntiōrem adstat* *Lāvīnia*. *Id. Fines* extra quos *egredi* non possim. *Cic. A dative* instead of the accusative often follows such compounds, according to § 224. *Circum* is not repeated.

**NOTE.** Some verbal nouns and verbal adjectives in *bundus* are followed by an accusative, like the transitive verbs from which they are derived; as,

*Quid tibi huc rēceptio ad te est meum vīrum?* Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you? *Plaut. Quid tibi, mālū, me, aut quid ego āgam, carūto 'st?* *Id. Quid tibi hanc deditio est?* *Id. Quid tibi hanc nōtio est, inquam, āmicam meam?* *Quid tibi hanc dīgitio tactio 'st?* *Id. Hanno vitābundus* castra hostium consulesque. *Liv. Mithridātes Rōmānū mēditābundus* bellum. *Just. Mirābundi* vānā spēcīem. *Liv. Pōpūlabundus* agros. *Sisenn. Carnificem imāgnābundus*. *App.*

§ 234. A verb in the passive voice has the same government as in the active, except that the accusative of the active voice becomes the nominative of the passive.

**NOTE 1.** The accusative of the person with the infinitive, after verbs of *saying* and *commanding*, may become the subject of the passive voice; as, Active, *Dico* rēgem *esse justum*;—Passive, *Rex dicitur justus esse*. Act. *Jūbeo* te *rēdire*;—Pass. *Jūberis rēdire*: the construction in the passive being the same as though *rēgem* and *te* had depended immediately upon *dico* and *jūbeo*.—So, also, when the accusative of the person is the object of the verb and the infinitive stands as the accusative of the thing. Cf. § 270, N.

**I.** When a verb, which in the active voice takes an accusative both of the person and of the thing, is changed to the passive form, the accusative of the person becomes the nominative, and the accusative of the thing is retained; as,

*Rōgātus est* sententiam, He was asked his opinion. *Liv. Interrogātus* causam. *Tac. Sēgētes illmentāque dēbita dives* poscēbātur hūmus. *Ovid. Mōtus dōctri* gaudet *Iōnicos* mātūra virgo. *Hor. Omnes bellī artes* edoctus. *Liv. Nosne hoc cēlātō tam diu?* *Ter. Multa in extis* mōnēmur. *Cic.*

**NOTE 2.** The accusative of the thing after *doctus* and *ēdoctus* is rare; and after *cēlāri* it is generally a neuter pronoun; as *hoc* or *id* cēlābar; of this I was kept in ignorance; but it is found also with the person in the dative; as, *Id* Alcibiādi *diūtius cēlāri non pōtuit*. *Nep. Alcib. 5. Cēlo*, and especially its passive, generally takes *de* with the ablative.

**REMARK 1. (a.)** *Induo* and *exuo*, though they do not take two accusatives in the active voice, are sometimes followed by an accusative of the thing in

the passive; as, *Indūtur ātras vestes*, She puts on sable garments. Ovid. *Thōrāca indūsus*. Virg. *Exiit est Rōma sēnectam*. Mart. *So indicor* and *cingor*; as, *Ferrum cingitur*. Virg. *So récingitur anguem*. Ovid.

(b.) When two accusatives follow an active verb compounded with *trans*, the passive retains that which depends upon the preposition; as, *Belgæ Rhēnum antiquitus transducti*. Cæsar.

REM. 2. The future passive participle in the neuter gender with *est*, is sometimes, though rarely, followed by an accusative; as, *Multa nobis rébus quum sit agendum*. Lucr. *Quam (viam) nobis ingrédiendum est*. Cic.

II. Adjectives, verbs, and perfect participles, are sometimes followed by an accusative denoting the *part* to which their signification relates; as,

*Nūdus membra*, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os hūmērosque deo similis*. Id. *Clāri gēnus*. Tac. *Tribūni suam vicem anxii*. Liv. *Trēmūt artus*. Virg. *Cētera porce puer bello*. Id. *Sibila colla tūmentem*. Id. *Explēri mentem nēquit*. Id. *Grūneus erūtur oculos*. Ovid. *Picti scūta Labici*. Virg. *Collis frontem lēmiter fustigātus*. Cæsar. *Animum incensus*. Liv. *Oblitus faciē suā crūdēre*. Tac.

REMARK 1. In this construction an ablative is often joined with the perfect participle; as, *Miles fractus membra lābore*. Hor. *Dextērum gēnu lāpide ictus*. Suet. *Adversum fémur trāgūlā grāviter ictus*. Liv.

REM. 2. This is a Greek construction, and is usually called the *limiting* or *Greek accusative*. It is used instead of an ablative of limitation, (§ 250,) and occurs most frequently in poetry.

REM. 3. A limiting accusative instead of the ablative is found also in a few ordinary expressions, as in *partim* (for *partem*), *vicem*, *magnam* and *maximam partem*, instead of *magnā* or *maximā ex parte*, or the adverb *fere*; as, *Maximam partem lacte vivunt*. Cæsar. *Magnam partem ex iambis nostra constat oratio*. Cic. Livy has *magna pars*, viz. *Nūmidæ*, *magna pars agrestes*.—So *cētera* and *rēliqua* are joined to adjectives in the sense of *cēteris*, 'for the rest,' 'in other respects'; as, *Proximum regnum, cētera egrēgium, ab ānā parte haud sātis prospērum fuit*. Liv. *So cētera similis, cētera bonus. A te bis terve summum lūtras accēpi*. Cic.—So, also, in the expressions *id temporis*; *id, hoc* or *idem ætātis, illud hōra*, for *eo tempore, eā ætate*, etc.; *id gēnus, omne gēnus, quod gēnus*.

III. Some neuter verbs which are followed by an accusative, are used in the passive voice, the accusative becoming the subject, according to the general rule of active verbs; as,

*Tertia vicitur ætas*. Ovid. *Bellum militābitur*. Hor. *Dormitur hiems*. Mart. *Multa peccantur*. Cic. *Aditur Gnossius Minos*. Sen. *Ne ab omnibus circumstiteretur*. Cæsar. *Hostes invādī posse*. Sall. *Campus obitur aquā*. Ovid. *Plūres inveniuntur gratia*. Cic. *Ea res silētur*. Id.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 235. (1.) Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative.

These are *ad*, *adversus* or *adversum*, *antē*, *apud*, *circā* or *circum*, *circiter*, *cis* or *citra*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *infra*, *intē*, *intrā*, *juxtā*, *ob*, *pēnēs*, *pē*, *post*, *pōnē*, *præter*, *præpō*, *propter*, *sēcundum*, *suprā*, *trans*, *ultrā*; as,

*Ad templum non æquæ Pallādīs ibant*,—to the temple. Virg. *Adversus hostes*, Against the enemy. Liv. *Germāni qui cis Rhēnum incolunt*,—this side the Rhine. Cæsar. *Quum tantum rēsideat intra muros mālī*. Cic. *Principio rētrum impērium pēnes rēges erat*. Just. *Templum pōnam propter aquam*. Virg. *Inter agendum*. Id. *Ante dōmandum*. Id. Respecting the signification of some of the preceding prepositions see § 195, R. 5, etc.



REMARK 1. *Cis* is generally used with names of places; *citra* with other words also; as, *Cis Taurum*. Cic. *Cis Pádum*. Liv. *Paucos cis menses*. Plaut. *Citra Velúm*. Cic. *Citra satiétatem*, Not to satiety. Col. *Citra fatigatiónem*. Cels. *Citra Trójana tempora*. Ovid.

REM. 2. *Inter*, signifying *between*, applies to two accusatives jointly, and sometimes to a single plural accusative; as, *Inter me et Scipiónem*. Cic. *Inter natos et parentes*. Id. *Inter nos*, Among ourselves. Id. *Inter falcários*, Among the scythe-makers. Cic. When it denotes time it signifies *during*, and more rarely *at*; as, *Inter ipsum pugna tempus*. Liv. *Inter canam*. Cic.

REM. 3. *Ante* and *post* are commonly joined with concrete official titles, when used to indicate time, rather than with the corresponding abstract nouns; as, *ante* or *post Cicerónem* consulem, rather than *ante* or *post* consülátum *Cicerónis*.

(2.) *In* and *sub*, denoting *motion* or *tendency*, are followed by the accusative; denoting *situation*, they are followed by the ablative; as,

*Via ducit in urbem*, The way conducts into the city. Virg. *Noster in te amor*. Cic. *Cullimáchi epigramma in Cleombrótum est*—on or concerning Cleombrótus. Id. *Exercitus sub iugum missus est*, The army was sent under the yoke. Cæs. *Magna mei sub terras ibit imágo*. Virg. *Médiâ in urbe*, In the midst of the city. Ovid. *In his fuit Arionistis*. Cæs. *Bella sub Iliâcis mœnibus gérere*, To wage war under the Trojan walls. Ovid. *Sub nocte silenti*. Virg.

REM. 4. The most common significations of *in*, with the accusative, are, *into*, *to*, *towards*, *until*, *for*, *against*, *about*, *concerning*,—with the ablative, *in*, *on*, *upon*, *among*. In some instances, *in* and *sub*, denoting tendency, are followed by the ablative, and, denoting situation, by the accusative; as, *In conspectu meo audet venire*. Phæd. *Natiónes quæ in ánieltiam pópuli Rómâni, ditiónemque essent*. Id. *Sub iugo dictátor hostes misit*. Liv. *Hostes sub montem consedis*. Cæs.

REM. 5. *In* and *sub*, in different significations, denoting neither tendency nor situation, are followed sometimes by the accusative, and sometimes by the ablative; as, *Amor crescit in hōras*. Ovid. *Hostilem in módu*. Cic. *Quod in hóno servo dici posset*. Id. *Sub eâ conditióne*. Ter. *Sub poenâ mortis*. Suet.

REM. 6. In expressions relating to time, *sub*, denoting *at* or *in*, usually takes the ablative; as, *Sub adventu Rómándrum*. Liv. *Sub luce*. Ovid. *Sub tempore*. Lucan. Denoting *near*, *about*, *just before* or *just after*, it takes the accusative; as, *Sub lúcem*. Virg. *Sub lúmina prima*. Hor. *Sub hoc hērus inquit*. Id.

REM. 7. *In* is used with neuter adjectives in the accusative in forming adverbial phrases; as, *In uníversum*, In general. *In tótum*, Wholly. So, *in plénum*; *in incertum*; *in tantum*; *in quantum*; *in majus*; *in melius*; *in omnia*, in all respects, etc.

(3.) *Sûper*, when denoting place or time, is followed by the accusative, and sometimes poetically by the ablative; but when it signifies *on*, *about*, or *concerning*, it takes the ablative. With the accusative *sûper* signifies *over*, *above*, *besides* or *in additióne to*; with numerals, *more than*; as,

*Sûper labentem culmína tecti*, Gliding over the top of the house. Virg. *Sûper tres módos*. Liv. *Sûper morbum etiam fâmes affecit exercitum*. Id. *Sûper ténéro prosternit grámíne corpus*, He stretches his body on the tender grass. Virg. *Multa sûper Priâmo rôgítans sûper Hecatóre multa*, .... concerning Priam, etc. Id.

REM. 8. The compound *désûper* is found with the accusative, and *insûper* with the accusative and the ablative.

(4.) *Subter* generally takes the accusative, but sometimes, in poetry, the ablative; as,

*Subter terras*, Under the earth. Liv. *Subter densâ testudinē*. Virg.

(5.) *Clam* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative; as,

*Clam* vos, Without your knowledge. Cic. *Clam* patrem. Ter. *Clam* matrem suam. Plaut. *Clam* vobis. Cass. *Neque potest clam me esse*. Plaut. *Clam* uxore meâ. Id. Its diminutive *clanculum* is once followed by the accusative, *clanculum* patres. Ter.

REM. 9. The adverbs *versus* or *versum* and *usque* are sometimes annexed to an accusative, principally of place, which depends on *ad* or *in*, and sometimes the preposition is omitted; as, *Ad* Océanum *versus* *præfici*. Cæs. *Fugam* *ad se* *versum*. Sall. *In* Galliam *versus* castra *movere*. Id.—*Usque* *ad* Numan- tiam. Cic. *Usque* *in* Pamphylia. Id. *Ad* noctem *usque*. Plaut.—Brundisium *versus*. Cic. *Terminos usque Libye*. Just. *Usque* Ennam *profecti*. Cic. *Versus* is always placed after the accusative.—*Usque* occurs more rarely with *sub* and *trans* with the accusative; as, *Trans* Alpes *usque* *transfertur*. Cic. *Usque* *sub* extremum *brumæ* imbrem.—*Versus* also rarely follows *ab*, and *usque* either *ab* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *Ab* septemtrione *versus*. Varr. *A fundam- ento usque* *móvisti* *mâre*. Plaut. *Usque* *ex* ultimâ *Syriâ*. Cic. *Usque* *a* pueritiâ. Ter. *Usque* *a* Rómulo. Cic. *Usque* *a* mâne *ad* vespèrum. Plaut.

REM. 10. Prepositions are often used without a noun depending upon them, but such noun may usually be supplied by the mind; as, *Multis* *post* *annis*, I. e. *post id tempus*. Cic. *Circum* *Concordiæ*, scil. *ædem*. Sall.

REM. 11. The accusative, in many constructions, is supposed to depend on a preposition understood; as, *Quid opus est plârâ?* i. e. *propter quid?* why? i. q. *cur?* or *quâre?* Cic. So, *Quid me ostentem?* Id. But it is not easy, in every case, to say what preposition should be supplied. For the accusative without a preposition after neuter verbs, see § 232. For the accusative of limitation, see § 234, II.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

§ 236. Nouns denoting duration of time, or extent of space, are put, after adjectives and verbs, in the accusative, and some- times after verbs in the ablative; as,

ACC. *Appius cæcus multos annos fuit*, Appius was blind *many years*. Cic. *Biduum Lædiciæ fuit*. Id. *Dies tótos de virtute dissérunt*. Id. *Te jam annum audientem Cratippum*. Id.—*Décervérunt intercâlarium quinque et quadráginta dies longum*. Id.—*Quum abessem ab Amáno iter ánius diéi*. Id. *Tres pátent cali spátium non amplius ulnas*. Virg. (Cf. § 256, R. 6.) *A portu stâdia centum et viginti processimus*. Cic.—*Duas fossas quindécim pèdes lâtus perduxit*,—two ditches fifteen feet broad. Cæs. *Fossæ quinos pèdes altæ*. Id. *Fórâmina longa pèdes tres sémis*. Cato. *Orbem oléarium crassum digitos sex fáctio*. Id.—ABL. *Vixit annis undétriginta*. Suet. *Quâtuordécim annis exsilium tolléravit*. Tac. *Triginta annis vixit Panatius*. Cic.—*Exercitus Rómânus tridui itinère ab- fuit ab anne Tânai*. Tac. *Æsculâpi templum quinque millibus passuum dis- tans*. Liv.

NOTE 1. The ablative denoting extent of time and space is rarely used by Cicero, and less frequently than the accusative by other writers.

NOTE 2. The accusative denoting extent of space sometimes follows the ab- verbs *longe*, *allic*, etc.; as, *Campestris locus allic duos pèdes et sémissem infò- diendus est*. Colum. *Vercingétorix locum castris deliguit ab Avarico longe millia passuum sêdécim*. Cæs.

NOTE 3. (a.) *Old*, in reference to the time which a person has lived, is expressed in Latin by *nátus*, with an accusative of the time; as, *Décessit Alexander mensem ánuam, annos tres et triginta natus*. Just. (b.) A person's age may also be expressed without *nátus* by a genitive of the time closely connected with his name, according to § 211, R. 6; as, *Alexander annórum trium et triginta décessit*. (c.) *Older* or *younger* than a certain age is ex- pressed by prefixing to the accusative or genitive of the definite age the ad-

verbs *plus* or *minus*, or the adjectives *major* or *minor*, either with or without *quam*. See § 256, R. 6 and 7.—Sometimes, also, the ablative depends on the comparative; as, *Minor viginti quinque annis natus*. Nep. *Minor triginta annis natus*. Cic. *Biennio quam nos major*. Id. Cf. § 256, R. 16. (1.)

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting time or space, used to limit *other nouns*, are put in the genitive or ablative. See § 211, R. 6.

REM. 2. A term of time not yet completed may be expressed by an ordinal number; as, *Nos vicésimum jam diem patimur hēbescere diem horum auctōritatis*. Cic. *Punico bello duodécimum annum Italia crebatur*. Liv. Hence in the passive, *Nunc tertia videtur ætas*. Ovid.

REM. 3. The accusative or ablative of space is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending on it remains; as, *Castra quę abstant bidui*, scil. *spatium* or *spatio*. Cic.

REM. 4. To denote a place by its distance from another, the ablative is commonly used; as, *Millibus passuum sex a Casdria castris consedit*. Cæs.; but sometimes the accusative; as, *Tria passuum millia ab ipsa urbe castra posuit*. Liv. The only words used for this purpose in the ablative alone are *spatio* and *intervallo*; as, *Quindécim ferme millium spatío castra ab Tarento posuit*. Id.

NOTE 4. For *abinc* and a cardinal number, with the accusative or ablative of past time, see § 253, R. 2. For the ablative denoting difference of time or space, see § 256, R. 16.

REM. 5. A preposition is sometimes expressed before an accusative of time or space, but it generally modifies the meaning; as, *Quem per decem annos duimus*, .... during ten years. Cic.

REM. 6. When the place from which the distance is reckoned is not mentioned, *ab* is sometimes placed before the ablative of distance, as if this depended on the preposition; as, *A millibus passuum duobus castra posuerunt*, Two miles from the place, or, Two miles off. Cæs.

REM. 7. An accusative of weight also occurs when expressed by *libram* or *libras* in connection with *pondo*. Cf. § 211, R. 6. (4.)

## ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 237. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of the town *in which the motion ends* is put in the accusative without a preposition; as,

*Régulus Carthāginem rediit*, Regulus returned to Carthage. Cic. *Capuam flectit iter*, He turns his course to Capua. Liv. *Calpurnius Romam proficiscitur*. Sall. *Romam erat nuntiātum*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The accusative, in like manner, is used after *iter* with *sum*, *habeo*, etc.; as, *Iter est mihi Lantivium*. Cic. *Casdrem iter habere Capuam*. Id. And even after *sum* alone; as, *Omnia illa municipta, quę sunt a Vibone Brundisium*. Cic. So with a verbal noun; as, *Adventus Romam*. Liv. *Reditus Romam*. Cic.

REM. 2. (a.) The preposition to be supplied is *in*, denoting to or into, which is sometimes expressed; as, *In Ephesum abiit*. Plaut. *Ad*, before the name of a town, denotes direction towards it; as, *Iter dirigere ad Mutinam*. Cic.; and also its vicinity; as, *Adolescentulus miles profectus sum ad Capuam*; i. e. *in castra ad Capuam*. Id. So, *Laelius cum classe ad Brundisium venit*. Cæs. *Cæsar ad Genēvam pervenit*. Id. *Quem ego ad Heracleam accēderem*. Cic.

(b.) When *urbs*, *oppidum*, *locus*, etc., follow the names of towns as appositions, they generally take a preposition; as, *Demetrius se contulit Targuinios, in urbem Etrurię florentissimam*. Cic. *Ad Cirtam oppidum iter constituit*. Sall.—So also when the name of the town is qualified by an adjective; as, *Magnum*

*Iter ad doctas præficiaci cõgor Athēnas.* Prop. But the poets and later prose writers sometimes omit the preposition; as, Ovid, *Her.* 2, 83.

REM. 3. Instead of the accusative, a dative is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam.* Hor. Cf. § 225, IV. and R. 2.

REM. 4. *Dõmus* in both numbers, and *rus* in the singular, are put in the accusative, like names of towns; as,

*Ne dõmum, Go home.* Virg. *Galli dõmos abierant*,—had gone home. Liv. *Rus ibo*, I will go into the country. Ter.

NOTE. (a.) When *dõmus* is limited by a genitive or a possessive adjective pronoun, it sometimes takes a preposition: with other adjectives, the preposition is generally expressed; as, *Non introto in nostram dõmum.* Plaut. *Venisse in dõmum Leccæ.* Cic. *Ad eam dõmum præfecti sunt.* Id. *In dõmos stupēras scandere cõra fuit.* Ovid. Rarely, also, when not limited; as, *Sõcrates philõsophiam in dõmos intrõduxit.* Cic. *So, lãrem suam.* App., or *ad lãrem suum.* Cic. *Cõricas in Albense rus inferre.* Plin. *Quum in sua rura vērunt.* Cic. With the possessor's name in the genitive, either *dõmum* or *in dõmum* is used; as, *Pompõni dõmum venisse.* Cic. *In dõmum Mælii tẽla infērentur.* Liv.

(b.) *Dõmus* is sometimes used in the accusative after a verbal noun; as, *Dõmum rēditionis ape sublãt.* Cæs. *So, Itio dõmum.* Cic. *Concursus dõmum.* Cæs. Cf. R. 1.

REM. 5. (a.) Before the names of countries and of all other places in which the motion ends, except those of towns, and *dõmus* and *rus*, the preposition is commonly used; as, *Ex Asiã transis in Eurõpam.* Curt. *Te in Epirum venisse gaudeo.* Cic. But it is sometimes omitted; as, *Dēveniunt speluncam.* Virg. *Dēveniēre locos.* Id. *Tumulum antiquæ Cērēris sēdemque sacrãdam vēnimus.* Id. *Ibis Cērēpius portus.* Ovid. *So, also, before names of countries, especially those ending in us; as, Ægyptus, Bosphorus, Chersonesus, Epirus, Peloponnesus, etc. So, also, Illyricum præfectus.* Cæs. *Macedõniam pervēni.* Liv. *Africam transiturus.* Id. *So, Tacitus construes even names of nations, when used, as they often are, for those of countries; as, Ductus inde Cangos exercitus.* Ibēros *ad patrium regnum pervãdit.* *So, Virgil, Nos ibimus Afros.*—Pliny has, *Insulas Rubri Mãris nãvigant.*

(b.) Before the names of small islands the preposition is frequently omitted; as, *Pausaniam cum classe Cyprum misērunt.* Nep.: but rarely before the names of the larger islands; as, *Sardinia, Britannia, Crẽta, Eubœa, Sicilia.*

(c.) Before accusatives of any words denoting locality after verbs of motion, the poets omit the preposition; as, *Itãliam—Laviniaque venit litõra.* Virg.—The old accusative *fõras* is used, like names of towns, to denote the place *whither*, while *fõris* denotes the place *where*; as, *Vãde fõras.* Mart. *Exit fõras.* Plaut.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS, AND INTERJECTIONS.

§ 238. 1. (a.) The adjectives *prõpior* and *proximus*, with their adverbs *prõpius* and *proxime*, like their primitive *prõpe*, are often joined with the accusative; as,

*Ipe prõpior montem suos collõcat.* Sall. *Crassus proximus mãre Oceãnum hiẽmarat.* Cæs.—*Libyes prõpius mãre Africam agitãbant.* Sall. *Proxime Hispaniam Mauri sunt.* Id.

(b.) The adverbs *pridie* and *postridie* are also often followed by the accusative; as, *Pridie eum diem.* Cic. *Pridie idus.* Id. *Postridie ludos.* Id.—(c.) An accusative sometimes follows *intus* and *cõminus*; as, *Intus dõmum.* Plaut. *Agrestes cõminus ire sues, scil. in.* Prop.

REMARK 1. The accusative with *pridē* and *postridē* is by some referred to *ante* and *post* understood. For the genitive after these words, see § 212, R. 4, N. 6.—Respecting *versus*, *usque*, *exadversus* (-um) and *secus* with the accusative, see § 195, R. 3: and § 235, R. 3.

REM. 2. The adverb *bēne*, by the elipsis of *calēre jūbeo*, is sometimes followed by the accusative in forms of drinking health; as, *Bēne vos, bēne nos, bēne te, bēne me, bēne nostram etiam Stēphānium!* Plaut. *Bēne Messālam, a health to Messala.* Tibull. It is also construed with the dative. See § 228, 1.

2. In exclamations, the noun or pronoun which marks the object of the feeling is put in the accusative either with or without the interjections, *O! ah! heu! eheu! ecce! en! hem! pro! or vae! as,*

*En quātuor aras! ecce duas tibi Daphni!* Behold four altars! lo, two for thee, Daphnis! Virg. *Eccum! eccos! eccillum!* for *ecce eum! ecce eos! ecce illum!* Plaut. *O praeclārum custodem!* Cic. *Heu me infēlicem!* Ter. *Pro Deū hōminūque fidem!* Cic. *Ah me, me!* Catull. *Eheu me miserum!* Ter. *Hem astūtiās!* Id. *Vae te!* Plaut. *Vae me!* Sen. *Miseram me!* Ter. *Hōminem grāvem et civem egrēgiū!* Cic. Cf. § 228, 3.

NOTE. The accusative after interjections is supposed to depend on some verb of emotion to be supplied.

## SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 239. The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative; as,

*Mōleste Pompeium id ferre constābat,* That Pompey took that ill, was evident. Cic. *Eos hoc nōmine appellāri fas est.* Id. *Miror te ad me nihil scribere,* I wonder that you do not write to me. Cn. Mag. in Cic. *Campos jūbet esse pōtentes.* Virg.

NOTE 1. In historical writing the present infinitive has sometimes its subject in the nominative. Cf. § 209, R. 5.

REMARK 1. The subject of the infinitive is omitted when it precedes in the genitive or dative case; as, *Est adōlescentis mājores nātū vēreri,* scil. *eum.* Cic. *Expēdit bonas esse vōbis,* scil. *vos.* Ter.; and rarely when it precedes in the accusative; as, *Ea pōpūlus latāri et mērito dicere fieri;* and also when its place is supplied by a possessive pronoun expressed or understood; as, *Non fui consilium* (meum)—*servilibus officiis intentum aetatem agere* (scil. *me*). Sall.

REM. 2. A substantive pronoun is also sometimes omitted before the infinitive, when it is the subject of the preceding verb; as, *Pollicitus sum susceptūrum* (esse), scil. *me,* I promised (that I) would undertake. Ter. *Sed reddere posse negabat,* scil. *se.* Virg.

REM. 3. The subject of the infinitive is often omitted, when it is a general word for person or thing; as, *Est aliud iracundum esse, aliud iratum,* scil. *hōminem.* Cic. See § 269, R. 1.

REM. 4. The subject-accusative, like the nominative, is often wanting. See § 209, R. 3. The subject of the infinitive may be an infinitive or a clause. See § 269, R. 3.

NOTE 2. For the verbs after which the subject-accusative with the infinitive is used, see § 272. For the accusative in the predicate after infinitives neuter and passive, see § 210.

## VOCATIVE.

§ 240. The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

REMARK 1. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *pro* (*proh*), also *ah*, *au* (*hau*), *ehem*, *eho*, *ehodum*, *eia* (*heia*), *hem*, *heus*, *hui*, *io*, and *ohe*, are followed by the vocative; as,

*O formosæ puer!* O beautiful boy! Virg. *Heu virgo!* Id. *Pro sancte Júpiter!* Cic. *Ah stulte!* Ter. *Heus Syre!* Id. *Ohe libelle!* Mart. *Ehodum bone vir.* Ter.—*Ursem*, mi Rûfë, côle. Cic. Quintili Vare, *lëgiões redde.* Suet. *Quo moritüre ruis!* Hor. *Macte virtûte esto.* Cic.

REM. 2. The vocative is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending upon it remains; as, *O misêra sortis!* scil. *hómînes.* Lucan.

NOTE. The vocative forms no part of a proposition, but serves to designate the person to whom the proposition is addressed.

## ABLATIVE.

The ablative denotes certain relations of nouns and pronouns, all of which are expressed in English by means of prepositions. In Latin this case is sometimes accompanied by a preposition, and sometimes stands alone. Cf. § 37, 6.

## ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 241. Eleven prepositions are followed by the ablative.

These are *â*, (or *âb*, *abs*), *absquë*, *dë*; *côram*, *pâlam*, *cum*, *ex*, (*ë*); *sinë*, *tënûs*, *prô*, and *præ*; as,

*Ab illo tempore*, From that time. Liv. *A scribendo*, From writing. Cic. *Cum exercitu*, With the army. Sall. *Certis de causis*, For certain reasons. Cic. *Ex fugâ*, From flight. Id. *Pâlam pôpulo*. Liv. *Sine lãbore*. Cic. *Cûpulo ténus*. Virg. *Cantâbit vâcuus cõram lâtrõne viãtor*. Juv. cf. § 195, 5.

NOTE. Of the prepositions followed by the ablative, five signify removal or separation, viz. *a* (*ab* or *abs*), *dë*, *ë* (or *ex*), *absquë* and *sinë*.

REMARK 1. *Tënus* is always placed after its case. It sometimes takes the genitive plural. See § 221, III.—*Cum* is always appended to the ablative of the personal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nõbis*, and *võbis*, and commonly to the ablatives of the relative pronoun, *quo*, *quâ*, *quibus*, and *quî*. Cf. § 133, 4, and § 186, R. 1.

REM. 2. The adverbs *prõcul* and *simul* are sometimes used with an ablative, which depends on the prepositions *a* or *ab*, and *cum* understood; as, *Prõcul mãri*, Far from the sea. Liv. *Simul nõbis hãbitat*. Ovid. *Prõcul dãbio*. Suet. The prepositions are frequently expressed; as, *Prõcul a terrâ*. Cic. *Prõcul a patriâ*. Virg. *Tëcum simul*. Plaut. *Võbiscum simul*. Cic.—So, rarely, *æque*. *Qui me in terrâ æque fortunãtus erit*. Plaut. Cf. *Nõvi æque omnia tëcum*. Id.

REM. 3. Some of the above prepositions, like those followed by the accusative, are occasionally used without a noun expressed; as, *Quum cõram sũmus*. Cic. *Cum frãtre an sine*. Id. Cf. § 235, R. 10.

REM. 4. The ablative follows also the prepositions *in* and *sub*, when they answer to the question 'where?' *super*, when it signifies 'on' or 'concerning'; and sometimes *clam* and *subter*. Cf. § 235, (2.).—(5.)

REM. 5. *In* is generally joined with the ablative after verbs of placing, as, *põno*, *lõco*, *collõco*, *stãtuo*, *constituo*, and *consido*; as, *Et sãle tãbentes artius in litõre põnunt*. Virg.—So, also, after verbs signifying to have, hold, or regard;

as, *habeo, discio, número*, etc.—After verbs of *assembling, concealing, and including*, *in* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative.—After *dēfigo, inscribo, insculpo, incido*, and *insero*, *in* is usually joined with the ablative.

§ 242. Many verbs compounded with *ab, de, ex*, and *super*, are followed by an ablative depending upon the preposition; as,

*Abesse urbe*, To be absent from the city. Cic. *Abire sedibus*, To depart from their habitations. Tac. *Ut se maledictis non abstineant*. Cic. *Detrahunt naves scopulo*, They push the ships from the rock. Virg. *Naves egressus est. Nop. Excedere finibus*. Liv. *Cæsar prælio supersedere stituit*. Cæs. *Tributo ac ductu supersessum est*. Cic. So the adjective *extorris*; as, *Extorris patriâ, domo*. Sall. And so the verbal *eruptio*; as, *Mutinâ eruptio*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as, *Detrahère de tuâ famâ numquam cogitavi*. Cic. *Ex oculis abiit*. Liv. *Exire a patriâ*. Cic. *Exire de viâ*. Id. Cf. § 224, R. 4.

REM. 2. These compound verbs are often used without a noun; but, in many cases, it may be supplied by the mind; as, *Equites degressi ad pedes, scil. equis*. Liv. *Abire ad Deos, scil. vitâ*. Cic.

REM. 3. Some verbs compounded with *ab, de*, and *ex*, instead of the ablative, are sometimes followed by the dative. See § 224, R. 1 and 2. Some compounds, also, of neuter verbs, occur with the accusative. See § 233, R. 1.

#### ABLATIVE AFTER CERTAIN NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

§ 243. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, usually take the ablative of the thing needed; as,

*Auctoritate tuâ nobis opus est*, We need your authority. Cic. *Nunc animis opus, nunc pectore firmo*. Virg. *Naves, quibus consili usus non esset*, Ships, for which the consul had no occasion. Liv. *Nunc viribus usus, nunc manibus rûpdis*. Virg.

REMARK 1. (a.) *Opus* and *usus* are sometimes followed by the ablative of a perfect participle; as, *Maturato opus est*, There is need of haste. Liv. *Usus facto est mihi*. Ter. *Ubi summus impërator non adest ad exercitum, citius, quod non facto est usus, fit, quam quod facto est opus*. Plaut. After *opus*, a noun is sometimes expressed with the participle; as, *Opus fuit Hirtio convento*,—of meeting, or, to meet, § 274, R. 6. Cic. *Opus sibi esse dõmino ejus invento*. Liv.—or a supine is used; as, *Illa dictu opus est*, It is necessary to say, I must say. Ter.—Instead of the ablative with *opus est*, an infinitive, either alone or with a subject accusative, or *ut* with a subjunctive clause, sometimes occurs; as, *Opus est te animo valere*. Cic. *Mihi opus est, ut laævem*. Id.

(b.) *Opus* and *usus*, though nouns, are seldom limited by the genitive. In a few passages they are construed with the accusative. See § 211, R. 11.

REM. 2. *Opus* is sometimes the subject and sometimes the predicate of *est*; *usus*, which seldom occurs except in ante-classic poets, is, with only rare exceptions, the subject only. The person to whom the thing is needful is put in the dative; (§ 226.) With *opus* the thing needed may either be the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative, or follow it in the ablative; as, *Dux nobis opus est*. Cic. *Verves multa sibi opus esse aiëbat*. Id.; or, *Duce nobis opus est*. The former construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns; as, *Quod non opus est, asse carum est*. Cato apud Sen.—In the predicate *opus* and *usus* are commonly translated ‘needful’ or ‘necessary.’ Cf. § 210, R. 5.

NOTE. For the ablative of character, quality, etc., limiting a noun, see § 211, R. 6

§ 244. *Dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, and frētus*, are followed by the ablative of the object; as,

*Dignus* laude, Worthy of praise. Hor. *Vox populi majestāte indigna*, A speech unbecoming the dignity of the people. Cæs. *Bestia eo contenta non querunt amplius*. Cic. *Homo scēlere præditus*. Id. *Plērique ingēnio frēti*. Id.—So, *Æquum est me atque illo*. Plaut.

REMARK 1. The adverb *digne*, in one passage, takes the ablative; *Peccat ūter nostrum crūce dignus*. Hor.—*Dignor*, also, both as the passive of the obsolete *digno*, and as a deponent verb, is followed by an ablative of the thing. As a deponent it takes also an accusative of the person; as, *Haud equidem tāli me hōnōre dignor*. Virg.—Pass. *Qui tāli hōnōre dignāti sunt*. Cic. Conjūgio, *Anchisa, Vēneris dignāte superbo*. Virg.—Sometimes as a deponent, instead of the ablative of the thing, it is followed by an infinitive clause; as, *Non ego grammaticas ambire tribus et pulpita dignor*. Hor. And both *dignor* and *dēdignor* are followed by two accusatives, one of the object the other of the predicate. See § 230, R. 2.

REM. 2. (a.) *Dignus* and *indignus* are sometimes followed by the genitive; as, *Suscipe cōgitationem dignissimam tuæ virtutis*. Cic. *Indignus avōrum*. Virg.; and *dignus* sometimes takes a neuter pronoun or adjective in the accusative; as, *Non me censes scire quid dignus siem?* Plaut. *Frētus* is in Livy construed with the dative. Cf. § 222, R. 6, (b.)

(b.) Instead of an ablative, *dignus* and *indignus* often take an infinitive, especially in the passive; as, *Erat dignus amari*. Virg.; or a subjunctive clause, with *qui* or *ut*; as, *Dignus qui impēret*. Cic. *Non sum dignus, ut figam pālum in pariētem*. Plaut.; or the supine in *u*; as, *Digna atque indigna relātus vociferans*. Virg. *Contentus* is likewise joined with the infinitive; as, *Non hæc artes contenta paternas edidicisse fuit*. Ovid.—So, *Naves pontum irrumpere frēte*. Stat.

§ 245. I. *Utor, fruor, fungor, pōtiōr, vescor*, and their compounds, are followed by the ablative; as,

*Ad quem tum Jūno supplex* his vōcibus ūsa est,—addressed these words. Virg. *Frui* voluptāte, To enjoy pleasure. Cic. *Fungitur officio*, He performs his duty. Id. *Oppido pōtiti sunt*. Liv. *Vescitur aurā*. Virg. *His rebus perfruor*. Cic. *Lēgibus abūti*. Id. *Dēfuncti* impērio. Liv. *Grāvi opēre perfungimur*. Cic. *O tandem magnis pēlāgi dēfunctē pēriclis*. Virg.

The compounds are *abūtor, deūtor, perfruor, dēfungor*, and *perfungor*.

NOTE. *Utor* may take a second ablative, as an apposition or a predicate, like the predicate accusative, (§ 230, R. 2), and may then be translated by the verb *to have*; as, *Ille faciēti me ūtētur patrē*, He shall have in me an indulgent father. Ter.

REMARK. In early writers these verbs sometimes take an accusative; as, *Quam rem mēdici ūtuntur*. Varr. *Ingēnium frui*. Ter. *Datētes militāre mānus fungens*. Nep. *Gentem aliquam urbem nostram pōtīturam pātem*. Cic. *Saceras lauros vescar*. Tibull. *In prolōgis scribēndis opēram abūtor*. Ter.—*Pōtiōr* is, also, found with the genitive. See § 220, 4.

II. 1. *Nitor, innitor, fido* and *confido*, may be followed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Hastā innizus*. Liv. *Fidēre cursu*. Ovid. *Nātūrā lēci confidebant*. Cæs.

2. *Misceo* with its compounds takes, with the accusative of the object, the ablative of the thing mingled with; as, *Miscēre pabula sālē*. Coll. *Aquas nec-tāra*. Ovid. *Aēr multo cālōre admixtus*. Cic.

3. *Assuesco, assuefacio, consuesco, insuesco*, and sometimes *acquiesco*, take either the dative or the ablative of the thing; as, *Aves sanguine et prædā as-suetæ*. Hor. *Nullo officio aut disciplinā assuefactus*. Cæs. Cf. § 224.



4. *Vivo* and *épālor*, 'to live or feast upon,' are followed by the ablative; as, *Dāpibus épālamēr ópāmis*. Virg. *Lacte atque pécōre vivunt*. Cæs.

5. *Sto* signifying 'to be filled or covered with,' and also when signifying 'to cost,' is followed by the ablative without a preposition; when signifying 'to persevere in, stick to, abide by,' 'to rest or be fixed on,' it is followed by the ablative either with or without *in*; as, *Jam pulvère cælum stāre vident*. Virg.—*Multo sanguine ac vulneribus ea Panis victōria stetit*. Liv. *Stāre conditionibus*. Cic. *Omni in Ascānio stat cūra pārentis*. Virg.—*Consto*, 'to consist of' or 'to rest upon,' is followed by the ablative either alone or with *ex*, *de*, or *in*; as, *Constat mātēries sōlido corpōre*. Lucr. *Hōmo ex ānimo constat et corpōre*. Cic.

REMARK 1. *Fido*, *confido*, *misceo*, *admisceo*, *permisceo*, and *assuesco* often take the dative.

REM. 2. When a preposition is expressed after the above verbs, *sto*, *fido*, *confido*, *nitor*, *innitor*, and *assuesco* take *in* or *ad*; *acquiesco*, *in*; and *misceo* with its compounds, *cum*.

§ 246. Perfect participles denoting *origin* are often followed by the ablative of the *source*, without a preposition.

Such are *nātus*, *prōgnātus*, *sātus*, *crētus*, *crētus*, *edītus*, *gēnītus*, *gēnērātus*, *ortus*; to which may be added *ōriundus*, descended from.

Thus, *Nāte deā!* O son of a goddess! Virg. *Tantūlo prōgnātus*. Descended from Tantalus. Cic. *Sātus Nēreide*, Sprung from a Nereid. Ovid. *Crētus rēge*. Id. *Alcānōre crētī*. Virg. *Edite rēgibus*. Hor. *Dūs gēntē*. Virg. *Argōlco gēnērātus Alēminē*. Ovid. *Ortus nullis mājōribus*. Hor. *Celesti semine ōriundū*. Lucr.

REMARK 1. The preposition is also rarely omitted after the verbs *creo*, *gēnō*, and *nascor*; as, *Ū patre certo nascēre*. Cic. *Fortes creantur fortibus*. Hor.

REM. 2. After participles denoting origin, the preposition *ex* or *de* is usually joined to the name of the mother; and in a few passages *ex* or *ab* is joined to the name of the father; as, *Prōgnātī ab Dite patre*. Cæs. In speaking of one's ancestors *ab* is frequently used; as, *Plēroque Belgas esse ortos a Germānia*. Id.

REM. 3. Origin from a place or country is generally expressed by a patril adjective; as, *Thrāsībūlus Athēniensis*, *Thraasybulus of Athens*. Livy often uses *ab*; as, *Turnus Herdonius ab Ariciā*. Cæsar prefers the ablative alone; as, *On Magius Crēmōnā*; and in this manner is expressed the tribe to which a person belongs; as, *Q. Verres Rōmiliā*,—of the *Romilian* tribe.

#### ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, ETC.

§ 247. Nouns denoting the *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument*, after adjectives and verbs, are put in the ablative without a preposition.

NOTE. The English prepositions with the ablative of cause, manner, means, and instrument are *by*, *with*, *in*, etc.

1. The *cause*. (1.) Adjectives which have a passive signification, as denoting a state or condition produced by some external cause, may take such cause in the ablative; as,

*Campāni fuērunt sūperbi bōnitāte agrōrum*. Cic. *Animal pābūlo letum*. Sen. *Prælio fessi lassique*, Weary and faint with the battle. Sall. *Hōmīnes agrī grāvi morbo*. Cic.

(2.) Neuter verbs expressing an action, state or feeling of the subject originating in some external cause, may take that cause in the ablative; as,

*Interiit fāme*, He perished with hunger. *Laude aliēnā dōlet*. Cic. *Lator tuā dignitate*. Id. *Gaude tuo bōno*. Id. *Suā victoriā gloriāri*. Cæs. *Aquilonibus laborant querceta*. Hor.—So with *bene est* and the dative; as, *Mihi bene erat non piscibus urbe petitis, sed pullo atque hædo*. Hor. *Ubi illi bene sit ligna, aqua calidā, cibo, vestimentis*, etc. Plaut.

NOTE 1. After such adjectives and neuter verbs, a preposition with its case often supplies the place of the simple ablative.

NOTE 2. In exclamations of encouragement or approbation, the defective adjective *macte*, *macti*, either with or without the imperative of *esto* (*esto, este, estote*), is joined with an ablative of cause, especially with *virtute*.

NOTE 3. After neuter verbs and adjectives denoting emotions, especially those of *care*, *grief*, and *sorrow*, the accusative *vicem*, with a genitive or a possessive pronoun, is used, instead of the ablative *vīce*, to signify 'for' or 'on account of'; as, *Remittimus hoc tibi, ne nostram vicem irascaris*, That you may not be angry on our account. Liv. *Tuam vicem sæpe dolo, quod*, etc. Cic. *Suam vicem magis anxius, quam ejus, cui auxilium ab se petebatur*. Liv.

REMARK 1. When the cause is a voluntary agent, it is put in the accusative with the preposition *ob*, *propter*, or *per*; as, *Non est æquum me propter vos scripi*. Ter. These prepositions, and *a*, or *ab*, *de*, *e* or *ex*, and *præ*, are also sometimes used when the cause is not a voluntary agent; as, *Ob adulterium cæsi*. Virg. *Nec loqui præ mœrore potui*. Cic.

REM. 2. (a.) After active verbs, the cause, unless expressed by an ablative from substantives having no other case; as, *Jussu, rogatu* and *admonitu*, is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by a preposition, or by *causā, gratiā, ergo*, etc., with a genitive; as, *Lēgibus propter mētum paret*. Cic. *Ne ob eam rem ipso despiceret*. Id. *Donari virtutis ergo*. Id. *Si hoc honoris mei causā suscipis*. Id. But with *causā*, etc., the adjective pronoun is commonly used for the corresponding substantive pronoun; as, *Te abesse meā causā, moleste fero*. Cic. Cf. § 211, R. 3, (b.)

(b.) When the cause is a state of feeling, a circumlocution is often used with a perfect participle of some verb signifying 'to induce'; as, *Cupiditate ductus, inductus, incitatus, incensus, inflammatus, impulsus, motus, captus*, etc. *Mihi benevolentia ductus tribuebat omnia*. Cic. Livy frequently uses *ab* in this sense; as, *Ab ira, a spe, ab odio*, from anger, hope, hatred.

2. The manner. *Cum* is regularly joined with the ablative of manner, when expressed simply by a noun, not modified by any other word; and also when an adjective is joined with the noun, provided an additional circumstance, and not merely an essential character of the action, is to be expressed. Thus:

*Cum voluptate aliquem audire*. *Verres Lampæcum venit cum magnā calliditate citatus*. Cic. Hence also when the connection between the subject and the noun denoting the attribute is only external; as, *Procedere cum veste purpureā*: in distinction from *Nudis pedibus incidere*: *Aperto capite sedere*, etc., which express circumstances or attributes essential to the subject.

But *mōdus, ratio, mos, ritus*, etc., signifying manner, never take *cum*, and it is omitted in some expressions with other substantives; as, *Hoc modo scripsi*; *Constituerunt quā ratione ageretur*; *More bestiarum vagari*; *Latronum ritu vivere*; *Æquo animo fero*; *Maximā fide amicitias coluit*. *Summā æquitate res constitui*; *Viam incredibili celeritate confeci*; *Librum magnā curā diligentiaque scripsi*; the action of the verb being intimately connected with the circumstance expressed by the ablative. So in some expressions with substantives alone; as, *Silentio præterire* or *fācere aliquid*; *Lēge agere*; *Jure* and *injuriā fācere*; *Magistratus vitio creatus*; *Recte et ordine fit*.

REM. 3. The manner is also sometimes denoted by *de* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *De* or *ex industria*, On purpose. Liv. *Ex integro*, Anew. Quint.

3. The *means* and *instrument*. An ablative is joined with verbs of every kind, and also with adjectives of a passive signification, to express the means or instrument; as,

*Amicos observantiâ, rem parsimoniâ retinuit*, He retained his friends by attention, his property by frugality. Cic. *Auro ostrôque decori*. Virg. *Ægracû mēdendo*. Id. *Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leonē se tūtantur*. Cic. *Cassus est virgis*. Id. *Trabs saucia sēcturi*. Ovid. For the ablative of the means after verbs of filling, etc., see § 249, I.

REM. 4. When the means is a person, it is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by *per*, or by the ablative *opérâ* with a genitive or a possessive pronoun; as, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, opérâ*, which are equivalent to *per me, per te, per se*, and denote both good and bad services. *Beneficio meo*, etc., is used of good results only; as, *Beneficio meo patres sunt*. Sall. But persons are sometimes considered as involuntary agents, and as such expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Servos, quibus sivas publicas depopulatus erat*. Cic.—When *per* is used to express the means, it is connected with external concurring circumstances, rather than with the real means or instrument. Hence we always say *vi oppidum cepit*, but *per vim ei bona eripuit*.

REM. 5. The material instrument is always expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Conficere cervum sagittis; gladio dâquem vulnerare; irâ flecte pectus ferro*.

§ 248. The ablative is used with passive verbs to denote the *means* or *agent* by which any thing is effected, and which in the active voice is expressed by the nominative. This ablative is used either with *ab* or without it, according as it is a person or a thing.

I. The *voluntary* agent of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*; as,

(In the active voice,) *Clodius me diligit*, Clodius loves me (Cic.); (in the passive,) *A Clodio diligor*, I am loved by Clodius. *Laudâtur ab his, culpâtur ab illis*. Hor.

REMARK 1. (1.) The general word for persons, after verbs in the passive voice, is often understood; as, *Prôbitas laudâtur*, scil. *ab hominibus*. Juv. So after the passive of neuter verbs; as, *Discurritur*. Virg. *Tôto certatum est corpore regni*. Id. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

(2.) The agent is likewise often understood, when it is the same as the subject of the verb, and the expression is then equivalent to the active voice with a reflexive pronoun, or to the middle voice in Greek; as, *Quum omnes in omni genere scelerum volutentur*, scil. *a se*. Cic.

REM. 2. Neuter verbs, also, are sometimes followed by an ablative of the voluntary agent with *a* or *ab*; as,

*M. Marcellus periit ab Annibale*, M. Marcellus was killed by Hannibal. Plin. *Ne vir ab hoste cadat*. Ovid.

REM. 3. The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Nec conjûge captus*. Ovid. *Collitur linigérâ turbâ*. Id. *Pereat meis exctius Argivis*. Hor.

For the dative of the agent after verbs in the passive voice, and participles in *ans*, see § 225, II. and III.

II. The *involuntary* agent of a verb in the passive voice, or of a neuter verb, is put in the ablative without a preposition, as the cause, means, or instrument; as, *Maximo dolore conficior*. Cic. *Frangi cupiditate*. Id. *Ætâta tâlo jocos*. Virg.

**NOTE.** The involuntary agent is sometimes personified, and takes *a* or *ab*; as, *A voluptatibus desert.* Cic. *A naturâ datum homini vivendi curriculum.* Id. *Vinci a voluptate.* Id. *Victus a labore.* Id.

§ 249. I. A noun denoting the means, by which the action of a verb is performed, is put in the ablative after verbs signifying to affect in any way, to fill, furnish, load, array, equip, endow, adorn, reward, enrich, and many others.

**REMARK 1.** This rule includes such verbs as *afficio*, *aspergo*, *conspergo*, *inspergo*, *respergo*, *compleo*, *expleo*, *impleo*, *oppleo*, *repleo*, *suppleo*, *cumulo*, *farcio*, *refercio*, *satio*, *exsatio*, *satiatio*, *stipo*, *constipo*, *obruo*, *onero*, *augeo*, *induo*, *vestio*, *armo*, *orno*, *circundo*, *circumfundo*, *macio*, *lucuplato*, *instruo*, *imbuo*, *dono*, *impertio*, *remuneror*, *honesto*, *honoror*, etc.; as,

*Terrorâ implentur Africa*, Africa is filled with terror. Sil. *Instruere epulis mensas*, They furnished the tables with food. Ovid. *Ut ejus animum his opinionibus imbuis*, That you should imbue his mind with these sentiments. Cic. *Naves onerant auro*, They load the ships with gold. Virg. *Cumulat altaria donis*, He heaps the altars with gifts. Id. *Terra se gramine vestit*, The earth clothes itself with grass. Id. *Mollibus ornabat cornua sertis*. Id. *Multo cibo et potione completi*. Cic. *Libros puerilibus fabulis refercire*. Id. *Satiari delectatione non possum*. Id. *Homines saturati honoribus*. Id. *Senectus stipata studiis juventutis*. Id. *Me tanto honore honestas*. Plaut. *Equis Africam lucuplatavit*. Colum. *Stichum tuum nullâ me novâ voluptate affecit*. Cic. *Terram nox obruit* umbris. Lucr.

**REM. 2.** Several verbs denoting to fill, instead of the ablative, sometimes take a genitive. See § 220, 3.

**REM. 3.** The active verbs *induo*, *dono*, *impertio*, *aspergo*, *inspergo*, *circundo*, and *circumfundo*, instead of the ablative of the thing with the accusative of the person, sometimes take an accusative of the thing, and a dative of the person; as, *Cui quum Deianira tunicam induisset*. Cic. *Donare munera civibus*. In the earliest writers *dono*, like *condono*, has sometimes two accusatives or an accusative of the person with the infinitive.

II. A noun denoting that in accordance with which any thing is, or is done, is often put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Nostro more*, According to our custom. Cic. *Instituto suo Cæsar copias suas eduxit*, According to his practice. Cæs. *Id factum consilio meo*,—by my advice. Ter. *Pacem fecit his conditionibus*,—on these conditions. Nep.

**NOTE.** The prepositions *de*, *ex*, *pro*, and *secundum* are often expressed with such nouns; as, *Næque est facturus quidquam nisi de meo consilio*. Cic. *Ex consuetudine aliquid facere*. Plin. Ep. *Decet quidquid agas, agere pro viribus*. Cic. *Secundum naturam vivere*. Id.

III. The ablative denoting accompaniment, is usually joined with *cum*; as,

*Vagamur egentes cum conjugibus et liberis*, Needy, we wander with our wives and children. Cic. *Sæpe admirari soleo cum hoc C. Lælio*. Id. *Julium cum his ad te literis misi*. Id. *Ingressus est cum gladio*. Id. *Romam veni cum febris*. Cum occasu solis copias educere,—as soon as the sun set.

**REMARK.** But *cum* is sometimes omitted before words denoting military and naval forces, when limited by an adjective; as, *Ad castra Cæsaris omnibus copiis contenderunt*. Cæs. *Inde toto exercitu profectus*. Liv. *Eodem decem milibus C. Furius venit*. Liv. And sometimes in military language *cum* is omitted, when accompanying circumstances are mentioned, and not persons; as, *Castra clamore invadunt*.

§ 250. 1. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be followed by the ablative, denoting *in what respect* their signification is taken; as,

*Pilâte filius, constâtiis pâtrens*, In affection a son, in counsel a parent. Cic. *Rêges nômîne magis quam império*, Kings in name rather than in authority. Nep. *Oppidum nômîne Bibrax*. Cæs.—*Jure përitus*, Skilled in law. Cic. *Anxius animo*, Anxious in mind. Tac. *Pëdibus ager*, Lame in his feet. Sall. *Crime rüber, niger ore*. Mart. *Fronte lætus*. Tac. *Majôr nâtu*. Cic. *Prudentiâ non infërior, ânu vëro etiâ superior*. Id. *Maximus nâtu*. Liv.—*Animo angî*, To be troubled in mind. Cic. *Contrémisco tôlâ mente et omnibus artibus*, I am agitated in my whole mind and in every limb. Id. *Captus mente*, Affected in mind, i. e. deprived of reason. Id. *Aliëro ôculo capitur*. Liv. *Ingëniû laude flôrui*. Cic. *Pollere nobilitâtë*. Tac. *Animôque et corpore torpet*. Hor.

REMARK. This may be called the *ablative of limitation*, and denotes the relation expressed in English by 'in respect of,' 'in regard to,' 'as to,' or 'in.'—Respecting the genitive of limitation after adjectives, see § 213;—after verbs, § 220, 1: and respecting the accusative of limitation, see § 231, R. 5; § 232, (3.); and § 234, II.

2. (1.) Adjectives of plenty or want are sometimes limited by the ablative; as,

*Dômus plëna servis*, A house full of servants. Juv. *Dives agris*, Rich in land. Hor. *Fërax sæculum bonis artibus*. Plin.—*Inops verbis*, Deficient in words. Cic. *Orba frâtribus*, Destitute of brothers. Ovid. *Viduum arboribus solum*. Colum. *Nûdus agris*. Hor. For the genitive after adjectives of plenty and want, see § 213, R. 3-5.

(2.) Verbs signifying to abound, and to be destitute, are followed by the ablative; as,

*Scâtentem bellâis pontum*, The sea abounding in monsters. Hor. *Urbs rêdundat militibus*, The city is full of soldiers. Auct. ad Her. *Villa abundat porco, hædo, agno, gallinâ, lacte, cæseo, melle*. Cic.—*Virum qui pecuniâ egeat*, A man who is in want of money. Id. *Cârere culpâ*, To be free from fault. Id. *Mea adolëcentia indiget illôrûm bonâ existimatiône*. Id. *Abundat audaciâ, consilio et ratiône deficiunt*. Id.

REMARK 1. To this rule belong *abundo*, *ezubëro*, *rêdundo*, *scâteo*, *affluo*, *circumfluo*, *difflo*, *superfluo*, *suppëdâto*, *valeo*, *vigeo*;—*cæreo*, *égeo*, *indigeo*, *vêco*, *dëficior*, *destituor*, etc.

REM. 2. The *genitive*, instead of the ablative, sometimes follows certain verbs signifying to abound or to want. See § 220, 3.

REM. 3. To do any thing with a person or thing, is expressed in Latin by *fâcere* with *de*; as, *Quid de Tulliôlâ meâ fiet?* Cic.; and more frequently by the simple ablative, or the dative; as, *Quid hoc hómîne or huic hómîni faciâtiis?* What can you do with this man? Cic. *Nescit quid faciât auro*,—what he shall do with the gold. Plaut. *Quid me fiat parvi pendis*, You care little what becomes of me. Ter.—*Sum* is occasionally used in the same manner; as, *Mitum cëpërun quidnam se fütürum esset*,—what would become of them. Liv.

§ 251. A noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, or from which it is freed, removed, or separated, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

This construction occurs after verbs signifying to *deprive*, *free*, *debar*, *drive away*, *remove*, *depart*, and others which imply *separation*.

NOTE. The principal verbs of this class are *arceo*, *pello*, *dépello*, *expello*, *ab-  
dico*, *interdico*, *défendo*, *déturbo*, *déjicio*, *éjicio*, *absterreo*, *déterreo*, *móveo*, *amóveo*,  
*démóveo*, *rémóveo*, *sécerno*, *próhibeo*, *sépáro*, *exclúdo*, *interclúdo*, *ábéo*, *ezéo*, *cédo*,  
*décido*, *discédo*, *désisto*, *évado*, *abstíneo*, *spólio*, *privo*, *orbo*, *libéro*, *expédío*, *lazo*,  
*nádo*, *solo*, *exsolvo*, *ezóvó*, *léro*, *purgo*, to which may be added the adjectives  
*liber*, *immánis*, *párus*, *vácuus*, and *aliénus*; as,

*Núdamtur árbóres fóliis*, The trees are stripped of leaves. Plin. *Hoc me libéra  
mētu*, Free me from this fear. Ter. *Túne eam philósophiam séquere, quæ spóliat  
nos júdicio, privat approbátione, orbat sensibus?* Cic. *Solvit se Teucría luctu*.  
Virg. *Te illis sódibus arcébit*. Cic. *Q. Varium pellére possessiónibus cónatus  
est*. Id. *Omnés tribu réndit*. Liv. *Lévare se ere aliéno*. Cic. *Me léves chóri  
sécernunt pópulo*. Hor. *Animus omni liber cúra et angóre*. Cic. *Utrunqúe  
hómíne aliénissim*. Id. When *aliénus* signifies 'averse' or 'hostile to,' it takes  
the ablative with *ab*, or rarely the dative; as, *Id dicit, quod illi causæ maxime  
est aliénus*. Id. In the sense of 'unsuited,' it may also be joined with the gen-  
itive; as, *Quis aliénus páter ejus esse dignitátis?* Id.—*Alius* too, in analogy  
with adjectives and verbs of separation, sometimes takes an ablative; as, *Nice  
pátes álum sapiente bonóque beatum*. Hor.; but this may also be referred to the  
ablative after comparatives. Cf. § 256, R. 14.

REMARK 1. Most verbs of depriving and separating are more or less fre-  
quently followed by *ab*, *de*, or *ex*, with the ablative of the thing, and always by  
*ab* with the ablative of the person; as, *Tu Júpiter, hunc a tuis aris arcébis*. Cic.  
*Prasídium ex arce pépulerunt*. Nep. *Aquam de agro pellére*. Plin. *Ex ingrátá  
civítate cédere*. Cic. *Arcens ab incendio libérávit*. Id. *Solvére bellum ex cá-  
ténis*. Auct. ad Her.—*Sédes rémótas a Germánis*. Cæs. *Se ab Etruscis sécér-  
nére*. Liv.

REM. 2. *Arceo*, in the poets, sometimes takes the dative, see § 224, R. 2.,  
and sometimes an infinitive; as, *Pláganque sédere cédendo arcébat*. Ovid.—  
*Próhibeo* and *défendo* take either the accusative of the person or thing to be  
defended, with the ablative of the thing to be warded off—or the reverse—  
*álquem* or *álquid* a *pérículo*, or *pérículum ab álquo*. They are also sometimes  
construed with the dative, see § 224, R. 2, and sometimes with infinitive or  
subjunctive clauses. *Próhibeo* has rarely two accusatives; as, *Id te Júpiter  
próhibessit*. Plaut.; or poetically the accusative and genitive; as, *Captæ próhi-  
bere Páenos áquillæ*. Sil.—*Interdico* takes the person either in the accusative or  
the dative, and the thing in the ablative, *álquem* or *álcui* *álquã* re; as, *Quibus  
quum áquã et igni interdixissent*. Cæs.—Instead of the ablative, a subjunctive  
clause with *ne*, and more rarely with *ut*, sometimes follows *interdico*.—*Absum*,  
in like manner, takes the ablative with *ab*, and sometimes the dative; as,  
*Curtæ nescio quid semper ábest rei*. Hor. Cf. § 224, R. 1.—*Abdico* takes some-  
times an ablative, and sometimes an accusative of the thing renounced; as,  
*Abdicáre se mágistrátu*. Cic. *Abdicáre mágistrátum*. Sall. In Plautus, *circ-  
umdico*, to cheat, takes the ablative of the thing. *Interclúdo*, instead of an  
ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person, sometimes takes an  
accusative of the thing and a dative of the person; as, *Itínérum angustia mul-  
títúdini fúgam interclústrant*. Cæs.: and, instead of the ablative of the thing,  
a subjunctive clause with *quóminus* occurs: *Interclúdor dólore, quóminus ad te  
plúra scribam*. Cic.

REM. 3. Verbs which signify to *distinguish*, to *differ*, and to *disagree*, are  
generally construed with *ab*, but sometimes, especially in the poets, with the  
ablative alone.

NOTE. Verbs signifying to distinguish, etc., are *distinguo*, *discerno*, *sécerno*,  
*différo*, *discrepo*, *disideo*, *disio*, *dissentio*, *discordo*, *áhorreo*, *aliéno*, and *abáliéno*.—  
*Dissentio*, *disideo*, *discrepo*, and *discordo* are construed also with *cum*.—The  
verbs which signify to *differ* are sometimes construed with the dative; as,  
*Distat infido scurræ ámicus*. Hor., and in like manner the adjective *diversus*;  
as, *Nihil est tam Lysíæ diversum, quam Isocrátes*. Quint.

## ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

§ 252. The price or value of a thing is put in the ablative, when it is a definite sum, or is expressed by a substantive; as,

*Quum te trécentis talentis régi Cotto vendidisses*, When you had sold yourself to king Cottus for three hundred talents. Cic. *Vendidit hic auro patriam*, This one sold his country for gold. Virg. *Cibus uno asse vénalis*. Plin. *Constitit quadringentis millibus*. Varr. *Dénis in diem assibus ánimum et corpus (militum) aestimátri*. Tac. *Lévi móménto aestimáre*. Cæs. *Istuc verbum vile est viginti minis*. Plaut. *Asse cárum est*. Sen. Ep.

REMARK 1. The verbs which take an ablative of price or value are (1) *aestimo, dúco, fácio, fio, hábeo, pendo, puto, depúto, tazo*; (2) *émo, mercor, vendo, do, véneo, sto, consto, prosto, conduco, lóco, váleo, luo, and líceo*.—To these must be added others, which express some act or enjoyment for which a certain price is paid; as, *Lávor quádrante*. Tríginta millibus *Ócelius hábitat*. Cic. *Vix drachmis est obsónátus* decem. Ter. *Dóceo talento*, etc. So *esse* in the sense 'to be worth'; as, *Sextante sal in Iúliá erat*.

REM. 2. Respecting the genitive of price or value, when expressed in a general or indefinite manner, see § 214.

REM. 3. The price of a thing, contrary to the general rule, is often expressed indefinitely by a neuter adjective; as, *magno, permagno, parvo, tantúlo, pláre, mínimo, plúrimo, vilí, vilíori, vilíssimó, nímio*, etc.; as, *Pláre vénit*. Cic. *Conduxi non magno dómum*. Id. These adjectives refer to some noun understood, as *prétio, aere*, and the like, which are sometimes expressed; as, *Parvo prétio ea vendidisse*. Cic.—The adverbs *béne, pulchre, recte, mále, cáre*, etc., sometimes take the place of the genitive or ablative of price; as, *Béne émere; recte vendére; optime vendére*, etc.

REM. 4. Varro has used *váleo* with the accusative; as, *Déndrui ácti, quod dénos aris válebant*.

REM. 5. *Múto* and its compounds, *commúto* and *permúto*, are commonly construed like verbs of selling, the thing parted with being put in the accusative, and the thing received in exchange for it, in the ablative; as, *Cháoniam glándem pingui mütávit áristá*. Virg. But these cases are often reversed, so that the thing received is put in the accusative and the thing given for it in the ablative; as, *Cur valle permútem Sábina divitias opérsiöres?* Why should I exchange my Sabine valley for more wearisome riches? Hor.—Sometimes in this construction *cum* is joined with the ablative.

## ABLATIVE OF TIME.

§ 253. A noun denoting the time at or within which any thing is said to be, or to be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Die quinto décessit*, He died on the fifth day. Nep. *Hoc tempóre*, At this time. Cic. *Tertiá vigiliá éruptionem fécerunt*, They made a sally at the third watch. Cæs. *Ul hième návigés*, That you should sail in the winter. Cic. *Próximo triennio omnes gentes súbégit*. Nep. *Agámémnon cum úniüersá Gráciá ois décem annis únam cépit urbem*. Nep.

NOTE 1. The English expression 'by day' is rendered in Latin either by *interdiu* or *die*; 'by night,' by *noctu* or *nocte*; and 'in the evening,' by *vespère* or *vespéri*; see § 82, Exc. 5, (a.) *Lúdis* is used for *in tempóre ludórum*; and *Sátürnálibus, Látiis, gládiátóribus*, for *lúdis Sátürnálibus*, etc. Other nouns not properly expressing time are used in that sense in the ablative either with or without *in*, as *initio, principio, adventu* and *discessu álciújus, cómitiis, iústiis, bello, páce*, etc.; or *in initio*, etc. But *bello* is more common without *in*, if it is

joined with an adjective or a genitive; as, *Bello Pánico secundo, bello Lātīnorum*; and so, also, *pugnā Cannensi*. So we say *in puertitiā*, but omit *in* with an adjective; as, *extrēmā puertitiā*. *In* is very rarely used with nouns expressing a certain space of time; as, *annus, dies, hōra*, etc., for the purpose of denoting the time of an event. *In tempore* signifies either 'in distress,' or 'in time,' i. e. 'at the right time'; but in both cases *tempore* alone is used, and *tempore* in the sense of 'early' has even become an adverb, an earlier form of which was *tempōri* or *tempēri*, whose comparative is *tempērius*.

REMARK 1. When a period is marked by its distance before or after another fixed time, it may be expressed by *ante* or *post* with either the accusative or the ablative.—(a.) The preposition is regularly placed before the accusative, but after the ablative. If an adjective is used, the preposition is often placed between the adjective and the noun. In this connection the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers may be used. Hence the English phrase 'after three years,' or 'three years after,' may be expressed in these eight ways; *post tres annos, tribus annis post; post tertium annum, tertio anno post; tres post annos, tribus post annis; tertium post annum, tertio post anno*.

(b.) When *ante* or *post* stands last, an accusative may be added to denote the time before or after which any thing took place; as, *Multis annis post dē-cemvros*. Cic. So *Consul factus est annis post Rōmam conditam trēcentis duodēnōaginta*.

NOTE 2. *Post* and *ante* sometimes precede the ablatives, as *ante annis octo; post pauis diēbus*; and also before such ablatives as are used adverbially, as *post aliquanto; ante paulo*.

NOTE 3. *Quam* and a verb are sometimes added to *post* and *ante* in all the forms above specified; e. g. *tribus annis postquam vēnērāt; post tres annos quā vēnērāt; tertio anno postquam vēnērāt; post annum tertium quā vēnērāt*, etc.; all of which expressions signify 'three years after he had come.' Sometimes *post* is omitted; as, *tertio anno quā vēnērāt*.

NOTE 4. Instead of *postquam*, 'after,' we may use *ex quo, quum*, or a relative agreeing with the preceding adjective; as, *post tres annos quum vēnērāt; tertio anno ex quo vēnērāt; quibus hęc litterae dē-bam, cum Lēpidi cōpiae me conjungunt*; i. e. 'three days after the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. Fam. Mors Scā. Ratiōne quatuor dies postea est, Chrysogōno nuntiātur,—four days after he had been killed. Cic. Quam triduo, quum has dābam lītēras, exspectābam,—three days after the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. In such cases *in* is sometimes joined with the ablative; as, *In diēbus paucis, quibus hęc acta sunt, moritur*. Ter.

REM. 2. The length of time before the present moment may be expressed by *abhinc* with the accusative, and, less frequently, the ablative; as, *Quæstor fuisti ābhinc annos quātuordecim*. Cic. *Cōmitiis jam ābhinc triginta diēbus habitis*. Id. The same is also expressed by *ante* with the pronoun *hic*; as, *ante hos sex menses maledixisti mihi*,—six months ago. Phaed. *Ante* is sometimes used instead of *abhinc*; and the length of time before is sometimes expressed by the ablative joined with *hic* or *ille*; as, *Paucis his diēbus, or paucis illis diēbus*,—a few days ago.

REM. 3. The time at which any thing is done, is sometimes expressed by the neuter accusative *id*, with a genitive; as, *Venit id tempōris*. Cic. So with a preposition; *Ad id diēi*. Gell. See § 212, R. 3.

REM. 4. (a.) The time at or within which any thing is done, is sometimes, with personal subjects, expressed by *de*, with the ablative; as, *De tertiā vigiliā ad hostes contendit*,—in the third watch. Cæs. *Ut jugulēt hōmīnes surgunt de nocte latrōnes*. Hor. So, also, with *sub*; as, *Ne sub ipsā prōfectione milites opti-dum irumpērent*,—at the very time of his departure. Cæs. *Sub adventu Rōmān-ōrum*, While the Romans were arriving. Id.

(b.) The time within which any thing occurs, is also sometimes expressed by *infra* with the accusative; as, *Dimidiā partem natiōnum sibiēgit intra vīginti dies*. Plaut. *Intra dēcimum diē, quā Phēras vēnērāt*, In less than ten days after... Liv.



REM. 5. The time within which a thing happens, is often expressed by the ablative with *in*; especially (a) in connection with numerals; as, *Bis* in die *editūrum fieri*; *vix ter* in anno *nuntium audire*; and (b), as in the use of *intra*, to denote that the event happened before the time specified had fully expired.

REM. 6. Instead of *in pueritiā, adulescentiā, iuventūte, senectūte*, etc., in stating the age at which a person performed any action, the concretes *puer, adulescens, iuvenis, senex*, etc., are commonly joined to the verb; as, *On. Pompeius, adulescens se et patrem consilio servavit*.—So, also, adjectives ending in *enārius* are sometimes used in stating the number of years a person has lived; as, *Cicero sexagēnārius*.

For the ablative denoting duration of time, see § 236.

### ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 254. The name of a town *in which* any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the third declension or plural number, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Alexander Bābylōne est mortuus*, Alexander died at Babylon. Cic. *Interēri multum*—Thēbis *nūtritus* an Argis,—whether brought up at Thebes or at Argos. Hor. *Nātus Tibūre vel Gābiis*. Id.

REMARK 1. 'In the country' is expressed by *rūre*, or more commonly by *rūri*, without a preposition; as, *Pater fīlium rūri hābitāre jussit*. Cic. With an adjective only *rūre* is used; as, *Interdum nūgāris rūre pāterno*. Hor. Cf. § 221, N.

REM. 2. (a.) The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed with names of towns; as, *In Philippis quidam nunciāvit*. Suet.

(b.) Names of towns of the first and second declension, and singular number, and also *dōmus* and *hūmus*, are in like manner sometimes put in the ablative without *in*. See § 221, R. 2 and R. 3.—So, also, *terrā mārīque*, by land and by sea. *In* is also frequently omitted with *lōco* and *lōcis*, especially when joined with an adjective and having the meaning of 'occasion'; as, *Hoc lōco, multis lōcis*, etc.—*Libro* joined with an adjective, as *hoc, primo*, etc., is used without *in* when the whole book is meant, and with *in* when only a portion is referred to. An ablative of place joined with *tōto, totā, tōtis*, is generally used without *in*; as, *Urbe tōtā gēmītus fīl.* Cic. *Tōtā Asiā vāgātur*. Id. *Tōto mārī*. Id. But in such cases *in* is sometimes used. So *cunctā Asiā*. Liv.

REM. 3. Before the names of countries, of nations used for those of countries, and of all other places in which any thing is said to be or to be done, except those of towns, and excepting also the phrases specified in the first and second remarks, the preposition *in* is commonly used; as, *Sphicrātes in Thrāciā vixit, Chares in Sigēo*. Nep. *Rūre ego viventem, tu dicis in urbe beatum*. Hor. *Aio hoc fieri in Græciā*. Plaut. In Bactriānis Sogdianisque urbēs condidit. *Lūcus in urbe fuit*. Virg. But it is sometimes omitted by writers of every class and period; as, *Mīlites stātivis castris hābebāt*. Sall. *Magnis in laudibus fuit tōtā Græciā*. Nep. *Popūli sensus maxime theātro et spectāculis perspectus est*. Cic. *Pompeius se oppidō tēnet*. Id. In the poets and later prose writers this omission is of very frequent occurrence not only with names of towns but with ablatives of all nouns answering to the question, where? as, *Nāctia puppe adens*. Ovid. *Idam forte Viā Sacrā*. Hor. *Silvisque agrisque viisq̄ne corpōra feda jacent*. Ovid. *Mēdio alveo concursus est*. Liv.—*Fōris*, out at the door, abroad, is properly an ablative of place; as, *Fōris cenat*. Cic. Cf. § 237, R. 5, (c.)

§ 255. 1. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of a town *whence* the motion proceeds, is put in the ablative, without a preposition; as,

Brundisio *præfecti sumus*, We departed from Brundisium. Cic. *Dionysius tyrannus Syracusis expulsus Corinthi pueros docebat*. Id. *Demaratus Tarquinius Corintho fugit*. Id. *Accipi tuas litteras datas Placentiæ*. Id. *Interim Rômâ per litteras certior fit*; scil. *datas* or *missas*. Sall. J. 82. So, also, after a verbal noun; as, *Narbône reditus*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The ablatives *dômo*, *hûmo*, and *rûre* or *rûri*, are used, like names of towns, to denote the place whence motion proceeds; as,

*Dômo præfectus*, Having set out from home. Nep. *Surgit hûmo juvenis*, The youth rises from the ground. Ovid. *Rûre huc advēnit*. Ter. *Si rûri veniet*. Id. Virgil uses *dômo* with *unde*; as, *Qui gēnus? unde dômo?* and Livy, instead of *dômo abesse*, has *esse ab dômo*. With an adjective, *rûre*, and not *rûri*, must be used.

REM. 2. With names of towns and *dômus* and *hûmus*, when answering the question 'whence?' *ab*, *ex*, or *de*, is sometimes used; as, *Ab Alexandria præfectus*. Cic. *Ez dômo*. Id. *De vitifera venisse Viennâ*. Mart. *Ab hûmo*. Virg.

REM. 3. (a.) With other names of places whence motion proceeds, *ab*, *ex*, or *de*, is commonly expressed; as, *Me a portu præmisit*. Plaut. *Ex Asiâ transis in Europam*. Curt. *Ex castris præfiscuntur*. Cæs. *De Pompino*, scil. *prædio*. Cic.—So, also, before names of nations used for those of countries; as, *Ex Medis ad adversariorum hibernacula pervēnit*. Nep.

(b.) But the preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Litræ Mæcedoniâ allata*. Liv. *Classis Cypro advēnit*. Curt. *Cessissent loco*. Liv. *Ni cite vicis et castellis proximis subeuntum foret*. Id. *Ite sacris, præpérate sacris, laurumque capillis pōnite*. Ovid. *Finibus omnes prōstluere suis*. Virg. *Advolvunt ingentes montibus ornos*. Id. This omission of the preposition is most common in the poets and later prose writers.

2. The place *by*, *through*, or *over* which, after verbs of motion, commonly follows *per*; but frequently also it is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Per Thēbas iter fecit*. Nep. *Exercitum vado transducit*. Cæs. *His pontibus pabulatum mittebat*. Id. *Tribuni militum portâ Collinâ urbem intravere sub signis, mediâque urbe agmine in Aventinum pergunt*. Liv. *Lêgiones Penninis Cottianisque Alpibus, pars monte Graio, traducuntur*. Tac. *Equites viâ brevioris præmisi*. Cic.

## ABLATIVE AFTER COMPARATIVES.

§ 256. 1. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, as *quam*, *atque*, etc., is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted.

2. The comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, is followed by the ablative of that with which the comparison is made; as,

*Nihil est virtute formosius*, Nothing is more beautiful than virtue. Cic. *Quis C. Lælio cōmor?* Who is more courteous than C. Lælius? Id.

REMARK 1. The person or thing with which the *subject* of a proposition is compared, is usually put in the ablative; as,

*Sidere pulchrior ille est, tu levior cortice*. Hor. *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum*. Id. *Tullus Hostilius ferocior Rômulo fuit*. Liv. *Lacrimâ nihil citius arescit*. Cic. *Quid magis est durum saxo, quid mollius undâ?* Ovid. *Hoo nemo fuit minus ineptus*. Ter. *Albânium, Mæcenas, sive Falerum te magis apollitis delectat*. Hor.

3. The *means* and *instrument*. An ablative is joined with verbs of every kind, and also with adjectives of a passive signification, to express the means or instrument; as,

*Amicos observantiā, rem parsimoniā retinuit*. He retained his friends by attention, his property by frugality. Cic. *Auro ostrōgue decōri*. Virg. *Egrescā mēdendo*. Id. *Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones se tūtantur*. Cic. *Causa est virgis*. Id. *Trabs saucia sēcūri*. Ovid. For the ablative of the means after verbs of *filling*, etc., see § 248, 1.

REM. 4. When the means is a person, it is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by *per*, or by the ablative *opēra* with a genitive or a possessive pronoun; as, *meā, tuā, suā, opēra*, which are equivalent to *per me, per te, per se*, and denote both good and bad services. *Beneficio meo*, etc., is used of good results only; as, *Beneficio meo patres sunt*. Sall. But persons are sometimes considered as involuntary agents, and as such expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Servos, quibus silvas publicas depopulatus erat*. Cic.—When *per* is used to express the means, it is connected with external concurring circumstances, rather than with the real means or instrument. Hence we always say *vi oppidum cepit*, but *per vim ei bona eripuit*.

REM. 5. The material instrument is always expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Conficere cervum sagittis; gladio aliquem vulnerare; trahere pectus ferro*.

§ 248. The ablative is used with passive verbs to denote the *means* or *agent* by which any thing is effected, and which in the active voice is expressed by the nominative. This ablative is used either with *ab* or without it, according as it is a person or a thing.

I. The *voluntary* agent of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*; as,

(In the active voice,) *Clodius me diligit*, Clodius loves me (Cic.); (in the passive,) *A Clodio diligor*, I am loved by Clodius. *Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis*. Hor.

REMARK 1. (1.) The general word for persons, after verbs in the passive voice, is often understood; as, *Probitas laudatur*, scil. *ab hominibus*. Juv. So after the passive of neuter verbs; as, *Discurritur*. Virg. *Toto certatum est corpore regni*. Id. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

(2.) The agent is likewise often understood, when it is the same as the subject of the verb, and the expression is then equivalent to the active voice with a reflexive pronoun, or to the middle voice in Greek; as, *Quum omnes in omni genere scelerum voluntur*, scil. *a se*. Cic.

REM. 2. Neuter verbs, also, are sometimes followed by an ablative of the voluntary agent with *a* or *ab*; as,

*M. Marcellus perit ab Annibale*, M. Marcellus was killed by Hannibal. Plin. *Ne vir ab hoste cadat*. Ovid.

REM. 3. The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Nec conjuge captus*. Ovid. *Cultur linigera turba*. Id. *Pereat meis excisus Argivis*. Hor.

For the dative of the agent after verbs in the passive voice, and participles in *ens*, see § 225, II. and III.

II. The *involuntary* agent of a verb in the passive voice, or of a neuter verb, is put in the ablative without a preposition, as the cause, means, or instrument; as, *Maximo dolore conficior*. Cic. *Frangi cupiditate*. Id. *Euctida telo jacet Hector*. Virg.

**NOTE.** The involuntary agent is sometimes personified, and takes *a* or *ab*; as, *A voluptatibus deserti*. Cic. *A naturâ datum homini vivendi curriculum*. Id. *Vinci a voluptate*. Id. *Victus a labore*. Id.

§ 249. I. A noun denoting the means, by which the action of a verb is performed, is put in the ablative after verbs signifying to *affect* in any way, to *fill*, *furnish*, *load*, *array*, *equip*, *endow*, *adorn*, *reward*, *enrich*, and many others.

**REMARK 1.** This rule includes such verbs as *afficio*, *aspergo*, *conspargo*, *inspergo*, *re-spergo*, *compleo*, *expleo*, *impleo*, *oppleo*, *repleo*, *suppleo*, *cumulo*, *farcio*, *refercio*, *satio*, *exsatio*, *satiatio*, *stipo*, *constipo*, *obruo*, *onero*, *augeo*, *induo*, *vestio*, *armo*, *orno*, *circumdo*, *circumfundo*, *mactio*, *lucuplento*, *instruo*, *imbuo*, *dono*, *impertio*, *remaneor*, *honesto*, *honoro*, etc.; as,

*Terröre implētur Africa*, Africa is filled with terror. Sil. *Instruere epulis mensas*, They furnished the tables with food. Ovid. *Ut ejus animum his opinionibus imbuas*, That you should imbue his mind with these sentiments. Cic. *Naves onerant auro*, They load the ships with gold. Virg. *Cumulat altaria donis*, He heaps the altars with gifts. Id. *Terra se gramine vestit*, The earth clothes itself with grass. Id. *Molibus ornabat cornua sertis*. Id. *Multo cibo et potione completi*. Cic. *Libros puerilibus fabulis refercire*. Id. *Satiari delectatione non possum*. Id. *Homines satiati honoribus*. Id. *Senectus stipata studiis juvenitatis*. Id. *Me tanto honore honestas*. Plaut. *Equis Africam lucuplento*. Colum. *Stictum tuum nulla me nova voluptate affecit*. Cic. *Terram nox obruit umbris*. Lucr.

**REM. 2.** Several verbs denoting to fill, instead of the ablative, sometimes take a genitive. See § 220, 3.

**REM. 3.** The active verbs *induo*, *dono*, *impertio*, *aspergo*, *inspergo*, *circumdo*, and *circumfundo*, instead of the ablative of the thing with the accusative of the person, sometimes take an accusative of the thing, and a dative of the person; as, *Cui quum Decianra tunicam induisset*. Cic. *Donare munera civibus*. In the earliest writers *dono*, like *condono*, has sometimes two accusatives or an accusative of the person with the infinitive.

II. A noun denoting that in accordance with which any thing is, or is done, is often put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Nostro more*, According to our custom. Cic. *Instituto suo Cesar copias suas educit*, According to his practice. Cæs. *Id factum consilio meo*,—by my advice. Ter. *Pacem fecit his conditionibus*,—on these conditions. Nep.

**NOTE.** The prepositions *de*, *ex*, *pro*, and *secundum* are often expressed with such nouns; as, *Negue est facturus quidquam nisi de meo consilio*. Cic. *Ex consuetudine aliquid facere*. Plin. Ep. *Decet quidquid agas, agere pro viribus*. Cic. *Secundum naturam vivere*. Id.

III. The ablative denoting accompaniment, is usually joined with *cum*; as,

*Vagamur egentes cum conjugibus et liberis*, Needy, we wander with our wives and children. Cic. *Sepe admirari soleo cum hoc C. Lelio*. Id. *Salum cum his ad te literis misi*. Id. *Ingressus est cum gladio*. Id. *Romam veni cum febrili*. Cum occasu solis copias educere,—as soon as the sun set.

**REMARK.** But *cum* is sometimes omitted before words denoting military and naval forces, when limited by an adjective; as, *Ad castra Cesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt*. Cæs. *Inde toto exercitu profectus*. Liv. *Eodem decem milibus C. Furius venit*. Liv. And sometimes in military language *cum* is omitted, when accompanying circumstances are mentioned, and not persons; as, *Castra clamore incedunt*.

§ 250. 1. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be followed by the ablative, denoting *in what respect* their signification is taken; as,

*Piētate filius, consiliis parens*, In affection a son, in counsel a parent. Cic. *Rēges nōmine magis quam impērio*, Kings in name rather than in authority. Nep. *Oppidum nōmine Bibrax*. Cæs.—*Jure peritus*, Skilled in law. Cic. *Anxius animo*, Anxious in mind. Tac. *Pēdibus ager*, Lame in his feet. Sall. *Crine ruber, niger ore*. Mart. *Fronte latus*. Tac. *Māior nātū*. Cic. *Prudentiā non infērior, ūsu vērō etiā superior*. Id. *Maximus nātū*. Liv.—*Animo angī*, To be troubled in mind. Cic. *Contrēmisco totā mente et omnibus artibus*, I am agitated in my whole mind and in every limb. Id. *Captus mente*, Affected in mind, i. e. deprived of reason. Id. *Aliō oculo capitur*. Liv. *Ingeniū laude flōruit*. Cic. *Pollere nobilitate*. Tac. *Animōque et corpore torpet*. Hor.

REMARK. This may be called the *ablative of limitation*, and denotes the relation expressed in English by 'in respect of,' 'in regard to,' 'as to,' or 'in.'—Respecting the genitive of limitation after adjectives, see § 213;—after verbs, § 220, 1: and respecting the accusative of limitation, see § 231, R. 5; § 232, (3.); and § 234, II.

2. (1.) Adjectives of plenty or want are sometimes limited by the ablative; as,

*Dōmus plēna servis*, A house full of servants. Juv. *Dives agris*, Rich in land. Hor. *Fērax sēcūlum bonis artibus*. Plin.—*Inops verbis*, Deficient in words. Cic. *Orba frātribus*, Destitute of brothers. Ovid. *Viduum arbōribus solum*. Colum. *Nūdus agris*. Hor. For the genitive after adjectives of plenty and want, see § 213, R. 3-5.

(2.) Verbs signifying to abound, and to be destitute, are followed by the ablative; as,

*Scātentem belluis pontum*, The sea abounding in monsters. Hor. *Urbs rēdundat militibus*, The city is full of soldiers. Auct. ad Her. *Villa abundat porco, hodo, agno, gallinā, lacte, cāseo, melle*. Cic.—*Virum qui pecūniā egeat*, A man who is in want of money. Id. *Cārere culpā*, To be free from fault. Id. *Mea adulescentia indiget illōrum bonā existimatiōne*. Id. *Abundat audaciā, consilio et ratiōne deficiat*. Id.

REMARK 1. To this rule belong *abundo, exubēro, rēdundo, scāteo, affluo, circumfluo, diffluo, superfluo, suppēdio, vāleo, vigeo*;—*cāreo, egeo, indigeo, vāco, deficiō, destituo*, etc.

REM. 2. The *genitive*, instead of the ablative, sometimes follows certain verbs signifying to abound or to want. See § 220, 3.

REM. 3. To do any thing with a person or thing, is expressed in Latin by *fācere* with *de*; as, *Quid de Tulliolā meā fiet?* Cic.; and more frequently by the simple ablative, or the dative; as, *Quid hoc hōmine or huic hōmini faciātis?* What can you do with this man? Cic. *Nescit quid faciāt auro*,—what he shall do with the gold. Plaut. *Quid me fiat parvi pendis*, You care little what becomes of me. Ter.—*Sum* is occasionally used in the same manner; as, *Mitum cēperunt quidnam se futūrum esset*,—what would become of them. Liv.

§ 251. A noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, or from which it is freed, removed, or separated, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

This construction occurs after verbs signifying to *deprive, free, debar, drive away, remove, depart*, and others which imply *separation*.

**NOTE.** The principal verbs of this class are *arceo*, *pello*, *dépello*, *expello*, *ab- dico*, *interdico*, *défendo*, *déturbo*, *déjicio*, *éjicio*, *absterreo*, *détterreo*, *móveo*, *ámóveo*, *démóveo*, *rémóveo*, *sécerno*, *próhibeo*, *sépáro*, *exclúdo*, *interclúdo*, *abeo*, *ezeo*, *cédo*, *décido*, *discédo*, *désisto*, *évádo*, *abstíneo*, *spólio*, *privo*, *orbo*, *libéro*, *expédío*, *lazo*, *nádo*, *sotó*, *ezasolv*, *ezóméro*, *lévo*, *purgo*, to which may be added the adjectives *liber*, *immúnis*, *párus*, *vácuus*, and *aliénus*; as,

*Núdantur arbóres fóliis*. The trees are stripped of leaves. Plin. *Hoc me libéra métu*, Free me from this fear. Ter. *Túne eam philósophiam séquere, quæ spóliat nos júdício, privat appróbatióne, orbat sensibus?* Cic. *Solvit se Teucría luctu*. Virg. *Te illis sádibus arcébit*. Cic. *Q. Varium pellére possessiônibus cónatus est*. Id. *Ommes tribu rémóti*. Liv. *Lévare se ere aliéno*. Cic. *Me lèves chóri sécernunt pópulo*. Hor. *Animus omni liber cûrâ et angóre*. Cic. *Utrumque hómine aliénissimû*. Id. When *aliénus* signifies 'averse' or 'hostile to,' it takes the ablative with *ab*, or rarely the dative; as, *Id dicit, quod illi causæ maxime est aliénû*. Id. In the sense of 'unsuited,' it may also be joined with the genitive; as, *Quis aliénûm pátet ejus esse dignitátis?* Id.—*Alius* too, in analogy with adjectives and verbs of separation, sometimes takes an ablative; as, *Nice pátes álum sápiénte bônôque beatû*. Hor.; but this may also be referred to the ablative after comparatives. Cf. § 256, R. 14.

**REMARK 1.** Most verbs of depriving and separating are more or less frequently followed by *ab*, *de*, or *ex*, with the ablative of the thing, and always by *ab* with the ablative of the person; as, *Tu Jupiter, hunc a tuis áris arcébis*. Cic. *Præsidium ex arce pépúlérunt*. Nep. *Aquam de agro pellére*. Plin. *Ex ingrâdâ civitatē cédere*. Cic. *Arce[m] ab incendio libérávit*. Id. *Solvère bellum ex cãténis*. Auct. ad Her.—*Sedes rémótas a Germánis*. Cæs. *Se ab Etruscis sécernere*. Liv.

**REM. 2.** *Arceo*, in the poets, sometimes takes the dative, see § 224, R. 2., and sometimes an infinitive; as, *Plágamque sedere cédendo arcébat*. Ovid.—*Próhibeo* and *défendo* take either the accusative of the person or thing to be defended, with the ablative of the thing to be wardied off—or the reverse—*aliquem* or *aliquid a pérículo*, or *pérículum ab aliquo*. They are also sometimes construed with the dative, see § 224, R. 2., and sometimes with infinitive or subjunctive clauses. *Próhibeo* has rarely two accusatives; as, *Id te Jupiter próhibessit*. Plaut.; or poetically the accusative and genitive; as, *Captâ próhibere Pænos áquillæ*. Sil.—*Interdico* takes the person either in the accusative or the dative, and the thing in the ablative, *aliquem* or *aliquid aliquâ re*; as, *Quibus quum áquâ et igni interdixissent*. Cæs.—Instead of the ablative, a subjunctive clause with *ne*, and more rarely with *ut*, sometimes follows *interdico*.—*Absum*, in like manner, takes the ablative with *ab*, and sometimes the dative; as, *Curtæ nescio quid semper ábest rei*. Hor. Cf. § 224, R. 1.—*Abdico* takes sometimes an ablative, and sometimes an accusative of the thing renounced; as, *Abdicare se magistrátu*. Cic. *Abdicare magistrátum*. Sall. In Plautus, *circumdico*, to cheat, takes the ablative of the thing. *Interclúdo*, instead of an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person, sometimes takes an accusative of the thing and a dative of the person; as, *linétrum angustias multitudíni fugam interclúsérant*. Cæs.; and, instead of the ablative of the thing, a subjunctive clause with *quóminus* occurs: *Interclúdor dôlore, quóminus ad íe pátra scribam*. Cic.

**REM. 3.** Verbs which signify to *distinguish*, to *differ*, and to *disagree*, are generally construed with *ab*, but sometimes, especially in the poets, with the ablative alone.

**NOTE.** Verbs signifying to distinguish, etc., are *distinguo*, *discerno*, *sécerno*, *différo*, *discrepo*, *disideo*, *disto*, *dissentio*, *discordo*, *áhorreo*, *aliéno*, and *abaliéno*.—*Dissentio*, *disideo*, *discrepo*, and *discordo* are construed also with *cum*.—The verbs which signify to *differ* are sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Disat infido scurræ ámicus*. Hor., and in like manner the adjective *diversus*; as, *Nihil est tam Lysie diversum, quam Isocrates*. Quint.

## ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

§ 252. The *price* or *value* of a thing is put in the ablative, when it is a definite sum, or is expressed by a substantive; as,

*Quum te tricenis talentis regi Cotto vendidisses.* When you had sold yourself to king Cottus for three hundred talents. Cic. *Vendidi hic auro patriam.* This one sold his country for gold. Virg. *Cibus uno asse venalis.* Plin. *Constitit quadringentis millibus.* Varr. *Dēnis in diem assibus dentium et corpus (militum) aestimari.* Tac. *Lēvi mōmento aestimāre.* Cæs. *Istuc verbum vile est viginti milis.* Plaut. *Asse carum est.* Sen. Ep.

REMARK 1. The verbs which take an ablative of price or value are (1) *aestimō, dūco, fācio, fīo, hābeo, pendo, pūto, depūto, taxo*; (2) *ēmo, mercor, vendo, do, vēneo, sto, consto, prosto, condūco, lōco, vāleo, luo*, and *liceo*.—To these must be added others, which express some act or enjoyment for which a certain price is paid; as, *Lāvor quadrante. Triginta millibus Caelius habitat.* Cic. *Vix drachmis est obonatus decem.* Ter. *Dōceo talento*, etc. So *esse* in the sense 'to be worth'; as, *Sextante sal in Italiā erat.*

REM. 2. Respecting the genitive of price or value, when expressed in a general or indefinite manner, see § 214.

REM. 3. The price of a thing, contrary to the general rule, is often expressed indefinitely by a neuter adjective; as, *magno, permagno, parvo, tantulo, plūre, minimo, plurimo, vili, viliori, vilissimo, nimio*, etc.; as, *Plūre veni.* Cic. *Condaxit non magno dōmum.* Id. These adjectives refer to some noun understood, as *pretio, are*, and the like, which are sometimes expressed; as, *Parvo pretio ea vendidisse.* Cic.—The adverbs *bene, pulchre, recte, male, cāre*, etc., sometimes take the place of the genitive or ablative of price; as, *Bene emere; recte vendere; optime vendere*, etc.

REM. 4. Varro has used *vāleo* with the accusative; as, *Dēnarii cēti, quod dēnos aris vālebant.*

REM. 5. *Mūto* and its compounds, *commūto* and *permūto*, are commonly construed like verbs of selling, the thing parted with being put in the accusative, and the thing received in exchange for it, in the ablative; as, *Chāoniā glāndem pingui mūtāvit aristā.* Virg. But these cases are often reversed, so that the thing received is put in the accusative and the thing given for it in the ablative; as, *Cur vallem permūtem Sābinā divitiis operētiōres?* Why should I exchange my Sabine valley for more wearisome riches? Hor.—Sometimes in this construction *cum* is joined with the ablative.

## ABLATIVE OF TIME.

§ 253. A noun denoting the *time at* or *within* which any thing is said to be, or to be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Die quinto decessit.* He died on the fifth day. Nep. *Hoc tempore.* At this time. Cic. *Tertiā vigiliā eruptionem fecerunt.* They made a sally at the third watch. Cæs. *Ut hieme nārtges.* That you should sail in the winter. Cic. *Proximo triennio omnes gentes subegit.* Nep. *Agamemnon cum universā Graciā ois decem annis unam cepit urbem.* Nep.

NOTE 1. The English expression 'by day' is rendered in Latin either by *interdiu* or *die*; 'by night,' by *noctu* or *nocte*; and 'in the evening,' by *vespere* or *vesperi*; see § 82, Exc. 5, (a.) *Lūdis* is used for *in tempore ludorum*; and *Sāturnālibus, Lātēis, glādiātōribus*, for *lūdis Sāturnālibus*, etc. Other nouns not properly expressing time are used in that sense in the ablative either with or without *in*, as *initio, principio, adventu* and *accessu dīcūjus, cōmītiis, iūmiliis, bello, pace*, etc.; or *in initio*, etc. But *bello* is more common without *in*, if it is

joined with an adjective or a genitive; as, *Bello Pánico secundo, bello Ladanum*; and so, also, *pugnâ Cinnensi*. So we say in *pueritiâ*, but omit *in* with an adjective; as, *extrēmâ pueritiâ*. *In* is very rarely used with nouns expressing a certain space of time; as, *annus, dies, hōra*, etc., for the purpose of denoting the time of an event. *In tempore* signifies either 'in distress,' or 'in time,' i. e. 'at the right time'; but in both cases *tempore* alone is used, and *tempore* in the sense of 'early' has even become an adverb, an earlier form of which was *tempōri* or *tempēri*, whose comparative is *tempērius*.

REMARK 1. When a period is marked by its distance before or after another fixed time, it may be expressed by *ante* or *post* with either the accusative or the ablative.—(a.) The preposition is regularly placed before the accusative, but after the ablative. If an adjective is used, the preposition is often placed between the adjective and the noun. In this connection the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers may be used. Hence the English phrase 'after three years,' or 'three years after,' may be expressed in these eight ways; *post tres annos, tribus annis post; post tertium annum, tertio anno post; tres post annos, tribus post annis; tertium post annum, tertio post anno*.

(b.) When *ante* or *post* stands last, an accusative may be added to denote the time before or after which any thing took place; as, *Multis annis post decemvros*. Cic. So *Consul factus est annis post Rōmam conditam tricentis duodecennaginta*.

NOTE 2. *Post* and *ante* sometimes precede the ablatives, as *ante annis octo; post paucis diebus*; and also before such ablatives as are used adverbially, as *post aliquanto; ante paulo*.

NOTE 3. *Quam* and a verb are sometimes added to *post* and *ante* in all the forms above specified; e. g. *tribus annis postquam vénéral; post tres annos quam vénéral; tertio anno postquam vénéral; post annum tertium quam vénéral*, etc.; all of which expressions signify 'three years after he had come.' Sometimes *post* is omitted; as, *tertio anno quam vénéral*.

NOTE 4. Instead of *postquam*, 'after,' we may use *ex quo, quum*, or a relative agreeing with the preceding adjective; as, *postquam acta sunt, quibus hęc acta erant, cum Lépido cōpiis me conjungam; hęc acta sunt, quibus hęc acta erant, after the date of this letter*. Planc. in Cic. Fam. *Mors Scæ. Rōmæ, quibus hęc acta erant, acta est, Chrysogōno nuntiâtur*,—four days after he had been killed. Cic. *Quam triduo, quum has dñam lītēras, expectabam*,—three days after the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. In such cases *in* is sometimes joined with the ablative; as, *In diebus paucis, quibus hęc acta sunt, moritur*. Ter.

REM. 2. The length of time before the present moment may be expressed by *abhinc* with the accusative, and, less frequently, the ablative; as, *Quæstor fuisse abhinc annos quatuordecim*. Cic. *Cōmitiis jam abhinc triginta diebus habitis*. Id. The same is also expressed by *ante* with the pronoun *hic*; as, *ante hos sex menses maledixisti mihi*,—six months ago. Phœd. *Ante* is sometimes used instead of *abhinc*; and the length of time before is sometimes expressed by the ablative joined with *hic* or *ille*; as, *Paucis his diebus, or paucis illis diebus*,—a few days ago.

REM. 3. The time at which any thing is done, is sometimes expressed by the neuter accusative *id*, with a genitive; as, *Venit id temporis*. Cic. So with a preposition; *Ad id diēi*. Gell. See § 212, R. 3.

REM. 4. (a.) The time at or within which any thing is done, is sometimes, with personal subjects, expressed by *de*, with the ablative; as, *De tertiâ vigiliâ ad hostes contendit*,—in the third watch. Cæs. *Ut iugulent homines surgunt de nocte latrones*. Hor. So, also, with *sub*; as, *Ne sub ipsâ præfectione milites optatum irrumpèrent*,—at the very time of his departure. Cæs. *Sub adventu Rōmānorum*, While the Romans were arriving. Id.

(b.) The time within which any thing occurs, is also sometimes expressed by *intra* with the accusative; as, *Dimidiam partem nationum subegit intra vīginti dies*. Plaut. *Intra decimum diem, quam Phēras vénéral*, In less than ten days after... Liv.



REM. 5. The time within which a thing happens, is often expressed by the ablative with *in*; especially (a) in connection with numerals; as, *Bis in die aditūrum fieri*; *vix ter in anno nuntium audire*; and (b), as in the use of *intra*, to denote that the event happened before the time specified had fully expired.

REM. 6. Instead of *in pueritiā, adlescentiā, iuventūte, senectūte*, etc., in stating the age at which a person performed any action, the concretes *puer, adlescens, iuvenis, senex*, etc., are commonly joined to the verb; as, *On. Pompeius, adlescens se et patrem consilio servavit*.—So, also, adjectives ending in *enārius* are sometimes used in stating the number of years a person has lived; as, *Cicero sexagēnarius*.

For the ablative denoting duration of time, see § 236.

### ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 254. The name of a town *in which* any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the third declension or plural number, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Alexander Bābylōne est mortuus*, Alexander died at Babylon. Cic. *Intērērūt multum*—*Thēbis nutritus* an Argis,—whether brought up at Thebes or at Argos. Hor. *Nātus Tibūre vel Gābiis*. Id.

REMARK 1. 'In the country' is expressed by *rūre*, or more commonly by *rūri*, without a preposition; as, *Pater filium rūri hābitāre iussit*. Cic. With an adjective only *rūre* is used; as, *Interdum nūgāris rūre pāterno*. Hor. Cf. § 221, N.

REM. 2. (a.) The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed with names of towns; as, *In Philippis quidam nunciāvit*. Suet.

(b.) Names of towns of the first and second declension, and singular number, and also *dōmus* and *hūmus*, are in like manner sometimes put in the ablative without *in*. See § 221, R. 2 and R. 3.—So, also, *terrā mārīque*, by land and by sea. *In* is also frequently omitted with *lōco* and *lōcis*, especially when joined with an adjective and having the meaning of 'occasion'; as, *Hoc lōco, multis lōcis*, etc.—*Libro* joined with an adjective, as *hoc, primo*, etc., is used without *in* when the whole book is meant, and with *in* when only a portion is referred to. An ablative of place joined with *tōto, totā, tōtis*, is generally used without *in*; as, *Urbe tōtā gēmītus fīt*. Cic. *Tōtā Asiā vāgātur*. Id. *Tōto mārī*. Id. But in such cases *in* is sometimes used. So *cunctā Asiā*. Liv.

REM. 3. Before the names of countries, of nations used for those of countries, and of all other places in which any thing is said to be or to be done, except those of towns, and excepting also the phrases specified in the first and second remarks, the preposition *in* is commonly used; as, *Iphierātes in Thrāciā vixit*, *Chares in Sigō*. Nep. *Rūre ego viventem, tu dācis in urbe beatum*. Hor. *Atq̃ hoc fieri in Græciā*. Plaut. In Bactriānis Sogdianisque urbes condidit. *Lūcus in urbe fuit*. Virg. But it is sometimes omitted by writers of every class and period; as, *Mīlites stātivis castris hādebāt*. Sall. *Magnis in laudibus fuit tōtā Græciā*. Nep. *Pōpuli sensus maxime theātro et spectāculis perspectus est*. Cic. *Pompeius se oppido tēnet*. Id. In the poets and later prose writers this omission is of very frequent occurrence not only with names of towns but with ablatives of all nouns answering to the question, where? as, *Nāctia puppe sedens*. Ovid. *Ibam forte Viā Sacrā*. Hor. *Silvisque agrisque viisq̃ne corpōra fæda jacent*. Ovid. *Mēdio alveo concursus est*. Liv.—*Fōris*, out at the door, abroad, is properly an ablative of place; as, *Fōris cenat*. Cic. Cf. § 237, R. 5, (c.)

§ 255. 1. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of a town *whence* the motion proceeds, is put in the ablative, without a preposition; as,

Brundisio *præfecti sumus*, We departed from Brundisium. Cic. *Dionysius tyrannus Syracusis expulsus Corinthi pueros docebat*. Id. *Demaratus Tarquinius Corintho fugit*. Id. *Accipi tuas literas datas Placentiæ*. Id. *Interim Romæ per literas certior fit*; scil. *datas* or *missas*. Sall. J. 82. So, also, after a verbal noun; as, *Narbône reditus*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The ablatives *dômo*, *hūmo*, and *rûre* or *rûri*, are used, like names of towns, to denote the place whence motion proceeds; as,

*Dômo præfectus*, Having set out from home. Nep. *Surgit hūmo juvenis*, The youth rises from the ground. Ovid. *Rûre huc advénit*. Ter. *Si rûri véniet*. Id. Virgil uses *dômo* with *unde*; as, *Qui gēnus? unde dômo?* and Livy, instead of *dômo abesse*, has *esse ab dômo*. With an adjective, *rûre*, and not *rûri*, must be used.

REM. 2. With names of towns and *dômus* and *hūmus*, when answering the question 'whence?' *ab*, *ex*, or *de*, is sometimes used; as, *Ab Alexandriâ præfectus*. Cic. *Ex dômo*. Id. *De vitifera vénisse Viennâ*. Mart. *Ab hūmo*. Virg.

REM. 3. (a.) With other names of places whence motion proceeds, *ab*, *ex*, or *de*, is commonly expressed; as, *Me a portu præmisit*. Plant. *Ex Asiâ trans in Eurôpam*. Curt. *Ex castris præfiscuntur*. Cæs. *De Pomptino*, scil. *prædio*. Cic.—So, also, before names of nations used for those of countries; as, *Ex Mædis ad adversariôrum hibernacula pervenit*. Nep.

(b.) But the preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Literæ Mæcædoniâ allatæ*. Liv. *Classis Cypro advénit*. Curt. *Cessissent loco*. Liv. *Ni cite vicis et castellis proximis subventum foret*. Id. *Ite sacris, præperate sacris, laurumque capillis pônite*. Ovid. *Finibus omnes præstiluere suis*. Virg. *Advolvunt ingentes montibus ornos*. Id. This omission of the preposition is most common in the poets and later prose writers.

2. The place *by*, *through*, or *over* which, after verbs of motion, commonly follows *per*; but frequently also it is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Per Thēbas iter fecit*. Nep. *Exercitum vado transducit*. Cæs. *His pontibus pabulatum mittebat*. Id. *Tribuni militum portâ Collinâ urbem intravere sub signis, mediâque urbe agmine in Aventinum pergunt*. Liv. *Lêgiões Penninis Cottianisque Alpibus, pars monte Graio, traducuntur*. Tac. *Equites viâ breviorē præmisi*. Cic.

## ABLATIVE AFTER COMPARATIVES.

§ 256. 1. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, as *quam*, *atque*, etc., is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted.

2. The comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, is followed by the ablative of that with which the comparison is made; as,

*Nihil est virtute formosius*, Nothing is more beautiful than virtue. Cic. *Quis C. Lælio cômior?* Who is more courteous than C. Lælius? Id.

REMARK 1. The person or thing with which the *subject* of a proposition is compared, is usually put in the ablative; as,

*Sidère pulchrior ille est, tu levior cortice*. Hor. *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum*. Id. *Tullus Hostilius ferocior Rômulo fuit*. Liv. *Lacrimâ nihil citius arecit*. Cic. *Quid magis est durum saxo, quid mollius undâ?* Ovid. *Hoc nemo fuit minus ineptus*. Ter. *Albanum, Mæcenâs, sive Fâlernum te magis apollitis delectat*. Hor.

REM. 2. An object with which a person or thing addressed is compared, is also put in the ablative; as, *O fons Bandusius splendidior vitro!* Hor.

REM. 3. Sometimes the person or thing with which the subject of a proposition is compared, instead of following it in the ablative, is connected with it by *quam*, and it is then put in the same case as the subject, whether in the nominative or the accusative; as, *Oratio quam habitus fuit miserabilior.* Cic. *Affermo nullam esse laudem amplioŕem quam eam.* Id. So, also, when an ablative in the case absolute takes the place of the subject; as, *Eodem* (scil. *dūce*) *plūra, quam grēgario milite, tōlerante.* Tac.

REM. 4. If the person or thing which is compared with any object is neither the subject of the sentence nor the person addressed, *quam* is commonly used, and the object which follows it is then put in the nominative with *sum*, and sometimes in an oblique case to agree with the object with which it is compared; as, *Mliōrem, quam ego sum, suppōno tibi.* Plaut. *Ego hōminem callidōrem vidī nēmīnem quam Phormiōnem.* Ter. *Adventus hostium fuit agris, quam urbi terribilior.* Liv. *Omnes fontes aetate, quam hīeme, sunt gelidiores.* Plin. *Thēmistoclis nōmen, quam Sōlōnis, est illustrius.* Cic.—The following example illustrates both the preceding constructions:—*Ut tibi multo maiōr, quam Africānus fuit, me non multo minōrem quam Lælium facile et in repūblicā et in amicitia adiunctum esse pōtiāre.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) The person or thing with which the object of an active verb is compared, though usually connected with it by *quam*, (R. 4.) is sometimes put in the ablative, especially in the poets, and frequently also even in prose, if the object is a pronoun, particularly a relative pronoun; as, *Attālo, quo grāviōrem inimicum non habui, sorōrem dedit.* He gave his sister to Attalus, than whom, etc. Curt. *Hoc nihil grātiūs facere pōtes.* Cic. *Causam enim suscepisti antiquiōrem mēmōria tuā.* Id. *Exegi mōnumentum vire pērennius.* Hor. *Cur olivum sanguine vipēriño cautius vitat?* Id. *Quid prius dicam sōlitis pārentis laudibus?* Id. *Maiōra viribus audes.* Virg. *Nullam sacrā vite prius sēvērīs arbōrem.* Hor. *Nullus his mallem ludos spectasse.* Id. § 178, 3.

(b.) The ablative instead of *quam* is never used with any other oblique case except the accusative, but *quam* is sometimes found, even where the ablative might have been used; as, *Mlior tutiorque est certa pax quam spērata victōria.* Liv. After *quam*, if the verb cannot be supplied from the preceding sentence, *est*, *fuit*, etc., must be added; as, *Hæc verba sunt M. Varrōnis, quam fuit Claudius, doctioris.* Gell. *Drusum Germānicum minōrem natū, quam ipse erat, frātreŕm amisit.* Sen.

REM. 6. (a.) *Minus*, *plus*, and *amplius* with numerals, and with other words denoting a certain measure or a certain portion of a thing, are used either with or without *quam*, generally as indeclinable words, without influence upon the construction, but merely to modify the number; as, *Non plus quam quātuor millia effugerunt, not effūgit.* Liv. *Pictōres antiqui non sunt isti plus quam quātuor coloribus, not pluribus.* Cic.

(b.) *Quam* is frequently omitted with all cases; as, *Minus duo millia hōminum ex tanto cæritu effugerunt.* Liv. *Milites Rōmāni sepe plus dimidiātū mens cibari fērebant.* Cic. *Quam plus annū eger fuisset.* Liv. *Sēdecim non amplius eo anno lēgiōnibus dēfensum impērium est.* Id.

(c.) These comparatives, as in the preceding example, are sometimes inserted between the numeral and its substantive, and sometimes, when joined with a negative, they follow both, as a sort of apposition; as, *Quingue millia armātōrum, non amplius, relictum erat præsidiū,*—a garrison of five thousand soldiers, not more. Liv. So, also, *longius*; *Cæsar certior est factus, magnas Gallōrum cōpias non longius millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis abfuisse.* Cæs. See § 236.

(d.) The ablative is sometimes used with these as with other comparatives; as, *Dies triginta aut plus eo in nāvi fui.* Ter. *Triennio amplius.* Cic. *Hōrā amplius mōiēbantur.* Id. *Ne longius triūdo ab castris abeāt.* Cæs. *Apud Suēvos non longius anno remānere uno in loco incolēndi causā licet.* Id. *Quam tūctio non amplius duobus millibus habuisset.* Sall.

REM. 7. *Quam* is in like manner sometimes omitted, without a change of case, after *māior*, *minor*, and some other comparatives; as, *Obsides ne minores octonum dēnum annorum neu māiores quinquagēnum,....* of not less than eighteen, nor more than forty-five years of age. Liv. *Ex urbāno exercitū, qui minores quinque et triginta annis erant, in naves impositi sunt.* The genitive and ablative, in these and similar examples, are to be referred to § 211, R. 6. *Longius ab urbe mille passuum.* Liv. *Annos nātas māgis quādrāginta.* Cic.

REM. 8. When the second member of a comparison is an infinitive or a clause, *quam* is always expressed; as, *Nihil est in dicendo māius quam ut faveat oratori auditor.* Cic.

REM. 9. Certain nouns, participles, and adjectives,—as *opiniōne*, *spe*, *expectatiōne*, *fide*,—*dicto*, *sōlto*,—*æquo*, *crēdibīli*, *necessārio*, *vēro*, and *iusto*,—are used in a peculiar manner in the ablative after comparatives; as, *Opiniōne celerius ventūrus esse dicitur*,—sooner than is expected. Cæs. *Dicto citius tūmda æquora placat*. Quicker than the word was spoken. Virg. *Injūrias grāvius æquo habēre.* Sall.

(a.) These ablatives supply the place of a clause; thus, *grāvius æquo* is equivalent to *grāvius quam quod æquum est*. They are often omitted; as, *Thēmistocles libērius vivēbat*, scil. *æquo*. Nep. In such cases, the comparative may be translated by the positive degree, with *too*, *quite*, or *rather*, as in the above example—'He lived too freely,' or 'rather freely.' *Voluptas quum māior est atque longior, omne animi lūmen exstinguit*,—when it is too great, and of too long continuance. Cic. *So tristior*, scil. *sōlto*, rather sad.

(b.) The English word 'still,' joined with comparatives, is expressed by *itām* or *etēl*, and only in later prose writers by *adhuc*; as, *Ut in corpōribus magna dissimilitūdines sunt, sic in animis existunt māiores etiām variētates.* Cic.

REM. 10. (a.) With *infērior*, the dative is sometimes used, instead of the ablative; as, *Vir nullā arte cuiquam infērior*. Sall. The ablative is also found; as, *Ut hūmānos cāsus virtūte infēriores pūtes.* Cic. But usually *infērior* is followed by *quam*; as, *Timōtheus bellī laude non infērior fuit, quam pāter.* Cic. *Gratiā non infērior, quam qui umquam fuerunt amplissimi.* Id.

(b.) *Quālis*, 'such as,' with a comparative, occurs poetically instead of the relative pronoun in the ablative; as, *Nardo pērunctum, quāle non perfectius meā laborārint mōnus*; instead of *quo*. Hor. Epod. 5, 59. *Animæ quāles nēque candidiores terra tulit*; for *quibus*. Id. Sat. 1, 5, 41.

REM. 11. *Quam pro* is used after comparatives, to express disproportion; as, *Prælium atrocius quam pro nūmēro pugnantium*, The battle was more severe than was proportionate to the number of the combatants. Liv. *Minor, quam pro tūmultu, cædes.* Tac.

REM. 12. When two adjectives or adverbs are compared with each other, both are put in the comparative; as, *Triumphus clārior quam grātor*, A triumph more famous than acceptable. Liv. *Fortius quam fēlicius bellum gessērunt*. So, also, when the comparative is formed by means of *māgis*; as, *Māgis audacter quam parāte ad dicendum veniēbat.* Cic.—Tacitus uses the positive in one part of the proposition; as, *Spēciem excelsæ glōriæ vehēmentius quam caute applēbat*; or even in both; as, *Clāris māioribus quam vētustis*.

REM. 13. (a.) *Pōtius* and *māgis* are sometimes joined pleonastically with *mallo* and *præstāre*, and also with comparatives; as, *Ab omnibus se dēserto pōtius quam abs te dēfensos esse mālunt.* Cic. *Qui māgis vērē vincēre quam diu impērāre mālūt.* Liv. *Ut emōri pōtius quam servire præstāret.* Cic. *Mihi quævis fūga pōtius quam ulla prōvincia esset optātior.* Id. *Quis māgis queat beatiōr?* Virg.

(b.) So, also, the prepositions *præ*, *ante*, *præter*, and *supra*, are sometimes used with a comparative; as, *Unus præ cētēris fortior exsurgit*, Apul. *Scēlère ante alios immānior omnes.* Virg. They also occur with a superlative; as, *Ante alios carissimus.* Nep. As these prepositions, when joined with the positive, denote comparison, they seem in such examples to be redundant. See § 127.

REM. 14. *Alius* is sometimes in poetry treated as a comparative, and construed with the ablative instead of *atque* with the nominative or accusative; as, *Nève pates dñum sapiente bonoque beatum*. Hor. *Alius Lysippo*. Id. But compare § 251, N.

REM. 15. By the poets *ac* and *atque* are sometimes used instead of *quam* after comparatives; as, *Quanto constantior idem in vitiis, tanto levius miser ac prior ille, qui*, etc. Hor. *Arctius atque hederā prœcetera adstringitur ilex*. Id.

REM. 16. The degree of difference between objects compared is expressed by the ablative:—

(1.) Of substantives; as, *Minor uno mense*, Younger by one month. Hor. *Sesquipedē quam tu longior*, Taller than you by a foot and a half. Plaut. *Hibernia dimidio minor quam Britannia*. Cæs. *Dimidio minoris constabit*, It will cost less by half. Cic. *Quam molestum est uno digito plus habere* !...to have one finger more, i. e. than we have, to have six fingers. Id.—but the expression is ambiguous, as it might mean 'to have more than one finger.' *Sapērat capite et cervicibus altis*. Virg.

(2.) Of neuter adjectives of quantity and neuter pronouns, in the singular number. Such are *tanto*, *quanto*, *quo*, *eo*, *hoc*, *multo*, *parvo*, *paulo*, *nimio*, *dūquantō*, *tantūlo*, *altēro tanto* (twice as much); as, *Multo doctior es patre*, Thou art (by) much more learned than thy father. The relative and demonstrative words, *quanto*—*tanto*, *quo*—*eo*, or *quo*—*hoc*, signifying 'by how much—by so much,' are often to be translated by an emphatic *the*; as, *Quanto sūmus virībrēs, tanto nos submissius gerāmus*, The more eminent we are, the more humbly let us conduct ourselves: lit. by how much—by so much—. Cic. *Eo grāvior est dolor, quo culpa est mājor*. Id. But the relative word generally precedes the demonstrative; as, *Quo difficilius, hoc præclarius*. Id. Poetically, also, *quam māgis*—*tam māgis* are used instead of *quanto māgis*—*tanto māgis*. Virg. *Æn.* 7, 787: and *quam māgis*—*tanto māgis*. Lucr. 6, 459.—*Iler multo facilius*,—much easier. Cæs. *Parvo brevius*, A little shorter. Plin. *Eo māgis*, The more. Cic. *Eo minus*. Id. *Istoc māgis vipulabis*, So much the more. Plaut. *Via altēro tanto longior*,—as long again. Nep. *Multo id maximum fuit*. Liv.

(3.) The ablative of degree is joined not only with comparatives but with verbs which contain the idea of comparison; as, *mālo*, *præsto*, *supéro*, *excello*, *antécello*, *antécēdo*, and others compounded with *ante*; and also with *ante* and *post*, in the sense of 'earlier' and 'later'; as, *Multo præstat*. Sall. *Post paulo*, A little after. Id. *Multo ante lucis adventum*, Long before—. Id. *Multis partibus* is equivalent to *multo*; as, *Número multis partibus esset infērior*. Cæs.

NOTE. The accusatives *multum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, and *dūquantum*, are sometimes used instead of the corresponding ablatives; as, *Allquantum est ad rem avidior*. Ter. *Multum improbiōres sunt*. Plaut. *Quantum dōmo infērior, tantum glōriā supērior evasit*. Val. Max. Cf. § 232, (3.).—So *longe*, 'far,' is frequently used for *multo*; as, *Longe mēlior*. Virg. *Longe et multum antécēllere*. Cic. So, *pars pēdis sesqui mēior*,—longer by one half. Id.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 257. A noun and a participle are put in the ablative, called *absolute*, to denote the time, cause, means, or concomitant of an action, or the condition on which it depends; as,

*Pythāgoras, Tarquīnio regnante, in Italiā vēnit*, Pythagoras came into Italy, in the reign of Tarquin. Cic. *Lūpus, stimūlante fāme, capiat ovile*, Hunger inciting, the wolf seeks the fold. Ovid. *Milites, pecōre e longinquioribus vicis āducto, extrēmam fāmem sustentābant*. Cæs. *Hac orātiōne habita, conciliū dimisit*. Id. *Galli, re cognita, obsidiōnem relinquunt*. Id. *Virtūte exceptā, nihil dimittitū præstābilis pūctis*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The Latin ablative absolute may be expressed in English by a similar construction, but it is commonly better to translate it by a clause connected by *when, since, while, although, after, as, etc.*, or by a verbal substantive; as, *Te adiuvante*, With thy assistance. *Non—nisi te adiuvante*, Only with thy assistance, or not without thy assistance. *Te non adiuvante*, Without thy assistance. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (c.)

REMARK 1. This construction is an abridged form of expression, equivalent to a dependent clause connected by *quum, si, elsi, quamquam, quamvis, etc.*

Thus, for *Tarquinius regnante*, the expression *dum Tarquinius regnabat* might be used; for *hac oratione habita*,—*quum hanc orationem habuisset, or quum hac oratio habita esset,—concitum dimisit*. The ablative absolute may always be resolved into a proposition, by making the noun or pronoun the subject, and the participle the predicate.

REM. 2. This construction is common only with present and perfect participles. Instances of its use with participles in *rus* and *dus* are comparatively rare; as,

*Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem*. Mart. *Irrupturis tam infestis nationibus*. Liv. *Quum concio plausum, meo nomine recitando, decisset*,—when my name was pronounced. Cic. *Quum immolandâ Iphigeniâ tristis Calchas esset*. Id. *Quis est enim, qui, nullis officii præceptis tradendis, philosophum se audeat dicere*—without propounding any rules of duty. Cic. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (c.) and R. 9.

REM. 3. (a.) A noun is put in the ablative absolute, only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the leading clause. Cf. § 274, 3, (a.)

(b.) Yet a few examples occur of a deviation from this principle, especially with a substantive pronoun referring to some word in the leading clause; as, *Se audiente, scribit Thucydides*. Cic. *Legio ex castris Varronis, adstante et inspectante ipso, signa sustulit*. Cæs. *Me duce, ad hunc voti finem, me mille, veni*. Ovid. *So M. Porcius Cato, vivo quoque Scipione, allatrare ejus magnitudinem solitus erat*. Liv.

NOTE 2. Two participles must not be put together in the ablative absolute agreeing with the same noun. Thus, we may say *Porcia sæpe maritum cogitantem invenerat*, but not, *Porcia marito cogitante invento*.

NOTE 3. Instead of the ablative absolute denoting a cause, an accusative with *ob* or *propter* occurs in Livy and in later writers; as, *Cinopum condidit Spartani*, ob sepultum illic rectorem navis Cinopum. Tac. *Decemviri libros Sibyllinos inspicere jussi sunt propter terribiles homines novis prodigiis*. Liv.

REM. 4. The ablative absolute serves to mark the time of an action, by reference to that of another action. If the present participle is used, the time of the action expressed by the participle, is the same as that of the principal verb. The perfect participle and the future in *rus*, denote respectively an action as prior or subsequent to that expressed by the principal verb.

Thus in the preceding examples—*Pythagoras, Tarquinius regnante, in Italiam venit*, Pythagoras came into Italy during the reign of Tarquinius. *Galli, re cognita, obsidionem relinquunt*, The Gauls, having learned the fact, abandon the siege. So, *Res apum non nisi migraturo examine foras procedit*, The king-bee does not go abroad, except when a swarm is about to emigrate. Plin.

NOTE 4. *Non prius quam, non nisi, ut, velut, and tamquam*, are sometimes joined with the participle; as, *Tiberius excessum Augusti non prius palam fecit, quam Agrippa juvене intērempto*, —not until. Suet. *Galli keti, ut explorāta vic-tōriā, ad castra Rōmānōrum pergunt*. Cæs. *Antiochus, tamquam non transiitūris in Asiā Rōmānis*, etc. Liv.

REM. 5. (a.) The construction of the ablative absolute with the perfect passive participle, arises frequently from the want of a participle of that tense in the active voice.

Thus, for 'Cæsar, having sent forward the cavalry, was following with all his forces,' we find, '*Cæsar, equitātū præmisso, subsequēbatur omnibus cōpiis*.'

(b.) As the perfect participle in Latin may be used for both the perfect active and the perfect passive participles in English, its meaning can, in many instances, be determined only by the connection, since the agent with a *or ab* is generally not expressed with this participle in the ablative absolute, as it is with other parts of the passive voice. Thus, *Cæsar*, his dictis, *concilium dimisit*, might be rendered, '*Cæsar, having said this, or this having been said* (by some other person), dismissed the assembly.'

(c.) As the perfect participles of deponent verbs correspond to perfect active participles in English, no such necessity exists for the use of the ablative absolute with them; as, *Cæsar, hæc locūtus, concilium dimisit*. In the following example, both constructions are united: *Itaque....agros Remōrum depōpūlāti, omnibus victis, ædificiisque incensis*. Cæs.

REM. 6. The perfect participles of neuter deponent verbs, and some also of active deponents, which admit of both an active and a passive sense, are used in the ablative absolute; as, *Ortā luce*. Cæs. *Vel extincto vel elapso ānimo, nullum rēvidere sensum*. Cic. *Tam multis glōriam ejus adeptis*. Plin. *Lūtras ad exercitiū, tamquam adepto principātū, misit*. Tac.

REM. 7. (a.) As the verb *sum* has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, which might be the subject and predicate of a dependent clause, are put in the ablative absolute without a participle; as,

*Quid, ædōlescentūlo dūce, efficere possent*, What they could do under the guidance of a youth. Cæs. *Me suāsore atque impulsore, hoc factum*, By my advice and instigation. Plaut. *Hannibāle vivo*, While Hannibal was living. Nep. *Invitā Minervā*, in opposition to one's genius. Cic. *Cælo serēno*, when the weather is clear. Virg. *Me ignāro*, without my knowledge. Cic. With names of office, the concrete noun is commonly used in the ablative absolute, rather than the corresponding abstract with *in* to denote the time of an event; as, *Rōmam vēnit* Mārio consule, He came to Rome in the consulship of Marius. Cic.

(b.) The nouns so used as predicates are by some grammarians considered as supplying the place of participles by expressing in themselves the action of a verb. Such are *dux, cōmes, adjutor and adjutrix, auctor, testis, jūdex, interpres, māgister and māgistra, præceptor and præceptrix*; as, *dūce naturā*, in the sense of *dūcente naturā*, under the guidance of nature; *jūdice Polybio*, according to the judgment of Polybius.

REM. 8. A clause sometimes supplies the place of the noun; as, *Nondum comperto* quam in rēgiōnem vēnisset rex. Liv. *Audito vēnisse nunciū*. Tac. *Vile dicto*. Ovid. This construction, however, is confined to a few participles; as, *audito, cognito, comperto, explorāto, despērato, nūciāto, dicto, edicto*. But the place of such participle is sometimes supplied by a neuter adjective in the ablative; as, *Incerto præ tēnebris quid pēterent*. Liv. Cf. R. 7. (a.) *Haud cuiquam dubio* quin hostium essent. Id. *Juxta pēriculoso* vērā an fictā prōmēret. Tac.

REM. 9. (1.) The noun in the ablative, like the subject nominative, is sometimes wanting; (a) when it is contained in a preceding clause; as, *Atticus Scōrīāham, Brūtī mātrē, non minus post mortē ejus, quam flōrente, coluit*, scil. eo,

i. e. Brūto. Nep. (b) When it is the general word for person or persons followed by a descriptive relative clause; as, *Hannibal Ibērum cōpias trājēcit, prēmisiis, qui Alpium transitus spēcūlārentur*. Liv. (c) When the participle in the neuter singular corresponds to the impersonal construction of neuter verbs in the passive voice; as, *In amnis transgressu, multum certāto, Bardesānes vici*. Tac. *Mihi, errāto, nulla vēnia, recte factō, eadē laus prōpōnitur*. Cic. *Quam, nōtūm pālam factō, vivī mortuūque prōmiscue complōrārentur*. Liv. *Nam jam citātē eā sum, ut nōn siet, peccātō, mi ignōsci cōquū*; i. e. *si peccātūm fuērit*. Ter. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (b.)

(2.) So in descriptions of the weather; as, *Tranquillo*, scil. *māri*, the sea being tranquil. Liv. *Sérēno*, scil. *cālo*, the sky being clear. Id. *Arānei sérēno texunt, nūbilo texunt*,—in clear and in cloudy weather. Plin. Substantives when used thus are to be considered as ablatives of time; as, *Cōmitiis, lūdis, Cīrcensibus*. Suetonius has used *proscriptiōe* in the sense of 'during the proscriptiō.' So *pāce et Principe*. Tac. *Impērio pōpuli Rōmāni*. Cæs.

REM. 10. This ablative is sometimes connected to the preceding clause by a conjunction; as, *Cesar, quamquam obsidiōe Massilia rētanda, brevī tāmen omnia subēgit*. Suet. *Dēcemviri nō ante, quam perlātis lōgibus, dēpōsitūros impērium esse aiēbant*. Liv.

REM. 11. A predicate ablative is sometimes added to passive participles of naming, choosing, etc. § 210, (3.); as, *Hasdrubāle impērātōre successo*. Liv.

## CONNECTION OF TENSES.

§ 258. Tenses, in regard to their connection, are divided into two classes—*principal* and *historical*.

A. The principal tenses are, the *present*, the *perfect definite*, and the *two futures*.

B. The historical, which are likewise called the *preterite* tenses (§ 145, N. 2.), are the *imperfect*, the *historical perfect*, and the *pluperfect*.

I. In the connection of leading and dependent clauses, only tenses of the same class can, in general, be united with each other. Hence:—

1. A *principal* tense is followed by the *present* and *perfect definite*, and by the periphrastic form with *sim*. And:—

2. A *preterite* tense is followed by the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*, and by the periphrastic form with *essem*.

NOTE. The periphrastic forms in each class supply the want of subjunctive futures in the regular conjugation.

The following examples will illustrate the preceding rules:—

(a.) In the first class. *Scio quid āgas. Scio quid ēgēris. Scio quid actūrus sis.*—*Audi quid āgas*, I have heard what you are doing. *Audi quid ēgēris. Audi quid actūrus sis.*—*Audiā quid āgas*, etc.—*Audirēro quid āgas*, etc.

(b.) In the second class. *Sciēbam quid āgēres. Sciēbam quid ēgisses. Sciēbam quid actūrus esses.*—*Audi quid āgērēs*, I heard what you were doing. *Audi quid ēgisses. Audi quid actūrus esses.*—*Audirēram quid āgēres*, etc.

The following may serve as additional examples in the first class; viz. of *principal* tenses depending on,

(1.) The *PRESENT*; as, *Non sum ita hēbes, ut istuc dicam*. Cic. *Quantum dōlōrem accēpērim, tu existimāre pōtes*. Id. *Nec dūbīto quin rēctius ejus respūblica dilātāris futūrus sit*. Id.



(2.) The PERFECT DEFINITE; as, *Sitis prōvisum est, ut ne quid agere possint.* Id. *Quis masticis, quis huic studio librārum se dēdidit, quā omnem illārum artium vim cōprehēderit.* Id. *Dēfectiōnes solis prādictæ sunt, quæ, quantæ, quando futuræ sint.* Id.

(3.) The FUTURES; as, *Sic facillime, quanta oratorum sit, semperque fuērit paucitas, iudicabit.* Id. *Ad quos dies reditūrus sim, scribam ad te.* Id. *Si sciēris aspitem litere uspiam, et velle aliquem imprudentem super eam assidere, cuius mors tibi emolumentum factura sit, imprōbe feceris, nisi mōnueris, ne assideat.* Id.

The following, also, are additional examples in the second class, viz. of *preterite tenses* depending on,

(1.) The IMPERFECT; as, *Unum illud extimescebam, ne quid turpiter facerem, vel jam effecissem.* Cic. *Non enim dubitabam, quin eas libenter lecturus esses.* Id.

(2.) The HISTORICAL PERFECT; as, *Veni in ejus villam ut libros inde promerem.* Id. *Hæc quum essent nuntiata, Valerius classem ex templo ad ostium fluminis duxit.* Liv.

(3.) The PLUPERFECT; as, *Pavor cuperat milites, ne mortiferum esset vulnus.* Liv. *Ego ex ipso audieram, quam a te liberaliter esset tractatus.* Cic. *Non satis mihi constiterat, cum aliquāne animi mei molestia, an potius libenter te Athenis visurus essem.* Id.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the present is used in narration for the historical perfect, it may, like the latter, be followed by the imperfect; as, *Legatos mittunt, ut pacem impetrarent.* Cæs.

(b.) The present is also sometimes followed by the perfect subjunctive in its historical sense; as, *Pandite nunc Heliōna, dea, cantusque mōvete, Qui bello exciti rēges, quæ quēque sēcūlæ Complērint campos acies.* Virg.

REM. 2. The perfect definite is often followed by the imperfect, even when a present action or state is spoken of, if it is possible to conceive of it in its progress, and not merely in its conclusion or result; and especially when the agent had an intention accompanying him from the beginning to the end of the action; as, *Feci hoc, ut intelligeres, I have done this that you might understand; i. e. such was my intention from the beginning.* *Sunt philosophi et fuerunt, qui omnino nullam habere censērent hūmānārum rerum procuratiōnem deos.* Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) The historical perfect is not regularly followed by the perfect subjunctive, as the latter is not, in general, used in reference to past action indefinite.

(b.) These tenses are, however, sometimes used in connection, in the narrative of a past event, especially in Livy and Cornelius Nepos; as, *Factum est, ut plus quam collēgæ Miliades valuērit.* Nep.

(c.) The imperfect and perfect are even found together after the historical perfect, when one action is represented as permanent or repeated, and the other simply as a fact; as, *Ad eo nihil misēriti sunt, ut incursiōnes facerent at Vēus in animo habuērint oppugnare.* Liv.

(d.) The historical perfect may even be followed by the present, when a general truth is to be expressed, and not merely one which is valid for the time indicated by the leading verb; as, *Antiocho pacem pētenti ad priores conditiones nihil additum, Africāno prādicante, nēque Rōmānis, si vincantur, animos minui, nēque, si vincant, sēcundis rēbus insōlescere.* Just.

REM. 4. (a.) As present infinitives and present participles depend for their time upon the verbs with which they are connected, they are followed by such tenses as those verbs may require; as, *Apelles pictōres quōque eos peccare dicebat, qui non sentirent, quid esset satis.* Cic. *Ad te scripsi, te libenter accusans in eo, quod de me cito credidisses.* Id.

(b.) In like manner the tense of the subjunctive following the infinitive future is determined by the verb on which such infinitive depends; as, *Sol Phœthonti filio facturum se esse dixit quicquid optasset.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) The perfect infinitive follows the general rule, and takes after it a principal or a preterite tense, according as it is used in the definite or in the historical sense; as, *Arbitramur nos ea præstitisse, quæ ratio et doctrina præscripsit.* Cic. *Est quod gaudeas te in ista lōca vënisse, ubi aliquid sapere vidêre.* Id.

(b.) But it may sometimes take a different tense, according to Rem. 2; as, *Ila mihi videor et esse Deus, et quales essent satīs ostendisse.* Cic.

II. Tenses belonging to different classes may be made dependent on each other, when the sense requires it.

(a.) Hence a present or perfect definite may follow a preterite, when the result of a past action extends to the present time; as, *Ardebat autem Hortensius cupiditate dicendi sic, ut in nullo umquam flagrantius studium vidêrim;* i. e. that up to this time I have never seen. Cic. And, on the other hand, a preterite may follow a present to express a continuing action in the past; as, *Scitote oppidum esse in Sicilia nullum, quo in oppido non isti delecta mulier ad libidinem esset:* (esset here alludes to the whole period of Verres' prætorship.) Cic.

(b.) But without violating the rule which requires similar tenses to depend upon each other, the *hypothetical* imperfect subjunctive, may be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive, since the imperfect subjunctive refers to the present time; as, *Memorare possem quibus in locis maximas hostium cōpias populus Rōmānus parvā manu fūdērit.* Sall. *Possem* here differs from *possum* only by the hypothetical form of the expression.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 259. The indicative is used in every proposition in which the thing asserted is represented as a reality.

NOTE. Hence it is used even in the expression of conditions and suppositions with *si*, *nisi*, *etsi*, and *etiamsi*, when the writer, without intimating his own opinion, supposes a thing as actual, or, with *nisi*, makes an exception, which, only for the sake of the inference, he regards as actual; as, *Mors aut plāne negligenda est, si omnino exstinguit ānimum, aut etiam optanda, si aliquo eum dedūcit, ubi sit fūturus æternus.* Cic. *Adhuc certe, nisi ego insānio, stulte omnia et incaute fiunt.* Id.—It is likewise used in interrogations.

REMARK 1. The several tenses have already been defined, and their usual significations have been given in the paradigm. They are, however, sometimes otherwise rendered, one tense being apparently used with the meaning of another, either in the same or in a different mood. Thus,

(1.) (a.) The present is often used for the historical perfect in narration, see § 145, I. 3.—(b.) It is sometimes used also for the future to denote the certainty of an event, or to indicate passionate emotion. So, also, when the leading sentence contains the present imperative, *si* is often joined with the present instead of the future; as, *dēfende si pōtes.*—(c.) The present is also used for the imperfect or perfect, when it is joined with *dum* 'while'; as, *Dum ego in Sicilia sum, nulla stātua dējecta est.* Cic. It is even so used by Livy in transitions from one event to another; as, *Dum in Asia bellum geritur, ne in Ætoliis quidem quiesce res fuērunt.* But the preterites are sometimes used with *dum* 'while'; and *dum* 'as long as' is regularly joined with the imperfect.

(2.) (a.) The perfect, in its proper signification, i. e. as a perfect *definite*, denotes an act or state terminated at the present time. Thus Horace, at the close of a work, says, *Exegi mōnumentum ære pērennius;* and Ovid, in like circumstances, *Jamque opus exēgi.* So, also, Panthus in Virgil, in order to de-

note the utter ruin of Troy, exclaims, *Fuimus Trôes, fuit Ilium*, i. e. we are no longer Trojans, Ilium is no more.—(b.) The perfect *indefinite* or *historical* perfect is used in relating past events, when no reference is to be made to the time of other events; as, *Cæsar Rubicōnem transiit*, Cæsar crossed the Rubicon. (c.) As in the epistolary style the imperfect is used instead of the present, when an incomplete action is spoken of (§ 145, II. 3), so the historical perfect is in like circumstances employed instead of the present, when speaking of a completed action. With both the imperfect and perfect, when so used, however, the adverbs *nunc* and *etiamnunc* may be used instead of *tunc* and *etiamtum*.

(d.) The historical perfect is sometimes used for the pluperfect in narration; as, *Sed postquam aspexi, illico cognovi*, But after I (had) looked at it, I recognized it immediately. Ter.—This is the usual construction after *postquam* or *posteaquam*, *ubi*, *ubi primum*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *quum primum*, *simul*, *simul ut*, *simul ac*, or *simul atque*, all of which have the signification of 'as soon as,' and sometimes after *præquam*. But when several conditions are to be expressed in past time, the pluperfect is retained after these particles; as, *Idem stimulac se remiserat, nèque causa suberat, quære animi laborem perferret, luxuriōsus repēriēbatur*. Nep. So, also, *postquam* is joined with the pluperfect, when a definite time intervenes between events, so that there is no connection between them; as, *Hannibal anno tertio, postquam dōmo profūgērāt, cum quinque nāvibus Africam accessit*. Id.—In a very few passages the imperfect and pluperfect *subjunctive* are joined with *postquam*.

(3.) The pluperfect sometimes occurs, where in English we use the historical perfect; as, *Dixērāt, et episis noctis se condidit umbris*, She (had) said, and hid herself in the thick shades of night. Virg. Sometimes, also, it is used for the historical perfect to express the rapidity with which events succeed each other; so, also, for the imperfect, to denote what had been and still was.

(4.) The future indicative is sometimes used for the imperative; as, *Valēbis, Farewell*. Cic. And:—

(5.) The future perfect for the future; as, *Alio lūco de orātrōrum animo et injuriis vidēro*, I shall see (have seen).... Cic. This use seems to result from viewing a future action as if already done, and intimates the rapidity with which it will be completed.

REM. 2. When a future action is spoken of either in the future, or in the imperative, or the subjunctive used imperatively, and another future action is connected with it, the latter is expressed by the *future* tense, if the actions relate to the same time; as, *Naturam si sequēmur dūcem, numquam aberrābimus*. Cic.; but by the future perfect, if the one must be completed before the other is performed; as, *De Carthāgine vērēri non ante dēsinam, quam illam excisam esse cognōvērō*. Cic. In English the present is often used instead of the future perfect; as, *Fāciam si pōtērō*, I will do it, if I can. *Ut sēmentem fēcēris, illa mētēs*, As you sow, so you will reap. Cic.

REM. 3. In expressions denoting the propriety, practicability or advantage of an action not performed, the indicative of the preterites (§ 145, N. 2.) is used, where the English idiom would have led us to expect the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

(a.) This construction occurs with the verbs *oportet*, *nēcesse est*, *dēbeo*, *conoscō*, *possum*, *dēcet*, *licet*, *reor*, *pūto*; and with *par*, *fas*, *cōpia*, *æquum*, *justum*, *consentāneum*, *advis*, *advis*, *æquius*, *mélius*, *utilius*, *optābilis*, and *optimum*—*est*, *erat*, etc.

(b.) In this connection the imperfect indicative expresses things which are not, but the time for which is not yet past; the historical perfect and the pluperfect indicative, things which have not been, but the time for which is past; as, *Ad mortem te dūci jam pridem oportēbat*, i. e. thy execution was necessary and is still so; hence it ought to take place. Cic.—*Longe utilius fuit angustius aditū occupāre*, It would have been much better to occupy the pass. Curt. *Cūtilina erupit e sēnātū triumphans gaudio, quem omnino vitium illinc eāre non oportuērat*. Cic.

(c.) In both the periphrastic conjugations, also, the preterites of the indicative have frequently the meaning of the subjunctive; as, *Tam bonas constanter præda tēnenda fuit*,—ought to have been kept. Ovid. This is more common in hypothetical sentences than in such as are independent.

(d.) The indicative in such connections is retained, even when a hypothetical clause with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is added, and it is here in particular that the indicative preterites of the periphrastic conjugations are employed; as, *Quas si dūbia aut præcul essent, tamen omnes bonos reipublicæ consilire dēcebat*. Sall. *Quodsi Cn. Pompeius privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen erat mittendus*. Cic.—*Dilari totus exercitus potuit, si fugientes persēcuti victores essent*. Liv. *Quas nisi mīnūmisset, tormentis etiam dēdendi fuērunt*. Cic. *Si te non invēnissem, peritūrus per præcepta ful.* Petr. But the subjunctive also is admissible in such cases in the periphrastic conjugations.

REM. 4. (1.) The preterites of the indicative are often used for the pluperfect subjunctive, in the conclusion of a conditional clause, in order to render a description more animated. They are so used,

(a.) When the inference has already partly come to pass, and would have been completely realized, if something else had or had not occurred, whence the adverb *jam* is frequently added; as, *Jam fāmes quam pestilentia tristior erat; nī annōnas foret subventum*,—would have been worse. Liv. The same is expressed by the verb *capi* instead of *jam*; as, *Britanni circumire terga vincen-tium cōperant, nī*, etc. Tac. And without *jam*; *Effigies Pisonis traxerant in Gēmōnias ac divellēbant* (would have entirely destroyed them) *nī*, etc. Id.

(b.) The perfect and pluperfect are likewise used in this sense, and a thing which was never accomplished is thus, in a lively manner, described as completed; as, *Et pēratum erat bellum sine sanguine, si Pompeium opprimere Brundisii (Cæsar) potuisset*. Hor.—The imperfect indicative is rarely used, also, for the imperfect subjunctive, when this tense is found in the hypothetical clause; as, *Stultum erat mōnere, nisi fieret*. Quint.—Sometimes, also, the preterites of the indicative are thus used in the condition; as, *At fuērat melius, si te puer iste tēnēbat*. Ovid. See § 261, R. 1.

(2.) 'I ought' or 'I should,' is expressed by the indicative of *dēbeo*, and *possum* is in like manner often used for *possem*; as, *Possum persēqui multa oblectā-menta rīrum rusticarum, sed*, etc., I might speak of the many pleasures of hus-bandry, but, etc.; and it is usual in like manner to say, *difficile est, longum est, infinitum est*, e. g. *narrāre*, etc., for, 'it would be difficult,' 'it would lead too far,' 'there would be no end,' etc.

(3.) The indicative is used in like manner after many general and relative expressions, especially after the pronouns and relative adverbs which are either doubled or have the suffix *cumque*; as, *quisquis, quotquot, quicumque, stat, utcumque*, etc., see §§ 139, 5, (3.) and 191, I. R. 1, (b.); as, *Quidquid id est, timeo Danaos et dōna fērentes*. Virg. *Quem sors cumque dabit, lucro appōne*. Hor. *Sed quōquo mōdo sēs illud habet*, But however that may be. Cic.—In like man-ner sentences connected by *sive*—*sive* commonly have the verb in the indica-tive, unless there is a special reason for using the subjunctive; as, *Sive vērū est, sive falsum, mihi quādem ita rēnuñciātum est*. Later writers however use the subjunctive both with general relatives, etc., and with *sive*—*sive*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 260. The subjunctive mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind.

NOTE. The subjunctive character of a proposition depends, not upon its sub-stance, but upon its form. 'I believe,' 'I suppose,' are only conceptions, but my believing and supposing are stated as facts, and, of course, are expressed by means of the indicative. When, on the other hand, I say, 'I should be-

lieve,' 'I should suppose,' the acts of believing and supposing are represented not as facts, but as mere conceptions. Hence the verb that expresses the purpose or intention for which another act is performed, is put in the subjunctive, since it expresses only a conception; as, *Edo ut vivam*, I eat that I may live. This mood takes its name from its being commonly used in *subjoined* or dependent clauses attached to the main clause of a sentence by a subordinate connective. In some cases, however, it is found in independent clauses, or in such, at least, as have no obvious dependence.

I. The subjunctive, in some of its connections, is to be translated by the indicative, particularly in *indirect questions*, in clauses expressing a *result*, and after *adverbs of time*; as,

*Rōgas me quid tristis sim*,—why I am sad. Tac. *Stellārum tanta est multitudo, ut numerāri non possint*,—that they cannot be counted. *Quum Cæsar esset in Galliā*, When Cæsar was in Gaul. Cæs.

II. The subjunctive is used to express what is contingent or hypothetical, including *possibility, power, liberty, will, duty, and desire*.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the subjunctive, thus used, have the significations which have been given in the paradigms, and are, in general, not limited, in regard to time, like the corresponding tenses of the indicative. Thus,

(1.) The present may refer either to present or future time; as, *Mēāscribis et quis ignoscas citiūs teneor*, I am subject to moderate faults, and such as you may excuse. Hor. *Orat a Cæsare ut det sibi cēniam*, He begs of Cæsar that he would give him leave. Cæs.

(2.) The imperfect may relate either to past, present, or future time; as, *Si fāta fuissent ut cādērem*, If it had been my fate that I should fall. Virg. *Si possem, sēnior essem*, I would be wiser, if I could. Ovid. *Cēlēros rāpērem et prosternērem*, The rest I would seize and prostrate. Ter.

(3.) The perfect subjunctive has always a reference to present time, and is equivalent to the indicative present or perfect definite; as, *Errārim fortasse*, Perhaps I may have erred. Plin.—When it has a future signification it is not to be accounted a perfect, but the subjunctive of the future perfect. See Rem. 4 and 7, (1.) But compare § 258, R. 1, (b.) and R. 3, (b.)

(4.) The pluperfect subjunctive relates to past time, expressing a contingency, which is usually future with respect to some past time mentioned in connection with it; as, *Id responderunt se factūros esse, quum ille vento Aquilōne venisset Lemnum*.... when he should have come.... Nep.

REM. 2. The imperfects *vellem, nollem, and mallet*, in the first person, express a wish, the non-reality and impossibility of which are known; as, *vellem*, I should have wished.—In the second person, where it implies an indefinite person, and also in the third when the subject is an indefinite person, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the sense of the pluperfect, and the condition is to be supplied by the mind. This is the case especially with the verbs, *dico, puto, arbitror, crēdo*; also with *rīdeo, cerno, and discerno*; as, *Mastique (crēdēres victos) rēdeunt in castra*,—one might have thought that they were defeated. Liv. *Pecūnia an fāmæ minus parvērēt, haud facile discernēres*. Sall. *Qui vidērēt ēquum Trōjānum intrōductum, urbem captam dicērēt*. Cic. *Quis umquam crēderet?* Id. *Quis putāret?* Id.—The imperfect subjunctive is frequently used, also, for the pluperfect in interrogative expressions; as, *Socrātes quum rōgārētur cūjātem se esse dicērēt, Mundānum, inquit, Id. Quod si quis deus dicērēt, numquam putārem me in Acādēmīā tamquam philōsophum dispūtātūrum*, If any god had said.... I never should have supposed. Cic.

REM. 3. The subjunctive in all its tenses may denote a supposition or concession; as, *Vendat cedes vir bonus*, Suppose an honest man is selling a house. Cic. *Dixērīt Eptīcūrus*, Grant that Epicurus could have said. Id. *Verum anceps pugnae fuērāt fortūna*.—Fuisse, Grant that it might have been. Virg. *Mālus civis Cn. Carbo fuit. Fuērīt aliis*, He may have been to others. Cic.—This concessive subjunctive is equivalent to *esto ut*.

REM. 4. The present and perfect subjunctive are used in independent propositions to soften an assertion. When so used, they do not differ essentially from the present and future indicative; as, *Forſitan quæràtis*, You may perhaps ask. *Velim ſic exiſtîtes*, I would wiſh you to think ſo. *Nemo iſtud tibi concêdat*, or *conceſſerit*, No one will grant you that. *Hoc ſine ullâ dubitâtione confirràverim*, *elôquentiam rem eſſe omnium difficillimam*, This I will unheſitatingly affirm. Cic. *Nil ego contûlerim júcundo ſânus amico*. Hor. The form which is called the perfect ſubjunctive, when thus uſed for the future, ſeems to be rather the ſubjunctive of the future perfect: ſee Rem. 7, (1.) *Volo* and its compounds are often ſo uſed in the preſent; as, *Velim obvias mihi lîtras crebro mittas*, I wiſh that you would frequently ſend, etc. Cic. The perfect ſubjunctive is alſo rarely uſed in the ſenſe of a ſoftened perfect indicative; as, *Forſitan tàmre fecerim*, I may have acted inconſiderately.

REM. 5. The ſubjunctive is uſed in all its tenses, in independent ſentences, to expreſs a doubtful queſtion implying a negative answer; as, *Quo eam?* Whither ſhall I go? *Quo irem?* Whither ſhould I go? *Quo ivêrim?* Whither was I to have gone? *Quo iriſſem?* Whither ſhould I have gone? The answer implied in all theſe caſes is, 'nowhere.' So, *Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiæ ſint?* Who can doubt that riches conſiſt in virtue? Cic. *Quisquam nâmen Jûbônis adoret prælærea?* Virg. *Quidni, inquit, mêmînêrim?* Cic. *Quis vellet tunc nuntius eſſe mâli?* Ovid.

REM. 6. The preſent ſubjunctive is often uſed to expreſs a wiſh, an exhortation, aſſeveration, request, command, or permiſſion; as,

*Môriar, ſi*, etc. May I die, if, etc. Cic. *Pêream, ſi non*, etc. May I periſh, if, etc. Ovid. So, *Ne ſim ſalvus*. Cic. *In média arma ruâmus*. Let us ruſh.... Virg. *Ne me attingas, ſcèleſte!* Do not touch me, villain! Ter. *Fâciat quod lûbet*, Let him do what he pleaſes. Id. The perfect is often ſo uſed; as, *Ipſe vidêrit*, Let him ſee to it himſelf. Cic. *Quam id recte fâciam*, vidêrint *adpêntes*. Id. *Mêmînêrimus, êtiam adverſus infimos juſtitiâ eſſe ſervandam*. Id. *Nihil incommôdo vâlêtudinis tuæ feceris*. Id. *Emas, non quod opus eſt, ſed quod necesse eſt*. Sen. *Dônis impij ne placâre audeant deos; Plûtônem audiant*. Cic. *Nâtûram expellas furcâ, tâmen uſque rêcurret*. Hor.

(a.) The examples ſhow that the preſent ſubjunctive, in the firſt perſon ſingular, is uſed in aſſeverations; in the firſt perſon plural, in requests and exhortations; in the ſecond and third perſons of the preſent and ſometimes of the perfect, in commands and permiſſions, thus ſupplying the place of the imperative, eſpecially when the perſon is indefinite.

(b.) With theſe ſubjunctives, as with the imperative, the negative is uſually not *non* but *ne*; as, *ne dicâs*; *ne dicat*; *ne dixêris*. So, alſo, *ne fuêrit*, for *licet me fuêrit*.

(c.) The ſubjunctive for the imperative occurs moſt frequently in the third perſon. In the ſecond perſon it is uſed principally with *ne*; as, *ne dicâs*. In the latter caſe the perfect very frequently takes the place of the preſent; as, *ne dixêris*. The ſubjunctive is alſo uſed in the ſecond perſon, inſtead of the imperative, when the perſon is indefinite.

(d.) In precepts relating to paſt time, the imperfect and pluperfect, alſo, are uſed for the imperative; as, *Forſitan non nêmo vir fortis dixêrit*, reſtiſtiſſes, *mortem pugnans oppetîſſes*,—you ſhould have reſiſted. Cic.

REM. 7. In the regular paradigms of the verb, no future ſubjunctive was exhibited either in the active or paſſive voice.

(1.) When the expreſſion of futurity is contained in another part of the ſentence, the future of the ſubjunctive is ſupplied by the other tenses of that mood, viz. the future ſubjunctive by the preſent and imperfect, and the future perfect by the perfect and pluperfect. Which of theſe four tenses is to be uſed depends on the leading verb and on the completeness or incompleteness of the action to be expreſſed. The perfect ſubjunctive appears to be alſo the ſubjunctive of the future perfect, and might not improperly be ſo called; as,

*Tantum moneo, hoc tempus si amisēris, te esse nullum umquam magis idoneum rēperturum*, I only warn you, that, if you should lose this opportunity, you will never find one more convenient. Cic.

(2.) If no other future is contained in the sentence, the place of the future subjunctive active is supplied by the participle in *rus*, with *sim* and *essem*; as, *Non dubitat quin brevī Trōja sit pēritūra*, He does not doubt that Troy will soon be destroyed. Cic. In hypothetical sentences the form with *fuērim* takes the place of a pluperfect subjunctive; as, *Quis enim dābat, quin, si Sāguntinis implere tūlissēmus opem, totum in Hispāniā aversūri bellum fuērimus*. Liv. The form in *fuissem* occurs also, but more rarely; as, *Appāruit, quantam excitātūra mōlem vēra fuisset clādes, quum*, etc. See *Periphrastic Conjugation*, § 162, 14.

(3.) The future subjunctive passive is supplied, not by the participle in *du*, but by *futūrum sit* or *esset*, with *ut* and the present or imperfect of the subjunctive; as, *Non dubito quin futūrum sit, ut laudētur*, I do not doubt that he will be praised.

### PROTASIS AND APODOSIS.

§ 261. In a sentence containing a *condition* and a *conclusion*, the former is called the *protasis*, the latter the *apodosis*.

1. In the *protasis* of conditional clauses with *si* and its compounds, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive imply the *non-existence* of the action or state supposed, the imperfect, as in English, implying present time. In the *apodosis* the same tenses of the subjunctive denote what the result would be, or would have been, had the supposition in the *protasis* been a valid one; as,

*Nisi te sūtis incitātum esse confidērem, scribērem plūra*, Did I not believe that you have been sufficiently incited, I would write more (Cic.); which implies that he *does believe*, and therefore *will not write*. *Si Neptūnus, quod Thēseo promiserat, non fecisset, Thēseus filiō Hippolytō non esset orbātus*. Id.

2. The present and perfect subjunctive in the *protasis*, imply the *real* or *possible existence* of the action or state supposed; as,

*Si vēlit*, if he wishes, or, should wish, implying that he either *does wish*, or, at least, *may wish*. In the *apodosis* the present or perfect either of the subjunctive or of the indicative may be used.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the *indicative* may also be used in the *protasis* of a conditional sentence with *si*, etc.; as, *Si vāles, bene est*. Cic. *Si quis antea mirābātur quid esset, ex hoc tempore mirētur pōtius....* Id.—The conjunction *si* in the *protasis* is often omitted; as, *Libet agros ēmi. Primum quero quos agros?* If you will buy lands, I will first ask, etc. But the *protasis* may be rendered without *if*; and either with or without an interrogation, as, *You will buy lands, or, Will you buy lands?* The future perfect often occurs in the *protasis* of such sentences; as, *Cāsus mēdicusve levārit agrum ex praeceptis, māter delīra necābit*, (Hor.) Should chance or the physician have saved him, the silly mother will destroy him. *Si* is in like manner omitted with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, in supposing a case which is known not to be a real one; as, *Abaque te esset, hōdie numquam ad sōlem occāsum vivērem*. Plaut.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive differ but slightly from the indicative, the latter giving to a sentence the form of reality, while the subjunctive represents it as a conception, which, however, may at the same time be a reality. The second person singular of the present and perfect subjunctive often occurs in addressing an indefinite person, where, if the person were definite, the indicative would be used; as, *Mēmōria minuitur, nisi eam exerceas*. Cic. When the imperfect or pluperfect is required to denote a past action,

the indicative must be used, if its existence is uncertain, as those tenses in the subjunctive would imply its non-existence. In the *oratio obliqua*, when the leading verb is a present or a future, the same difference is observed between the tenses of the subjunctive as in hypothetical sentences; but when the leading verb is a preterite the difference between possibility and impossibility is not expressed.

REM. 3. The present and perfect subjunctive are sometimes used, both in the *protasis* and *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, in the sense of the imperfect and pluperfect; as, *Tu, si hic sis, aliter sentias*, If you were here, you would think otherwise. Ter. *Quos, si mea cura resistat, jam flammæ tulerint*. Virg.

REM. 4. The *protasis* of a conditional sentence is frequently not expressed, but implied; as, *Magno mercentur Atridae*, i. e. *si possint*. Virg.; or is contained in a participial clause; as, *Agis, etsi a multitudine victus, gloriâ tamen omnes vicit*. Just. So, also, when the participle is in the ablative absolute; as, *Dona-rem tripodas—dâvite me scilicet artium, quas aut Parrhâsius protulit, aut Scôpas*. Hor. *C. Mucius Porcénam interficere, propôsita sibi morte, cónatus est*. Cic. It is only in later writers that the concessive conjunctions *etsi*, *quamquam*, and *quamvis* are expressed with the participle, but *tâmen* is often found in the *apodosis*, even in the classic period, when a participial clause precedes as a *protasis*.

REM. 5. In hypothetical sentences relating to past time, the actions seem often to be transferred in a measure to the present by using the imperfect, either in the *protasis* or the *apodosis*, instead of the pluperfect; as, *Quod certa non fecisset, si suum nûmerum (navitârum) nâves habèrent*. Cic. *Cimbri si stâtim infesto agmine urbem petissent, grande discrimen esset*. Flor. Sometimes the imperfect, although the actions are completed, appears both in the *protasis* and the *apodosis*.

REM. 6. *Nisi*, *nisi vëro*, and *nisi forte* are joined with the indicative, when they introduce a correction. *Nisi* then signifies 'except'; as, *Nescio; nisi hoc video*. Cic. *Nisi vëro*, and *nisi forte*, 'unless perhaps,' introduce an exception, and imply its improbability; as, *Nemo fere saltat sôbrius, nisi forte insânit*. Cic. *Nisi forte* in the sense of 'unless you suppose,' is commonly used ironically to introduce a case which is in reality inadmissible.

## SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

### A. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

§ 262. A clause denoting the purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition, takes the subjunctive after *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, and *quôminus*; as,

*Ea non, ut te instituërem, scripsi*, I did not write that in order to instruct you. Cic. *Irritant ad pugnandum, quo fiant acriôres*, They stimulate them to fight, that they may become fiercer. Varr.

REMARK 1. *Ut* or *ût*, signifying 'that,' 'in order that,' or simply 'to' with the infinitive, relates either to a purpose or to a result. In the latter case it often refers to *sic*, *ita*, *adëo*, *tam*, *tâlis*, *tantus*, *is*, *ejusmodi*, etc., in the preceding clause; as,

*Id mihi sic èrit grâtum, ut grâtius esse nihil possit*, That will be so agreeable to me, that nothing can be more so. Cic. *Non sum ita hëbes, ut istuc dicam*. Id. *Nëque tam èramus âmentes, ut explorâta nobis esset victôria*. Id. *Tantum indulsit dôlôri, ut eum piëtas vincëret*. Nep. *Ita* and *tam* are sometimes omitted; as, *Epaminondas fuit etiâ disertus, ut nemo Thëbânus ei par esset èloquentiâ*, instead of *tam disertus*. Id. *Esse oportet ut vivas, non vivëre ut èdas*. Auct. ad Her. *Sol efficit ut omnia flôreant*. Cic.



REM. 2. *Ut*, signifying 'even if' or 'although,' expresses a supposition merely as a conception, and accordingly takes the subjunctive; as,

*Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas*, Though strength be wanting, yet the will is to be praised. Ovid. *Ut*, in this sense, takes the negative *non*; as, *Exercitus si pœcis nomen audierit, ut non referat pedem* (even if it does not withdraw) *insistet certe*. Cic.

REM. 3. *Ut*, with the subjunctive denoting a result, is used with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, it remains, it follows*, etc.; as,

*Qui fit, ut nemo contentus vivat?* How does it happen that no one lives contented? Hor. *Huic contigit, ut patriam ex servitute in libertatem vindicaret*. Nep. *Sequitur igitur, ut etiam vitia sint parca*. Cic. *Reliquum est, ut egomet mihi consulam*. Nep. *Restat igitur, ut motus astrorum sit voluntarius*. Cic. *Extremum illud est, ut te ore[m] et obsecrem*. Id.

NOTE 1. To this principle may be referred the following verbs and phrases signifying 'it happens,' viz. *fit, fieri non potest, accidit, incidit, contingit, evenit, usu venit, occurrit* and *est* (it is the case, or it happens, and hence *esto*, be it that):—and the following, signifying 'it remains,' or 'it follows,' viz. *futurum, extrinsecum, prope, proximum, and reliquum—est, relinquitur, sequitur, restat, and superest*: and sometimes *accidit*.

NOTE 2. *Contingit* with the dative of the person is often joined with the infinitive, instead of the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Non cuius homini contigit adire Corinthum*. Hor. And with *esse* also and other verbs of similar meaning, the predicate (as in the case of *licet*) is often found in the dative.—*Sequitur* and *efficitur*, 'it follows,' have sometimes the accusative with the infinitive and sometimes the subjunctive; and *nascitur*, in the same sense, the subjunctive only.

NOTE 3. *Mos* or *moris est, consuetudo* or *consuetudinis est, and natura* or *consuetudo fert*, are often followed by *ut* instead of the infinitive.—*Ut* also occurs occasionally after many such phrases as *novum est, rarum, naturale, necesse, usitatum, mirum, singulare—est*, etc., and after *æquum, rectum, verum, utile, verisimile, and integrum—est*.

For other uses of *ut*, with the subjunctive, see § 273.

REM. 4. *Ut* is often omitted before the subjunctive, after verbs denoting willingness and permission; also after verbs of asking, advising, reminding, etc., and the imperatives *dic* and *fac*; as,

*Quid vis faciam?* What do you wish (that) I should do? Ter. *Ineâni fêriant sine libéra fluctus*. Virg. *Tentes distimulare rogat*. Ovid. *Id sinas oro*. Id. *Se suadere, dixit, Pharnabazo id negotiû daret*. Nep. *Accedat oportet actio vdrâ*. Cic. *Fac cogites*. Sall. So, *Vide ex navi efferrantur, quæ*, etc. Plaut.

Verbs of willingness, etc., are *vello, mælo, permitto, concedo, pater, sino, licet, velle*, etc.; those of asking, etc., are *rogo, oro, quæso, moneo, admoneo, jubeo, mando, pello, precor, censeo, suadeo, oportet, necesse est, postulo, hortor, curo, decerno, opto, impèro*.

REM. 5. *Nē*, 'that not,' 'in order that not,' or 'lest,' expresses a purpose negatively; as,

*Cura ne quid ei desit*, Take care that nothing be wanting to him. Cic. *Nemo prudens punit, ut ait Plûtô, quia peccatum est, sed ne peccetur*. Id. *Ut ne* is frequently used for *ne*, especially in solemn discourse, and hence in laws; as, *Opéra dêtur, ut iudicia ne fiant*. Id. *Quo ne* is used in the same manner in one passage of Horace. *Missus ad hoc—quo ne per vdcium Rômânô incurreret hostis*.—On the other hand *ut non* is used when a simple result or consequence is to be expressed, in which case *ita, sic, tam* are either expressed or understood; as, *Tum forte ægrôtabam, ut ad nuptias tuas venire non possem*. In a few cases, however, *ut non* is used for *ne*.—*Ut non* is further used, when the negation re-

fers to a particular word or to a part only of the sentence, as in similar cases *si non* must be used, and not *nisi*; as, *Confer te ad Manlium, ut a me non ejectus ad diēnos, sed invitatus ad tuos isse videāris.* Cic.

REM. 6. *Nē* is often omitted after *cave*; as,

*Cave putes,* Take care not to suppose. Cic. Compare § 267, R. 3.

REM. 7. After *mētuo*, *tīmeo*, *vēreor*, and other expressions denoting fear or caution, *nē* must be rendered by *that* or *lest*, and *ut* by *that not*.

NOTE 3. To the verbs *mētuo*, *tīmeo*, and *vēreor* are to be added the substantives expressing fear, apprehension or danger, and the verbs *terreo*, *conterreo*, *deterreo*, *caveo*, to be on one's guard, *video* and *obsero* in requests (as, *vide, vidēte* and *videndum est*), in the sense of 'to consider'; as,

*Milo mētuebatur, ne a servis indicārētur,* Milo feared that he should be betrayed by his servants. Cic. *Vēreor, ne, dum minūere vēlīm labōrem, augeam.* Id. *Pavor erat, ne castra hostis aggrēderētur.* Liv. *Ille duo vēreor, ut tibi possim concedere,* I fear that I cannot grant.... Cic. *Ūtendum est ne assentatōribus patēficiāmus aures, neu adūlari nos sināmus.* Cic. *Vide ne hoc tibi obsit.* *Terrui gentes, grāve ne rēdiret sēcūlum Pyrrhæ.* *Multitudinem deterrent, ne frumentum confērant.* Cæsar. *Me miserum! ne prōna cādas.* Ovid.

NOTE 4. *Nēve* or *neu* is used as a continuative after *ut* and *ne*. It is properly equivalent to *aut ne*, but is also used for *et ne* after a preceding *ut*; as, on the other hand, *et ne* is used after a negation instead of *aut ne*; as, *Legem tulit, ne quis ante actūrum rerum accusārētur, nēve multārētur.* Nep. *Cæsar milites non longiore oratione cōhortatus, quam ūt suæ pristinae virtutis mēmōriam rētinērēt, non perturbārentur animo—prælii committendū signum dedit.* Cæsar. *Nēque, also,* is sometimes used for *et ne* after *ut* and *ne*; as, *Ut ea prætermittam, nēque eos appellem.* Cic. *Cur non sancitis ne vicinus patricio sit plebeius, nec eodem itinere ead.* Liv.—*Ne non* is sometimes used for *ut* after verbs of fearing; as, *Tīmeo ne non impetrem,* I fear I shall not obtain it.

REM. 8. The proposition on which the subjunctive with *ut* and *nē* depends, is sometimes omitted; as, *Ut ita dicam.* Cic. *Ne singulos nōminem.* Liv.

NOTE 5. *Nēdum*, like *ne*, takes the subjunctive; as, *Optimis temporibus clārissimi viri vim tribuniciam sustinere non pōtuerunt: nēdum his temporibus sine iudiciōrum remēdiis salvi esse possimus,—still less, etc.* Cic. *Ne* is sometimes used in the sense of *nēdum*; as, *Nōeam eam pōtestatem* (scil. *tribunōrum plēbis*) *eripere patribus nostris, ne nunc dulcedine sēmel capti ferant desiderium.* Liv.—*Nēdum* without a verb has the meaning of an adverb, and commonly follows a negative; as, *Ægre inermis tanta multitudo, nēdum armata, sustinēri pōtest.* Liv. *Ne*, also, is used in the same manner in Cic. Fam. 9, 26.

REM. 9. *Quō*, 'that,' 'in order that,' or, 'that by this means,' especially with a comparative; *non quō*, or *non quod*, 'not that,' 'not as if'; *non quin*, 'not as if not'; which are followed in the apodosis by *sed quod*, *sed quia*, or *sed* alone; and *quōminus*, 'that not,' after clauses denoting hinderance, take the subjunctive; as,

*Adjuta me, quo id fiat facilius,* Aid me, that that may be done more easily. Ter. *Non quo rēpublicā sit mihi quicquam cārius, sed desperātis etiā Hippocrātes vōlat adhibere medicinam.* Cic. *Non quod sōla ornament, sed quod excellant.* Id. *Nēque rēcūsavit, quo minus legis pēnam subiret.* Nep. *Ego me dūcem in civili bello negāvi esse, non quin rectum esset, sed quia,* etc. Cic. And instead of *non quia* we may say *non quo non*, *non quod non*, or *non quia non*; and for *non quod*, *non eo quod*, or *non ideo quod*.

REM. 10. *Quin*, after negative propositions and questions with *quis* and *quid* implying a negative, takes the subjunctive. *Quin* is used,

1. For a relative with *non*, after *nemo*, *nullus*, *nil*....*est*, *reperitur*, *invenitur*, etc.; *vix est, aere reperitur*, etc.; as, *Messanam nemo venit, quin viderit*, i. e. *qui non viderit*, No one came to Messina who did not see. Cic. *Nego ullam piciram fuisse....quin conquisierit*, i. e. *quam non*, etc. Id. *Nihil est, quin male narrando possit depravari*. Ter. *Quis est, quin cernat, quanta vis sit in sensibus?* Cic.

NOTE 6. When *quin* is used for the relative it is commonly equivalent to the nominative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, but it is sometimes used in prose instead of the accusative, and sometimes after *dies* for *quo*, as the ablative of time; as, *Dies fere nullus est, quin hic Satrius domum meam ventitet*, i. e. *quo*—*non ventitet*. Cic.—*Qui non* is often used for *quin*; as, *Quis enim erat, qui non sciret*. Id.; and when *quin* stands for *qui non* or *quod non*, *is* and *id* are sometimes added for the sake of emphasis; as, *Cleanthes negat ullum cibum esse tam gravem, quin is die et nocte concuatur*. Cic. *Nihil est quod sensum habeat, quin id interest*. Id.—So, also, the place of *quin* is supplied by *ut non*; as, *Augustus numquam filios suos populo commendavit ut non adiceret (without adding) si mererentur*. Suet. And if no negation precedes, or if *non* belongs to a particular word, and not to the verb, *qui non* and *ut non* must of course be used and not *quin*.

2. For *ut non*, 'that not,' or 'without' with a participle, especially after *facere non possum*, *ferri non potest*, *nulla causa est, quid causa est?* *nihil conari est*; as, *Facere non possum quin ad te mittam*, i. e. *ut non*, etc. Cic. *Numquam tam male est Sticulis, quin aliquid facere et commode dicant*. Cic. *Numquam accedo, quin abs te abeam doctior*,—without going from you wiser. Ter.

NOTE 7. *Quin* takes the subjunctive also after the negative expressions *non dubito*, *non est dubium*, *non ambigo*, I doubt not; *non abest*; *nihil, paulum, non procul, haud multum abest*; *non, viz, aere abstineo*; *tènere me, or temperare mihi non possum*; *non impedio, non recuso, nihil pratermitto*, and the like. In these cases, however, the negation in *quin* is superfluous, and it is generally translated into English by 'that,' 'but that,' or 'to' with an infinitive; as, *Non dubito quin domi sit*, that he is at home. *Non multum abest, quin miserrimus sim*, Not much is wanting to make me most wretched. Cic. Hence, as *quin* is not in such cases regarded as a negative, *non* is superadded when a negative sense is required; as, *In quibus non dubito quin offensionem negligentiae vitare atque effugere non possum*. Cic. *Dubitandum non est quin numquam possit utilitas cum honestate contendere*. Id.

NOTE 8. In *Nepos*, *non dubito*, in the sense of 'I do not doubt,' is always followed by the infinitive with the accusative, and the same construction often occurs in later writers but not in Cicero: in the sense of to scruple or hesitate, when the verb following has the same subject, *dubito* and *non dubito* are generally followed by the infinitive; as, *Cicero non dubitabat conjuratos supplicio afficere*.—It may be added that 'I doubt whether' is expressed in Latin by *dubito sine, dubito utrum*—*an*, *dubito sine*—*an*, or *dubito num, numquid, for dubito an*, and *dubium est an* are used, like *nescio an* with an affirmative meaning.

NOTE 9. *Quin* signifies also 'why not?' being compounded of the old ablative *qui* and *nè*, i. e. *non*, and in this sense is joined with the indicative in questions implying an exhortation; as, *Quin conscendimus equos?* Why not mount our horses? In this sense it is also joined with the imperative; as, *Quin dis statim*, Well, tell me: or with the first person of the subjunctive. Hence without being joined to any verb it signifies 'even' or 'rather.'

REM. 11. The principal verbs of hinderance, after which *quominus* occurs, and after which *ne*, and, if a negative precedes, *quin* also may be used, are *deterreo*, *impedio*, *intercedo*, *obsto*, *officio*, *prohibeo*, *recuso*, and *repugno*. It occurs also after *stat* or *fit per me*, I am the cause, *non pugno*, *nihil moror*, *non contineo me*, etc.

NOTE. *Impedio*, *deterreo*, and *recuso* are sometimes, and *prohibeo* frequently followed by the infinitive. Instead of *quominus*, *quo scilicet* is sometimes used.

§ 263. The particles specified in this section always introduce a sentence containing only a conception of the mind, and are hence joined with the subjunctive.

1. The subjunctive is used after particles of wishing, as *utinam*, *ut*, *O!* and *O! si*; as,

*Utinam minus vite cupidus fuissēmus!* O that we had been less attached to life!  
Cic. *O si solita quicquam virtutis adesset!* Virg.

REMARK. The present and perfect tenses, after these particles, are used in reference to those wishes which are conceived as possible; the imperfect and pluperfect are employed in expressing those wishes which are conceived as wanting in reality. Cf. § 261, 1 and 2.—‘Would that not’ is expressed in Latin both by *utinam ne* and *utinam non*. *Utinam* is sometimes omitted; as, *Tecum lādere sicut ipsa possem!* Catull.

## B. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

2. (1.) *Quamvis*, however; *licet*, although; *tamquam*, *tamquam si*, *quāsi*, *ac si*, *ut si*, *vēlut si*, *vēluti*, *sicūti*, and *ceu*, as if; *mōdo*, *dum*, and *dummōdo*, provided,—take the subjunctive; as,

*Quamvis ille felix sit, tamen*, etc. However happy he may be, still, etc. Cic. *Veritas licet nullum defensorem obtineat*, Though truth should obtain no defender. Id. *Tamquam clausa sit Asia, sic nihil perfertur ad nos*. Id. *Sed quid ego his testibus ūtor*, quasi *res dubia aut obscura sit?* Id. *Me omnibus rebus, iuxta ac si meus frater esset, sustentavi*, He supported me in every thing, just as though he were my brother. Id. *Similiter facere eos*,—ut si *nauta certarent, ūter*, etc. Id. *Absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, vēlut si coram adesset, horrerent*. Cæsar. *Inque sinus caros, vēluti cognosceret, ibat*. Ovid. *Sicūti iurgio laceratus foret, in senātum venit*. Sall. *Hic vērō ingentem pugnam, ceu cetera nusquam bella forent*. Virg. *Odérunt dum metuant*. Att. in Cic. *Mānent ingēnia senibus, mōdo permāneat studium et industria*. Cic. *Omnia hōnesta negligunt dummōdo pōtēntiam consēquantur*, They disregard every honorable principle, provided they can obtain power. Id.

NOTE. *Mōdo*, *dum*, and *dummōdo*, when joined with a negation, become *mōdo ne*, *dum ne*, and *dummōdo ne*.

(2.) *Quamvis* (although) is in Cicero joined with a principal tense of the subjunctive; as, *Quamvis non fuēris suāsor, approbātor certe fuisti*. Cic. In later writers it is often used with the indicative; as, *Fēlicem Niōben, quamvis tot fūnēra vidit*. Ovid. So also once in Cicero, *Quamvis patrem suum nunquam viderat*. Rab. Post. 2.

(3.) *Quamvis*, as a conjunction, in the sense of ‘however much,’ is joined with the subjunctive. So also when its component parts are separated; as, *C. Gracchus dixit, sibi in somnis T. frātre[m] visum esse dicere, quam vellet cunctaretur, tamen*, etc.—*Quamvis* ‘however much,’ as an adverb, governs no particular mood.

(4.) *Etsi*, *tāmeti*, even if, although, and *quamquam*, although, commonly introduce an indicative clause:—*Etsi* is more frequently followed by the subjunctive. In later prose writers, and sometimes in Cicero and Sallust as well as in the poets, *quamquam* is joined with the subjunctive; as, *Quamquam præsente Lūculo loquar*. Cic. *Vi rēgēre patriam quamquam possis*. Sall. Jug. 8. *Filius quamquam Thētidōs mārinas Dardānas turres quātēret*. Hor.

REMARK. The imperfect subjunctive with *ac si*, etc., is used after the present, to denote that in reality the thing is not so, but in that case a hypothetical subjunctive must be supplied; as, *Egnātū rem ut tueāre aque a te pēto, ac si mea nēgōtia essent*, i. e. *ac pēterem, si mea nēgōtia essent*, as I would pray if, etc. Cic.

3. After *antēquam* and *priusquam*, the imperfect and pluperfect tenses are usually in the subjunctive; the present and perfect may be either in the indicative or subjunctive. The present indicative is commonly used when the action is to be represented as certain, near at hand, or already begun; the subjunctive is used when the thing is still doubtful, and also in general propositions; as,

*Ea causa ante mortua est, quam tu nātus esses*, That cause was dead before you were born. Cic. *Avertit equos*, priusquam *pābula* gustassent *Trojae*, *Xanthumque* bibissent. Virg. *Priusquam incipias, consulto opus est*, Before you begin there is need of counsel. Sall.

4. (1.) *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, signifying *until*, are followed by the subjunctive, if they refer to the attainment of an object; as,

*Dum hic veniret, locum relinquere noluit*, He was unwilling to leave the place until he (Milo) should come. Cic. *Nihil puto tibi esse utilius quam oppēiri quoad scire possis, quid tibi agendum sit*. Id. *Cornu telendū, et duxit longe*, *dōnec curata colrent inter se capita*. Virg.—In the sense of 'as long as,' these particles take the indicative, but Tacitus joins *dōnec* with the subjunctive even when a simple fact is to be expressed.

(2.) *Dum*, while, is commonly used with the indicative present, whatever may be the tense of the principal sentence. Cf. § 259, R. 1, (1.), (a.)

5. *Quum* (*cum*), when it signifies a *relation of time*, takes the indicative; when it denotes a *connection of thought*, the subjunctive; as,

*Qui non defendit injūriam, neque repulsa a suis, quum pōtest, injuste facit*. Cic. *Quum recte navigari pōterit, tum naviges*. Id. *Crēdo tum, quum Stēlia florēbat opibus et copiis, magna artificia fuisse in eā insulā*. Id. *Quum tot sustineas et tanta negotia, peccem, si mōrer tua tempōra*, Since you are burdened with so many and so important affairs, I should do wrong, if I should occupy your time. Hor. *Quum vita sine amicis mētus plēna sit, ratio ipsa mōnet amicitias compārare*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) The rule for the use of *quum* may be thus expressed: *Quum* temporal takes the indicative, *quum* causal the subjunctive. Hence, when *quum* is merely a particle of time, with no reference to cause and effect, and not occurring in a historical narrative (see Rem. 2), it may be joined with any tense of the indicative. But when it is employed to express the relation of cause and effect, or has the meaning of 'though' or 'although,' it is joined with the subjunctive (b.) *Quum*, relating to time, is commonly translated *when*, *while*, or *after*; referring to a train of thought, it signifies *as*, *since*, *though* or *although*, *because*; but may often be translated *when*.

REM. 2. In narration, *quum*, even when it relates to time, is joined with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, when a historical perfect stands in the principal clause; as,

*Gracchus, quum rem illam in religiōnem pōpulo vēnisse sentiret, ad sēdntum rēvōlit*. Cic. *Alexander, quum intēremisset Clitum, vix manus a se abstinuit*. Id.

NOTE. *Quum* temporal, when it expresses an action frequently repeated, may be joined with the pluperfect indicative, and the apodosis then contains the imperfect; as, *Quum autem vir esse cōpērat, dābat se labōri*. Cic. *Quum rōsam vidērat, tum incipere ver arbitrabātur*. Id. Cf. § 264, 12.

REM. 3. *Quum* in the sense of 'while' is joined with the perfect and imperfect indicative, often with the addition of *intērea* or *intērim*, to express simultaneous occurrences; as, *Citulus cepit magnum suae virtutis fructum, quum omnes pēpēre aūd vōce, in eo ipso vos spem habētūros esse, dixistis*. Cic. *Credēbātur virgī*

in medio foro Messāna civis Rōmānus, iūdices, quum intērea nulla vox alia istius mīseri audiebātur, nisi hæc: civis Rōmānus sum. Id.

REM. 4. *Quum*, for the most part preceded by an adverb, as, *jam*, *nondum*, *vix*, *ægre*, or joined with *repente* or *sūbito* is followed by the indicative, especially by the present indicative, to express the beginning of an action. In the cases mentioned in this and the preceding remark, the historians also use *quum* with the historical infinitive.

For the subjunctive after *si* and its compounds, see § 261.

### C. ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER QUI.

§ 264. Relatives require the subjunctive, when the clauses connected by them express merely a conception; as, for example, a consequence, an innate quality, a cause, motive, or purpose.

1. (a.) When the relative *qui*, in a clause denoting a result of the character or quality of something specified in the antecedent clause, follows a demonstrative, and is equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, it takes the subjunctive.

NOTE. The demonstratives after which *qui* takes the subjunctive, are *tam* with an adjective, *tantus*, *talis*, *ejusmodi*, *hujusmodi*, and *is*, *ille*, *iste*, and *hic* in the sense of *talis*; as,

*Quis est tam Lynceus, qui in tantis tenebris nihil offendat?* i. e. *ut ille in tantis*, etc., Who is so quick-sighted, that he would not stumble, (or, as not to stumble,) in such darkness. Cic. *Talem te esse oportet, qui ab impiūrum civium societate sejungas*; i. e. *ut tu*, etc. Id. *At ea fuit legatio Octavii, in qua periculi suspicio non subesset*, i. e. *ut in ea*. Id. *Nec tamen ego sum ille ferreus, qui fratris carissimi morē non mōvear*, i. e. *ut ego non mōvear*. Id. *Non sumus ii, quibus nihil verum esse videatur*, i. e. *ut nobis nihil*, etc. Id. *Nulla gens tam fera est, cuius mentem non imbuērīt deōrum opinio*, i. e. *ut ejus mentem*, etc. Id.

(b.) Sometimes the demonstrative word is only implied; as,

*Res parva dictu, sed quæ studiis in magnum certāmen excessērīt*, i. e. *talīs quæ*...of such a kind that it issued in a violent contest. Cic. *Nunc dicis aliquid, quod ad rem pertineat*, i. e. *talē ut id*, etc. Id. So *quis sum*, for *num talis sum*; as, *Quis sum, cuius aures ledi nefas sit?* Sen.—In like manner, also, a demonstrative denoting a character or quality, is implied in the examples included in the following rule:—

2. When the relative is equivalent to *quamquam* *is*, *etsi* *is*, or *dummodo* *is*, it takes the subjunctive; as,

*Laco, consilii quamvis egregii, quod non ipse afferret, inimicus*, Laco, an opponent of any measure, however excellent, provided he did not himself propose it. Tac. *Tu aquam a pumice postulas, qui ipse sitiat*. Plaut. *Nihil molestum, quod non desiderēs*, i. e. *dummodo id*. Cic.

3. *Quod*, in restrictive clauses, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Quod sciam*, as far as I know; *quod meminērīm*, as far as I recollect; *quod ego intelligam*; *quod intelligi possit*; *quod conjecturā prōvidēri possit*; *quod salva fide possim*; *quod commōdo tuo fiat*, etc.—*Quidem* is sometimes added to the relative in such sentences. *Quod sine molestia tua fiat*, So far as it can be done without troubling you. Cic. In the phrases *quantum possum*, *quantum ego peripicio*, on the other hand, the indicative is used.

4. A relative clause, after the comparative followed by *quam*, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Māior sum, quam cui possit fortuna nocēre*, i. e. *quam ut mihi*, etc., I am too great for fortune to be able to injure me. Ovid. *Auditā vōce præcōmis mājus gaudium fuit, quam quod ūniversum hōmīnes capērent*, Upon the herald's voice being heard, the joy was too great for the people to contain. Liv.

REMARK 1. The clause annexed by *quam qui* implies an inherent quality, or a consequence; so that *quam qui* is equivalent to *quam ut*, which also sometimes occurs. Sometimes the subjunctive follows *quam* even without a relative pronoun; as, *In his lītēris longior fui, quam aut vellem, aut quam me putāvi fore*:—and so frequently with the verbs *velle* and *posse*.

5. A relative clause expressing a purpose, aim, or motive, and equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Lacēdæmoniū lēgatos Athēnas misērunt, qui cum absentem accūsārent*: i. e. *ut illi eum accūsārent*, The Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens to accuse him in his absence. Nep. *Cæsar equitātum omnem præmittit, qui videant, quis in partes iter faciunt*. Cæs. *Sunt autem multi, qui eripiunt aliis, quod aliis largiantur*. Cic. *Assidue repētant, quas perdant, Bēlides undas*. Ovid.

REM. 2. So also with relative adverbs; as, *Lampæcum ei (Thémistoclē) rez donārat, unde vinum sūmēret*, i. e. *ex quā* or *ut inde*, etc. Nep. *Super tēbernaculum regis, unde ab omnibus conspici posset, imāgo solis crystallo inclūsa fulgebāt*. Curt.

6. A relative clause with the subjunctive after certain indefinite general expressions, specifies the circumstances which characterize the individual or class indefinitely referred to in the leading clause; as,

*Fuerunt eā tempestāte, qui dicērent*, There were at that time some who said. Sall. *Erant, quibus appetētiōr fāmæ, vidērētur*, There were those to whom he appeared too desirous of fame. Tac. *Sunt, qui censeant, ūna dñimum et corpus occidēre*. Cic. *Erunt, qui existimāri vellent*. Id. *Si quis erit, qui perpētuum oratōnem dēsidēret, allērā actiōne audiet*. Id. *Vēnient lēgiōnes, quæ nēque me inultum nēque te impūnitum patiuntur*. Tac. So after *est* followed by *quod*, in the sense of 'there is reason why'; as, *Est quod gaudeas*, You have cause to rejoice. Plaut. *Est quod visam domum*. Id. *Si est quod dēsit, ne beatius quidē est*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The expressions included in the rule are *est, sunt, adest, præsto sunt, existunt, exsurgunt, inveniuntur, reperiuntur*, (scil. hōmīnes); *si quis est, tempus fuit, tempus vēniat*, etc.

REM. 3. The same construction occurs with relative particles used indefinitely; as, *Est unde hæc fiant*. *Si est culpam ut Antipho in se admisērit*, If it chance that, etc. Ter. *Est ubi ut isto modo valeat*. Cic. *So est cur and est ut* in the sense of *est cur*; as, *Ille erat, ut odisset dēfensōrem salutis meæ*, i. e. he had reason to hate. Cic. *Non est igitur ut mirandum sit*, There is no occasion for wondering. Id.

REM. 4. The above and similar expressions are followed by the subjunctive only when they are indefinite. Hence, after *sunt quidam, sunt nonnulli, sunt multi*, etc., when referring to definite persons, the relative takes the indicative; as, *Sunt oratōnes quedam, quas Menocrito dābo*. Cic.

REM. 5. The indicative is sometimes, though rarely, used after *sunt qui*, even when taken indefinitely, especially in the poets; as, *Sunt, quos iuvat*. Hor. *Sunt qui ita dicunt*. Sall.

7. A relative clause after a general negative, or an interrogative expression implying a negative, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Nemo est, qui haud intelligat*, There is no one who does not understand. Cic. *Nulla res est, quæ perferre possit continuum laborem*, There is nothing which can endure perpetual labor. Quint. *Nulla pars est corporis, quæ non sit minor*. Id. *Nihil est, quod tam mîstros fâciat, quam impietas et scelus*. Cic. *In foro viz decimus quisque est, qui ipse sese noscat*. Plaut. *Quis est, qui stîlia fugiat?* Who is there that shuns what is useful? Cic. *Quæ lîtebra est, in quam non intret mētus mortis?* Sen. *Quid dulcius quam habère, quicquid omnia audeas sic loqui ut tecum?* Cic. (See respecting this use of the indefinite *quicum* rather than the definite *quidam*, § 136, R. 1.) *An est quisquam, qui hoc ignoret?* Is there any one who is ignorant of this? Id. *Numquid est mîli, quod non dixëris?* Ter.

NOTE 2. General negatives are *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, *onus non*, *alius non*, *non quisquam*, *vix ullus*, *nec ullus*, etc., with *est*; *vix* with an ordinal and *quisque*; *nego esse quemquam*, etc. Interrogative expressions implying a negative, are *quis*, *quid*; *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*; *quantus*, *iter*, *equus*, *numquis*, *an quisquam*, *an aliquis*, *quibus quisque*, *quibus*, etc., with *est*? *quot*, *quam multi*, etc., with *sunt*?

NOTE 3. The same construction is used after *non est*, *nihil est*, *quid est*, *numquid est*, etc., followed by *quod*, *cur*, *quære*, or *quamobrem*, and denoting 'there is no reason why,' 'what cause is there?' 'is there any reason?' as, *Quod timeas, non est*, There is no reason why you should fear. Ovid. *Nihil est, quod adventum nostrum pertimescas*. Cic. *Quid est, quod de ejus civitate dubites?* Id. *Queris a me, quid ego Câtulinam metuam*. *Nihil, et cûrâvi ne quis metuëret*. *Quid est, cur virtus ipsa per se non efficiat beatos?* Id.—So after *non habeo*, or *nihil habeo*; as, *Non habeo, quod te accûsem*. Cic. *Nil habeo, quod âgam*, I have nothing to do. Hor. *Nihil habeo, quod ad te scribam*. Cic. So without a negative, *De quibus habeo ipse, quid sentiam*. Id. *Causa or, with quid and nihil, causa*, is sometimes added; as, *Non fuit causa, cur postûlâres*. Id. *Quid erat causa, cur metuëret*. Id.

NOTE 4. (a.) The relative clause takes the subjunctive after the expressions included in this and the last rule, only when it expresses the character or quality of the subject of the antecedent clause; and the relative, as in the preceding cases of the relative with the subjunctive, is equivalent to a personal or demonstrative pronoun with *ut*; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat*, There is no one who is ignorant, i. e. no one is ignorant. Cic. *So, Sunt, qui hoc carpant*, There are some who blame this, i. e. some blame this. Vell.

(b.) If the relative clause is to be construed as a part of the logical subject it does not require the subjunctive; as, *Nihil stâbile est, quod infidum est* Nothing which is faithless is firm. Cic.

8. (1.) A relative clause expressing the reason of what goes before, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Pecçârissè mîhi videor, qui a te discessërim*, I think I did wrong in leaving you. Cic. *Inertiam accusas adölescentium, qui istam artem non ediscant*, You blame the idleness of the young men, because they do not learn that art. Id. *O fortunâte adölescens, qui tuæ virtutis Hómërum præcönem invênëris!*—in having found. Id. *Câninius fuit mîrtificâ vigilantiâ, qui suo loto consûlatu somnum non vidërit*,—since, etc. Id.

(2.) Sometimes, instead of *qui* alone, *ut qui*, *quippe qui*, or *utpöte qui*, is used, generally with the subjunctive; as,

*Omëtia cum patre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum quidëm nisi perrâro vënisset*. Cic. *Nëque Antónius præcûl abërat, utpöte qui magno exercitû sêquëstür*. Sall. But sometimes with the indicative in Sallust and Livy; as, *Quippe qui omnia vicërat*. Sall.

9. After *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, and *idôneus*, a relative clause takes the subjunctive; as,

*Vidëtür, qui âliquando impëret, dignus esse*, He seems to be worthy at some time to command. Cic. *Rusûci nostrî quum fidem âlicujus bônitätëmq; laudant, dignum esse dicunt, quicum in ténëbris mices*. Id. *Nulla vidëbâtur optior per-*



*sōna, quæ de ædite lōquērētur.* Id. *Pompeius idōneus non est, qui impetret.* Id. *Et rem idōneam, de quā quærātur, et hōmīnes dignos, quibuscumq; dissērātur, pūtant.* Id.

NOTE 5. If the relative clause does not express that of which the person or thing denoted by the antecedent is worthy, its construction is not influenced by this rule. Thus, *Quis servus libertate dignus fuit, cui nostra sūlus cāra non esset?* The subjunctive is here used according to No. 7 of this section.

NOTE 6. The infinitive frequently follows these adjectives in poetry, though rarely in prose; as, *Et puer ipse fuit cantāri dignus.* Virg.:—and sometimes *ut*; as, *Eras dignus, ut hāberes integram mānum.* Quint.

10. A relative clause, after *ūnus, sōlus, primus, etc.*, restricting the affirmation to a particular subject, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Hæc est ūna contentio, quæ adhuc permānsērīt.* This is the only dispute which has remained till this time. Cic. *Vōluptas est sōla, quæ nos vōcet ad se, et allīceat suapte natūrā.* Pleasure is the only thing that, by its own nature, invites and allures us to itself. Id.

11. When the relative refers to a *dependent clause*, it often takes the subjunctive. See § 266.

12. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in narration after relative pronouns and adverbs, when a repeated action is spoken of; as,

*Semper hābiti sunt fortissimī, qui summam impērii pōtrentur.* Those were always accounted the bravest, who obtained the supreme dominion. Nep. *Quemcumq; lictor jussu consūlis prēhendisset, tribūnus mitti jubēbat.* Liv. *Ut quisque maxime lābōrāret lōcus, aut ipse occurrēbat, aut āliq; mittēbat.* So after *si quis* or *quī*; as, *Si qui rem mālitiōsius gessisset, dedēcus existimābant.* Cic. *Quōtiens siper tāli nēgōtio consultāret, eādē dōmūs parte ulēbātur.* Tac. *Nec quisquam Pyrrhum, quā tulisset impētum, sustinēre vāluit.*—It is sometimes found in like manner after *quum, ubi, ut, and si* when used in the sense of *quum*, when repeated actions are spoken of; as, *Id ubi dixisset, hastam in fines eōrum emittēbat.* Liv. *Sin Nūmida prōpius accessissent, tū vērō virtutē ostēdere.* Sall. Sometimes even the present subjunctive is so used when employed as an aorist to express things which have happened repeatedly, and still happen (see § 145, I. 2.); as, *Ubi de magnā virtute et glōriā bonōrum mēmōres, quos sibi quisque, etc.* Sall.

NOTE 7. This is called the *indefinite subjunctive*, or *subjunctive of generality*, inasmuch as the action is not referred to a distinct, individual case. The indicative, however, is used in such cases more frequently than the subjunctive.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

§ 265. Dependent clauses, containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive.

NOTE 1. A question is indirect when its substance is stated in a dependent clause without the interrogative form. Indirect questions generally depend upon those verbs and expressions which commonly take after them the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. § 272. Thus:—

*Quālis sit animus, ipse animus nescit.* The mind itself knows not what the mind is. Cic. *Crēdibile non est, quantum scribam,* It is incredible how much I write. Id. *Quis ego sim, me rōgitas?* Do you ask me who I am? Plaut. *Ad te quid scribam nescio.* Cic. *Nec quid scribam hābeo,* Nor have I any thing to write. Id. *Dōce me, ubi sint dī,* Inform me where the gods are. Id. *Incertum est, quo te lōco mors expectet.* Sen. Ep. *Quam pridem sibi hērēditas vēnisset, docet.* Id. *Nunc accipe, quāre dēspiciant omnes.* Hor. *Id utrum illi sentiant, an*

*vēro simulent, tu intelliges.* Cic. *Quæro, num tu sēdātui causam tuam permittas.* Id. *Vides, ut altā stet nīve candīdum Sōracte.* Hor. *Nescit, vitāne fruātur, an sit apud mānes.* Ovid.

NOTE 2. All interrogatives whether adjectives, pronouns, or particles, may serve as connectives of clauses containing indirect questions; as,

*Quantus, quālis, quōti, quōtus, quōtuplex, ūter; quis, qui, cājas; ūbi, quō, unde, quā, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdiū, quampridem, quōties, cur, quāre, quāmodum, quēmodum, quōmōdo, ut, quam, quātiōpēre, an, ne, num, utrum, anne, annon.*

REMARK 1. The indicative is frequently used in dependent questions, especially in Terence and Plautus and occasionally in later poets; as, *Vide acritia quid facit.* Ter. So Virg. Ecl. 5, 7. In the best prose writers the indicative generally indicates that the question is direct, or that the sentence is not a question; as, *Querāmus ūbi mālēficiū est,* Let us seek there, where the crime actually is. Cic. *Nihil est admirābilis, quā quōmōdo ille mortem filiū tālit.*

REM. 2. In double questions, 'whether—or,' the first may be introduced by *utrum*, or the enclitic *ne*, or without an interrogative particle. Hence there are four forms of double questions,—1. *utrum* (or *utrum ne*),—*an*. 2. *utrum*,—*an* (*anne*). 3. *ne*,—*an*. 4. *ne*,—*ne*; as, *Multum intēret, utrum laus imminuātur, an sālus dēsērātur.* Cic. The interrogative particle *utrum* is not used in a single question; and *num*—*an* is used only in direct questions. The English 'or not' in the second part, which is used without a verb, is expressed in Latin by *annon* or *necne*, either with or without a verb; but *necne* occurs only in indirect questions; as, *Dii utrum sint, necne sint, queritur.* Cic.—*Ne—ne, an—an, or num—num* scarcely occur except in poetical or unclassical language.

REM. 3. *Dūbito, dubium est, or incertum est an, dēlibēro or hāsito an*, and especially *hāud scio an, nescio an*, though implying some doubt, have generally a sense almost affirmative. Compare § 198, 11, R. (e.)

REM. 4. *Nescio quis*, used nearly in the sense of *aliquis*, does not influence the mood of the following verb; as, *Sed cāsu nescio quo in ea tempōra atas nostra iucidit.* Cic. *Lūcus, nescio quo cāsu, nocturno tempōre incensus est.* Nep. So, also, *nescio quōmōdo*, 'somehow' or 'in some way'; as, *Sed nescio quōmōdo, inhāret in mentibus quāsi augūrium.* Cic. In like manner *mirum quam, mirum quantum, nimum quantum*, and the like, when united to express only one idea, do not affect the mood of the verb; as, *Siles in dicendo nimum quantum vālent*,—very much. Cic.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INSERTED CLAUSES.

§ 266. 1. When a dependent proposition containing either an accusative with the infinitive, or a verb in the subjunctive, has a clause connected with it, as an *essential part*, either by a relative, a relative adverb, or a conjunction, the verb of the latter clause is put in the subjunctive; as,

*Quid enim pōtest esse tam perepicūm, quā esse aliquod nūmen, quō hāc rēgantur?* For what can be so clear as, that there is some divinity by whom these things are governed? Cic. Here the thing which is stated to be clear is, not merely *esse aliquod nūmen*, that there is a god, but also that the world is governed by him. Hence the latter clause, *quō hāc rēgantur* is an essential part of the general proposition. *Illud sic fēre dēfiniri sōlet, dēcōrum id esse, quod consentāneum sit hōminis excellentia.* Id. *Audiam quid sit, quod Epicūrum non prōbes,* I shall hear why it is that you do not approve of Epicurus. Id. *Iussit ut, quā vānissent, nāves Eubōam pēterent.* Liv.

REMARK 1. Hence the subjunctive is used in general sentences, in which the class of things mentioned exists only as a conception or idea, while the individual thing has a real existence; as, *Est enim ulciscendi et puniendi modus, atque haud scio an satis sit eum qui læcesserit injuria sua patiēre*, i. e. each individual offender of the class.

REM. 2. When the principal proposition contains a subjunctive denoting a result, after *ita*, *tam*, *tālis*, etc., the inserted clause has the indicative; as, *Asia vero tam optima est et fertilis, ut—multitudine earum rerum, quæ exportantur, facile omnibus terris antecellat*. Cic. The same is the case in definitions; as, *Videre igitur oportet, quæ sint convenientia cum ipso negotio, hoc est, quæ ab re separare non possunt*. Cic.—So also explanatory clauses, especially circumlocutions introduced by a relative pronoun, are sometimes found with the indicative; as, *Idque ille Mārius item eximie L. Plōtium dilexit, cūjus ingenio pūtabat ea, quæ gesserat, posse celebrāri*. Cic.

NOTE. To this rule belongs the construction of the *ōrātiō obliqua*, 'indirect discourse,' or 'reported speech,' in which the language of another is presented, not as it was conceived or expressed by him, but in the third person. Thus, Cæsar said, 'I came, I saw, I conquered,' is direct,—Cæsar said, that 'he came, saw, and conquered,' is indirect discourse.

2. In the *ōrātiō obliqua*, the main proposition is expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; and dependent clauses connected with it by relatives and particles, take the subjunctive.

Thus, Cicero and Quintilian, in quoting the language of Marcus Antonius, make use, the former of the *ōrātiō directa*, the latter of the *ōrātiō obliqua*;—*Antōnius inquit, 'Ars earum rerum est, quæ sciuntur'*, Antonius says, 'Art belongs to those things which are known.' Cic. *Antōnius inquit, artem earum rerum esse, quæ sciuntur*, Antonius says, that 'art belongs to those things which are known.' Quint.

So, *Sōcrātes dicere solēbat, omnes, in eo quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes*, Socrates was accustomed to say, that 'all were sufficiently eloquent in that which they understood?' Cic. *Cito mirāri se aiebat, quod non rideret hāruspez, hāruspticem quum vidisset*. Id. *Negat jus esse, qui miles non sit, pugnare cum hoste*. Id. *Indignābantur ibi esse impērium, ubi non esset libertas*. Liv. *Idque Athēnienses, quod honestum non esset, id ne utile quidem (esse) putāvērunt*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the subjunctive would be necessary in the *ōrātiō directa*, to denote liberty, power, etc., the same remains in the *ōrātiō obliqua*, and is not changed into the infinitive with an accusative; as, *Ad hac Ariovistus respondit, quum vellet, congrēderetur*. To this Ariovistus replied, that 'he might meet him when he pleased.' Cæs. In the *ōrātiō directa*, this would be *congrēdiāris*.

(b.) The imperative in the *ōrātiō directa* is, in the *ōrātiō obliqua*, changed into the subjunctive; as, *hoc mihi dicite*, which in the *ōrātiō obliqua* is, *hoc sibi dicant*, or *hoc sibi dicērent*, according to the tense of the leading verb.

(c.) So also direct questions addressed to the second person, when changed from direct to indirect speech, become subjunctives. Liv. 6, 37.—But such questions when not addressed to the second person are expressed in the *ōrātiō obliqua* by the accusative with the infinitive; as when in direct speech we say, *Etiānsi veleris contumēlia oblivisci velim, num posum etiā recentium injuriarum mēmōriam depōnere?* The *ōrātiō obliqua* will be, *Cæsar respondit* (histor. perf.)—*si veleris contumēlia oblivisci vellet, num etiā recentium injuriarum—mēmōriam depōnere posse?* Cæs. Very rarely the accusative with the infinitive is found in a question of the second person, as in Liv. 6, 17: but the subjunctive in questions of the third person is less uncommon in Cæsar; as, *Quis pōti possit? for quem pōti posse? Quis hoc sibi persuaderet? for quem sibi persuādūrū?* See § 273, 3.

REM. 2. A writer may state his own past words or thoughts in *ōrātiō obliqua*, either preserving the first person, or adopting the third.

REM. 3. When the inserted clause contains the words or sentiments of the subject of the leading clause, all references to him are regularly expressed by the reflexives *sui* and *suus*; as, *Hac necessitate coactus domino nâvis qui sit dperit, multa pollicens, si se conservasset.* Nep. And this is equally true when the word to which the pronoun refers is not in reality the grammatical subject, provided it may still be conceived as such; as, *Quum ei in suspiciônem venisset, aliquid in epistola de se esse scriptum.* Nep.; for the words, *quum ei in suspiciônem venisset*, are equivalent to *quum suspicâretur*. See § 208, (1.)

REM. 4. The tenses to be used in changing the *dratio directa* into the *obliqua*, depend on the tense of the verb which introduces the quotation, according to the rule, § 258. But when the future perfect would be used in the direct, the pluperfect is necessary in the oblique form; but the perfect is used after the present, perfect definite, or future.

REM. 5. When the connected clause contains merely a descriptive circumstance, or expresses what is independent of the sentiment of the preceding clause, it takes the indicative; as, *Impêravit Alexander Lysippo, ut eorum equitum, qui apud Granicum ceciderant, faceret statuas*, Alexander ordered Lysippus to make statues of those horsemen who had fallen at the Granicus. Sometimes, in other cases, when it is evident from the sense, that the connected clause is an essential part of the proposition, the indicative is used, to avoid giving the appearance of contingency to the sentence.

3. A clause connected to another by a relative or causal conjunction, takes the subjunctive, (whatever be the mood of the preceding verb,) when it contains not the sentiment or allegation of the writer, but that of some other person alluded to; as,

*Socrâtes accusatus est, quod corrumpêret jûventutem*, Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth, lit., because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth. *Deum invocabant*, cujus *ad solenne venisset*, They invoked the god, to whose solemnities they had come. Liv. *Quos vicis amicis tibi esse cave crêdas*, Do not believe that those whom you have conquered are your friends. Here, in the first example, the charge of corrupting the youth is not made by the writer, but by the accusers of Socrates. So, in the second example, the worshippers allege that they have come to attend upon the solemnities of the god. In the last, it is implied by the use of the subjunctive mood, that the belief spoken of is that of the person addressed:—*quos vicisti* would have been merely an addition of the speaker, by means of which he would have designated the persons whose friendship he was speaking of; and, in general, the *indicative*, in such sentences, is employed in those statements which are independent of the sentiments of the person, to whose thoughts or words allusion is made. Cf. *supra*, 2, R. 5.

REMARK. In the preceding cases, it is not directly said that the sentiments are those of another than the writer. In Cicero, however, the words *dico*, *puto*, *arbitror*, and the like, are often construed in a similar manner, although, properly speaking, not these verbs, but those in the clauses dependent on them, should be in the subjunctive; as, *Quum enim, Hannibâlus permisso, exisset de castris, redit paulo post, quod se oblitum nescio quod dicêret*,...because (as) he said, he had forgotten something. Cic. *Ab Athênien-sibus, locum sepulcræ intra urbem ut darent, impetrâre non potui, quod religiône se impêdiri dicêrent.* Id.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 267. The imperative mood is used to express a *command*, *wish*, *advice*, or *exhortation*; as,

*Noce te*, Know thyself. Cic. *Æquam memento servare mentem*, Remember to preserve an unruffled mind. Hor. *Huc ades*, Come hither. Virg. *Pasce capellæ, et pôtum pastas æge, et inter agendum occurrere capro cavereto.* Id.

(1.) The imperative *present* denotes that an action is to be performed directly or at once; as, *lĕge*, read; *mōrĕre*, die; or that a state or condition is to continue; as, *vĕve*, live.

(2.) The imperative *future* denotes that something is to be done, as soon as something else has taken place; as, *Quum vāletūdīnē tuā cōsultāveris*, tum cōsultō nāvīgatiōnē. Cic. *Prius audite paucis; quod quum dixerō, si placuerit, faciōtē*. Ter. The precedent event is often to be supplied by the mind. Sometimes, especially in poetry, the imperative present is used for the imperative future, and, on the other hand, *scito* and *scitōte*, from *scio*, are used instead of the imperative present, which is wanting.

(3.) Hence the imperative future is properly used in *contracts, laws, and wills*; and also in *precepts and rules of conduct*; as, *Rēgio impĕriō duo sunt, itque cōsules appellātor, militiā summū jus hābent, nēmīnī pārento, illis aīus pōpuli supĕrma lex esto*. Cic. *Non scitis est pulchra esse poemāta, dulcia sunt*. Hor. *Ignoscito saepe altĕri, numquam tibi*. Syr.

REMARK 1. With the imperative, *not* is expressed by *nē*, and *nor* by *nēve*; as,

*Ne tanta animis assuescĭte bella*. Virg. *Ne crēde cōlōri*. Id. *Hōminem mortuū in urbe ne sēpĕlĭto, nāve ūrĭto*. Cic.

NOTE. *Non* and *nēque* occur, though rarely, with the imperative; as, *Vos quōque non cāris aures ōnĕrāte lapillis, nec prōdite grāves insāto vestibus auro*. Ovid. But with the subjunctive used for the imperative *non* and especially *nēque* are found more frequently. Cf. § 260, R. 6, (b.).—In Plautus and Terence *ne* is of common occurrence both with the imperative and with the present subjunctive, and with no difference of meaning; but later poets chiefly use *as* with the present subjunctive, and *ne* with the imperative only when they speak emphatically. In classical prose writers the periphrastic *nōli* with the infinitive is preferred.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive are often used instead of both tenses of the imperative, to express a command in a milder form, an exhortation, or an entreaty; as, *Qui dāpisci vĕram glōriā vōlet, justitiā fungātur officiis*. Cic. *Quod dūbitas, ne fēcĕris*. Plin. Ep. See § 260, II., R. 6. An imperative of the perfect passive is very rarely found; as, *At vos admōnĭti nostris quōque cāsibus esto*. Ovid. *Jacta ālea esto*. Cæs. in Suet. But the subjunctive is more common; as, *Jacta sit ālea*. Sometimes also the future indicative; as, *Sed vālĕbis, mēque nēgōtia vidĕbis, mēque diis jūvantibus ante brūmam exspectābis*, instead of *vāle, vide, exspecta*. Cic. *Ubi sententiā meam vōbis pĕrĕgĕro, tum quibus eādē placĕbunt, in dextram partē tātis transibitis*, instead of *transibite*. Liv. With the future the negative is *non*. See § 269, R. 1, (4.)

REM. 3. Sometimes, for the simple affirmative imperative, *cūra* or *cūrāto ut*, *fac ut*, or *fac alone* is used with the subjunctive; as, *Cūra ut quā primum vĕnias, Cōme as soon as possible. Fac erūdias*, Instruct, or Take care to instruct. Cic. For the negative imperative *fac ne*, *cāve ne* or *cāve alone*, with the present or perfect subjunctive is used; but especially *nōli* with the infinitive; as, *Nōli putāre*, Do not suppose. Cic. *Cāve existimes*, Do not think. Id. *Nōlite id velle quod non fieri pōtest, et cāvĕte ne spe prāsēntis pācis pĕrpetuam pācem ōmittātis*. Id.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### OF THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

§ 268. 1. The infinitive partakes of the properties of the noun and verb, just as the participle combines the properties of the adjective and verb. It expresses simply the action or state implied in the verb in an abstract manner, without specifying either person, number, or time, and thus merely indicates whether an action is in progress or completed.

2. The tenses of the infinitive denote respectively an action as present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verbs with which they are connected; as,

*Hoc facere possum*, I am able to do this. Cic. *Vidi nostros inimicos cupere bellum*, I saw that our enemies were desiring war. Id. *Nec gemere aëria cessabit turtur ab ulmo*, Nor shall the turtle dove cease to coo from the lofty elm. Virg.—*Victorem victa succubuisse queror*, I complain that the victor has yielded to the vanquished. Ovid. *Se a senibus audisse dicabant*, They said that they had heard (it) from the old men. Cic. *Audiet cives acuisse ferrum iuventus*, The youth will hear that the citizens have whetted the sword. Hor.—*Negat sese verbum esse facturum*, He declares that he is not about to speak. Cic. *Postquam audierat non datum iri filio uxorem suo*, After he had heard that a wife would not be given to his son. Ter. *Semper existimabitis nihil horum vos visuros fore*, You will always suppose that you are to see none of these things. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) The present and perfect infinitives are sometimes called respectively the infinitives of *incomplete* and of *completed* action. The present infinitive, however, is sometimes used to denote a completed action. This is the usual construction with *mementi*; but in such case the speaker transfers himself to the past, and the expression denotes rather a recollection of the progress than of the completion of the action; as, *Hoc me mementi dicere*, I remember my saying this. Cic. *Teucrum mementi Sidonā venire*, I remember Teucer's coming to Sidon. Virg. So with *mementi* *teneo*. Cic. Phil. 8, 10. *Scribit* also is construed like *mementi*; as, Cic. Off. 3, 2: and after the same analogy, and for the sake of vivid expression Cicero says, *M. Maximum accēpitum facile celare, tacere, dissimulare*, etc., though speaking of things which he had not witnessed himself. So, also, with *recordor*.—*Recordor longe omnibus unum anteferre Demosthenem*. Cic. When the action is spoken of simply as a fact, the perfect infinitive is used with *mementi*; as, *Mementis me ita distribuisse causam*. Cic.

(b.) The passive voice having no simple form for expressing the completed state of suffering makes use of the combination of the perfect participle with *esse*; as, *amatus esse*, to have been loved. When thus combined *esse* loses its own signification of a continued state, and when this state is to be expressed, another infinitive must be chosen; as, *Constrictam jam horum conscientia teneri conjurationem tuam non vides?* Cic. Sometimes, however, when no ambiguity can arise, *esse* in the usual combination retains its original meaning; as, *Apud Platōnem est, omnem morem Lacedæmoniorum inflammatum esse cupiditate vincendi*. Id. Here *inflammatum esse* expresses a continued or habitual state.—*Fuisse* with the perfect participle denotes a state completed previous to a certain past time; as, *Jubet bono animo esse; sopitum fuisse regem subito ictu*. Liv.

REM. 2. To express the result of an action rather than its progress, the perfect infinitive is sometimes used instead of the present, especially after *satis habeo*, *satis mihi est*, *prædet*, *contentus sum*, *melius erit*, *volo* or a verb of equivalent meaning; as, *Bacchatur vates, magnum si pectore possit excussisse deum*. Virg. *Quam illam nemo vult attigisse*. Plin. The poets use the infinitive perfect where we should expect a present; as, *Tendentes Pelion imposuisse Olympo*. Hor.

REM. 3. The present infinitive is also sometimes used for the future, especially when the verb has no future; as, *Desine fata deum flecti sperare*, Cease to hope that the fates of the gods will be changed. Virg. *Progeniem Trojano a sanguine duci audierat*. Id. *Cras mihi argentum dare dixit*, i. e. *se daturum esse*. Ter. *Cato affirmat se vivo illum non triumphare*. Cic.

REM. 4. (a.) The infinitive future active is formed by a combination of the participle future active with *esse*; as, *amaturus esse*; the infinitive future passive by a combination of the supine in *um* with *iri*; as, *amatum iri*. These future infinitives denote an action or state as continuing. The participle in *rus*, which properly expresses intention (see § 162, 14), takes also the infinitive *fuisse* to express a past intention; as, *Scio te scripturum fuisse*, I know that

you have had the intention to write, whence it was an easy transition to the sense, 'you would have written,' in conditional sentences, when the condition is not fulfilled. This infinitive is used especially in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences, where in direct speech the pluperfect subjunctive would be used (cf. § 162, 14, R. 3.); as, *Etiamsi obtinperasset auspiciis, idem eventurum fuisse puto*. Cic. In like manner the infinitive future with *esse* is used in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences instead of the imperfect subjunctive; as, *Libertus, nisi iurasset, scélus se facturum (esse) arbitrabatur*. Id.

(b.) Instead of the future infinitive, in both voices, *futurum esse* or *fore*, followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, is often used; the present and imperfect subjunctive, in such cases, denoting an unfinished, the perfect and pluperfect a finished, future action; as, *Numquam putavi fore, ut supplex ad te venirem*, I never supposed (that it would happen) that I should come a suppliant to you. Cic. *Suspitor fore, ut infringatur hominum improbitas*. Id. *Credebam fore, ut epistolam scripsisses*.—So, also, in the passive for a continued state of future suffering the present and imperfect are used; as, *Crede fore, ut epistolam scribatur*, and, *Credebam fore, ut epistola scriberetur*. But to express a completed state in future time the perfect participle is employed; as, *Quos spero brevi tempore tecum copulatos fore*. Cic. *Quod videret nomine pacis bellum involutum fore*. Id. This construction is necessarily used, when the verb has either no future active participle, or no supine; as, in such case, the regular future infinitive cannot be formed; as, *Spero fore ut sapias*.—*Fore* is found in two passages pleonastically joined with the future participle active, viz. *Te ad me fore venturum*. Cic. Att. 5, 21: and *Quum senatus censeret—libenter facturos fore*. Liv. 6, 42.

REM. 5. (a.) The periphrastic infinitive formed by the future active participle with *fuisse*, denotes a future action contingent upon a condition which was not fulfilled; and, in the apodosis of a conditional sentence, corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *An censes me tantos labores suscepturum fuisse, si eadem finibus gloriam meam quibus vitam essem terminaturus?* Do you think that I should have undertaken so great labors if, etc. Cic. *Ut perspicuum sit omnibus, nisi tanta acerbitas injurias fuisset, numquam illos in eum locum progressuros fuisse*,....that they never would have come into that place. Id.

(b.) *Futurum fuisse* with *ut* and the imperfect subjunctive passive, corresponds to the infinitive *fuisse* with the future participle active in a conditional proposition; as, *Nisi nuntii essent allati, existimabant plerique futurum fuisse, ut oppidum amitteretur*,....that the town would have been lost. Cæsar.

(c.) The participle future passive cannot be used to form an infinitive future passive, since it always retains the meaning of necessity, and in this sense has three regular infinitives, *amandum esse*, *amandum fuisse*, and *amandum fore*; as, *Instare hiemem, aut sub pellibus habendos milites fore, aut differendum esse in aestatem bellum*. Liv.

REM. 6. In the apodosis of a conditional sentence, the perfect infinitive, like the past tenses of the indicative, (see § 259, R. 4.), sometimes corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *(Dixit) sibi vitam filia sua caridiorem fuisse, si liberæ ac pudicæ vivere licitum fuisset*, (He said) that the life of his daughter had been dearer to him than his own, if it had been permitted.... Liv. This use of the perfect infinitive is necessary, when the verb has no future participle; as, *Equidem Platonem existimo, si genus forense dicendi tractare voluisset, gravissime et copiosissime potuisse dicere*,—would have been able to speak. Cic.

§ 269. The infinitive may be regarded either as a verb or as an abstract noun. (a.) As a verb it is used either indefinitely (§ 143, 4), or with a subject of its own, which is put in the accusative, (§ 239). But the infinitive passive of neuter and sometimes of active verbs, like the third person singular of that voice, may be used impersonally or without a subject; as, *Vides ito propèrari litore*, You see a stir is made all along the shore. Virg. See §§ 209, R. 3, (2.), and 239, R. 4. The present infinitive has sometimes, in narration, a subject in the nominative. See § 209, R. 5.

(b.) As a noun, the infinitive, either alone or with a subject-accusative, has two cases, the nominative and the accusative, and is accordingly used either as the subject or the object of a verb.

#### THE INFINITIVE AS THE SUBJECT OF A VERB.

The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *subject* of a verb; as,

*Ad rempūblicam pertinet me conservāri*, It concerns the state that I should be preserved. Cic. *Numquam est ūtile peccāre*, To do wrong is never useful. Id. *Majus dēdēcus est parta āmittēre quam omnino non parāvisse*. Sall. In the first example *conservāri* with its subject accusative *me* is the subject of *pertinet*, and is equivalent to 'my preservation': in the second, *peccāre* is the subject of *est ūtile*. See § 202, 2, and III. R. 2.

REMARK 1. A general truth may be expressed by the infinitive without a subject; as, *Fāctus est vincire civem Rōmānum*, To bind a Roman citizen, or, that one should bind a Roman citizen, is a crime. But in such case the verb *esse* and verbs denoting to appear, to be considered or called (§ 210, R. 3.), require the noun or adjective of the predicate to agree with the implied subject in the accusative; as, *Equum est peccātis vēmiam poscentem reddere rursus*. Hor. *Atticus mazimum aestimāvit questum*, mēmōrem grātumque cognosci. Nep.

NOTE. The indefinite pronoun *āliquem* or *ālquos* may in such cases be supplied, and the same indefiniteness may be expressed by *te* or *nos*, cf. § 209, R. 7; but it is still more frequently expressed by the infinitive passive. Hence the sentence *Fāctus est vincire civem Rōmānum*, may also be expressed by *Fāctus est vinciri civem Rōmānum*. So, *Quum vidērent de eōrum virtute non desperāri*. Nep.—The impersonal verbs *licet*, *dēcet*, *oportet*, *opus est*, and *nēcesse est*, when there is no definite subject, are joined with the infinitive active alone; but when there is a subject-accusative, they are connected with the passive construction; as, a c t. *licet hoc facēre*; *dēcet spēcimen cāpēre ex hac re*; p a s s. *licet hoc fieri*; *dēcet spēcimen cāpi*.

REM. 2. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is often the subject of a proposition, when the substantive verb with a noun, a neuter adjective, or an impersonal verb forms the predicate. Of this kind are *justum*, *æquum*, *vērismile*, *consentāneum*, *āpertum*—*est*, *erat*, etc., *nēcesse est*, *opus est*;—*appāret*, *constat*, *convēnit*, *dēcet*, *licet*, *oportet*; *intelligitur*, *perspicitur*, etc.; as, *Cui verba dāre difficile est*. Ter. *Mendācem mēmōrem esse oportet*. Quint. *Lēgem brēvem esse oportet*. Sen. *Constat profecto ad sālūtem civium inventas esse lēges*. Cic. *Non enim me hoc jam dicēre pūdebūt*. Id. See § 209, R. 3, (5.), (a.)

REM. 3. The infinitive may itself be the subject of an infinitive; as, *Audio non licēre cuiquam in nāve cāpillōs dēponēre*. Ter.

REM. 4. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may also be the predicate nominative; as, *Impūne quēlibet facēre id est rēgem esse*. Sall. In this sentence *facēre* is the subject, and *rēgem esse* is the predicate; for *id*, which only represents by a kind of apposition the clause *impūne quēlibet facēre*, can be omitted.

REM. 5. When the infinitive *esse*, (or others of similar meaning, as, *fieri*, *victēre*, *vitam dēgēre*, *cēdēre*, *ābire*, etc.), with a predicate adjective (or noun), is joined with *licet*, such predicate is put in the accusative, if the subject-accusative of the infinitive is expressed, and sometimes, also, when it is omitted, but more frequently, in the latter case, the predicate adjective or noun is attracted to the dative following *licet*; as, *Ut eum liceat ante tempus consūlem fieri*. Auct. ad Her. *Mēdios esse jam non licēbūt*. Cic. *Si civi Rōmāno licet esse Gāditanum*. Id.—*Licuit enim esse otīōso Thēmistoclē*. Id. *Mihī nēgligenti esse non licet*. Id. *Sibi vitam filia suā cārīōrem fuisse, si libērā ac pūdicā vivēre licitum fuisset* (scil. ei). Liv. So also *nēcesse est* with the predicate in the



dative. *Vobis necesse est fortibus viris esse.* Liv.—But *licet*, *oportet*, and *necesse* are also joined with the subjunctive mood, and hence is derived the construction of *licet* as a conjunction. See § 263, 2.

#### THE INFINITIVE AS THE OBJECT OF A VERB.

§ 270. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *object* of a verb; as,

*Hac vitare cupimus.* We desire to avoid this. Cic. *Poetas omnino non cōnor attingere*, I do not at all attempt to read the poets. Id. *Sententiam vālere cupierunt*, They desired that the opinion should prevail. Id. *Spēro te vālere*, I hope that you are well. Id.

NOTE. The infinitive as the object of a verb supplies the place of the accusative of the *thing*, and hence many active verbs besides the infinitive take in the active voice an accusative of the *person*, cf. § 231, R. 3, (b.), and in the passive retain the infinitive; as, *Consules jubentur scribere exercitum.* *Muros adire vētiti sunt.* Cf. § 234, I.

REMARK 1. The infinitive alone may also depend upon an adjective, and sometimes upon a noun.

(a.) It may depend upon *relative adjectives*, (see § 213, R. 1), which, by the poets, are joined with the infinitive instead of their usual construction with the genitive of the gerund, etc.; as, *Cedere nescius.* Hor. *Avidi committere pugnam.* Ovid. *Cupidus moriri.* Id. *Cantare pēriti Arcades.* Virg. *Callidus condere furto.* Hor. *Quidlibet impotens sperare.* Id. *Subrinas facere inscius.* Varr. *Insuetus vera audire.* Liv. *Certa mori.* Virg. *Felcior ungvere tela.* Virg. So, *Audax omnia perpēti*, Resolute to endure every thing. Hor. *Sollers ornare Cypassis*, Skillful to adorn. Ovid. *Segnes solvere nodum.* Hor. *Indocilis pauperem pēti.* Id. *Non lenis fata recludere.* Id. See § 213, R. 4, (1.)

(b.) It may also depend upon adjectives signifying *usefulness, fitness*, etc., which are sometimes by the poets construed with the infinitive instead of the dative; as, (*Tibia*) *aspirare et adesse choris erat utilis.* Hor. *Ætas mollis et apta regi.* Ovid. *Fons etiam rivo dare nomen idoneus.* Hor. *Fruges consumere nati.* Id. And after *dignus* and *contentus*; as, *Dignus amari.* Virg. Cf. § 244, R. 2, (b.)

(c.) Upon a noun; as, *Tempus est hujus libri facere finem.* It is time to finish this book. Nep. *Initi consilia reges tollere*, He devised a plan to destroy the kings. Id. *Ea erat confessio caput rerum Romam esse.* Liv. *Cupido incesserat Æthiopiam invisere.* Curt. *Quibus in otio vivere copia erat.* Sall. So, *Nec mihi sunt vires inimicos pellere tectis*, instead of *pellendos inimicos*, or *ad pellendos inimicos.* Ovid.

(d.) If for the infinitives depending on nouns or adjectives other nouns were substituted, these last would be put in the genitive, dative, or ablative; and hence such infinitives may perhaps be properly regarded as exceptions to the rule, that the infinitive has but two cases, the nominative and the accusative.

REM. 2. (a.) The infinitive with the accusative sometimes stands unconnected, especially in exclamations and indignant interrogations, where *credibile est?* or *verumne est?* may be supplied; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam?* That I, vanquished, should desist from my undertaking? Virg. *Me miserum! te in tantis arumnas propter me incidisse!* Cic.—But *ut*, also, with the subjunctive, either with or without an interrogative particle, may be used to express a question with indignation; as, *Eine (scil. patri) ego ut adverser?* Liv. *Tu ut unquam te corrigas?* Cic. *Judicio ut arator decimumanum persequatur?* Id.; where *sterni potest?* may be supplied.

(b.) So, in the *oratio obliqua*, the words signifying *said, saying*, etc., are often omitted, or implied in a preceding verb or phrase; as, *Id facile effici posse, scil. dixit.* Nep. *Quem signum daturum fugientibus?* Curt.

**REM. 3.** The infinitive is sometimes to be supplied; and *esse* and *fuisse* with a predicate adjective, and also in the compound forms of the infinitive, both active and passive, are commonly omitted, especially after verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving; as, *Vos cognōvi fortes*. Sall. *Quem pulsū mēmōrāvi*. Tac.—So, also, with the infinitive perfect passive when depending on *volo*, *nolo*, *cipio*, and *oportet*; as, *Adōlescenti mōrem gestum oportuit*. Ter. *Quod jam pridem factum oportuit*. Cic.—Sometimes in a relative clause an infinitive is to be supplied from the finite verb of the main proposition; as, *Quos vōluit omnes interfecit*, scil. *interficere*. *Ne illam quidem cōsequuntur, quam pūtant, grātiam*; i. e. *quam se cōsecūtūros pūtant*. Cic.

## THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 271. The infinitive, without a subject-accusative, is used after verbs denoting ability, obligation, intention or endeavor; after verbs signifying to begin, continue, cease, abstain, dare, fear, hesitate, or be wont; and after the passive of verbs of saying, believing, reckoning, etc.

**NOTE 1.** To these classes belong *possum*, *queo*, *nēqueo*, *vāleo*, *dēbeo*; *cūro*, *cogito*, *decerno*, *sciduo*, *constituo*, *instituo*, *pāro*; *cōnor*, *nitor*, *tendo*, *contendo*, *tento*, *māturo*, *prōptero*, *aggredior*, *persēvōro*,;—*capi*, *incipio*, *pergo*, *dēstino*, *intermitto*, *parco*, *recuso*; *sōleo*, *assuesco*, *consuesco*, *insuesco*; *audeo*, *cēreo*, *mētuo*, *rēformido*, *tīmeo*, *horreo*, *dubito*;—*audior*, *crēdor*, *existimor*, *fēror*, *nēgor*, *nuntior*, *pērhibeor*, *pūtor*, *trādor*, *jūbeor*, *videor*, and *cogor*.

**NOTE 2.** When the preceding verbs are joined with *esse*, *hābēri*, *iudicāri*, *vidēri*, etc., the predicate noun or adjective is put in the nominative; as, *Sōlet tristis vidēri*; *aude sapiens esse*; *cēpit mihi molestus esse*; *dēbes esse diligens*; *pōtest liber esse*: and so also *mērētur*, scil. *didicil liber esse*.

**NOTE 3.** The poets, in imitation of the Greeks, use the infinitive after *fūge*, *aufer*, *cave*, *parce*, *memento*; *pāveo*, *rēfūgio*, *quero*, *urgeo*, *lāboro*, *amo*, *gaudeo*, *fāro*, *calleo*, *sūmo*, *mitto*, *rēmitto*, *pātor*, *jūro*, *conjūro*, *pugno*, *nātus*, and some other verbs, especially to denote a wish or purpose; as, *Introiiit vidēre*. Ter. *Non te frangere persēquor*. Hor. *Non pōpūlāre pēnates vēnimus*. Virg. In this construction, the poets are sometimes imitated by the later prose writers.

**REMARK 1.** Many of the verbs above enumerated, instead of the infinitive, may be followed by the subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, etc.; and with some of them this is the regular construction; as, *Sententiam ne dicēret, recūsāvit*. Cic.

**REM. 2.** The passives *dīcor*, *trādor*, *fēror*, *narror*, *rēpōrior*, *existimor*, *videor*, etc., may either be used personally, with the infinitive alone, or impersonally, followed by the accusative with the infinitive. Thus we may say, *Māter Pausānia eo tempōre vixisse dicitur*, or, *Dicitur eo tempōre mātrē Pausānia vixisse*. The mother of Pausanias is said to have been living....or, it is said that the mother of Pausanias was living.... Nep. The former construction is more common especially with *videor*, see § 272, R. 6; but the latter is frequent with *nuntiātur*, and very common with the compound tenses, *trādītum est*, *prōdītum est*, etc., and with the participle future passive; as, *crēdendū est*, *intelligendū est*, etc.; as, *Quōrum nēmīnem tālem fuisse crēdendū*, etc. Cic.

**REM. 3.** The infinitive without a subject is used after a verb, only when it denotes an action or state of the subject of that verb.

**REM. 4.** The verbs to wish or desire, *volo*, *nolo*, *mālo*; *cipio*, *opto*, *stūdeo*, have a twofold construction:—the infinitive without a subject-accusative is used after them, when the subject remains the same; and when followed by *esse*, *hābēri*, etc., the predicate-noun or adjective is in the nominative;—but the accusative with the infinitive is used when the subject is changed, or when a reflexive pronoun of the same person follows. We say, therefore, *volo erūdītus fieri*, and on the other hand, *volo te erūdītum fieri*, and *volo me erūdītum fieri*. So, *Volo is esse, quem tu me esse vōluisti*. Cic. *Cipio me esse clementem*, *cipio—*

me non dissolutum vidēri. Id.; or, omitting the pronoun, *cūpio esse clemens nec dissolutus vidēri*.—*Omnis homines qui esse student prorsus ceteris animabus, etc.* Sall.

NOTE 4. *Volo* is used with the present infinitive passive; as, *Me amari volo*, I wish to be beloved; *hoc velim intelligi*, I wish this to be understood; and also with the infinitive perfect passive to denote the eager desire that something should be instantly accomplished; as, *Legati quod erant appellati superbius, Obriuntur patres vestri—extinctum esse voluerunt.* Cic.; but it occurs most frequently with the omission of *esse*; as, *hoc factum volo*; *nunc illos commōntos velim*: so, *patriam extinctam cupit*.

NOTE 5. The nominative with the infinitive after verbs of saying, perceiving, etc. (§ 272), is rare even in poetry, and is an imitation of the Greek idiom, which requires the nominative with the infinitive when the same subject remains; as, *Phœsus ille, quem vidētis, hospites, ait fuisse narium ceterissimus.* Catull. *Quia retulit Ajax esse Jovis nepos*, instead of *se esse Jovis nepotem.* Ovid. *Sensit medios delapsus in hostes*, instead of *se delapsum esse.* Virg.

## THE INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 272. The infinitive with a subject-accusative follows verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like; as,

*Videbat, id non posse fieri*, He saw that that could not be done. Nep. *Sentit animus, se sua vi, non diuēdā, movēri.* Cic. *Audivi te venire.* *Me in ejus potestate dixi fore.* Id. *Affirmant militum jacere animos.* Liv. *Sæpe venit ad aures meas, te istud nimis crebro dicere.* Cic. *Eam pugnam ad Persiam pugnatam (esse), quidam auctores sunt.* Liv.

NOTE 1. This rule includes all such verbs and phrases as denote the exercise of the external senses and intellectual faculties, or the communication of thought to others; as, *audio, video, sentio, animadverto, cognosco, intelligo, percipio, disco, scio, nescio, censeo, spero, despero, cogito, judio, credo, arbitror, puto, opinor, dico, statuo, memini, recordor, oblitiscor, opinio est, spes est, etc.*;—*dico, trado, prædo, scribo, refertur, narro, nuntio, confirmo, nēgo, ostendo, indico, doceo, certitudinem facio, demonstro, perhibeo, præmitto, pollicor, spondeo, etc.*; but with most of these a different construction often occurs. See § 273.

NOTE 2. The propositions, whose subjects are thus put in the accusative and their verbs in the infinitive, are those which are directly dependent on the verbs of saying and perceiving. Respecting the clauses inserted in such dependent propositions, see § 266, 1.

NOTE 3. (a.) When a relative clause inserted in a proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, has the same verb as the proposition in which it is inserted, but such verb is not repeated, the noun which is the subject of the relative clause is also put by attraction in the accusative; as, *Te suspicor eisdem rebus, quibus me ipsum, commovēri.* If the verb is expressed we must say, *eisdem rebus commovēri, quibus (ego) ipse commoveor.* So, also, in inserted relative clauses where the verb, if expressed, would be in the subjunctive, (see § 266, 2.); as, (*Verres*) *aiēbat se tantidem æstimasse, quanti Sacerdotem, for quanti Sacerdos æstimasset.* Cic. *Confutetur se in eā parte fuisse quā te, quā virum omni laude dignum patrem tuum.* Id.

(b.) The same is the case with the particle *quam* after a comparative, see § 266, R. 5, (a.) But sometimes when *quam* connects a clause to a preceding proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, the same construction follows that precedes *quam*, even when the verb of the latter clause is expressed; as, *Nonne tibi affirmavi quidvis me potius peressurum, quam ex Italia ad bellum civile me exiturum; instead of quam exirem or quam ut exirem.* Cic.

(c.) In long speeches in the *oratio obliqua*, relative clauses, having a verb of their own which should properly be in the subjunctive, are put in the accusative with the infinitive, if the relative clause is not subordinate to the one with the infinitive, and which is governed by a verb of saying or perceiving,

but is rather coördinate with it; in which case the relative is equivalent to the demonstrative with *et*; as, *Nam illorum urbem ut prœpugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam jam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium; for et apud eam jam bis, etc.*—In Livy and Tacitus the same construction sometimes occurs even after conjunctions; as after *quum* in the sense of 'while,' see § 263, 5, R. 3; after *quamquam* on account of its absolute signification, see § 198, 4, and after *quia*.

NOTE 4. The personal pronouns, which, with the other moods, are expressed only when they are emphatic, must be always expressed in the accusative with the infinitive. The verbs 'to promise' and 'to hope' are in English usually joined with the infinitive present without a pronoun, but in Latin not only is the pronoun expressed, but the infinitive which follows is in the future; as, 'He promised to come,' is in Latin, *Prœmisit se venturum* (scil. *esse*, see § 270, R. 3). But the infinitive present sometimes occurs after these verbs; as, *Pollicentur obsides dare*, Cæs. B. G. 4, 21; and the pronoun is occasionally omitted, see § 239, R. 2 and 3.

REMARK 1. When ambiguity would arise from the subject and the object of the verb being both in the accusative, the passive infinitive is substituted for the active, by which means the subject is put in the ablative, or in the accusative with *per*; as, *Ne fando quidem auditum est, crocodilum violatum esse ab Ægyptio*; instead of *Ægyptium crocodilum violasse*. Cic.

REM. 2. After verbs of saying, thinking, etc., the conjunction *that* is omitted in translating from English into Latin, and the subject of the dependent clause is put in the accusative, and its verb in the infinitive.

REM. 3. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes rendered into English by a similar form; as, *Si vis me flere*, If you wish me to weep. Hor.; but the dependent clause is more frequently connected to the verb of saying, etc., by the conjunction *that*, and the infinitive translated by the indicative or potential mood; as, *Sentimus nivem esse albam*, We perceive that snow is white. Cic. Sometimes the dependent clause is annexed to the other without the conjunction; as, *Crédunt se negligi*, They think they are neglected. Ter.

REM. 4. A present infinitive corresponds to the imperfect indicative, when with an accusative it follows a preterite tense; as, *Dixit Cæsarem venire*, He said that Cæsar was coming. Cæs. In like manner the perfect infinitive with an accusative after a preterite tense corresponds to the pluperfect indicative; as, *Dixit Cæsarem venisse*, He said that Cæsar had come. See § 268, 2.

REM. 5. The present infinitive, after verbs of sense, is often equivalent to the present participle; as, *Surgere videt lunam*, He sees the moon (to rise) rising. Virg. *Arma rutilare vident*. Id. *Videbis collucere faces*. Id. *Nec Zephyros ausis spirare?* Do you not hear the zephyrs blowing? Id. *Sape hoc majores natu dicere audivi*. Cic. The two constructions are sometimes united; as, *Medium video discedere cælum, palantesque polo stellas*. Virg.

REM. 6. The subject-accusative after verbs of saying, showing, and believing; as, *disco, nêgo, trado, fêro, mêmoro, narro, nuntio, përhêbo, prôdo, scribo, dêmonstro, ostendo, arguo, crêdo, puto, existimo*, and the like, and also after *jubeo, vëto*, and *prôhibeo*, is regarded also as the accusative of the object after these verbs; and hence such verbs are used also in the passive, the accusative of the active voice becoming, as usual, the nominative of the passive. This is especially the case when their subject is indefinite; as, *Dicunt* (they or people say) *me vitrum prôbum esse*, or *dicor vit prôbum esse*. So, *Vêlâmur hoc facere*, instead of, *Nos hoc facere vëlant*. Instead also of the impersonal *videtur* (it appears) followed by the infinitive with its subject-accusative, it is common to say personally, *videor, vidêris*, etc., with the infinitive; as, *videor errasse*, it appears that I have erred.

## INFINITIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.

§ 273. When the particle *that*, in English, introduces a clause denoting a *purpose*, *object*, or *result*, it is a sign of the subjunctive in Latin, and is to be expressed by *ut*, etc.; but otherwise it is usually the sign of the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. §§ 262 and 272.

1. (a.) Verbs of *endeavoring* and *resolving* take after them the infinitive and more rarely the subjunctive, when the subject remains the same; but when the subject is changed, they take the subjunctive only.

NOTE 1. Such are *stătuo*, *constituo*, *décerno*, *tento*, *libéro*, *péro*, *méditor*, *cáro*, *mitor*, *contendo*, *consilium cápio*, *ánimum* or *in ánimum indúco*. Cf. § 271, N. 1. After *opéram do*, I exert myself, *id. hoc*, or *illud ágo*, I endeavor, *nihil antiquus hábo* or *déco quam*, nothing is of more importance to me, and *video* for *cáro*, the subjunctive is almost exclusively used.

(b.) Verbs of *effecting* are construed with *ut* or *ne* and the subjunctive.

NOTE 2. Such are *fácio*, *effício*, *perfício*, *evinco*, *pervinco*, *impetro*, *asséquor*, *constituo*, etc. But *fácere* 'to effect' occurs in Cic. Brut. 88, in connection with the accusative and infinitive passive.

NOTE 3. *Fácio* with *ut* is also used as a periphrasis for the indicative; as, *Invitus quidem fâci*, ut *L. Flâminium e sênâtu ejicérem*, for *invitus ejici*. Cic.—*Fac*, 'suppose' or 'granting,' and *effícere*, 'to prove,' take the accusative with the infinitive; but the passive *efficitur*, 'it follows,' takes also the subjunctive.—*Fâcere*, 'to introduce' or 'represent,' is joined with a present or perfect participle; as, *Lâlium et Scipiónem fâcimus admirantes*. Cic. In the passive the accusative also with the infinitive is found, there being no present participle; as, *Isocrâtem Plâto laudâri fâcit a Socrâte*. Cic.

2. Verbs signifying *to request*, *to demand*, *to admonish*, *to advise*, *to encourage*, *to command*, and the like, both when the subject remains the same and when it is changed, are followed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, and only rarely by the infinitive.

NOTE 4. (a.) Such are *rôgo*, *ôro*, *prôcor*, *péro*; *posco*, *postûlo*, *flagito*; *môneo*, *admôneo*, *commôneo*, *hortor*, *côhortor*, *exhortor*, *sûadeo*, *persuâdeo*, *instrûo*. (I instruct), *impello*, *côgo*, *mando*, *præscribo*, *édico*, *décerno*, *légem do*, *censeo*, *perpello*, *excûto*, *indico*, *impéro*, etc.; as, *Te non hortor solum, sed etiam ôro, ut ista mente in rempúblicam incumbas*. Cic.

(b.) In the poets and later prose writers the infinitive more frequently follows those verbs without any difference of meaning. The poets even use the infinitive to express a purpose; as, *Prôteus pécus égit allos visère montes*. Hor.

(c.) *Nuntio*, *scribo*, *mitto*, and even *dico*, are followed by the subjunctive, when they imply an injunction or intention that something should be done; as, *Hæc ut fâcias, scribo*. Cic.

(d.) *Jûbeo* and *vêto* commonly take the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive with or rarely without *ut*. Sometimes, with the infinitive, the person to whom the command is given is omitted, especially when it is either obvious from the nature of the command or indefinite; as, *Castra munire jûbet*, scil. *milites*. Cæs. *Lex recte fâcere jûbet*, scil. *hómines*. Cic. With the subjunctive the dative of the person sometimes follows *jûbeo*; as, *Britannico jussu, exurgéret*. Tac.—*Impéro* is sometimes followed by the accusative with the infinitive passive; and so also is *censeo*, I vote, or, I ordain. The latter is often construed with the participle in *dus* with *esse* expressed or understood; as, *Carthâginem dêlendâ censeo*.

(e.) *Moneo* and *admoneo*, 'I remind,' and *persuadeo*, 'I convince,' take the accusative with the infinitive.

3. (a.) In the *oratio obliqua*, the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, is exchanged for that of the subjunctive, to denote possibility, liberty, duty, etc.; as,

*Virginius animum Ap. Claudium legum expertem esse aiebat: respicerent tribūnāl hōmīnes castellum omnium scēlērū.* Liv.

(b.) On the contrary, when the subjunctive has been used after a verb of requesting, commanding, etc., the construction often passes into that of the accusative with the infinitive; the verb of saying being considered as implied in the verb of requesting, etc.; as, *Orābat ne se ut parricidam liberārem āversarentur: sibi vitam filiā suā cariorē fuisse, si....* Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 2, (b.)

4. (a.) Verbs which denote *willingness, unwillingness, permission, and necessity*, commonly take the infinitive, or the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive.

NOTE 5. Such are *volo, nolo, malo, opto, permitto, patior, sino, concedo, licet, prout-beo, oportet*, and *necesse est*. Cf. § 271, R. 4. *Volo ut* is used to express a strong emphasis. *Nolo* is not construed with the subjunctive.

(b.) An infinitive passive without a subject is sometimes used with *oportet*; as, *Non oportuit rēlctas, scil. esse ancillas.* Ter. *Ut ut erat, mansum oportuit, scil. esse.* Id. *Non putābāt de tāli viro suspiciōnibus oportere iudicāri.* Nep.

(c.) Some other verbs which regularly take the accusative with the infinitive after them, are occasionally followed by the subjunctive.

5. *Quod*, 'that,' commonly with the indicative, introduces a substantive clause containing the explanation or ground of the predicate or of some other word in the principal clause.

REMARK. The subjunctive follows *quod* in those cases only in which the clause expresses the view or sentiment of some other person than the writer or speaker. Cf. § 266, 3.

*Quod* is used:—

(1.) After such expressions as *bene, male, prudenter facio; bene, male fit; evenit, accidit*, and the like; *prætereo, mitto*; and generally *adde, accedit*, etc.; as, *Bene facis, quod me adjuvas.*

(2.) To introduce the explanation of a noun, pronoun, or pronominal adverb in the principal clause; as, *Magnum beneficium est naturæ, quod necesse est mori.*

(3.) After verbs signifying an affection of the mind, and the outward expression of such feeling; and also after verbs of praising, censuring, accusing, and thanking.

NOTE 6. Such are *gaudeo, delector, gratum, or iacundum est mihi, angor, doleo, ægre, moleste, or graviter fero, succenseo, pœnitet, miror, admirror, gloriator, gratulor, gratias ago, queror, indignor*, and others of similar meaning; as, *Scipio sæpe quærebatur, quod emensus in rebus hōmīnes diligentiores essent, ut, etc.* Cic. *Gaudeo quod te interpellavi.* Id. *Quod speratis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formas hōmīnū habetis, indignantur.* Liv. *Cato mirari se aiebat, quod non rideret hāruspez, hāruspicem quum videret.* Cic.

NOTE 7. After those verbs which express the feeling of joy, grief, etc.; as, *gaudeo, doleo, miror*, the accusative with the infinitive is more commonly found, but those which denote the outward expression of such feeling are more commonly construed with *quod*; but sometimes this distinction is reversed. *Gratulator* is commonly joined with *quod*.

**NOTE 8.** A purely objective proposition is expressed by *quod* only when it depends upon *addo*, (generally in the imperative *adde*), or upon *fácio* joined with an adverb; as, *Addo quod púbes tibi crescit omnes*. Hor. *Addo huc quod mércem sine fúciis gestat*. Id. *Fécit hūmāniter Licínus, quod ad me vespéri vénit*. Cic. In all other cases the infinitive is employed in purely objective propositions.

6. By the infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, a proposition is expressed as a *thought*, so that it resembles an abstract noun; by *quod*, with the indicative or the subjunctive, it is represented simply as a *fact*. To the latter is frequently joined *hoc, id, illud, istud, or huc*, etc.; as, *Illud quodque nobis accédit incommódum*, quod *M. Jūnius abest*. Cic. *Huc accēdebat*, quod, etc. Sall. *Quod* generally refers to past time, and hence it is preferable to say, *Grátissimum mihi est*, quod *ad me tua manu scripsisti*; but with the infinitive, *Grátissimum mihi est te bene valére*.

(a.) *Quod*, with the indicative, in the sense of *as to*, or *with regard to*, is used at the beginning of a sentence, especially in letters, in repeating an expression of a person for the purpose of answering it; as, *Quod autem me Agamemnonem amulári putas, falléris*. Nep. *Quod scribis te velle scire, qui sit reipúblicæ státus: summa dissensio est*. Cic. Sentences thus introduced by *quod* are in no grammatical connection with the verb that follows them. See § 206, (14.)

(b.) *Quod* is used in explanatory or periphrastic propositions which refer to a preceding demonstrative pronoun, as *hoc, id*, etc., unless such pronoun be added pleonastically, in the nominative or accusative, to verbs governing the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Mihi quidem videntur homines hac re maxime bellis præstare*, quod *loqui possunt*. Cic.

**NOTE 9.** The construction of the infinitive resembles, in the following particulars, that of a noun in the singular number and neuter gender:—

(a.) Like a noun, it may have an adjective or pronoun agreeing with it; as, *Tótum hoc philosophári displicet*. Cic. *Quum vivére ipsum turpe sit nobis*. Id. *Me hoc ipsum nihil ágere delectat*. Id. *Meum intelligére nullá pecuniá vendo*. Petr. See § 205, R. 8.

(b.) It may be followed by a limiting genitive; as, *Cūjus non dimicāre fui vincēre*. Val. Max.

(c.) It may be either the subject or object of a verb. See §§ 209, R. 3, (5), and 229, R. 6. It may also be used after neuter verbs, like an accusative, depending on a preposition understood; as, *Te accēpisse meas litéras gaudeo*. Ter. See §§ 232, (2), and 273, 6.

(d.) It is also used like a predicate-nominative; as, *Vidére est perspicére aliquid*. Cic. See § 210.

(e.) It may, like a genitive, limit the signification of an adjective or noun. See § 270, R. 1.

(f.) It may, like an accusative, depend on a preposition; as, *Aristo et Pyrrho inter optime valére et gravissime sēgrōtāre, nihil prorsus dicēbant intēresse*. Cic. *Quod crimen dicis præter amasse meum?* Ovid. *Inveniet nil sibi légatum, præter plōrāre*. Hor.

(g.) It is used also like an ablative; as, *Audito rēgem in Siciliā tendēre*. Sall.

(h.) Sometimes, also, especially in the poets, it denotes a purpose, like a participle in *duo*, (see § 274, R. 7.); as, *Loricam donat habēre viro*. Virg.; or like a dative of the end, (see § 227.)

## PARTICIPLES.

§ 274. 1. Participles are followed by the same cases and constructions as their verbs; as,

*Quidam*, poeta nōmīnātus. A certain one, called a poet. Cic. *Cātūlōrū oblīta leona*. The lioness forgetful of her whelps. Virg. *Fāventes rēbus Carthāgīniensium*. Favoring the interests of the Carthaginians. Liv. *Tendens ad sidēra palmas*. Virg. *Accidit rei capitālis*. Cic. *Primā dicte mihi summā dicende Cāmēnā*. Hor. *Omnia doctus*. Stat. *Cāsus abies visāra mārinos*. Id. *Cūrītārī ardōre montes*. Ovid. *Parcendum est tēnēris*. Juv. *Ulcendum est aetāte*. Ovid. *L. Brūtus arcens rēditu tyrannum, in praelio concidit*. Cic.

2. The present, perfect, and future active participles, denote respectively an action which is present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verb with which they are connected; as,

*Simul hoc dicens attollit se*. Virg. *Tum ad Thrāseam in hortis āgentem missus est*. Tac. *Turnum fugientem hac terra vidēbit*? Virg. *Qui missus ab Argis Rākā considērat urbē*. Id. *Lāmia mūndre aditātis perfunctus, pētit prātāram*. Cic. *Jussus cum fide pēnas luam*. Hor. *Jūvenis mēdicos mōrtūrus in hostes irrūit*. Virg. *Pēritūrus injicit sese in agmen*. Id. *Illa tibi ventūra bello expēdiēt*. Id.

NOTE. The participle expresses the action or state of the verb, and also marks its complete or incomplete state or condition. Cf. § 144, 1-3. Except, however, in deponent verbs, the Latin language has no active participle denoting a completed action, equivalent to the English 'having written,' nor any passive participle denoting a state of suffering still going on, equivalent to the English present participle 'being loved.'

REMARK 1. The present participle, particularly that of the verb *eo*, sometimes denotes that which is about to be done; as, *Interclāsit hiems, et terruit Austēr euntes*, .... as they were on the point of going. Virg. *Nec nos via fallit euntes*. Id.

REM. 2. (a.) The present participle, also, sometimes denotes a purpose; as, *Ibant, orātes vēniām*, .... to sue for favor.... Virg. *Eurypylum scitāntem orācūla Phōibē mittimus*. Id. (b.) It is also used to express a state or condition, where, in English, a substantive is employed with a preposition; as, *ignōrans*, from ignorance; *mētuen*s, from fear; *consulātum pētens*, in his suit for the consulship; *omne mūlum nascens facile opprimitur*,—in its origin.

REM. 3. (a.) The perfect participle passive, especially in the poets, often denotes the result of a past action, and thus supplies the place of a present participle passive; as, *Nōtus evolat piceā tectus caligine*.... covered with pitchy darkness. Ovid. Cf. Virg. *Æn.* 1, 480; 2, 277; 4, 72, 589; 5, 113, 708; 6, 335; Georg. 1, 204. It is often to be translated by a present active participle; as, *Mānus pectus percussa dēcorū, flāventesque abscissa cōmas*, i. e. *percātiens, abscindens*. Virg. *Tunssē pectōra palmis*. Id. So, also, *solitus, ausus, fissus*, and the perfect participles of deponent verbs; as, *Longum cantu solāta libōrem*. Id. *Vox auditur fractos sōnitus imitāta tūbārū*. Id. *Divitiācus Cæsārem complexus, obsecrāre caput*. Cæs. *Concrētos sanguine crines gērens*. Virg. *Tonsis in valēbus*, i. e. *quæ tondentur*. Id.

(b.) The perfect participle of a preceding verb is often used in a succeeding clause, to express the completion of an action; as, *Exercitum fundit fugatque, fissum persequitur*. Liv. This idiom frequently occurs in Ovid.

REM. 4. *Hābeo*, with perfect participles denoting knowledge and determination; as, *cognitum, perspectum, perceptum, comprehensum, explorātum, statūtum, constitūtum, deliberātum, persuasum mihi hābeo*, etc., forms a periphrasis, like the passive verb in English, and equivalent to *cognovi, persepezi, percēpi*, etc., instead of the verb of the participle; as, *Clōdiū ānimū perspectum* or *cognitum hābeo*; for *persepezi*, etc., I perceive, know. *Persuasum mihi hābeo* and *persuāissimū hābeo* are used only in the neuter gender and with an accusative with the infinitive in the sense of *mihi persuāsi* or *persuāsum mihi est*. When *hābeo* with any other participle than those above indicated is used, it expresses more than the ordinary perfect active; as, *Quod me hortāris ut absolvam*; *hābeo absolūtā suāve ēpos ad Cæsārem*; i. e. I have it ready. Cic. *Do, reddo, cūro*,



*steno, possideo, and missum facio*, are sometimes so construed with participles; as, *Missam iram faciet, for mittet*. Ter. *Hostes victos dare, for vincere*. Sall.

REM. 5. (a.) The passive participles may supply the place of a verbal noun in *to* or *us*, the perfect being employed to represent an action as completed, and the future when it is conceived as still incomplete; as, *Ante Rōmam conditam*, Before the building of Rome. Cic. *Consilia urbis dēlenda*, Plans for the destruction of the city. Id. See § 275, II. With the limitations about to be made in regard to the nominative, this construction is used in all the cases, and even when they are governed by the prepositions, *ad, ante, ob, post, propter; ab and ex*; as, *Hæc libræ rēcitātæ magnum luctum fecerunt*, The reading of this letter. Liv. *Tarentum captum*, The taking of Tarentum. *Ob receptum Hannibalem*, On account of the reception of Hannibal. *Sibi quisque cæsi regis expēibat decus*, The glory of killing, or, of having killed the king. *Propter Africam dōmitam*. Eutrop. *Ante Epāmnōndam nātum*. Nep. *Potē Christum nātum*. *Ab conditā urbe ad liberatam*. Liv. The oblique cases only of participles in *du* are used in this manner as the nominative denotes necessity, (see Rem. 8,) and even the perfect participle is not thus used in the nominative by Cicero.

(b.) The neuter of the perfect passive participle without a noun is used by Livy, as the subject of a proposition; as, *Tentatum per dictatorem, ut ambo patricii consules crearentur, rem ad interregnum perduxit*: i. e. the attempt, or the fact of the attempt being made by the dictator. Compare a similar use of this participle in the ablative, § 257, R. 9, (1.) (c.)

(c.) The English 'without' with a verbal substantive; as, 'without writing, without having waited,' etc., is expressed in Latin by means of a negative noun, adjective or particle connected with a participle; as, *Cæsar exercitum numquam per insidiōsa itinera duxit, nisi perspiculatus locorum situs*, without having examined the localities. This form occurs often with the ablative absolute; as, *Athenienses non expectato auxilio adversus ingentem Persarum exercitum in prolium egrēdiuntur*, without waiting for assistance. So, *nullā præstitūtā die*, Without fixing any time. Cic. *Miserum est nihil perficientem angī*. Id.

REM. 6. (a.) The participle in *rus*, especially with verbs of motion, often denotes intention or purpose; as, *Ad Jovem Ammonem pergīt consulturus de origine suā*, He goes to Jupiter Ammon, to consult respecting his origin. Just.

(b.) It is also used where in English a clause connected by *since, when, although, etc.*, is employed; as, *Plura locuturos abire nos jussit*, When or although we intended to say more. *Herculem Germani, ituri in prolium cœnunt*. Tac. Hence it is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, to express the inference from a hypothetical proposition; as, *Egrēditur castris Rōmānus, vallum invāsurus, nī cōpia pugnae fieret*. And with the repetition of the preceding verb; as, *Dedit mihi quantum maxime potuit, daturus amplius, si potuisset, i. e. ac dedisset amplius*. Plin. Ep.

REM. 7. (a.) The participle in *du*, also, denotes a purpose passively, when joined with verbs signifying to *give, to deliver, to agree for, to have, to receive, to undertake, etc.* Such are *do, trādo, tribuo, attribuo, mando, mitto, permitto, concedo, redimo, condūco, ūco, habeo, accipio, suscipio, relinqvo, curo, depoco, rogo*; as, *Testamentum tibi tradit legendum*, He delivers his will to you to read. Hor. *Attribuit nos trucidandos Cæthego*. Cic. *Quod ūtendum accēperis, reddito*. Id. *Cōnon muros dirutos a Lysandro reficiendos curavit*,—ordered them to be restored. Nep.

(b.) But the same meaning may be expressed actively by means of *ad* and the gerund; as, *Cæsar oppidum ad diripiendum militibus concessit*.—The poets sometimes use the infinitive active for the same purpose; as, *Tristitiam et mētus trādam prōtervis in mare Caspium portāre ventis*. Hor. In prose such use of the infinitive is of exceedingly rare occurrence; as, *Bibere dare*. Cic.

REM. 8. (a.) The participle in *dus*, when agreeing with the subject of a sentence, has the signification of *necessity* or *propriety*; sometimes, though rarely, except in later writers, that of *possibility*; as,

*Is vērērandus a nobis et cōlendus est*, He should be worshipped and honored by us. Cic. *Dēlenda est Carthāgo*, Carthage must be destroyed. Cato. *Hæc spēranda fuērunt*. Virg. So with *est* used impersonally; as, *Utrum pāce nobis an bello esset titendum*. Cic.

(b.) Sometimes, also, when not agreeing with the subject of a sentence, it has this signification; as, *Facta narrābas dissimulanda tibi*, You were relating facts which you should have concealed. Ovid. *A. L. Brūto principe hujus maxime conservandi gēneris et nōminis*. Cic.

REM. 9. The participle in *dus*, in its oblique cases, supplies the place of a present participle of the passive voice, to denote a continued or incomplete action; as, *Occupātus sum in lītēris scribēdis*, in writing letters; literally, in letters which are being written. See § 275, II.—So, also, in the poets both in the nominative and oblique cases; as, *Triginta magnos volvendis mensibus orbes impērio explebit*. Virg. *Volvenda dies*. Id. Cf. *Volventibus annis*. Id.

REM. 10. After participles in *dus*, the person by whom a thing must be done, is put in the dative, but in a few passages even of Cicero it is found in the ablative with *ab*. See § 225, III.

REM. 11. The neuter of the participle in *dus*, joined with a tense of *esse* in the periphrastic conjugation (see § 184, 3,) retains the signification of necessity; as, *Audendum est*. We must venture. In early writers and sometimes also in the poets, an accusative of the object is joined with this neuter, if the verb is transitive; as, *Nunc pācem ōrandum, nunc—arma repōnendum, et bellum exētiāle cōvendum*. Sil. But in classical Latin such accusative is generally changed to the nominative, and the participle is made to agree with it in gender and number. Thus, instead of *virtutem laudandum est*, we usually find *virtus laudanda est*. The accusative in this connection is used by Cicero in only two passages. *Utendum est* with the ablative occurs more than once in Cicero; as, *Quem suo cuique jādicio sit utendum*.

REM. 12. In classical prose the participle in *dus* never has the signification of *possibility*, except when joined with *vix*; as, *Vix optandum nobis videbātur*. Cic. *Vix erat credendum*, i. e. *vix credi pōtērat*. Later writers use it in this sense with negative particles, and at a later period it was used with still more frequency in the sense of possibility as well as in that of necessity.

3. (a.) A participle is often employed, instead of a verb, in a conditional, explanatory, adversative, relative, or other dependent clause; as,

*Cūrio, ad fōcūm sēdenti* (as he was sitting) *magnum auri pondus Samnites attulerunt*. Cic. *Tridui viam progressi, rursus reverterunt*; for, *quum progressi essent*. Cæs. *Dionysius tyrannus, Syracūsīs expulsus, Corinthis pueros dōcēbat*. Cic. *Dionysius, cultros metuens tonsorios, candenti carbōne sibi adurēbat capillum*. Id. *Rius interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum cupientis tēnere nēqueamus*. Id. *Cicōnis ābitūre congrēgantur in loco certo*. Plin.

NOTE 1. If the participle refers to a noun not contained in the leading proposition, it is put with that noun in the ablative absolute. See § 257, R. 3.

NOTE 2. (a.) The English clauses most frequently expressed in Latin by means of participles are such as are connected by relatives or by *as*, *when*, *after*, *although*, *since*, *because*, etc.; as, *Nemo observat lānam nisi laborantem*. Sen. *Ut dēbilis, sic animus, se non videns, alia cernit*,—though not perceiving itself. Cic. *Servilius Ahātā Spūrium Mālium, regnum appetentem, intēremit*,—because he was aspiring to the sovereignty. Cic.—(b.) When a participle is connected with a relative or interrogative it can only be translated by a circumlocution; as, *Non sunt ea bona dicenda, quibus abundantem nec esse miserum*,—which one may possess in abundance, and still be very miserable. Cic. *Sēdātus absurdum esse dicebat, ignōrāre rēgem, quid spērans aut pētens vērērit*,—with what hope or request he had come. Liv.

(b.) When two verbs are in English connected by *and*, and the actions denoted by them are regarded as simultaneous, one of them may be expressed in Latin by the present participle; as, He sits and holds his lute, *Ille (Arion) sedens citharā tēnet*. Ovid. *Simul hoc dicens attollit in ægrum se fēmur*. Virg. i. e. *hoc dicit et attollit*. But if one of the actions precede the other, the perfect participle must be used; as, Cæsar attacked and defeated the enemy, *Cæsar hostes aggressus fūgit*. Submersas obrus puppes, i. e. *Submerge et obrue*. Virg.—When the English clause would be connected by *although*, the participle is often followed by *tamen*. Later writers in such case join the particles *quamquam*, *quomodo*, *etiam* and *vel* with the participle itself; as, *Cæsarem milites, quomodo recūsantem ultro in Africam sunt secuti*. Suet.; and these are sometimes retained in the ablative absolute.—It is only in late Latin that participles are sometimes used in describing persons as possessing certain attributes, e. g. *adstantes*, *audientes*, for *ii qui adstant*, *audiunt*, i. e. the bystanders, hearers.

(c.) A participle is used with verbs signifying to *represent* and *perceive*, especially to *see* and *hear*, when the object is described or perceived in a particular state; as, *Apelles pinxit Alexandrum Magnum fulmen tēnentem*. Plin. In English the infinitive is often joined with verbs of seeing and hearing; as, *Audivi te cānētem*, I heard you sing. *Audivi te cānēre*, would be, I heard that you sung. *Vidēmus Pōlyphēnum vastā se mōle mōventem*. Virg.

NOTE 3. In many cases, for want of a perfect participle active, and a present participle passive, this construction cannot be used. Thus, *quum amāvisset* cannot be exchanged for a participle corresponding with the English *having loved*. As the perfect participles of deponent verbs, however, have an active signification, they admit of the participial construction. The want of a perfect active participle may also be supplied by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute. See § 267, R. 5.

## GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

§ 275. I. Gerunds are governed like nouns, and are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Mētus pārendi sibi*, Fear of obeying him. Sall. *Parcendo victis*, By sparing the vanquished. Liv. *Effrōr studio patres vestros vidēdā*, I am transported with a desire of seeing your fathers. Cic. *Pētēdi consulātum grātiā*. Sall. *Vēnit ad rēctpiendum pecūnias*. Varr.

REMARK 1. The gerund is the same in form as the oblique cases of the neuter singular of participles in *us*, but it has the meaning of the active voice. It is sometimes translated by the present participle with a preposition, and sometimes by a present infinitive active; as, *Consilium Lacedæmonem occūpandi*, A design of occupying, or to occupy, Lacedæmon. Liv.

REM. 2. The gerund is sometimes, though rarely, used in a passive sense; as, *Spes restituendi nulla erat*,—of being restored. Nep. *Athēnas erūdiendi grātiā* missus,—for the purpose of being instructed. Just. *Ante dōmandum*. Virg. *Ades ad impērandum*. Cic.

REM. 3. The gerund is in its nature a verbal noun, having only the genitive, dative, ablative, and, after a preposition, the accusative. In its signification it corresponds with the English present participle when used as a verbal noun. Hence, in the oblique cases, it supplies the place of a declinable present infinitive active; but in the accusative there is this difference between the infinitive used as an accusative and the gerund, that the infinitive has simply the power of an abstract noun, whereas the gerund expresses a real action; as, *Mulum intēret inter dāre et accipere*. Sen. *Non solum ad discendum prōpens sumus, sed etiam ad docendum*. Cic.

II. When the *object* of an active verb is to be expressed, the participle in *dus* is commonly used in preference to the gerund; the object taking the case in which the gerund, if used, would have been put, and the participle agreeing with it.

Thus, to express 'the design of writing a letter,' which, with the aid of the gerund, would be represented in Latin by *Consilium scribendi epistolam*, the participle in *dus* is commonly substituted for the gerund: and since, in this example, the gerund, (*scribendi*) is in the genitive, the rule requires that, in substituting the participle for the gerund, the object of the gerund (*epistolam*) should also be put in the genitive, and that the participle (*scribendus*) should agree with it in gender, number, and case. Hence with the participle the expression is, *Consilium scribendæ epistolæ*. Between the two forms of construction there is no difference of signification. So, *Consilia urbis delendæ* (Cic.), for *urbem delendi*, Plans for destroying the city. *Répārāndārum classium causâ* (Suet.), for *repārāndi classes*. *Perpetiendō lābōri idōneus*. Colum. Ad dēfēndēdām Rōmā ab oppugnandâ Cāpūā dūces Rōmānos abstrāhēre. Liv.

REMARK 1. The same construction is used with the future passive participles of *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, and rarely of *mēdeor*, as these verbs were originally followed by the accusative; as, *Ætas ad hæc ütendâ idōnea*. Ter. *Iustitia fruendæ causâ*. Cic. *In munere fungendo*. Id. *Hostes in spem potiūndōrum castrōrum vēnerant*. Cæs. *Aquæ salubritate mēdendisq; corpōribus nobīles*. Vell.

REM. 2. When a participle is thus used for a gerund, it is called a *gerundive*, and is usually translated like a gerund. The gerundive cannot be substituted for the gerund, where ambiguity would arise from the gender not being distinguishable. It should therefore not be used when the object of the gerund is a neuter pronoun or adjective; as, *Aliquid faciendî ratiō* (Cic.), not *dicijus*. *Artem et vērā et falsā dījudicandî* (Id.), not *vērōrum dījudicandōrum*: because it would not be known whether *dicijus* and *vērōrum* were masculine or neuter. It is to be remarked, also, that the change of the gerund into the gerundive is less frequent in some writers than in others.

III. Examples of the construction of gerunds, in each of their cases, have been already given, among other nouns, under the heads *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Ab-lative*. The following remarks specify in what connections they are used: and when it is said that the gerundive is governed in any of the cases like the gerund, it will of course be understood of the noun which is limited by a gerundive.

REMARK 1. The genitive of gerunds and gerundives may follow either nouns or relative adjectives; as,

*Amor habēndi*. Cic. *Patriam spes vidēdi*. Virg. *Nam habet nātūra, ut aliārū omnium rērum, sic vivēdi mōdum*. Cic. *Barbāra consuetūdo hōminū immōlandōrum*. Id. *Postremo Cātīlina dissimulandi causâ aut sui expurgandi, in statum vēnit*. Sall. *Inta sunt consilia urbis delendæ, ciurū trucidandōrum, nōminis Rōmāni exstinguēdi*. Id. *Venandi studiō*. Cic. *Certus eundē*. Virg. *Invenietis navigandi*. Cæs. *Pēritus civitātis regēdæ*. Nep.

(1.) The nouns after which these genitives most frequently occur are *amor*, *ars*, *causa*, *consilium*, *consuetudo*, *copia*, *cupido*, *desiderium*, *difficultas*, *finis*, *facultas*, *forma*, *gratia*, *illicebra*, *libido*, *locus*, *licentia*, *mōdus*, *materia*, *mos*, *occasio*, *otium*, *pōtestas*, *ratiō*, *spatium*, *spes*, *studium*, *tempus*, *usus*, *venia*, *vis*, *vōluntas*.

NOTE 1. With these and other substantives the infinitive also may be used, when with a tense of *sum* they form a periphrasis for a verb which is followed by the infinitive, or supply the place of an adjective of which the infinitive is the subject; as, *Quibus omnia hōnesta atq; inhōnesta vendēre mos erat*, With whom it was a custom, or, who were accustomed. Sall. *Tempus est ābire*, It is time, i. e. *tempestivum est*, it is proper to go.

(2.) The relative adjectives, which most frequently take after them these gerundives, are such as denote *desire, knowledge, remembrance*, and their contraries; as, *dictus, cupidus, studiosus, peritus, imperitus, insuetus, certus, conscius, ignarus, rudis*, etc. See § 218, R. 1, (8.)

NOTE 2. With the relative adjectives the infinitive is also joined poetically.

(3.) Instead of an accusative after the gerund, or a genitive plural with a gerundive, a noun or pronoun in the genitive plural is sometimes joined with the gerund; as, *Exemplorum eligendi potestas*, instead of *exempla eligendi*; or, *exemplorum eligendorum*. Cic. *Earum rerum infiltandi ratio*. Id. *Fucillas agrorum condonandi*. Cic. *Nominandi istorum erit copia*. Plaut.

(4.) The pronoun *tui* and also the plurals *vestri* and *sui*, even when feminine, are joined with the masculine or neuter form of the gerundive in *di*; as, *Quoniam tui videndi est copia*. Plaut. *Non vereor, ne quis hoc me vestri adhortandi causa magnifice loqui existimet*. Liv. *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causa*.—With the demonstrative pronouns, *ejus, hujus, illius*, the participle usually agrees, but in two passages of Terence *ejus*, though referring to a woman, has the participle in *di*, not in *da*; as, *Ego ejus videndi cupidus recta consequor*. Ter. *Tui* in the first example and *ejus* in the last are feminine.

(5.) By a Greek idiom the gerund and gerundive, after the verb *sum*, are sometimes found in the genitive denoting a *tendency or purpose*, with no noun or adjective on which they can depend; as, *Régium imperium initio conservandae libertatis fuerat*. Sall. Sometimes *esse* in some form is to be supplied; as, *Quae postquam gloriosa modo, neque belli patrandi cognovit*, scil. *esse*. Id. *Causa or gratia* may sometimes be supplied. In some other cases, also, the word on which the gerund in *di* depends is not expressed, and the gerund seems to be used instead of the infinitive; as, *Maneat provincialibus potentiam suam tam modo ostentandi*, scil. *fucillas*. Tac. *Quum haberem in animo navigandi*, scil. *propositum*. Cic.

REM. 2. The dative of gerunds and gerundives is used after adjectives which govern a dative (§ 222), especially after those which signify *usefulness or fitness*; and also after certain verbs and phrases, to denote a *purpose*; as,

*Charta empiritica est inutilis scribendo*. Plin. *Capeessendae reipublicae habilis*. Tac. *Ut nec triumviri accipiundo, nec scribae referendo sufficerent*. Liv. *Locus oppido condendo capere*. Id. *Non fuit consilium agrum colendo aut venando intentum aetatem agere*. Sall. *Tiberius quasi firmandae valetudini in Campaniam concessit*. Tac. *Quum solvendo aere alieno reipublica non esset*. Liv. *Quum solvendo civitates non essent*,—were insolvent. Cic.

(1.) The verbs and phrases upon which this dative most frequently depends are, *studere, intentum esse, tempus impendere, tempus consumere* or *insumere, optam dare, sufficere, satis esse, deesse, esse*, signifying to *serve for, to be adequate to*, and, in later writers, on verbs of motion.—The dative of the gerund after *sum* is usually supposed to depend on *idoneus* understood; but see § 237, R. 3.

(2.) The dative of the gerundive, denoting a purpose, is also used after names of office; as, *Decemviri legibus scribendis*, i. e. the ten commissioners for drawing up a code of laws. Liv. So, *Comitia creandis decemviris*. Id. *Triumvros agro dando creat*. Id.

(3.) A purpose is more commonly expressed by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund, or by a clause with *ut*, than by the dative; as, *Pecus ad vescendum hominibus apta*. Cic.

REM. 3. The accusative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *ad, to, or inter*, during or amid, and sometimes *ante, circa, or ob*; as,

*Ad poenitendum prœparat, qui cito iudicat.* Pub. Syr. *Inter bibendum,* While drinking. Just. *Ad vitandos futūsus lābōres.* Quint. *Ad castra faciēda.* Cic. *Ob obsecrēdum.* Id.

NOTE. The construction of the gerundive instead of the gerund almost invariably occurs here when the object of the gerund is to be expressed.

REM. 4. The ablative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *a*, (*ab*), *de*, *e*, (*ex*), or *in*; or it is used without a preposition, as the ablative of cause, manner, or means; as,

*Aristōtēlem non deterruit a scribendo.* Cic. *Ex assentando.* Ter. *Non video a defendendis hōminibus discēdere.* Cic. *Crescit eundo.* Virg. *Rem quarunt mercātūris faciēdis.* Cic. *Oratōnem Lātīnam lēgendā nostris effīcies plēniorem.* Id.

NOTE 1. This ablative also occurs, though rarely, after *pro* and *cum*; as, *Pro cupulando.* Plaut. *Cum loquendo.* Quint.

NOTE 2. Generally with the ablative of the means, and always with the ablative after a preposition, the gerund, when its object is to be expressed, is changed to the gerundive. In a few passages the ablative of the gerundive is differently construed; as, *Nullum officium referendā grātiā magis necessarium est,* instead of *relatiōne grātiā*. § 256. Cic. *Nec jam possidendis publicis agris contentos esse.* § 244. Liv. *Is finis fuit ulciscendā Germanici morte*,—in avenging the death of Germanicus. Tac.; where the ablative seems to imply time. § 252.

## SUPINES.

§ 276. Supines, like gerunds, are verbal nouns, having no other cases except the accusative and ablative singular. In certain connections they supply the place of the present infinitive; the supine in *um* having an active and the supine in *a* a passive signification. As in the case of gerunds, we are to regard their construction both as verbs and as nouns. As verbs we are to notice their government, as nouns, their dependence.

I. Supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Non Grāis servitum mātribus ibo,* I shall not go to serve Grecian matrons. Virg. *Te id admōnitum vēnio.* Plaut.

II. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and serve to denote the purpose of the motion; as,

*Cūbitum discessimus.* Cic. *Ire dējectum mōnūmenta rēgis.* Hor. *Lēgati vēnērunt questum injūrias, et res repēitum.* Liv. *Quum spectātum lūdos iret.* Nep. So after participles; as, *Patriam dēfensum revocātus.* Nep. *Spectātum admissi.* Hor.

NOTE. The construction of the supine in *um*, considered as a noun, is analogous to that of names of places in answer to the question 'whither?' (§ 237), the notion of purpose arising from its verbal character.

REMARK 1. Supines in *um* sometimes follow verbs which do not express motion; as, *Do filiā nuptum.* Ter. *Vos ultum injūrias hortor.* Sall.

REM. 2. The supine in *um* with *eo* literally signifies 'I go to do a thing,' and hence 'I intend,' or, 'am going to.' Instances of this use are found in Plautus and Terence and in the prose writers later than Cicero; as, *Mea Glycērium, quid agis? cur te is perditum?* Why are you going to destroy yourself? Plaut. *Bonōrum prēmia ēreptum eunt.* Sall. With *eo* the supine in *um* often forms a periphrasis equivalent to the same mood and tense of the verb from which the

supine is formed; as, *Ne bonos omnes perditum eant* (Sall.), for *perdant*. *Ereptum eunt* (Id.), for *eripiunt*. *Ultum iuit* (Tac.), for *ultus est*. *Ultum ire injurias festinat*, i. e. *ulcisci*. Sall.

REM. 3. The supine in *um* most frequently occurs with the infinitive *iri*, with which it forms the future infinitive passive; as, *Brutum visum iri a me puto*. Cic. In this construction the accusative properly depends upon the supine, and *iri* is used impersonally; 'I suppose that I am going to see Brutus.' § 184, 2, (a.) Its notion of futurity is derived from the proper signification of the active voice, as *perditum iri*, to go to destroy, the idea of intending passing easily into that of futurity.

REM. 4. But to express a purpose Latin writers in general prefer using a gerund or gerundive in the accusative with *ad* or in the genitive with *causæ* or *gratiæ*, a subjunctive clause with *ut* or *qui*, a present or future active participle, and sometimes poetically an infinitive. See § 275, R. 1, 2: §§ 262, 264, 274, and 271.

III. The supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful, agreeable, easy* or *difficult, worthy* or *unworthy, honorable* or *base*, and a few others; as,

*Mirabile dictu!* Wonderful to tell, or to be told! Virg. *Jucundum cognitu atque auditu*. Pleasant to be known and heard. Cic. *Res factu facilis*. A thing easy to be done. Ter. *Facilia inventu*. Gell. *Incredibile memoratu*. Sall. *Turpia dictu*. Cic. *Optimum factu*. Id.

NOTE. The principal supines in *u* in common use are *auditu*, *cognitu*, *dictu*, *factu*, *inventu*, *memoratu* and *natu*, which occurs in the expressions, *grandis, major, minor, maximus*, and *minimus natu*. In *magno natu*, of an advanced age, and *maxime natu filius*, the eldest son, *natu* is the ablative of a verbal substantive, since neither gerunds nor supines are joined with adjectives.

REMARK 1. The principal adjectives, after which the supine in *u* occurs, are *affabilis, ardens, asper, bonus, deformis, dignus, indignus, dulcis, durus, facilis, difficilis, factus, gratus, honestus, horrendus, incredibilis, jucundus, injucundus, magnus, memorabilis, mollis, preclarus, pulcher, rarus, turpis*, and *utilis*.

REM. 2. The supine in *u* is used also after the nouns *fas, nefas*, and *opus*; as, *Hoc fas est dictu*. Cic. *Nefas dictu*. Ovid. *Dictu opus est*. Ter.—In the following examples it follows a verb: *Pudet dictu*. Tac. Agr. 32. *Dictu fastidientia sunt*. Val. Max. 9, 13, 2.

REM. 3. As the supine in *u* is commonly translated by a passive form, it is placed under the passive voice; but, in many cases, it may with equal or greater propriety be translated actively. As a noun, its construction may be referred to the ablative of limitation. § 250.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead of the supine in *u*, an infinitive, a gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or a verbal noun in the ablative, and sometimes in the dative or accusative, may be used; as, *Ardua imitatu, ceterum cognosci aulica*. Val. Max. *Illud autem facile ad credendum est*. Cic. *Opus proscriptiōne dignum*. Plin. *Aqua potui jucunda*. Id. *Facilior ad intellectum atque imitationem*. Quint. With *opus est* the perfect passive participle is often used instead of the supine in *u*; as, *Opus est maturato*, There is need of haste. Cf. § 243, R. 1.

(b.) The construction with *ad* and the gerund; as, *res facilis ad intelligendum*; or with *sum* and the infinitive active; as, *facile est invenire*, is used by the best writers after *facilis, difficilis*, and *jucundus*. The most common construction of *dignus* is with *qui* and the subjunctive, (§ 264, 9), but the poets and later prose writers have joined it with the infinitive passive.

## ADVERBS.

§ 277. I. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs; as,

*Bône mōnes.* You advise well. Ter. *Fortissime urgentes*, Most vigorously pressing on. Plin. *Māle narrando.* Ter. *Longe dissimilis.* Cic. *Valde bēne.* Id.

REMARK 1. Adverbs may also modify nouns, when they are used as adjectives or participles, and accordingly denote a quality, or when a participle is understood. They are also joined to adjective pronouns, when their adjective-character predominates; and sometimes limit the meaning of a preposition; as, *Pōpūlus lāte rex*, for *lāte regnans*,—ruling far and wide. Virg. *Nihil admōdum*, Nothing at all. Cic. *Hōmo plāne noxer*,—entirely ours, that is, devoted to us. Id. *Homērus plāne orātor.* Id. *Admōdum puella.* Liv. *Lāte tyrannus.* Hor. *Grāvibus sup̄erne icibus conflictābantur*, i. e. *sup̄erne accidentibus.* Tac. *Mullārum circa civitātum*, i. e. neighboring cities. Liv.

REM. 2. (a.) Most of the modifications made by adverbs may also be made by means of the various cases of nouns and adjectives, and many modifications may be made by these, for expressing which no adverbs are in use. In general those limitations which are most common can be expressed by adverbs; as, *stip̄ienter* for *cum stip̄entiā*; *hic* for *in hoc loco*; *bēne* for *in bōno mōdo*; *nunc* for *hoc tempore*.—(b.) The following are examples of other parts of speech used adverbially, viz. *Nihil*, 'in no way'; *nonnihil*, 'in some measure'; *quidquam*, 'at all'; *aliquid*, 'somewhat'; *quid?* 'why?'

REM. 3. A negative adverb, modifying another negative word, destroys the negation; as,

*Non pārere nōlūt.* He was not unwilling to obey. Nep. *Haud ignāra mālī.* Not ignorant of evil. Virg. *Haud nihil est.* It is something. Ter. *Nec hoc ille non vidit.* And this he clearly perceived. Cic. So, *nonnulli*, some; *nonnumquam*, sometimes. *Non*, before a negative word, commonly heightens the affirmative sense, while it softens the expression; as, *Hōmo non indoctus*, i. e. *hōmo sēne doctus.* *Non sēmel*, i. e. *sēpius*; *non ignōro*, *non nescio*, *non sum nescius*, I know very well. *Qui mortem in mālīs pōnit*, *non pōtest eam non timēre*,—must needs fear it. Cic.

REM. 4. When the subject and predicate of a proposition are both modified by negative words, and also when the predicate contains two negatives, the proposition is affirmative; as,

*Nēmo non videt.* Every one sees. Cic. *Nēque hēc non evēnērunt.* And this indeed took place. So, if both the antecedent and the predicate of a relative clause are negative, the proposition is affirmative; as, *Nēmo est, qui nesciat.* Every body knows. Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) But in the case of *non* followed by *ne—quidem*, the two negatives do not destroy each other; as, *Non fūgio ne hos quidem mōres*; and when the negative leading proposition has subordinate subdivisions with *nēque—nēque*, *nēve—nēve*, or *non—non*, these negative particles are equivalent to *aut—aut*; as, *Non me carminibus vincet, nec Orpheus, nec Līnus.* Virg. *Nēmīnem, non re, non verbo, non vultu dēniquē offēndi.* Cic. *Nullius rei nēque prās, nēque manceps factus est.* Nep.

(b.) In a few passages, however, two negatives in Latin, as in Greek, strengthen the negation, and this exception appears to have been derived from the language of common life; as, *Jūra te non nōctūrām hōmīni nēmīni.* Plaut.

(c.) *Nēmo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, and *numquam* have a different sense according as the *non* is placed before or after them; as, *Non nēmo*, some one; *nēmo non*, every one; *non nulli*, some; *nullus non*, every; *non nihil*, something; *nihil non*, every thing; *non numquam*, sometimes; *numquam non*, at all times. So, *nusquam non*, every where, but instead of *nonnusquam*, *allicubi* is used.

REM. 6. (a.) *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non mōdo* or *non solum*, when followed, in a subsequent clause, by *ne quidem*, if both clauses have the same verb, and if the verb is contained in the second clause; as,



*Mihi non modo irasci, sed ne dolere quidem impune licet*, which is equivalent to *Mihi non modo non irasci, sed ne dolere quidem impune licet*, or *Mihi non modo irasci, sed dolere quidem impune non licet*, Not only am I not permitted to be angry, but not even to grieve with impunity. Cic. *Quum senatus non solum iurare rempublicam, sed ne lagere quidem liceret*. Id.

(b.) *Non* is also rarely omitted after *non modo* when followed by *sed* or *etiam* with *etiam*, and also after *vix*; as, *Qui non modo ea futura timebat, etiam etiam fert, sustinetque presentia*, Who not only does not fear.... Cic. *Hec genera virtutum non solum in moribus nostris, sed vix jam in libris repertiuntur*, These virtues are not only not found in life, but scarcely in books. Id.

REM. 7. *Facile*, in the sense of *undoubtedly, clearly*, is joined to superlatives, and words of similar import; as, *Vir unus totius Græciæ facile doctissimus*. Cic. *Homo regionis illius virtute facile princeps*. Id.

REM. 8. Sentences are often united by means of an adverb which is repeated before each of the connected clauses; as, *modo—modo*, and *nunc—nunc*, (sometimes—sometimes); as, *Modo hoc, modo illud dixi; modo hæc, modo illuc volat*. Instead of the second *modo* other particles of time are sometimes used; as, *aliquando, nonnumquam, interdum, sæpius, tum* or *deinde*.—*Partim—partim*, 'partly—partly,' is sometimes used with a genitive or the preposition *ex*, in the sense of *alii—alii*, as a nominative in all the genders; as, *Quum partim e nobis ita timidi sunt, ut, etc., partim ita republicâ diversi, ut, etc.*—*Simul—simul*, 'as well—as,' like *nunc—nunc*, is not found in Cicero.—*Quâ—quâ* is equivalent to *et—et*.—*Tum—tum* is used sometimes like *modo—modo*, sometimes like *partim—partim*; as *Eruptunt sæpe vitia amicorum tum in ipsos amicos, tum in alienos*. Cic. *Hæc (beneficia) tum in universam rempublicam, tum in singulos cives conferuntur*. Id.

REM. 9. *Quum—tum* is equivalent to *et—et*, except in assigning a greater importance to the second part: hence it must be translated by 'both—and especially,' 'not only—but also,' or 'but more particularly.' Sometimes additional weight is given to the second part by means of *etiam, certe, etiam, quodque, præcipue, imprimis* or *maxime*. This use of *quum—tum* seems to have had its origin in the use of *quum* with the subjunctive and often with the indicative in the protasis, followed by *tum* in the apodosis. When *quum* followed by *tum* serves to express the opposition between single words which have the same verb, it is to be regarded as a complete adverb; as, *Fortuna quum in reliquis rebus, tum præcipue in bello plurimum potest*. Sometimes the verb stands in the first part of the sentence; as, *Quum omnis arrogantia odiosa est, tum illa ingenii atque eloquentia multo molestissima*. *Tum* is sometimes repeated in the second part of the sentence; as, *Quem pater moriens quum iulioribus et propinquis, tum legibus, tum æquitati magistratum, tum iudiciis vestris commendatum putavit*. Cic. Sometimes the gradation is, *quum—tum—tum vero*.

REM. 10. *Non modo—sed etiam* (or *non solum, or non tantum—etiam etiam*) generally expresses the transition from less important to more important things, like the English 'not only—but (also)'. The transition from greater to smaller things is expressed by *non modo—sed*, without the *etiam*, which we render in English by 'I will not say—but only,' and in Latin, too, we may say *non dicam or non dico—sed*; as, *Quid est enim minus non dico oratoris, sed hominis*.

REM. 11. *Tam—quam* expresses a comparison in degree; as, *Nemo tam multa scripsit, quam multa sunt nostra*. With superlatives they are rendered into English by 'the—the' and comparatives; as, *Veteranos quam plurimum bibi*, *tam maxime sitit*, The more he drinks, the more he thirsts. Cato. *Quam quique pessime fecit, tam maxime titus est*. Sall.—*Tam—quam quod maxime* signifies, 'as much as possible.'—*Non tam—quam* signifies, 'not so much—as,' or 'less—than'; as, *Provincia non tam gratioæ et illustris, quam negotiosa ac molesta*. Cic.

REM. 12. *Non minus—quam* and *non magis—quam* are equivalent to *æquæ—ac*, 'as much as,' but in *non magis—quam* the greater weight is attached to the affirmative clause beginning with *quam*; as, *Alexander non ducis magis quam*

*millia mēia exequēbātur*, Alexander performed as much the service of a soldier as that of a commander. In this connection *plus* frequently supplies the place of *māgis*.

(a.) *Sic* and *ita* are demonstrative adverbs corresponding to the relative *ut*. The restrictive meaning of *ita* (see § 191, R. 5.), is sometimes made more emphatic by the addition of *tamen*. *Tantus* is used in a like restrictive sense; as, *Præditi tantum est, ut ne mūrus quidem cingi possit*, i. e. 'only so much.' Cæs.

(b.) *Ut*—*ita* or *sic* places sentences on an equality. They may sometimes be translated 'although—still,' or 'indeed—but.'—The adverb *ut*, 'as,' sometimes takes the signification of the conjunction *quod*, 'because'; as, *Atque ille, ut semper fuitupertissimus, non se purgavit*. Cic.

REM. 13. In an enumeration, *primum*, *deinde*, *tum*, *dēntique* are commonly preferred to the numerals, *primum*, *secundo*, (for *secundum* is not often used), *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., unless the strict succession of the numbers is required. Sometimes *tum* is used once or twice instead of *deinde*, or the series is extended by *accēdit*, *huc adde*, etc. Sometimes *dēntique* is followed by *postremo* to form the conclusion of a series, but often *dēntique* without the other adverbs concludes a series, and is then equivalent to 'in short' or 'in fine.' See Cic. Cat. 1, 5.

REM. 14. *Minus* is often used for *non*; as, *Nonnumquam ea, quæ prædicta sunt, minus eveniunt*. Cic.—So, *si minus*—*at*, 'if not—yet;' and *sin minus*, 'but if not,' without a verb, after a preceding *si*; but with *si non* the verb is repeated.—The English 'how little' is in Latin *quam non*; and 'so little,' *ita non* or *adeo non*; as, *adeo non curabat, quid homines de se loquerentur*.

REM. 15. *Nunc* always expresses the time actually present, or the time to which a narrator transfers himself for the purpose of making his description livelier. Thus in speaking of the present time we may say, *Nunc primum somnia me elidunt or elūsērunt*; but in a narrative we must say, *Somnia tunc primum se dicebat elūsisse*. Compare the use of *hic* and *ille*. See § 207, R. 23. (c.)

REM. 16. The conjunction *dum*, 'while,' when added to negatives, becomes an adverb, signifying 'yet'; as, *nondum*, 'not yet'; *necdum*, 'and not yet'; *nul-ludum*, 'no one yet'; *nihiludum*, 'nothing yet.' Hence *vixdum* signifies 'scarcely yet'; as, *Vixdum epistolam tuam legēram, quum ad me Curtius vēnit*. Cic.—So, also, the conjunction *nisi*, by omitting its verb or uniting it with the leading verb, acquires, after negatives and negative questions, the sense of the adverb 'except,' which is generally expressed by *præterquam* or the preposition *præter*, and must be so expressed when no negative precedes. But the expression 'except that' may be rendered either by *nisi quod* or *præterquam quod*.—After *nihil aliud* we may use either *nisi* or *quam*, *nisi* referring to *nihil* and *quam* to *aliud*. Hence *nihil aliud nisi* signifies 'nothing further,' or 'nothing more,' and *nihil aliud quam*, 'nothing else,' or 'no other thing but this.'

REM. 17. *Ut*, 'as,' in interposed clauses, such as *ut opinor*, *ut puto*, *ut censeo*, *ut credo*, is frequently omitted. *Credo*, used in this manner often takes an ironical sense.

## PREPOSITIONS.

II. 1. See respecting the construction of prepositions with the accusative, § 235; and with the ablative, § 241. See, also, for the different meanings of prepositions, § 195, and for their arrangement, § 279, 10.

2. Two prepositions must not be joined in Latin, as they sometimes are in English, with the same noun; as, to speak *for* and *against* a law; or, I have learned this *with*, and, to some extent, *from* him. These sentences may be thus expressed in Latin; *pro lege et contra legem dicere*; *hæc cum eo, partim etiam ab eo didici*. Those dissyllabic prepositions only, which are sometimes used as adverbs, may follow another, without being joined with a case; as, *Quod aut secundum naturam esset, aut contra*. Cic. *Cis Padum ultraque*. Liv. Cæsar reverses the order, *Intra extraque munitiōnes*. B. Civ. 8, 72.

(b.) When two verbs are in English connected by *and*, and the actions denoted by them are regarded as simultaneous, one of them may be expressed in Latin by the present participle; as, He sits and holds his lute, *Ille (Arion) sedens citharam tēnet*. Ovid. *Simul hoc dicens attollit in agrum se fēmur*. Virg. i. e. *hoc dicit et attollit*. But if one of the actions precede the other, the perfect participle must be used; as, Cæsar attacked and defeated the enemy, *Cæsar hostes aggressus fugavit*. Submersas obrus puppes, i. e. *Submerge et obrue*. Virg.—When the English clause would be connected by *although*, the participle is often followed by *tamen*. Later writers in such case join the particles *quamquam*, *quomodo*, *etiam* and *vel* with the participle itself; as, *Cæsarem milites, quomodo recūsantem ultro in Africam sunt secuti*. Suet.; and these are sometimes retained in the ablative absolute.—It is only in late Latin that participles are sometimes used in describing persons as possessing certain attributes, e. g. *adstantes, audientes*, for *ii qui adstant, audiunt*, i. e. the bystanders, hearers.

(c.) A participle is used with verbs signifying to *represent* and *perceive*, especially to *see* and *hear*, when the object is described or perceived in a particular state; as, *Apelles pinxit Alexandrum Magnum fulmen tēnentem*. Plin. In English the infinitive is often joined with verbs of seeing and hearing; as, *Audivi te cānentem*, I heard you sing. *Audivi te cāntēre*, would be, I heard that you sung. *Vidēmus Pōlyphēmum vastā se mōle mōventem*. Virg.

NOTE 3. In many cases, for want of a perfect participle active, and a present participle passive, this construction cannot be used. Thus, *quem amāvisset* cannot be exchanged for a participle corresponding with the English *having loved*. As the perfect participles of deponent verbs, however, have an active signification, they admit of the participial construction. The want of a perfect active participle may also be supplied by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute. See § 267, R. 5.

## GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

§ 275. I. Gerunds are governed like nouns, and are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Mētus pārendi sibi*. Sall. Fear of obeying him. *Parcendo victis*, By sparing the vanquished. Liv. *Effrōr studio patres vestros videndi*, I am transported with a desire of seeing your fathers. Cic. *Petendi consūlātum grātiā*. Sall. *Venit ad rēcipiendū pecūnias*. Varr.

REMARK 1. The gerund is the same in form as the oblique cases of the neuter singular of participles in *us*, but it has the meaning of the active voice. It is sometimes translated by the present participle with a preposition, and sometimes by a present infinitive active; as, *Consilium Lacedæmonem occūpandi*, A design of occupying, or to occupy, Lacedæmon. Liv.

REM. 2. The gerund is sometimes, though rarely, used in a passive sense; as, *Spes restituendi nulla erat*,—of being restored. Nep. *Athēnas erūdiendi grātiā missus*,—for the purpose of being instructed. Just. *Ante dōmandum*. Virg. *Ades ad impērandum*. Cic.

REM. 3. The gerund is in its nature a verbal noun, having only the genitive, dative, ablative, and, after a preposition, the accusative. In its signification it corresponds with the English present participle when used as a verbal noun. Hence, in the oblique cases, it supplies the place of a declinable present infinitive active; but in the accusative there is this difference between the infinitive used as an accusative and the gerund, that the infinitive has simply the power of an abstract noun, whereas the gerund expresses a real action; as, *Multum intēreat inter dāre et accipēre*. Sen. *Non solum ad discendūm prępens sumus, sed etiam ad docendūm*. Cic.

II. When the *object* of an active verb is to be expressed, the participle in *dus* is commonly used in preference to the gerund; the object taking the case in which the gerund, if used, would have been put, and the participle agreeing with it.

Thus, to express 'the design of writing a letter,' which, with the aid of the gerund, would be represented in Latin by *Consilium scribendi epistolam*, the participle in *dus* is commonly substituted for the gerund: and since, in this example, the gerund, (*scribendi*) is in the genitive, the rule requires that, in substituting the participle for the gerund, the object of the gerund (*epistolam*) should also be put in the genitive, and that the participle (*scribendus*) should agree with it in gender, number, and case. Hence with the participle the expression is, *Consilium scribende epistolæ*. Between the two forms of construction there is no difference of signification. So, *Consilia urbis delendæ* (Cic.), for *urbem delendi*, Plans for destroying the city. *Rēparandūrum classium causā* (Suet.), for *reparandæ classes*. *Perpetiendū lābōri idōneus*. *Colum*. Ad defendendam Rōmā ab oppugnandū Cāpuā dūces Rōmānos abstrāhēre. Liv.

REMARK 1. The same construction is used with the future passive participles of *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, and rarely of *mēdeor*, as these verbs were originally followed by the accusative; as, *Ætas ad hæc ütendā idōnea*. Ter. *Justitiæ fruendæ causā*. Cic. *In mūnere fungendo*. Id. *Hostes in spem pōtiundūrum castrōrum vēnerant*. Cæs. *Aquæ salubritate mēdendisq; corpōribus nobilitas*. Vell.

REM. 2. When a participle is thus used for a gerund, it is called a *gerundive*, and is usually translated like a gerund. The gerundive cannot be substituted for the gerund, where ambiguity would arise from the gender not being distinguishable. It should therefore not be used when the object of the gerund is a neuter pronoun or adjective; as, *Aliquid faciendū ratiō* (Cic.), not *aliquidus*. *Artem et vērā et falsā dījudicandū* (Id.), not *vērōrum dījudicandūrum*: because it would not be known whether *aliquidus* and *vērōrum* were masculine or neuter. It is to be remarked, also, that the change of the gerund into the gerundive is less frequent in some writers than in others.

III. Examples of the construction of gerunds, in each of their cases, have been already given, among other nouns, under the heads *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Ab-lative*. The following remarks specify in what connections they are used: and when it is said that the gerundive is governed in any of the cases like the gerund, it will of course be understood of the noun which is limited by a gerundive.

REMARK 1. The genitive of gerunds and gerundives may follow either nouns or relative adjectives; as,

*Amor habendi*. Cic. *Patriam spes videndi*. Virg. *Nam habet nātura, ut aliārū omnium rerū, sic vivendi modum*. Cic. *Barbāra consuetūdo hominū immōlandūrum*. Id. *Postremo Cūtilina dissimulandi causā aut sui expurgandi, in senātum vēnit*. Sall. *Inta sunt consilia urbis delendæ, citiū trucidandūrum, nominis Rōmāni extinguendi*. Id. *Venandi studiōsi*. Cic. *Certus eunū*. Virg. *Insuper nāvigandi*. Cæs. *Pēritus civitātis regendus*. Nep.

(1.) The nouns after which these genitives most frequently occur are *amor*, *ars*, *causa*, *consilium*, *consuetudo*, *cōpia*, *cupiditas*, *dēsiderium*, *difficultas*, *finis*, *fācultas*, *forma*, *grātia*, *illēcebra*, *libido*, *lōcus*, *licentia*, *modus*, *māteria*, *mos*, *occāsiō*, *ōtium*, *pōtestas*, *ratiō*, *spātium*, *spes*, *studium*, *tempus*, *ūsus*, *vēnia*, *vis*, *volūntas*.

NOTE 1. With these and other substantives the infinitive also may be used, when with a tense of *sum* they form a periphrasis for a verb which is followed by the infinitive, or supply the place of an adjective of which the infinitive is the subject; as, *Quibus omnia hōnesta atque inhōnesta vendere mos erat*, With whom it was a custom, or, who were accustomed. Sall. *Tempus est ālire*. It is time, i. e. *tempestivum est*, it is proper to go.

(2.) The relative adjectives, which most frequently take after them these gerundives, are such as denote *desire, knowledge, remembrance*, and their contraries; as, *dictus, cupidus, studiosus, peritus, imperitus, insuetus, certus, conscius, ignarus, rudis*, etc. See § 213, R. 1, (8.)

NOTE 2. With the relative adjectives the infinitive is also joined poetically.

(3.) Instead of an accusative after the gerund, or a genitive plural with a gerundive, a noun or pronoun in the genitive plural is sometimes joined with the gerund; as, *Exemplorum eligendi potestas*, instead of *exempla eligendi*; or, *exemplorum eligendorum*. Cic. *Earum rerum insitiandi ratio*. Id. *Facultas agrorum condonandi*. Cic. *Nominandi istorum erit copia*. Plaut.

(4.) The pronoun *tui* and also the plurals *vestri* and *sui*, even when feminine, are joined with the masculine or neuter form of the gerundive in *di*; as, *Quoniam tui videndi est copia*. Plaut. *Non vereor, ne quis hoc me vestri adhortandi causa magnifice loqui existimet*. Liv. *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causa*.—With the demonstrative pronouns, *ejus, hujus, illius*, the participle usually agrees, but in two passages of Terence *ejus*, though referring to a woman, has the participle in *di*, not in *dæ*; as, *Ego ejus videndi cupidus recta consequor*. Ter. *Tui* in the first example and *ejus* in the last are feminine.

(5.) By a Greek idiom the gerund and gerundive, after the verb *sum*, are sometimes found in the genitive denoting a *tendency or purpose*, with no noun or adjective on which they can depend; as, *Régium imperium initio conservandæ libertatis fuerat*. Sall. Sometimes *esse* in some form is to be supplied; as, *Qua postquam gloriosa modo, neque belli patrandi cognovit*, scil. *esse*. Id. *Causa* or *gratia* may sometimes be supplied. In some other cases, also, the word on which the gerund in *di* depends is not expressed, and the gerund seems to be used instead of the infinitive; as, *Maneat provincialibus potentiam suam tali modo ostentandi*, scil. *facultas*. Tac. *Quum habere in animo navigandi*, scil. *propositum*. Cic.

REM. 2. The dative of gerunds and gerundives is used after adjectives which govern a dative (§ 222), especially after those which signify *usefulness or fitness*; and also after certain verbs and phrases, to denote a *purpose*; as,

*Charta emporetica est inutilis scribendo*. Plin. *Cæpessendæ reipublicæ habilis*. Tac. *Ut nec triumviri accipiundo, nec scribæ referendo sufficerent*. Liv. *Locum oppido condendo capere*. Id. *Non fuit consilium agrum colendo aut venando intentum ætatem agere*. Sall. *Tiberius quasi firmandæ vultutudini in Campaniam concessit*. Tac. *Quum solvendo ære alieno reipublica non esset*. Liv. *Quum solvendo civitates non essent*,—were insolvent. Cic.

(1.) The verbs and phrases upon which this dative most frequently depends are, *Studere, intentum esse, tempus impendere, tempus consumere* or *insumere, optare, dicere, sufficere, satis esse, deesse, esse*, signifying *to serve for, to be adequate to*, and, in later writers, on verbs of motion.—The dative of the gerund after *sum* is usually supposed to depend on *idoneus* understood; but see § 227, R. 3.

(2.) The dative of the gerundive, denoting a purpose, is also used after names of office; as, *Decemviri legibus scribendis*, i. e. the ten commissioners for drawing up a code of laws. Liv. So, *Comitia creandis decemviris*. Id. *Triumvros agro dando creat*. Id.

(3.) A purpose is more commonly expressed by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund, or by a clause with *ut*, than by the dative; as, *Pecus ad vescendum hominibus apta*. Cic.

REM. 3. The accusative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *ad*, *to*, or *inter*, during or amid, and sometimes *ante*, *circa*, or *ob*; as,

*Ad posnitendum pręerat, qui cito iudicat.* Pub. Syr. *Inter bibendum,* While drinking. Just. *Ad tollendos facilius labores.* Quint. *Ad castra facienda.* Cic. *Ob absolvendum.* Id.

NOTE. The construction of the gerundive instead of the gerund almost invariably occurs here when the object of the gerund is to be expressed.

REM. 4. The ablative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *a*, (*ab*), *de*, *e*, (*ex*), or *in*; or it is used without a preposition, as the ablative of cause, manner, or means; as,

*Aristotilem non deterruit a scribendo.* Cic. *Ex assentando.* Ter. *Non videoe a defendendis hominibus discēdere.* Cic. *Crescit eundo.* Virg. *Rem querunt mercaturis faciendis.* Cic. *Oratōnem Lātīnam legendis nostris efficit plenior.* Id.

NOTE 1. This ablative also occurs, though rarely, after *pro* and *cum*; as, *Pro cupulando.* Plant. *Cum loquendo.* Quint.

NOTE 2. Generally with the ablative of the means, and always with the ablative after a preposition, the gerund, when its object is to be expressed, is changed to the gerundive. In a few passages the ablative of the gerundive is differently construed; as, *Nullum officium referendā grātiā magis necessarium est,* instead of *relatiōne grātiæ.* § 256. Cic. *Nec jam possidendis publicis agris contentos esse.* § 244. Liv. *In finis fuit ulciscendā Germanici morte,*—in avenging the death of Germanicus. Tac.; where the ablative seems to imply time. § 253.

## SUPINES.

§ 276. Supines, like gerunds, are verbal nouns, having no other cases except the accusative and ablative singular. In certain connections they supply the place of the present infinitive; the supine in *um* having an active and the supine in *a* a passive signification. As in the case of gerunds, we are to regard their construction both as verbs and as nouns. As verbs we are to notice their government, as nouns, their dependence.

I. Supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Non Grāis servitum mātribus ibo,* I shall not go to serve Grecian matrons. Virg. *Te id admōnitum venio.* Plaut.

II. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and serve to denote the purpose of the motion; as,

*Cūbitum discessimus.* Cic. *Ire dejectum mōnūmenta rēgis.* Hor. *Lēgati vēnērunt questum injūrias, et res repētum.* Liv. *Quum spectātum ludos iret.* Nep. So after participles; as, *Patriam dēfensum revōcātus.* Nep. *Spectātum admisi.* Hor.

NOTE. The construction of the supine in *um*, considered as a noun, is analogous to that of names of places in answer to the question 'whither?' (§ 237), the notion of purpose arising from its verbal character.

REMARK 1. Supines in *um* sometimes follow verbs which do not express motion; as, *Do filiām nuptum.* Ter. *Vos ultum injūrias hortor.* Sall.

REM. 2. The supine in *um* with *eo* literally signifies 'I go to do a thing,' and hence 'I intend,' or, 'am going to.' Instances of this use are found in Plautus and Terence and in the prose writers later than Cicero; as, *Mea Glycērium, quid agis? cur te is perditum?* Why are you going to destroy yourself? Plaut. *Bōnōrum prēmia ēreptum eunt.* Sall. With *eo* the supine in *um* often forms a periphrasis equivalent to the same mood and tense of the verb from which the

supine is formed; as, *Ne bonos omnes perditum eant* (Sall.), for *perdant*. *Ereptum eunt* (Id.), for *eripiunt*. *Ultum iuit* (Tac.), for *ultus est*. *Ultum ire injurias festinat*, i. e. *ulcisci*. Sall.

REM. 3. The supine in *um* most frequently occurs with the infinitive *iri*, with which it forms the future infinitive passive; as, *Brutum visum iri a me puto*. Cic. In this construction the accusative properly depends upon the supine, and *iri* is used impersonally; 'I suppose that I am going to see Brutus.' § 184, 2, (a.) Its notion of futurity is derived from the proper signification of the active voice, as *perditum iri*, to go to destroy, the idea of intending passing easily into that of futurity.

REM. 4. But to express a purpose Latin writers in general prefer using a gerund or gerundive in the accusative with *ad* or in the genitive with *causæ* or *gratiæ*, a subjunctive clause with *ut* or *qui*, a present or future active participle, and sometimes poetically an infinitive. See § 275, R. 1, 2: §§ 262, 264, 274, and 271.

III. The supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful*, *agreeable*, *easy* or *difficult*, *worthy* or *unworthy*, *honorable* or *base*, and a few others; as,

*Mirabile dictu!* Wonderful to tell, or to be told! Virg. *Jucundum cognitu atque auditu*. Pleasant to be known and heard. Cic. *Res factu facilis*. A thing easy to be done. Ter. *Facilia inventu*. Gell. *Incredibile memoratu*. Sall. *Turpia dictu*. Cic. *Optimum factu*. Id.

NOTE. The principal supines in *u* in common use are *auditu*, *cognitu*, *dictu*, *factu*, *inventu*, *memoratu* and *natu*, which occurs in the expressions, *grandis*, *major*, *minor*, *maximus*, and *minimus natu*. In *magno natu*, of an advanced age, and *maximo natu filius*, the eldest son, *natu* is the ablative of a verbal substantive, since neither gerunds nor supines are joined with adjectives.

REMARK 1. The principal adjectives, after which the supine in *u* occurs, are *affabilis*, *arduus*, *asper*, *bonus*, *deformis*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *dulcis*, *durus*, *facilis*, *difficilis*, *factus*, *gravis*, *honestus*, *horrendus*, *incredibilis*, *jucundus*, *injucundus*, *magnus*, *memorabilis*, *molis*, *prociuis*, *pulcher*, *rarus*, *turpis*, and *utilis*.

REM. 2. The supine in *u* is used also after the nouns *fas*, *nefas*, and *opus*; as, *Hoc fas est dictu*. Cic. *Nefas dictu*. Ovid. *Dictu opus est*. Ter.—In the following examples it follows a verb: *Pudet dictu*. Tac. Agr. 32. *Dictu fastidiosa sunt*. Val. Max. 9, 13, 2.

REM. 3. As the supine in *u* is commonly translated by a passive form. it is placed under the passive voice; but, in many cases, it may with equal or greater propriety be translated actively. As a noun, its construction may be referred to the ablative of limitation. § 250.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead of the supine in *u*, an infinitive, a gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or a verbal noun in the ablative, and sometimes in the dative or accusative, may be used; as, *Ardua imitatu, ceterum cognosci utilia*. Val. Max. *Illud autem facile ad credendum est*. Cic. *Opus proscriptiōne dignum*. Plin. *Aqua potui jucunda*. Id. *Facilior ad intellectum atque imitationem*. Quint. With *opus est* the perfect passive participle is often used instead of the supine in *u*; as, *Opus est maturato*, There is need of haste. Cf. § 243, R. 1.

(b.) The construction with *ad* and the gerund; as, *res facilis ad intelligendum*; or with *sum* and the infinitive active; as, *facile est invenire*, is used by the best writers after *facilis*, *difficilis*, and *jucundus*. The most common construction of *dignus* is with *qui* and the subjunctive, (§ 264, 9), but the poets and later prose writers have joined it with the infinitive passive.

## ADVERBS.

§ 277. I. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs; as,

*Bène mōmes.* You advise well. Ter. *Fortissime urgentes.* Most vigorously pressing on. Plin. *Māle narrando.* Ter. *Longe dissimilis.* Cic. *Valde bene.* Id.

REMARK 1. Adverbs may also modify nouns, when they are used as adjectives or participles, and accordingly denote a quality, or when a participle is understood. They are also joined to adjective pronouns, when their adjective-character predominates; and sometimes limit the meaning of a preposition; as, *Pōpulus lāte rex,* for *lāte regnans*,—ruling far and wide. Virg. *Nihil admōdum.* Nothing at all. Cic. *Hōmo plāne noster*,—entirely ours, that is, devoted to us. Id. *Homērus plāne orātor.* Id. *Admōdum puellā.* Liv. *Lāte tyrannus.* Hor. *Grāvibus sup̄erne ic̄tibus conflictābantur,* i. e. *sup̄erne accidentibus.* Tac. *Multarum circa citatatum,* i. e. neighboring cities. Liv.

REM. 2. (a.) Most of the modifications made by adverbs may also be made by means of the various cases of nouns and adjectives, and many modifications may be made by these, for expressing which no adverbs are in use. In general those limitations which are most common can be expressed by adverbs; as, *sapienter* for *cum sapentiā*; *hic* for *in hoc loco*; *bene* for *in bōno mōdo*; *nunc* for *hoc tempore*.—(b.) The following are examples of other parts of speech used adverbially, viz. *Nihil*, 'in no way'; *nonnulli*, 'in some measure'; *quidquam*, 'at all'; *aliquid*, 'somewhat'; *quid?* 'why?'

REM. 3. A negative adverb, modifying another negative word, destroys the negation; as,

*Non parere nōluit.* He was not unwilling to obey. Nep. *Haud ignāra mali.* Not ignorant of evil. Virg. *Haud nihil est.* It is something. Ter. *Nec hoc ille non vidit.* And this he clearly perceived. Cic. *So, nonnulli,* some; *nonnumquam,* sometimes. *Non,* before a negative word, commonly heightens the affirmative sense, while it softens the expression; as, *Homo non indoctus,* i. e. *homo sane doctus.* *Non semel,* i. e. *sæpius*; *non ignōro,* *non nescio,* *non sum nescius,* I know very well. *Qui mortem in malis pōnit,* *non potest eam non timere*,—must needs fear it. Cic.

REM. 4. When the subject and predicate of a proposition are both modified by negative words, and also when the predicate contains two negatives, the proposition is affirmative; as,

*Nemo non videt.* Every one sees. Cic. *Nēque hæc non evēnerunt.* And this indeed took place. So, if both the antecedent and the predicate of a relative clause are negative, the proposition is affirmative; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat.* Every body knows. Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) But in the case of *non* followed by *ne—quidem*, the two negatives do not destroy each other; as, *Non fugio ne hos quidem mōres:* and when the negative leading proposition has subordinate subdivisions with *nēque—nēque, nēve—nēve, or non—non,* these negative particles are equivalent to *aut—aut*; as, *Non me carminibus vincet, nec Orpheus, nec Linus.* Virg. *Nēmīnem, non re, non verbo, non vultu denique offendit.* Cic. *Nullius rei nēque præs, nēque manceps factus est.* Nep.

(b.) In a few passages, however, two negatives in Latin, as in Greek, strengthen the negation, and this exception appears to have been derived from the language of common life; as, *Jura te non noctūram homīni nēmīni.* Plaut.

(c.) *Nemo, nullus, nihil,* and *numquam* have a different sense according as the *non* is placed before or after them; as, *Non nemo,* some one; *nemo non,* every one; *non nulli,* some; *nullus non,* every; *non nihil,* something; *nihil non* thing; *non numquam,* sometimes; *numquam non,* at all times. So, *nusquam* every where, but instead of *nonnusquam, alibi* is used.

REM. 6. (a.) *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non* in a subsequent clause, when followed, in a subsequent clause, by clauses have the same verb, and if the verb is common to both clauses; as,



*Mihi non modo irasci, sed ne dolere quidem impune licet*, which is equivalent to *Mihi non modo non irasci, sed ne dolere quidem impune licet*, or *Mihi non modo irasci, sed dolere quidem impune non licet*. Not only am I not permitted to be angry, but not even to grieve with impunity. Cic. *Quum senatus non solum iurare rempublicam, sed ne lugere quidem liceret*. Id.

(b.) *Non* is also rarely omitted after *non modo* when followed by *sed* or *verum* with *etiam*, and also after *viz*; as, *Qui non modo ea futura timet, verum etiam fert, sustinetque presentia*. Who not only does not fear.... Cic. *Hæc genera virtutum non solum in moribus nostris, sed via jam in libris repèriuntur*. These virtues are not only not found in life, but scarcely in books. Id.

REM. 7. *Facile*, in the sense of *undoubtedly, clearly*, is joined to superlatives, and words of similar import; as, *Vir unus totius Græciæ facile doctissimus*. Cic. *Homo regionis illius virtute facile princeps*. Id.

REM. 8. Sentences are often united by means of an adverb which is repeated before each of the connected clauses; as, *modo—modo*, and *nunc—nunc*, (sometimes—sometimes); as, *Modo hoc, modo illud dicis; modo huc, modo illuc volas*. Instead of the second *modo* other particles of time are sometimes used; as, *aliquando, nonnumquam, interdum, sæpius, tum or deinde*.—*Partim—partim*, 'partly—partly,' is sometimes used with a genitive or the preposition *ex*, in the sense of *alii—alii*, as a nominative in all the genders; as, *Quum partim e nobis ita timidi sunt, ut, etc., partim ita republicæ aversi, ut, etc.*—*Stimul—stimul*, 'as well—as,' like *nunc—nunc*, is not found in Cicero.—*Quā—quā* is equivalent to *et—et*.—*Tum—tum* is used sometimes like *modo—modo*, sometimes like *partim—partim*; as *Erumpunt sæpe vitia amicorum tum in ipso amico, tum in alieno*. Cic. *Hæc (beneficia) tum in universam rempublicam, tum in singulos cives conferuntur*. Id.

REM. 9. *Quum—tum* is equivalent to *et—et*, except in assigning a greater importance to the second part: hence it must be translated by 'both—and especially,' 'not only—but also,' or 'but more particularly.' Sometimes additional weight is given to the second part by means of *vero, certe, etiam, quodque, præcipue, imprimis or maxime*. This use of *quum—tum* seems to have had its origin in the use of *quum* with the subjunctive and often with the indicative in the protasis, followed by *tum* in the apodosis. When *quum* followed by *tum* serves to express the opposition between single words which have the same verb, it is to be regarded as a complete adverb; as, *Fortuna quum in reliquis rebus, tum præcipue in bello plurimum potest*. Sometimes the verb stands in the first part of the sentence; as, *Quum omnis arrogantia odiosa est, tum illa ingenuis atque eloquentiæ multo molestissima*. *Tum* is sometimes repeated in the second part of the sentence; as, *Quem pater moriens quum tutoribus et propinquis, tum legibus, tum æquitati magistratum, tum iudiciis vestris commendatum patavit*. Cic. Sometimes the gradation is, *quum—tum—tum vero*.

REM. 10. *Non modo—sed etiam* (or *non solum, or non tantum—verum etiam*) generally expresses the transition from less important to more important things, like the English 'not only—but (also)'. The transition from greater to smaller things is expressed by *non modo—sed*, without the *etiam*, which we render in English by 'I will not say—but only,' and in Latin, too, we may say *non dicam or non dico—sed*; as, *Quid est enim minus non dico oratoris, sed hominis*.

REM. 11. *Tam—quam* expresses a comparison in degree; as, *Nemo tam multa scripsit, quam multa sunt nostra*. With superlatives they are rendered into English by 'the—the' and comparatives; as, *Veterosus quam plurimum bibit, tam maxime stitit*. The more he drinks, the more he thirsts. Cato. *Quam quisque pessime fecit, tam maxime titus est*. Sall.—*Tam—quam quod maxime* signifies, 'as much as possible.'—*Non tam—quam* signifies, 'not so much—as,' or 'less—than'; as, *Provincia non tam grætiōsa et illustris, quam negotiōsa ac molesta*. Cic.

REM. 12. *Non minus—quam* and *non magis—quam* are equivalent to *æque—ac*, 'as much as,' but in *non magis—quam* the greater weight is attached to the affirmative clause beginning with *quam*; as, *Alexander non ducis magis quam*

*multis mania exequēbatur*, Alexander performed as much the service of a soldier as that of a commander. In this connection *plus* frequently supplies the place of *magis*.

(a.) *Sic* and *ita* are demonstrative adverbs corresponding to the relative *ut*. The restrictive meaning of *ita* (see § 191, R. 5.), is sometimes made more emphatic by the addition of *tamen*. *Tantum* is used in a like restrictive sense; as, *Prædicti tantum est, ut ne mirus quidem cingi possit*, i. e. 'only so much.' Cæs.

(b.) *Ut—ita* or *sic* places sentences on an equality. They may sometimes be translated 'although—still,' or 'indeed—but.'—The adverb *ut*, 'as,' sometimes takes the signification of the conjunction *quod*, 'because'; as, *Aliqua ille, ut semper fuit optertissimus, non se purgavit*. Cic.

REM. 13. In an enumeration, *primum*, *deinde*, *tum*, *dénique* are commonly preferred to the numerals, *primum*, *secundo*, (for *secundum* is not often used), *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., unless the strict succession of the numbers is required. Sometimes *tum* is used once or twice instead of *deinde*, or the series is extended by *accedit*, *huc addit*, etc. Sometimes *dénique* is followed by *postrémo* to form the conclusion of a series, but often *dénique* without the other adverbs concludes a series, and is then equivalent to 'in short' or 'in fine.' See Cic. Cat. 1, 5.

REM. 14. *Minus* is often used for *non*; as, *Nonnumquam ea, quas prædicta sunt, minus eveniunt*. Cic.—So, *si minus—at*, 'if not—yet,' and *sin minus*, 'but if not,' without a verb, after a preceding *si*; but with *si non* the verb is repeated.—The English 'how little' is in Latin *quam non*; and 'so little,' *ita non* or *adeo non*; as, *adeo non curabat, quid homines de se loquerentur*.

REM. 15. *Nunc* always expresses the time actually present, or the time to which a narrator transfers himself for the purpose of making his description livelier. Thus in speaking of the present time we may say, *Nunc primum somnia me elidunt* or *eluserunt*; but in a narrative we must say, *Somnia tunc primum se dicebat eluisse*. Compare the use of *hic* and *ille*. See § 207, R. 23. (c.)

REM. 16. The conjunction *dum*, 'while,' when added to negatives, becomes an adverb, signifying 'yet'; as, *nondum*, 'not yet'; *necdum*, 'and not yet'; *nulhūcum*, 'no one yet'; *nihilcum*, 'nothing yet.' Hence *vixdum* signifies 'scarcely yet'; as, *Vixdum epistolam tuam legēram, quum ad me Curtius venit*. Cic.—So, also, the conjunction *nisi*, by omitting its verb or uniting it with the leading verb, acquires, after negatives and negative questions, the sense of the adverb 'except,' which is generally expressed by *præterquam* or the preposition *præter*, and must be so expressed when no negative precedes. But the expression 'except that' may be rendered either by *nisi quod* or *præterquam quod*.—After *nihil aliud* we may use either *nisi* or *quam*, *nisi* referring to *nihil* and *quam* to *aliud*. Hence *nihil aliud nisi* signifies 'nothing further,' or 'nothing more,' and *nihil aliud quam*, 'nothing else,' or 'no other thing but this.'

REM. 17. *Ut*, 'as,' in interposed clauses, such as *ut opinor*, *ut patet*, *ut censent*, *ut credo*, is frequently omitted. *Credo*, used in this manner often takes an ironical sense.

## PREPOSITIONS.

II. 1. See respecting the construction of prepositions with the accusative, § 235; and with the ablative, § 241. See, also, for the different meanings of prepositions, § 195, and for their arrangement, § 279, 10.

2. Two prepositions must not be joined in Latin, as in English, with the same noun; as, to speak *for* and *about* a thing. We have learned this *with*, and, to some extent, *from* and *about* a thing, thus expressed in Latin; *pro lege et contra legem ab eo dicti*. Those dissyllabic prepositions used as adverbs, may follow another, with the same noun; as, *Quod aut secundum naturam esset, aut contra naturam*. Caesar reverses the order, *Intra extraque* a thing.

3. When nouns mutually dependent upon a preposition are in apposition, when they constitute an enumeration without a connective, and when connected by copulative, disjunctive, adversative, or comparative conjunctions, the preposition is not repeated, unless such nouns are to be distinguished from each other, or are emphatic; as,

*Quid dicam de thesauro omnium rerum, memoria?* Hoc apparet in bestiis, volucris, nantibus, agrestibus, ceteris, ut se ipsa diligant. Cic. *Sepiastime inter me et Scipionem de amicitia disserebatur.* Id. *Quid faceres si in aliquam domum villamve venisses?* Id. *Nihil per iram aut cupiditatem actum est.* Id. *Themistocles non minus in rebus gerendis promptus quam excogitandis erat.* Nep.

4. The monosyllabic prepositions *ab*, *ad*, *de*, *ex*, and *in* are often used before each of two nouns connected by *et*, etc., especially if the qualities denoted by such nouns are to be considered separately. If the nouns are separated by *et—et*, *nec—nec*, etc., the prepositions must be repeated; as, *Ut eorum et in bellicis et in civilibus officiis vigeat industria.* Cic.—*Inter* is frequently repeated by Cicero after *interesse*, and other writers repeat it after other verbs also; as, *Quid intersit inter populeam—civem, et inter constantem, severum et gravem.* Cic. *Certatum inter Ap. Claudium maxime ferunt et inter P. Decium.* Liv.

5. (a.) In poetry a preposition is occasionally omitted with the first of two nouns, and put with the second only; as, *Quos nemora, aut quos agor in specus,* (Hor.) for, *in quos nemora aut in quos specus agor.* So, Hor. Ep. 2, 1, 25.—

(b.) An ellipsis of a preposition with the relative pronoun sometimes occurs, together with that of the verb belonging to the preceding demonstrative; as, *In eadem opinione fui, qua reliqui omnes,* (Cic.), properly *in qua reliqui omnes fuerunt.*

## CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 278. Copulative, disjunctive, and other coördinate conjunctions, connect similar constructions.

NOTE 1. Clauses are similarly constructed, which are mutually independent, whose subjects and verbs are in the same case and mood, and which have either no dependence or a similar dependence on another clause.

NOTE 2. (a.) Words have a similar construction, when they stand in the same relation to some other word or words in the sentence. Hence,

(b.) Conjunctions connect the same cases of nouns and pronouns, dependent, if the cases are oblique, upon the same government; the same number, case, and gender of adjectives, belonging to the same noun; the same mood of verbs, either independent, or alike dependent; adverbs qualifying the same verbs, adjectives, etc.; and prepositions on which depends the same noun or pronoun; as, *Concidunt venti, fugiuntque nubes,* The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. Hor. *Locum, quem et non coquit sol, et tangit ros.* Varr. *Luxi decem per dies, facti sunt, neque res ulla prætermissa est.* Cic. *Vides, ut alia stet nive candidum Socrate, nec jam sustineant onus silvæ liberrantes, gelique flumina constiterint decurso.* Hor. *Intelligitis et animum ei præsto fuisse, nec consilium defuisse.* Cic. *Generi animantium omni est a natura tributum, ut se tueretur, declinetque ea, que nocturna videantur.* Id. *Aut nemo, aut Cato sapiens fuit.* Id. *Pulvis et umbra sumus.* Hor. *Si tu et Tullia velitis, ego et Cicero videmus.* Cic. *Aggere jacto turribusque constitatis.* Cæs. *Clarus et honoratus vir, An illustrious and honorable man.* Id. *Cæsar Remos cohortatus, liberaliterque oratione præsecutus.* Cæs. *Pater tuus, quem colui et dilexi.* Cic. *Belga spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem.* Cæs. *Navigibus junctis, ratibusque compluribus factis.* Id. *Læge, vel tabellas redde.* Plaut. *Allobroges trans Rhodanum vias possessionesque habebant.* Cæs. *Quum triumphum egeris, censorque fueris, et oblivis legatus.* Id. *Quum ad oppidum accessisset, castrisque ibi poneret.* Cæs.

*Ades animo, et omitte timorem.* Cic. *Ea videre ac perspicere potestis.* Id. *Graviter et copiose dicisse dicitur.* Id. *Cum fratre an sine.* Id. Cf. § 277, II. 2. *Cui carmina corâ, nûmëroque intendere nervis.* Virg. *Nec census, nec clârûm nomen dvorum, sed prôbitas magnos ingêniumque facit.* Ovid. *Philosophi nungant quemquam virum bonum esse, nisi sapiëntem.* Cic. *Glôria virtutem tamquam umbra sequitur.* Id.

REMARK 1. Copulative conjunctions may connect either single words and phrases or entire clauses; the other conjunctions, whether coördinate or subordinate, connect clauses only.

REM. 2. Words thus connected are sometimes in different cases, though in the same construction; as, *Mea et respûblicæ intêrest.* Cic. (See § 219.) *Sive es Rômæ, sive in Epîro.* Id. (See §§ 221 and 254. But see also § 221, Note.) *In Metis descendat iudicis aures, et patris et nostras.* Hor. See § 211, R. 3. In like manner, *Hannibal non aliter vinci potuit, quam morâ.*

REM. 3. As the subjunctive is often used for the imperative, they may be connected by coördinate conjunctions; as, *Disce nec invidæas.* Pers.

REM. 4. Where the purpose of the writer requires it, coördinate conjunctions sometimes connect independent propositions, whose verbs are in different moods; as, *Stuporem hominis; vel dicam pecûdis, videte.* Cic. *Nec scitis scio, nec, si sciam, dicere ausim.* Liv.

REM. 5. *Et* is used after *multî* followed by another adjective, where in English 'and' is usually omitted; as, *Multæ et magnæ arbores*, Many large trees. In such cases *et* supplies the place of *et is*, introducing a more accurate description. See § 207, R. 26, (c.)

REM. 6. The conjunction is often omitted; as, (a.) When two single words, as comprehending the whole idea, are opposed to each other, as, *velim, nolim*, whether I would or not; *maxima minima*, the greatest as well as the least; *prima postrema*, from the first to the last; *dignos indignos dâre; ire redire*, to go to and fro. *Edificiis omnibus publicis privatis, sacris profanis sic pepercit.* Cic. *Nam glôriam, honorem, impérium bonus ignavus æque sibi exoptant.* Sall. C. 11.

(b.) *Et* is very frequently omitted between the names of two colleagues; as, *Consules declarati sunt Cn. Pompeius M. Crassus. P. Lentulo L. Triario, quaestoribus urbanis.* Cic. Sometimes, also, when the two persons are not colleagues. It is also occasionally omitted between two words in the oratorical style; as, *Adstant amici, propinqui.* Id.; also with verbs; as, *Adsum, quaeruntur Siculi.* Id. In good prose, if three or more substantives are joined, it is usual either wholly to omit the conjunction or to insert it between each. The following may serve as an example of both cases: *Qui non modo Curiis, Catonibus, Pompeiis, antiquis illis, sed his recentibus, Mariis et Didis et Cæliis commemorandis jacebant.* This is also the common practice with adjectives and verbs, and hence when *et* has not previously occurred in an enumeration of persons or things, we should not conclude the enumeration with *et alii, et reliqui, et cætera*, etc., but should make use of the adjectives alone, *alii, reliqui, cætera*, etc. But though *et, ac and atque* are not used alone in the third or fourth place, yet the enclitic *que* frequently occurs in this position; as, *Præcor ut ea res vobis pacem, tranquillitatem, diem, concordiamque afferat.* Cic. *Et* may be supplied also when two protases introduced by *si* are joined together; where we say 'if—and if,' or 'if—and.' See an example in Cic. Off. 8, 9.

(c.) An ellipsis of *ut* is supposed when *ne* precedes and *et, atque, or que* is used to continue the sentence, those copulative conjunctions in such case obtaining the meaning of the adversative *sed*; as, *Mônere capit Porum, ne ultima experiri persteveraret, dâderetque se victori.* Curt.

REM. 7. Copulative conjunctions are often used, before each of two or more connected words or clauses, in order to mark the connection more forcibly; as, *Et pecunia persuadet, et grâtia, et auctoritas dicentis, et dignitas, et aspectus.* Quint. *Hoc et turpe, nec tamen tûtum.* Cic. *Nique nata est.* Id. *Et tibi et mihi voluptati fore.* Id. Before clauses the dis-

junctions are used in a similar manner; as, *Res ipsa aut invitābil aut dēhortābitur*. Id. So, also, *nunc...nunc, simul...simul, partim...partim, quā...quā, tum...tum, quum...tum*, are used before successive clauses.

REM. 8. To connect different names of the same person or thing, *sive* or *seu*, rather than *aut* or *vel*, is employed; as, *Mars sive Māvors*. Cf. § 198, 2, (c.)

REM. 9. Instead of *et* and *ut* with the negatives *nemo, nihil, nullus*, and *numquam, nēque* (or *nec*), and *ne* are used with the corresponding affirmative words *quisquam, ullus, umquam*, and *usquam*. But 'in order that no one' is rendered in Latin by *ne quis* and not by *ne quisquam*, see § 207, R. 81, (a.); as, *Hōra quidem cēdunt, et dies, et menses, et anni: nec prætēritum tempus umquam rēvertitur*. Cic. *Sēnātus dēcrēvit, dīrent ōpēram consūles, ne quid respūblīca dītrimenti cāpēret*. Cæs.

REM. 10. The conjunctions *igitur, vērū, vērūmāmēn, sed*, and *sed tāmēn*, indicate a return to the construction of the leading clause, when it has been disturbed by the insertion of another clause. These conjunctions, in such connection, are usually rendered by 'I say,' and sometimes in Latin *inquam* is so used. *Nam* also is occasionally employed in this way and very rarely *itāque*.

REM. 11. *Vēro* and *autē* are frequently omitted in adversative clauses, especially in short ones; as, *Vincēre scīt Hannibal, victōriā ūtī nescīt*. Liv. This omission often occurs in describing a progress from smaller to greater things, as in Cic. Cat. 1, 1. And it is to be remarked that *non* in the second member of such adversative sentences is used without *et* or *vēro*; as, *dīlēna vitia videt, sua non videt*. But in unreal suppositions or ironical sentences, where the second member contains the truth, *et non* or *ac non* must be used, where we may supply 'rather'; see § 198, 1, (c.); as, *Quāsi nunc id agātūr,—ac non hoc quērātūr*. Cic.

## INTERJECTIONS.

Respecting the construction of interjections with the nominative, see § 209, R. 13:—with the dative, § 228, 3:—with the accusative, § 238, 2:—and with the vocative, § 240.

## ARRANGEMENT.

### I. OF THE WORDS OF A PROPOSITION.

§ 279. 1. In arranging the parts of a proposition in English, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and the words which modify or limit it; next, the *verb* and its modifiers; then, the *object* of the verb; and finally, *prepositions* and the words depending upon them. This is called the *logical* or *natural* order.

2. (a.) In Latin, either of the four principal parts of a sentence may be placed first, and there is great freedom in the arrangement of the rest, but with this general restriction in prose, that *words which are necessary for the complete expression of a thought should not be separated by the intervention of other words*. In ordinary discourse, especially in historical writing, the following general rule for the arrangement of the parts of a sentence is for the most part observed.

(b.) In a Latin sentence, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and its modifiers; then, the *oblique cases* and other words which depend upon or modify the verb; and last of all, the *verb*.

(c.) Hence a Latin sentence regularly begins with the subject and ends with the principal verb of its predicate; as, *Dumnōrix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquinos plūrimū pōtērat*. Cæs. But the verb is often not placed at the end of a sentence, especially if the sentence is long, or if two many verbs would be thus brought together at the end. In the familiar style, also, the verb is often placed earlier in the sentence, and in explanatory clauses it is sometimes placed at the very beginning of the proposition, in which case a conjunction is generally added.

(d.) It is also to be remarked, as a further modification of the general rule of arrangement, that, in sentences containing the expression of emotion, the word whose emphasis characterizes it as especially affecting the feelings, or as forming a contrast, is placed at the beginning; as, *Cito ārescit lacrima, præsertim in alienis malis*, Quickly dries the tear, especially when shed for others' woes. Cic. *Sua vitia insipientes et suam culpam in senectutem conferunt*. Id.

(e.) If there be no *emotive* or *pathetic* word requiring prominence, the place at the end of the proposition is reserved for the *significant* word, that is, the word which is to be most strongly impressed upon the understanding or memory; as, *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres*. Cæs. *Quod ante id tempus accidit* numquam. Id. *Quod aliud iter haberent* nullum. Id. *Quæ virtus ex præcedendo est appellata* prudentia. Cic.

3. (a.) Connectives generally stand at the beginning of the clause which they introduce, and with the following this is their only position; viz. *et, enim, ac, at, atque, atque, neque* or *nec, aut, vel, sive, sin, sed, nam, verum*, and the relatives *quare, quōcirca*, and *quomobrem*.

(b.) Most other connectives generally stand in the first place, but when a particular word is peculiarly emphatic, this word with all that belongs to it stands first, and the conjunction follows it. *U*, even when there is no particular emphasis, is commonly placed after *vix, pæne*, and *prope*, and also after the negatives *nullus, nemo, nihil*, and the word *tantum*. In Cicero, *utque* stands first and *igitur* is commonly placed after the first, and sometimes after several words.

(c.) *Autem, enim*, and *vērō* (but), are placed after the first word of the clause, or after the second, when the first two belong together, or when one of them is the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *Ille enim revocatus resistere capit*. Cæs. *Ego vērō vellem, affuisses*. Cic. *Incredibile est enim, quam sit*, etc. Id. They rarely occur after several words; as, *Cur non de integro autem datum*. Id. The enclitics *que, ne, re*, are usually subjoined to the first word in a clause; but when a monosyllabic preposition stands at the beginning, they are often attached to its case; as, *Rōmam cito demigravit*, in *forōque esse cepit*; and this is always the case with *a, ad* and *ob*. So, also, for the sake of euphony, *Apud quosque*. Cic.

(d.) *Quidem* and *quōque*, when belonging to single words, are always subjoined to the emphatic word in a clause; as, *Verbo ille reus erat, re quidem vērō Oppianicus*. Cic. *Me scilicet maxime, sed proxime illum quōque perfidissimū*. Id. In negative sentences, *ne* precedes, and *quidem* follows, the emphatic word; as, *Ne ad Cātōnem quidem præcedābo*. Cic.—*Quidem* is sometimes attracted from the word to which it properly belongs to a neighboring pronoun; as, *Tibi que persuade, esse te quidem mihi carissimum, sed multo fore cariorē*, &c., instead of, *te carissimum quidem mihi esse*.—Prepositions and conjunctions belonging to the word on which the emphasis rests are placed with it between *ne* and *quidem*; as, *Ne in fānis quidem*. Cic. *Ne ad quē quidem*. Id. *Ne quum in Sicilia quidem fuit*. Id.; and even *Ne cuius rei quidem*. Id. So, also, in Cicero, *non nisi*, 'only,' are separated; and the *ne* is even be contained in a verb.

(e.) The preceding rules respecting the position of words are sometimes violated by the poets, who place even the principal verb at the beginning of a proposition; as, *Et tu, puer*, &c.

supine is formed; as, *Ne bonos omnes perditum eant* (Sall.), for *perdant*. *Ereptum eunt* (Id.), for *eripiunt*. *Ultum iri* (Tac.), for *ultus est*. *Ultum ire injurias festinat*, i. e. *ulcisci*. Sall.

REM. 3. The supine in *um* most frequently occurs with the infinitive *iri*, with which it forms the future infinitive passive; as, *Brutum visum iri a me puto*. Cic. In this construction the accusative properly depends upon the supine, and *iri* is used impersonally; 'I suppose that I am going to see Brutus.' § 184, 2, (a.) Its notion of futurity is derived from the proper signification of the active voice, as *perditum iri*, to go to destroy, the idea of intending passing easily into that of futurity.

REM. 4. But to express a purpose Latin writers in general prefer using a gerund or gerundive in the accusative with *ad* or in the genitive with *causæ* or *gratiæ*, a subjunctive clause with *ut* or *qui*, a present or future active participle, and sometimes poetically an infinitive. See § 275, R. 1, 2: §§ 262, 264, 274, and 271.

III. The supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful, agreeable, easy or difficult, worthy or unworthy, honorable or base*, and a few others; as,

*Mirabile dictu!* Wonderful to tell, or to be told! Virg. *Jucundum cognitu atque auditu*, Pleasant to be known and heard. Cic. *Res factu facilis*, A thing easy to be done. Ter. *Facilia inventu*. Gell. *Incredibile memoratu*. Sall. *Turpia dictu*. Cic. *Optimum factu*. Id.

NOTE. The principal supines in *u* in common use are *auditu, cognitu, dictu, factu, inventu, memoratu* and *natu*, which occurs in the expressions, *grandis, major, minor, maximus*, and *minimus natu*. In *magno natu*, of an advanced age, and *maxime natu filius*, the eldest son, *natu* is the ablative of a verbal substantive, since neither gerunds nor supines are joined with adjectives.

REMARK 1. The principal adjectives, after which the supine in *u* occurs, are *affabilis, arduus, asper, bonus, deformis, dignus, indignus, dulcis, durus, facilis, difficilis, factus, gravis, honestus, horrendus, incredibilis, jucundus, injucundus, magnus, memorabilis, mollis, procerus, pulcher, rarus, turpis*, and *utilis*.

REM. 2. The supine in *u* is used also after the nouns *fas, nefas*, and *opus*; as, *Hoc fas est dictu*. Cic. *Nefas dictu*. Ovid. *Dictu opus est*. Ter.—In the following examples it follows a verb: *Pudet dictu*. Tac. Agr. 32. *Dictu fastidiosa sunt*. Val. Max. 9, 13, 2.

REM. 3. As the supine in *u* is commonly translated by a passive form. It is placed under the passive voice; but, in many cases, it may with equal or greater propriety be translated actively. As a noun, its construction may be referred to the ablative of limitation. § 250.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead of the supine in *u*, an infinitive, a gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or a verbal noun in the ablative, and sometimes in the dative or accusative, may be used; as, *Ardua imitatu, ceterum cognosci utilia*. Val. Max. *Illud autem facile ad credendum est*. Cic. *Opus proscriptione dignum*. Plin. *Aqua potui jucunda*. Id. *Facilior ad intellectum atque imitationem*. Quint. With *opus est* the perfect passive participle is often used instead of the supine in *u*; as, *Opus est maturato*, There is need of haste. Cf. § 243, R. 1.

(b.) The construction with *ad* and the gerund; as, *res facilis ad intelligendum*; or with *sum* and the infinitive active; as, *facile est invenire*, is used by the best writers after *facilis, difficilis*, and *jucundus*. The most common construction of *dignus* is with *qui* and the subjunctive, (§ 264, 9), but the poets and later prose writers have joined it with the infinitive passive.

## ADVERBS.

§ 277. I. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs; as,

*Bene mōnes.* You advise well. Ter. *Fortissime urgentes*, Most vigorously pressing on. Plin. *Male narrando.* Ter. *Longe dissimilis.* Cic. *Valde bene.* Id.

REMARK 1. Adverbs may also modify nouns, when they are used as adjectives or participles, and accordingly denote a quality, or when a participle is understood. They are also joined to adjective pronouns, when their adjective-character predominates; and sometimes limit the meaning of a preposition; as, *Pōpūlus lāte rex*, for *lāte regnans*,—ruling far and wide. Virg. *Nihil admōdum*, Nothing at all. Cic. *Hōmo plāne noster*,—entirely ours, that is, devoted to us. Id. *Hōmērus plāne orātor.* Id. *Admōdum puella.* Liv. *Lāte tyrannus.* Hor. *Grāvibus sup̄ne ictibus conflictābantur*, i. e. *sup̄erne accidentibus.* Tac. *Multārum circa ciuitātum*, i. e. neighboring cities. Liv.

REM. 2. (a.) Most of the modifications made by adverbs may also be made by means of the various cases of nouns and adjectives, and many modifications may be made by these, for expressing which no adverbs are in use. In general those limitations which are most common can be expressed by adverbs; as, *stip̄ienter* for *cum stip̄entiā*; *hic* for *in hoc loco*; *bene* for *in bōno mōdo*; *nunc* for *hoc tempore*.—(b.) The following are examples of other parts of speech used adverbially, viz. *Nihil*, 'in no way'; *nonnihil*, 'in some measure'; *quidquam*, 'at all'; *aliquid*, 'somewhat'; *quid?* 'why?'

REM. 3. A negative adverb, modifying another negative word, destroys the negation; as,

*Non pārere nōlūt.* He was not unwilling to obey. Nep. *Haud ignāra mālī*, Not ignorant of evil. Virg. *Haud nihil est*, It is something. Ter. *Nec hoc illi non vidēt.* And this he clearly perceived. Cic. *So, nonnulli*, some; *nonnumquam*, sometimes. *Non*, before a negative word, commonly heightens the affirmative sense, while it softens the expression; as, *Hōmo non indoctus*, i. e. *hōmo s̄ane doctus*. *Non s̄emel*, i. e. *s̄apius*; *non ignōro*, *non nescio*, *non sum nescius*, I know very well. *Qui mortem in mālīs pōnit*, *non pōtest eam non timere*,—must needs fear it. Cic.

REM. 4. When the subject and predicate of a proposition are both modified by negative words, and also when the predicate contains two negatives, the proposition is affirmative; as,

*Nemo non videt.* Every one sees. Cic. *Nēque h̄ac non evēnērunt.* And this indeed took place. So, if both the antecedent and the predicate of a relative clause are negative, the proposition is affirmative; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat*, Every body knows. Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) But in the case of *non* followed by *ne—quidem*, the two negatives do not destroy each other; as, *Non fūgio ne hos quidem mōres*: and when the negative leading proposition has subordinate subdivisions with *nēque—nēque, nēve—nēve*, or *non—non*, these negative particles are equivalent to *aut—aut*; as, *Non me carminibus vincet, nec Orpheus, nec Lānus.* Virg. *Nēm̄nem, non re, non verbo, non vultu dēnique offēdi.* Cic. *Nullius rei nēque pr̄as, nēque maneps factus est.* Nep.

(b.) In a few passages, however, two negatives in Latin, as in Greek, strengthen the negation, and this exception appears to have been derived from the language of common life; as, *Jūra te non nōctūrā hōmīni nēmīni.* Plaut.

(c.) *Nemo, nullus, nihil*, and *numquam* have a different sense according as the *non* is placed before or after them; as, *Non nemo*, some one; *nemo non*, every one; *non nulli*, some; *nullus non*, every; *non nihil*, something; *nihil non*, every thing; *non numquam*, sometimes; *numquam non*, at all times. So, *nusquam non*, every where, but instead of *nonnusquam, aliquibi* is used.

REM. 6. (a.) *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non mōdo* or *non solum*, when followed, in a subsequent clause, by *ne quidem*, if both clauses have the same verb, and if the verb is contained in the second clause; as,



*Mihi non modo irasci, sed ne dolere quidem impune licet*, which is equivalent to *Mihi non modo non irasci, sed ne dolere quidem impune licet*, or *Mihi non modo irasci, sed dolere quidem impune non licet*. Not only am I not permitted to be angry, but not even to grieve with impunity. Cic. *Quum senatui non solum iudicare rempublicam, sed ne lagere quidem liceret*. Id.

(b.) *Non* is also rarely omitted after *non modo* when followed by *sed* or *ceterum* with *etiam*, and also after *viz*; as, *Qui non modo ea futura timebat, ceterum etiam fert, sustinetque presentia*, Who not only does not fear.... Cic. *Hec genera virtutum non solum in moribus nostris, sed viz jam in libris reperiuntur*, These virtues are not only not found in life, but scarcely in books. Id.

REM. 7. *Facile*, in the sense of *undoubtedly, clearly*, is joined to superlatives, and words of similar import; as, *Vir unus totius Græciæ facile doctissimus*. Cic. *Homo regionis illius virtute facile princeps*. Id.

REM. 8. Sentences are often united by means of an adverb which is repeated before each of the connected clauses; as, *modo—modo*, and *nunc—nunc*, (sometimes—sometimes); as, *Modo hoc, modo illud dicit; modo huc, modo illuc volat*. Instead of the second *modo* other particles of time are sometimes used; as, *aliquando, nonnumquam, interdum, sæpius, tum* or *deinde*.—*Partim—partim*, 'partly—partly,' is sometimes used with a genitive or the preposition *ex*, in the sense of *alii—alii*, as a nominative in all the genders; as, *Quum partim e nobis ita timidi sunt, ut, etc., partim ita republicâ diversi, ut, etc.*—*Simul—simul*, 'as well—as,' like *nunc—nunc*, is not found in Cicero.—*Quâ—quâ* is equivalent to *et—et*.—*Tum—tum* is used sometimes like *modo—modo*, sometimes like *partim—partim*; as *Eruptunt sæpe vitia amicorum tum in ipso amico, tum in alieno*. Cic. *Hec (beneficia) tum in universam rempublicam, tum in singulos cives conferuntur*. Id.

REM. 9. *Quum—tum* is equivalent to *et—et*, except in assigning a greater importance to the second part; hence it must be translated by 'both—and especially,' 'not only—but also,' or 'but more particularly.' Sometimes additional weight is given to the second part by means of *cetero, certe, etiam, quoque, præcipue, imprimis* or *maxime*. This use of *quum—tum* seems to have had its origin in the use of *quum* with the subjunctive and often with the indicative in the protasis, followed by *tum* in the apodosis. When *quum* followed by *tum* serves to express the opposition between single words which have the same verb, it is to be regarded as a complete adverb; as, *Fortiana quum in reliquis rebus, tum præcipue in bello plurimum potest*. Sometimes the verb stands in the first part of the sentence; as, *Quum omnis arrogantia odiosa est, tum illa ingenii atque eloquentiæ multo molestissima*. *Tum* is sometimes repeated in the second part of the sentence; as, *Quem pater moriens quum tutoribus et propinquis, tum legibus, tum æquitati magistratum, tum iudiciis vestris commendatum putavit*. Cic. Sometimes the gradation is, *quum—tum—tum vero*.

REM. 10. *Non modo—sed etiam* (or *non solum, or non tantum—ceterum etiam*) generally expresses the transition from less important to more important things, like the English 'not only—but (also)'. The transition from greater to smaller things is expressed by *non modo—sed*, without the *etiam*, which we render in English by 'I will not say—but only,' and in Latin, too, we may say *non dicam or non dico—sed*; as, *Quid est enim minus non dico brutoris, sed hominis*.

REM. 11. *Tam—quam* expresses a comparison in degree; as, *Nemo tam multa scripsit, quam multa sunt nostra*. With superlatives they are rendered into English by 'the—the' and comparatives; as, *Veteribus quam plurimum bibi, tum maxime sitiit*, The more he drinks, the more he thirsts. Cato. *Quam quique pessime fecit, tam maxime titus est*. Sall.—*Tam—quam quod maxime* signifies, 'as much as possible.'—*Non tam—quam* signifies, 'not so much—as,' or 'less—than'; as, *Provincia non tam gratioſa et illustris, quam negotioſa ac molestæ*. Cic.

REM. 12. *Non minus—quam* and *non magis—quam* are equivalent to *acque—ac*, 'as much as,' but in *non magis—quam* the greater weight is attached to the affirmative clause beginning with *quam*; as, *Alexander non ducis magis quam*

*mihi mania exsequēbatur*, Alexander performed as much the service of a soldier as that of a commander. In this connection *plus* frequently supplies the place of *magis*.

(a.) *Sic* and *ita* are demonstrative adverbs corresponding to the relative *ut*. The restrictive meaning of *ita* (see § 191, R. 5.), is sometimes made more emphatic by the addition of *tamen*. *Tentus* is used in a like restrictive sense; as, *Prædixi tantum est, ut ne mirus quidem cingi possit*, i. e. 'only so much.' Cæs.

(b.) *Ut*—*ita* or *sic* places sentences on an equality. They may sometimes be translated 'although—still,' or 'indeed—but.'—The adverb *ut*, 'as,' sometimes takes the signification of the conjunction *quod*, 'because'; as, *Atque ille, ut semper fuit optissimus, non se purgavit*. Cic.

REM. 13. In an enumeration, *primum*, *deinde*, *tum*, *dénique* are commonly preferred to the numerals, *primum*, *secundo*, (for *secundum* is not often used), *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., unless the strict succession of the numbers is required. Sometimes *tum* is used once or twice instead of *deinde*, or the series is extended by *accedit*, *huc adde*, etc. Sometimes *dénique* is followed by *postremo* to form the conclusion of a series, but often *dénique* without the other adverbs concludes a series, and is then equivalent to 'in short' or 'in fine.' See Cic. Cat. 1, 5.

REM. 14. *Minus* is often used for *non*; as, *Nonnumquam ea, quæ prædicta sunt, minus eveniunt*. Cic.—So, *si minus*—*at*, 'if not—yet'; and *sia minus*, 'but if not,' without a verb, after a preceding *si*; but with *si non* the verb is repeated.—The English 'how little' is in Latin *quam non*; and 'so little,' *ita non* or *adeo non*; as, *adeo non curabat, quid homines de se loquerentur*.

REM. 15. *Nunc* always expresses the time actually present, or the time to which a narrator transfers himself for the purpose of making his description livelier. Thus in speaking of the present time we may say, *Nunc primum somnia me elidunt* or *elaserunt*; but in a narrative we must say, *Somnia tunc primum se dicebat elasisse*. Compare the use of *hic* and *ille*. See § 207, R. 23, (c.)

REM. 16. The conjunction *dum*, 'while,' when added to negatives, becomes an adverb, signifying 'yet'; as, *nondum*, 'not yet'; *necdum*, 'and not yet'; *nuludum*, 'no one yet'; *nihiludum*, 'nothing yet.' Hence *vixdum* signifies 'scarcely yet'; as, *Vixdum epistolam tuam legeram, quum ad me Curtius venit*. Cic.—So, also, the conjunction *nisi*, by omitting its verb or uniting it with the leading verb, acquires, after negatives and negative questions, the sense of the adverb 'except,' which is generally expressed by *præterquam* or the preposition *præter*, and must be so expressed when no negative precedes. But the expression 'except that' may be rendered either by *nisi quod* or *præterquam quod*.—After *nihil aliud* we may use either *nisi* or *quam*, *nisi* referring to *nihil* and *quam* to *aliud*. Hence *nihil aliud nisi* signifies 'nothing further,' or 'nothing more,' and *nihil aliud quam*, 'nothing else,' or 'no other thing but this.'

REM. 17. *Ut*, 'as,' in interposed clauses, such as *ut opinor*, *ut puto*, *ut censeo*, *ut credo*, is frequently omitted. *Credo*, used in this manner often takes an ironical sense.

## PREPOSITIONS.

II. 1. See respecting the construction of prepositions with the accusative, § 235; and with the ablative, § 241. See, also, for the different meanings of prepositions, § 195, and for their arrangement, § 279, 10.

2. Two prepositions must not be joined in Latin, as they sometimes are in English, with the same noun; as, to speak *for* and *against* a law; or, I have learned this *with*, and, to some extent, *from* him. These sentences may be thus expressed in Latin; *pro lege et contra legem dicere*; *hæc cum eo, partim etiam ab eo didici*. Those dissyllabic prepositions only, which are sometimes used as adverbs, may follow another, without being joined with a case; as, *Quod aut secundum naturam esset, aut contra*. Cic. *Cis Padum ultraque*. Liv. Cæsar reverses the order, *Intra extraque munitiões*. B. Civ. 8, 72.

3. When nouns mutually dependent upon a preposition are in apposition, when they constitute an enumeration without a connective, and when connected by copulative, disjunctive, adversative, or comparative conjunctions, the preposition is not repeated, unless such nouns are to be distinguished from each other, or are emphatic; as,

*Quid dicam de thesauro omnium rerum, memoriâ? Hoc apparet in bestiiis, volucribus, nantibus, agrestibus, cœcūribus, fœris, ut se ipsam diligant.* Cic. *Sepissime inter me et Scipionem de amicitia disserēbatur.* Id. *Quid faceres si in aliquam domum villamve venisses?* Id. *Nihil per iram aut cupiditatem actum est.* Id. *Thémistocles non minus in rebus gerendis promptus quam excogitandis erat.* Nep.

4. The monosyllabic prepositions *ab*, *ad*, *de*, *ex*, and *in* are often used before each of two nouns connected by *et*, etc., especially if the qualities denoted by such nouns are to be considered separately. If the nouns are separated by *et—et*, *nec—nec*, etc., the prepositions must be repeated; as, *Ut eorum et in bellis et in civilibus officiis vigent industria.* Cic.—*Inter* is frequently repeated by Cicero after *interesse*, and other writers repeat it after other verbs also; as, *Quid intersit inter popularem—civem, et inter constantem, severum et gravem.* Cic. *Certatum inter Ap. Claudium maxime fuerunt et inter P. Decium.* Liv.

5. (a.) In poetry a preposition is occasionally omitted with the first of two nouns, and put with the second only; as, *Quos nemora, aut quos agor in specus,* (Hor.) for, *in quos nemora aut in quos specus agor.* So, Hor. Ep. 2, 1, 25.—(b.) An ellipsis of a preposition with the relative pronoun sometimes occurs, together with that of the verb belonging to the preceding demonstrative; as, *In eadem opinione fui, quâ reliqui omnes,* (Cic.), properly *in quâ reliqui omnes fuerunt.*

## CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 278. Copulative, disjunctive, and other coördinate conjunctions, connect similar constructions.

NOTE 1. Clauses are similarly constructed, which are mutually independent, whose subjects and verbs are in the same case and mood, and which have either no dependence or a similar dependence on another clause.

NOTE 2. (a.) Words have a similar construction, when they stand in the same relation to some other word or words in the sentence. Hence,

(b.) Conjunctions connect the same cases of nouns and pronouns, dependent, if the cases are oblique, upon the same government; the same number, case, and gender of adjectives, belonging to the same noun; the same mood of verbs, either independent, or alike dependent; adverbs qualifying the same verbs, adjectives, etc.; and prepositions on which depends the same noun or pronoun; as, *Onidunt venti, fugiuntque nubes,* The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. Hor. *Locum, quem et non cœquii sol, et tangit ros.* Varr. *Ludi decem per dies, facti sunt, neque res ulla prætermissa est.* Cic. *Vides, ut alia etel nive candidum Socrate, nec jam sustineant unus silvas laborantes, gelique flumina constiterint acuto.* Hor. *Intelligitis et animum ei præsto fuisse, nec consilium defuisse.* Cic. *Gèneri animantium omni est a natura tributum, ut se tueatur, declinetque ea, quæ nocitura videantur.* Id. *Aut nemo, aut Cato sapiens fuit.* Id. *Pulvis et umbra sumus.* Hor. *Si tu et Tullia vâletis, ego et Cicero vâlemus.* Cic. *Aggère jacto turribusque constitutis.* Cæs. *Clarus et honoratus vir, An illustris et honorabile man.* Id. *Cæsar Remos cohortatus, liberaliterque oratione præsecutus.* Cæs. *Pater tuus, quem cœui et dilexi.* Cic. *Belgæ spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem.* Cæs. *Nâvibus junctis, râtibusque compluribus factis.* Id. *Læge, vel tabellas redde.* Plant. *Allobroges trans Rhodânnum viros possessionesque habebant.* Cæs. *Quum triumphum egêris, censorque fueris, et obieris legatus.* Id. *Quum ad oppidum accessisset, castrâque ibi pônere.* Cæs.

*Ades animo, et omitte timorem.* Cic. *Ea vidēre ac perspicere potestis.* Id. *Graviter et copiose diuise dicitur.* Id. *Cum fratre an sine.* Id. Cf. § 277, II. 2. *Cui carmina corā, nūmēroque intēdēre nervi.* Virg. *Nec census, nec clārum nōmen dēvrum, sed prōbitas magnos ingēniumque facit.* Ovid. *Philosophi nūgant quemquam virum bonum esse, nisi sapiētem.* Cic. *Glōria virtutē tamquam umbra sequitur.* Id.

REMARK 1. Copulative conjunctions may connect either single words and phrases or entire clauses; the other conjunctions, whether coördinate or subordinate, connect clauses only.

REM. 2. Words thus connected are sometimes in different cases, though in the same construction; as, *Meū et respūblicę intērest.* Cic. (See § 219.) *Sive es Rōmę, sive in Epīro.* Id. (See §§ 221 and 254. But see also § 221, Note.) *In Metiū descendat iudicis aures, et patris et nostras.* Hor. See § 211, R. 3. In like manner, *Hannibal non aliter vinci potuit, quam morā.*

REM. 3. As the subjunctive is often used for the imperative, they may be connected by coördinate conjunctions; as, *Disce nec invidas.* Pers.

REM. 4. Where the purpose of the writer requires it, coördinate conjunctions sometimes connect independent propositions, whose verbs are in different moods; as, *Stuporem hōmīnis; vel dicam pēciū, vidēte.* Cic. *Nec scitis scio, nec, et sciam, dicere ausim.* Liv.

REM. 5. *Et* is used after *multi* followed by another adjective, where in English 'and' is usually omitted; as, *Multa et magnę arborēs,* Many large trees. In such cases *et* supplies the place of *et is*, introducing a more accurate description. See § 207, R. 26, (c.)

REM. 6. The conjunction is often omitted; as, (a.) When two single words, as comprehending the whole idea, are opposed to each other, as, *velim, nolim*, whether I would or not; *maxima minima*, the greatest as well as the least; *prima postrema*, from the first to the last; *dignos indignos dāre; ire, redire*, to go to and fro. *Edificiis omnibus publicis privatis, sacris profanis sic peperci.* Cic. *Nam glōriam, hōnorem, impērium bonus ignavus æque sibi exoptant.* Sall. C. 11.

(b.) *Et* is very frequently omitted between the names of two colleagues; as, *Consules dēclārati sunt Cn. Pompeius M. Crassus. P. Lentulo L. Triario, questoribus urbānis.* Cic. Sometimes, also, when the two persons are not colleagues. It is also occasionally omitted between two words in the oratorical style; as, *Adērunt amīci, propinqui.* Id.; also with verbs; as, *Adsunt, quēruntur Sicili.* Id. In good prose, if three or more substantives are joined, it is usual either wholly to omit the conjunction or to insert it between each. The following may serve as an example of both cases: *Qui non mōdo Cūriis, Cātōnibus, Pompeiis, antiquis illis, sed his rēcentibus, Māriis et Didiis et Celiis commēmōrandis jacebant.* This is also the common practice with adjectives and verbs, and hence when *et* has not previously occurred in an enumeration of persons or things, we should not conclude the enumeration with *et alii, et reliqui, et cētera*, etc., but should make use of the adjectives alone, *alii, reliqui, cētera*, etc. But though *et, ac* and *atque* are not used alone in the third or fourth place, yet the enclitic *que* frequently occurs in this position; as, *Præcor ut ea res vobis pācem, tranquillitatem, dēum, concordiamque affērat.* Cic. *Et* may be supplied also when two protases introduced by *si* are joined together; where we say 'if—and if,' or 'if—and.' See an example in Cic. Off. 3, 9.

(c.) An ellipsis of *ut* is supposed when *ne* precedes and *et, atque, or que* is used to continue the sentence, those copulative conjunctions in such case obtaining the meaning of the adversative *sed*; as, *Mōnere capit Pōrum, ne ultima expēriti perēvērāret, dēderetque se victōri.* Curt.

REM. 7. Copulative conjunctions are often used, before each of two or more connected words or clauses, in order to mark the connection more forcibly; as, *Et pēcūnia persuādet, et grātia, et auctōritas dēcentis, et dignitas, et postremo aspectus.* Quint. *Hoc et turpe, nec tāmēn tātum.* Cic. *Nēque nata est, et aeterna est.* Id. *Et tibi et mihi voluptātī fōre.* Id. Before clauses the disjunctive con-

junctions are used in a similar manner; as, *Res ipsa aut innotabit aut dehortabitur*. Id. So, also, *nunc...nunc, simul...simul, partim...partim, quā...quā, tum...tum, quum...tum*, are used before successive clauses.

REM. 8. To connect different names of the same person or thing, *sive* or *seu*, rather than *aut* or *vel*, is employed; as, *Mars sive Mavors*. Cf. § 198, 2, (c.)

REM. 9. Instead of *et* and *ut* with the negatives *nemo, nihil, nullus*, and *numquam, neque* (or *nec*), and *ne* are used with the corresponding affirmative words *quisquam, ullus, umquam, and usquam*. But 'in order that no one' is rendered in Latin by *ne quis* and not by *ne quisquam*, see § 207, R. 31, (a.); as, *Hōis quidem cēdunt, et dies, et menses, et anni: nec praelēritum tempus umquam revertitur*. Cic. *Sēnātus dēcrēvit, dārent opēram consules, ne quid respūblica dētrimenti cāperet*. Cæs.

REM. 10. The conjunctions *igitur, vērū, vērūtmēn, sed, and sed tāmēn*, indicate a return to the construction of the leading clause, when it has been disturbed by the insertion of another clause. These conjunctions, in such connection, are usually rendered by 'I say,' and sometimes in Latin *inquam* is so used. *Nam* also is occasionally employed in this way and very rarely *itāque*.

REM. 11. *Vēro* and *autē* are frequently omitted in adversative clauses, especially in short ones; as, *Vincere scit Hannibal, victoriā ūti nescit*. Liv. This omission often occurs in describing a progress from smaller to greater things, as in Cic. Cat. 1, 1. And it is to be remarked that *non* in the second member of such adversative sentences is used without *et* or *vēro*; as, *aliēna vitia videt, sua non videt*. But in unreal suppositions or ironical sentences, where the second member contains the truth, *et non* or *ac non* must be used, where we may supply 'rather'; see § 198, 1, (c.); as, *Quasi nunc id agātur,—ac non hoc quēratur*. Cic.

## INTERJECTIONS.

Respecting the construction of interjections with the nominative, see § 209, R. 13:—with the dative, § 228, 3:—with the accusative, § 238, 2:—and with the vocative, § 240.

## ARRANGEMENT.

### I. OF THE WORDS OF A PROPOSITION.

§ 279. 1. In arranging the parts of a proposition in English, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and the words which modify or limit it; next, the *verb* and its modifiers; then, the *object* of the verb; and finally, *prepositions* and the words depending upon them. This is called the *logical* or *natural* order.

2. (a.) In Latin, either of the four principal parts of a sentence may be placed first, and there is great freedom in the arrangement of the rest, but with this general restriction in prose, that *words which are necessary for the complete expression of a thought should not be separated by the intervention of other words*. In ordinary discourse, especially in historical writing, the following general rule for the arrangement of the parts of a sentence is for the most part observed.

(b.) In a Latin sentence, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and its modifiers; then, the *oblique cases* and other words which depend upon or modify the verb; and last of all, the *verb*.

(c.) Hence a Latin sentence regularly begins with the subject and ends with the principal verb of its predicate; as, *Dumnōrix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sequēnos plāritum pōterat*. Cæs. But the verb is often not placed at the end of a sentence, especially if the sentence is long, or if two many verbs would be thus brought together at the end. In the familiar style, also, the verb is often placed earlier in the sentence, and in explanatory clauses it is sometimes placed at the very beginning of the proposition, in which case a conjunction is generally added.

(d.) It is also to be remarked, as a further modification of the general rule of arrangement, that, in sentences containing the expression of emotion, the word whose emphasis characterizes it as especially affecting the feelings, or as forming a contrast, is placed at the beginning; as, *Cito ārescit lacrima, præsertim in aliēnis malis*, Quickly dries the tear, especially when shed for others' woes. Cic. *Sua vitia insipientes et suam culpam in senectutem conferrunt*. Id.

(e.) If there be no *emotive* or *pathetic* word requiring prominence, the place at the end of the proposition is reserved for the *significant* word, that is, the word which is to be most strongly impressed upon the understanding or memory; as, *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres*. Cæs. *Quod ante id tempus accidisset numquam*. Id. *Quod aliud iter haberent nullum*. Id. *Quæ virtus ex providendo est appellata prudentia*. Cic.

3. (a.) Connectives generally stand at the beginning of the clause which they introduce, and with the following this is their only position; viz. *et, ūtēnim, ac, at, atque, atque, nēque* or *nec, aut, vel, sive, sin, sed, nam, vērūm*, and the relatives *quāre, quōcirca*, and *quomobrem*.

(b.) Most other connectives generally stand in the first place, but when a particular word is peculiarly emphatic, this word with all that belongs to it stands first, and the conjunction follows it. *Ūt*, even when there is no particular emphasis, is commonly placed after *viz, pene, and prope*, and also after the negatives *nullus, nemo, nihil*, and the word *tantum*. In Cicero, *utque* stands first and *igitur* is commonly placed after the first, and sometimes after several words.

(c.) *Autem, enim, and vērō* (but), are placed after the first word of the clause, or after the second, when the first two belong together, or when one of them is the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *Ille enim rēbācūs resistere cepit*. Cæs. *Ego vērō vellem, affuisses*. Cic. *Incrēdibile est enim, quā sit*, etc. Id. They rarely occur after several words; as, *Cūr non de integro autem dātum*. Id. The enclitics *que, ne, te*, are usually subjoined to the first word in a clause; but when a monosyllabic preposition stands at the beginning, they are often attached to its case; as, *Rōmam Cito dēmigrāvit*, in *forūque esse cepit*; and this is always the case with *a, ad* and *ob*. So, also, for the sake of euphony, *Apud quosque*. Cic.

(d.) *Quidem* and *quōque*, when belonging to single words, are always subjoined to the emphatic word in a clause; as, *Verbo ille reus erat, re quidem vērō Oppianicus*. Cic. *Me scilicet maxime, sed proxime illum quōque fēfelligem*. Id. In negative sentences, *ne* precedes, and *quidem* follows, the emphatic word; as, *Ne ad Cātōnem quidem prōvēcābo*. Cic.—*Quidem* is sometimes attracted from the word to which it properly belongs to a neighboring pronoun; as, *Tibique persuāde, esse te quidem mihi carissimum, sed multo fore cariorē, si, etc.*, instead of *te carissimum quidem mihi esse*.—Prepositions and conjunctions belonging to the word on which the emphasis rests are placed with it between *ne* and *quidem*; as, *Ne in fānis quidem*. Cic. *Ne si dubitētur quidem*. Id. *Ne quum in Siciliā quidem fuit*. Id.; and even *Ne cuius rei arguēretur quidem*.—So, also, in Cicero, *non nisi*, 'only,' are separated; and the negative may even be contained in a verb.

(e.) The preceding rules respecting the position of connectives are often violated by the poets, who place even the prepositive conjunctions after one or more words of a proposition; as, *Et tu, pōtes nam, etc.* Hor. *Vivos et rōdēret*

*ungues*. Id. They even separate *et* from the word belonging to it; as, *Andræ et videor pios errare per lacos*. Id. So, *Auctius atque diu melius fecere*. Id. And they sometimes append *que* and *ve* neither to the first word, nor to their proper words in other connections; as, *Messallam terrâ dum sequiturque mari*, instead of *terrâ marique*. Tib. In such arbitrary positions, however, these conjunctions are almost invariably joined to verbs only:

4. When a word is repeated in the same clause, so that one is opposed to, or distinguished from, the other, they must stand together; as, *Hominēs hominibus maxime utiles esse possunt*. Cic. *Equites alii alio lapsi sunt*. Liv. *Lēgitur virum vir*. Virg. *Mānus mānum levat*. Petr. So, also, the personal and possessive pronouns; as, *Séquere quo tua te natura ducit*. *Suum se negotium agere dicunt*.

5. Words used antithetically are also placed near each other; as, *Dum tacent, clamant*. Cic. *Fragile corpus animus sempiternus movet*. Id.

6. *Inquam* and often *aiō*, introducing a quotation, follow one or more of the words quoted; as, '*Non nosti quid pater*,' inquit, '*Chrysippus dicat*.' Hor. '*Quid*,' aiō, '*tua crimina prōdis*?' Ovid. When a nominative is added to inquit, it usually follows this verb; as, *Mihi vērō*, inquit Cotta, *videtur*. Cic.—*Dicit* and *dixit* are used like *inquit* only by the poets.

7. (a.) The adjective may be placed before or after its noun according as one or the other is emphatic, the more emphatic word being placed before the other. When any thing is dependent on the adjective, it usually follows its noun. When a noun is limited by another noun, as well as by an adjective, the adjective usually precedes both; as, *Ulla officii præcepta*. Cic. *Tuum erga dignitatem meam studium*. Id.

(b.) Demonstratives, and the adjectives *primus*, *medius*, etc., when signifying the first part, the middle part, etc., (see § 205, R. 17), usually precede their nouns; as, *Ea res*. Cæs. *His ipsis verbis*. Cic. *Mēdia nox*. Cæs. *Rēliqua Egyptus*. Cic.

8. Monosyllables are usually prefixed to longer words with which they are connected; as, *Vir clarissimus*. Cic. *Di immortales*. *Res innumerabiles*. *Vis tempestatis*. Cæs.

9. (a.) When nouns are put in apposition, the one which explains or defines the other is generally put last, unless it is to be made emphatic; as, *Opes irritamenta malorum*. Ovid. Hence names of honors or dignities, and every thing of the nature of a title, are commonly placed after the proper name, as explanatory additions. Thus, especially, the names of changeable Roman dignities; as, *Cicero consul*; *C. Cæroni* tribūno plēbis; but also permanent appellations; as, *Ennius poeta*; *Plato philosophus*; *Diogenes tyrannus*; and such epithets as *vir honestissimus*; *homo doctissimus*. But the hereditary title *rex* is frequently placed before the name; as, *rex Dsiotārus*; and so the title *Impērator* after it became permanent.

(b.) In the arrangement of the Roman names of persons, the *prænomen* stands first, next the *nomen* or name of the *gens*, third the *cognomen* or name of the *familia*, and last the *agnomen*; as, *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus*. The *prænomen* is usually denoted by a letter. In the imperial times the *nomen* is often either omitted or follows as something subordinate.

10. (a.) Oblique cases precede the words on which they depend, but they follow prepositions; as,

*Pōpuli Rōmāni laus est*. Cic. *Laudis dōdā*, pēcūniæ libērales. Sall. *Cunctis esto benignus, nulli blandus, paucis familiāris, omnibus æquus*. Sen. *Mōnimentum erē pērennius*. Hor. *Hanc tibi dōno dō*. Ter.—*Ad mēritāem spectans*. Cic. *Extra pēriculum*. Id.

(b.) Genitives depending upon neuter adjectives are commonly placed last; as, *Incerta fortūna*. Liv. *Nec tibi plus cordis, sed minus ōris inest*. Ovid.

**REMARK.** This rule, so far especially as it relates to genitives, is in a great degree arbitrary, as the position of the governed and governing words depends on the idea to be expressed; thus, *mors patris tui*, contrasts the death with the preceding life; but, *fratris tui mors* distinguishes this case of death from others. Hence we say, *animi motus, animi morbus, corporis partes, terræ motus*.—An objective genitive usually follows the word on which it depends; as, *una significatione* litterarum, by means of a single notice by letters.—When several genitives are dependent on one noun, the subjective genitive commonly precedes and the objective genitive may either precede or follow the governing noun.—The genitive dependent on *causâ* or *gratui*, 'on account of,' regularly precedes these ablatives; as, *gloriæ causâ mortem obire*; *emolumentum sui gratiâ*.

(c.) When a noun which is governed by a preposition, is modified by other words which precede it, the preposition usually stands before the words by which the noun is modified; as, *A primâ luce ad sextam horam*. Liv. *Ad animi mei lætitiâ*. Cic. *Ad bene beatæque viventium*. Id.

(d.) Sometimes, however, the preposition comes between its noun and an adjective or a genitive, by which the noun is modified; as, *Nullâ in re*. Cic. *Iustis de causis*. Id. *Suos inter æquales*. Id. *Hanc ob causam*. Id. *Magno cum metu*. Id. *Quâ in urbe*. Id. *Eâ in re*. Id. *Elâtiis suis cum primis*. Nep.—So, also, a conjunction may follow the preposition; as, *Post vëro Sulla victoriam*.

(e.) *Per*, in adjunctions, is often separated from its case by other words; as, *Per ego te deos oro*. Ter.—In the poets, other prepositions are sometimes separated in the same manner; as, *Vulnëra, quæ circum plurima muros accipit patrias*. Virg.

(f.) *Tenus* and *versus*, and sometimes other prepositions, (cf. § 241, R. 1.) follow their cases, especially when joined with *qui* or *hic*. This occurs most frequently with the prepositions *ante*, *contra*, *inter*, and *propter*; more rarely with *circa*, *circum*, *pænes*, *ultra* and *adversus*; and with still less frequency with *post*, *per*, *ad*, and *de*; as, *quam ante, quem contra, quos inter, quem propter, quos ad, quem ultra, hunc adversus, hunc post, quam circa*.—The preceding prepositions, and more rarely others also, sometimes, especially in the poets and later prose writers, follow nouns and personal pronouns. In such case, if the noun be modified by an adjective or a genitive, the preposition sometimes stands between them, and sometimes follows both; as, *Postes sub ipsos*. Virg. *Ripam apud Euphratidis*. Tac. *Maria omnia circum*. Virg. And more rarely other words intervene; as, *His accensa super*. Id. *Vitis nemo sine nascitur*. Hor.

11. Infinitives precede the verbs on which they depend; as,

*Jugurtha, ubi eos Africâ ducessisse ratus est, neque propter loci naturam Cirtem armis expugnare possit, mania circumdat*. Sall. *Servire magis quam impirare parati estis*. Id.

12. A word which has the same relation to several words, either precedes or follows them all; as, *Vir gravis et sapiens*. Cic. *Clarus et honoratus vir*. Id. *In scriptoribus legendis et imitandis*, or *In legendis imitandisque scriptoribus*; but not *In legendis scriptoribus et imitandis*. *Quum respondere neque vellet neque posset*. *Habentur et dicuntur tyranni*. *Amicitiam nec usu nec ratione habent cognitam*.

13. Relatives are commonly placed after their antecedents, and as near to them as possible; as,

*Qui sim, ex eo, quem ad te misi, cognosces*. Sall. *Litteras ad te misi, per quas gratias tibi ago*. Cic.

14. *Quisque* is generally placed after *se*, *suis*, *qui*, ordinals and superlatives; as, *Suos quisque debet tueri*. Cic. *Satis superque est sibi suorum cuique rerum cura*. Id. *Severitas animadversionis infimo cuique gratissima*. Id. *Maxime dicet, quod est cuiusque maxime suum*. Id. *Quisque* very rarely begins a proposition.



15. (a.) An adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it qualifies; but if the same word is modified by the oblique case of a noun, the latter commonly follows the adverb; as, *Māle parā māle dilābuntur*. Cic. *Nihil tam asperum neque tam difficile esse, quod non cupidissime facturi essent*. Sall.—*Impetium facile iis artibus retinetur, quibus initio partum est*. Id. *Sed maxime adolescentium familiaritates appetēbat*. Id. *Non tam in bellis et in praeliis, quam in promissis et fide firmiterem*. Cic.—(b.) When *non* belongs to a single word of the proposition, it always stands immediately before it; as, *non te reprehendo, sed fortunam*. But if it belongs to the proposition generally, it stands before the verb, and particularly before the finite verb, if an infinitive depends on it; as, *Cur tantopere te angas, intelligere sone non possum*. Instead of *non dico, nego* is generally used; as, *negavit eum adesse*.—The negatives *non, neque, nemo, nullus*, when joined to general negative pronouns or adverbs, such as *quisquam, ullus, umquam*, always precede them though not always immediately; as, *nemini quidquam negavit; non memini me umquam te vidisse*. § 207, R. 31.

NOTE 1. In some phrases, custom has established a certain order, which must be observed and imitated; as, *Civis Romanus, populus Romanus, jus civile, as alienum, terra marique, Pontifex maximus, magister equitum, tribunus militum, tribum militum consulari potestate, Jupiter optimus maximus, via Appia; ne quid respublica detrimenti capiat*. Cic. The ablatives *opinione, spe, iusto, solito*, (see § 256, R. 9), generally precede the comparative.

NOTE 2. Exceptions to the foregoing principles are very numerous. These may arise (a) from emphasis; (b) from poetic license; and (c) from regard to the harmony of the sentence. The following general rule sometimes modifies nearly all the preceding.

16. The emphatic word is placed before the word or words connected with it which are not emphatic.

NOTE 3. The last place is often an emphatic one, except for the verb. When the verb is neither first nor last in a proposition the word before it is emphatic. An adjective, when emphatic, commonly precedes its substantive; when not emphatic, it commonly follows it. But with the demonstrative pronouns the rule is reversed.

NOTE 4. The principal poetical variation in the arrangement of words consists in the separation of the adjective from its noun, and in putting together words from different parts of a proposition.

17. A sentence should not close like a hexameter verse, with a dactyl and spondee; as, *Esse videtur*; nor, in general, with a monosyllable.

18. *Hiatus* should be avoided; that is, a word beginning with a vowel should not follow a word ending with a vowel.

19. A concurrence of long words or long measures,—of short words or short measures,—of words beginning alike or ending alike,—should be avoided.

## II. OF THE ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

§ 280. A compound sentence, whose clauses are united as protasis and apodosis, or in which the leading clause is divided by the insertion of one or more subordinate clauses, is called a *period*.

1. (a.) In the former kind of period the protasis must precede the apodosis; as, *Quum Pausanias semianimis de templo elatus esset, confestim animam efflavit*. When Pausanias had been carried out of the temple but just alive, he immediately expired. In a period of the latter kind the verb of the principal proposition is placed at the end, and the subordinate clauses between the parts of the leading clause; as, *Pausanias, quum semianimis de templo elatus esset, confestim animam efflavit*, Pausanias, when he had been carried out of the temple but just alive, immediately expired. Nep.

(b.) A sentence, such as *Scipio exercitum in Africam trajecit, ut Hannibalem ex Italia deduceret*, is not periodic in its structure, but it becomes so when we

say, *Scipio, ut Hannibalem ex Italiâ deduceret, exercitum in Africam trajecit*. Periods in which the subordinate clause precedes with two conjunctions; as, *Quum igitur Rômam venisset, statim imperatorem adiit*, are made still more strictly periodic by placing first the conjunction which belongs to the whole, and then inserting the subordinate proposition; as, *Itaque, quum Rômam venisset, statim imperatorem adiit*.

2. (a.) If the verbs of the leading and dependent clauses have the same subject, or the same noun depending on them, they are commonly formed into a period; as, *Antigonus, quum adversus Seleucum Lysimachumque dimicaret, in proelio occisus est*. Nep. *Quem, ut barbari incendium effugisse minus viderunt, talis missis interfecerunt*. Id.

(b.) So, also, when the noun which depends on the verb of the leading clause is the subject of the dependent clause; as, *L. Manlio, quum dictator fuisset, M. Pomponius, tribunus plebis, diem dixit*. Cic.

3. When obscurity would arise from separating the leading subject and verb by dependent words or clauses, they are often placed together at the beginning or end of the sentence; as, *Lætæ (sunt) deinde luges, non solum quæ regni suspitione consilium absciderent, sed quæ adeo in contrarium verterent, ut populum etiam facerent*. Liv. The position of the leading verb is also often otherwise varied, from regard to emphasis, to avoid monotony, or to prevent its meeting with the verb of the last dependent clause; but clauses, when so arranged, do not constitute a period.

4. When one clause is interrupted by the introduction of another, the latter should be finished before the first is resumed.

5. Clauses expressing a *cause*, a *condition*, a *time*, or a *comparison*, usually precede the clauses to which they relate.

6. A short clause usually stands before, rather than after, a long one.

### III. OF THE CONNECTION OF CLAUSES.

(1.) In connecting propositions, relatives, whether pronouns, pronominal adjectives, or adverbs, are often employed in order to avoid the too frequent recurrence of *et*, *autem*, and certain other conjunctions. Every relative may be used for this purpose instead of its corresponding demonstrative with *et*; as, *qui* for *et* is, *quâlis* for *et tâlis*, *quo* for *et eo*, etc. They are used also before those conjunctions which are joined with *et* or *autem* at the beginning of a proposition; as, *si, nisi, ut, quum*, etc. (see § 208, (14.)); as, *quod quum audivissem, quod si fecissem, quod quamvis non ignorassem, for et quum hoc, et si hoc, et quamvis hoc; or quum autem hoc*, etc.; and, often, also, where in English no conjunction is used, and even before other relatives; as, *quod qui facit, eum ego impium iudico*, i. e. *et qui hoc facit, or, qui autem hoc facit*. In the ablative with comparatives the relative is often used as a connective; as, *Cato, quo nemo tum erat prudentior*, i. e. *Cato, who was more prudent than all others*.

(2.) In propositions consisting of two members, the relative pronoun is joined grammatically either to the apodosis or to the protasis; with the former in, *Qui, quum ex eo quaereretur, cur tam diu vellet esse in vitâ, Nihil habeo, inquit, quod accûsem senectutem*. Cic. de Sen. 6. But is more frequent with the protasis or secondary clause; as, *A quo quum quaereretur, quid maxime expedit, respondit*. Cic. Off. 2, 25. When it is thus joined with the protasis, the nominative of the demonstrative is supplied with the apodosis from another case of the relative in the protasis, as, in the preceding passage, from the ablative. But for the sake of emphasis the demonstrative may be expressed, and frequently, also, for the sake of clearness; as, *Qui mos quum a posteroribus non esset retentus, Arcesilas eum revocavit*. Cic. de Fin. 2, 1. The accusative is sometimes to be supplied; as, *Qui (Hæcilius) quoniam intelligi noluit, omittamus*. Cic. N. D. 3, 14. When the demonstrative precedes, and is followed by a proposition consisting of two members, the relative is attached to the prota-

sis, which is placed first, and not to the leading clause or apodosis; as, *Ea sudai Pompeio, quibus ille si paruisset, Caesar tantas opes, quantas nunc habet, non haberet.* Cic. Fam. 6, 6. *Noli aduersus eos me velle ducere, cum quibus ne contra te arma ferrem, Italiam reliqui.* Nep. Att. 4.

(3.) Where in English we use 'however' with the relative; as, He promised me many things, which, however, he did not perform, the Latins made use of the demonstrative with *sed* or *verum*, or the relative alone implying the adversative conjunction; as, *nulla mihi promisit, sed ea non praestitit*, or, *quae non praestitit*, but not *quae autem* or *quae vero*. *Qui autem* and *qui vero* are used however in protases, where the relative retains its relative meaning, and there is a corresponding demonstrative in the apodosis; as, *Qui autem omnia bona a se ipsis petunt, eis nihil malum videri potest, quod naturae necessitas afferat.* Cic. de Sen. 2.

(4.) In double relative clauses, especially where the cases are different, Cicero frequently for the second relative clause substitutes the demonstrative; as, *Sed ipseus in mente insidebat species pulchritudinis etiam quaedam, quam intuens, in eaque defixus, ad, etc. for et in qua.* Cic. Orat. 2. And sometimes even when the cases are the same; as, *Quem Philistum venisse ferunt, eumque cum Leone distruxisse quaedam.* Cic. Tusc. 5, 8; where *et* alone would have been sufficient.

(5.) From this tendency to connect sentences by relatives arose the use of *quod* before certain conjunctions merely as a copulative. See § 206, (14.)

(6.) *Nec* or *nec* is much used by Latin writers instead of *et* and a negation, and may be so used in all cases except when the negative belongs to one particular word; see § 278, R. 9. *Nec* or *nec* is added to *enim*, *vero*, and *tamen*, where we cannot use 'and.' To these negative expressions a second negative is often joined, in which case *necque enim non* is equivalent to *nam*; *non vero non*, to *atque etiam*, a stronger *et*; *nec tamen non*, to *attamen*.

## ANALYSIS.

§ 281. I. 1. The analysis of a complex or a compound sentence consists in dividing it into its several component propositions, and pointing out their relation to each other.

2. In resolving a sentence into its component clauses, the participial constructions equivalent to clauses should be mentioned, and ellipses be supplied. See § 203, 4; § 274, 3; and § 257.

3. In a continued discourse the connection and relation of the successive sentences also should be specified.

### *Rules for the Analysis of Complex and Compound Sentences.*

- (1.) State whether the sentence is complex or compound. § 201, 11, 12.
- (2.) If complex, (1) specify the principal and subordinate clauses. (2) Specify the class to which the subordinate proposition belongs, (§ 201, 7), and (3), its connective, and the class to which such connective belongs, (§ 201, 8 and 9.)
- (3.) If compound, specify the principal propositions, with their subordinates, if any they have, as in the case of complex sentences.

II. The analysis of a proposition or simple sentence consists in distinguishing the subject from the predicate, and, in case either of them be compound, in pointing out the simple subjects or predicates of which it is composed, and, if complex, in specifying the several modifiers, whether of the essential or subordinate parts.

*Rules for the Analysis of a Simple Sentence.*

1. Divide it into two parts—the subject and the predicate, § 201, 1—3. If these are simple, the analysis is complete, but if either is compound:—

2. Specify the simple subjects or predicates of which the compound consists.—If either is complex:—

3. Point out the grammatical subject, and the words, phrases, etc. *directly* modifying it.

4. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical subject, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical subject is specified.

5. Point out the grammatical predicate, and the words, phrases, etc., *directly* modifying it.

6. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical predicate, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical predicate is specified.

## PARSING.

III. Parsing consists in resolving a proposition into the parts of speech of which it is composed, tracing the derivation of each word, and giving the rules of formation and construction applicable to it.

*Rules for Parsing.*

1. Name the part of speech to which each word belongs, including the subdivision in which it is found.

2. If it is an inflected word:—

(1.) Name its root or crude form, and decline, compare, or conjugate it.

(2.) If it is a noun or pronoun, tell its gender, number and case:—if in the nominative or in the accusative with the infinitive, tell its verb:—if in an oblique case depending on some other word, tell the word on which its case depends.

(3.) If it is an adjective, adjective-pronoun, or participle, tell the word which it modifies.

(4.) If it is a finite verb or an infinitive with the accusative, tell its voice, mood, tense, number, person, and subject.

3. If it is a conjunction, tell its class and what it connects.

4. If it is a preposition, tell the words whose relation is expressed by it.

5. If it is an adverb, tell its class and what it qualifies.

6. Prove the correctness of each step of the process by quoting the definition or rule of formation or construction on which it depends.

NOTE. The words constituting a proposition are most conveniently parsed in that order in which they are arranged in analysis.

*Examples of Analysis and Parsing.*

1. *Equus currit*, The horse runs.

*Analysis.* This is a simple sentence: its subject is *Equus*, its predicate is *currit*, both of which are simple. See § 201, 1—3; § 202, 2; and § 203, 2.

*Parsing.* *Equus* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d decl., § 38; masc. gender, § 28, 1; third person, § 85, 2; its root is *equ-*, § 49, 10; decline it, § 46; it is in the nominative case, singular number, § 35, 1, (b.); the subject of *currit*, § 209, (a.).—*Currit* is a neuter verb, § 141, II.; of the 3d conjugation, § 149, 2, from *curro*; its principal parts are *curro*, *cūcurri*, *cursum*, *currere*, § 151, 4; it is from the first root *curr-*; give the formations of that root, § 151, 1; it is in the active voice, § 142, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; present tense, § 145, I.; third person, § 147; singular number, § 146; agreeing with its subject-nominative *equus*, § 209, (b.).

*NOTE.* The questions to be asked in parsing *equus* are such as these, Why is *equus* a noun? Why a common noun? Why of the second declension? Why masculine? etc.—In parsing *currit*, the questions are, Why is *currit* a verb? Why a neuter verb? Why of the third conjugation? Which are the principal parts of a verb? Of what does the first root of a verb consist? What parts of a verb are derived from the first root? etc. The answer in each case may be found by consulting the etymological rules and definitions.

2. *Scævius ventis agtātūr ingens pinus*, The great pine is more violently shaken by the winds. Hor.

*Analysis.* This also is a simple sentence:—its subject is *ingens pinus*, its predicate *scævius ventis agtātūr*; both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 6, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *pinus*, the pine; this is modified by *ingens*, great, § 201, 2, § 202, 2, and § 202, 6, (3.).

The grammatical predicate is *agtātūr*, is shaken; this is modified by two independent modifiers, *scævius*, more violently, and *ventis*, by the winds, § 203, H. 3, Rem., § 203, I. 1, (2), and (3.).

*Parsing.* *Pinus* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d and 4th declensions, § 38 and § 99; feminine gender, § 29, 2; 3d person, § 35, 2; from the root *pin-*, § 40, 10; (decline it both in the 2d and 4th declensions);—it is found in the singular number, § 35, 1, and the nominative case, the subject of *agtātūr*, § 209, (a.).

*Ingens* is a qualifying adjective of quantity, § 104, 4, and § 205, N. 1; of the 3d decl., § 105, 1, and § 38; of one termination, § 108, and § 111; from the root *ingent-*, § 40, 10; (decline it like *præsens*, § 111, but with only *i* in the ablative, § 113, Exc. 3.);—it is found in the singular number, feminine gender, § 26, K. 4; and nominative case, agreeing with its noun *pinus*, § 205.

*Agtātūr* is an active frequentative verb, § 141, I., and § 187, II. 1; of the 1st conjugation, § 149, 2; from the first root of its primitive *ago*, § 187, II. 1, (b.); (name its principal parts in both voices, see § 151, 4; and give the conjugation of the passive voice, indicative mood, present tense, see § 166.);—it is found in the singular number, § 146; third person, § 147; agreeing with its subject-nominative *pinus*, § 209, (b.).

*Scævius* is a derivative adverb of manner, § 190, 2-4; in the comparative degree, from the positive *scæve* or *scæviter*, which is derived from the adjective *scævus*, § 194, 1 and 2, and § 192, II. 1, and Exc. 1 and 2; modifying the verb *agtātūr*, by expressing its degree, § 277.

*Ventis* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 46; from the root *vent-*, § 40, 10; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, § 35, 1; ablative case, modifying *agtātūr* by denoting its means or instrument, § 247.

3. *Mithridātes, duārum et viginti gentium rex, tōīdem linguis jūra dixit*, Mithridates, king of twenty-two nations, pronounced judicial decisions in as many languages. Plin.

*Analysis.* This also is a simple sentence; its subject is *Mithridātes, duārum et viginti gentium rex*, its predicate is *tōīdem linguis jūra dixit*, both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 6, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *Mithridātes*; this is modified directly by *rex*, § 202, I. (1.)

*Rex* is limited by *gentium*, § 202, I. 1, (2.)

*Gentium* is limited by the compound addition *duarum* and *viginti* connected coordinately by *et*, § 202, III. 3.

The grammatical predicate is *dixit*; this is limited by *jūra* and *linguis*, the former a simple, the latter a complex addition, as it is modified by *idēdem*, § 203, I. 1, (2.) and II. 1.

*Parsing.* *Mithridātes* is a proper noun, § 26, 2; of the third declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *Mithridāt-*, § 40, 10; genitive *Mithridātis*, § 73, 1; (decline it in the singular number only, § 95, (a.);—it is found in the nominative case, the subject of *dixit*, § 209, (a.)

*Rex* is a common noun—third declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *rég-*, § 40, 10; genitive *régis*, § 73, 2; (decline it);—it is found in the singular number—the nominative case, in apposition to *Mithridātes*, § 204.

*Gentium* is a common noun from *gens*—third declension—feminine gender, § 62; from the root *gent-*, § 56, I, R. 1; genitive *gentis*, § 77, 2 and (2.); (decline it);—it is found in the plural number—genitive case, § 83, II. 3; limiting *rex* subjectively, § 211 and R. 2.

*Duarum* is a numeral adjective, § 104, 5; of the cardinal kind, § 117; from *duo*, *duo*, *duo*; from the root *du-*; (decline it, § 118, 1.);—it is found in the plural number, § 118, 2; feminine gender, genitive case, § 26, R. 4; agreeing with its noun *gentium*, § 205.

*Et* is a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1, connecting *duarum* and *viginti*, § 278.

*Viginti* is a numeral adjective of the cardinal kind, indeclinable, § 118, 1; limiting *gentium*, § 205.

*Dixit* is an active verb, § 141, I.; of the third conjugation, § 149, 2; from *dico*, (give the principal parts in the active voice, and its first, second, and third roots, § 150, 4, and § 171, 1.); it is formed from the second root *dix-*, (give the formations of the second root);—it is found in the active voice, § 141, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; perfect indefinite tense, § 145, IV. and Rem.; singular number, third person, agreeing with *Mithridātes*. § 209, (b.)

*Jūra* is a common noun, of the third declension, from *jus*, root *jūr-*, § 56, I. R. 1; genitive *jūris*, § 76, Exc. 3; neuter gender, § 66; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, accusative case, § 40, 8; the object of *dixit*, § 229.

*Linguis* is a common noun, of the first declension, feminine gender, from *lingua*, root *lingu-*, (decline it);—found in the plural number, ablative case, after *dixit*. § 247.

*Idēdem* is a demonstrative pronominal adjective, § 139, 5, (2.) and (3.); indeclinable, § 115, 4; it is in the ablative plural, feminine gender, limiting *linguis*, § 205.

4. *Pausānias, quum sēmiāntimis de templo elātus esset, confestim āntimam efflāvit.* Nep. Paus. 4.

*Analysis.* This is a complex sentence, § 201, 11; consisting of two members, which are so arranged as to constitute a period, § 280, 1.

The principal proposition is, *Pausānias confestim āntimam efflāvit*, § 201, 5. The subordinate proposition is, *quum (is) sēmiāntimis de templo elātus esset*, § 201, 6.

The leading proposition has a simple subject, *Pausānias*, § 202, 2, and a complex predicate, *confestim āntimam efflāvit*, § 203, 3; in which *efflāvit* is the grammatical predicate, § 203, 2; which is modified by *confestim* and *āntimum*, § 203, I. 1, (2.) and (3.), and II. R. 2., and also by the adverbial clause *quum sēmiāntimis*, etc. § 201, 6 and 7, and § 203, I. 3.

The subordinate proposition, which is connected to the leading clause by the subordinate conjunction *quum*, § 201, 9, has a simple subject, viz. *is* understood, and a complex predicate, *sēmiāntimis de templo elātus esset*, § 203, 3.—The grammatical predicate is *elātus esset*, § 203, 2; which is modified by *sēmiāntimis*, § 203, I. 1, (1.), and *de templo*, § 203, I. 2, and II. Rem. 2.

*Parsing.* *Pausanias*, a Greek proper noun, § 26, 2;—1st decl., §§ 41 and 44; masc. gender, § 28, 1; root *Pausani-*; found in sing. num., nom. case, the subject of *efflavit*, § 209, (a.)

*Confestim*, an adv. of time § 190, 3; limiting *efflavit*, § 277.

*Animam* is a com. noun of 1st decl., fem. gender, § 41; from *anima*, root *anim-*; (decline it);—it is found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of *efflavit*, § 229.

*Efflavit*, an act. verb, 1st conj., from *efflo*, compounded of *ex* and *flo*, § 196, 6; (give the principal parts in the act. voice and the three roots);—it is formed from the second root; (give the formations of that root); in the active voice, ind. mood, perfect indefinite tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *Pausanias*, § 209, (b.)

*Quum* is a temporal conjunction, § 198, 10; connecting the dependent to the principal clause, § 278.

*Semidivinus* is a predicate adj., of the 3d decl., of two terminations, § 109; (decline it);—it is in the sing. num., masc. gen., nom. case, agreeing with *is* understood, § 210, R. 1, (a.)

*De* is a preposition, expressing the relation between *elatus esset* and *templo*, § 195.

*Templo* is a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gen., from *templum*, root *templ-*; (decline it);—in the sing. num., abl. case, after *de*, § 241.

*Elatus esset* is an irregular active verb, of the third conjugation, § 179; from *effero*, compounded of *ex* and *fero*, § 196, 6; (see *fero* and compounds, § 172); (give the principal parts in both voices, and the 1st and 3d roots);—it is formed from the third root, *elau-*, (give the formations of that root in the passive voice); in the subjunctive mood, pluperfect tense, § 145, V.; sing. num., third person, agreeing with *is* understood referring to *Pausanias*, § 209, (b.)

5. *Römāna pūbes, sēdātō tandēm pāvōre, postquam ex tam turbīdo die sērēna et tranquilla lux rēdiit, ūbi vācuam sēdem rēgiām vidit, etsi sātis crēdebāt patrībūs, qui proximī stētērant, sublimem raptum prōcellā; tāmen, vėlut orbītātis mētū icta, mœstum āliquamdiu silēntium obtinuit.* Liv. 1, 16.

*Analysis.* This is a complex sentence, whose clauses constitute a period, § 280. It is composed of the following members or clauses:—

1. *Römāna pūbes* [tāmen] *mœstum āliquamdiu silēntium obtinuit.* This is the leading clause. The following are dependent clauses.

2. *vėlut orbītātis mētū icta,*

3. *sēdātō tandēm pāvōre,*

4. *postquam ex tam turbīdo die sērēna et tranquilla lux rēdiit,*

5. *ūbi vācuam sēdem rēgiām vidit,*

6. *etsi sātis crēdebāt patrībūs,*

7. *qui proximī stētērant,*

8. *sublimem raptum prōcellā.*

NOTE 1. In the preceding clauses the predicates are printed in Italics.

NOTE 2. The connective of the 1st clause, is the adversative *tāmen*, which is inserted on account of *etsi* intervening between the principal subject and predicate. The connective of the 2d clause is *vėlut*, of the 4th *postquam*, of the 5th *ūbi*, of the 6th *etsi*, followed by a clause constituting the protasis, and of the 7th *qui*. The 3d and 8th clauses have no connectives.

(1.) The grammatical subject of the leading clause is *pūbes*, which is limited by *Römāna*.—The grammatical predicate is *obtinuit*, which is limited by *āliquamdiu* and *silēntium*, and also either directly or indirectly by all the dependent clauses. *Silēntium* is itself modified by *mœstum*.

The second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth clauses are used adverbially to denote the time and other circumstances modifying the principal predicate *silēntium obtinuit*, § 201, 7.

(2.) The second is a participial clause, equivalent to *velut* (*ea* scil. *pūbes*) *orbātis mētū icta esset*, § 274, 3, (a.)

(3.) The third clause is also participial, and is equivalent to *quum tandem pavor seditus esset*, § 267, R. 1; and hence *pāvore* represents the subject, and *sedito tandem* the predicate—the former being simple, the latter complex.

(4.) The grammatical subject of the 4th clause, which is connected to the leading clause by *postquam*, § 201, 9, is *lux*, which is modified by *sērēna* and *tranquilla*.—The grammatical predicate is *redīit*, which is modified by *postquam* and *ex tam turbido die*, § 203, I. 1, (3.), and II. 1.

(5.) The grammatical subject of the fifth clause is *ea* understood.—The grammatical predicate is *vidit*, which is modified by *ubi* and *vācuam sēdem regiam*, § 203, I. 1, (3.) and II. 1.

(6.) The grammatical subject of the sixth clause also is *ea*. Its grammatical predicate is *crēdebāt*, which is modified by *sātis* and *patribus*, § 203, I. (2.) and (3.), and by the 8th clause, II. 3.

(7.) The grammatical subject of the seventh clause is *qui*. Its grammatical predicate is *adlētrant*, which is modified by *proximi*, § 203, I. (1.) It is an adjective clause, modifying *patribus*, § 201, 7 and 9.

(8.) The grammatical subject of the eighth clause, which has no connective, § 202, Rem., is *eum*, i. e. *Rōmūlum*, understood. Its grammatical predicate is *raptum (esse)*, which is modified by *sublīmē* and *prōcellā*.

*Parsing.* *Rōmāna* is a patial adjective, § 104, 10, derived from *Rōma*, § 123, 6, (a.) and (e.); of the 1st and 3d declensions, § 105, 2; fem. gender, sing. number, nom. case, agreeing with *pūbes*, § 205.

*Pūbes*, a collective noun, § 26, 4; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *pūb-*, § 56, I. R. 6; genitive *pūbis*, § 73, 1; (decline it);—found in the nom. sing., the subject of *orbātis*, § 209, (a.)

*Tāmen*, an adversative conjunction, § 198, 9, relating to *etsi* in the 6th clause.

*Mestum*, a qualifying adj., § 206, N. 1; of the 1st and 2d declensions, neut. gender, sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *silentium*.

*Aliquamdiu*, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; compounded of *aliquis* and *diu*, § 193, 6; and limiting *obtinuit*, § 277.

*Silentium*, a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gender, § 46; sing. number, acc. case, the object of *obtinuit*, § 229.

*Obtinuit*, an active verb, of the 2d conj., § 149, 2; from *obtinēo*, compounded of *ob* and *tinēo*, see § 188; (give the principal parts in the act. voice, and the formations of the 2d root, § 157 at the end);—found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *pūbes*, § 209, (b.)

*Velut* for *velut si*, an adverb, compounded of *vel* and *ut*, § 193, 10; modifying *icta*, and *obtinuisset* understood, (as they would have done if, etc.)

*Orbātis*, an abstract noun, § 26, 5; from the primitive *orbis*, § 101, 1 and 2; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *orbāt-*, § 56, I., and R. 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., subjective gen. case, limiting *mētū*, § 211.

*Mētū*, an abstract noun, 4th decl., masc. gen., § 87; sing. num., abl. case, § 247.

*Icta*, a perf. part. pass., from the active verb *ico*, of the 3d conj. (give the principal parts in both voices, and decline the participle);—found in the fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *pūbes*, § 205.

*Sedito*, a perfect pass. part. from the active verb *sēdo*, of the 1st conj., § 149, 2; (give the principal parts in both voices, § 151, 4; and decline it, § 105, R. 2.);—found in the masc. gender, sing. num., abl. case, agreeing with *pāvore*, § 205.

*Tandem*, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; modifying *sedito*, § 277.

*Pāvore*, an abstract noun, § 26, 5, and § 102, 1; (from *pāveo*), 3d decl., masc. gen., § 58; root *pāv-*, § 56, II., and § 70, (decline it);—found in the sing. number, abl. case, absolute with *sedito*, § 257.

*Postquam*, an adverb of time, compounded of *post* and *quam*, § 193, 10; modifying *redīit*, and connecting the 1st and 4th clauses, § 201, 9.

*Ex*, a preposition, § 195, R. 2.

*Tam*, an adverb of degree, § 191, R. 2; modifying *turbido*, § 277.



*Turbido*, an adjective, agreeing with *die*.

*Die*, a common noun, 5th decl., masc. gender, § 90, Exc. 1.; sing. number, abl. case, after the prep. *ex*, § 241.

*Sérèna*, an adj., 1st and 2d decls., fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *lux*, § 205.

*Et*, a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1; connecting *sérèna* and *tranquilla*, § 278.

*Tranquilla*, like *sérèna*.

*Lux*, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *lūo-*, § 56, I., and R. 2; genitive *lūcis*, § 78, 2.

*Rēdiit*, an irregular neuter verb, of the 4th conj., § 176; from *rēdeo*, compounded of *eo*, § 182, and the inseparable prep. *red*, § 186, (b.), 3; (give its principal parts);—found in the ind. mood., perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *lux*, § 209, (b.)

*Ubi*, an adverb of time, and like *postquam*, a connective, § 201, 9; and modifying *vidit*, § 277.

*Vacuam*, an adj., qualifying *sēdem*.

*Sēdem*, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *sēd-*, § 56, I., R. 6; genitive *sēdis*, § 73, 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of the transitive verb *vidit*, § 229.

*Rēgiā*, a denominative adj., § 126, I., 2, (a.); from the primitive *rex*, agreeing with *sēdem*.

*Vidit*, an active verb, of the 2d conj., (give its principal parts in the active voice, and the formations of the 2d root);—found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *ea*, i. e. *pūbes*, understood.

*Esi*, a concessive conjunction, § 198, 4; corresponding to the correlative adversative conj. *tāmen*, § 198, 4, R. and 9.

*Satis*, an adverb of degree, § 191, III., and R. 2; modifying *crēdebat*, § 277.

*Crēdebat*, an act. verb, § 141, I.; 3d conj., (give the principal parts in the active voice and the formations of the 1st root);—found in the act. voice, ind. mood, imperfect tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *ea*, scil. *pūbes*, understood.

*Patribus*, a common noun, § 26, 3; 3d decl., from the root *patr-*, § 56, II., R. 3; gen. *patris*, § 71; masc. gender, § 28, 1; plur. num., dat. case, depending on *crēdebat*, § 223, R. 2.

*Qui*, the subject of the 7th clause, is a relative pronoun, § 136; masc. gender, plur. num., agreeing with its antecedent *patribus*, § 206, R. 19, (a.); and is nominative to *siēlerant*, § 209, (a.)

*Proximī*, an adj. of the superlative degree, § 126, 1, (compare it); of the 1st and 2d decls., masc. gen., plur. num., nom. case, agreeing with *qui*, § 205, § 210, R. 1, (a.) and R. 3, (2.)

*Siēlerant*, a neuter verb, 1st conj., irregular in its 2d root, § 165; (give its principal parts, and the formations of the 2d root);—found in the act. voice, ind. mood, plup. tense, § 145, V.; 3d person plural, agreeing with its subject *qui*, § 209, (b.)

*Sublimem*, an adj., of the 3d decl., and two terminations, § 109; masc. gen., sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *eum*, (i. e. *Rōmūlum*,) understood, and modifying also *raptum esse*, § 205, R. 15.

*Raptum (esse)*, an act. verb, 3d conj., (give the principal parts in both voices and the formations of the 3d root in the passive voice)—found in the pass. voice, inf. mood, perf. tense; but, following the imperfect, it has the meaning of a pluperfect, § 268, 2, and § 145, V.; depending on *crēdebat*, § 272.

*Prōcellā*, a com. noun, 1st decl., fem. gen., sing. num., abl. case, § 247.

## PROSODY.

§ 282. Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables, and the laws of versification.

### QUANTITY.

1. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it. Cf. § 13.

2. A syllable is either *short*, *long*, or *common*.

(a.) The time occupied in pronouncing a short syllable is called a *mora* or *time*.

(b.) A long syllable requires two *moræ* or double the time occupied in pronouncing a short one; as, *āmārē*.

(c.) A common syllable is one which, in poetry, may be made either long or short; as the middle syllable of *tēnēbræ*.

3. The quantity of a syllable is either *natural* or *accidental*;—*natural*, when it depends on the *nature* of its vowel; *accidental*, when it depends on its *position*.

Thus the *e* in *rēsisto* is short by nature; while in *rēsūtū* it is long by its position, since it is followed by two consonants: § 283, IV. On the contrary, the *e* in *dēduco* is naturally long, but in *dēerro* it is made short by being placed before a vowel: § 283, I.

4. The quantity of syllables is determined either by certain established *rules*, or by the *authority* of the poets.

Thus it is poetic usage alone that determines the quantity of the first syllables of the following words, viz. *māter*, *frāter*, *prāvus*, *dico*, *dūco*; *pāter*, *āvus*, *cado*, *māneo*, *grāvīs*, etc.; and hence the quantity of such syllables can be ascertained by practice only or by consulting the *gradus* or *lexicon*.

5. The rules of quantity are either *general* or *special*. The former apply alike to all the syllables of a word, the latter to particular syllables.

### GENERAL RULES.

§ 283. I. (a.) A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is short; as, *e* in *mēus*, *i* in *patrīæ*. Thus,

*Conscia mens recti fāmæ mendācia ridet.* Ovid. F. 4, 311.

*Ipsæ etiam extētia laudis succensus amōre.* Virg. A. 7, 496.

(b.) So also when *h* comes between the vowels, since *h* is accounted only a breathing; as, *nihil*: (see § 2, 6.) Thus,

*De nihilo nihil, in nihilum nil posse reverti.* Pers. 4, 84.

Exc. 1. (a.) *Fio* has the *i* long, except in *fū* and when followed by *er*; as *fiunt*, *fiēbam*. Thus,

*Omnia jam fiant, fieri quæ posse negābam. Ovid. Tr. 1, 8, 7.*

(b.) It is sometimes found long even before *er*; as, *fiēret*. Ter.; *fieri*. Plaut; and, on the contrary, Prudentius has *fiō* with *i* short.

Exc. 2. (a.) *E* is long in the termination of the genitive and dative of the fifth declension, when preceded and followed by *i*; as, *fāciēi*. Thus,

*Non rādii sōlle, nēque lūcida tēla diēi. Lucr. 1, 148.*

(b.) In *spei*, *rei*, and *fidei*, *e* is short.

NOTE. In Lucretius, the *e* of *rei* is, in a few cases, long, and that of *fidei* is lengthened once in Lucretius and once in a line of Ennius.

Exc. 3. (a.) *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *ai* of the first declension; as, *aulāi*, *picīai*. Cf. § 43, 1.

(b.) *A* and *e* are also long in proper names in *aius*, *eius*, or *eta*; as, *Caius*, *Pompaius*, *Aquilēta*; and in the adjectives *Grāius* and *Vētus*. Thus,

*Æthērium sensum, atque aurāi simplici ignem. Virg. A. 8, 747.*

*Accipe, Pompei, deductum carmen ab illo. Ovid. Pont. 4, 1, 1.*

*Neonon cum Vēnētis Aquilēta perfūrit armis. Sil. 8, 606.*

Exc. 4. (a.) *I* is common in genitives in *ius*; as, *anīus*, *illius*. Thus,

*Illius et nītido stillant unguenta capillo. Tibull. 1, 7, 51.*

*Illius puro dēstillant tempōra nardo. Id. 2, 2, 7.*

(b.) But *i* in the genitive of *alter* is commonly short; and in that of *alius* it is always long.

Exc. 5. The first vowel of *ēheu* is long; that of *Diāna*, *īo*, and *ōhe*, is common.

Exc. 6. Greek words retain their original quantities, and hence, in many Greek words, a vowel is long, though immediately followed by another vowel; as,

*āēr*, *Achāta*, *Achēlōus*, *diā*, *ēos*, *Lāertes*, and Greek words having in the original a long *e* or *o* (*u* or *au*). See also § 282, 3.

(1.) Words which, in Greek, are written with *ei* (*u*) before a vowel, and in Latin with a single *e* or *i*, have the *e* or *i* long; as, *Ēnēas*, *Alexandria*, *Cassiopeia*, *Cho*, *Dārius*, *ēlēgia*, *Gālātēa*, *Mēdēa*, *Mausōlēum*, *Pēnelōpēa*, *Thālia*, *Atrides*.

Hence, most adjectives in *eus*, formed from Greek proper names, have the *i* long; as, *Cythēreus*, *Pēlōpēus*; and the *e* remains long when *et* is restored; as, *Pēlōpēta*.

Exc. *Acādēmia*, *chōrea*, *Mālea*, *plātea*, and some patronymics and patrials in *ets*; as, *Nēreus*, have the penult common.

(2.) Greek genitives in *eas*, and accusatives in *ea*, from nominatives in *eus*, generally shorten the *e*; as, *Orphēos*, *Orphēa*;—but the *e* is sometimes lengthened by the Ionic dialect; as, *Cēphēos*, *Ilīōnēa*.

(3.) Greek words in *ais*, *ois*, *aius*, *eius*, *oius*, *aon*, and *ion*, generally lengthen the first vowel; as, *Nāis*, *Mīnōis*, *Grāius*, *Nērēus*, *Mīmōus*, *Māchāon*, *Ixon*. But *Thēbāis*, *Simōis*, *Phāon*, *Deucālīon*, *Pygmālīon*, and many others, shorten the former vowel.

NOTE 1. Greek words in *aon* and *ion*, with *o* short in the genitive, have the penult long; but with *o* long in the genitive, they have it short; as, *Amjthāon*, *-ōnis*; *Deucālīon*, *-ōnis*.

NOTE 2. In Greek proper names in *eus* (gen. *eos*), as *Orpheus*, the *eu* in the nominative is always a diphthong in the original, and, with very few exceptions, in the Latin poets.

II. A diphthong is long; as, *aurum*, *fœnus*, *Eubœa*, *Pompæus*, *Orphœu*. Thus,

*Infernique læcis, Eubœæque insula Circæ. Virg. A. 3, 386.*  
*Thésæuros ignotum argenti pondus et æuri. Id. A. 1, 359.*  
*Harpyiæque cølunt diæcæ, Phinœia postquam. Id. A. 3, 212.*

Exc. 1. *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel; as, *præustus*, *præcûtus*. Thus,

*Nec totâ tîmen ille prior præeunte carinâ. Virg. A. 5, 186.*

In Statius, and Sidonius Apollinaris, it is found long.

Exc. 2. A diphthong at the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, is sometimes made short; as,

*Instillâ lônio in magno, quas dira Cêlæno. Virg. A. 3, 211.*

Exc. 3. The diphthongs consisting of *u* followed by a vowel are either long or short; the two vowels thus combined being subject to the same rules of quantity, as their final vowel would be if standing alone; as, *quâ*, *quî*, *quorum*, *quâ*, *quibus*, *quatio*, *quêror*, *acquôr*, *linguâ*, *sanguis*.

III. A syllable formed by contraction is long; as,

*altus* for *altius*; *côgo* for *côago*; *nîl* for *nîhil*; *jûnior* for *jûvênior*. Thus,

*Tîtîre cêge pœcus, tu post cærecta lâtêbas. Virg. E. 3, 20.*

IV. A vowel naturally short, before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by *position*; as, *ârma*, *bêllum*, *âxis*, *gâza*, *mâjor*. Thus,

*Pascere oportet oves dæductum diocæ carmen. Virg. E. 6, 5.*  
*Nec mîrîus vincet cœrylos; nec laurea Phœbi. Id. E. 7, 64.*  
*At nobis, Pax alma, vênî, spicamque ténêto. Tibull. 1, 10, 67.*  
*Bæra jûvant: primis sic mâjor grâtia pômîs. Mart. 4, 23, 3.*

NOTE 1. A vowel (other than *i*) before *j* is in reality lengthened by forming a diphthong with it, since *i* and *j* are in fact but one letter. Thus *mâjor* is equivalent to *maî'-or*, which would be pronounced *ma'-yor*. See § 9, 1.

Exc. 1. The compounds of *jûgum* have *i* short before *j*; as, *bijûgus*, *quâdrîjûgus*. Thus,

*Intèrâ bijûgis infert se Lûcâgus albis. Virg. A. 10, 575.*

REMARK. The vowel is long by position, when either one or both of the consonants is in the same word with it; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, the vowel is either long or short; as,

*Tolle mōras; sēpēr nōcūlt dīfferre pāratīs. Lucan. 1, 281.*  
*Ferte citi ferrūm; dāte telā; scandite mūros. Virg. A. 9, 87.*  
*Nē tîmen ignōrēt, quæ sūt sententiā scripto. Ovid.*

NOTE 2. A short vowel at the end of a word, before an initial double consonant or *j* in the following word, is not lengthened.

NOTE 3. In the comic poets a vowel frequently remains short though followed by two consonants, especially if only one of them is in the same word.

**Exc. 2.** A vowel *naturally short*, before a mute followed by a liquid, is common; as, *āgrīs, phāretra, volūcris, pōpūtes, cōchlea*. Thus,

*Et primo simillīs cōlūcri, mox vēra cōlūcris. Ovid. M. 13. 607.*

*Nātum ante ora patris, patrē qui obtruncat ad āras. Virg. A. 2. 668.*

*Nox tēnēbras prōfert, Phœbus fugat inde tēnēbras. Ovid.*

**REM. 1.** If the vowel before a mute and liquid is *naturally long*, it continues so; as, *adlūbris, ambūlacrum*.

**REM. 2.** In *compound* words, of which the former part ends with a mute, and the latter begins with a liquid, a short vowel before the mute is made long by position; as, *abluo, obruo, sublevo, quamobrem*.

**REM. 3.** A mute and liquid at the beginning of a word seldom lengthen the short vowel of the preceding word, except in the arsis of a foot; as,

*Terræque tractusque maris cœlumque profundum. Virg. E. 4. 51.*

**REM. 4.** In Latin words, only the liquids *l* and *r* following a mute render the preceding short vowel common; but, in words of Greek origin, *m* and *n* after a mute have the same effect, as in *Tēcnessa, Prœcne, Cœnus*.

## SPECIAL RULES.

### FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

#### I. DERIVATIVE WORDS.

**§ 284.** Derivative words retain the quantity of their primitives; as,

by conjugation, *amo, amat, amābat, amāvi, amātus*, etc.; by declension, *amor, amoris, amōri, amōribus*, etc.; so, *animal, animātus*, from *animas*; *gemēbundus*, from *gemere*; *fāmilīa*, from *fāmilus*; *māternus*, from *māter*; *prōpinquus*, from *prōpe*.

**NOTE 1.** *Lār, pār, sāl*, and *pēs* in declension shorten the vowel of the nominative; as, *sālūs, pēdis*, etc.

**NOTE 2.** The vowel of the primitive is sometimes lengthened or shortened in the derivative by the addition or removal of a consonant.

**REM. 1.** Derivatives from increasing nouns of the second or third declension agree in quantity with the increment of their primitives; as,

*puēritia*, from *puēri*; *virgīneus*, from *virgīnis*; *adlūber*, from *adlūbis*.

**REM. 2.** In verbs, the vowels of the derived tenses and of derivative words agree in quantity with the verbal root from which they are formed; as,

*mōvēbam, mōvēbo, mōveam, mōvērem, mōve, mōvēre, mōvens, mōvendus*, from *mōv*, the root of the present, with *ō* short;—*mōvēram, mōvērīm, mōvissem, mōvēro, mōvisse*, from *mōv*, the root of the perfect, with *ō* long; *mōtārus* and *mōtus*;—*mōto, mōtio, mōtor*, and *mōtus, -is*, from *mōt*, the root of the supine, with *ō* also long.

**REM. 3.** (a.) *Solūtum* and *volutum* from *solvo* and *volvo* have the first syllable short, as if from *solvu, volveo*. So, from *gigno* come *gēnuī, gēnitum*, as if from *gēno*; and *pōtūi*, from *pōtis sum* (*possum*).

(b.) The *a* in *da*, imperative of *do*, is long, though short in other parts of the verb. See § 294, 2.

(c.) The *o* in *pōnū* and *pōstū* is short, though long in *pōno*.

Exc. 1. Perfects and supines of two syllables have the first syllable long, even when that of the present is short; as,

*vēni, vidī, fēci*, from *vēnio, video, fācio*; *cāsum, mōtum, vīsum*, from *cādo, mōveo, video*.

NOTE 3. Such perfects are supposed to have been formed either by the contraction of reduplicated syllables, as *vēnio*, perf. *vēvēni*, by syncope *vēvni*, by crasis *vēni*, or by the omission of a consonant, as *video*, perf. *vidi*, by syncope *vidī*, the vowel retaining the quantity which it had by position.

NOTE 4. The long vowel of dissyllabic supines probably arose in like manner from syncope and contraction; as, *video, vīdsum*, by syncope *vīsum*; *mōveo, mōvītum*, by syncope *mōvītum*, by contraction *mōvītum*.

(1.) (a.) These seven perfects have the first syllable short:—*bībi, dēdi, fidi*, (from *fīdo*), *scīdi, sēdi, stīti, tūli*. So also *percūli*, from *percello*.

(b.) The first syllable is also short before a vowel (§ 283, 1.); as, *rūi*.

(2.) (a.) These ten supines have the first syllable short:—*cītum*, (from *cīeo*), *dātum, ūtum, lītum, quītum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum*, and *stātum*.

(b.) So, also, had the obsolete *fūtum*, from *fūō*, whence comes *fūturus*.

Exc. 2. (a.) Reduplicated polysyllabic perfects have the first two syllables short; as,

*cēcidi, cēcini, tēgī, dēdici*, from *cādo, cāno, tango*, and *disco*.

(b.) The second syllable of reduplicated perfects is sometimes made long by position; as, *mōmōrādi, tētēndi*.—*Cēcidi* from *cādo*, and *pēpēdi* from *pēdo*, retaining the quantity of their first root also have the second syllable long.

Exc. 3. Desiderative verbs in *urio* have the *u* short, though, in the third root of the verbs from which they are formed, it is long; as, *canātūrio* from *canādū*, the third root of *ceno*. So *partūrio, esūrio, nuptūrio*.

Exc. 4. Frequentative verbs, formed from the third root of verbs of the first conjugation, have the *i* short; as, *clāmāto, vōlito*. See § 187, II. 1.

Exc. 5. A few other derivatives deviate from the quantity of their primitives.

1. Some have a long vowel from a short one in the primitive. Such are,

|                                                       |                                                 |                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Dēni</i> , from <i>dēcem</i> .                     | <i>Mōbillis</i> , from <i>mōveo</i> .           | <i>Stipendium</i> , from <i>stips</i>          |
| <i>Fōmes</i> and <i>fōmētum</i> , from <i>fōveo</i> . | <i>Persōna</i> , from <i>persōno</i> .          | ( <i>stipis</i> ).                             |
| <i>Hūmānus</i> , from <i>hōmo</i> .                   | <i>Rēgūla</i> and <i>rēgo</i> .                 | <i>Suspicio, ōnis</i> , from <i>suspīcor</i> . |
| <i>Lāterna</i> , from <i>lāteo</i> .                  | <i>Rex</i> ( <i>rēgis</i> ), from <i>rēgo</i> . | <i>Tēgūla</i> , from <i>tēgo</i> .             |
| <i>Lītēra</i> from <i>lino</i> .                      | <i>Sēcūs</i> , from <i>sēcus</i> .              |                                                |
| <i>Lex</i> ( <i>lēgis</i> ), from <i>lēgo</i> .       | <i>Sēdes</i> , from <i>sēdeo</i> .              |                                                |
|                                                       | <i>Sēmen</i> , from <i>sēro</i> .               |                                                |

2. Some have a short vowel from a long one in the primitive. Such are,

|                                                 |                                         |                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Dicax</i> , from <i>dīco</i> .               | <i>Mōlestus</i> , from <i>mōles</i> .   | <i>Sāgax</i> , from <i>sāgio</i> .              |
| <i>Dux</i> ( <i>dūcis</i> ), from <i>dūco</i> . | <i>Nāto</i> , from <i>nātu</i> . sup.   | <i>Sōpor</i> , from <i>sōpio</i> .              |
| <i>Fīdes</i> , from <i>fīdo</i> .               | <i>Nōto</i> , from <i>nōtu</i> . sup.   | <i>Vādum</i> , from <i>vādo</i> .               |
| <i>Lābo</i> , from <i>lābor</i> , dep. v.       | <i>ōdium</i> , from <i>ōdi</i> .        | <i>Vōco</i> , from <i>vox</i> ( <i>vōcis</i> ). |
| <i>Lūcerna</i> , from <i>lūceo</i> .            | <i>Quāsillus</i> , from <i>quālus</i> . |                                                 |

NOTE 1. *Disertus* comes regularly (by syncope) from *dissertus*, the prefix *dis* being short, § 299, 1. Cf. *dirimo* and *dirideo*, where *s* is changed to *r*. See § 196, (b.) 2.

NOTE 2. Some other words might, perhaps, with propriety be added to these lists; but, in regard to the derivation of most of them, grammarians are not entirely agreed.

REMARK 1. Some of these irregularities seem to have arisen from the influence of syncope and crasis. Thus *mobilis* may have been *mōvibilis*; *mōm*, *mōvītum*, etc.

REM. 2. Sometimes the vowel in the derived word being naturally short, is restored to its proper quantity by removing one of the consonants which, in the primitive, made it long by position; as, *nāx*, *nācis*. So, when the vowel of the primitive is naturally long, but has been made short before another vowel, it is sometimes restored to its original quantity by the insertion of a consonant; as, *hibernus*, from *hiems*.

REM. 3. The first syllable in *liquidus* is supposed to be common, as coming either from *liquor* or *liqueo*; as,

*Crassique convēniat liquidis, et liquidā crassis. Lucr. 4, 1265.*

## II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 285. 1. Compound words retain the quantity of the words which compose them; as,

*dēfēro*, of *dē* and *fēro*; *adōro*, of *ad* and *ōro*. So *abbōrior*, *amōveto*, *circāmō*, *cōmēdo*, *ēmītor*, *prōdūco*, *subōrno*.

2. The change of a vowel or a diphthong in forming the compound does not alter its quantity; as,

*concido*, from *cādo*; *concido*, from *cado*; *ēri-go*, from *rēgo*; *reclādo*, from *clāudo*; *iniquus*, from *ēquus*.

Exc. 1. A long syllable in the simple word becomes short in the following compounds:—*agnitus* and *cognitus*, from *nōtus*; *dēfēro* and *pēfēro*, from *jūro*; *hōdie*, from *hōc die*: *nihilum* and *nihil*, from *hīlum*; *causidicus*, and other compounds ending in *dicus*, from *dico*.

Exc. 2. *Imbecillus*, from *bācillum*, has the second syllable long. The participle *ambitus* has the penult long from *itum*, but the nouns *ambitus* and *ambitio* follow the rule.

Exc. 3. *Innūba*, *prōnūba*, and *subnūba*, from *nūbo*, have *u* short; but in *con-nubium*, it is common.

Exc. 4. *O* final, in the compounds of *do* and *sto*, is common, though long in the simple verbs. § 294, (a.)

NOTE 1. Prepositions of one syllable, which end in a vowel, are long (§ 294, (a.)); those which end in a single consonant are short (§ 299, 1.)—*Trā* from *trans* is long; as, *trādo*, *trādūco*.

Exc. 5. *Pro*, in the following compounds, is short:—*prōfānus*, *prōfāri*, *prōfecto*, *prōfestus*, *prōfiscor*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfūgio*, *prōfūsus*, *prōcella*, *prōfundus*, *prōnepos*, *prōneptis*, and *prōtervus*. It is common in *procūro*, *profundus*, *propāgo*, *propello*, and *propino*.—Respecting *præ* in composition before a vowel, see § 283, II. Exc. 1.

REM. 1. The Greek preposition *pro* (before) is short; as, *prōphēta*. In *prodūsus*, *propōla*, and *propino*, it is common.

REM. 2. The inseparable prepositions *di* (for *dīs*) and *se* are long; as,

*didūco*, *sēpāro*. Respecting *dīsertus*, see § 284, Exc. 5, 2, N. 1.

REM. 3. (a.) The inseparable preposition *re* or *red* is short; as, *remitto, reféro, reddo*.

(b.) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in *religio, reliquia, reliquus, repérit, retulit, repulit, recidit, reducere*, where some editors double the consonant following *re*. Cf. § 307, 2. In the impersonal verb *refert*, *re* is long, as coming from *res*.

REM. 4. A ending the former part of a compound word, is long; the other vowels are short; as,

*mālo, quāpropter, trādo, (trans do); nēfas, vāldico, hujuscēmōdi; biceps, tridens, omnipotens, significo; hōdie, quāndōquidem, philosophus; dūcenti, locuples, Trōjāgēna; Polydōrus, Eurypylus, Thrāsýbulus.*

Exc. 1. A. A is short in *quāsi, eādem*, when not an ablative, and in some Greek compounds; as, *cātpultra, hezámēter*.

Exc. 2. E. E is long in *crēdo, nēmo, nēquam, nēquāquam, nēquidquam, nōquis, nēquitia; mēmet, mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, sēse, vēcors, vēsānus, vénéficus*, and *vidēlet*;—also in words compounded with *se* for *sex* or *semi*; as, *sēdēcim, sēmestris, sēmōdius*; but in *selibra* it is found short in Martial.

NOTE 2. (a.) The first *e* in *vidēlet*, as in *vide*, is sometimes made short. See § 295, Exc. 3.

(b.) E is common in some verbs compounded with *fācio*; as, *liquefācio, pātefācio, rarefācio, tābefācio, tēpefācio*.

Exc. 3. I. (1.) I is long in those compounds in which the first part is declined, (§ 296); as, *quidam, quivis, quilibet, quantivis, quanticumque, tantidem, unicuique, eidem, reipublicæ, utrique*.

(2.) I is also long in those compounds which may be separated without altering the sense, (§ 296); as, *lūdmāgister, siquis, agricultūra*.

(3.) I, ending the former part of a compound word, is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *ābicen* for *tibicen*, from *ābia* and *cāno*. See § 283, III.

(4.) I is long in *bigæ, quadrigæ, ilicet, scilicet*.

(5.) In *idem*, when masculine, *i* is long; but when neuter, it is short. The *i* of *ubique* and *utrobique*, the second in *ibidem*, and the first in *nimirum*, are long. In *ubicumque*, as in *ubi*, *i* is common.

(6.) Compounds of *diēs* have the final *i* of the former part long; as, *biduum, triduum, merīdiēs, quōtidie, quōtidianus, pridie, postridie*.

NOTE 3. In Greek words, *i*, ending the former part of a compound, is short; as, *Callimāchus*; unless it comes from the diphthong *ei* (*u*), or is made long or common by position.

Exc. 4. O. (1.) In compounds, the final *o* of *contro, intro, retro*, and *quando* (except *quāndōquidem*,) is long; as, *contrōversia, intrōdūco, retrōcēdo, quāndōque*. O is long also in *aliōqui* (*-quin*), and *utroque*.

(2.) O is long in the compounds of *quō* and *eo*; as, *quōmōdo, quōcumque, quōnam, quōlibet, quōminus, quōcirca, quōvis, quōque* (i. e. *ei quo*); *eōdem, eōne*; but in the conjunction *quōdque*, it is short.

(3.) Greek words which are written with an *omēga* (*ω*) have the *o* long; as, *geōmetra, Minōtaurus, lāgōpus*.

Exc. 5. U. U is long in *Jūpiter* (*Jōvis pāter*), and *jūdico* (*jūs dico*).

### III. INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

§ 286. 1. A noun is said to *increase*, when, in any of its cases, it has more syllables than in the nominative singular; as, *pax, pācis; sermo, sermōnis*. The number of *increments* in any case of a noun is equal to that of its additional syllables.



2. Nouns in general have but one increment in the singular, but *iter*, *stipellæ*, compounds of *cāpūt* ending in *ps*, and sometimes *jēcur*, have two increments; as,

*iter*, *t-ān-t-ris*; *stipellæ*, *sā-pel-lec-t-ris*; *anceps*, *an-cēp-t-ris*; *jēcur*, *jē-cū-ŕis*.

REMARK. The double increase of *iter*, etc., in the singular number arises from their coming from obsolete nominatives, containing a syllable more than those now in use; as, *itiner*, etc.

3. The dative and ablative plural of the third declension have one increment more than the genitive singular; as,

|                |                      |                               |
|----------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>rex</i> ,   | Gen. <i>rē-gis</i> , | D. and Ab. <i>rēg-t-bus</i> . |
| <i>sermo</i> , | <i>ser-mō-nis</i> ,  | <i>ser-mōn-t-bus</i> .        |
| <i>iter</i> ,  | <i>t-ūn-t-ris</i> ,  | <i>it-t-nēr-t-bus</i> .       |

4. The last syllable of a word is never considered as the increment. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult; if two, the antepenult is called the first, and the penult the second; and if three, the syllable before the antepenult is called the first, the antepenult the second, and the penult the third increment; as,

1                      1 2                      1 2                      1 2 3  
*ser-mo*, *ser-mō-nis*, *ser-mōn-t-bus*; *t-ter*, *t-ūn-t-ris*, *it-t-nēr-t-bus*.

5. In the third declension, the quantity of the first increment is the same in all the other cases as in the genitive singular; as,

*sermōnis*, *sermōni*, *sermōnem*, *sermōne*, *sermōnes*, *sermōnum*, *sermōnibus*. *Bōbus*, or *būbus*, from *bos*, *bōvis*, is lengthened by contraction from *bōvibus*.

NOTE. As adjectives and participles are declined like nouns, the same rules of increment apply to all of them; and so also to pronouns.

## INCREMENTS OF THE SINGULAR NUMBER.

### OF THE FIRST, FOURTH, AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

§ 287. 1. When nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions increase in the singular number, the increment consists of a vowel before the final vowel, and its quantity is determined by the first general rule with its exceptions, § 283, I.

Thus, *aura*, gen. *aurāi*, § 283, I. Exc. 3, (a.): *fructus*, dat. *fructūi*, § 283, I. (a.): *dies*, gen. *diēi*, § 283, I. Exc. 2, (a.)

### INCREMENTS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

2. The increments of the second declension in the singular number are short; as,

*gēner*, *gēnēri*; *sātūr*, *sātūri*; *tēnēr*, *tēnēri*; *vīr*, *vīri*. Thus,

*Nē, puēri, ne tanta animis assuescite bella. Virg. A. 6, 833.*  
*Monstra sinunt; gēneros externis affōre ab ōris. Id. A. 7, 270.*

Exc. The increment of *Iber* and *Cēlūber* is long. For that of genitives in *ius*, see § 283, Exc. 4.

INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

3. The increments of the third declension and singular number in *a* and *o* are long; those in *e*, *i*, *u*, and *y*, are short; as,

*animal, animālis*; *audax, audācis*; *sermo, sermōnis*; *ferox, ferōcis*; *opus, opēris*; *celer, celēris*; *miles, militis*; *supplex, supplicis*; *murmur, murmuris*; *dax, dācis*; *chlāmys, chlāmīdis*; *Styx, Stygis*. Thus,

*Præni que cum spectant animālia cetera terram. Ovid. M. 1, 84.*

*Hæc tum multiplici pópulo sermōne replēbat. Virg. A. 4, 189.*

*Incumbent gēnēris lapē sacre ruinæ. Id. G. 4, 249.*

*Quālem virgīneo dēmessum pollice flōrem. Id. A. 11, 68.*

*Adspice, ventūci cōcidērunt murmuris auræ. Id. E. 9, 68.*

Exceptions in Increments in *A*.

1. (a.) Masculines in *al* and *ar* (except *Car* and *Nar*) increase short; as, *Annibal, Annibālis*; *Amilcar, Amilcāris*.

(b.) *Par* and its compounds, and the following—*ānas, mas, vas (vādēs), bac-car, hēpar, jābar, lar, nectar*, and *sal*—also increase short.

2. *A*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as, *daps, dāpis*; *Arabs, Arābis*.

3. Greek nouns in *a* and *as* (*ādis, ānis, or ātis*) increase short; as, *lampas, lampādīs*; *Mēlas, Mēlānis*; *poēma, poēmātis*.

4. The following in *az* increase short:—*ābaz, anthrax, Arctophylaz, Ataz, Atraz, climaz, cōlaz, cōraz*, and *nychcōraz, drōpaz, fax, harpaz, pānaz, smīlaz*, and *stīraz*.—The increment of *Sīphaz* is doubtful.

Exceptions in Increments in *O*.

1. *O*, in the increment of neuter nouns, is short; as, *marmor, marmōris*; *corpus, corpōris*; *ēbur, ēbōris*. But *os* (the mouth), and the neuter of comparatives, like their masculine and feminine, increase long. The increment of *odor* is common.

2. *O* is short in the increment of Greek nouns in *o* or *on*, which, in the oblique cases, have *omicron*, but long in those which have *oméga*; as,

*Aidon, Aeidōnis*; *Agamemnon, Agamemnōnis*:—*Plāto, Plitōnis*; *Stion, Stinōnis*; *Sicyon, Sicyōnis*. *Sidon, Orion*, and *Ægeon*, have the increment common.

3. (a.) In the increment of gentile nouns in *o* or *on*, whether Greek or barbaric, *o* is generally short; as,

*Mācēdo, Mācēdōnis*. So, *Amazōnes, Aōnes, Myrmidōnes, Santōnes, Saxōnes, Senōnes, Teutōnes*, etc.

(b.) But the following have *o* long:—*Eburōnes, Lacōnes, Iōnes, Nasamōnes, Bessōnes* (or *-iōnes*), *Vettōnes, Burgundōnes*. *Britōnes* has the *o* common.

4. Greek nouns in *or* increase short; as, *Hector, Hectōris*; *rhētor, rhētōris*; *Agēnor, Agēnōris*.

5. Compounds of *pus*, (*πῦς*), as *tripus, polypus, Eāpus*, and also *arbor, mēmor, bos, compos, impos*, and *lēpus*, increase short.

6. *O*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as,

*scrobs*, *scribis*; *inops*, *inopis*; *Dolopes*. But it is long in the increment of *scorops*, *Cyclops*, and *hydrops*.

7. The increment of *Allobroa*, *Cappadox*, and *præcox*, is also short.

#### Exceptions in Increments in E.

1. Nouns in *en*, *enis* (except *Hymen*), lengthen their increment; as, *Siren*, *Sirēnis*. So, *Aniēnis*, *Nērīenis*, from *Anio* and *Nerio*, or rather from the obsolete *Anien* and *Neriēnes*.

2. *Hæres*, *locuples*, *mansues*, *merces*, and *quies*—also *Iber*, *ver*, *lex*, *rex*, *alec* or *alex* (*hâl-*) *narthex* and *vervex*—*plebs* and *seps*—increase long.

3. Greek nouns in *es* and *er* (except *aër* and *æther*) increase long; as, *magnes*, *magnētis*; *crāter*, *crātēris*.

#### Exceptions in Increments in I.

1. Nouns and adjectives in *ix*, increase long; as, *victrix*, *victriciis*; *fēlix*, *fēlicis*.

Exc. *Ōlīx*, *Cūlīx*, *cozēndīx*, *filīx*, *forīx*, *hystrix*, *līrix*, *nīx*, *pīx*, *sālīx*, *strīx*, and rarely *sandīx* or *sandīx*, increase short.

2. *Vibex* and the following nouns in *is* increase long:—*dis*, *glis*, *lis*, *vis*, *Nis*, *Quiris*, and *Samnis*. The increment of *Pelōpis* is common.

3. Greek nouns, whose genitive is in *inis* increase long; as, *delphin*, *delphinis*; *Sālāmis*, *Sālāminis*.

#### Exceptions in Increments in U.

1. Genitives in *udis*, *uris*, and *utis*, from nominatives in *us*, have the penult long; as,

*pālus*, *pālūdis*; *tellus*, *tellūris*; *virtus*, *virtūtis*. But *intercus*, *Ligus* and *pēcus*, *pēcūdis*, increase short.

2. *Fur*, *frux*, (obs.), *lux*, and *Pollux*, increase long.

#### Exceptions in Increments in Y.

1. Greek nouns whose genitive is in *ynis*, increase long; as, *Trāchyn*, *Trāchynis*.

2. The increment of *bombyx*, *Cēyx*, *gryps*, and *mormyr*, is long; that of *Bebryx* and *sandyx* is common.

### INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

§ 288. 1. A noun in the plural number is said to increase, when, in any case, it has more syllables than in the ablative singular.

REMARK. When the ablative singular is wanting, or its place is supplied by a form derived from a different root, an ablative may, for this purpose, be assumed, by annexing the proper termination to the root of the plural.

2. When a noun increases in the plural number, its penult is called the plural increment; as, *sa* in *mūsārum*, *no* in *dōminōrum*, *pi* in *rūpium* and *rūpius*.

3. In plural increments, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u* are short; as,

*bōndrum, animabus, rerum, rebus, gēnērōrum, ambōbus; sermonibus, līcibus.*  
Thus,

*Appia, longārum, tēritur, rēgina viārum. Stat. S. 2, 2, 12.*  
*Sunt lacrymæ rerum, et mentem mortālīa tangunt. Virg. A. 1, 462.*  
*Atque illi, quōrum cōmœdia prisca vīrōrum est. Hor. S. 1, 4, 2.*  
*Portibus egredior, ventisque ferentibus ūsus. Ovid.*

#### IV. INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ 289. 1. A verb is said to increase, when, in any of its parts, it has more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active; as, *das, dā-tis; dōces, dō-cē-mus.*

2. The number of increments in any part of a verb is equal to that of its additional syllables. In verbs, as in nouns, the last syllable is never considered the increment. If a verb has but one increment, it is the penult; and this first increment, through all the variations of the verb, except in reduplicated tenses, continues equally distant from the first syllable. The remaining increments are numbered successively from the first; as,

|                        |                        |                          |
|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>ā-mas,</i>          | <i>mō-nes,</i>         | <i>au-dis,</i>           |
| 1                      | 1                      | 1                        |
| <i>ā-mā-mus,</i>       | <i>mō-nē-tur,</i>      | <i>au-dī-tis,</i>        |
| 1 2                    | 1 2                    | 1 2                      |
| <i>ām-ā-bā-mus,</i>    | <i>mōn-ē-rē-tur,</i>   | <i>au-di-ē-bas,</i>      |
| 1 2 3                  | 1 2 3                  | 1 2 3 4                  |
| <i>ām-ā-vē-rā-mus.</i> | <i>mōn-ē-bim-i-nl.</i> | <i>au-di-ē-bām-i-nl.</i> |

3. A verb in the active voice may have three increments; in the passive, it may have four.

4. In determining the increments of deponent verbs, an active voice, formed from the same root, may be supposed.

Thus the increments of *lō-lā-tur*, *lōt-ā-bā-tur*, etc., are reckoned from the supposed verb *lato, latus*.

§ 290. In the increments of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* are short; as,

*amāre, mōnēre, faciōte, vōlāmus, rēgēbāmini.* Thus,

*Et cantāre pāres, et respondēre pārti. Virg. E. 7, 5.*  
*Elo ēquidem dōcēbam ānīmo, rēbarque fātūrum. Id. A. 6, 690.*  
*Cumque lōqui pōtērit, mātrem faciōte salūtet. Ovid, M. 9, 378.*  
*Scindūtur incertum stūdia in contrāria vulgus. Virg. A. 2, 39.*  
*Nos nūmērus sūmus, et frūges cōsumēre nātī. Hor. Ep. 1, 2, 27.*

(a.) *Exceptions in Increments in A.*

The first increment of *do* is short; as, *dāmus, dābāmus, dāret, dā-tūrus, circumdāre, circumdābāmus.*

(b.) *Exceptions in Increments in E.*

1. *E* before *r* is short in the *first* increment of all the present and imperfect tenses of the third conjugation, and in the *second* increment in *bēris* and *bēre*; as,

*rēgere* (infin. and imperat.), *rēgēris* or *rēgēre* (pres. ind. pass.), *rēgērem* and *rēgērer* (imp. subj.); *amābēris*, *amābēre*; *mōnēbēris*, *mōnēbēre*.

NOTE 1. In *vēlim*, *vēlis*, etc., from *vōlo*, (second person, regularly *vōlis*, by syncope and contraction *vis*), *ē* is not an increment, but represents the root vowel *ō*, and is therefore short; § 284, and § 178, 1.

2. *E* is short before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, and the persons formed from them; as,

*amāvērā*, *amāvērāt*, *amāvērīm*, *mōnuērīm*, *rezerō*, *audivēritis*.

NOTE 2. In verbs which have been shortened by syncope or otherwise, *e* before *r* retains its original quantity; as, *flēram*, for *flēvēram*.

For the short *e* before *runt*, in the perfect indicative, as, *sistēbunt*, see *Systole*, § 307.

(c.) *Exceptions in Increments in I.*

1. *I* before *v* or *s*, in tenses formed from the second root, is long; as,

*pētīvi*, *audīvi*, *quāsitīvi*, *divīsīvi*, *audīvimus*, *divīvimus*, *audīvēram*.

2. *I* is long, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, in the final syllable of the third root of *gaudeo*, *arcesso*, *divido*, *fācesso*, *lācesso*, *pēto*, *quæro*, *rēcenseo* and *oblīviscor*; as,

*gāvisus*, *arcessitus*, *divisus*, *fācessitus*, *lācessitus*, *pētītus*, *quāsitus*, *rēcensitus*, *oblītus*; *gāvisurus*, etc.

3. *I* in the first increment of the fourth conjugation, except in *īmus* of the perfect indicative, is long; as,

*audire*, *audīrem*, *audītus*, *audīturus*, pres. *vēnimus*, but in the perfect *vēnimus*. So in the ancient forms in *ībam*, *ībo*, of the fourth conjugation; as, *nutribā*, *lēnībunt*; and also in *ībam* and *ībo*, from *eo*.

NOTE 3. When a vowel follows, the *i* is short, by § 283; as, *audīunt*, *audībam*.

4. *I* is long in the first and second persons plural of subjunctives in *sim*, *sīs*, *sit*, etc., (§ 162, 1.); as, *simus*, *sitis*, *vēlimus*, *vēlītis*, and their compounds; as, *possimus*, *adeimus*, *mālimus*, *nōlimus*. So also in *nōlīto*, *nōlīte*, *nōlītōte*, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation.

5. *I* in *ris*, *rimus* and *ritis*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as,

*vidēris*, Mart., *occidēris*, Hor.; *vidēritis* (Ovid), *dēdēritis* (Id.); *fēcērīmus* (Catt.), *ēgērīmus* (Virg.)

(d.) *Exceptions in Increments in U.*

*U* is long in the increment of supines, and of participles formed from the third root of the verb; as,

*sēcūtus*, *sōlūtus*, *sēcūturus*, *sōlūturus*.

# RULES FOR THE QUANTITY OF PENULTIMATE AND ANTEPENULTIMATE SYLLABLES.

## I. PENULTS.

§ 291. 1. Words ending in *acus*, *icus*, and *icum*, shorten the penult; as,

*dmārācus*, *Ægyptiācus*, *rusticus*, *tritūcum*, *viāticum*.

Except *Dācus*, *mārācus*, *opācus*; *āmicus*, *apricus*, *ficus*, *mendiculus*, *pious*, *posticus*, *pūdicus*, *spicus*, *umbilicus*, *vicus*.

2. Words ending in *abrum*, *ubrum*, *acrum*, and *atrum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*candēlabrum*, *dēlabrum*, *lāvācrum*, *vērātrum*.

3. Nouns in *ca* lengthen the penult; as,

*apōthēca*, *clodca*, *lactuca*, *lōrica*, *phōca*.

Except *ātica*, *brassica*, *āica*, *fūtica*, *manāica*, *pātica*, *perūtica*, *scūtica*, *phālārīca*, *tūnica*, *vōmica*; and also some nouns in *ica* derived from adjectives in *icus*; as, *fabrica*, *grammātica*, etc. So *mānica*.

4. Patronymics in *ades* and *ides* shorten the penult; as, *Atlantiādes*, *Prīāmidēs*.

Except those in *ides* which are formed from nouns in *eus* or *ēs* (ε); as, *Atrides*, from *Atrēus*; *Neoclides*, from *Neoclēs*; except, also, *Amphīdrāides*, *Bēlides*, *Amjclides*, *Lycurgides*.

5. Patronymics and similar words in *ais*, *eis*, and *ois*, lengthen the penult; as,

*Achāis*, *Chrjseis*, *Mindis*. Except *Phōcāis* and *Thēbāis*. The penult of *Nēreis* is common.

6. Words in *do* lengthen the penult; as,

*vādo*, *cēdo*, *dulcēdo*, *formido*, *frōdo*, *testādo*. Except *cādo*, *ēdo* (to eat), *comēdo*, *Macēdo*, *mōdo*, *sōlido*, *spādo*, *trēpido*. *Rudo* is common.

7. Words in *idus* shorten the penult; those in *udus* lengthen it;

as,

*callidus*, *herbidus*, *limpidus*, *lividus*, *perfidus*; *crūdus*, *lūdus*, *nūdus*, *sūdus*, *ūdus*. Except *Idus*, *fidus*, *infidus*, *nidus*, *sidus*.

8. Nouns in *ga* and *go* lengthen the penult; as,

*sāga*, *collēga*, *auriga*, *rūga*; *imāgo*, *cālīgo*, *arūgo*. Except *cālīga*, *ossīfrāga*, *tōga*, *plāga*, (a region, or a net), *fūga* and its compounds, *stēga*, *ecclōga*, *ēgo*, *horpāgo*, *āgo*.

9. Words in *le*, *les*, and *lis*, lengthen the penult; as,

*crīnāle*, *mantēle*, *ancile*; *āles*, *miles*, *prōles*; *annālis*, *crūdēlis*, *civilis*, *cārūlis*.—Except *māle*;—verbals in *ilis* and *bilis*; as, *āgilis*, *amābilis*;—adjectives in *atilis*; as, *umbrātīlis*;—and also, *indōles*, *sōbōles*; *pērisccēlis*, *dapsilis*, *grācilis*, *hēmīlis*, *pārīlis*, *stīlīlis*, *stērīlis*, *mūgilis*, *strīgilis*.

10. Words in *elus*, *ela*, *elum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*phāsēlus*, *quērēla*, *prēlum*. Except *gēlus*, *gēlum*, *scēlus*.

11. Diminutives in *olus*, *ola*, *olum*, *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, also words in

*ilus*, and those in *ulus*, *ula*, and *ulum*, of more than two syllables, shorten the penult; as,

*urceolus*, *filicula*, *lectulus*, *ratimacula*, *corculum*, *pabulum*; *rutilus*, *garrulus*, *fabula*. Except *asilus*.

12. Words in *ma* lengthen the penult; as,

*fama*, *poëma*, *rima*, *piama*. Except *anima*, *côma*, *décima*, *lacrima*, *vicima*, *hama*.

13. A vowel before final *men* or *mentum* is long; as,

*lœdæmen*, *græmen*, *crimen*, *flæmen*, *jæmentum*, *atræmentum*. Except *tæmen*, *côlæmen*, *Hymen*, *illementum*, and a few verbal nouns derived from verbs of the second and third conjugations; as, *allæmen*, *dôcæmen* or *dôcumentum*, *emollæmentum*, *mônæmentum*, *régimen*, *spécimen*, *légimen*, etc.

14. Words ending in *imus* shorten the penult; as,

*ânimus*, *décimus*, *finitimus*, *fortissimus*, *maximus*. Except *binus*, *linus*, *mimus*, *opimus*, *quadrimus*, *simus*, *trimus*, and two superlatives, *imus* and *primus*.

NOTE. When an adjective ends in *umus* for *imus*, the quantity remains the same; as, *décimus*, *optimus*, *maximus*, for *décimus*, etc.

15. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *mus* and *mun*, are long; as,

*râmus*, *rémus*, *extrémus*, *prémus*, *âmus*, *pômum*, *vôlémum*. Except *diômus*, *balsânum*, *cinânum*, *dônus*, *glômus*, *hâmus*, *postâmus*, *thâlâmus*, *lônus*, *côlâmus*, *némus*.

16. (a.) Words in *na*, *ne*, *ni*, and *nis*, lengthen the penult; as,

*lâna*, *drêna*, *cârîna*, *mâtrîna*, *lîna*, *mâne*, *septên*, *octôni*, *inânis*, *finis*, *immânis*. Except *adâna*, *cottâna*, *pîlâna*, *mîna*, *gêna*, *bêne*, *sine*, *cânis*, *cînis*, *jûvênis*; and the following in *ina*,—*buccina*, *dômina*, *fucina*, *fêmina*, *fuscina*, *lâmina*, *mâchina*, *pâgina*, *pîna*, *sarcina*, *tibicina*, *trâlina*; and in plur. *âpina*, *mîna*, *nundina*. So compounds of *gêno*; as, *incîgêna*.

(b.) Verbs in *ino* and *inor* shorten the penult; as,

*destino*, *fascino*, *inquino*, *sino*, *criminor*. Except *festino*, *propino*, *sîgino*, *optinor*, and the compounds of *cîno*; as, *inclino*, etc.

17. (a.) Adjectives in *inus*, when they express time, or indicate a material or an inanimate substance, shorten the penult; as,

*crastinus*, *diutinus*, *pristinus*, *p̄rendinus*: *fâginus*, *crôcinus*, *hyacinthinus*, *adl̄mantinus*, *crystallinus*, *oleâginus*, *bombôcinus*. Except *matutinus*, *repentinus*, *vesperinus*.

(b.) Other adjectives and words in *inus* and in *inum* lengthen the penult; as,

*caninus*, *binus*, *p̄egrinus*, *mârinus*, *clandestinus*, *sûpinus*: *linum*. Except *dâcinus*, *âsinus*, *coccinus*, *côminus*, *emînus*, *côphinus*, *dôminus*, *fâcinus*, *fâcînus*, *prôtinus*, *sinus*, *terminus*, *gêminus*, *circinus*, *minus*, *vâlicinus*, *succinnum*, *fascinum*.

18. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *nus* and *num*, are long; as,

*urbânus*, *âerênus*, *patrônus*, *prônus*, *mînus*, *tribûnus*, *fânum*, *vênênum*, *dônum*. Except *ânus*, an old woman, *galbânus*, *mânus*, *ocêdnus*, *plâtûnus*, *ebênus*, *gêmus*, *limigênus*, *pênus*, *lênus*, *Vênus*, *ônus*, *bônus*, *sônus*, *thrônus*; *lâgânum*, *peucêdânum*, *pôpânum*, *tympânum*, *abrôlônnum*.

19. Words ending in *ba*, *bo*, *pa*, and *po*, shorten the penult; as,

*fâba*, *jûba*, *syllâba*; *bîbo*, *cûbo*, *prôbo*; *âlâpa*, *lâpa*, *scôpha*; *crêpo*, *participo*. Except *glêba*, *scriba*, *bûbo*, *glûbo*, *lîbo*, *nûbo*, *scribo*, *sîpho*, *cêpa*, *cûpa*, *pâpa*, *pêpa*, *ripa*, *scôpa*, *stâpa*; *câpo*, *rêpo*, *stîpo*.

20. Words in *al*, *ar*, *are*, and *aris*, lengthen the penult; as,  
*tribūnāl*, *rectigāl*: *lūpānar*, *pulvīnar*; *alkāre*, *liqueāre*; *nāris*. Except *ānīmāl*,  
*capitāl*, *cābitāl*, *lōrāl*, *jābar*, *sālar*, *māre*, *līmāris*, *hīlāris*, *canthāris*, *cappāris*,  
*lēcāris*.

21. Before final *ro* or *ror*, *a* and *e* are short; *i*, *o*, and *u*, are long;  
 as,

*dro*, *pāro*, *fēro*, *gēro*, *sēro*, *cēlēro*, *tempēro*, *quēror*; *miror*, *spīro*, *tīro*; *auctōro*,  
*ignōro*, *ōro*; *cūro*, *dūro*, *figūro*; *lūror*. Except *dēclāro*, *pēro*, *spēro*; *fōro*, *mō-*  
*ror*, *sōror*, *vōro*, *fūro*, *sātūro*; and derivatives from genitives increasing short;  
 as, *augūr*, *dēcōro*, *mēmōro*, *murmāro*, etc.; from *augur*, *augūris*; *dēcus*, *dēcō-*  
*ris*, etc.

22. Before final *rus*, *ra*, *rum*, *e* is short; the other vowels are  
 long; as,

*mērum*, *mērus*, *hēdēra*, *sērum*, *cēlērum*; *cārus*, *mīrus*, *mōrus*, *mūrus*, *gūrus*;  
*dra*, *spīra*, *ōra*, *nātūra*, *lōrum*.

Except, 1. *austērus*, *gālērus*, *plērus*, *prōcērus*, *sincērus*, *sērus*, *sēvērus*, *vērus*,  
*crālēra*, *cēra*, *pēra*, *panthēra*, *stātēra*.

Exc. 2. *barbārus*, *cammarūs*, *cāmūrus*, *canthārus*, *chōrus*, *fōrus*, *hellēbōrus*,  
*nārus*, *ōpīpārus*, *ōeipārus*, *phosphōrus*, *pīrus*, *sātīrus*, *scārus*, *spārus*, *tartārus*,  
*tōrus*, *zēphīrus*; *amphōra*, *ancōra*, *cithāra*, *hāra*, *līra*, *mōra*, *purpūra*, *philīra*,  
*pīra*, *sātīra*; *fōrum*, *gārum*, *pārum*, *suppārum*.

23. Adjectives in *osus* lengthen the penult; as,  
*fūmōsus*, *vinōsus*.

24. Nouns in *etas* and *itas* shorten the penult; as,  
*pīētas*, *citētas*, *bōnitas*.

25. Adverbs in *tīm* lengthen the penult, those in *itē* and *itūs*  
 shorten it; as,

*stātīm*, (constantly), *trītīm*, *tribūtīm*; *acriter*, *fundītūs*. Except *sūtīm*, (im-  
 mediately), *offūtīm*.

26. (a.) Words in *ates*, *itis*, *otis*, and in *ata*, *eta*, *ota*, *uta*, lengthen  
 the penult, as,

*vātes*, *pēnātes*, *citis*, *mītis*, *cāryōtis*, *lēcāritīs*, *pīrāta*, *mēta*, *poēta*, *ālūta*, *cicūta*.  
 Except *itīs*, *pōtis*, *drāpēta*, *nōta*, *rōta*.

(b.) Nouns in *ita* shorten the penult; as,  
*āmīta*, *nāvīta*, *orbīta*, *sēmita*. Except *pīuita*.

27. Nouns in *atum*, *itum*, *utum*, lengthen the penult; as,  
*lūpātum*, *acōnītum*, *vērūtum*. Except *dēfrūtum*, *pulpītum*, *pēlōritum*, *lūtum*  
 (mud), *compītum*.

28. Nouns and adjectives ending in *tus* lengthen the penult; as,  
*barbātus*, *grātus*, *bōlētus*, *fūcētus*, *crīnītus*, *pētītus*, *agrōtus*, *tōtus*, *argūtus*, *hir-*  
*sūtus*. Except *cātus*, *lātus*, (-*eris*), *impētus*, *mētus*, *vēgētus*, *vētus*; *anhēlītus*, *digi-*  
*tus*, *grātūtus*, *hālītus*, *hospītus*, *servītus*, *spirītus*; *antidōtus*, *nōtus*, *quōtus*, *tōtus*  
 (so great); *arbūtus*, *pūtus*; *incītus*; and derivatives from perfect participles  
 having a short penult; as, *exercītus*, *hābītus*.

29. A penultimate vowel before *v* is long; as,

*clāva*, *olīva*, *dīves*, *nāvis*, *civis*, *pāpāver*, *pāvo*, *prīvo*, *ovum*, *prāvus*, *actīvus*,  
*fūgītīvus*. Except *āvis*, *brēvis*, *grāvis*, *lēvis*, *ōvis*; *cāvo*, *grāvo*, *jūvo*, *lāvo*, *lēvo*,  
*ovo*; *āvus*, *cāvus*, *fāvus*, *nōvus*, *fāvor*, *pāvōr*, *nōvem*.



30. Words ending in *dex*, *dix*, *mex*, *nix*, *lex*, *rex*, lengthen the penult; as,

*codex*, *jadex*; *lōdix*, *rādex*; *cīmez*, *pāmez*; *jūnix*; *īlex*; *cārez*, *mārez*.  
Except *cūlex*, *īlex*, *rūmez*.

## II. ANTEPENULTS.

§ 292. 1. *I* is short in diminutives in *icūlus* and *icellus* (*a*, *um*), whether nouns or adjectives; as,

*colicūlus*, *dulcicūlus*, *crāticūla*, *pellicūla*, *mollicellus*. Except words in which the preceding vowel is short; as, *cāticūla*, *cānicūla*: or in which *i* is long in the primitive; as, *cornicūla*, from *cornix*, *iciā*.

2. Numerals in *ginti*, *ginta*, *ēni*, and *esīmus*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*viginti*, *quādrāginta*, *tricēni*, *quīquāgēsīmus*.

3. *O* and *u* before final *lentus* are short; as,

*vinōlentus*, *fraudūlentus*, *pulvērūlentus*, *trīcūlentus*.

4. A vowel before final *nea*, *neo*, *nia*, *nio*, *nius*, *nium*, is long; as,

*drānea*, *līnea*, *cāneo*, *mūnia*, *pūnio*, *Fāvōnius*, *patrimōnium*. Except *castānea*, *stīnea*, *māneo*, *mīneo*, *mōneo*, *sēneo*, *tēneo*, *ignōmīnia*, *luscīnia*, *vēnia*, *lānio*, *vēnio*, *ingēnium*, *gēnium*, *sēnio*, *sēnium*; words in *cinium*, as, *tēnōcinium*; and derivatives in *onius*, when *o* in the root of the primitive is short; as, *Agāmēmaōnius*, from *Agāmēmon*, *ōnis*.

5. Words ending in *areo*, *arius*, *arium*, *erium*, *orius*, *orium*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*āreo*, *cibārium*, *plantārium*, *dictērīum*, *consōrius*, *tentōrium*. Except *cāreo*, *vērīus*, *dēsīdērīum*, *impērīum*, *māgīstērīum*, *ministērīum*.

6. Adjectives in *āticus*, *ātilis*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*āquāticus*, *plumātīlis*. Except some Greek words in *āticus*; as, *grammāticus*.

7. *I* before final *tūdo* is short; as,

*altitūdo*, *longitūdo*.

8. Verbals in *ālis* lengthen *a* but shorten *i* in the antepenult; as,

*āmābilis*, *nūrābilis*; *crēdībilis*, *terrībilis*. In *hābilis*, *b* belongs to the root.

9. *U* before *v* is short, (except in *Jūverna*); as,

*jūvénis*, *jūvénālis*, *jūvénīlītas*, *flāvius*, *dilūvium*.

## III. PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 293. 1. Patrials and proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, shorten the penult:—

|                  |                  |                  |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| ba,              | de,              | o, <sup>6</sup>  | ges,                | du, <sup>12</sup>   | ena, <sup>19</sup>  | arus,               | atus, <sup>22</sup> |
| ca, <sup>1</sup> | le, <sup>4</sup> | on, <sup>7</sup> | les,                | eus, <sup>14</sup>  | anes, <sup>21</sup> | erua, <sup>21</sup> | itus, <sup>22</sup> |
| la, <sup>2</sup> | pe, <sup>6</sup> | os, <sup>8</sup> | lis, <sup>10</sup>  | gus, <sup>16</sup>  | enes,               | yrus,               | otus, <sup>24</sup> |
| be,              | re,              | er, <sup>9</sup> | bus,                | lus, <sup>18</sup>  | aris,               | asus,               |                     |
| ce, <sup>3</sup> | al,              | mas,             | cus, <sup>11</sup>  | mus, <sup>17</sup>  | yris,               | osus,               |                     |
| che,             | il,              | ras,             | chus, <sup>12</sup> | phus, <sup>13</sup> | asis, <sup>20</sup> | usus,               |                     |

*Exceptions.*

<sup>1</sup>Márica, Nálica.—<sup>2</sup>Eriphýla, Messála, Philómela, Suádelá.—<sup>3</sup>Bérénice.—<sup>4</sup>Eriphýle, Neóbúle, Péríméle.—<sup>5</sup>Europe, Sinópe.—<sup>6</sup>Carthágo, Cúpavo, Cúpdo, Origo, Theáo.—<sup>7</sup>Alémon, Anthédon, Chalcédon, Íason, Philémon, Pólypámon, Sarpédon, Thermódon.—<sup>8</sup>Cercýros, Pépáréthos, Pharsálos, Sérphos.—<sup>9</sup>Méleáger.—<sup>10</sup>Bessális, Eumélis, Juvénilis, Martialis, Pháselis, Stymphális.—<sup>11</sup>Bénacus, Calcus, Gránicus, Númicus, Trivicus.—<sup>12</sup>Ophiáchus.—<sup>13</sup>Abydus.—<sup>14</sup>Cáphareus, Enipeus, Prómétheus, Phóroneus, Salmóneus, Oileus.—<sup>15</sup>Céthégus.—<sup>16</sup>Names in -clus, in -olus (*except* Æólus, Naubólus), in -bulus, (*except* Bibúlus) Eumélus, Gætúlus, Íulus, Massýlus, Orbélus, Pharsálus, Sardánáphalus, Stymphálus.—<sup>17</sup>Some in -démus and -phémus; as, Acádémus, Pólyphémus.—<sup>18</sup>Seríphus.—<sup>19</sup>Alcména, Athénæ, Caména, Fidéna, Messéna, Múrëna, Mýcénæ.—<sup>20</sup>Amásis.—<sup>21</sup>Hómærus, Ibérus.—<sup>22</sup>Arátus, Cærátus, Torquátus.—<sup>23</sup>Héráclitus, Hermáphróditus.—<sup>24</sup>Báthrótus.

2. Proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, *lengthen* the penult:—

|                   |                   |                   |                    |                     |                     |                     |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| ana, <sup>1</sup> | sa,               | num, <sup>7</sup> | tas,               | nus, <sup>12</sup>  | urus,               | etus, <sup>16</sup> |
| ina, <sup>2</sup> | ta, <sup>4</sup>  | tum,              | des, <sup>9</sup>  | pus, <sup>13</sup>  | esus, <sup>15</sup> | utus,               |
| ona, <sup>3</sup> | tæ, <sup>5</sup>  | or, <sup>8</sup>  | tes, <sup>10</sup> | irus,               | isus,               | yus, <sup>17</sup>  |
| yna,              | ene, <sup>6</sup> | nas,              | tis, <sup>11</sup> | orus, <sup>14</sup> | ysus,               | vus.                |

*Exceptions.*

<sup>1</sup>Sequána.—<sup>2</sup>Mütina, Próserpina, Ruspina, Sarúna.—<sup>3</sup>Axóna, Matróna.—<sup>4</sup>Dalmáta, Próchýta, Sarmáta, Lápiþa.—<sup>5</sup>Gálátæ, Jaxámætæ, Masságætæ, Macétæ, Saurómátæ.—<sup>6</sup>Clyméne, Hélène, Melpómène, Nectyméne.—<sup>7</sup>Ariminum, Drépanum.—<sup>8</sup>Númltor.—<sup>9</sup>Miltiádes, Pyládes, Sótádes, Thúcydides; *pa-tronymics* in -des, (§ 291, 4) and *plurals* in -ades.—<sup>10</sup>Antiphátes, Chárites, Eurybátes, Ichnóbátes, Euergetés, Masságètes, and *all names* in -crates.—<sup>11</sup>Der-cétis.—<sup>12</sup>Aplódanus, Apónus, Cáranus, Chrysógónus, Cimínius, Clyménus, Con-cánuus, Dardánuus, Diáduménus, Eárinus, Eridánuus, Fúcinus, Hélénus, Libánuus, Mórini, Mýcónus, Nebróphónus, Olénus, Péricleménus, Rhódánuus, Santónus, Sequáni, Stépánus, Telégónus, Terminus, and *names* in -gonus and -xenus.—<sup>13</sup>Edipus.—<sup>14</sup>Pácórus, Bospórus, and *names* in -chorus and -phorus; as, Stéaichórus, Phosphórus.—<sup>15</sup>Ephésus, Vogésus, Vólëus.—<sup>16</sup>Iápëtus, Táygëtus, Venëtus.—<sup>17</sup>Épytus, Anytus, Eurýtus, Hippólytus.

3. The penultimate vowel of the following proper names, and adjectives derived from proper names, though followed by a vowel, is long. See § 283, I. Exc. 6.

Enéas, Æthion, Achélous, Achillëus, Alcýonëus, Alexandría, Alóeus, Al-phëus, Aminëus, Amphiaráus, Amphigénia, Amphion, Amytháon, Arion, An-chisëus, Atlantëus, Antióchia, Bíoneus, Cæsáreá, Cálaureá, Calliópæa, Cassiópæa, Cleanthéas, Cydonëus, Cýmódócæa, Cythéræa, Dárius (-eus), Dëidámia, Didýmáon, Diómédëus, Dolicháon, Echlon, Elëus, Endýmniönus, Enyo, Eóus, Erëbëus, Erethëus, Gálátæa, Gigantëus, Héraclea (-ëus), Hippodámia, Hýpë-ron, Ilithýia, Imáon, Ióläus, Iphigénia, Ixion, Láodámia, Latóus, Lesbóus, Lycáon, Máchiáon, Mausóleum, Mëdæa, Ménëläus, Méthion, Myrtóus, Ophion, Orion, Orithýia, Orphëus, Pallantëum (-us), Pandion, Paphagæa, Pénëus, Pen-thësilæa, Phobëus, Poppæa, Protësiläus, Pyrënëus, Sardóus, Thália.

NOTE. *Eus* in the termination of Greek proper names, is commonly a diphthong; as, *Alceus, Ceneus, Orpheus, Peleus, Perseus, Proteus, Theseus, Tydeus*, which are dissyllables; *Briareus, Enipheus, Macareus, Typhoeus*, which are tri-syllables, *Idomeneus*, etc. Cf. § 283, Exc. 6, Note 2. But in those which in Greek are written *εἰος* (*eios*), *eus* forms two syllables; as, *Alphëus*. So also in adjectives in *eus*, whether of Greek or Latin origin; as, *Erëbëus, Erethëus, Orphëus; aurëus, ignëus*.

## QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

## I. VOWELS.

## MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 294. (a.) All monosyllables, except enclitics, ending in a vowel, are long; as,

*ā, āh, dā, sād, ē, dē, mē, tē, sē, nē, rē, ī, fī, hī, quī, nī, sī, O or ōh, dō, prō, prōh, quō, sīō, tū.*

## POLYSYLLABLES.

## A final.

1. A final, in words declined, is short; as, *mūsā, templā, cāpītā, Tūdēā*. Thus,

*Mūsā mīhī causas mēmōrā; quo nāmīne lasso.... Virg. A. 1, 8.*

Exc. A final is long in the ablative of the first declension, and in the vocative of Greek nouns in *as* and *es*; as,

*Mūsā, fundā; O Enēā, O Pallā, O Anchisā.*

2. A final, in words not declined, is long; as, *āmā, frustrā, antēā, ergā, intrā*. Thus,

*Extrā fortunam est quidquid dōnātur āmicis. Mart. Epig. 5, 42, 7.*

Exc. A final is short in *ciā, itā, quā*, and in *pūtā*, when used adverbially, in the sense of 'for example.' It is sometimes short in the preposition *contra*, and in numerals ending in *ginta*; as, *trīginta*, etc. In *postea*, it is common.

A final is also short in the names of Greek letters; as, *alphā, bētā*, etc., and in *tūrāntātrā*, the imitated sound of the trumpet.

## E final.

§ 295. E final, in words of two or more syllables, is short; as, *nātē, patrē, ipsē, currē, rēgērē, nempē, antē*. Thus,

*Incipē, parvū puer, risu cognoscere matrem. Virg. E. 4, 80.*

REMARK. The enclitics *-que, -ne, -ve, -ce, -le, -pte*, etc., as they are not used alone, have *e* short, according to the rule; as, *nēquē, hūjuscē, suaptē*. Cf. § 294, (a.)

Exc. 1. E final is long in nouns of the first and fifth declensions; as,

*Calliōpē, Tūdīdē, fidē*. So also in the compounds of *rē* and *dīē*; as, *quārē, hōdīē, pridē, postridē, quōtidīē*, and in the ablative *fāmē*, originally of the fifth declension.

Exc. 2. E final is long in Greek vocatives from nouns in *-es*, of the third declension; as, *Achillē, Hippōmēnē*; and in Greek neuters plural; as, *cētē, mētē, pēlāgē, Tempē*.

Exc. 3. In the second conjugation, *e* final is long in the second person singular of the imperative active; as, *dōcē, mōnē*;—but it is sometimes short in *cāve, vāle*, and *vīde*.

Exc. 4. *E* final is long in adverbs formed from adjectives of the second declension; as,

*placidē, pulchrē, valdē* for *placide, maxime*; but it is short in *benē, malē, infernē, supernē*.

Exc. 5. *Fērē, fermē, and dhē*, have the final *e* long.

### I final.

§ 296. *I* final is long; as, *dōminī, fili, classi, dōcērī, si*. Thus,

*Quid dōmini ficient, audent cum tālla fūres.* Virg. E. 3, 16.

Exc. 1. (*a*) *I* final is common in *mīhi, tibi, sibi, ibi, and ubi*.

(*b*) In *ubique* and commonly in *ibidem* it is long, but in *ubivis* and *ubinam* it is short.—(*c*) In *nisi, quāsi, and cui*, when a dissyllable, *i* final is common, but usually short. In *ūtinam* and *ūtique*, and rarely, also, in *ūt*, it is short.

Exc. 2. *I* final is short in the dative singular of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Pallādī, Mīnōrī, Tēthī*.

Exc. 3. *I* final is short in the vocative of Greek nouns in *-is*; as, *Alexī, Daphnī, Pārī*. But it is long in vocatives from Greek nouns in *-is, (us) -entos*; as, *Simōi, Pýrōi*.

Exc. 4. *I* final is short in Greek datives and ablatives plural in *-ei*, or, before a vowel, *-sin*; as, *Dryāsi, hērūsi, Trōāsin*.

### O final.

§ 297. *O* final, in words of two or more syllables, is common; as, *virgō, ūmō, quandō*. Thus,

*Ergō mētu cāpita Scylla est inimica pāterno.* Virg. Cir. 386.

*Ergō sollicitas tu causa, pēcūnia, vitas es!* Prop. 3, 6, 1.

Exc. 1. *O* final is long in the dative and ablative singular; as, *dōminō, regnō, bonō, suō, illō, eō*.

Exc. 2. *O* final is long in ablatives used as adverbs; as, *certō, falsō, mēritō, vulgō, eō, quō*; and also in *omninō*, in *ergō*, 'for the sake of,' and in the interjection *iō*.

REMARK 1. The final *o* of verbs is almost always long in poets of the Augustan age.

REM. 2. In poets subsequent to the Augustan age, final *o* in verbs, in gerunds, and in the adverbs *adeo, ideo, ergo, sēro, vērō, porro, retro, immo, idcirco, subito*, and *postremo*, is sometimes short.

Exc. 3. *O* final is short in *cito, illico, pręfecto*, and the compounds of *mōdo*; as, *dummodō, postmodō*, etc.; and in *ēgo* and *hōmo* it is more frequently short than long.

Exc. 4. *O* final in Greek nouns written with an omēga (ω) is long; as, *Chō, Didō, Athō, and Andrōgeō*, (gen.)

### U final.

§ 298. 1. *U* final is long; as, *vultū, cornū, Panthū, dictū, diū*. Thus,

*Vultu, quo cælum tempestatesque sērēnat.* Virg. A. 1, 255.

Exc. *Indē* and *nēndē*, ancient forms of *in* and *mon*, have *u* short. *U* is also short in terminations in *us* short, when *s* is removed by elision; as, *contentus*, for *contentūs*. See § 206, 2.

### Y final

2. *Y* final is short; as, *Mōly*, *Tiphý*. Thus,

*Mōly* vōcant sup̄eri: nigrā rādice tēntur. *Ovid. M. 14, 292.*

Exc. *Y* in the dative *Tēthy*, being formed by contraction, is long. § 288, III.

## I L CONSONANTS.

### MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 299. 1. Monosyllabic *substantives* ending in a consonant are long; all other monosyllables ending in a consonant are short; as,

*sōl, vir, fūr, jās, splēn, vēr, fār, lār, Nār, pār, Sēr, fūr, fās, mās, rēs, pēs, Dis, glīs, tās, vis, flās, mās, rās, Trās, ōs, (ōris), dās, grās, rās, tās; —nēc, in, ān, dō, dē, quid, quis, quōt, ēt; as,*

*Ipse docet quid īgam. Fūs est ēt dō hoete dōcēri. Ovid. M. 4, 428.*

*Vēr ādeo frondi nēmōrum, vēr ātīle silvis. Virg. G. 2, 323.*

NOTE. The rules for the quantity of final syllables ending in a consonant imply that the consonant is single, and that it is preceded by a single vowel. If otherwise the syllable will be long by § 283, IV. and II.

Exc. 1. *Ōr, fēl, mēl, pōl, vēr, ōs* (gen. *ossis*), and probably *vas* (*vādis*), are short.

Exc. 2. *En, nōn, quān, sin, crās, plūs, cūr, and pār*, are long; so also are particles and pronouns ending in *c*, except *nēc*, which is short, and the pronouns *hic* and *hoc*, in the nominative and accusative, which are common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllabic plural cases of pronouns and forms of verbs in *as, es, and is*, are long; as, *hās, quās, hās, nōs, vōs, quōs, his, quis; —dās, flēs, stēs, is, fis, sis, vis*; except *ēs* from *sum* which is short.

Exc. 4. The abridged imperatives retain the quantity of their root; as, *dāc, dāc*, from *dāco, dāco*; *fāc, fēr*, from *fācio, fēro*.

### POLYSYLLABLES.

### D, L, N, R, T, final

2. Final syllables ending in *d, l, n, r, and t*, are short; as, *illūd, consūl, carmēn, pātēr, cāpūt*. Thus,

*Obstūpuit simul ipse, simul percussus Achātes. Virg. A. 1, 513.*

*Nōmēn Artionum Siciliās implēverāt urbes. Ovid. F. 2, 93.*

*Dum tōquor, horrōr, habet; parque est mēminisse dolōris. Id. M. 9, 291.*

Exc. 1. *E* in *liēn* is long.

Exc. 2. In Greek nouns, nominatives in *n* (except those in *on*, written with an *omicron*), masculine or feminine accusatives in *an* or *en*, and genitives plural in *on*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

*Tiān, Orīn, Anēān, Anchisēn, Calliōpēn; ēptgrammātiōn.*

Exc. 3. *Æt̄r*, *æth̄ēr*, and nouns in *ēr* which form their genitive in *ēr̄is*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

*crat̄ēr*, *sol̄ēr*. So also *Ib̄ēr*; but the compound *Cel̄uber* has sometimes in Martial its last syllable short.

REMARK. A final syllable ending in *t*, may be rendered long by a diphthong, by contraction, by syncope, or by position; as, *aut*, *abūt* for *abūt̄*, *fumāt*, for *fumāt̄*, *dmāt̄*. See § 288, II. III. IV., and § 162, 7, (d.)

### M final.

NOTE. Final *m* with the preceding vowel is almost always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel. See *Ech̄lipsis*, § 305, 2.

3. Final syllables ending in *m*, when it is not cut off, are short; as,

*Quam laudas, pl̄imā? octo n̄m̄ idest h̄onor idem. Hor. S. 2, 2, 28.*

REMARK. Hence in composition the final syllables of *cum* and *circum* are short; as, *cóm̄do*, *circūm̄d̄go*.

### C final.

4. Final syllables ending in *c* are long; as, *āl̄ēc*, *īl̄īc*, *īst̄āc*, *īl̄l̄ūc*. Thus,

*Illic indocto primum se exercuit arcu. Tib. 2, 1, 69.*

Exc. The final syllable of *dōn̄ēc* is short; as,

*Dōn̄ēc ēris fēl̄ix, multos n̄m̄rāb̄is ūm̄icos. Ovid. Trist. 1, 9, 5.*

### AS, ES, and OS, final.

§ 300. Final syllables in *as*, *es*, and *os*, are long; as,

*m̄s̄ās*, *pīēt̄ās*, *dm̄ās*, *Æn̄ēās*, *quīēs*, *serm̄ōn̄ēs*, *dīēs*, *Pēn̄ēl̄ōpēs*, *dūcent̄iēs*, *m̄ōn̄ēs*, *h̄ōn̄ēs*, *cir̄ōs*, *dōm̄in̄ōs*. Thus,

*Has autem terrās, Itālique hanc It̄ōris ōram. Virg. A. 3, 396.*

*Si mōdo d̄es illis cultus, sim̄l̄ēsque p̄arātus. Ovid. M. 6, 464.*

Exc. 1. (a.) AS. *As* is short in *ān̄ās*, in Greek nouns whose genitive ends in *ādis* or *ādos*; as, *Arc̄ās*, *Pall̄ās*; and in Greek accusatives plural of the third declension; as, *hēr̄ōās*, *lamp̄ād̄ās*.

(b.) *As* is short also in Latin nouns in *as*, *ādos*, formed like Greek patronymics; as, *Appiās*.

Exc. 2. ES. (a.) Final *es* is short in nouns and adjectives of the third declension which increase short in the genitive; as, *hosp̄ēs*, *lūm̄ēs*, *hēb̄ēs*; gen. *hospit̄is*, etc.

(b.) But it is long in *ābiēs*, *āriēs*, *p̄āriēs*, *Ōr̄ēs*, and *pēs*, with its compounds *cornipēs*, *sōnipēs*, etc.

(c.) *Es*, in the present tense of *sum* and its compounds, and in the preposition *pēn̄ēs*, is short.

(d.) *Es* is short in Greek neuters in *es*; as, *cācōthēs*, and in Greek nominatives and vocatives plural from nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Arc̄ādēs*, *Trōēs*, *Amazōnēs*; from *Arcas*, *Arōādēs*, etc.

Exc. 3. OS. (a.) *Os* is short in compounds, *imp̄ōs*, and *ōs* (*ossēs*), with its compound *exōs*.

(b.) *Os* is short in Greek nouns and cases written in the original with *omicron*; as (1) in all neuters; as, *chabōs*, *ēpōs*, *Argōs*; (2) in all nouns of the second declension; as, *Ilīōs*, *Tyrōs*, *Dēlōs*; except those whose genitive is in *ō*, (Greek *ω*); as, *Athōs*, gen. *Athōs*; (3) in genitives singular of the third declension; as, *Pallādōs*, *Tēthysōs*, from *Pallās* and *Tēthys*.

### IS, US, and YS, final.

§ 301. Final syllables in *is*, *us*, and *ys*, are short; as,

*turris*, *millis*, *mūs*, *amās*, *amābis*, *māgis*; *pectus*, *bōnūs*, *ējūs*, *amāmūs*, *rurūs*, *lēnūs*; *Cāpys*, *lēs*. Thus,

*Non aptis inde tollit collectos sēdula flores.* Ovid. M. 13, 928.

*Serius aut citius sēdem prēpēramūs ad unam.* Id. M. 10, 33.

*At Cāpys, et quōrum mēllor sententia menti.* Virg. A. 2, 35.

Exc. 1. IS. (a.) *Is* is long in plural cases; as,

*mūs*, *nōbis*; *omnis*, *urbis*, (for *omnēs*, *urbēs*); *quis*, (for *quēis* or *quibus*). So also in the adverbs *grātis*, *ingrātis*, and *fōris*, which are in reality datives or ablatives plural.

*Et liquidī simūl ignis; ut hīs exordia primis.* Virg. A. 6, 33.

*Quis ante ora patrum Trōjæ sub moenibus altis.* Id. A. 1, 95.

*Non omnis arbusta jūvant, hūmilesque myricæ.* Id. E. 4, 2.

*Adde ut ēgrēgius urōis, opērumque labōrem.* Id. G. 2, 155.

(b.) *Is* is long in the nominative of nouns whose genitive ends in *itis*, *inis*, or *entis*; as, *Sannis*, *Sālāmīs*, *Simois*.

(c.) *Is* is long in the second person singular of the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation; as,

*audis, nescis*. So also in the second persons, *fis*, *is*, *sic*, *vis*, *vélis*, and their compounds; as, *adsis*, *possis*, *quavis*, *mālis*, *nōlis*, etc. Cf. § 299, 1, Exc. 3.

(d.) *Ris*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as, *vidēris*.

Exc. 2. US. (a.) *Us* is long in nouns of the third declension which increase long, and in the genitive singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension, (§ 89, Rem., and § 283, III.); as,

*tellūs*, *virtūs*, *incūs*;—*fructūs*. But *pdlūs*, with the *us* short, occurs in Horace, Art. Poet. 65.

(b.) *Us* is long in Greek nouns written in the original with the diphthong *ous* (*ōus*) whether in the nominative or genitive; as, nom. *Amāthūs*, *Opūs*, *Ekpūs*, *tripūs*, *Panthūs*; gen. *Didūs*, *Soppūs*. But compounds of *pus* (*πους*), when of the second declension, have *us* short; as, *pōkypūs*.

NOTE. The last syllable of every verse, (except the anapæstic and the Ionic *a minōre*), may be either long or short at the option of the poet.

REMARK. By this is meant, that, although the measure require a long syllable, a short one may be used in its stead; and a long syllable may be used where a short one is required; as in the following verses, where the short syllable *ma* stands instead of a long one, and the long syllable *cu* instead of a short one:—

*Sanguineisque mīnu crēpītantia concutit armā.* Ovid. M. 1, 143.

*Non eget Mauri jaculis, nec arcē.* Hor. Od. 1, 22, 2.

## VERSIFICATION.

## FEET.

§ 302. A foot is a combination of two or more syllables of a certain quantity.

Feet are either simple or compound. Simple feet consist of two or three syllables; compound feet of four.

## I. SIMPLE FEET.

## 1. Of two Syllables.

|                                          |                                    |                 |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Spondee</i> ,.....                    | two long, — — ; as,.....           | <i>fundant.</i> |
| <i>Pyrrhic</i> ,.....                    | two short, — — ; as,.....          | <i>Dæus.</i>    |
| <i>Trochee</i> , or <i>choree</i> ,..... | a long and a short, — — ; as,..... | <i>armā.</i>    |
| <i>Iambus</i> ,.....                     | a short and a long, — — ; as,..... | <i>trant.</i>   |

## 2. Of three Syllables.

|                                              |                                                |                   |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Dactyl</i> ,.....                         | a long and two short, — — — ; as,.....         | <i>corpōd.</i>    |
| <i>Anapest</i> ,.....                        | two short and a long, — — — ; as,.....         | <i>dōmini.</i>    |
| <i>Tribrach</i> ,.....                       | three short, — — — ; as,.....                  | <i>faciēd.</i>    |
| <i>Molossus</i> ,.....                       | three long, — — — ; as,.....                   | <i>contēdant.</i> |
| <i>Amphibrach</i> ,.....                     | a short, a long, and a short, — — — ; as,..... | <i>amārē.</i>     |
| <i>Amphimācrus</i> , or <i>Cretic</i> ,..... | a long, a short, and a long, — — — ; as,.....  | <i>cāstid.</i>    |
| <i>Bacchius</i> ,.....                       | a short and two long, — — — ; as,.....         | <i>Cālonēs.</i>   |
| <i>Antibacchius</i> ,.....                   | two long and a short, — — — ; as,.....         | <i>Rōmānā.</i>    |

## II. COMPOUND FEET.

|                              |                                             |                     |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Dispondee</i> ,.....      | a double spondee, — — — — ; as,.....        | <i>confizērānt.</i> |
| <i>Proceleusmatic</i> ,..... | a double Pyrrhic, — — — — ; as,.....        | <i>hōminibūs.</i>   |
| <i>Ditrochee</i> ,.....      | a double trochee, — — — — ; as,.....        | <i>cōmprōbāvīt.</i> |
| <i>Diambus</i> ,.....        | a double iambus, — — — — ; as,.....         | <i>amāvērānt.</i>   |
| <i>Greater Ionic</i> ,.....  | a spondee and a Pyrrhic, — — — — ; as,..... | <i>corrēzimūs.</i>  |
| <i>Smaller Ionic</i> ,.....  | a Pyrrhic and a spondee, — — — — ; as,..... | <i>prōpērābāt.</i>  |
| <i>Choriambus</i> ,.....     | a choree and an iambus, — — — — ; as,.....  | <i>tērrificānt.</i> |
| <i>Antispast</i> ,.....      | an iambus and a choree, — — — — ; as,.....  | <i>adhæsisē.</i>    |
| <i>First epirit</i> ,.....   | an iambus and a spondee, — — — — ; as,..... | <i>amāvērānt.</i>   |
| <i>Second epirit</i> ,.....  | a trochee and a spondee, — — — — ; as,..... | <i>cōnditōrēs.</i>  |
| <i>Third epirit</i> ,.....   | a spondee and an iambus, — — — — ; as,..... | <i>discōrdās.</i>   |
| <i>Fourth epirit</i> ,.....  | a spondee and a trochee, — — — — ; as,..... | <i>addactilīs.</i>  |
| <i>First pæon</i> ,.....     | a trochee and a Pyrrhic, — — — — ; as,..... | <i>tēmpōribūs.</i>  |
| <i>Second pæon</i> ,.....    | an iambus and a Pyrrhic, — — — — ; as,..... | <i>pōtēntiā.</i>    |
| <i>Third pæon</i> ,.....     | a Pyrrhic and a trochee, — — — — ; as,..... | <i>animātūs.</i>    |
| <i>Fourth pæon</i> ,.....    | a Pyrrhic and an iambus, — — — — ; as,..... | <i>cēlērītās.</i>   |

REMARK. Those feet are called *isochronous*, which consist of equal times; as the spondee, the dactyl, the anapest, and the proceleusmatic, one long time being considered equal to two short.



## METRE.

§ 303. 1. *Metre* is an arrangement of syllables and feet according to certain rules.

2. In this general sense, it comprehends either an entire verse, a part of a verse, or any number of verses.

3. Metre is divided into *dactylic*, *anapæstic*, *iambic*, *trochaic*, *choriambic*, and *Ionic*. These names are derived from the original or fundamental foot employed in each.

4. A *metre* or *measure*, in a specific sense, is either a single foot, or a combination of two feet. In the dactylic, choriambic, and Ionic metres, a measure consists of one foot; in the other metres, of two feet. Two feet constituting a measure are sometimes called a *syzygy*.

## VERSES.

§ 304. A *verse* is a certain number of feet, arranged in a regular order, and constituting a line of poetry.

1. Two verses are called a *distich*; a half verse, a *hemistich*.

2. Verses are of different kinds, denominated sometimes, like the different species of metre, from the foot which chiefly predominates in them; as, *dactylic*, *iambic*, etc.;—sometimes from the number of feet or metres which they contain; as, *sênârius*, consisting of six feet; *octônârius*, of eight feet; *mônômêter*, consisting of one measure; *dimêter*, of two; *trimêter*, *tetramêter*, *pentamêter*, *hexamêter*;—sometimes from a celebrated author who used a particular species; as, *Sapphic*, *Anacreontic*, *Alcaic*, *Asclepiadic*, *Glyconic*, *Phalæcian*, *Sotadic*, *Archilochian*, *Alcmanian*, *Pherecratic*, *Aristophanic*, etc., from *Sappho*, *Anacreon*, *Alcæus*, *Asclepiâdes*, *Glycon*, *Phalæcus*, *Sotâdes*, *Archilôchus*, *Alcman*, *Pherecrâtes*, *Aristophânes*, etc.—and sometimes from the particular uses to which they were applied; as, the *prosodiac*, from its use in solemn processions, the *paræmiac*, from its frequent use in proverbs.

3. A verse, with respect to the metres which it contains, may be complete, deficient, or redundant.

(1.) A verse which is complete is called *acatalectic*.

(2.) A verse which is deficient, if it wants one syllable at the end, is called *catalectic*; if it wants a whole foot or half a metre, it is called *brachycatalectic*.

(3.) A verse which wants a syllable at the beginning, is called *acephalous*.

(4.) A verse which has a redundant syllable or foot, is called *hypercatalectic* or *hypermêter*.

4. Hence, the complete name of every verse consists of three terms—the first referring to the *species*, the second to the *number of metres*, and the third to the *ending*; as, the *dactylic trimêter catalectic*.

5. A verse or portion of a verse of any kind (measured from the beginning) which contains three half feet, or a foot and a half, is called a *trihēmtimēris*; if it contains five half feet, or two feet and a half, it is called a *pentēmtimēris*; if seven half feet, or three feet and a half, a *heptēmtimēris*; if nine half feet, or four feet and a half, an *ennehēmtimēris*. A portion of a verse consisting of one whole metre and a half, is called a *hēmihēmius*, as being the half of a *trimeter*.

NOTE. The respective situation of each foot in a verse is called its *place*.

6. SCANNING is the dividing of a verse into the feet of which it is composed.

REMARK. In order to scan correctly, it is necessary to know the quantity of each syllable, and also to understand the following poetic usages, which are sometimes called

## FIGURES OF PROSODY.

### SYNALŒPHA.

§ 305. 1. *Synalœpha* is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong in scanning, when the following word begins with a vowel.

Thus, *terra antiqua* is read *terr' antiqua*; *Dardānida infensi*, *Dardānid' infensi*; *vento huc, vent' huc*. So,

Quidve mōror? si omnes uno ordine hābētis Achivos. *Virg. A. 2, 102.*

Which is scanned thus—

Quidve mōror? s' omnes ūn' ordin' hābētis Achivos.

(1.) The interjections *O*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, are not elided; as,

*O* et de Lātīā, *O* et de gente Sābinā. *Ovid. M. 14, 832.*

REMARK. But *O*, though not elided, is sometimes made short; as,

*Te Cōrydon O Alexi*; trāhit sua quemque vōluptas. *Virg. E. 2, 65.*

(2.) Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes remain unelided, in which case, when in the thesis of a foot, they are commonly made short; as,

Victor apud rāpidum Simōenta sūb Iliō alto. *Virg. A. 5, 261.*

Anni tempore eo qui Eitēs esse fēruntur. *Lucr. 6, 117.*

Ter sunt cōnātī impōnere Pelīō Ossam. *Virg. G. 1, 281.*

Glaucō et Pānōptē, et Inō Mēlioertēs. *Id. G. 1, 436.*

(3.) Barely a short vowel, also, remains without elision; as,

Et vērā incessu pātuit del. Ille ūbi mātrem.... *Virg. A. 1, 405.*

(4.) *Synalœpha* in a monosyllable occasionally occurs; as,

Si ad vitūlam spectas, nihil est, quod pocūla laudes. *Virg. E. 3, 48.*

For *synalœpha* at the end of a line, see *Synapheia*, § 307, 3.

### ECTHLIPSIS.

2. *Ecthlipsis* is the elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, when the following word begins with a vowel. Thus,

*O cūras hōmīnum, O quantum est in rēbus ināne!* *Pers. 1, 1.*

Which is thus scanned—

O cūras hōmīn' O quant' est in rēbus ināne.

*Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lūmen ādemptum.* Virg. A. 8, 658.

- (1.) This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets; as,  
*Corpōrum officiū est quōniam prēmere omnia deorum.* Lucr. 1, 363.

See § 299, 2.

- (2.) Final *s*, also, with the preceding vowel, is sometimes elided by the early poets before a vowel, and sometimes *s* alone before a consonant; as, *content' atque* (Enn.), for *contentus atque*; *omnib' rēbus.* (Lucr.) So,  
*Tum lātālī' dīlor, certistim' nūnci' mortis.* Lucil.

REMARK. This elision took place principally in short syllables.

For ecthipsis at the end of a line, see *Synapheia*, § 307, 3.

### SYNÆRESIS.

§ 306. 1. Synæresis is the contraction into one syllable of two vowels which are usually pronounced separately. Thus,

*Aurē percussū virgā, verumque rēnēns.* Virg. A. 7, 190.

*Eodem habuit scum, quibus est slāta, capillos.* Prop. 4, 7, 7.

*Titire, pascentes a flūmine reice capellas.* Virg. E. 8, 96.

REMARK 1. So *Phaethon* is pronounced *Phathon*; *alveo*, *alvo*; *Orphea*, *Orpha*; *deorsum*, *dorsum*.

- (1.) Synæresis is frequent in *ii*, *īdem*, *īsdem*, *dīi*, *dīs*, *dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, *deest*, *deerat*, *deēro*, *deērit*, *deesse*; as,

*Præcipiātur āquis, et āquis nox surgit ab īsdem.* Ovid. M. 4, 92.

*Sint Mæcōnātes; non deerunt, Flacce, Mārōnes.* Mart. 8, 56, 5.

REM. 2. *Cui* and *huic* are usually monosyllables.

- (2.) When two vowels in compound words are read as one syllable, the former may rather be considered as elided than as united with the latter; as, *e* in *anteambulo*, *anteire*, *antēhac*, *dehinc*, *mehercule*, etc., and *a* in *contraitre*.

(3.) The syllable formed by the union of *i* or *u* followed by another vowel retains the quantity of the latter vowel, whether long or short; as, *abiēte*, *ariēte*, *abiēgnæ*, *pāriētibus*, *consiliū*, *fortuitus*, *Nāsidiēnus*, *vindēmiātor*, *omniā*; *genuū*, *tēnuis*, *pituita*, *flūviōrum*, etc. In such examples, the *i* and *u* are pronounced like initial *y* and *w*; as, *ābyēte*, *pāryētibus*, *consilyum*, *fortwitus*, *Nāsidyēnus*, *omn-yū*, *tenuis*, *pitwita*, etc.; and, like consonants, they have, with another consonant, the power of lengthening a preceding short vowel, as in the above examples.

NOTE. In Statius, the word *tēnuire* occurs as a trisyllable, in which the three vowels, *ui*, are united in pronunciation; thus, *tēn-wi-re*.

- (4.) Sometimes, after a synalœpha or ecthipsis, two vowels suffer synæresis; as, *stellio et*, pronounced *stell-yet*: *consilium et*,—*consil-yet*.

(5.) If only one of the vowels is written, the contraction is called *crasis*; as, *ai*, *consili*, for *dīi*, *consiliū*.

### DIÆRESIS.

2. *Diæresis* is the division of one syllable into two; as,

*aulā*, *Trōia*, *sīlva*, *sūadent*; for *aula*, *Troia* or *Troja*, *sīlva*, *sūadent*. So, *suesco* for *suesco*; *reliquis* for *reliquis*; *ecquīs* for *ecquīs*; *mitis* for *mitis*, etc., as,

*Æthereum sensum, atque aurâ simplicis ignem. Virg. A. 6. 747.*  
*Atque alios alii irrident, Veneremque stident. Lucr. 4, 1153.*  
*Grammatici certant; et adhuc sub iudice lis est. Hor. A. P. 78.*  
*Aurârum et silicæ metu. Id. O. 1, 23, 4.*

(1.) So in Greek words originally written with a diphthong (u or y); as, *ἄλγητα* for *ἄλγια*, *Βακχῆϊδ* for *Βακχῆα*, *Ῥηαιῆτις* for *Ῥηαιεύς*, *Πλειῆς* for *Πλειῦς*; and also in words of Latin origin; as, *Vēus* for *Veius*, *Aquilēid* for *Aquileid*.

**REMARK.** This figure is sometimes called *dialysis*.

### SYSTOLE.

§ 307. 1. *Systōle* is the shortening of a syllable which is long by nature or by position; as,

*vidē'n* for *videsne*, in which *e* is naturally long; *sātī'n* for *sātisne*, in which *i* is long by position;—*hōdie* for *hōc die*; *multimōdis* for *multis modis*. So,

**Dūcere *multimodis* vōces, et flectere cantus. *Lucr.* 5, 1405.**

(1.) By the omission of *j* after *āb*, *ād*, *ōb*, *sūb*, and *rē*, in compound words, those prepositions retain their naturally short quantity, which would otherwise be made long by position; as, *ābici*, *ādācit*, *ōbici*, etc. Thus,

Si quid nostra tuis *adicit* vexatio rebus. *Mart.* 10, 82, 1.

**REMARK.** In some compounds the short quantity of *ăd* and *ôb* is preserved before a consonant by the elision of the *d* or *b* of the preposition, as in *ăpério*, *ôpério*, *ômitto*, etc.

(2.) The penult of the third person plural of certain perfects is said by some to be shortened by systole; as, *stēlerunt, tēlerunt*, etc.; but others ascribe these irregularities to the errors of transcribers, or the carelessness of writers.

## DIASTOLE.

2. *Diastöle* is the lengthening of a syllable which is naturally short.

(1.) It occurs most frequently in proper names and in compounds of *re*; as, *Pyramides, religio*, etc. Thus,

Hanc tibi *Prāmidēs* mitto, Lēdāea, sālūtem. *Ovid. H. 16, 1.*

*Religiōne* patrum multos servata per annos. *Virg. A.* 2, 715.

(2.) Some editors double the consonant after the lengthened *re*; as, *relligio*.

(8.) Diastole is sometimes called *ectāsis*.

**SYNAPHEIA.**

3. *Synapheia* is such a connection of two consecutive verses, that the first syllable of the latter verse has an influence on the final syllable of that which precedes, either by position, synalœpha, or ecthlipsis. See §§ 283 and 305.

(1.) This figure is most frequent in anapæstic verse, and in the *Ionic a minore*.

The following lines will illustrate its effect:—

Præceps silvas montesque fugit  
Citius Actæon. Sen.

Here the *i* in the final syllable of *fugit*, which is naturally short, is made long by position before the following consonants, *tc*.

Omnia Mercedis similia, vocemque cōlōremque  
Et crines flavos.... *Virg. A. 4, 568.*  
Disidens plēbi nūmēro beatōrum  
Eximit virtus. *Hor. O. 2, 2, 18.*

In the former of these examples, synapheia and synalœpha are combined, *que* being elided before *et* in the following line; in the latter there is a similar combination of synapheia and ecthipsis.

(2.) By synapheia, the parts of a compound word are sometimes divided between two verses; as,

.... si non offēderet amem—  
*Quemque postarum limas labor et mœra... Hor. A. P. 290.*

(3.) In hexameter verse a redundant syllable at the end of a line elided before a vowel at the beginning of the next line, by causing the accent to fall on the second syllable of the concluding spondee, and connecting the two verses by synapheia, excites the expectation of something which is to follow, and often tends to magnify the object; as,

Quis sup̄er- | -ātrā si- | -lēs, iam- | -jām lāp- | -sūrā cō- | -dēnti- | -que  
Imminet assimilis. *Virg. A. 6, 602.*

REMARK. The poets often make use of other figures, also, which, however, are not peculiar to them. Such are *prosthesis*, *aphæresis*, *syncope*, *epenthesis*, *apocope*, *paragoge*, *tnesis*, *antithesis*, and *metathesis*. See § 322.

## ARSIS AND THESIS.

§ 308. (1.) *Rhythm* is the alternate elevating and depressing of the voice at regular intervals in pronouncing the syllables of verse.

(2.) The elevation of the voice is called *arsis*, its depression *thesis*. These terms designate, also, the parts of a foot on which the elevation or depression falls.

1. The natural arsis is on the long syllable of a foot; and hence, in a foot composed wholly of long, or wholly of short syllables, when considered in itself, the place of the arsis is undetermined; but when such foot is substituted for the fundamental foot of a metre, its arsis is determined by that of the latter.

REMARK. Hence, a spondee, in trochaic or dactylic metre, has the arsis on the first syllable; but in iambic or anapæstic metre, it has it on the last.

2. The arsis is either equal in duration to the thesis, or twice as long.

Thus, in the dactyl, — ◡ ◡, and anapæst, ◡ ◡ —, it is equal; in the trochee, — ◡, and iambus, ◡ —, it is twice as long. This difference in the proportionate duration of the arsis and thesis constitutes the difference of rhythm. A foot is said to have the *descending* rhythm, when its arsis is at the beginning, and the *ascending*, when the thesis is at the beginning.

3. The stress of voice which falls upon the arsis of a foot, is called the *ictus*. When a long syllable in the arsis of a foot is resolved into two short ones, the ictus falls upon the former.

NOTE 1. Some suppose that the terms *arsis* and *thesis*, as used by the ancients, denoted respectively the rising and falling of the hand in beating time, and that the place of the thesis was the syllable which received the ictus.

## § 309, 310. PROSODY.—VERSIFICATION—DACTYLIC METRE. 347

**NOTE 2.** As the ancient pronunciation of Latin is not now understood, writers differ in regard to the mode of reading verse. According to some, the accent of each word should always be preserved; while others direct that the stress of voice should be laid on the arsis of the foot, and that no regard should be paid to the accent.

It is generally supposed that the final letters elided by synalepha and ecthipsis, though omitted in scanning, were pronounced in reading verse.

### CÆSURA.

§ 309. *Cæsura* is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically or metrically connected.

*Cæsura* is of three kinds:—1, of the *foot*; 2, of the *rhythm*; and 3, of the *verse*.

1. *Cæsura* of the foot occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed; as,

*Slives*—| trem tenu—| i Mu—| sam medi—| tãris a—| vñã. *Virg. E. 1, 2.*

2. *Cæsura* of the rhythm is the separation of the arsis from the thesis by the ending of a word, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the preceding verse.

**REM. 1.** It hence appears that the *cæsura* of the rhythm is always a *cæsura* of the foot, as *e. g.* in the 2d, 3d, and 4th feet of the preceding verse; but, on the contrary, that the *cæsura* of the foot is not always a *cæsura* of the rhythm, as *e. g.* in the fifth foot of the same verse.

(1.) *Cæsura* of the rhythm allows a final syllable naturally short, to stand in the arsis of the foot instead of a long one, it being lengthened by the *ictus*; as,

*Pectũr*—| ðũs inhi—| ãns spi—| rãntũ | cõnsũlit | ãta. *Virg. A. 4, 64.*

This occurs chiefly in hexameter verse.

**REM. 2.** *Cæsura* of the foot and of the verse do not of themselves lengthen a short syllable, but they often coincide with that of the rhythm.

3. *Cæsura* of the verse is such a division of a line into two parts, as affords to the voice a convenient pause or rest, without injury to the sense or harmony.

**REM. 3.** The *cæsura* of the verse is often called the *cæsural pause*. In several kinds of verse, its place is fixed; in others, it may fall in more than one place, and the choice is left to the poet. Of the former kind is the pentameter, of the latter the hexameter.

The proper place of the *cæsural pause* will be treated of, so far as shall be necessary, under each species of verse.

**REM. 4.** The effect of the *cæsura* is to connect the different words harmoniously together, and thus to give smoothness, grace, and sweetness, to the verse.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

### DACTYLIC METRE.

§ 310. I. A *hexameter* or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four either a dactyl or a spondee; as,

Āt tūba | tērrībi- | -lēm sōni- | -tām prēcūl | sēš cā- | -nērē. *Virg. A. 9, 508.*

Intēn- | -at ori- | -nēs lōn- | -gā oēr- | -vies sū- | ēbānt. *Tibull. 3, 4, 27.*

Lādēš | quē vōl- | -lēm cālā- | -mō pār- | -māit ā- | -grēstī. *Virg. E. 1, 10.*

1. The fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and the verse in such case is called *spondaic*; as,

Cārī dē- | -ām sōbē- | -lēs mīg- | -nām Jōvis | Inerē- | -mēntām. *Virg. E. 4, 49.*

REMARK 1. In such verses, the fourth foot is commonly a dactyl, and the fifth should not close with the end of a word. Spondaic lines are thought to be especially adapted to the expression of grave and solemn subjects.

2. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls; a slow and heavy one by that of spondees; as,

Quadrūpē- | -dāntē pū- | -trēm sōni- | -tā quātī | āngulā | cāmpum. *Virg. A. 8, 596.*

Illī in- | -tēr sē- | -sē mīg- | -nā vī | brāchiā tollunt. *Id. A. 8, 452.*

REM. 2. Variety in the use of dactyls and spondees in successive lines, has an agreeable effect. Hexameter verse commonly ends in a word of two or three syllables, and a monosyllable at the end of a line is generally ungraceful, but sometimes produces a good effect; as,

Sternūtūr- | -sōni- | -māquē, trē- | -mēs prē- | -cūmbīt hū- | -mī bēs. *Virg. A. 5, 481.*

Pārtūrī- | -lūt mōn- | -tēs: nās- | -cētūr | ridiē- | -lūs mūs. *Hor. A. P. 139.*

3. The beauty and harmony of hexameter verse depend much on due attention to the *cæsura*. (See § 209.) A line in which it is neglected is destitute of poetic beauty, and can hardly be distinguished from prose; as,

Rōmā | mōnā | tērrūt | Impīgēr | Hānnibāl | ārmls. *Enn.*

4. The cæsural pause most approved in heroic poetry is that which occurs after the *penhemimēris*, i. e. after the arsis in the third foot. This is particularly distinguished as the *heroic cæsura*. Thus,

Āt dōmūs | Intēri- | -ōr || rē- | -gāl | splēndidā | lāxā. *Virg. A. 1, 687.*

5. Instead of the preceding, a cæsura in the thesis of the third foot, or after the arsis of the fourth, was also approved as heroic; as,

Infān- | -dum rē- | -gīnā || jū- | -bēs rēnē- | -vārē dē- | -lōrem. *Virg. A. 2, 8.*

Indē tē- | -rō pātēr | -Xēs- | -ās || sic | ōrēs āb | āltē. *Id. A. 2, 2.*

REM. 3. When the cæsural pause occurs, as in the latter example, after the *hephemimēris*, i. e. after the arsis of the fourth foot, another but slighter one is often found in the second foot; as,

Primā tē- | -nēt, || plāū- | -sūquē vō- | -lāt || frēmī- | -tūquē sē- | -cūndo. *Virg. A. 5, 338.*

6. The cæsura after the third foot, dividing the verse into exactly equal parts, was least approved; as,

Cui nōn | dictūs Hī- | -lās pūr || ēt Lā- | -tēnā | Dēlos. *Virg. G. 3, 6.*

REM. 4. The cæsural pause between the fourth and fifth feet was considered as peculiarly adapted to pastoral poetry, particularly when the fourth foot was a dactyl, and was hence termed the *bucolic cæsura*; as,

Stānt vitū- | -lī āt tēnē- | -ris mū- | -gītībūs | -sērā | cōmplēt. *Nemes.*

NOTE 1. The cæsura after the arsis is sometimes called the *masculine* or *syllabic* cæsura; that in the thesis, the *feminine* or *trochaic*, as a trochee immediately precedes. When a cæsura occurs in the fifth foot it is usually the trochaic cæsura, unless the foot is a spondee; as,

Frāxīnūs | In sil- | -vis pūl- | -chērrīmā, | pinūs in | hōrtīs. *Virg. E. 7, 65.*

(a.) It is to be remarked that two successive trochaic cæsuras in the *second* and *third* feet are, in general, to be avoided, but they are sometimes employed to express irregular or impetuous motion; as,

Una Eu- | -rāquē Nō- | -tāquē rū- | -ānt crē- | -bēquē prō- | -cēllis. *Virg. A. 1, 85.*

(b.) Successive trochaic cæsuras are, in like manner, to be avoided in the *third* and *fourth* feet, but are approved in the *first* and *second*, in the *fourth* and *fifth*, and in the *first, third* and *fifth*. See *Virg. A. 6, 651: 1, 94: and 6, 522.*

NOTE 2. In the principal cæsura of the verse poets frequently introduce a pause in the sense, which must be attended to in order to determine the place of the cæsural pause. For in the common place for the cæsura in the third foot there is often a cæsura of the foot; while, in the fourth foot, a still more marked division occurs. In this case, the latter is to be considered as the principal cæsura, and distinguished accordingly; as,

Belli | ferrā- | -tās pō- | -tes, | pō- | -tāquē rē- | -frēgit. *Hor. S. 1, 4, 61.*

II. The *Priapean* is usually accounted a species of hexameter. It is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each, having generally a trochee in the first and fourth place, but often a spondee and rarely a dactyl; in the second, usually a dactyl; and an amphimacer and more rarely a dactyl in the third; as,

Ō cō- | -lōnā | quē cūpis | pōntē | lūdērē | lōngō. *Catull. 17, 1.*

It is, however, more properly considered as choriambic metre, consisting of alternate Glyconics and Pherecratics. See § 316, IV. V. Thus,

Ō cō- | -lōnā, quē | cūpis  
Pōntē | lūdērē lōn- | -go.

NOTE. A regular hexameter verse is termed *Priapean*, when it is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each; as,

Tērtiā | pārs pā- | -tri dātā | pārs dātā | tērtiā | mātri. *Catull. 62, 64*

See above, 6.

### § 311. III. A pentameter verse consists of five feet.

REMARK 1. It is generally, however, divided, in scanning, into two hemistichs, the first consisting of two feet, either dactyls or spondees, followed by a long syllable; the last, of two dactyls, also followed by a long syllable; as,

Nātū- | -rēs sēquī- | -tūr || sēmīnā | quāquē sū- | -ss. *Prop. 3, 7, 20.*  
Cārminī- | -būs vī- | -vēs || tēmpūs īn | ōmnē mē- | -is. *Ovid.*

1. According to the more ancient and correct mode of scanning pentameter verse, it consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee; the third is always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth are anapæsts; as,

Nātū- | -rēs sēquī- | -tūr || sēm- | -inā quā- | -quē sūss.  
Cārminī- | -būs vī- | -vēs || tēm- | -pūs īn ōm- | -nē mēss.

2. The cæsura, in pentameter verse, always occurs after the penhemimeris, i. e. at the close of the first hemistich. It very rarely lengthens a short syllable.

3. The pentameter rarely ends with a word of three syllables. In Ovid, it usually ends with a dissyllable.

REM. 2. This species of verse is seldom used, except in connection with hexameter, a line of each recurring alternately. This combination is called *elegiac* verse. Thus,

Flēbilis indignō, Miagēm, solvō cāpillōs.

Ah nimis ex verō nūc tibi nōmēn ērit! *Ovid. Am. 3, 9, 3.*



§ 312. IV. The *tetrameter a priore*, or *Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter*, consists of the first four feet of a hexameter, of which the fourth is always a dactyl; as,

Gärräli | pä rā- | -mā, ävīs | öbeträpīt. Sen. CM. 454.

V. The *tetrameter a posteriore*, or *spondaic tetrameter*, consists of the last four feet of a hexameter; as,

İbimūs, | Ō söl- | -i, cōmī- | -tēque. Hor. Od. 1, 7, 26.

REMARK. The penultimate foot in this, as in hexameter verse, may be a spondee, but in this case the preceding foot should be a dactyl; as,

Mēnā- | -rēm cōhī- | -bēt Ar- | -chytā. Hor. Od. 1, 28, 2.

VI. The *dactylic trimeter* consists of the last three feet of a hexameter; as,

Grātē | Pjrrhā sūb | äntro. Hor. Od. 1, 5, 8.

REMARK. But this kind of verse is more properly included in choriambic metre. See § 316, V.

VII. The *trimeter catalectic Archilochian* consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter, but the first and second feet are commonly dactyls; as,

Pūlvīs št | ämbrā sū- | -mus. Hor. Od. 4, 7, 16.

VIII. The *dactylic dimeter*, or *Adonic*, consists of two feet, a dactyl and a spondee; as,

Riēt Ä- | -pōllo. Hor. Od. 1, 10, 12.

IX. The *Æolic pentameter* consists of four dactyls preceded by a spondee, a trochee, or an iambus. Thus

— — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —

X. The *Phalæcian pentameter* consists of a dactylic penthimimeris and a dactylic dimeter; as,

Viš- | -bāt gēll- | -dē || sidērā | brūmæ. Boëthius.

REMARK. A trochee is sometimes found in the first place and an iambus in the first and second places.

XI. The *Tetrameter Meiurus*, or *Fahscan* consists of the last four feet of a hexameter, except that the last foot is an iambus instead of a spondee; as,

Ūt nōvā | trügē grā- | -vis Cērēs | ät. Boëthius.

XII. The *Tetrameter Catalectic* consists of the tetrameter a priore wanting the latter half of the concluding dactyl; as,

Ōmne hōmī- | -nūm gēnūs | in tēr- | -ris. Boëthius.

# ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

§ 313. I. The *anapæstic monomëter* consists of two anapæsts; as,

Uilūlā- | -sē cānēs Sen.

II. The *anapaestic dimeter* consists of two measures, or four anapaests; as,

Phārētrā- | -quē grāvēs | dātē s- | -vā fūrē.... Sen.

REMARK 1. The first foot in each measure of anapæstic metre was very often changed to a dactyl or a spondee, and the second foot often to a spondee, and, in a few instances, to a dactyl.

**REM. 2.** Anapaestic verses are generally so constructed that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be written and read in lines of one, two, or more measures.

### IAMBIC METRE.

§ 314. I. 1. The *iambic trimeter*, or *senarius*, consists of three iambic measures, or six iambic feet ; as,

Phăse- | -lūs ū- | -lē, / quēm | vidē- | -tīs hō- | -pītēs.... Catull. 4. 1.

2. The cæsure commonly occurs in the third but sometimes in the fourth foot.

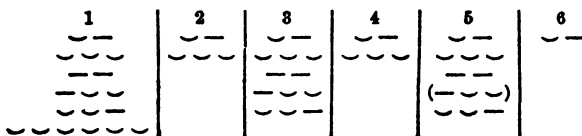
3. The pure iambic measure was seldom used by the Latin poets, but to vary the rhythm spondee were introduced into the first, third, and fifth places. In every foot, also, except the last, which was always an iambus, a long syllable was often changed into two short ones, so that an anapaest or a dactyl was used for a spondee, and a tribrach for an iambus, but the use of the dactyl in the fifth place was very rare; as,

Quō, quō | scōlēs- | -tī rūl- | -tīs? āut | cūr dēx- | -tēris.... *Hor. Epod. 7, 1.*

Äliti- | -būs āt- | -quē cānī- | -būs hōmī- | -cīdam Hēc- | -tōrēm.... *Id. Epod. 17, 12.*

4. Sometimes, also, a proceleusmatic, or double pyrrhic, was used in the first place for a spondee. The writers of comedy, satire, and fable, admitted the spondee and its equivalents (the dactyl and anapaest) into the second and fourth places, as well as the first, third, and fifth.

**5. The following, therefore, is the scale of the Iambic Trimeter:—**



6. In the construction of the Iambic Trimeter an accent should fall on the second syllable of either the third foot or both the second and fourth feet; as,

Ibīs | Libūr- | -nīs īn- | tēr āl- | -tā nā- | -vīum | .

Utrâm- | -nő jús- | -si pēr- | -sēquē'- | -mūr ō- | -tium.

II. The *scæzon*, or *choliambus* (lame iambic), is the iambic trimeter, with a spondee in the sixth foot, and generally an iambus in the fifth: as.

Căr în | thăă- | -trăm, Cătō | sěvė- | -rě, vė- | -nīstī?

An Idē- | ồ tăn- | -tăm vên- | -êrās, | ồt êx- | -irēs? Mart. Ep. 1, 1, 8.

This species of verse is also called *Hipponactic trimeter*, from its inventor, *Hippônax*.

III. The *iambic tetrameter* or *quadrdtus*, called also from the number of its feet *octonarius*, a measure used by the comic poets, consists of four iambic measures, subject to the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Nūc hīc | dīēs | klām | vītam fī- | -fērt, klī- | -s mō- | -rēs pō- | -tūlat. *Ter. A. 1, 2, 18.*

REMARK. The cæsura regularly follows the second measure.

IV. The *iambic tetrameter catalectic* or *Hipponactic*, is the iambic tetrameter, wanting the last syllable, and having always an iambus in the seventh place, but admitting in the other places the same variations as the trimeter and tetrameter; as,

Dēprēn- | -sā nā- | -vīs in | mārī, | vēsā- | -nlēn- | -tē vēn- | -to. *Catull. 25, 18.*

V. The *iambic trimeter catalectic* or *Archilochian*, is the iambic trimeter (I.), wanting the final syllable. Like the common iambic trimeter, it admits a spondee into the first and third places, but not into the fifth; as,

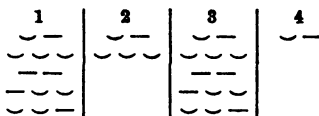
Vōcā- | -tūs āt- | -quē nōn | vōcā- | -tūs sū- | -dīt. *Hor. Od. 2, 18, 40.*  
Trāhant- | -quē sic- | -cās mäch- | -inās | cārī- | -nas. *Id. Od. 1, 4, 2.*

VI. The *iambic dimeter* consists of two iambic measures, with the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Fērti | sēquē- | -mūr pō- | -tōre. *Hor. Epod. 1, 14.*  
Canidi- | -ā trāc- | -tāvī | dāpēs. *Id. Epod. 3, 8.*  
Vidē- | -rē prōpē- | -rāntēs | dōmum. *Id. Epod. 3, 62.*

REMARK. The iambic dimeter is also called the *Archilochian dimeter*.

The following is its scale:—



VII. The *iambic dimeter hypermeter*, called also *Archilochian*, is the iambic dimeter, with an additional syllable at the end; as,

Rēds- | -gīt in | vērtē | tīmō- | -rēs. *Hor. Od. 1, 37, 15.*

REMARK. Horace always makes the third foot a spondee.

VIII. The *iambic dimeter acephalous* is the iambic dimeter, wanting the first syllable; as,

Nōn | ēbūr | nēque sū- | -rēm.... *Hor. Od. 2, 18, 1.*

REMARK. This kind of verse is sometimes scanned as a catalectic trochaic dimeter. See § 815, IV.

IX. The *iambic dimeter catalectic*, or *Anacreontic*, is the iambic dimeter, wanting the final syllable, and having always an iambus in the third foot; as,

Ut tī- | grīs ōr- | -bā gnā- | -tis. *Sen. Med. 863.*

X. The *Galliambus* consists of two iambic dimeters catalectic, the last of which wants the final syllable.

REMARK 1. It was so denominated from the *Galli* or priests of Cybele, by whom it was used.

REM. 2. In the first foot of each dimeter the anapaest was generally preferred to the spondee. The catalectic syllable at the end of the first dimeter is long, and the second foot of the second dimeter is commonly a tribrach; as,

Sāpār ā- | -ā vēc- | -tās ā- | -tys || cōlērt | rātē mā- | -ris. *Catull.* 63, 1.

REM. 3. The cæsura uniformly occurs at the end of the first dimeter.

### TROCHAIC METRE.

§ 315. 1. Trochaic verses bear a near affinity to iambics. The addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure iambic verse, renders it pure trochaic, and the addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure trochaic line, renders it pure iambic, with the deficiency or redundancy of a syllable in each case at the end of the verse.

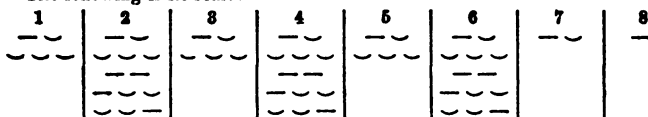
I. The *trochaic tetrameter catalectic* consists of seven feet, followed by a catalectic syllable. In the first five places and very rarely in the sixth, it admits a tribrach, but in the seventh a trochee only. In the *even* places, besides the tribrach, it admits also a spondee, a dactyl, an anapaest, and sometimes a proceleusmatic; as,

Jūscūs | ſet in | ſrmīs | Irē : || pāūs | Irē | jūscūs | ſet. *Auct. P. Vā.*

Rēmū | lēās | Ipak | ſcōtt || cūm Sā- | -bīnīs | nūpt- | -ās. *Id.*

Dāndī | dās, cō- | -tē; | vēstrās | hīc dī- | -s quā- | -rit mā- | -nās. *Sen.*

The following is its scale:—



REMARK 1. The pure trochaic verse was rarely used, and the dactyl very rarely occurs in the fourth place. The cæsural pause uniformly occurs after the fourth foot, thus dividing the verse into a complete dimeter and a catalectic dimeter. The comic writers introduced the spondee and its equivalent feet into the odd places.

REM. 2. The complete trochaic tetrameter or *octonarius* properly consists of eight feet, all trochees, subject, however, to the same variations as the catalectic tetrameter; as,

Ipē | sūmmīs | sāxis | fixūs | āspē- | -ris, ē- | -viscō- | -rātūs. *Enn.*

II. The *Sapphic* verse, invented by the poetess Sappho, consists of five feet—the first a trochee, the second a spondee, the third a dactyl, and the fourth and fifth trochees; as,

Intē- | -gēr vi- | -tē, || scēlē- | -risquē | pāūs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 22, 1.

1. Sappho, and, after her example, Catullus, sometimes made the second foot a trochee.

2. Those Sapphics are most harmonious which have the cæsura after the fifth semi-foot.

NOTE 1. In the composition of the Sapphic stanza, a word is sometimes divided between the end of the third Sapphic, and the beginning of the Adonic which follows; as,

Lābi- | -tār ri- | -pā Jōvē | nōn prē- | -bānte ux-  
-oriūs | āmnīs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 2, 19.

It has been thought by some that such lines should be considered as one Sapphic verse of seven feet, the fifth foot being either a spondee or a trochee.

NOTE 2. This verse is sometimes scanned as epichoriambic, having an epitrite in the first place, a choriambus in the second, and ending with an iambic syzygy catalectic; thus,

Intēgēr vī- | -tā, scēlērīs- | -quē pūrīs.

III. The *Phalæcian* verse consists of five feet—a spondee, a dactyl, and three trochees; as,

Nōn ēst | vivērē, | sēd vī- | -lērē | vitā. *Mart.*

REMARK 1. Instead of a spondee as the first foot, Catullus sometimes uses a trochee or an iambus. This writer also sometimes uses a spondee in the second place.

REM. 2. The *Phalæcian* verse is sometimes called *hendecasyllabic*, as consisting of eleven syllables; but that name does not belong to it exclusively.

IV. The *trochaic dimeter catalectic* consists of three feet, properly all trochees, and a catalectic syllable, but admitting also in the second place a spondee or a dactyl; as,

Nōn ē | -būr nē- | -que sūrē- | -um. *Hor. Od. 2, 18, 1.*

Lēnis | āc mōdi- | -cūm flū- | -ūs

Aurā, | nēc vēr- | -gēns lī- | -tus. *Sen. Oed. 887.*

NOTE. This measure is the same as the acephalous iambic dimeter (see § 314, VIII.), and it is not important whether it be regarded as iambic or trochaic.

#### CHORIAMBIC METRE.

§ 316. (a.) In a pure choriambic verse each metre except the last is a choriambus, and the last an iambic syzygy.

NOTE. A spondee and iambus, i. e. a third epitrite, are sometimes used in place of the iambic syzygy.

(b.) An *epichoriambic* verse is composed of one or more choriambi with some other foot, especially a ditrochee or a second epitrite, joined with it.

I. The *choriambic pentameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Tū nē | quæsiērīs, | scīrē nēfās, | quām mīhī, quām tibi. *Hor. Od. 1, 11, 1.*

II. The *choriambic tetrameter* consists of three choriambi, or feet of equal length, and a Bacchius; as,

Omnē nēmūs | cūm flūvīe, | ōmnē cānāt | prōfūndum. *Claud.*

2. In this verse Horace substituted a spondee for the iambus contained in the first choriambus; as,

Tē dēō ē- | -rō, Sībārīn | cūr prōpērēs | āmāndō. *Hor. Od. 1, 8, 2.*

3. Some scan this verse as an epichoriambic tetrameter catalectic, beginning with the second epitrite.

III. 1. The *Asclepiadic tetrameter* (invented by the poet Asclepiades) consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Mēōē- | -nās, kīkvis | ēdītē rēg- | -ibus. *Hor. Od. 1, 1, 1.*

2. This form is invariably observed by Horace; but other poets sometimes, though rarely, make the first foot a dactyl.

3. The cæsural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

4. This measure is sometimes scanned as a dactylic pentameter catalectic. See § 311, III. Thus,

Māōē- | -nās, kīm- | vīs | ēdītē | rēgībūs.

IV. 1. The *choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic* (invented by the poet Glyco), consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Sic tē | dīvā pētēs | Cypri... Hor. Od. 1, 3, 1.

2. The first foot is sometimes an iambus or a trochee.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, the verse might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter. Thus,

Sic tē | dīvā pē- | -tēs Cypri.

V. 1. The *choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic* (so called from the poet Pherecrates), is the Glyconic deprived of its final syllable, and consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; as,

Grātō, | Pŷrrhē, sūb ān- | -trō. Hor. Od. 1, 5, 3.

2. The first foot was sometimes a trochee or an anapest, rarely an iambus.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, this measure might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter. See § 312, VI.

4. The Pherecratic subjoined to the Glyconic produces the Priapean verse. See § 310, II.

VI. 1. The *choriambic dimeter* consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

Lŷdū dīe | pēr ōmnēs. Hor. Od. 1, 8, 1.

2. This verse is by some called the choriambic dimeter catalectic. Cf. § 316, (a.)

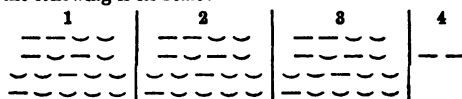
# IONIC METRE.

§ 317. I. The *Ionic a majore*, or *Sotadic*, (from the poet Sotades), consists of three greater Ionics and a spondee.

1. The Ionic feet, however, are often changed into ditrochees, and either of the two long syllables in those feet into two short ones; as,

Hās, eūm gēmī- | -nā cōmpēdē, | dēdicāt cā- | -tēnās,  
Sātūrnē, tī- | -bī Zōllūs, | annūlōs pri- | -ōres. Mart.

2. Hence the following is its scale:—



NOTE. The final syllable, by § 301, note, may be short.

II. 1. The *Ionic a minore* consists generally of verses of three or four feet, which are all smaller Ionics; as,

Pŷēr ālēs, | tibi tŷlās, | ōpēōēs- | -quē Minērvæ... Hor. Od. 3, 12, 4.

2. In this verse, as in the anapaestic, no place is assigned to the pause; because, since the metres, if rightly constructed, end with a word, the effect of a pause will be produced at the end of each metre.

## COMPOUND METRES.

§ 318. Compound metre is the union of two species of metre in the same verse.

I. The *dactylico-iambic* metre or *Elegiambus* consists of a dactylic penthemimēris (§ 312, VII.), followed by an iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Scribēre | vērticū- | -lās | kūr- | -rē pār- | -cālsūm | grāvī. *Hor. Epod. 11, 2.*

II. The *iambico-dactylic* metre or *Iambelegus* consists of the same members as the preceding, but in a reversed order; as,

Nivās- | -quē dē- | -dūcūt | Jōvēm : | nūne mārē, | nūne silā- | -ce. *Hor. Epod. 12, 2.*

NOTE. The members composing this and the preceding species of verse are often written in separate verses.

III. The *greater Alcaic* consists of an iambic penthemimeris, i. e. of two iambic feet and a long catalectic syllable, followed by a chor-iambus, and an iambus; as,

Vidēs | ūt āl- | -tā | stēt nivē cān- | -didum. *Hor. Od. 1, 9, 1.*

REMARK 1. The first foot is often a spondee.

REM. 2. The cæsura uniformly occurs after the catalectic syllable.

REM. 3. This verse is sometimes so scanned as to make the last two feet dactyls.

IV. The *dactylico-trochaic* or *Archilochian heptameter*, consists of the dactylic tetrameter *a priore* (§ 312), followed by three trochees; as,

Silvātūr | ācris hī- | -ēms grā- | -tā vicē | vēris | ēt fā- | -vōni. *Hor. Od. 1, 4, 1.*

REMARK. The cæsura occurs between the two members.

V. The *dactylico-trochaic tetrameter* or *lesser Alcaic*, consists of two dactyls, followed by two trochees, i. e. of a dactylic dimeter followed by a trochaic monometer; as,

Lāvā | pārēnū- | -rē | sālī. *Hor. Od. 1, 17, 12.*

## COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

§ 319. 1. A poem may consist either of one kind of verse only or of a combination of two or more kinds.

2. A poem in which only one kind of verse is employed, is called *carmen monocōlon*; that which has two kinds, *dicōlon*; that which has three kinds, *tricōlon*.

3. When the poem returns, after the second line, to the same verse with which it began, it is called *distróphon*; when after the third line, *tristróphon*; and when after the fourth, *tetrastróphon*.

4. The several verses which occur before the poem returns to the kind of verse with which it began, constitute a *stanza* or *strophe*.

5. A poem consisting of two kinds of verse, when the stanza contains two verses, is called *dicōlon distróphon*, (see § 320, 3); when it contains three, *dicō-*

## § 320. PROSODY.—VERSIFICATION—HORATIAN METRES. 357

*lon tristrophum*, (Auson. Profess. 21); when four, *dicolon tetrastrophum*, (§ 320, 2); and when five, *dicolon pentastrophum*.

6. A poem consisting of three kinds of verse, when the stanza contains three verses, is called *tricolon tristrophum*, (§ 320, 15); when four, *tricolon tetrastrophum*, (§ 320, 1).

### HORATIAN METRES.

§ 320. The different species of metre used by Horace in his lyric compositions are twenty. The various forms in which he has employed them, either separate or in conjunction, are nineteen, arranged, according to the order of preference given to them by the poet, in the following

#### SYNOPSIS.

1. Two greater Alcaics (§ 318, III.), one Archilochian iambic dimeter hypermeter (§ 314, VII.), and one lesser Alcaic (§ 318, V.); as,

Vides, ut altā stet nivē candidū  
Socratē, nec jam sustinēant omēs  
Silvæ laborāntes, gelidūque  
Flūminā constitērunt acūto. (Lib. 1, 9.)

REMARK. This is called the Horatian stanza, because it seems to have been a favorite with Horace, being used in thirty-seven of his odes.

2. Three Sapphics (§ 315, II.) and one Adonic (§ 312, VIII.); as,

Jam satis tērris nivis atque diræ  
Grādinis misit pater, et, rubentē  
Dextera sacras jaculātus arces,  
Terruit urbem. (Lib. 1, 2.)

3. One Glyconic (§ 316, IV.) and one Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.); as,

Sic tē Divæ potēns Cypri,  
Sic frātrēs Heliāæ, lucidā stēra... (Lib. 1, 3.)

4. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Ibis Liburnis intēr altā nāvium,  
Amicō, propugnacula. (Epod. 1.)

5. Three Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.) and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

Scritberis Varrō fortis, et hostium  
Victor, Mæonii cæminis aliti,  
Quam rem cūmq; ferōx nāvibus sūt æquis  
Miles, tē dūcē, gesserit. (Lib. 1, 6.)

6. Two Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.), one Pherecratic (§ 316, V.), and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

Dianām, tēdērē, dicite virgines:  
Intēsum, pūeri, dicite Cynthium,  
Latōnamque suprēmo  
Dilectām penitās Jovi. (Lib. 1, 21.)

7. The Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.) alone; as,

Mecōnās itāvis editis rēgibus. (Lib. 1, 1.)



8. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic tetrameter *a posteriore* (§ 312, v.); as,

LAUDABANT ILLI CLARAM RHODON, AUT MITYLÆNEN,  
AUT EPHESUM, BIMARIÆVÆ CÖRINTHI... (Lib. 1, 7.)

9. The choriambic pentameter (§ 316, I.) alone; as,

TÄ NÄ QUÆSIERIS, SCIRE NÖFAS, QUÆM MIHI, QUÆM TIBI... (Lib. 1, 11.)

10. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

NÖX ERAT, ET CÖELI FULGEBAT LUNA SÆRENO  
INTER MINORÆ SIDERA. (Epod. 15.)

11. The iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) containing spondees; as,

JAM. JAM EFFICACI DÖ MINUS ACIENTIS. (Epod. 17.)

12. One choriambic dimeter (§ 316, VI.) and one choriambic tetrameter (§ 316, II.) with a variation; as,

LYDIA, DIC, PÖR OMNES  
TÄ DÖCA ÖRÖ, SYBÄRIN CÜR PRÖPÄRÄS KÄMÄNDÖ... (Lib. 1, 8.)

13. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic trimeter without spondees (§ 314, I.); as,

ÄLTÄRÄ JÄM TÄRITÄR BELLIS CIVILIBUS ETAS;  
SÜIS ET IPSÄ RÖMÄ VIRIBUS RUIT. (Epod. 16.)

14. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.); as,

DIFFUGERE NIVÆ: RÖDÖUNT JÄM GRÄMINÄ CÄMPLIS,  
ÄRBÖRIBUSQUÖ CÖMES. (Lib. 4, 7.)

15. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.), one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.), and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

PÖTTI, NIHIL MÄ, SCÖIT ÄNTÄ, JUVAT  
SCRIBERE VÆRESCULOS,  
AMÖRE PÆRONISUM GRÄVI. (Epoa. 11.)

NOTE. The second and third lines are often written as one verse. See § 318, I.

16. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.), one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.), and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.); as,

HÖRRIDÄ TÄMPÆTÄS CÖELUM CÖNTRÄXIT; ET IMBRES  
NIVÆQUÖ DÄDÖCUNT JÖVEN:  
NÄNC MÄRÖ, NÄNC SILVÆ... (Epod. 13.)

NOTE. The second and third lines of this stanza, also, are often written as one verse. See § 318, II.

17. One Archilochian heptameter (§ 318, IV.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, v.); as,

SOLVITÜR ACRIß HIEMIS GRÄTÄ VIÖI VÖRIS ET FÄVÖNI,  
TRÄHÜNTQUÖ SICCÄS MÄCHINÆ CÄRINÆ. (Lib. 1, 4.)

18. One iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 314, VIII.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, v.); as,

NÖN ÖBÜR NÆQUE ÄSTRUM  
MÄÄ RÖNIDET IN DÖMÖ LÄCUNÆ. (Lib. 2, 18.)

19. The Ionic *a minore* (§ 317, II.) alone; as,

MISERÄRAM ET NÆQUE KÖMÖRI DÄRÖ LÄDÄM, NÆQUE DÄLEF... (Lib. 3, 12.)

§ 321. A METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE.

*Containing, in alphabetic order, the first words of each, with a reference to the numbers in the preceding Synopsis, where the metre is explained.*

|                             |       |                               |        |
|-----------------------------|-------|-------------------------------|--------|
| Æli, vetusto.....           | No. 1 | Mollis inertia.....           | No. 10 |
| Æquam memento.....          | 1     | Montium custos.....           | 2      |
| Albi, ne doleas.....        | 5     | Motum ex Metello.....         | 1      |
| Altèra jam teritur.....     | 13    | Musis amicus.....             | 1      |
| Angustam, amice.....        | 1     | Natis in usum.....            | 1      |
| At, O deorum.....           | 4     | Ne forte credas.....          | 1      |
| Audi vire, Lyce.....        | 6     | Ne sit ancillæ.....           | 2      |
| Bacchum in remòtis.....     | 1     | Nolis longa feræ.....         | 5      |
| Beatus ille.....            | 4     | Nondum subacta.....           | 1      |
| Cælo supinas.....           | 1     | Non ebur neque aureum.....    | 18     |
| Cælo tonantem.....          | 1     | Non semper imbres.....        | 1      |
| Cur me querelis.....        | 1     | Non usitâta.....              | 1      |
| Delicta majorum.....        | 1     | Non vides, quanto.....        | 2      |
| Descende cælo.....          | 1     | Nox erat.....                 | 10     |
| Diânam, tenèræ.....         | 6     | Nullam, Vare, sacrâ.....      | 9      |
| Diffugere nives.....        | 14    | Nullus argento.....           | 2      |
| Dive, quem proles.....      | 2     | Nunc est bibendum.....        | 1      |
| Divis orte bonis.....       | 5     | O crudelis adhuc.....         | 9      |
| Donârem patêras.....        | 7     | O diva, gratum.....           | 1      |
| Donec gratus eram tibi..... | 3     | O fons Bandusiæ.....          | 6      |
| Eheu! fugaces.....          | 1     | O matre pulchrâ.....          | 1      |
| Este mihi nonum.....        | 2     | O nata mecum.....             | 1      |
| Et ture et fidi bus.....    | 3     | O navis, referent.....        | 6      |
| Exegi monumentum.....       | 7     | O sæpe mecum.....             | 1      |
| Extremum Tanaim.....        | 5     | O Venus, regina.....          | 2      |
| Faune, nympharum.....       | 2     | Odi profanum.....             | 1      |
| Festo quid potius die.....  | 3     | Otium Divos.....              | 2      |
| Herculis ritu.....          | 2     | Parcius junctas.....          | 2      |
| Horrida tempestas.....      | 16    | Parcius Deorum.....           | 1      |
| Ibis Liburnis.....          | 4     | Parentis olim.....            | 4      |
| Icci, beatis.....           | 1     | Pastor quum traheret.....     | 5      |
| Ille et nefasto.....        | 1     | Perculos odi, puer.....       | 2      |
| Impios parre.....           | 2     | Petti, nihil me.....          | 15     |
| Inclusam Danaën.....        | 5     | Phæbe, silvarumque.....       | 2      |
| Intactis opulentior.....    | 3     | Phœbus volentem.....          | 1      |
| Intèger vitæ.....           | 2     | Pindarum quisquis.....        | 2      |
| Intermissa, Venus, diu..... | 3     | Poscimur: si quid.....        | 2      |
| Jam jam efficiâci.....      | 11    | Quas cura Patrum.....         | 1      |
| Jam pauca aratro.....       | 1     | Qualem ministrum.....         | 1      |
| Jam satis terris.....       | 2     | Quando repostum.....          | 4      |
| Jam veris comites.....      | 5     | Quantum distet ab Inâcho..... | 3      |
| Justum et tenacem.....      | 1     | Quem tu, Melpomène.....       | 3      |
| Laudabunt alii.....         | 8     | Quem virum aut herba.....     | 2      |
| Lupis et agnis.....         | 4     | Quid bellicosus.....          | 1      |
| Lydia, dic, per omnes.....  | 12    | Quid dedicatum.....           | 1      |
| Mæcenas atavis.....         | 7     | Quid fles, Asterie.....       | 6      |
| Malâ soluta.....            | 4     | Quid immerentes.....          | 4      |
| Martius celebs.....         | 2     | Quid obserâti.....            | 11     |
| Mater sæva Cupidinum.....   | 3     | Quid tibi vis.....            | 3      |
| Mercûri, facunde.....       | 2     | Quis desiderio.....           | 5      |
| Mercûri, nam te.....        | 2     | Quis multa gracilis.....      | 6      |
| Miserarum est.....          | 19    | Quo me, Bacche.....           | 3      |

|                                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Quo, quo, scelesti ruitis.....No. 4 | Tu ne quæsiſſeris.....No. 9 |
| Quum tu, Lydia..... 3               | Tyrrhæna regum..... 1       |
| Bectius vives..... 2                | Ulla si juris..... 2        |
| Rogare longo..... 4                 | Uxor paup̄eris Ibyci..... 3 |
| Scrib̄eris Vario..... 5             | Velox amœnum..... 1         |
| Septimi, Gades..... 2               | Vides, ut altâ..... 1       |
| Sic te Diva potens..... 3           | Vile potâbis..... 2         |
| Solvitur acris hiems.....17         | Vitas hinnuleo..... 6       |
| Te maris et terræ..... 8            | Vixi puellis..... 1         |

The following are the single metres used by Horace in his lyric compositions, viz :—

- |                                              |                              |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Dactylic Hexameter.                       | 11. Choriambic Pentameter.   |
| 2. Dactylic Tetrameter <i>a posteriori</i> . | 12. Choriambic Tetrameter.   |
| 3. Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic.             | 13. Asclepiadic Tetrameter.  |
| 4. Adonic.                                   | 14. Glyconic.                |
| 5. Trimeter Iambic.                          | 15. Pherecratic.             |
| 6. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.               | 16. Choriambic Dimeter.      |
| 7. Iambic Dimeter.                           | 17. Ionic <i>a minore</i> .  |
| 8. Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter.   | 18. Greater Alcaic.          |
| 9. Iambic Dimeter Acephalous.                | 19. Archilochian Heptameter. |
| 10. Sapphic.                                 | 20. Lesser Alcaic.           |

## APPENDIX.

### GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

§ 322. Certain deviations from the regular form and construction of words, are called *grammatical figures*. These may relate either to Orthography and Etymology, or to Syntax.

#### I. FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY AND ETYMOLOGY.

These are distinguished by the general name of *metaplasm*.

1. *Prosthesis* is the prefixing of a letter or syllable to a word; as, *gnātus*, for *nātus*; *tētūti*, for *tūti*. These, however, are rather the ancient customary forms, from which those now in use were formed by *aphæresis*.

2. *Aphæresis* is the taking of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *et*, for *est*; *rābōnem*, for *arrābōnem*.

3. *Epenhesis* is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *ālītūm*, for *ālītum*; *Māvors*, for *Mars*.

4. *Syncope* is the omission of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *deām*, for *deōrum*; *meām factūm*, for *meōrum factorum*; *sæcla*, for *sæcilla*; *flesti*, for *flēvist*; *repositus*, for *repositus*; *aspris*, for *asperis*.

5. *Crasis* is the contraction of two vowels into one; as, *cōgo*, for *cōdgo*; *nīl*, for *nihil*.

6. *Paragoge* is the addition of a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as, *med*, for *me*; *claudier*, for *claudi*.

7. *Apocope* is the omission of the final letter or syllable of a word; as, *mēn'*, for *mēne*; *Antōni*, for *Antōnii*.

8. *Antithesis* is the substitution of one letter for another; as, *olli*, for *illi*; *optimus*, for *optimus*; *afficio*, for *adfficio*. *O* is often thus used for *u*, especially after *v*; as, *voltus*, for *vultus*; *servom*, for *servum*. So after *qu*; as, *æquom*, for *æquum*.

9. *Metathesis* is the changing of the order of letters in a word; as, *pistris*, for *pristis*.

#### II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

323. The figures of Syntax are *ellipsis*, *pleonasm*, *enallage*, and *hyperbāton*.

1. (a.) *Ellipsis* is the omission of some word or words in a sentence; as,

*Aiunt*, scil. *hōmīnes*. *Dārius Hystaspis*, scil. *filius*. *Cōno*, scil. *ēgo*. *Quid multa?* scil. *dicam*. *Ex quo*, scil. *tempōre*. *Fērīna*, scil. *caro*.

(b.) *Ellipsis* includes *asyndeton*, *zeugma*, *syllipsis*, and *prolepsis*.

(1.) *Asyndeton* is the omission of the copulative conjunction; as, *abiit, excessit, evasit, eripit* scil. *et*. Cic. This is called in pure Latin *dissolutio*.

(2.) (a.) *Zeugma* is the uniting of two nouns or two infinitives to a verb, which, as to its meaning, is applicable to only one of them; as, *Pācem an bellum gerens*: (Sall.) where *gerens* is applicable to *bellum* only, while *pācem* requires *agere*. *Semperne in sanguine, ferro, fugā versābimur?* (Id.) where the verb does not properly apply to *ferro*.

(b.) *Nego* is often thus used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative; as, *Negant Casārem mansurum, postulātāque interposita esse*, for *dīcūnque postulatā*... Cic. See § 209, Note 4.

(c.) When an adjective or verb, referring to two or more nouns, agrees with one, and is understood with the rest, the construction is also sometimes called *zeugma*, but more commonly *syllipsis*; as, *Et gēnus, et virtus, nisi cum re, vīlīor algā est*. Hor. *Cāper tibi salvus et hādī*. Virg. *Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candida esses*. Id.

(3.) *Syllipsis* is when an adjective or verb, belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another; as, *Attōlnti novitātē pāvent* Baucis, *timidusque* Philēmon. Ovid. *Prōcumbūt uterque prōnus hūmī*, i. e. *Deucālīon et Pyrrha*. Id. *Sustulīmus mānus et ego et Balbus*. Cic. So, *Ipse cum frātre dāesse jussī sūmus*. Id. *Prōjectisq̄e amīculo et litēris*. Curt. See §§ 205, R. 2, and 209, R. 12, (3.) and (7.)

(4.) *Prōlepsis* is when the parts, differing in number or person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or adjective not being repeated; as, *Prīncipes utrinque pugnam ciebant, ab Sābinis Mettius Curtius, ab Rōmānis Hostus Hostilius*. Liv. *Bōnī quōniam convenīmus ambo, tu cālidos inflāre, ego dāctre versus*. Virg.

2. (a.) *Pleonasm* is using a greater number of words than is necessary to express the meaning; as,

*Sic ore locūta est*. Virg. *Qui māgis vēre vīncere quā dū impērāre mālīt*. Liv. *Nemo unus*. Cic. *Forte fortunā*. Id. *Prūdēns sciēns*. Ter.

(b.) Under *pleonasm* are included *parelcon*, *polysyndeton*, *hendīāds*, and *periphrāsis*.

(1.) *Parelcon* is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle to pronouns, verbs, or adverbs; as, *egomet, agēdum, fortassean*. Such additions, however, usually modify the meaning in some degree.

(2.) *Polysyndeton* is a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *Una Eurusque Nōtusque ruunt creberque procellis Africus*. Virg.

(3.) *Hendīāds* is the expression of an idea by two nouns connected by *et*, *-que*, or *atque*, instead of a noun and a limiting adjective or genitive; as, *Pātēris libāmus et auro, for aureis pātēris*. Virg. *Libro et silvestri sūbēre clausam, for libro sūbēris*. Id. *Cristis et auro*. Ovid. Met. 3, 32.

(4.) *Periphrāsis* or *circumlōcūtio* is a circuitous mode of expression; as, *Tēneri fatus ovium*, i. e. *agni*. Virg.

3. (a.) *Enallāge* is a change of words, or a substitution of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice of the same word for another.

(b.) *Enallāge* includes *antimeria*, *heterōsis*, *antiptōsis*, *synēsis*, and *anacolūthon*.

(1.) *Antīmēria* is the use of one part of speech for another, or the abstract for the concrete; as, *Nostrum istud vivēre triste, for nostra vita*. Pers. *Aliud cras*. Id. *Conjūgium vidēbit?* for *conjūgem*. Virg.

(2.) *Heterōsis* is the use of one form of noun, pronoun, verb, etc., for another; as, *Ego quōque una pereō, quod mihī est cārīus, for qui mihī sum cārīor*. Ter.

Römānus *prælio* victor, for *Römāni victōres*. Liv. Many words are used by the poets in the plural instead of the singular; as, *colla, corda, ora*, etc. See § 98. *Me truncus ille capere cērebro sustulērat*, for *sustulisset*. Hor. See § 259, R. 4.

(3.) *Antiphrasis* is the use of one case for another; as, *Cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo, for Iūlus*. Virg. § 204, R. 8. *Uxor invicti Iōvis esse nescis, for te esse uxorem*. Hor. § 210, R. 6.

(4.) *Synesis*, or *synthesis*, is adapting the construction to the *sense* of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, *Sūbeunt Tēgæa jūventus auxilio tardū*. Stat. *Concursus pōpuli mīrantium quid rei est*. Liv. *Pars in crucem acti*. Sall. *Ubi illic est scēlus, qui me perdidit?* Ter. *Id mea minime refert, qui sum nātus maximus*. Id. See § 205, R. 3, (1.) and (3.), and § 206, (12.)

(5.) *Andoclithon* is a disagreement in construction between the latter and former part of a sentence; as, *Nam nos omnes, quibus est ālcunde āliquis objectus lābos, omne quod est intērea tempus, priusquam id rescitum est, lucro est*. Ter. In this example, the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro hābēmus*, and ended as if he had said *nōbis omnibus*, leaving *nos omnes* without its verb.

4. (a.) *Hypērbāton* is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses.

(b.) *Hyperbāton* includes *ānastrōphe*, *hystēron prōtēron*, *hypoallage*, *synchysis*, *tmēsis*, and *pārenthēsis*.

(1.) *Anastrōphe* is an inversion of the order of two words; as, *Transtra per et rēmos*, for *per transtra*. Virg. *Collo dare brāchia circum*, for *circumdāre*. Id. *Nox trū una sūper*, for *sūpēritū*. Ovid. *Et faciū are, for arēfaciū*. Lucr.

(2.) *Hystēron prōtēron* is reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Mōriāmur, et in mēdia arma ruāmus*. Virg. *Vālet atque vivit*. Ter.

(3.) *Hypoallage* is an interchange of constructions; as, *In nōva fert ānimus mūtātas dicere formas corpōra, for corpōra mūtāta in nōvas formas*. Ovid. *Dāre classibus Austros*, for *dāre classes Austris*. Virg.

(4.) *Synchysis* is a confused position of words; as, *Saxa vocant Iūli, mēdis quæ in fluctibus, āras, for quæ saxa in mēdis fluctibus, Iūli vocant āras*. Virg.

(5.) *Tmēsis* or *diacope* is the separation of the parts of a compound word; as, *Septem subjecta triōni gens*, for *septentriōni*. Virg. *Quæ me cumque vocant terras*. Id. *Per mihi, per, inquam, grātum fēcēris*. Cic.

(6.) *Pārenthēsis* or *dialysis* is the insertion of a word or words in a sentence interrupting the natural connection; as, *Titiŕe dum rēdeo*, (*brēvis est via*), *pāse cīpellas*. Virg.

REMARK. To the above may be added *archaism* and *Hellenism*, which belong both to the figures of etymology and to those of syntax.

(1.) *Archaism* is the use of ancient forms or constructions; as, *ulāŕs*, for *aule*; *sēnāŕs*, for *sēnātūs*; *fuat*, for *sit*; *prōhibesso*, for *prōhibuēro*; *impetrassēre*, for *impetrātūrum esse*; *fārter*, for *fāri*; *nēnu*, for *non*; *endo*, for *in*;—*Opēram abūtūtur*, for *opēra*. Ter. *Quid tibi hanc cūrātio est rem?* Plaut.

(2.) *Hellenism* is the use of Greek forms or constructions; as, *Hēlēna*, for *Hēlēna*; *Antīphon*, for *Antīphō*; *aurās* (gen.), for *auræ*; *Pallādos*, *Pallāda*, for *Pallādīs*, *Pallādem*; *Trōāsin*, *Trōādas*, for *Trōādibus*, *Trōādes*;—*Abstīnēto irārum*. Hor. *Tempus dēsistere pugnæ*. Virg.

§ 324. (1.) To the grammatical figures may not improperly be subjoined certain others, which are often referred to in philological works, and which are called

## TROPES AND FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

(2.) A rhetorical *figure* is a mode of expression different from the direct and simple way of expressing the same sense. The turning of a word from its original and customary meaning, is called a *trope*.

1. (a.) A *metaphor* is the transferring of a word from the object to which it properly belongs, and applying it to another, to which that object has some analogy; as, *Ridet ager*, The field smiles. Virg. *Ætas aurea*, The golden age. Ovid. *Naufraſgia fortunæ*, The wreck of fortune. Cic. *Mentis oculi*, The eyes of the mind. Id. *Virtus animum gloriæ ſtimulîs concitat*. The harshness of a metaphor is often ſoftened by means of *quidam*, *tamquam*, *quidam*, or *ut ita dicam*; as, *In unâ philoſophiâ quâſi tâbernâculum vitæ ſuæ collocârunt*. Id. *Optimum quoddam et tamquam âdipâtæ dictiônis gënus*. Id.

(b.) *Câtachrëſis* or *âbûſio* is a bold or harſh metaphor; as, *Vir grëgis ipſe cæper*. Virg. *Eurus per ſtîculas èquitâvit undas*. Hor.

2. *Metonymy* is ſubſtituting the name of an object for that of another to which it has a certain relation; as the cauſe for the effect, the container for what is contained, the property for the ſubſtance, the ſign for the thing ſignified, and their contraries; the parts of the body for certain affections; the poſſeſſor for the thing poſſeſſed; place and time for the perſons or things which they comprise, etc.; as, *Mortâles*, for *hômînes*. Virg. *Amor duri Martis*, i. e. *belli*. Id. *Frâges Cërërem appellâmus, vinum autem Libërum*. Cic. *Cipio vigiliam meam tibi tradere*, i. e. *meam curam*. Id. *Pallida mors*. Hor. *Hauſit pâtëram*, i. e. *vinum*. Virg. *Vina côrônant*, i. e. *pâtëram*. Id. *Necte ternos cölôres*, i. e. *tria fila diverſi cölôris*. Id. *Cédant arma togæ*, i. e. *bellum pâci*. Cic. *Sæcûla miteſcent*, i. e. *hômînes in sæcûlis*. Virg. *Vivat Pâciûſius vel Neſtôra tötum*. Juv. *Doctrinâ Græcia nos ſupërâbat*, for *Græci ſupërâbant*. Cic. *Pâgi centum Suevörum ad ripas Rhëni conſëderant*, for *pâgrum incolæ*. Cæſ. *Tempöra âmicrörum*, for *res adverſæ*. Cic. *Claudius lêge præciâtörâ venâſis pépencit*, for *Claudii prædium*. Suet. *Vici ad Jânium médium ſëdentes*, for *Jânî vicum*. Cic.

3. *Synecdöche* is putting a whole for a part, a genus for a ſpecies, a ſingular for a plural, and their contraries; alſo the material for the thing made of it; a definite for an indefinite number, etc.; as, *Fontem fërëbant*. Id. *Tectum*, for *dómus*. Id. *Armâto milite complent*, for *armâtis militibus*. Id. *Ferrum*, for *glâdius*. Id. *Qui Cörinthiis ôperibus âbundant*, i. e. *vâſis*. Cic. *Urbem*, *urbem*, *mi Rüfe*, *cöle*, i. e. *Römam*. Cic. *Centum puer artium*, i. e. *multârum*.

4. *Irony* is the intentional uſe of words which expreſs a ſenſe contrary to that which the writer or ſpeaker means to convey; as, *Salve bone vir, cürâſti pröbe*. Ter. *Egrëgiâ vëro laudem, et ſpölia ampla rêfertis, tûque, puerque tuus*. Virg.

5. *Hÿperböle* is the magnifying or diminiſhing of a thing beyond the truth; as, *Ipſe arduus, altâque pulſat ſidëra*. Virg. *Ociôr Euro*. Id.

6. *Mëtalepſis* is the including of ſeveral tropes in one word; as, *Post aliquot âriſtas*. Virg. Here *ariſtas* is put for *meſſes*, and this for *annos*.

7. (a.) *Allegory* is a conſiſtent ſeries of metaphors, deſigned to illuſtrate one ſubject by another; as, *O nâvis, rêfërent in märe te nôvi fluctus*. Hor.

(b.) An obſcure allegory or riddle is called an *ænigma*; as, *Dic, quibus in terris tres pâteat celi ſpätium non amplius ulnas*. Virg.

8. *Antônômäſia* is uſing a proper noun for a common one, and the contrary; as, *Irus et eſt ſubito, qui mōdo Cræſus erat, for pauper and dives*. Ovid. So, by periphräſis, *pötör Rhödâni*, for *Gallus*. Hor. *Eveſſor Carthâginiſ*, for *Scipio*. Quint. *Elöquentiâ princeps*, for *Cicero*. Id. *Tyðides*, for *Diömëdes*. Virg.

9. *Litôtes* is a mode of expreſſing ſomething by denying the contrary; as, *Non laudo*, I blame. Ter. *Non innoxia verba*. Virg.

10. *Antiphräſis* is uſing a word in a ſenſe oppoſite to its proper meaning; as, *Auri ſacra fâmes*. Virg.

11. *Eupheſmiſm* is the uſe of ſoftened language to expreſs what is offenſive or diſtreſſing; as, *Si quid accidisset Cæſârî*, i. e. *ſi mortuus eſſet*. Vell.

12. *Antônâcläſis* or *punning* is the uſe of the ſame word in different ſenſes; as, *Quis nêget Ænëâ nâtum de ſtirpe Nêrönem? Suſtülit hic mätrem, ſuſtülit ille patrem*. Epigr. *Amâri jucundum eſt, ſi cürëtur ne quid inſit âmâri*. Cic.

13. *Anaphóra* or *epánaphóra* is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium pâlât, nihil urbis vigília, nihil timor popûli*, etc. Cic. *Te, dulcis conjux, te, sólo in litóre sicum, te, veniente die, te, decedente, cânebat*. Virg.

14. *Epistrôphe* is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses; as, *Pænos popûlus Rómânus justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, libéralitate vicit*. Cic. In pure Latin this figure is called *conversio*.

15. *Symplôce* is the repetition of a word at the beginning, and of another at the end, of successive clauses, and hence it includes the *anaphóra* and the *epistrôphe*; as, *Quis légem tulit? Rullus: Quis majórem popûli partem suffrágiis privávit? Rullus: Quis comitiis præfuit? Idem Rullus*. Cic.

16. *Epánalepsis* is a repetition of the same word or sentence after intervening words or clauses. See Virg. *Geor.* II. 4—7.

17. *Anádiplosis* is the use of the same word at the end of one clause, and the beginning of another; as, *Séquitur pulcherrimus Astur, Astur equo fidens*. Virg. A. 10, 180. *Nunc etiam audes in hórûm conspectum vénire, vénire audes in hórûm conspectum?* Cic. This is sometimes called *épánastrophé*.

18. *Epánadiplosis* is the use of the same word both at the beginning and end of a sentence; as, *Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pecúnia crescit*. Juv.

19. *Epánados* or *régressio* is the repetition of the same words in an inverted order; as, *Crûdélis máter mágis, an puer impróbûs ille? Impróbûs ille puer, crûdélis tu quoque, máter*. Virg.

20. *Epizeuxis* is a repetition of the same word for the sake of emphasis; as, *Excitâte, excitâte eum ab inférís*. Cic. *Ah Córýdon, Córýdon, quæ te dementia cêpit?* Virg. *Ibimus, ibimus, utcumque præcêdes*. Hor.

21. *Climax* is a gradual amplification by means of a continued anadiplosis, each successive clause beginning with the conclusion of that which precedes it; as, *Qua reliqua spes manet libertátis, si illis et quod libet, licet; et quod licet, possunt; et quod possunt, audent; et quod audent, vobis molestum non est?* Cic. This, in pure Latin, is called *gradatío*.

22. *Incrementum* is an amplification without a strict climax; as, *Fâctus est, vinciri civem Rómânûm; scélus, verbérâri; prôpe parricidîum, necâri; quid dicam in crûcem tolli?* Cic.

23. *Polyptoton* is the repetition of a word in different cases, genders, numbers, tenses, etc.; as, *Jam clipeus clipeis, umbône répellitur umbô; ense minax ensis, pède pes, et cuspidè cuspis*. Stat.

24. *Paregménon* is the use of several words of the same origin, in one sentence; as, *Abesse non pôtest, quin ejusdem hómînis sit, qui imprôbos prôbet, prôbos imprôbare*. Cic. *Istam pugnam pugnâbo*. Plaut.

25. *Pârônómásia* is the use of words which resemble each other in sound; as, *Amor et melle et felle est fêcundissimûs*. Plaut. *Civem bônârum artium, bônârum partium*. Cic. *Amantes sunt âmentes*. Ter. This figure is sometimes called *agnómînâtio*.

26. *Hómæoprôphêron* or *alliteration* is the use in the same sentence of several words beginning with the same letter; as, *O Tite, tute Tuti, tibi tantu, tigranne, tûisti*. Enn. *Nov patria vâldas in viscêra verâtè vires*. Virg.

27. *Antithêsis* is the placing of different or opposite words or sentiments in contrast; as, *Hijus orâtiónis difficilius est exitum quam principium invênire*. Cic. *Cæsar bénéficiis ac mûnificentiâ magnus habebâtur; integritâte vitæ Cato*. Sall.

28. *Oxymôron* unites words of contrary significations, thus producing a seeming contradiction; as, *Concordia discors*. Hor. *Quum tácent, clâmant*. Cic.

29. *Synónymia* is the use of different words or expressions having the same import; as, *Non féram, non pâtiar, non sinam*. Cic. *Prômîto, récipio, sponleo*. Id.



80. *Pārābola* or *Simile* is the comparison of one thing with another; as, *Rē-pente te, tamquam serpens e lātūbūlis, oculis ēminentibus, inflāto collo, tūmidis cer-vicibus, intūlisisti.* Cic.

81. *Erōtēsis* is an earnest question, and often implies a strong affirmation of the contrary; as, *Crēdētis āvēctos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quā me aequora possunt accipere?* Id.

82. *Epānorthōsis* or *Correctio* is the recalling of a word, in order to place a stronger or more significant one in its stead; as, *Filiū unicū adolescentiū habeo: ah! quid dixi? me habere? Imo habui.* Ter.

83. *Apōsiōpēsis*, *Rēttēntia*, or *Interruptio*, is leaving a sentence unfinished in consequence of some emotion of the mind; as, *Quos ego—sed mōtos vāstāt compōnere fluctus.* Virg.

84. *Prōsōpōpia* or *personification* represents inanimate things as acting or speaking, and persons dead or absent as alive and present; as, *Quas (patria) tēcum, Cātīlina, sic agit.* Cic. *Virtus sūmit aut pōnit sēcūres.* Hor.

85. *Apostrophē* is a turning off from the regular course of the subject, to address some person or thing; as, *Vi pōtitur; quid non mortālīa pectōra cōgis, auri sacra fāmes!* Virg.

86. *Pārāleipsis* is a pretended omission of something, in order to render it more observed. See Cic. Cat. 1, 6, 14.

87. *Epiphōnēma* or *Acclāmatio* is an exclamation or grave reflection on something said before; as, *Tanta mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem.* Virg.

88. *Ecphōnēsis* or *Exclāmatio* shows some violent emotion of the mind; as, *O tempōra! O mōres!*

89. *Apōria*, *Diāpōrēsis*, or *Dūbtitatio*, expresses a doubt in regard to what is to be said or done; as, *Quos accēdam, aut quos appellem?* Sall.

40. *Prōlepsis* is the anticipation of an objection before it is made, or of an event before it occurs; as, *Vērū anceps pugna fuērat fortūna. Fuisset: Quem mētui mōritūra?* Virg.

§ 325. To the figures of rhetoric may be subjoined the following terms, used to designate defects or blemishes in style:—

1. *Barbarism* is either the use of a foreign word, or a violation of the rules of orthography, etymology, or prosody; as, *rigōrōsus*, for *rigidus* or *sēvērus*; *domminus*, for *dōminus*; *davi*, for *dēdi*.

2. *Solecism* is a violation of the rules of syntax; as, *Vēnus pulcher; vos invādēmus.*

3. *Neoterism* is the use of words or phrases introduced by authors living subsequently to the best ages of Latinity; as, *murdrum*, a murder; *constabulārius*, a constable.

4. *Tautology* is a repetition of the same meaning in different words; as, *Jam vos āciem, et prēlia, et hostem poscitis.* Sil.

5. *Amphibōlia* is the use of equivocal words or constructions; as, *Gallus*, a Gaul, or a cock. *Ad te, Edicta*, Rōmānos vīcēre posse. Quint.

6. *Idiotism* is a construction peculiar to one or more languages: thus, the ablative after comparatives is a Latinism. When a peculiarity of one language is imitated in another, this is also called *idiotism*. Thus, *Mitte mihi verbum*, instead of *Fac me certiorē*, is an Anglicism.

## ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING.

### I. OF TIME.

#### 1. The Roman Day.

§ 326. (1.) With the Romans, as with us, the day was either *civil* or *natural*. Their civil day, like ours, extended from midnight to midnight. The natural day continued from sunrise to sunset, as, on the other hand, the night extended from sunset to sunrise. The natural day and night were each divided into twelve equal parts or *hours*, which were consequently of different length, according to the varying length of the days and nights in the successive seasons of the year. It was only at the equinox that the diurnal and nocturnal hours of the Romans were equal to each other, as each was then equal to the twenty-fourth part of the civil day.

(2.) In the Roman camp the night was further divided into four watches (*vigiliæ*), consisting each of three Roman hours, the second and fourth watches ending respectively at midnight and at sunrise.

#### 2. The Roman Month and Year.

(1.) The calendar of the Romans, as rectified by Julius Cæsar, agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each, according to the following table:—

|                      |                    |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Jānuārius . 31 days. | Maius . . 31 days. | September 30 days. |
| Februārius 28 or 29. | Jūnius . 30 “      | Octōber . . 31 “   |
| Martius . . 31 days. | Quintilis 31 “     | Nōvember 30 “      |
| Aprilis . . . 30 “   | Sextilis . 31 “    | Dēcember 31 “      |

In early times the Roman year began with March, and the names *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September*, etc., indicated the distance of those months from the commencement of the year. *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* were afterwards called *Julius* and *Augustus* in honor of the first two emperors. The Romans, instead of reckoning in an uninterrupted series from the first to the last day of a month, had in each month three points or periods from which their days were counted—the *Calends*, the *Nones*, and the *Ides*. The *Calends* (*Cālendæ*), were always the *first* day of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnæ*), were the *fifth*, and the *Ides* (*Idus*), the *thirteenth*; except in March, May, July, and October, when the *Nones* occurred on the *seventh* day, and the *Ides* on the *fifteenth*.

(2.) They always counted forward, from the day whose date was to be determined, to the next *Calends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*, and designated the day by its distance before such point. After the first day of the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the *Nones*; after the *Nones*, so many days before the *Ides*; and after the *Ides*, so many before the *Calends*, of the next month.

Thus, the second of January was denoted by *quarto Nōnas Jānuārias*, or *Jānuārii*, scil. *die ante*; the third, *tertio Nōnas*; the fourth, *pridie Nōnas*; and the fifth, *Nōnis*. The sixth was denoted by *octavo Idus*; the seventh,

|                                     |                            |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Quo, quo, scelesti ruitis.....No. 4 | Tu ne quæsiëris.....No. 9  |
| Quum tu, Lydia..... 3               | Tyrrhæna regum..... 1      |
| Bectius vives..... 2                | Ulla si juris..... 2       |
| Rogâre longo..... 4                 | Uxor paupëris Ibÿci..... 3 |
| Scribëris Vario..... 5              | Velox amœnum..... 1        |
| Septimi, Gades..... 2               | Vides, ut altâ..... 1      |
| Sic te Diva potens..... 3           | Vile potâbis..... 2        |
| Solvitur acris hiems..... 17        | Vitas hinnuleo..... 6      |
| Te maris et terræ..... 8            | Vixi puellis..... 1        |

The following are the single metres used by Horace in his lyric compositions, viz :—

- |                                              |                              |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Dactylic Hexameter.                       | 11. Choriambic Pentameter.   |
| 2. Dactylic Tetrameter <i>a posteriori</i> . | 12. Choriambic Tetrameter.   |
| 3. Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic.             | 13. Asclepiadic Tetrameter.  |
| 4. Adonic.                                   | 14. Glyconic.                |
| 5. Trimeter Iambic.                          | 15. Pherecratic.             |
| 6. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.               | 16. Choriambic Dimeter.      |
| 7. Iambic Dimeter.                           | 17. Ionic <i>a minore</i> .  |
| 8. Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter.   | 18. Greater Alcaic.          |
| 9. Iambic Dimeter Acephalous.                | 19. Archilochian Heptameter. |
| 10. Sapphic.                                 | 20. Lesser Alcaic.           |

## APPENDIX.

### GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

§ **322.** Certain deviations from the regular form and construction of words, are called *grammatical figures*. These may relate either to Orthography and Etymology, or to Syntax.

#### I. FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY AND ETYMOLOGY.

These are distinguished by the general name of *metaplasm*.

1. *Prosthesis* is the prefixing of a letter or syllable to a word; as, *gnātus*, for *nātus*; *tētūli*, for *tūli*. These, however, are rather the ancient customary forms, from which those now in use were formed by *aphæresis*.

2. *Aphæresis* is the taking of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *'st*, for *est*; *rābōnem*, for *arrābōnem*.

3. *Epenthesis* is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *ālitūm*, for *alitum*; *Māvors*, for *Mars*.

4. *Syncope* is the omission of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *dētū*, for *dēorum*; *meūm factūm*, for *meōrum factorum*; *sæcla*, for *sæcula*; *flesti*, for *flēvistī*; *rēpositus*, for *rēpōsitus*; *aspris*, for *aspēris*.

5. *Crasis* is the contraction of two vowels into one; as, *cōgo*, for *cōāgo*; *nīl*, for *nihil*.

6. *Paragoge* is the addition of a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as, *med*, for *me*; *claudier*, for *claudi*.

7. *Apocope* is the omission of the final letter or syllable of a word; as, *mēn'*, for *mene*; *Antōni*, for *Antōniū*.

8. *Antithesis* is the substitution of one letter for another; as, *ollī*, for *illī*; *optāmus*, for *optimus*; *afficio*, for *adfficio*. *O* is often thus used for *u*, especially after *v*; as, *volutus*, for *vultus*; *servom*, for *servum*. So after *qu*; as, *æquom*, for *æquum*.

9. *Metathesis* is the changing of the order of letters in a word; as, *pistris*, for *pristis*.

#### II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

**323.** The figures of Syntax are *ellipsis*, *pleonasm*, *enallage*, and *hyperbāton*.

1. (a.) *Ellipsis* is the omission of some word or words in a sentence; as,

*Aiunt*, scil. *hōmīnes*. *Dārius Hystaspis*, scil. *filius*. *Cōno*, scil. *ēgo*. *Quid multa?* scil. *dicam*. *Ex quo*, scil. *tempore*. *Fērina*, scil. *caro*.

(b.) *Ellipsis* includes *asyndeton*, *zeugma*, *syllipsis*, and *prolepsis*.

(1.) *Asyndeton* is the omission of the copulative conjunction; as, *abūt, excessit, evāsi, erupit* scil. *et*. Cic. This is called in pure Latin *dissolutio*.

(2.) (a.) *Zeugma* is the uniting of two nouns or two infinitives to a verb, which, as to its meaning, is applicable to only one of them; as, *Pacem an bellum gerens*: (Sall.) where *gerens* is applicable to *bellum* only, while *pacem* requires *agere*. *Semperne in sanguine, ferro, fugā versībimur?* (Id.) where the verb does not properly apply to *ferro*.

(b.) *Nēgo* is often thus used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative; as, *Nēgant Cæsārem mansūrum, postulātāque interpōita esse, for dicūque postulātā...* Cic. See § 209, Note 4.

(c.) When an adjective or verb, referring to two or more nouns, agrees with one, and is understood with the rest, the construction is also sometimes called *zeugma*, but more commonly *syllipsis*; as, *Et gēnus, et virtus, nisi cum re, viliior algā est*. Hor. *Cūper tibi saluus et hādi*. Virg. *Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candida esses*. Id.

(3.) *Syllipsis* is when an adjective or verb, belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another; as, *Attōlnti nōvitate pāvent* Baucis, *timidusque* Phlēmōn. Ovid. *Prōcumbit uterque prōnus hūmī, i. e. Deucalion et Pyrrha*. Id. *Sustulimus manus et ego et Balbus*. Cic. So, *Ipse cum fratre dēesse jussi sūmus*. Id. *Prōjectisque amiculo et lītēris*. Curt. See §§ 205, R. 2, and 209, R. 12, (3.) and (7.)

(4.) *Prōlepsis* is when the parts, differing in number or person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or adjective not being repeated; as, *Principes utrinque pugnam ciebant, ab Sabinis Mettius Curtius, ab Rōmānis Hostus Hostilius*. Liv. *Bōni quōniam convenimus ambo, tu cādamus inflāre, ego dicāre versus*. Virg.

2. (a.) *Pleonasm* is using a greater number of words than is necessary to express the meaning; as,

*Sic ore locūta est*. Virg. *Qui mēgis vērē vincēre quam dū impērāre mālīt*. Liv. *Nemo unus*. Cic. *Forte fortūnā*. Id. *Prūdēns sciēns*. Ter.

(b.) Under *pleonasm* are included *parelcon*, *polysyndeton*, *hendīāds*, and *periphrāsis*.

(1.) *Parelcon* is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle to pronouns, verbs, or adverbs; as, *egōmet, agēdum, fortassean*. Such additions, however, usually modify the meaning in some degree.

(2.) *Pōlysyndeton* is a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *Una Eurusque Nōtusque ruunt crēberque prōcellis Africus*. Virg.

(3.) *Hendīāds* is the expression of an idea by two nouns connected by *et*, *-que*, or *atque*, instead of a noun and a limiting adjective or genitive; as, *Pātēris libāmus et auro, for aureis pātēris*. Virg. *Libro et silvestri sūbēre clausam, for libro sūbēris*. Id. *Cristis et auro*. Ovid. Met. 3, 32.

(4.) *Pēriphrāsis* or *circumlocūtio* is a circuitous mode of expression; as, *Tēnēri fētus ovium, i. e. agnī*. Virg.

3. (a.) *Enallāge* is a change of words, or a substitution of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice of the same word for another.

(b.) *Enallāge* includes *antimeria*, *heterōsis*, *antiptōsis*, *synēsis*, and *anacolūthon*.

(1.) *Antimēria* is the use of one part of speech for another, or the abstract for the concrete; as, *Nostrum istud vivēre triste, for nostra vita*. Pers. *Aliud cras*. Id. *Conjūgium vidēbūt? for conjūgem*. Virg.

(2.) *Heterōsis* is the use of one form of noun, pronoun, verb, etc., for another; as, *Ego quōque una pereō, quod mihi est cārius, for qui mihi sum cārior*. Ter.

Römānus *prælio* victor, for *Römāni victōres*. Liv. Many words are used by the poets in the plural instead of the singular; as, *colla, corda, ōra*, etc. See § 98. *Me truncus illepus cēbro sustūlerat*, for *sustūlisset*. Hor. See § 259, R. 4.

(3.) *Antiphrasis* is the use of one case for another; as, *Cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo*, for *Iūlus*. Virg. § 204, R. 8. *Uxor invicti Iōvis esse nescis*, for *te esse uxorē*. Hor. § 210, R. 6.

(4.) *Synēsis*, or *synthēsis*, is adapting the construction to the *sense* of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, *Sūbeunt Tēgæa iuventus auxilio tardi*. Stat. *Concursus pōpuli mirantium quid rei est*. Liv. *Pars in crūcem acti*. Sall. *Ubi illic est scēlus, qui me perdidit?* Ter. *Id mea minime refert*, qui *sum nātus mazimus*. Id. See § 205, R. 3, (1.) and (3.), and § 206, (12.)

(5.) *Anacolūthon* is a disagreement in construction between the latter and former part of a sentence; as, *Nam nos omnes, quibus est ālcunde āliquis objectus lābos, omne quod est intērea tempus, priusquam id rescitum est, lucro est*. Ter. In this example, the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro hābēmus*, and ended as if he had said *nōbis omnibus*, leaving *nos omnes* without its verb.

4. (a.) *Hypērbāton* is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses.

(b.) *Hypērbāton* includes *ānastrōphe*, *hystēron prōteron*, *hypoallage*, *synchysis*, *tmēsis*, and *pārenthēsis*.

(1.) *Anastrōphe* is an inversion of the order of two words; as, *Transtra per et rēmos, for per transtra*. Virg. *Collo dare brāchia circum, for circumdare*. Id. *Nox erit ūna sūper, for sūpērrē*. Ovid. *Et faciit are, for arefacit*. Lucr.

(2.) *Hystēron prōteron* is reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Moriāmur, et in mēdia arma ruāmus*. Virg. *Vālet atque vivit*. Ter.

(3.) *Hypoallage* is an interchange of constructions; as, *In nōva fert ānimus mūtātās dicere formas corpōra, for corpōra mūtātā in nōvas formas*. Ovid. *Dāre classibus Austros, for dare classes Austris*. Virg.

(4.) *Synchysis* is a confused position of words; as, *Saxa vōcant Iūli, mēdiis quos in fluctibus, āras, for quæ saxa in mēdiis fluctibus, Iūli vōcant āras*. Virg.

(5.) *Tmēsis* or *diacōpe* is the separation of the parts of a compound word; as, *Septem subjecta triōni gens, for septentriōni*. Virg. *Quas me cumque vōcant terræ*. Id. *Per mīhi, per, inquam, grātum feceris*. Cic.

(6.) *Pārenthēsis* or *dialysis* is the insertion of a word or words in a sentence interrupting the natural connection; as, *Tūtīre dum rēdeo, (brēvis est via,) pascē cōpellas*. Virg.

REMARK. To the above may be added *archaism* and *Hellenism*, which belong both to the figures of etymology and to those of syntax.

(1.) *Archaism* is the use of ancient forms or constructions; as, *aulār, for aulæ; sēnātis, for sēnātūs; fuit, for sit; prōhibesso, for prōhibuēro; impetrassere, for impetrātūrum esse; fārter, for fārī; nēnu, for non; endo, for in;—Opēram abūtūtur, for opēra*. Ter. *Quid tibi hanc cūrātio est rem?* Plaut.

(2.) *Hellenism* is the use of Greek forms or constructions; as, *Hēlēna, for Hēlēna; Antīphōn, for Antīphō; aurās (gen.), for auræ; Pallādos, Pallāda, for Pallādēs, Pallādēm; Trōāsin, Trōādas, for Trōādābus, Trōādēs;—Abstīnēto irārum*. Hor. *Tempus dēsistēre pugnæ*. Virg.

§ 324. (1.) To the grammatical figures may not improperly be subjoined certain others, which are often referred to in philological works, and which are called

## TROPES AND FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

(2.) A rhetorical *figure* is a mode of expression different from the direct and simple way of expressing the same sense. The turning of a *word* from its original and customary meaning, is called a *trope*.

13. *Anaphora* or *epianaphora* is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palat, nihil urbis vigilia, nihil timor populi*, etc. Cic. *Te, dulcis conjux, te, solo in litore sicum, te, veniente die, te, decedente, cænebat*. Virg.

14. *Epistrophe* is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses; as, *Poenos populus Romanus justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, liberalitate vicit*. Cic. In pure Latin this figure is called *conversio*.

15. *Symplœce* is the repetition of a word at the beginning, and of another at the end, of successive clauses, and hence it includes the anaphora and the epistrophe; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus: Quis majorem populi partem suffragiis privavit? Rullus: Quis comitiis præfuit? Idem Rullus*. Cic.

16. *Epandilepsis* is a repetition of the same word or sentence after intervening words or clauses. See Virg. *Geor.* II. 4—7.

17. *Anadiplosis* is the use of the same word at the end of one clause, and the beginning of another; as, *Sequitur pulcherrimus Astur, Astur equo fidens*. Virg. A. 10, 180. *Nunc etiam audes in horum conspectum venire, venire audes in horum conspectum?* Cic. This is sometimes called *epanastrœphe*.

18. *Epandiplosis* is the use of the same word both at the beginning and end of a sentence; as, *Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pecunia crescit*. Juv.

19. *Epânâdo* or *regræssio* is the repetition of the same words in an inverted order; as, *Crûdêlis mâtêr mágis, an puer imprôbus ille? Imprôbus ille puer, crûdêlis tu quoque, mâtêr*. Virg.

20. *Epizeuxis* is a repetition of the same word for the sake of emphasis; as, *Excitâte, excitâte eum ab infêris*. Cic. *Ah Cörýdon, Cörýdon, quæ te dementia cêpit?* Virg. *Ibimus, ibimus, utcumque præcêdes*. Hor.

21. *Climax* is a gradual amplification by means of a continued anadiplosis, each successive clause beginning with the conclusion of that which precedes it; as, *Qua reliqua spes manet libertatis, si illis et quod libet, licet; et quod licet, possunt; et quod possunt, audent; et quod audent, vobis molestum non est?* Cic. This, in pure Latin, is called *graddatio*.

22. *Incrementum* is an amplification without a strict climax; as, *Factus est, vinciri civem Romanum; scélus, verbêrâri; prôpe parriciðium, necâri; quid dicam in cruce[m] tolli?* Cic.

23. *Polyptoton* is the repetition of a word in different cases, genders, numbers, tenses, etc.; as, *Jam clipeus clipeis, umbône repellit[ur] umbo; ense minax ensis, pede pes, et cuspidè cuspis*. Stat.

24. *Paregmênôn* is the use of several words of the same origin, in one sentence; as, *Abesse non pôtet, quin ejusdem hominis sit, qui imprôbos prôbet, prôbos imprôbare*. Cic. *Istam pugnam pugnâbo*. Plaut.

25. *Pärônômásia* is the use of words which resemble each other in sound; as, *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus*. Plaut. *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium*. Cic. *Amantes sunt âmentes*. Ter. This figure is sometimes called *agnôminâtio*.

26. *Hômæoprôphêron* or *alliteration* is the use in the same sentence of several words beginning with the same letter; as, *O Tite, tute Tuti, tibi tanta, tyrranne, tulisti*. Enn. *Nov patria vâdas in viscêra verâte vires*. Virg.

27. *Antithêsis* is the placing of different or opposite words or sentiments in contrast; as, *Illyus orâtions difficilîus est exitum quam principium invenire*. Cic. *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia[m] magnus habebatur; integritate vitæ Cato*. Sall.

28. *Oxymôron* unites words of contrary significations, thus producing a seeming contradiction; as, *Concordia discors*. Hor. *Quum tacent, clamant*. Cic.

29. *Synonymia* is the use of different words or expressions having the same import; as, *Non feram, non patiâr, non sinam*. Cic. *Prômîtto, rêctpio, sponleo*. Id.

80. *Pārābōla* or *Simile* is the comparison of one thing with another; as, *Rēpente te, tamquam serpens e latibulis, oculis eminentibus, inflato collo, tantis cervicibus, intulisti.* Cic.

81. *Erōtēsis* is an earnest question, and often implies a strong affirmation of the contrary; as, *Crēdātis āvēctos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quā me aquōra possum accipere?* Id.

82. *Epānorthōsis* or *Correctio* is the recalling of a word, in order to place a stronger or more significant one in its stead; as, *Filiū unicū adolescentiū habeo: ah! quid dixi? me habere? Imo habui.* Ter.

83. *Apōsiōpēsis*, *Rēttēntia*, or *Interruptio*, is leaving a sentence unfinished in consequence of some emotion of the mind; as, *Quos ego—sed mōtos vrestat compōnere fluctus.* Virg.

84. *Prōsōpōpia* or *personification* represents inanimate things as acting or speaking, and persons dead or absent as alive and present; as, *Quis (patria) tēcum, Cātīna, sic agit.* Cic. *Virtus sūmit aut pōnit sēcūres.* Hor.

85. *Apostrophē* is a turning off from the regular course of the subject, to address some person or thing; as, *Vi pōtitur; quid non mortālīa pectōra cōgia, auri sacra fāmes!* Virg.

86. *Pārāleipsis* is a pretended omission of something, in order to render it more observed. See Cic. Cat. 1, 6, 14.

87. *Epiphōnēma* or *Acclīmātio* is an exclamation or grave reflection on something said before; as, *Tanta mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem.* Virg.

88. *Ephōnēsis* or *Exclāmātio* shows some violent emotion of the mind; as, *O tempōra! O mōres!*

89. *Apōria*, *Diāpōresis*, or *Dūbitātiō*, expresses a doubt in regard to what is to be said or done; as, *Quos accēdam, aut quos appellem?* Sall.

40. *Prōlepsis* is the anticipation of an objection before it is made, or of an event before it occurs; as, *Vērū anceps pugna fuērat fortūna. Fuisset: Quem mētui mōritūra?* Virg.

§ 325. To the figures of rhetoric may be subjoined the following terms, used to designate defects or blemishes in style:—

1. *Barbarism* is either the use of a foreign word, or a violation of the rules of orthography, etymology, or prosody; as, *rigōrōsus*, for *rigidus* or *sēvērus*; *domminus*, for *dōminus*; *davi*, for *dēdi*.

2. *Solecism* is a violation of the rules of syntax; as, *Vēnus pulcher; vos invēdēmus.*

3. *Neoterism* is the use of words or phrases introduced by authors living subsequently to the best ages of Latinity; as, *murdrum*, a murder; *constabularius*, a constable.

4. *Tautology* is a repetition of the same meaning in different words; as, *Jam vos āciem, et prēlia, et hostem poscētis.* Sil.

5. *Amphibōlia* is the use of equivocal words or constructions; as, *Gallus*, a Gaul, or a cock. *Adēda*, Rōmānos vīncere posse. Quint.

6. *Idiotism* is a construction peculiar to one or more languages: thus, the ablative after comparatives is a Latinism. When a peculiarity of one language is imitated in another, this is also called *idiotism*. Thus, *Mitte mihi verbum*, instead of *Fac me certiorē*, is an Anglicism.



## ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING.

### I. OF TIME.

#### 1. *The Roman Day.*

§ 326. (1.) With the Romans, as with us, the day was either *civil* or *natural*. Their civil day, like ours, extended from midnight to midnight. The natural day continued from sunrise to sunset, as, on the other hand, the night extended from sunset to sunrise. The natural day and night were each divided into twelve equal parts or *hours*, which were consequently of different length, according to the varying length of the days and nights in the successive seasons of the year. It was only at the equinox that the diurnal and nocturnal hours of the Romans were equal to each other, as each was then equal to the twenty-fourth part of the civil day.

(2.) In the Roman camp the night was further divided into four watches (*vigiliæ*), consisting each of three Roman hours, the second and fourth watches ending respectively at midnight and at sunrise.

#### 2. *The Roman Month and Year.*

(1.) The calendar of the Romans, as rectified by Julius Cæsar, agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each, according to the following table:—

|                      |                    |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Jānuārius . 31 days. | Maius . . 31 days. | September 30 days. |
| Februārius 28 or 29. | Jūnius . 30 “      | Octōber . . 31 “   |
| Martius . . 31 days. | Quintilis 31 “     | Nōvember 30 “      |
| Aprilis . . . 30 “   | Sextilis . 31 “    | Dēcember 31 “      |

In early times the Roman year began with March, and the names *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September*, etc., indicated the distance of those months from the commencement of the year. *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* were afterwards called *Julius* and *Augustus* in honor of the first two emperors. The Romans, instead of reckoning in an uninterrupted series from the first to the last day of a month, had in each month three points or periods from which their days were counted—the *Calends*, the *Nones*, and the *Ides*. The *Calends* (*Cālendæ*), were always the *first* day of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnæ*), were the *fifth*, and the *Ides* (*Idus*), the *thirteenth*; except in March, May, July, and October, when the *Nones* occurred on the *seventh* day, and the *Ides* on the *fifteenth*.

(2.) They always counted forward, from the day whose date was to be determined, to the next *Calends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*, and designated the day by its distance before such point. After the first day of the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the *Nones*; after the *Nones*, so many days before the *Ides*; and after the *Ides*, so many before the *Calends*, of the next month.

Thus, the second of January was denoted by *quarto Nōnas Jānuārias*, or *Jānuārii*, scil. *die ante*; the third, *tertio Nōnas*; the fourth, *pridie Nōnas*; and the fifth, *Nōmis*. The sixth was denoted by *octavo Idus*; the seventh,

*septimo Idus*; and so on to the thirteenth, on which the Ides fell. The fourteenth was denoted by *undecimēgēsimō Cūlendas Februārias*, or *Februārii*; and so on to the end of the month.

(3.) The day preceding the Calends, Nones, and Ides, was termed *pridie Calendas*, etc., scil. *ante*: in designating the other days, both the day of the Calends, etc., and that whose date was to be determined, were reckoned; hence the second day before the Calends, etc., was called *tertio*, the third *quarto*, etc.

(4.) To reduce the Roman calendar to our own, therefore, when the day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, it is necessary to take one from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Nones or the Ides, and to subtract the remainder from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fell in the given month.

Thus, to determine the day equivalent to *IV. Nonas Januārias*, we take 1 from 4, and subtract the remainder, 3, from 5, the day on which the Nones of January fell (i. e.  $4-1=3$ , and  $5-3=2$ ): this gives 2, or the second of January, for the day in question. So *VI. Idus Aprilis*: the Ides of April falling upon the 13th, we take ( $6-1$ , i. e.) 5 from 13, which leaves 8 (i. e.  $6-1=5$ , and  $13-5=8$ ): the expression, therefore, denotes the 8th of April.

(a.) In reckoning the days before the Calends, as they are not the last day of the current month, but the first of the following, it is necessary to subtract two from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Calends of the following month, and to take the remainder from the number of days in the month.

Thus, *XV. Cal. Quintiles* is  $15-2=13$ , and  $30-13=17$ , i. e. the Roman date *XV. Cal. Quint.* is equivalent to the 17th of June.

(b.) To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the preceding method is to be reversed. Thus when the given day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, (unless it be the day before the Nones or the Ides), we are to *add* one to the number denoting the day of the month, according to our reckoning, on which the Nones or Ides fell. But if the day is after the Ides, (unless it be the last day of the month), we must add *two* to the number of days in the month, and then subtract the number denoting the day of the month as expressed in our reckoning. The remainder will be the day before the Nones, Ides or Calends.

Thus to find the Roman date corresponding to the third of April, we have  $5+1-3=3$ ; the required date, therefore, is *III. Non. Apr.*—To find the proper Roman expression for our tenth of December we have  $13+1-10=4$ ; the date, therefore, is *IV. Id. Dec.*—The Roman expression for the 22d of August, in pursuance of the above rule, is found thus,  $31+2-22=11$ , and the date is *XI. Cal. Sept.*

(5.) In leap year, both the 24th and 25th of February were called the sixth before the Calends of March. The 24th was called *dies bisextus*, and the year itself *annus bisextus*, bissextile or leap year.

(a.) The day after the Calends, etc., was sometimes called *postridie calendas*, etc.

(b.) The names of the months are properly adjectives, though often used as nouns, *mensis* being understood.

(6.) The correspondence of our calendar with that of the Romans is exhibited in the following

TABLE.

| <i>Days of<br/>our months.</i> | MAR. MAL.<br>JUL. OCT. | JAN. AUG.<br>DEC. | APR. JUN.<br>SEPT. NOV. | FEBR.        |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|--------------|
| 1                              | Calendæ.               | Calendæ.          | Calendæ.                | Calendæ.     |
| 2                              | VI. Nonas.             | IV. Nonas.        | IV. Nonas.              | IV. Nonas.   |
| 3                              | V. "                   | III. "            | III. "                  | III. "       |
| 4                              | IV. "                  | Pridie "          | Pridie "                | Pridie "     |
| 5                              | III. "                 | Nonæ.             | Nonæ.                   | Nonæ.        |
| 6                              | Pridie Non.            | VIII. Idus.       | VIII. Idus.             | VIII. Idus.  |
| 7                              | Nonæ.                  | VII. "            | VII. "                  | VII. "       |
| 8                              | VIII. Idus.            | VI. "             | VI. "                   | VI. "        |
| 9                              | VII. "                 | V. "              | V. "                    | V. "         |
| 10                             | VI. "                  | IV. "             | IV. "                   | IV. "        |
| 11                             | V. "                   | III. "            | III. "                  | III. "       |
| 12                             | IV. "                  | Pridie "          | Pridie "                | Pridie "     |
| 13                             | III. "                 | Idus.             | Idus.                   | Idus.        |
| 14                             | Pridie Id.             | XIX. Cal.         | XVIII. Cal.             | XVI. Cal.    |
| 15                             | Idus.                  | XVIII. "          | XVII. "                 | XV. "        |
| 16                             | XVII. Cal.             | XVII. "           | XVI. "                  | XIV. "       |
| 17                             | XVI. "                 | XVI. "            | XV. "                   | XIII. "      |
| 18                             | XV. "                  | XV. "             | XIV. "                  | XII. "       |
| 19                             | XIV. "                 | XIV. "            | XIII. "                 | XI. "        |
| 20                             | XIII. "                | XIII. "           | XII. "                  | X. "         |
| 21                             | XII. "                 | XII. "            | XI. "                   | IX. "        |
| 22                             | XI. "                  | XI. "             | X. "                    | VIII. "      |
| 23                             | X. "                   | X. "              | IX. "                   | VII. "       |
| 24                             | IX. "                  | IX. "             | VIII. "                 | VI. "        |
| 25                             | VIII. "                | VIII. "           | VII. "                  | V. "         |
| 26                             | VII. "                 | VII. "            | VI. "                   | IV. "        |
| 27                             | VI. "                  | VI. "             | V. "                    | III. "       |
| 28                             | V. "                   | V. "              | IV. "                   | Pridie " Mar |
| 29                             | IV. "                  | IV. "             | III. "                  |              |
| 30                             | III. "                 | III. "            | Pridie Cal.             |              |
| 31                             | Pridie Cal.            | Pridie Cal.       |                         |              |

(7.) In leap-year the last seven days of February were reckoned thus:—

- |                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 23. VII. <i>Calendas Martias.</i> | 27. IV. <i>Cal. Mart.</i>    |
| 24. <i>bisexto Cal. Mart.</i>     | 28. III. " "                 |
| 25. VI. <i>Cal. Mart.</i>         | 29. <i>pridie Cal. Mart.</i> |
| 26. V. " "                        |                              |

(a.) Hence in reducing a date of February in leap-year to the Roman date, for the first 23 days we proceed according to the preceding rule in 4, (b.), as if the month had only 28 days. The 24th is marked as *bisexto Cal. Mart.*, and to obtain the proper expression for the remaining five days we regard the month as having 29 days. Thus the 27th of February in leap-year is  $29+2-27=4$ , and the proper Roman expression is *IV. Cal. Mart.*

(b.) On the other hand, to reduce a Roman date of February in leap-year to our date we reverse the above process, and during the Nones and Ides and until the *VII. Calendas Martias* we reckon the month to have only 28 days:—*bisexto Cal. Mart.* is set down as the 24th, and for the remaining days designated as *VI. V. IV. III.* and *pridie Cal. Mart.* we reckon the month to have 29 days. Thus *III. Cal. Mart.* is  $3-2=1$ , and  $29-1=28$ , and the given day is equivalent to the 28th of February.

(8.) The Latins not only said *tertio*, *pridie*, etc., *Calendas*, etc., but also *antiem tertium*, etc., *Calendas*, etc.; and the latter form in Cicero and Livy is far more common than the former, and is usually written thus, *a. d. III. Cal.*, etc.

(9.) The expression *ante diem* was used as an indeclinable noun, and is joined with *in* and *ex*; as, *Consul Látinas férias in ante diem tertium Idus Scáptis edixit*. The consul appointed the Latin festival for the third day before the Ides of August. Liv. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octóbris*. Id. So, *Ad pridie Nónas Maias*. Cic.

(10.) The week of seven days (*hebdómas*), was not in use among the Romans under the republic, but was introduced under the emperors. The days of the week were then named from the planets; *dies Solis*, Sunday; *dies Lúnæ*, Monday; *dies Martis*, Tuesday; *dies Mercúrii*, Wednesday; *dies Jovis*, Thursday; *dies Vénérís*, Friday; *dies Sáturni*, Saturday.

(11.) The term *nundína* (from *nóvem*—*dies*) denotes the regular market day at Rome when the country people came into the city; but it is not used for the purpose of denoting the period of eight days intervening between two successive market days.

(12.) The year at Rome was designated by the names of the consuls for that year. Thus Virgil was born, *M. Licinio Crasso et Cn. Pompeio Magno consubibus*, i. e. in the year of the consulship of Crassus and Pompey. But in Roman authors events are often dated from the year in which Rome was founded, which, according to Varro, was in the 753d year before the birth of Christ. This period was designated as *anno urbis conditæ*, and by abbreviation, *a. u. c.*, or simply *u. c.*, and sometimes by *a.* alone, before the numerals.

Thus the birth of Virgil was *a. u. c. 684*. To reduce such dates to our reckoning, if the given number is less than 754, we subtract it from the latter number, and the difference is the required year before Christ. The birth of Virgil therefore is 754—684=70 before Christ.—But if the number of the Roman year exceeds 753, we deduct 753 from the given number, and the remainder is the year after Christ. For example, the emperor Augustus died *a. u. c. 767*, and the corresponding year of our era is 767—753=14.

## II. TABLES OF MONEY, WEIGHT, AND MEASURE.

### OF THE AS.

§ 327. The Romans used this word (*As*) to denote, I. The copper coin, whose value (in the time of Cicero) was about one cent and a half of our money. II. The unit of weight (*libra*), or of measure (*jūgérum*). III. Any unit or integer considered as divisible; as, of inheritances, interest, houses, etc.; whence *ex asse hères*, one who inherits the whole. The multiples of the *As* are, *Dípondius* (*duo pondo*; for the *As* originally weighed a pound), i. e. 2 Asses; *Sestertius* (*sesqui tertius*), i. e. 2½ Asses; *Tressis*, i. e. 3 Asses; *Quatrussis*, i. e. 4 Asses; and so on to *Centussis*, i. e. 100 Asses. The *As*, whatever unit it represented, was divided into twelve parts or *uncia*, and the different fractions received different names, as follows:

|              | Uncia. |                             | Uncia |
|--------------|--------|-----------------------------|-------|
| As.....      | 12     | Quincunx .....              | 5     |
| Deunx.....   | 11     | Triens.....                 | 4     |
| Dextans..... | 10     | Quádrans, or Tèruncius..... | 3     |
| Dodrans..... | 9      | Sextans.....                | 2     |
| Bes.....     | 8      | Uncia.....                  | 1     |
| Septunx..... | 7      |                             |       |
| Semis.....   | 6      | Sescuncia.....              | 1½    |

The *Uncia* was divided in the following manner:—

|                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 <i>Uncia</i> contained | 2 <i>Sēmunciae</i> .   |
| "                        | " 3 <i>Duellæ</i> .    |
| "                        | " 4 <i>Sticci</i> .    |
| "                        | " 6 <i>Sextūlae</i> .  |
| "                        | " 8 <i>Drachmæ</i> .   |
| "                        | " 24 <i>Scrīpula</i> . |
| "                        | " 48 <i>Oboli</i> .    |

#### ROMAN COINS.

These were the *Tēruncius*, *Sembella*, and *As* or *Libella*, of copper; the *Sestertius*, *Quinārius* (or *Victōriātus*), and *Dēnārius*, of silver; and the *Aureus*, of gold.

|                                                         |  | \$ | Cts. | M.  |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--|----|------|-----|
| The <i>Tēruncius</i> .....                              |  | 0  | 0    | 3.9 |
| 2 <i>Tēruncii</i> make 1 <i>Sembella</i> .....          |  | 0  | 0    | 7.8 |
| 2 <i>Sembellæ</i> " 1 <i>As</i> or <i>Libella</i> ..... |  | 0  | 1    | 5.6 |
| 2½ <i>Asses</i> * " 1 <i>Sestertius</i> .....           |  | 0  | 3    | 9   |
| 2 <i>Sestertii</i> " 1 <i>Quinārius</i> .....           |  | 0  | 7    | 8   |
| 2 <i>Quinārii</i> " 1 <i>Dēnārius</i> .....             |  | 0  | 15   | 6   |
| 25 <i>Dēnārii</i> " 1 <i>Aureus</i> .....               |  | 3  | 90   | 0   |

\* Sometimes also (in copper) the *triens*, *sextans*, *uncia*, *sextūla*, and *dūpondius*.

#### ROMAN COMPUTATION OF MONEY.

##### *Sestertii Nummi.*

|                                                              | \$ | Cts. | M. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----|------|----|
| <i>Sestertius</i> (or <i>nummus</i> ) .....                  | 0  | 3    | 9  |
| <i>Dēcem sestertii</i> .....                                 | 0  | 39   | 0  |
| <i>Centum sestertii</i> .....                                | 3  | 90   | 0  |
| <i>Mille sestertii</i> (equal to a <i>sestertium</i> ) ..... | 39 | 0    | 0  |

##### *Sestertia.*

|                                                                                    |         |   |   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---|---|
| <i>Sestertium</i> (equal to <i>mille sestertii</i> ).....                          | 39      | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Dēcem sestertia</i> .....                                                       | 390     | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Centum</i> , <i>centum sestertia</i> , or <i>centum millia sestertiūm</i> ..... | 3900    | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Dēcies sestertiūm</i> , or <i>dēcies centēna millia nummūm</i> .....            | 39000   | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Centies</i> , or <i>centies H. S.</i> .....                                     | 390000  | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Millies H. S.</i> .....                                                         | 3900000 | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Millies centies H. S.</i> .....                                                 | 4290000 | 0 | 0 |

N. B.—The marks denoting a *Sestertius nummus* are *IIS.*, *IIS.*, *HS.*, which are properly abbreviations for 2 1-2 *asses*. Observe, also, that when a line is placed over the numbers, *centēna millia* is understood, as in the case of the numeral adverbs; thus, *H. S.*

*MC.* is *millies centies HS.*; whereas *HS. MC.* is only 1100 *Sestertii*.

#### ROMAN CALCULATION OF INTEREST.

The Romans received interest on their loans monthly, their highest rate being one per cent. (*centesima*), a month, i. e. 12 per cent a year. As this was the highest rate, it was reckoned as the *as* or unit in reference to the lower rates, which were denominated, according to the usual division of the *as*, *sēmis*, *trientes*, *quādrantes*, etc., i. e. the half, third, fourth, etc., of the *as* or of 12 per cent. according to the following table:—

1. (a.) A *metaphor* is the transferring of a word from the object to which it properly belongs, and applying it to another, to which that object has some analogy; as, *Ridet ager*, The field smiles. Virg. *Ætas aurea*, The golden age. Ovid. *Naufragia fortuna*, The wreck of fortune. Cic. *Mentis oculi*, The eyes of the mind. Id. *Virtus animum gloriæ stimulis concitat*. The harshness of a metaphor is often softened by means of *quasi*, *tamquam*, *quidam*, or *ut ita dicam*; as, *In unâ philosophiâ quasi tabernaculum vite suas collocarunt*. Id. *Opimum quoddam et tamquam adpâtæ dictionis genus*. Id.

(b.) *Cataphrasis* or *abûsio* is a bold or harsh metaphor; as, *Vir grægis ipse cæper*. Virg. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*. Hor.

2. *Metonymy* is substituting the name of an object for that of another to which it has a certain relation; as the cause for the effect, the container for what is contained, the property for the substance, the sign for the thing signified, and their contraries; the parts of the body for certain affections; the possessor for the thing possessed; place and time for the persons or things which they comprise, etc.: as, *Mortales*, for *hominēs*. Virg. *Amor duri Martis*, i. e. *belli*. Id. *Fruges Cæterem appellamus, vinum autem Libærum*. Cic. *Cipio vigiliam meam tibi tradere*, i. e. *meam curam*. Id. *Pallida mors*. Hor. *Hausit patetram*, i. e. *vinum*. Virg. *Vina cõrõnant*, i. e. *pitetram*. Id. *Necte ternos colores*, i. e. *tria fila diversi coloris*. Id. *Cedant arma togæ*, i. e. *bellum paci*. Cic. *Sæcula mitescent*, i. e. *hominēs in sæculis*. Virg. *Vivat Pæcius vel Nestora totum*. Juv. *Doctrinâ Græcia nos supérabat*, for *Græci supérabant*. Cic. *Pagi centum Suevorum ad ripas Rhēni considérant*, for *pågbrum incolæ*. Cæs. *Tempora amicorum*, for *res adverse*. Cic. *Claudius lege prædiatõria vênalis pependit*, for *Claudii prædium*. Suet. *Vici ad Jânium médium sèdentes*, for *Jâni vicum*. Cic.

3. *Synecdõche* is putting a whole for a part, a genus for a species, a singular for a plural, and their contraries; also the material for the thing made of it; a definite for an indefinite number, etc.; as, *Fontem ferebant*. Id. *Tectum*, for *dõmus*. Id. *Armato milite complent*, for *armatis militibus*. Id. *Ferrum*, for *gladius*. Id. *Qui Cõrinthiis opëribus abundant*, i. e. *vâsis*. Cic. *Urben*, *urbem*, *mi Rufe*, *cõle*, i. e. *Rõmam*. Cic. *Centum puer artium*, i. e. *multarum*.

4. *Irony* is the intentional use of words which express a sense contrary to that which the writer or speaker means to convey; as, *Salve bone vir, curasti probe*. Ter. *Egrægiam vëro laudem, et spõlia ampla refertis, tiqûe, puerque tuus*. Virg.

5. *Hyperbõle* is the magnifying or diminishing of a thing beyond the truth; as, *Ipse arduus, altèque pulsat sidëra*. Virg. *Ocio Euro*. Id.

6. *Métalepsis* is the including of several tropes in one word; as, *Post aliquot aristas*. Virg. Here *aristas* is put for *messes*, and this for *annos*.

7. (a.) *Allegory* is a consistent series of metaphors, designed to illustrate one subject by another; as, *O nâvis, refèrent in mãre te nôvi fluctus*. Hor.

(b.) An obscure allegory or riddle is called an *enigma*; as, *Dic, quibus in terris tres pãtent celi spãtium non amplius ulnas*. Virg.

8. *Antinõmãsia* is using a proper noun for a common one, and the contrary; as, *Irus et est subito, qui modo Cræsus erat*, for *pauper* and *dives*. Ovid. So, by periphrasis, *põtör Rhõdânî*, for *Gallus*. Hor. *Eversor Carthãgini*, for *Scipio*. Quint. *Eloquentia princeps*, for *Cicero*. Id. *Tyðides*, for *Diõmëdes*. Virg.

9. *Litõtes* is a mode of expressing something by denying the contrary; as, *Non laudo*, I blame. Ter. *Non innocia verba*. Virg.

10. *Antiphrasis* is using a word in a sense opposite to its proper meaning; as, *Auri sacra fãmes*. Virg.

11. *Euphemism* is the use of softened language to express what is offensive or distressing; as, *Si quid accidisset Cæsari*, i. e. *si mortuus esset*. Vell.

12. *Antãnãclãsis* or *punning* is the use of the same word in different senses; as, *Quis nêget Ænëa natum de stirpe Nërõnem? Sustulit hic mãtrem, sustulit ille patrem*. Epigr. *Amãri jucundum est, si curêtur ne quid inëit amãri*. Cic.

13. *Anaphóra* or *epánaphóra* is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium póláti, nihil urbis vigília, nihil timor pópuli*, etc. Cic. *Te, dulcis conjux, te, sólo in lútre sécum, te, veniente die, te, decedente, cânebat*. Virg.

14. *Epistróphe* is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses; as, *Pænos pópulus Rómænis justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, libérâlitâte vicit*. Cic. In pure Latin this figure is called *conversio*.

15. *Symplóce* is the repetition of a word at the beginning, and of another at the end, of successive clauses, and hence it includes the anaphóra and the epistróphe; as, *Quis legem túti? Rullus: Quis májorem pópuli partem suffrágiis privávit? Rullus: Quis cómitiis præfuit? Idem Rullus*. Cic.

16. *Epánalepsis* is a repetition of the same word or sentence after intervening words or clauses. See Virg. *Geor.* II. 4—7.

17. *Andáplôsis* is the use of the same word at the end of one clause, and the beginning of another; as, *Séquitur pulcherrimus Astur, Astur èquo fídens*. Virg. A. 10, 180. *Nunc etiâ audes in hórûm conspectum vénire, vénire audes in hórûm conspectum?* Cic. This is sometimes called *épânastróphe*.

18. *Epánadiplosis* is the use of the same word both at the beginning and end of a sentence; as, *Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pécunia crescit*. Juv.

19. *Epánados* or *règressio* is the repetition of the same words in an inverted order; as, *Crudélis máter mágis, an puer impróbûs ille? Impróbûs ille puer, crudélis tu quôque, máter*. Virg.

20. *Epizeuxis* is a repetition of the same word for the sake of emphasis; as, *Excitâto, excitâto eum ab inférís*. Cic. *Ah Córýdon, Córýdon, quæ te dementia cêpit?* Virg. *Ibmus, ibimus, ulcunque præcêdes*. Hor.

21. *Climax* is a gradual amplification by means of a continued anadiplosis, each successive clause beginning with the conclusion of that which precedes it; as, *Quæ reliqua spes manet libertâtis, si illis et quod libet, licet; et quod licet, possunt; et quod possunt, audent; et quod audent, vobis molestum non est?* Cic. This, in pure Latin, is called *grádâtio*.

22. *Incrémentum* is an amplification without a strict climax; as, *Fúctus est, vinciri civem Rómânûm; scélus, verbêrâri; prôpe parricidium, necâri; quid dicam in crúcem tolli?* Cic.

23. *Polyptoton* is the repetition of a word in different cases, genders, numbers, tenses, etc.; as, *Jam clipeus clipeis, umbône répellitur umbo; ense minax ensis, pède pes, et cuspidè cuspis*. Stat.

24. *Paregménon* is the use of several words of the same origin, in one sentence; as, *Abesse non pôtest, quin ejusdem hómînis sit, qui imprôbos prôbet, prôbos imprôbare*. Cic. *Istam pugnam pugnâbo*. Plant.

25. *Pârônómasia* is the use of words which resemble each other in sound; as, *Amor et melle et felle est fêcundissimûs*. Plant. *Civem bônârum artium, bônârum partium*. Cic. *Amantes sunt âmentes*. Ter. This figure is sometimes called *agnómînâtio*.

26. *Hômasoprophêron* or *alliteration* is the use in the same sentence of several words beginning with the same letter; as, *O Tûe, tûte Tûti, ubi tantæ, tigranne, tûlisti*. Enn. *Neu patria vâldas in viscêra vertite vires*. Virg.

27. *Antithêsis* is the placing of different or opposite words or sentiments in contrast; as, *Hujus orâtiónis difficilîus est exitum quam principium invênire*. Cic. *Cæsar bènêficiis ac munificentiâ magnus habebâtur; integritâto vitæ Cato*. Sall.

28. *Oxymôron* unites words of contrary significations, thus producing a seeming contradiction; as, *Concordia discors*. Hor. *Quum tacent, clâmant*. Cic.

29. *Sýnônymia* is the use of different words or expressions having the same import; as, *Non fêram, non pâtiar, non sinam*. Cic. *Prômîtto, rêcipro, sponleo*. Id.

80. *Pārābōla* or *Simile* is the comparison of one thing with another; as, *Rē-pente te, tamquam serpens e lātibus, oculis eminentibus, inflāto collo, tūmidis cervicibus, intūliasti.* Cic.

81. *Erōtēsis* is an earnest question, and often implies a strong affirmation of the contrary; as, *Crēdātis āvēctos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quā me aequora possunt accipere?* Id.

82. *Epānorthōsis* or *Correctio* is the recalling of a word, in order to place a stronger or more significant one in its stead; as, *Filiū unicū adolescentiū habeo: ah! quid dixi? me habere? Imo habui.* Ter.

83. *Apōsiōpēsis*, *Rēttentia*, or *Interruptio*, is leaving a sentence unfinished in consequence of some emotion of the mind; as, *Quos ego—sed mōtos vrestat compōnere fluctus.* Virg.

84. *Prōsōpōpia* or *personification* represents inanimate things as acting or speaking, and persons dead or absent as alive and present; as, *Quas (patria) iēcum, Cātina, sic agit.* Cic. *Virtus sūmit aut pōnit sēcures.* Hor.

85. *Apostrophē* is a turning off from the regular course of the subject, to address some person or thing; as, *Vi pōtitur; quid non mortālia pectōra cōgis, auri sacra fāmes!* Virg.

86. *Pārāleipsis* is a pretended omission of something, in order to render it more observed. See Cic. Cat. 1, 6, 14.

87. *Epiphōnēma* or *Acclimatio* is an exclamation or grave reflection on something said before; as, *Tanta mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem.* Virg.

88. *Epiphōnēsis* or *Exclāmatio* shows some violent emotion of the mind; as, *O tempōra! O mōres!*

89. *Apōria*, *Diāpōrēsis*, or *Dūbtitatio*, expresses a doubt in regard to what is to be said or done; as, *Quos accēdam, aut quos appellem?* Sall.

40. *Prōlepsis* is the anticipation of an objection before it is made, or of an event before it occurs; as, *Vērū anceps pugna fūerat fortūna. Fuisset: Quem mētui mōritūra?* Virg.

§ 325. To the figures of rhetoric may be subjoined the following terms, used to designate defects or blemishes in style:—

1. *Barbarism* is either the use of a foreign word, or a violation of the rules of orthography, etymology, or prosody; as, *rigōrōsus*, for *rigidus* or *sēvērus*; *domminus*, for *dōminus*; *davi*, for *dēdi*.

2. *Solecism* is a violation of the rules of syntax; as, *Vēnus pulcher; vos invādēmus.*

3. *Neoterism* is the use of words or phrases introduced by authors living subsequently to the best ages of Latinity; as, *murdrum*, a murder; *constābūlaris*, a constable.

4. *Tautology* is a repetition of the same meaning in different words; as, *Jam vos āciem, et prēlia, et hostem poscitis.* Sil.

5. *Amphibōlia* is the use of equivocal words or constructions; as, *Gallus*, a Gaul, or a cock. *Ad te, Edicta*, Rōmānos vīcēre posse. Quint.

6. *Idiotism* is a construction peculiar to one or more languages: thus, the ablative after comparatives is a Latinism. When a peculiarity of one language is imitated in another, this is also called *idiotism*. Thus, *Mitte mihi verbum*, instead of *Fac me certiorē*, is an Anglicism.



## ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING.

### I. OF TIME.

#### 1. *The Roman Day.*

§ 326. (1.) With the Romans, as with us, the day was either *civil* or *natural*. Their civil day, like ours, extended from midnight to midnight. The natural day continued from sunrise to sunset, as, on the other hand, the night extended from sunset to sunrise. The natural day and night were each divided into twelve equal parts or *hours*, which were consequently of different length, according to the varying length of the days and nights in the successive seasons of the year. It was only at the equinox that the diurnal and nocturnal hours of the Romans were equal to each other, as each was then equal to the twenty-fourth part of the civil day.

(2.) In the Roman camp the night was further divided into four watches (*vigiliæ*), consisting each of three Roman hours, the second and fourth watches ending respectively at midnight and at sunrise.

#### 2. *The Roman Month and Year.*

(1.) The calendar of the Romans, as rectified by Julius Cæsar, agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each, according to the following table:—

|                      |                    |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Jānuārius . 31 days. | Maius . . 31 days. | September 30 days. |
| Februārius 28 or 29. | Jūnius . 30 “      | Octōber . 31 “     |
| Martius . . 31 days. | Quintilis 31 “     | Nōvember 30 “      |
| Aprilis . . . 30 “   | Sextilis . 31 “    | Dēcember 31 “      |

In early times the Roman year began with March, and the names *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September*, etc., indicated the distance of those months from the commencement of the year. *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* were afterwards called *Jūlius* and *Augustus* in honor of the first two emperors. The Romans, instead of reckoning in an uninterrupted series from the first to the last day of a month, had in each month three points or periods from which their days were counted—the *Calends*, the *Nones*, and the *Ides*. The *Calends* (*Cālendæ*), were always the *first* day of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnæ*), were the *fifth*, and the *Ides* (*Idus*), the *thirteenth*; except in March, May, July, and October, when the *Nones* occurred on the *seventh* day, and the *Ides* on the *fifteenth*.

(2.) They always counted forward, from the day whose date was to be determined, to the next *Calends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*, and designated the day by its distance before such point. After the first day of the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the *Nones*; after the *Nones*, so many days before the *Ides*; and after the *Ides*, so many before the *Calends*, of the next month.

Thus, the second of January was denoted by *quarto Nōnas Jānuārias*, or *Jānuārii*, scil. *die ante*; the third, *tertio Nōnas*; the fourth, *pridie Nōnas*; and the fifth, *Nōnis*. The sixth was denoted by *octavo Idus*; the seventh,

*septimo Idus*; and so on to the thirteenth, on which the Ides fell. The fourteenth was denoted by *undevigésimo Calendas Februarias*, or *Februarii*; and so on to the end of the month.

(3.) The day preceding the Calends, Nones, and Ides, was termed *pridie Calendas*, etc., scil. *ante*: in designating the other days, both the day of the Calends, etc., and that whose date was to be determined, were reckoned; hence the second day before the Calends, etc., was called *tertio*, the third *quarto*, etc.

(4.) To reduce the Roman calendar to our own, therefore, when the day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, it is necessary to take one from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Nones or the Ides, and to subtract the remainder from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fell in the given month.

Thus, to determine the day equivalent to *IV. Nonas Januarias*, we take 1 from 4, and subtract the remainder, 3, from 5, the day on which the Nones of January fell (i. e.  $4-1=3$ , and  $5-3=2$ ): this gives 2, or the second of January, for the day in question. So *VI. Idus Aprilis*: the Ides of April falling upon the 13th, we take ( $6-1$ , i. e.) 5 from 13, which leaves 8 (i. e.  $6-1=5$ , and  $13-5=8$ ): the expression, therefore, denotes the 8th of April.

(a.) In reckoning the days before the Calends, as they are not the last day of the current month, but the first of the following, it is necessary to subtract two from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Calends of the following month, and to take the remainder from the number of days in the month.

Thus, *XV. Cal. Quintiles* is  $15-2=13$ , and  $30-13=17$ , i. e. the Roman date *XV. Cal. Quint.* is equivalent to the 17th of June.

(b.) To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the preceding method is to be reversed. Thus when the given day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, (unless it be the day before the Nones or the Ides), we are to *add* one to the number denoting the day of the month, according to our reckoning, on which the Nones or Ides fell. But if the day is after the Ides, (unless it be the last day of the month), we must add *two* to the number of days in the month, and then subtract the number denoting the day of the month as expressed in our reckoning. The remainder will be the day before the Nones, Ides or Calends.

Thus to find the Roman date corresponding to the third of April, we have  $5+1-3=3$ ; the required date, therefore, is *III. Non. Apr.*—To find the proper Roman expression for our tenth of December we have  $13+1-10=4$ ; the date, therefore, is *IV. Id. Dec.*—The Roman expression for the 22d of August, in pursuance of the above rule, is found thus,  $31+2-22=11$ , and the date is *XI. Cal. Sept.*

(5.) In leap year, both the 24th and 25th of February were called the sixth before the Calends of March. The 24th was called *dies bissextus*, and the year itself *annus bissextus*, bissextile or leap year.

(a.) The day after the Calends, etc., was sometimes called *postridie calendas*, etc.

(b.) The names of the months are properly adjectives, though often used as nouns, *mensis* being understood.

(6.) The correspondence of our calendar with that of the Romans is exhibited in the following

TABLE.

| <i>Days of<br/>our months.</i> | MAR. MAI.<br>JUL. OCT. | JAN. AUG.<br>DEC. | APR. JUN.<br>SEPT. NOV. | FEBR.        |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|--------------|
| 1                              | Calendæ.               | Calendæ.          | Calendæ.                | Calendæ.     |
| 2                              | VI. Nonas.             | IV. Nonas.        | IV. Nonas.              | IV. Nonas.   |
| 3                              | V. "                   | III. "            | III. "                  | III. "       |
| 4                              | IV. "                  | Pridie "          | Pridie "                | Pridie "     |
| 5                              | III. "                 | Nonæ.             | Nonæ.                   | Nonæ.        |
| 6                              | Pridie Non.            | VIII. Idus.       | VIII. Idus.             | VIII. Idus.  |
| 7                              | Nonæ.                  | VII. "            | VII. "                  | VII. "       |
| 8                              | VIII. Idus.            | VI. "             | VI. "                   | VI. "        |
| 9                              | VII. "                 | V. "              | V. "                    | V. "         |
| 10                             | VI. "                  | IV. "             | IV. "                   | IV. "        |
| 11                             | V. "                   | III. "            | III. "                  | III. "       |
| 12                             | IV. "                  | Pridie "          | Pridie "                | Pridie "     |
| 13                             | III. "                 | Idus.             | Idus.                   | Idus.        |
| 14                             | Pridie Id.             | XIX. Cal.         | XVIII. Cal.             | XVI. Cal.    |
| 15                             | Idus.                  | XVIII. "          | XVII. "                 | XV. "        |
| 16                             | XVII. Cal.             | XVII. "           | XVI. "                  | XIV. "       |
| 17                             | XVI. "                 | XVI. "            | XV. "                   | XIII. "      |
| 18                             | XV. "                  | XV. "             | XIV. "                  | XII. "       |
| 19                             | XIV. "                 | XIV. "            | XIII. "                 | XI. "        |
| 20                             | XIII. "                | XIII. "           | XII. "                  | X. "         |
| 21                             | XII. "                 | XII. "            | XI. "                   | IX. "        |
| 22                             | XI. "                  | XI. "             | X. "                    | VIII. "      |
| 23                             | X. "                   | X. "              | IX. "                   | VII. "       |
| 24                             | IX. "                  | IX. "             | VIII. "                 | VI. "        |
| 25                             | VIII. "                | VIII. "           | VII. "                  | V. "         |
| 26                             | VII. "                 | VII. "            | VI. "                   | IV. "        |
| 27                             | VI. "                  | VI. "             | V. "                    | III. "       |
| 28                             | V. "                   | V. "              | IV. "                   | Pridie " Mar |
| 29                             | IV. "                  | IV. "             | III. "                  |              |
| 30                             | III. "                 | III. "            | Pridie Cal.             |              |
| 31                             | Pridie Cal.            | Pridie Cal.       |                         |              |

(7.) In leap-year the last seven days of February were reckoned thus:—

|                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 23. VII. <i>Calendas Martias.</i> | 27. IV. <i>Cal. Mart.</i>    |
| 24. <i>bisexto Cal. Mart.</i>     | 28. III. "                   |
| 25. VI. <i>Cal. Mart.</i>         | 29. <i>pridie Cal. Mart.</i> |
| 26. V. " "                        |                              |

(a.) Hence in reducing a date of February in leap-year to the Roman date, for the first 23 days we proceed according to the preceding rule in 4, (b.), as if the month had only 28 days. The 24th is marked as *bisexto Cal. Mart.*, and to obtain the proper expression for the remaining five days we regard the month as having 29 days. Thus the 27th of February in leap-year is  $29+2-27=4$ , and the proper Roman expression is *IV. Cal. Mart.*

(b.) On the other hand, to reduce a Roman date of February in leap-year to our date we reverse the above process, and during the Nones and Ides and until the *VII. Calendas Martias* we reckon the month to have only 28 days:—*bisexto Cal. Mart.* is set down as the 24th, and for the remaining days designated as *VI. V. IV. III.* and *pridie Cal. Mart.* we reckon the month to have 29 days. Thus *III. Cal. Mart.* is  $3-2=1$ , and  $29-1=28$ , and the given day is equivalent to the 28th of February.

(8.) The Latins not only said *tertio*, *pridie*, etc., *Calendas*, etc., but also *ante diem tertium*, etc., *Calendas*, etc.; and the latter form in Cicero and Livy is far more common than the former, and is usually written thus, *a. d. III. Cal.*, etc.

(9.) The expression *ante diem* was used as an indeclinable noun, and is joined with *in* and *ex*; as, *Consul Látinas férias in ante diem tertium Idus Sextilis edixit*. The consul appointed the Latin festival for the third day before the Ides of August. Liv. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octobres*. Id. So, *Ad pridie Nónas Maias*. Cic.

(10.) The week of seven days (*hebdomas*), was not in use among the Romans under the republic, but was introduced under the emperors. The days of the week were then named from the planets; *dies Solis*, Sunday; *dies Lúnæ*, Monday; *dies Martis*, Tuesday; *dies Mercúrii*, Wednesday; *dies Jovis*, Thursday; *dies Vénérís*, Friday; *dies Sâturni*, Saturday.

(11.) The term *nundina* (from *nóvem—dies*) denotes the regular market day at Rome when the country people came into the city; but it is not used for the purpose of denoting the period of eight days intervening between two successive market days.

(12.) The year at Rome was designated by the names of the consuls for that year. Thus Virgil was born, *M. Licinio Crasso et Cn. Pompeio Magno consulibus*, i. e. in the year of the consulship of Crassus and Pompey. But in Roman authors events are often dated from the year in which Rome was founded, which, according to Varro, was in the 753d year before the birth of Christ. This period was designated as *anno urbis conditæ*, and by abbreviation, *a. u. c.*, or simply *u. c.*, and sometimes by *a.* alone, before the numerals.

Thus the birth of Virgil was *a. u. c. 684*. To reduce such dates to our reckoning, if the given number is less than 754, we subtract it from the latter number, and the difference is the required year before Christ. The birth of Virgil therefore is  $754 - 684 = 70$  before Christ.—But if the number of the Roman year exceeds 753, we deduct 753 from the given number, and the remainder is the year after Christ. For example, the emperor Augustus died *a. u. c. 767*, and the corresponding year of our era is  $767 - 753 = 14$ .

## II. TABLES OF MONEY, WEIGHT, AND MEASURE.

### OF THE AS.

§ 327. The Romans used this word (*As*) to denote, I. The copper coin, whose value (in the time of Cicero) was about one cent and a half of our money. II. The unit of weight (*libra*), or of measure (*jûgërum*). III. Any unit or integer considered as divisible; as, of inheritances, interest, houses, etc.; whence *ex asse hères*, one who inherits the whole. The multiples of the *As* are, *Dîpondius* (*duo pondo*; for the *As* originally weighed a pound), i. e. 2 Asses; *Sestertius* (*sesqui tertius*), i. e.  $2\frac{1}{2}$  Asses; *Tressis*, i. e. 3 Asses; *Quatrussis*, i. e. 4 Asses; and so on to *Centussis*, i. e. 100 Asses. The *As*, whatever unit it represented, was divided into twelve parts or *uncia*, and the different fractions received different names, as follows:

|              | Uncia. |                             | Uncia          |
|--------------|--------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| As.....      | 12     | Quincunx .....              | 5              |
| Deunx.....   | 11     | Triens.....                 | 4              |
| Dextans..... | 10     | Quâdrans, or Têruncius..... | 3              |
| Dodrans..... | 9      | Sextans.....                | 2              |
| Bes.....     | 8      | Uncia.....                  | 1              |
| Septunx..... | 7      |                             |                |
| Semis.....   | 6      | Sescuncia.....              | $1\frac{1}{2}$ |

The *Uncia* was divided in the following manner:—

|                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1 <i>Uncia</i> contained 2 <i>Sēmunciae</i> . |
| “ “ 8 <i>Duellæ</i> .                         |
| “ “ 4 <i>Stellici</i> .                       |
| “ “ 6 <i>Sextūlae</i> .                       |
| “ “ 8 <i>Drachmæ</i> .                        |
| “ “ 24 <i>Scrūpula</i> .                      |
| “ “ 48 <i>Oboli</i> .                         |

#### ROMAN COINS.

These were the *Tēruncius*, *Sembella*, and *As* or *Libella*, of copper; the *Sestertius*, *Quinārius* (or *Victōriātus*), and *Dēnārius*, of silver; and the *Aureus*, of gold.

|                                                         | \$ | Cts. | M.  |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----|------|-----|
| The <i>Tēruncius</i> .....                              | 0  | 0    | 3.9 |
| 2 <i>Tēruncii</i> make 1 <i>Sembella</i> .....          | 0  | 0    | 7.8 |
| 2 <i>Sembellæ</i> “ 1 <i>As</i> or <i>Libella</i> ..... | 0  | 1    | 5.6 |
| 2½ <i>Asses</i> * “ 1 <i>Sestertius</i> .....           | 0  | 3    | 9   |
| 2 <i>Sestertii</i> “ 1 <i>Quinārius</i> .....           | 0  | 7    | 8   |
| 2 <i>Quinārii</i> “ 1 <i>Dēnārius</i> .....             | 0  | 15   | 6   |
| 25 <i>Dēnārii</i> “ 1 <i>Aureus</i> .....               | 3  | 90   | 0   |

\* Sometimes also (in copper) the *triens*, *sextans*, *uncia*, *sextūla*, and *dūpondius*.

#### ROMAN COMPUTATION OF MONEY.

##### *Sestertii Nummi.*

|                                                             | \$ | Cts. | M. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----|------|----|
| <i>Sestertius</i> (or <i>nummus</i> ).....                  | 0  | 3    | 9  |
| <i>Dēcem sestertii</i> .....                                | 0  | 39   | 0  |
| <i>Centum sestertii</i> .....                               | 3  | 90   | 0  |
| <i>Mille sestertii</i> (equal to a <i>sestertium</i> )..... | 39 | 0    | 0  |

##### *Sestertia.*

|                                                                            |         |   |   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---|---|
| <i>Sestertium</i> (equal to <i>mille sestertii</i> ).....                  | 39      | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Dēcem sestertia</i> .....                                               | 390     | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Centum, centum sestertia</i> , or <i>centum millia sestertiūm</i> ..... | 3900    | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Dēcies sestertiūm</i> , or <i>dēcies centēna millia nummūm</i> .....    | 39000   | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Centies</i> , or <i>centies H. S.</i> .....                             | 390000  | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Millies H. S.</i> .....                                                 | 3900000 | 0 | 0 |
| <i>Millies centies H. S.</i> .....                                         | 4290000 | 0 | 0 |

N. B.—The marks denoting a *Sestertius nummus* are *IIS.*, *LLS.*, *HS.*, which are properly abbreviations for 2 1-2 *asses*. Observe, also, that when a line is placed over the numbers, *centēna millia* is understood, as in the case of the numeral adverbs; thus, *H. S.* *MC.* is *millies centies HS.*; whereas *HS. MC.* is only 1100 *Sestertii*.

#### ROMAN CALCULATION OF INTEREST.

The Romans received interest on their loans monthly, their highest rate being one per cent. (*centesima*), a month, i. e. 12 per cent a year. As this was the highest rate, it was reckoned as the *as* or unit in reference to the lower rates, which were denominated, according to the usual division of the *as*, *sēmises*, *trientes*, *quādrantes*, etc., i. e. the half, third, fourth, etc., of the *as* or of 12 per cent. according to the following table:—

|                               | Per cent. a year. |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| Asses ūsūræ or centēsīmæ..... | 12                |
| Sēmīsses ūsūræ.....           | 6                 |
| Trientes ūsūræ.....           | 4                 |
| Quadrantes ūsūræ.....         | 3                 |
| Sextantes ūsūræ.....          | 2                 |
| Unciæ ūsūræ.....              | 1                 |
| Quincunces ūsūræ.....         | 5                 |
| Septunces ūsūræ.....          | 7                 |
| Besses ūsūræ.....             | 8                 |
| Dodrantes ūsūræ.....          | 9                 |
| Dextantes ūsūræ.....          | 10                |
| Deunces ūsūræ.....            | 11                |

## ROMAN WEIGHTS.

|                               |  | Oz. | Dwts. | Gr.    |
|-------------------------------|--|-----|-------|--------|
| Siliqua.....                  |  | 0   | 0     | 3.086  |
| 3 Siliquæ make 1 Obolus.....  |  | 0   | 0     | 9.107  |
| 2 Oboli “ 1 Scrupulum....     |  | 0   | 0     | 18.214 |
| 3 Scrupula “ 1 Drachma.....   |  | 0   | 2     | 6.643  |
| 1½ Drachmæ “ 1 Sextila.....   |  | 0   | 8     | 0.867  |
| 1½ Sextila “ 1 Sicilicus..... |  | 0   | 4     | 18.286 |
| 1½ Sicilicus “ 1 Duella.....  |  | 0   | 6     | 1.714  |
| 8 Duellæ “ 1 Unciæ.....       |  | 0   | 18    | 5.143  |
| 12 Unciæ “ 1 Libra* (As)...   |  | 10  | 18    | 13.714 |

\*The Libra was also divided, according to the fractions of the As, into Deunx, etc.

## ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS DRY.

| English Corn Measure. |                |                |       |      |        |          |
|-----------------------|----------------|----------------|-------|------|--------|----------|
|                       |                |                | Peck. | Gal. | Pint.  | Sol. in. |
|                       | Ligula.....    |                | 0     | 0    | 0 1-48 | 0.01     |
| 4                     | Ligulae make 1 | Cyathus.....   | 0     | 0    | 0 1-12 | 0.04     |
| 1½                    | Cyathus “ 1    | Acetabulum...  | 0     | 0    | 0 1-8  | 0.06     |
| 4                     | Acetabula “ 1  | Hemina.....    | 0     | 0    | 0 1-2  | 0.24     |
| 2                     | Heminae “ 1    | Sextarius..... | 0     | 0    | 1      | 0.48     |
| 16                    | Sextarii “ 1   | Modius.....    | 1     | 0    | 0      | 7.68     |

## ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS LIQUID.

| English Wine Measure.               |  |        |        |          |
|-------------------------------------|--|--------|--------|----------|
|                                     |  | Galls. | Pints. | Sol. in. |
| Ligula.....                         |  | 0      | 0 1-48 | 0.117    |
| 4 Ligulæ make 1 Cyathus.....        |  | 0      | 0 1-12 | 0.469    |
| 1½ Cyathus “ 1 Acetabulum.....      |  | 0      | 0 1-8  | 0.704    |
| 2 Acetabula “ 1 Quartarius.....     |  | 0      | 0 1-4  | 1.409    |
| 2 Quartarii “ 1 Hēmina.....         |  | 0      | 0 1-2  | 2.876    |
| 2 Hēminæ “ 1 Sextarius*.....        |  | 0      | 1      | 5.696    |
| 6 Sextarii “ 1 Congius.....         |  | 0      | 7      | 4.942    |
| 4 Congii “ 1 Urna.....              |  | 3      | 4 1-2  | 5.33     |
| 2 Urnæ “ 1 Amphōra (or Quadrantal). |  | 7      | 1      | 10.66    |
| 20 Amphōræ “ 1 Culeus.....          |  | 143    | 8      | 11.096   |

\*The *Sextarius* was also divided into twelve equal parts, called *cyathī*, and therefore the *cālces* were denominated *sextantes*, *quadrantes*, *trientes*, according to the number of *cyathī* which they contained.

N. B.—*Cūdus*, *congīarius*, and *dōlium*, are the names of certain vessels, not measures, of capacity.

ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH.

|       |                             |     | English<br>paces. | Feet. | Inch. Dec. |
|-------|-----------------------------|-----|-------------------|-------|------------|
|       | Digitus transversus .....   |     | 0                 | 0     | 0.725 1-4  |
| 1 1-5 | Digitus make 1 Uncia .....  |     | 0                 | 0     | 0.967      |
| 8     | Unciæ " 1 Palmus minor....  |     | 0                 | 0     | 2.901      |
| 4     | Palmi minores " 1 Pes ..... |     | 0                 | 0     | 11.604     |
| 1 1-4 | Pes " 1 Palmipes .....      |     | 0                 | 1     | 2.506      |
| 1 1-6 | Palmipes " 1 Cūbitus .....  |     | 0                 | 1     | 5.406      |
| 1 2-3 | Cūbitus " 1 Grādus .....    |     | 0                 | 2     | 5.01       |
| 2     | Grādus " 1 Passus .....     |     | 0                 | 4     | 10.02      |
| 125   | Passus " 1 Stādium .....    | 120 | 4                 | 4     | 4.5        |
| 8     | Stādia " 1 Milliārium ..... | 967 | 0                 | 0     | 0          |

ROMAN SQUARE MEASURES.

|                    | Roman<br>sq. feet. | English<br>rods. | Sq. pls. | Sq. feet. |
|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|
| Jūgērūm (As) ..... | 28,800             | 2                | 18       | 250.05    |
| Deunx. ....        | 26,400             | 2                | 10       | 183.85    |
| Dextans. ....      | 24,000             | 2                | 02       | 117.64    |
| Dodrans. ....      | 21,600             | 1                | 84       | 51.42     |
| Bes. ....          | 19,200             | 1                | 25       | 257.46    |
| Septunx. ....      | 16,800             | 1                | 17       | 191.25    |
| Sāmis. ....        | 14,400             | 1                | 09       | 125.03    |
| Quincunx. ....     | 12,000             | 1                | 01       | 58.82     |
| Triens. ....       | 9,600              | 0                | 82       | 264.85    |
| Quādrans. ....     | 7,200              | 0                | 24       | 198.64    |
| Sextans. ....      | 4,800              | 0                | 16       | 132.43    |
| Uncia. ....        | 2,400              | 0                | 08       | 66.21     |

REMARK 1. The Romans reckoned their copper money by *asses*, their silver money by *sestertii*, and their gold money by *aurei* and sometimes by Attic *talents*.

REM. 2. The *as*, as the unit of money, was originally a pound of copper, but its weight was gradually diminished, until, in the later days of the republic, it amounted to only 1-24th of a pound.

REM. 3. (a.) The *dēnārius* was a silver coin, originally equal in value to ten *asses*, whence its name; but, after the weight of the *as* was reduced, the *dēnārius* was equal to eighteen *asses*.

(b.) The *sestertius*, or *sesterce*, was one fourth of the *dēnārius*, or two *asses* and a half (*semistertius*). The *sestertius* was called emphatically *nummus*, as in it all large sums were reckoned after the coining of silver money.

(c.) The *aureus* (a gold coin), in the time of the emperors, was equal to 25 *dēnārii*, or 100 *sesterces*.

REM. 4. In reckoning money, the Romans called any sum under 2000 *sesterces* so many *sestertii*; as, *decem sestertii*, ten *sesterces*; *centum sestertii*, a hundred *sesterces*.

REM. 5. Sums from 2000 *sesterces* (inclusive) to 1,000,000, they denoted either by *mille, millia*, with *sestertiūm* (gen. plur.), or by the plural of the neuter noun *sestertium*, which itself signified a *thousand sesterces*. Thus they said *quadraginta millia sestertiūm*, or *quadraginta sestertia*, to denote 40,000 *sesterces*. With the genitive *sestertiūm, millia* was sometimes omitted; as, *sestertiūm centum*, scil. *millia*, 100,000 *sesterces*.

REM. 6. To denote a million, or more, they used a combination; thus, *décies centēna millia sestertiūm*, 1,000,000 *sesterces*. The words *centēna millia*, however, were generally omitted; thus, *décies sestertiūm*, and sometimes merely *décies*. See § 118, 5. So, *centies*, 10 millions; *millies*, 100 millions.

REX. 7. Some suppose that *sestertium*, when thus joined with the numeral adverbs, is always the neuter noun in the nominative or accusative singular. The genitive and ablative of that noun are thus used; as, *Decies sestertii dote*. With a dowry of 1,000,000 sesterces. Tac. *Quinquagies sestertio*, 5,000,000 sesterces. Id. But this usage does not occur in Cicero.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

§ 328. The following are the most common abbreviations of Latin words:—

|                                      |                                 |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A., <i>Aulus</i> .                   | M. T. C., <i>Marcus Tullius</i> | Q., or Qu., <i>Quintus</i> .    |
| C., <i>Caius</i> , or <i>Gaius</i> . | Cicero.                         | Ser., <i>Servius</i> .          |
| Cn., <i>Cnæus</i> .                  | M., <i>Manius</i> .             | S., or Sex., <i>Sextus</i> .    |
| D., <i>Decimus</i> .                 | Mam., <i>Mamercus</i> .         | Sp., <i>Spurius</i> .           |
| L., <i>Lucius</i> .                  | N., <i>Numerius</i> .           | T., <i>Titus</i> .              |
| M., <i>Marcus</i> .                  | P., <i>Publius</i> .            | Ti., or Tib., <i>Tiberius</i> . |

---

|                                                              |                                                       |                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| A. d., <i>ante diem</i> .                                    | F., <i>Filius</i> ; as, M. F., <i>Marcus filius</i> . | Pont. Max., <i>pontifex maximus</i> .            |
| A. U. C., <i>anno urbis conditæ</i> .                        | Ictus, <i>iurisconsultus</i> .                        | Pr., <i>prætor</i> .                             |
| Cal., or Kal., <i>Calendas</i> .                             | Id., <i>Idus</i> .                                    | Proc., <i>præconsul</i> .                        |
| Cos., <i>Consul</i> .                                        | Imp., <i>impérator</i> .                              | Resp., <i>respublica</i> .                       |
| Coss., <i>Consules</i> .                                     | J. O. M., <i>Jovi, optimo maximo</i> .                | S., <i>sacrum, or senatus</i> .                  |
| D., <i>Divus</i> .                                           | N., <i>nepos</i> .                                    | S. D. P., <i>sacrum dicit plurimam</i> .         |
| D. D., <i>dono dedit</i> .                                   | Non., <i>Nones</i> .                                  | S. P. Q. R., <i>Senatus populusque Romanus</i> . |
| D. D. D., <i>dat, dicat, dedat, or dono dicat, dedicat</i> . | P. C., <i>patres conscripti</i> .                     | S. C., <i>senatus consultum</i> .                |
| Des., <i>designatus</i> .                                    | Pl., <i>plæbis</i> .                                  | Tr., <i>tribunus</i> .                           |
| D. M., <i>dis manibus</i> .                                  | Pop., <i>populus</i> .                                |                                                  |
| Eq. Rom., <i>eques Romanus</i> .                             | P. R., <i>populus Romanus</i> .                       |                                                  |

To these may be added terms of reference; as, *c.*, *caput*, chapter; *cf.*, *confer*, compare; *l. c.*, *loco citato*; *l. l.*, *loco laudato*, in the place quoted; *v.*, *versus*, verse.

## DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

§ 329. 1. Of the Roman literature for the first five centuries after the foundation of the city, but few vestiges remain. The writers of the succeeding centuries have been arranged in four ages, in reference to the purity of the language in the period in which they flourished. These are called the *golden, silver, brazen, and iron ages*.

2. The golden age is reckoned from the time of Livius Andronicus, about A. U. C. 514, to the death of Augustus, A. U. C. 767, or A. D. 14, a period of a little more than 250 years. The writers of the early part of this age are valued rather on account of their antiquity, and in connection with the history of the language, than as models of style. It was not till the age of Cicero, that Roman literature reached its highest elevation. The era comprehending the generation immediately preceding, and that immediately succeeding, that of Cicero, as well as his own, is the period in which the most distinguished writers of Rome flourished; and their works are the standard of purity in the Latin language.



3. The silver age extended from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D. 118, a period of 104 years. The writers of this age were inferior to those who had preceded them; yet several of them are worthy of commendation.

4. The brazen age comprised the interval from the death of Trajan to the time when Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D. 410. From the latter epoch commenced the iron age, during which the Latin language was much adulterated with foreign words, and its style and spirit essentially injured.

5. The body of Latin writings has been otherwise arranged by Dr. Freund, so as to be comprised in three main periods,—the *Ante-classical*, *Classical*, and *Post-classical*. The ante-classical extends from the oldest fragments of the language to Lucretius and Varro; the classical from Cicero and Cæsar to Tacitus, Suetonius, and the younger Pliny inclusive; the post-classical from that time to the fifth century of our era. The classical Latinity is subdivided into (a.) *Ciceronian*, (b.) *Augustan*, (c.) *post-Augustan*, and to the language of the fourth and fifth centuries he has given the title of *late Latin*.

## LATIN WRITERS IN THE DIFFERENT AGES.

(From the Lexicon of Facciolatus.)

### WRITERS OF THE GOLDEN AGE.

|                    |                        |                         |
|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| Livius Andronicus. | L. Cornelius Sisenna.  | Q. Novius.              |
| Lævius.            | P. Nigidius Figulus.   | C. Q. Atta.             |
| C. Nævius.         | C. Decius Laberius.    | L. Cassius Hemina.      |
| Statius Cæcilius.  | M. Verrius Flaccus.    | Fenestella.             |
| Q. Ennius.         | Varro Attacinus.       | Q. Claud. Quadrigarius. |
| M. Pacuvius.       | Titinius.              | Cælius Antipater.       |
| L. Accius.         | L. Pomponius.          | Fabius Pictor.          |
| C. Lucilius.       | C. Sempronius Asellio. | Cn. Gellius.            |
| Sex. Turpilius.    | Cn. Matius.            | L. Piso, and others.    |
| L. Afranius.       |                        |                         |

\* Of the works of the preceding writers, only a few fragments remain.

|                       |                           |                        |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| M. Porcius Cato.      | Sex. Aurelius Propertius. | P. Ovidius Naso.       |
| M. Accius Plantus.    | C. Sallustius Crispus.    | Q. Horatius Flaccus.   |
| M. Terentius Afer.    | M. Terentius Varro.       | C. Peto Albinovanus.   |
| T. Lucretius Carus.   | Albius Tibullus.          | Gratius Faliscus.      |
| C. Valerius Catullus. | P. Virgilius Maro.        | Phædrus.               |
| P. Syrus.             | T. Livius.                | C. Cornificius.        |
| C. Julius Cæsar.      | M. Manilius.              | A. Hurtius, or Oppius. |
| C. Cornelius Nepos.   | M. Vitruvius.             | P. Cornelius Severus.  |
| M. Tullius Cicero.    |                           |                        |

To these may be added the following names of lawyers, whose opinions are found in the digests:—

|                    |                     |                   |
|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| Q. Mutius Scævola. | M. Antistius Labeo. | Masurius Sabinus. |
| Alfenus Varus.     |                     |                   |

Of the writers of the golden age, the most distinguished are Terence, Catullus, Cæsar, Nepos, Cicero, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, T. Livy, and Sallust.

## WRITERS OF THE SILVER AGE.

|                         |                        |                         |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| A. Cornelius Celsus.    | M. Annæus Lucānus.     | M. Fabius Quintiliānus. |
| P. Velleius Patercūlus. | T. Petronius Arbitr.   | Sex. Julius Frontinus.  |
| L. Junius Moderātus     | C. Plinius Secundus.   | C. Cornelius Tacitus.   |
| Columella.              | C. Silius Italicus.    | C. Plinius Cæcilius Se- |
| Pomponius Mela.         | C. Valerius Flaccus.   | cundus.                 |
| A. Persius Flaccus.     | C. Julius Solinus.     | L. Annæus Florus.       |
| Q. Asconius Pedianus.   | D. Junius Juvenālis.   | C. Suetonius Tranquil-  |
| M. Annæus Seneca.       | P. Papinius Statius.   | lus.                    |
| L. Annæus Seneca.       | M. Valerius Martialis. |                         |

The age to which the following writers should be assigned is somewhat uncertain:—

|                   |                    |                 |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Q. Curtius Rūfus. | Scribonius Largus. | L. Fenestella.  |
| Valerius Prōbus.  | Sulpitia.          | Atteius Capito. |

Of the writers of the silver age, the most distinguished are Celsus, Velleius, Columella, the Senecas, the Plinies, Juvenal, Quintilian, Tacitus, Suetonius, and Curtius.

## WRITERS OF THE BRAZEN AGE.

|                         |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| A. Gellius.             | Vulcatius Gallicānus.   | Ammiānus Marcel-        |
| L. Apuleius.            | Trebellius Pollio.      | linus.                  |
| Q. Septimius Tertullia- | Flavius Vopiscus.       | Vegetius Renātus.       |
| nus.                    | Cœlius Aureliānus.      | Aurel. Theodōfus Macro- |
| Q. Serēnus Sammonit-    | Flavius Eutropius.      | bis.                    |
| cus.                    | Rhemnius Fannius.       | Q. Aurelius Symmachus.  |
| Censorinus.             | Arnobius Afer.          | D. Magnus Ausonius.     |
| Thascius Cæcilius       | L. Cœlius Lactantius.   | Paulinus Nolanus.       |
| Cypriānus.              | Ælius Donātus.          | Sex. Aurelius Victor.   |
| T. Julius Calpurnius.   | C. Vettus Juvenecus.    | Aurel. Prudentius Clā-  |
| M. Aurelius Nemesiānus. | Julius Firmicus.        | mens.                   |
| Ælius Spartiānus.       | Fab. Marius Victorinus. | Cl. Claudianus.         |
| Julius Capitolinus.     | Sex. Rūfus, or Rūfus    | Marcellus Empiricus.    |
| Ælius Lampridius.       | Festus.                 | Falconia Prōba.         |

*Of an Age not entirely certain.*

|                   |                     |                      |
|-------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| Valerius Maximus. | Terentiānus Maurus. | Sosipāter Charisius. |
| Justinus.         | Minutius Fēlix.     | Flavius Avianus.     |

The opinions of the following lawyers are found in the digests:—

|                      |                       |                           |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| Licinius Proculus.   | Herennius Modestinus. | Julius Paulus.            |
| Neratius Priscus.    | Salvius Juliānus.     | Sex. Pomponius.           |
| P. Juventius Celsus. | Cains.                | Venuleius Saturninus.     |
| Priscus Jabolēnus.   | Callistrātus.         | Ælius Marciānus.          |
| Domitius Ulpianus.   | Æmilius Papiniānus.   | Ælius Gallus, and others. |

Of the writers of the brazen age, Justin, Terentianus, Victor, Lactantius, and Claudian, are most distinguished.

The age to which the following writers belong is uncertain. The style of some of them would entitle them to be ranked with the writers of the preceding ages, while that of others would place them even below those of the iron age.

|                                      |                                                                                                          |                                                  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Palladius Rutilius Taurus Æmilianus. | Auctores Priapeiorum.                                                                                    | Interpres Darëti Phrygii, et Dictyos Cretensis.  |
| Æmilius Mæcer.                       | Catalecta Virgilii et Ovidii.                                                                            | Scholiastæ Vetëres.                              |
| Messalla Corvinus.                   | Auctor orationis Sallustii in Cic. et Ciceronis in Sall.; item illius <i>Antiquam iret in exsilium</i> . | Grammatici Antiqui.                              |
| Vibius Sequester.                    | Auctor Epistolæ ad Octavianum.                                                                           | Rhetores Antiqui.                                |
| L. Ampelius.                         | Auctor Panegyrici ad Pisönem.                                                                            | Medici Antiqui.                                  |
| Apicius Coelius.                     | Declamationes quæ tribuuntur Quintiliânô, Porcio Latroni, Calpurnio Flacco.                              | Catalecta Petroniâna.                            |
| Sex. Pompeius Festus.                |                                                                                                          | Pervigilium Venëris.                             |
| Pröbus (auctor Notarum.)             |                                                                                                          | Poemata et Epigrammata vetëra a Pithæo collecta. |
| Fulgentius Planciades.               |                                                                                                          | Monumentum Ancyranum.                            |
| Hyginus.                             |                                                                                                          | Fasti Consuläres.                                |
| C. Cæsar Germanicus.                 |                                                                                                          | Inscriptiões Vetëres.                            |
| P. Victor.                           |                                                                                                          |                                                  |
| P. Vegetius.                         |                                                                                                          |                                                  |

## WRITERS OF THE IRON AGE.

|                          |                                                               |                          |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Cl. Rutilius Numatiânus. | Latînus Pacätus.                                              | Ruf. Festus Aviënus.     |
| Servius Honorätus.       | Claudius Mamertinus, et alii, quorum sunt Panegyrici vetëres. | Arätor.                  |
| D. Hieronÿmus.           | Aloîmus Avitus.                                               | M. Aurelius Cassidörus.  |
| D. Augustinus.           | Manl. Severinus Boëthius.                                     | Fl. Cresconius Corippus. |
| Sulpicius Sevërus.       | Prisciânus.                                                   | Venantius Fortunätus.    |
| Paulus Orosius.          | Nonius Marcellus.                                             | Isidörus Hispalensis.    |
| Cælius Sedulius.         | Justiniâni Institutïões et Codex.                             | Anonÿmus Ravennas.       |
| Codex Theodosiânus.      |                                                               | Aldhelmus or Althelmus.  |
| Martiânus Capella.       |                                                               | Paulus Diacönus.         |
| Claudîanus Mamertus.     |                                                               |                          |
| Sidonius Apollinâris.    |                                                               |                          |

# INDEX.

The figures in the following Index designate the Sections and their divisions: *n.* stands for *note*, *n.* for *note*, *n.* for *exception*, *w.* for *with*, and *pr.* for *prosody*.

*A*, sound of, 7 and 8; nouns in, of 1st decl., 41; gender of, 41; of 3d decl. gender of, 66; genitive of, 68, 2; in acc. sing. of masc. and fem. Greek nouns, 79 and 80; in nom. acc. and voc. plur. of all neuter nouns, adjectives and participles, 40, 8; 83, i.; 86; 87; 105, 2; verbals in, 102, 6, (c.); change of in compd. verbs, 189; increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; in plur., 288; of verbs, 290; ending the first part of compds., 285, *n.* 4; final, quantity of, 294.  
*A*, *ab*, *abs*, how used, 195, *n.* 2, and 10; in composition, 196, i., 1; before the abl. of distance, 236, *n.* 6; *ab*, *de*, *ex*, with abl. of depriving, etc., 251, *n.* 1.  
 Abbreviations, 328.  
*Abdico*, constr. of, 251, *n.* 2.  
*Abest mihi*, 226, *n.* 2; *non multum abest quin*, 262, *n.* 7.  
*Abhinc*, 263, *n.* 2.  
 Ablative, 37; sing. 3d decl., 82; of adjs. of 3d decl., 113; plur. 1st decl., 40, *n.* 6, and 43; 2d decl., 40, *n.* 6; 3d decl., 84; 4th decl., 89, 5; used adverbially, 192, i., *n.*; of character, quality, etc., 211, *n.* 6; after prepositions, 241; after compd. verbs, 242; after *opus* and *usus*, 243; after *dignus*, etc., 244; after *utor*, etc., 245, i.; after *nitor*, etc., 245, ii.; after parts denoting origin, 246; of cause, etc., 247; of means and agent, 248; of means, 249, i.; of accordance, 249, ii.; of accompaniment, 249, iii.; denoting in what respect, 250; after adjectives of plenty or want, 250, 2, (1.); after verbs of abounding, etc., 250, 2, (2.); after *facio* and *sum*, 250, *n.* 3; after verbs of depriving, etc., 251; of price, 252; of time when, 253; of place where, 254; of place whence, 255, i.; of place by or through which, 255, 2; after comparatives, 256; of degree of difference, 256, *n.* 16; abl. absolute, 257; how translated, 257, *n.* 1; equivalent to what, 257, *n.* 1; only with pres. and perf. parts., 257, *n.* 2; without a participle, 257, *n.* 7; with a clause, 257, *n.* 8; how it marks the time of an action, 256, *n.* 4; noun wanting, 256, *n.* 9.  
 Abounding and wanting, verbs of, with abl. 250; with gen. 220, (3.)

"About to do," how expressed, 162, 14; "about to be done," how expressed, 162, 14, *n.* 4.  
*Abstineo*, *w.* abl., 251, *n.*; *vix* or *agere abstineo*, *quin*, 262, *n.* 7.  
 Abstract nouns, 26; formation from adjs., 101; their terminations, 101, 1 and 2, (3.); from verbs, 102.  
*Abundo*, 250, (2.) *n.* 1.  
*-abus*, dat. and abl. plur. in, 43.  
*Ac* or *atque*, 198, i., *n.* (b.) and 2, *n.*; instead of *quam*, 256, *n.* 15; *ac si* with subj. 263, 2, and *n.*  
 Acatalectic verse, 304, 3, (1.)  
 Accent in English, 16; place of secondary accent, 16, 1 and 2; in Latin, 14 and 15; of dissyllables, 14, 4; of polysyllables, 14, 4, and 15—written accents, 5, 2, and 14, 2. Accentuation, 14—16.  
 Accidents of nouns, 26, 7; of verbs, 141.  
*Accipio*, *w.* part. in *dus*, 274, *n.* 7.  
 Accompaniment, abl. of, 249, iii.  
 Accordance, abl. of, 249, ii.  
*Achivom* for *Achivorum*, 53.  
*-acis*, genitives in, 78, 2, (1.)  
 Accusative, 37; sing., terminal letter of in masculines and feminines, 40, 2; plural, terminal letter of in do., 40, 7; of 3d decl., 79; of Greek nouns, 80; plur. 3d decl., 85; do. of adjs. of 3d decl., 114; neuter in all declensions, sing. and plur., 40, 8; in *em* and *im*, 79; of Greek nouns in *im*, *in*, or *a*, 79, (b.) and 80; in *idem*, 80, *n.* 1; in *ym* or *yn*, 80, *n.*; in *ca*, 80, iii.; in *etern*, *eta*, *em*, or *en*, 80, iv.; neuter used adverbially, 192, ii., 4, and 205, *n.* 10; acc. after verbs, 229—234; omitted, 229, *n.* 4; inf. or a clause instead of, 229, *n.* 5; of a person after *miseret*, etc., 229, *n.* 6; after *jurat*, etc., 229, *n.* 7; after neuter verbs, 232; after compound verbs, 233; after verbal nouns and verbal adjs., 233, *n.*; of part affected, 234, ii.; a limiting acc. instead of the abl. in *partim*, *vicem*, *cetera*, etc., 234, ii., *n.* 3; after prepositions, 236; of time and space, 236; of place, 237; after adverbs and interjections, 238; acc. as subject, 239; acc. of the thing supplied by the inf., 270, *n.*, acc. *w.* inf., 214; do. exchanged for the subjunctive,

- 278, 3.—two accusatives after certain verbs, 230 and 231; acc. of thing retained in passive voice, 284; places supplied by infinitives, 223, n. 2; pred. acc. how supplied, lb. n. 4.
- Accusing and acquitting, verbs of, constr., 217, and n. 4.
- Accuso*, constr., 217, and n. 2—5.
- Acephalous verse, 804, 8, (8.)
- Acer*, declined, 108, i.
- Achilles*, declined, 86.
- Acquiesco*, 245, ii., 3.
- Acute accent, 5, 2, and 14, 2; when used, 14, 3.
- Active voice, 141.
- Active verb, 141; used impersonally, 184, 2; object of act. verb, 229; two cases after, 229, n. 1; verb omitted, 229, n. 3.
- Ad*, how used, 196, n. 5; in composition, 196, i. 2; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; *ad* used for *in*, 224, n. 4.
- Adde quod*, 278, n. 8.
- Additions to simple subject, 202, 6, etc.; to simple predicate, 208, 5, etc.
- Adco*, adv., 191, n. 5; *adco nom*, 277, n. 14.—verb, constr., 238, 8, and n.
- ades*, patronymics in, 100, 1, (a.)
- Adai*, qui, with subj., 264, 6.
- Adhuc locorum*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.
- Adipiscor*, w. gen., 220, 4 *fin*.
- Adjectives, 104—181; classes of, 104, 1—15; declension of, 105; of 1st and 2d decls. 106—107; of 3d declension, 108—114; of three terminations, 108; of two terminations, 109, 110; of one termination, 111; their gen. sing., 112; their abl. sing. 113; their nom., acc., and gen. plur., 114; irregular, 115—116; defective, 115; redundant, 116; numeral, 117—121; cardinal, 117, 118; ordinal, 119, 120; multiplicative, 121, 1; proportional, 121, 2; temporal, 121, 3; interrogative, 121, 5; comparison of, 122—127; irregular comparison, 125; defective comparison, 126; derivation of, 128—130; composition of, 131; amplificative, 128, 4; patial, 128, 6; verbal, 129; participial, 130; composition of 131;—how modified, 202, ii., 1, (2.); agreement of, 206; qualifying and limiting, 206, n. 1; modifiers or predicates, 206, n. 2; with two or more nouns, 206, n. 2; with a collective noun, 206, n. 3; sing. with a plur. noun, 206, n. 4; dat. of, for acc. in the predicate of acc. with the inf., 206, n. 6; without a noun, 206, n. 7; with infinitive, a clause, etc., 206, n. 8; in the neuter with gen. of their noun, 206, n. 9 and 212, n. 3; neuter adjs. used adverbially, 206, n. 10; gender of, when used partitively, 206, n. 12; in genitive with possessive adj. or pronoun, 206, n. 13; agreeing with the governing noun instead of the genitive, 206, n. 14; two or more with one noun, 206, n. 16; instead of an adverb, 206, n. 15; first, last, etc. part expressed by the adj. alone, 206, n. 17; agreeing with relative instead of its antecedent, 206, (7.); with gen. 213; w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5; w. dat., 222; w. gen. or dat., 213, n. 6, and 222, n. 2; of plenty or want with abl., 250; w. inf. 270, n. 1; place of, 279, 7.
- Adjective pronouns, 134—139; nature of, 132, 5; classes, 134; agreement, 206.
- Adjective clauses, 201, 7; how connected, 201, 9.
- Adjective pronoun, 135, n. 1.
- Adjuvo* and *adjuo*, constr., 223, n. 2, (2.)
- Admonishing verbs of, w. gen. 218; other constructions, 218, n. 1 and 2; 278, n. 4.
- Adolescent*, its gender, 80; as adj. how compared, 126, 4.
- Adorning, verbs of, w. abl., 249.
- Adonic verse, 812.
- Adulari*, constr., 223, n. 2, (b), and (1), (a.)
- Adverbial correlatives, 101, n. 1;—clauses, 201, 7, 9.
- Adverbs, 190, 2—194; primitive, 191; of place and order, 191, i.; correlative, 191, n. 1; of time, 191, ii.; of manner, quality, degree, 191, iii.; division of, 191, n. 2;—derivation of, 192; numeral, 192, ii., 3, and 119; diminutive, 192, iv., n.; composition of, 193; signification of some adverbs of time and manner, 193;—comparison of, 194;—how modified, 277, i.; used as adjectives, 206, n. 11; w. gen., 212, n. 4; w. dat., 228, (1.); w. acc., 238; use of, 277; two negatives, force of, 277, n. 3—5; equivalent to phrases, 277, n. 8; of likeness, as connectives, 278, n. 1; place of, 279, 15.
- Adversative conjunctions, 198, 9.
- Adversus*, how used, 196, n. 7.
- Æ*, how pronounced, 9.
- Æqualis*, construction of, 222, n. 2.
- Æque* with abl., 241, n. 2; *æque* ac., 198, 3, n.
- Æqui boni facio* or *consulo*, 214, n. 1.
- Æquo* and *adæquo*, construction of, 214; *æquo*, adj. w. comparatives, 256, n. 9.
- Ær*, acc. of, 80, n.; pr. 299, n. 3.
- Æolic* pentameter, 812, ix.
- Æs*, gender of, 61, 2; gen. of, 78, n. 2.
- Æstimo*, constr., 214.
- Æther*, acc., 80, n.; pr. 299, n. 3.
- crus*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (A.)
- Æquum est*, ut, 262, n. 3, n. 2; *æquum erat*, indic. instead of subj., 259, n. 3; *æquum est*, with inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.
- Ætiam*, w. genitive, 212, n. 4.
- Æffluo*, constr., 250, 2, n. 1.
- Æfficio*, constr., 249, n. 1.
- Æffinis*, constr., 222, n. 2, (a.)
- Æger*, declined, 46.
- Agent, verbal nouns denoting, 102, 6; dative of, 226, iii., n. 1; 243, n. 1; abl. of, 248.
- Agos of Roman literature, 829.
- Agnitus*, pr. 286, 1, n. 1.
- Agnominatio, 824, 25.
- Ago* w. gen. of the crime, 217, n. 1;—*age* w. plur. subject, 183, 10;—*id agere* ut, 273, n. 1.
- Agreement defined, 208, iii., 6; of adjs., etc., 206; of relatives, 206.
- ai*, how pronounced, 9, 1.—*ai*, old gen. in, 43; quantity of the *a* in do., 283, n. 3.
- Aio*, conjugated, 183, 4; *ain'* for *aisne*; *ait*, elipsis of, 209, n. 4; its place in a sentence, 279, 6.

- al, abl. of nouns in, 82; increment of, 287, n. (A.) 1.  
*Alcale* verse, 304, 2;—greater, 318, III.; lesser, 318, IV.  
*Alcmanian* verse, 304, 2;—dactylic tetrameter, 312.  
*Alec*, gender of, 66; genitive, 70.  
*Ales*, gender of, 30 and 61, 2; genitive sing., 73, 2; gen. plur., 88, II., n. 2.  
*Alex*, gender of, 66, 2.  
*Alieno*, and *abalieno*, constr., 261, n. 3, and n.  
*Alienus*, constr., 222, n. 1 and 6.  
*Aliquanto*, 127, 2; 256, n. 16, (2.)  
*Aliquantum*, 266, n. 16, n.  
*Aliquis*, declined, 133; how used, 138, 2; 207, n. 30.  
*Aliquo*, w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 2.  
*Aliquot*, indeclinable, 115, 4; correlative, 121, 5.  
*Aliquoties*, correlative of *quoties*, 121, 5.  
*-alis*, adjs. in, 128, 2; how compared, 126, 4; *alis*, old adj., for *alius*, 192, II., 2.  
*Aliter*, from *aliis* for *alius*, 192, II., 2.  
*Alius*, how declined, 107; how used, 207, n. 32; *alius—alium*, with plur. verb, 209, n. 11, 4; refers to more than two, 212, n. 2, n. 1, (b.); w. abl., 256, n. 14; pr. 233, I, n. 4.  
*Allegory*, 324, 7.  
*Alliteration*, 324, 26.  
*Alphabet*, 2, 1.  
*Alter*, how declined, 106, 3; 107, and n. 2; gen. *alterius*, quantity of 233, I., n. 4, (b.); used for *secundus*, 120, 1; answers to *uter*, 129, 5, (1.). (b.)—*altero tanto*, w. comparatives, 266, n. 16.  
*Alteruter*, 107; 139, 5, (1.), (b.)—*alterutroque*, 107.  
*Altus* and *alto*, w. acc. of space, 236, and n. 2.  
*Ami*, *amb*, *am*, or *an*, 197, (b.)  
*Ambio*, how conjugated, 132, n. 3.—*ambitus*, pr. 236, 2, n. 2.  
*Ambio*, how declined, 118, n. 1.  
*Amicus*, constr., 222, n. 2, (c.)  
*Amo*, conjugated, 156, 156.  
*Amphibolia*, 326, 5.  
*Amplificatives*, nouns, 100, 4, (a.); adjectives, 104, 12; 123, 4.  
*Amplius*, with or without *quam*, 256, n. 6.  
*An*, 193, 11; use of, 198, 11, n. (d.), (e.); 266, n. 2 and 3; *an—am*, 266, n. 2.  
*Anabasis*, 324, 22.  
*Anacoluthon*, 323, 3, (5.)  
*Anacreontic* verse, 304, 2;—iambic dimeter, 314, ix.  
*Anadiplosis*, 324, 17.  
*Analysis* of sentences, 281.  
*Anapaestic* metre, 313; 303;—monometer, 313, i.;—dimeter, 313.  
*Anaphora*, 324, 13.  
*Anastrophe*, 324, 4, (1.)  
*Anas*, gen. of, 72, n. 1; pr. 300, n. 1.  
*Anceps*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 113, n. 3.  
*Anicle*, 93, 2.  
*Androgeos*, declined, 64, 1.  
*-aneus*, adjs. in, 128, 8.  
*Angor*, constr., 273, 6, n. 6.  
*Animal*, declined, 57.  
*Animans*, gender of, 64.  
*Animo*, 250.—*animi* for *animo*, 220, 1; 213, n. 1, (a.)  
*Anio*, genitive of, 69, n. 2.  
*Anne*, in double questions, 235, n. 2;—*annon*, ib.  
*Annus*, compds. of, 121, 3.  
*Antanacasis*, 324, 12.  
*Ante*, w. superlatives, 127, 6; in composition, 193, I., 3; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; with titles, 235, n. 3; with comparatives, 256, n. 12, (b.);—*ante* and *post* w. acc. and abl. of time, 263, n. 1; w. *quam* and a verb, 253, n. 3; for *abinc*, 253, n. 2.  
*Antecedent*, 136; ellipsis of, 206, (3.), (4.); its place supplied by a demonstrative, 206, 3, (a.); in the case of the relative, 206, (6.), (b.); implied in a possessive pronoun, 206, (12); may be a proposition, 206, (13).  
*Antecedo* and *antecello*, constr., 256, n. 16, (3.)  
*Antepenult*, 13; quantity of, 292.  
*Antequam*, constr., 263, 3.  
*Antimeria*, 323, 3, (1.)  
*Antiphrasis*, 324, 10.  
*Antiptosis*, 323, 3, (3.)  
*Antithesis*, 322; 324, 27.  
*Antonomasia*, 324, 8.  
*-anus*, adjs. in, 128, 6.  
*Aorist* tense, 145, IV., n.  
*Apage*, 183, 10.  
*Apertum est*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
*Aphæresis*, 322.  
*Apiscor* and *adipiscor*, w. gen., 220.  
*Aplustris*, nom. plur. of, 83 and 94, 4.  
*Apocope*, 322.—*Apodosis*, 261.  
*Apollo*, gen. of, 64, n. 2.  
*Apostrophe*, 324, 33.  
*Apostrophe*, 324, 35.  
*Apparet*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
*Appellative* nouns, 26, 3.  
*Appello*, constr., 220, n. 1.  
*Appetens*, w. gen., 213, n. 1, (2.)  
*Appendix*, 322—329.  
*Apposition*, 204; to two or more nouns, 204, n. 5; to nouns connected by *cum*, 204, n. 5, (1.); to proper names of different genders, 204, n. 5, (2.); genitive instead of, 204, n. 6; 211, n. 2, n.; abl. with gen., 204, n. 7; of a proper name with *nomen*, etc., 204, n. 8; of a clause, 204, n. 9; of parts with a whole, 204, n. 10; 212, n. 2, n. 5; place of nouns in apposition, 279, 9.  
*Aprime*, 127, 2; 133.  
*Aptotes*, 34.  
*Aptus*, constr., 222, n. 1 and 4, (1.); *aptus qui*, w. subj., 264, 3; w. gerund, 276, n. 2 and 3.  
*Apud*, 195, n. 6.  
*-ar*, nouns in, gender of, 66, 67; genitive of, 70, 71; abl. of, 82; increment of, 287, n. (A.) 1.  
*Arbitror*, in imperf. subj., 260, n. 2.  
*Arbor* (-os), gender of, 61.  
*Arceo*, w. abl., 261, n. 2.  
*Arcesso*, constr., 217, n. 1.  
*Arobalsm*, 323, n., (1.)  
*Archilochian* verse, 304, 2;—penthemimeris, 312;—iambic trimeter, 314, v.; do.

dimeter, 314, vii.; —heptameter, 318, iv.  
*Arenæ*, as gen. of place, 221, n. 3, (4.)  
*Argo*, genitive of, 59, n. 3.  
*Argos* (-g), 92, 4.  
*Arguo*, constr., 217, n. 1.  
 Aristophanic verse, 304, 2.  
 -arium and -arius, nouns and adjs. in, 100, 3; 128, 3; 121, 4.  
 Arrangement of words, 279; poetical, 279, n. 4; of clauses, 280.  
*Arx*, declined, 57.  
*Arx* and thesds, 308.  
 Article, wanting in Latin, 41, n.  
 -as, genitives in, 43; nouns in of 3d decl., gender of, 62; genitive of, 72; gen. plur. of, 83, ii., 4; in acc. plur. of Greek nouns of 3d decl., 86, n. 2. —as and -anus, adjs. in, 128, 6; —as final, quantity of, 300.  
 As, value of, 327; how divided, 327; —gender of, 62, n. 1; 72, n. 1; gender of parts ending in as, 64, 2; *assis non habere*, 214, n. 1.  
 Asclepiadic verse, 304, 2; —tetrameter, 316, iii.  
 Asking, verbs of, with two accs., 231; constr. in the pass., 234, 1.  
*Aspergo*, 249, i. and n. 1 and 3.  
 Aspirate, 3, 1.  
*Assequor*, w, 278, n. 2.  
*Assuo* for -uero, 162, 9.  
*Assuesco* and *assuefacio*, w. abl., 245, ii.; w. dat., 245, ii., n. 1.  
 Asyndeton, 323, i, (1).  
 -at, roots of nouns in, 56, ii., n. 5.  
 At, conj., 198, 9; *at enim*, *atque*, 198, 9, (b).  
 -atim, adverbs in, 192, i., 1.  
 Atque, composition and meaning, 198, 1, n. (b). See *ac*.  
 Attraction, 206, (6.); 209, n. 6 and n. 8; 210, n. 6; 272, n. 3.  
*Attribuo*, w. participle in *dus*, 274, n. 7.  
 -aus, adjs. in, 128, 7.  
 Aw, how pronounced, 9, 2 and n. 2.  
*Audeo*, how conjugated, 142, n. 2.  
*Audio*, conjugated, 160; used like *appello*, 210, n. 2; constr., 272, n. 1; *audes* for *audies*, 158, n. 3; —*audiens*, constr., 222, n. 1.  
 -aus, nouns in, gender of, 62; genitive of, 76, n. 4.  
*Ausculto*, constr., 222, n. 2, (b.), and (1), (a).  
*Ausim*, 183, n. 1.  
*Aut* and *vel*, 198, 2, n. (a.); *aut* and *et*, 198, 2, n. (d.); *aut*—*aut*, 198, 2, n. (e.); *aut* with the singular, 209, n. 12, (5).  
*Autem*, 198, 9; its position, 278, 3, (c.); ellipsis of, 278, n. 11.  
 Authority, in prosody, 282, 4.  
 Auxiliary verb, 153.  
 -av and -atu in the 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 164.  
*Avarus*, with gen., 218, n. 1.  
*Ave*, 183, 8.  
*Avidus*, with gen. 218, n. 1; w. gen. of gerund, 276, (2.); w. inf. poetically, 270, n. 1.  
 -az, nouns in, gen. of, 78, 2, (1.); adjs. in, 129, 6; verbals in with gen., 218, n. 1.

## B.

B, roots of nouns ending in, 56, i.; changed to p., 171, 2.  
*Balneum*, plur. -ea or -æ, 92, 6.  
 Barbarism, 325, 1.  
*Barbiton*, declined, 54, 1.  
*Belle*, *bellissime*, 192, iv. a.  
*Belli*, construed like names of towns, 221, n. 3; *bello*, 253.  
*Bene*, derivation, 192, ii., 1; constr. of its compounds, 226, i.; *bene est*, w. dat., 228, 1; *bene*, w. acc., 239, n. 2; with verbs of price, 262, n. 3.  
 -ber, names of months in, how declined, 71 and 108.  
*Ber*, gen. of, 78, n. 2.  
*Bibi*, pr., 284, n., (1).  
*Bicorpor*, abl. of, 118, n. 2; 115, 1, (a).  
*Biduum*, *triduum*, etc., *biennium*, etc., 121, 2.  
 -bitis, adjs. in, 129, 4; how compared, 126, 4; with dative, 222, n. 1.  
*Bimestris*, 118, n. 1.  
*Bipes*, genitive of, 112, 1; abl. of, 118, n. 2; 116, 1, (a).  
*Bonus*, declined, 106, 2; compared, 126, 5; *boni consulo*, 214, n. 1.  
*Bos*, dat. and abl. plur. of, 84, n. 1; 236, 5; gender of, 30; genitive of, 76, n. 1; gen. plur., 88, ii., n. 1.  
 -br, roots of nouns in, 56, ii., R. 3.  
 Brachystylectic verse, 304, 3, (2).  
 Brazen age of Roman literature, 329, 4.  
 -brum, verbals in, 102, 6.  
*Bucolicæ cæsura*, 310, 6, 4.  
 -bulum, verbals in, 102, 5.  
 -bundus, adjs. in, 129, 1; comparison of, 126, 5; with acc., 233, n.

## C.

C, sound of, 10; before s in roots of nouns, 56, i., n. 2; in roots of verbs, 171, 1; gender of nouns in, 66; genitive of, 70; c final, quantity of, 299, 4; C. for Caius, i. q. *Gaius*, 328.  
*Celebs*, 112, 2; in abl. sing., 118, n. 2; 115, 1, (a).  
*Cæsura*, 309; kinds of, 309; in hexameter verse, 310, 3; caesural pause, 309, 3; in hexameter verse, 4—6; in pentameter verse, 311, 2; in iambic verse, 314, i. and x.; in trochaic verse, 315, 1; in choriambic verse, 316, iii.  
*Calco*, change of a to u in its compds., 189, n. 3.  
 Calendar, Roman, 326, 6.  
 Calends, 326.  
*Callidus*, 270, n. 1; 218, n. 1.  
*Canalis*, abl. of, 82, 5, (c).  
*Cano receptui*, 227, n. 2.  
*Capaz*, w. genitive, 213, n. 1, (1.), and n. 5, (1).  
*Capio*, conjugated, 159; adjs. compounded of, 112, 2.  
 Capital letters, how used by the Romans, 2, 2; as numerals, 118, 7.  
*Caput* declined, 57; *capitis* and *capite*, *damnare*, *accusare*, etc., 217, n. 3.

- Carbasus*, plur. *-i* and *-a*, 92, 8.  
 Cardinal numbers, 117 and 118.  
*Carco*, 250, 2, n. 1.  
*Carmen*, declined, 57.  
*Caro*, gender of, 69, 3; gen. of, 69, n. 2;  
 gen. plur., 83, n., 5.  
*Carthagini*, in abl. of the place where, 82,  
 n. 5, (c.).  
 Case-endings, table of, 39.  
 Cases of nouns, 36 and 37.  
*Casus recti et obliqui*, 37, n.  
*Causa*, *gratia*, etc. with *medi*, etc., 247,  
 n. 2; their place with genitive, 279, n.  
 Causal conjunctions, 198, 7.  
 Cause, abl. of, 247; after active verbs,  
 247, n. 2; acc. of with prepositions, 247,  
 n. 1.  
*Causo*, change of *au* in its compounds,  
 180, n. 3.  
*Cave* or *cave se*, w. subj., 267, n. 8; 262,  
 n. 8.  
*-ce* and *-cine*, enclitic, 134, n. 4.  
*Cedo*, constr., 222, n. 2, (1), (d).  
*Cedo*, imperative, 183, 11.  
*Celer*, how declined, 106; gen. plur., 114,  
 n. 2.  
*Celo*, with two accs., 231; w. *de*, 231, n. 3.  
*Censo*, 273, n. 4.  
*Centena millia*, ellipsis of, 118, 5.  
*-cents*, nouns in, gen. of, 77, n.; adjs. in,  
 gender of, 112, 2; abl. of, 112, n. 2, and n. 3.  
*Ceres*, genitive of, 73, n. 2.  
*Certe* and *certo*, 192, n. 1.  
*Certus*, 213, n. 1; 275, III., (2.); 270, n. 1.  
*Cetera* and *religua* for *ceteris*, 234, II., n. 3.  
*Ceterum*, 198, 8, n. (b).  
*Ceu*, w. subj., 263, 2.  
*Ch*, sound of, 10, 1; when silent, 12, n.;  
 in syllabification, 18, 2.  
 Character or quality, gen. of, 211, n. 6.  
*Chaos*, 61, n. 3.  
*Chelys*, declined, 86.  
*Choliambus*, 314, II.  
 Choriambic metre, 316; 303;—pentameter,  
 316, I.;—tetrameter, 316, II.;—trimeter,  
 316, IV.;—trimeter catalectic, 316, V.;—  
 dimeter, 316, VI.  
*Cicur*, gen. plur. of, 114, n. 2.  
*Circum*, in composition, 196, 4.  
*Circumdo* and *circumfundo*, 249, n. 3.  
*Circumflex* accent, 15, 2, and 14; how  
 used, 14, 3.  
*Cis* and *citra*, constr., 235, n. 1.  
*Citior*, compared, 126, 1.  
*Citum*, pr., 234, n. 1, (2).  
*Clam*, constr., 235, (5).  
*Clanculum*, 192, IV., n.; 235, (5); 126, 1.  
*Claudo*, its compounds, 189, n. 3.  
*Clause*, 201, 13; as the subject of a proposition,  
 202, III., n. 2; as an addition to the predicate,  
 203, II., 3; its gender, 34, 4; as the object of a verb, 229, n. 5; in abl.  
 absolute, 256, n. 8; connection of clauses,  
 198, I. and II.; 278, n. 1; 280, III.; arrangement  
 of, 280; similar clauses, 278, n. 1.  
*Climax*, 324, 21.  
 Clothing, verbs of, 249, I.  
*Calestis*, abl. of, 113, n. 1; gen. plur. of,  
 114, n. 3.  
*Calum*, plur. *cali*, 92, 4.  
*Cano*, w. gen. of price, 214, n. 1, (b).  
*Capi* and *captus sum*, 183, 2.  
 Cognate object, 232;—subject, 234, III.  
*Cognitus*, pr., 235, 2, n. 1.  
*Cognomen* follows the gentile name, 279,  
 9, (b).  
*Cognominis*, abl. of, 113, n. 1.  
*Cogo*, 273, n. 4.  
*-cola*, compounds in, gen. plur. of, 43, 2.  
 Collective nouns, 23, 4; number of their  
 verbs, 209, n. 11.  
*Cum* for *cum* in composition, 196, 5;  
 197, 5.  
*Comitatus*, as abl. of time, 253, n. 1.  
 Common, nouns, 26, 8;—gender, 30;—  
 syllables, 252, 2; 283, IV., n. 2.  
*Commoneo* and *commonefacio*, constr.,  
 218; 273, n. 4.  
*Communis*, constr., 222, n. 2, (a.) and n.  
 6, (a).  
*Commuto*, constr., 252, n. 5.  
*Compar.*, gen. plur. of, 114, n. 2.  
*Comparo*, constr., 224, n. 1, 3.  
 Comparative conjunctions, 198, 3.  
 Comparative degree, 122, 5; uses of, 122,  
 n. 1, 2, 3; formation of, 124; by *magis*,  
 127, 1.—comparatives declined, 110; abl.  
 sing. of, 113, 2; w. gen., 212, n. 2; denotes  
 one of two, 212, n. 2, n. 1; w. abl., 256;  
 used pleonastically, 256, n. 12, 13.  
 Comparison, 25; of adjs., 122—127; degrees  
 of, 122, 3; terminal, 124;—irregular,  
 125; defective, 126; by *magis* and *maxime*,  
 127;—of adverbs, 194.  
 Complex subject, 202, 1, 3, 6; complex  
 predicate, 203, 1, 3, 5; complex sentence,  
 201, 11.  
*Complures*, how declined, 110.  
*Compono*, constr., 224, n. 1, 3, and n. 4.  
*Compos* and *impos*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl.  
 of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); pr. 300, n. 3.  
 Composition of nouns, 103;—of adjs.,  
 131;—of verbs, 183;—of adverbs, 193.  
 Compound verbs, how conjugated, 163,  
 4;—subject, 202, 4;—predicate, 203, 4;—  
 sentence, 201, 12;—metres, 318;—words, in  
 syllabification, 23;—nouns, declension of,  
 91; how formed, 103; quantity of compd.  
 words, 235.  
*Con*, adjs. compd. with, w. dat., 222, n. 1;  
 verbs compd. with, w. dat., 224; w. *cum*,  
 224, n. 4.  
*Concedo*, constr., 273, n. 5; 274, n. 7.  
 Concessive conjunctions, 198, 4.  
*Concoro* and *discoro*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl.  
 of, 113, n. 2.  
 Concrete, nouns, 26, n. 2;—adjs., 101,  
 n.; used for abstracts, in expressions of  
 time, 253, n. 6.  
*Conditio*, in abl., 249, II.  
 Conditional conjunctions, 198, 5.  
*Conduco*, with part. in *duo*, 274, n. 7.  
 Condemning, verbs of, w. gen., 217.  
*Confero*, w. dat., 224, n. 1, 3.  
*Confido*, w. abl., 245, II.; w. dat., 245, n. 1.  
*Confiti*, 183, 12; 180, n.  
*Confinis*, 222, n. 1.  
*Congruo*, 224, n. 1, 3, and n. 4.  
 Conjugation, 25; 149; first, 155, 156;  
 second, 157; third, 158, 159; fourth, 160;



of deponent verbs, 161; periphrastic, 162; general rules of, 163; of irregular verbs, 178—182; of defective verbs, 183; of impersonal verbs, 184; regular and irregular verbs in the four conjugations, 164—177.—conjugations, how characterized, 149; remarks on, 162.

Conjunctions, 198; classes of, 198; coordinate, 198, 1.; subordinate, 198, 1.; enclitics, 198, 1.; copulative and disjunctive, their use, 278; use of coordinate and subordinate conj., 198, 1.; repeated, 278, 1.; when omitted between adjs., 205, 1.; 16;—between words opposed, 278, 1.; 6.

*Conjungo*, 224, 1. 1, 3, and 1. 4.

*Conjunctus*, 222, 1. 6.

*Conjux*, gender of, 80; gen. of, 78, 2, (5.)

Connecting vowel, 150, 5; omitted in 2d root, 159, 2; in verbal nouns, 102, 5, (b.); in verbal adjs., 129, 1 and 4, (b.); in compd. nouns and adjs., 108, 1.; 131, 1.

Connection of tenses, 258;—of words by conjunctions, 278;—of clauses by do., 278, 1. 3.

Connectives, 201, 8, 9; place of, 279, 8.

*Conor*, 271, 1. 1.

*Conscius*, 213, 1.; 275, 111., (2.)

*Consensaneus*, w. dat., 222, 1. 1, w. abl., 222, 1. 6; *consensaneum erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, 1. 3, (a.); with inf. as subject, 259, 1. 2.

*Consentio*, w. dat., 224, 1. 1, 3.

*Consequor*, ut, 273, 1. 2.

*Consido*, 241, 1. 6.

Consonants, 3, 1; division of, 1b.; double, 3, 1, 2; sounds of, 10—12.

*Consors*, 213, 1. 1.

*Constat*, w. inf. as subject, 269, 1. 2.

*Constituo*, 272, 1. 1.

*Obsto*, w. abl., 245, 11., 5.

*Consuetudo est*, constr., 262, 1. 3, 1. 2.

*Consuesco*, 245, 11., 3.

*Contendo*, 278, 1. 1.

*Contentus*, w. abl., 244; w. perf. inf., 268, 1. 2.

*Conterminus*, w. dat., 222, 1. 1, (a.)

*Continens*, abl. of, 82, 1. 4, (a.)

Continental pronunciation of Latin, 6.

*Contingit*, conjugation, 184; w. ut, 262, 1. 3; w. dat. and inf., 262, 1. 3, 1. 1.

*Continuo*, 193, 11., 1.

*Contra*, how used, 195, 1. 7.

Contracted syllables, quantity of, 233, 111.

Contractions in 2d root of verbs, 162, 7.

*Convenio*, 233, 1.

*Convenit*, the indic. for the subj., 259, 1. 3; w. inf., 269, 1. 2.

*Convinco*, 217, 1. 1.

*Copia est*, w. inf., 270, 1. 1, (c.)

*Copula*, 140, 4.

Copulative conj., 198, 1; repeated, 198, 1. (c.)

*Cor*, gender of, 61; genitive of, 71, 1. 2; compds. of, 112, 2.

Correlative adjs., 139, (2.), (3.); 104, 14;—adverbs, 191, 1. 1.

*Cornu*, declined, 87.

*Craisis*, 306, (5.) and 322.

*Crater*, genitive of, 71.

*Credo*, 272, and 1. 6;—*credere*, in the

sense of a pluperfect, 260, 11., 1. 2;—*credendum est*, 271, 1. 2.

*Creo, nascor*, etc., 248, 1. 1.

Crime, in genitive after verbs, 217.

*Crimine*, without a preposition, 217, 1. 2, (b.)

Crude form or root, 40, 10.

*-crum*, verbals in, 102, 5.

*Cr*, initial, 12, 3.

*Cui* and *huic*, how pronounced, 9, 5; pr. 306, 1. 2.

*Cujus*, how declined, 189, 4, (b.)

*Cujus*, how declined, 187, 5; *cujusmodi*, etc., 184, 1. 5.

*-culum*, verbals in, 102, 5; contracted to *-clum*, 102, 5, (b.)

*-culus*, a. um, diminutives in, 100, 3, and 1. 1, 2; 123, 5.

*Cum*, prep., affixed to abl., 241, 1. 1; 193, 1. 4; 136, 1. 1; how used, 195, 1. 11; w. abl. of manner, 247, 2; in composition, 195, 5.

*Cum* or *quum*, mood of the verb following it, 263, 5.

*Cum*, 'while,' 263, 5, 1. 4.

*-cunque*, used to form general indefinites, 191, 1. 1, (b.); 189, 5, 1.; composition and meaning, 189, 5, 1. 1; sometimes separated from *qui*, etc., 323, 4, (5.)

*Cumprimis*, its meaning, 193, 11., 2.

*Cuncti* and *omnes*, w. gen. plur. 212, 1. 2, 1. 6.

*-cundus*, adjs. in, 129, 1.

*Cupido*, gender of, 59, 1. 2.

*Cupidus*, constr., 213, 1. 1; 275, (2.); 270, 1. 1.

*Cupio*, 271, 1. 4; *cupiens*, 213, 1. 1, (2.)

*Curo*, 273, 1. 1; 274, 1. 7; *cura ut*, 267, 1. 3.

*Curritur*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.)

*Custos*, gender of, 80; 61, 3; genitive, 75, 1. 1.

D.

*D* final in prosody, 299, 2; before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, 1.; in roots of verbs, 171, 3, and 1. 5.

*Da*, pr., 284, 1. 2, (b.)

Dactylic metre, 310 and 303;—trimeter, 312, vi.;—dimeter, 312, vii.;—hexameter, 310, i. Dactylo-iambic meter, 318, i.; dactylo-trochaic heptameter, 318, iv.;—tetrameter, 318, v.

*Dama*, gender of, 42, 2.

*Damni infecti satisdo*, etc., 217, 1. 3.

Dative, 37; sing. of 3d decl., 79; plur. always like abl., 40, 6; exceptions in do. 1st decl., 43; of 3d decl., 84; of 4th decl., 89, 5; used for predicate nom., 210, 1. 3; for gen., 211, 1. 5; *commodi et incommodi*, 222, 1 and 2; dative of the end, 227; dat. of the object, after adjs., 222; different constructions instead of, 222, 1. 4 and 6; after *idem*, 222, 1. 7; after verbs, 223—227; after verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, etc., 224; with *ab*, *ex*, *de*, *circum* and *contra*, 224, 1. 1 and 2; with *dis*, 224, 1. 3; with *satis*, *bene* and *male*, 225, 1.; dat. of the agent, 225, 11.

- and *III.*; of the possessor after *est*, 226;  
after particles, 228; dat. with the acc., 228,  
(1.); two datives after *sum*, etc., 227; want-  
ing, 225, *III.*, *n.*; *dativus ethicus*, 228, *n.*  
*Datum*, *pr.*, 284, *n.* 1, (2.)  
*De*, 196, *n.* 12; with abl. instead of acc.,  
229, *n.* 5, (b.); 231, *n.* 3.  
*Dea*, dat. and abl. plur. of, 48.  
*Debebat*, indic. instead of subj., 260, *n.* 3.  
*Decedo*, *w. abl.*, 251.  
*Decerno*, 278, *n.* 1 and 4.  
*Decet*, conjugated, 184; its construction,  
229, *n.* 7; 223, *n.* 2, (b.); indic. for subj.,  
260, *n.* 3.  
Declarative sentences, 200, 2.  
*Declaro*, 230, *n.* 1.  
Declension, 38; parts of speech declined,  
25, 3; of nouns, 38—40; rules of, 40; first,  
41—45; exceptions in do., 43; paradigms  
of, 41; second, 46—64; paradigms of, 46;  
exceptions in do., 62; third, 65—86; para-  
digms of, 67; exceptions in do., 68—85;  
fourth, 87—89; paradigms of, 87; excep-  
tions in do., 89; formed by contraction, 89;  
fifth, 90; paradigms, 90; exceptions in, 90;  
—of adjs., 1st and 2d, 106—107; third, 108—  
111;—declensions, how distinguished, 38;  
tabular view of, 39.  
*Dedi*, *pr.*, 284, 2, *n.* 1.  
*Dedit mihi*, 226, *n.* 2; *pr.*, 306, 1, *n.* 1, (1.)  
Defective nouns, 94—96;—adjs., 115;—  
verbs, 183.  
*Defendo*, 251, *n.* 2.  
*Defero*, *w. gen.* of the crime, 217, *n.* 1.  
*Deficior*, *w. abl.*, 250, 2, *n.* 1.  
*Defit*, 183, 18, and 180, *n.*; 226, *n.* 2.  
*Defecto*, 229, *n.* 4.  
*Defungor*, 245, *n.*  
Degree, acc. of, 231, *n.* 5; 232, (3.)  
Degrees of comparison, 122 and 123; in-  
ferior degrees, 123, 1; equal degrees, 123, 3;  
a small degree, 123, 2; superior degrees va-  
riously expressed, 127, 2, 3, 4.  
*Dejero*, 189, *n.* 3; *pr.*, 285, 2, *n.* 1.  
*Dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, *pr.*, 306, 1, *n.*  
1, (1.)  
*Delectat*, conjugated, 184; its construc-  
tion, 229, *n.* 7; 223, *n.* 2.  
*Delector*, *w. quod*, 273, *n.* 6.  
*Deligo*, *w. two accs.*, 230, *n.* 1.  
—*dem*, enclitic, 134, *n.* 6.  
Demonstrative adjs., 104, 15; 139, 5, *n.*;  
—pronouns, 134; constr. of, 207; in appo-  
sition to a clause, 207, *n.* 22; 206, (3.); used  
when the reference is not to the subject,  
208, (6.); place of, 279, 7; ellipsis of de-  
monstratives before their relatives, 206, (3.),  
(a.); constr. of dem. adjs., 206, (16.); dem.  
advs. for dem. pronouns, 206, (20.); dem.  
pronouns is, etc., used for the oblique cases  
*him*, *her*, etc., 207, *n.* 20; redundant, 207,  
*n.* 21; dem. prons. and advs. announcing a  
proposition, 207, *n.* 22.  
*Demorco*, *w. abl.*, 251, *n.*  
*Denarius*, value of, 327, *n.* 3; divisions  
of, *ib.*  
*Denique*, its use, 277, *n.* 13.  
Denominatives, adjs., 123;—verbs, 187, 1.  
*Dens*, gender of, 64, 1; compds. of, 64, 1.  
*Depello*, *w. abl.*, 251, *n.*  
Dependence, defined, 203, *III.*, 8; of  
tenses, 258.  
Dependent or subordinate propositions,  
201, 6.  
Deponent verbs, 142, *n.* 4; conjugated,  
161; participles of, 163, 17; lists of in 1st  
conj., 166; 2d conj., 170; 3d conj., 174;  
4th conj., 177; increment of, 239, 3.  
*Deposco*, 274, *n.* 7.  
Depriving, verbs of, *w. abl.*, 251.  
Derivation of nouns, 100;—of adjs., 123;  
—of verbs, 187;—of advs., 192.  
Derivative words, quantity of, 284.  
*Dessus*, *gen.* of, 112, 1; *abl.* of, 113, *n.* 2;  
defective, 115, 2; compared, 126, 4.  
Desiderative verbs, 187, *II.*, 3; 176, *n.*;  
quantity of the *u* in, 284, *n.* 3.  
*Designo*, with two accs., 230, *n.* 1.  
*Despero*, constr., 224, *n.* 1.  
*Desuper* and *insuper*, 255, *n.* 8.  
*Detior*, compared, 123, 1.  
*Deterreo*, *quin*, *ne*, or *quominus*, 262,  
*n.* 11; *w. inf. ib. n.*  
*Deturbo*, *w. abl.*, 251, *n.*  
*Dezter*, how declined, 106; how com-  
pared, 126, 4.  
*Deus*, declined, 53; *deum* for *deorum*, 53.  
*Di* or *dii*, 53; ellipsis of, 205, *n.* 7.  
—*di* or *-dis*, see *-dis*.  
Diacresis, 306, 2; mark of, 5, 2.  
Dialysis, 306, *n.*  
*Diana*, *pr.* 282, *I.*, *n.* 5.  
Diastole, 307, 2.  
*Dico*, *w. two accs.*, 230, *n.* 1; ellipsis of,  
229, *n.* 3, 2; 209, *n.* 4; 270, *n.* 2, (b.); *w. inf.*  
and acc., 272, *n.* 1; *w. ut*, 273, 2, (c.);  
*dicunt*, 'they say', 209, *n.* 2, (2); *dicor*, *w.*  
predicate nominative, 210, *n.* 3, (3.), (a.)  
and *n.* 1, cf. 271, *n.* 2; 272, *n.* 6; *dic*, im-  
perative, 162, 4.  
Dicolon, 319, 2.  
*Dicto audiens*, *w. dat.*, 222, *n.* 1; *dicto*,  
*w. comparative*, 256, *n.* 9.  
—*dicus*, words ending in, *pr.*, 284, 2, *n.* 1.  
*Dido*, declined, 86; genitive of, 69, *n.* 3.  
*Dies*, declined, 90; its gender, 90, *n.* 1;  
compds. of with numerals, 121, 3; quantity  
of, 235, *n.* 4, *n.* 3, (6.)  
Difference, degree of, how expressed, 256,  
*n.* 10.  
*Differo*, constr., 251, *n.* 3, *n.*; 229, *n.* 4, 1.  
Differing, verbs of, 251, *n.* 3.  
*Difficile est*, the indic. for the subj., 259,  
*n.* 4, (2.); with an *inf.* as subject, 260, *n.* 2;  
with supine in *n.*, 276, *III.*, *n.* 1; *w. ad* and  
a gerund, 276, *III.*, *n.* 4.  
*Digne*, *w. abl.*, 244, *n.* 1.  
*Dignor*, *w. abl.*, 244, *n.* 1; *w. acc.* of the  
person, *ib.*; *w. inf.*, *ib.*; *w. two accs.*, *ib.*  
*Dignus*, *w. abl.* of the thing, 244; *w. gen.*  
244, *n.* 2, (a.); *w. acc.* of neut. pron. or  
adj., 244, *n.* 2, (a.); *w. inf.* or a subj.  
clause, 244, *n.* 2, (b.); with relative and  
subj., 264, 9; *w. supine* in *n.*, 276, *III.*, *n.* 1.  
Dimeter, 304, 2.  
Diminutive nouns, 100, 3;—adjs., 104, 11;  
128, 5;—verbs, 187, *II.*, 4;—adverbs, 192, 4.  
Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 9; quantity  
of, 13, 4; 283, *II.*  
Diptotes, 94.

*Dis* for *dis*, 196, (b.), 2.  
*Dis* or *di*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.), 2;  
 construction of some verbs compounded  
 with, 251, n. 3, n.; pr. 286, 2, n. 2.  
*-dis*, genitives in, 77, n. 1; *dis*, adj., gen.  
 plur. of, 114, n. 3.  
*Discerno*, 251, n. 3, n.; in imperf. subj.  
 for pluperf., 260, n., n. 2.  
*Discolor*, abl. of, 113, n. 2.  
*Discordo* and *discrepo*, 251, n. 3, and n.  
*Disertus*, pr., 284, n. 5, 2, n. 1.  
 Disjunctive conj., 196, 2.  
*Dissideo*, constr., 251, n. 3, and n.  
*Dissimilis*, 222, n. 1, and n. 2.  
*Distich*, 304.  
*Distinguo* and *disto*, 251, n. 3, and n.  
 Distributive numbers, 119, 120; gen. plur.  
 of, 106, n. 4; used for cardinal numbers,  
 120, 4;—for multiplicatives, 120, 4, (b.)  
 Distrophon, 319, 3.  
*Div*, compared, 104, 6.  
*Dives*, gen. sing., 112, 1; gen. plur., 114,  
 n. 2; 115, 1, (a.).  
 Division of words into syllables, 17—23.  
*Do*, 149, n.; w. perf. participles, 274,  
 n. 4; w. participles in *du*, 274, n. 7; incre-  
 ment of, 290, n.; 284, n. 4.  
*-do*, nouns in, gender of, 59, 2; genitive  
 of, 69, n. 1.  
*Doceo*, 231, n. 1; w. gen. of price, 214, n. 1.  
*Doleo*, w. *quod*, etc., 273, n. 7.  
*Dominus*, declined, 46.  
*Domus*, declined, 89; different use of  
*domus* and *domi*, 89, (a.); constr. of gen.,  
 221, n. 3; of acc., 287, n. 4; of abl., 256,  
 n. 1; 254, n. 2.  
*Donec*, w. subj., 263, 4; pr., 269, 4, n.  
*Dono*, w. abl., 249, n. 1, n. 1; w. two da-  
 tives, 227, n. 1.  
*Dos*, gen. of, 61, 3; *doti dicare*, 227, n. 2.  
 Double consonants, 3, 1.  
 Doubtful gender, 30.  
*Dubito* and *non dubito*, 262, n. 7 and 8;  
*dubito an*, 198, 11, (c.); *dubito sit ne*, etc.,  
 262, n. 8.  
*Duco*, constr., 214; 227, n. 1; 230, n. 1;  
 in *numero*, or in *loco*, 220, n. 4; *duc*, im-  
 perat., 162, 4.  
*Dudum* and *jamdudum*, 191, n. 6.  
*Duim*, *duis*, etc., 162, 1.  
*Dum*, w. subj., 263, 4; *dum ne* and *dum-  
 modo ne*, 263, 2, n.; *dum*, 'until,' 263, 4,  
 (1.);—'while,' 263, 4, (2.);—compounded  
 with a negative, 277, n. 16.  
*Duntaxat*, 193, n. 3.  
*Duo*, declined, 113; *duum* for *duorum*,  
 118, n. 1.  
*-dus*, participle in, how declined, 103,  
 n. 2; of neuter deponent verbs, 161; with  
*sum*, 162, 15; neuter in *-dum* with *est*, 274,  
 n. 11; w. dat. of person, 162, 15, n. 5; 225,  
 III.; of dep. verbs, 162, 17, (b.); w. acc.,  
 234, n. 2; its signification, 274, 2, n. 7 and  
 8; used for a gerund, 275, II.

## E.

*E*, sound of, 7 and 8; *ē* changed to *ē* or *ī*,  
 56, n. 4 and 5; nom. in *ē* in 3d decl., 56, n.  
 1, 7; gender of nouns in *e* of 3d decl.,

66; genitive of, 68; abl. of, 82; old dat. in,  
 79; acc. plur. in, 54, 5; nom. plur. in, 83,  
 I., 1; voc. in, 81, n.; in gen. and dat. sing.  
 5th decl., 90, n. 2; of 40, 11; advs. in, 192,  
 II.; syncope of in imperf. of 4th conj., 162,  
 2; increment in *e* of 3d decl., 287, 3; plur.,  
 288; of verbs, 290; *e* ending the first part  
 of a compound word, 286, n. 4; *e* final,  
 quantity of, 295.—*e* or *ez*, prep., see *ez*.  
*-ea*, Greek acc. sing. ending in, 54, 5, and  
 80, III.  
*Eapae*, etc., 135, n. 3.  
*Ecce*, compounded with demonstrative  
 pronouns, 134, n. 2; w. nom., 209, n. 13;  
 w. acc., 238, 2.  
*Eccum*, *eccillum*, *eccistam*, etc., 134, n. 2;  
 238, 2.  
*-ecis*, gen. in, 78, (2.)  
*Equis* and *equi*, how declined, 137, 3,  
 and n. 3; *equae* and *equa*, 137, 3, n. 4;  
*equis est qui*, 264, 7, n. 2; *equid*, interrog.  
 particle, 198, 11, and n. a and b.  
*Equisnam*, 137, 4.  
*Ectasis*, 307, 2, (3.)  
*Eethlipsis*, 305, 2.  
*Edepol*, 199, n. 3.  
*Edico*, 273, n. 4.  
*Edim*, *edis*, etc., 162, 1.  
*-edis*, gen. in, 73, n. 1 and 112, 1.  
*Editus*, w. abl., 246.  
*Edo*, 'to eat,' conjugated, 181; compds.  
 of, 181, n.  
*-edo*, abstracts in, 101, 1.  
*Edoceo*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1.  
*Efficio*, 273, n. 2; *-efficiens*, w. gen., 218,  
 n. 1, (2.);—*-efficiat*, w. *ut*, or the acc. with  
 the inf., 262, n. 3, n. 1.  
*Effugio*, w. acc., 233, n. 1.  
*Egeo* and *indigeo*, 250, 2, n. 1; 220, 3.  
*-egis*, genitives in, 78, 2.  
*Ego*, declined, 133.  
*Eheu*, pr., 283, n. 5.  
*Ei*, how pronounced, 9, 1, and n. 1; gen-  
 itive in, 73, n.; pr., 283, n. 1, n. 6, (1.)  
*-eia*, verbals in, 102, 3.  
*-eis*, fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.)—  
 acc. plur. in, 85, n. 1, and 114, 2.  
*-eius*, pr., 283, n. 1, n. 6, (3.)  
*Ejus*, use of, 208, (6.)  
*Ejusmodi* and *ejusdemmodi*, 139, 5, n. 2.  
*-ela*, verbals in, 102, 3.  
*Elegiac* verse, 311, n. 2.  
*Ellipsis*, 323; of pronoun in case of appo-  
 sition, 204, n. 4; of the noun of an adj.,  
 205, n. 7; 252, n. 3; of the antecedent, 206,  
 (3.) and (4.); of *meus*, etc., 207, n. 38;  
 of nom., 209, n. 2 and 3; of verb, 209, n. 4;  
 229, n. 3; of a noun limited by a genitive,  
 211, n. 8; of gen., 211, n. 9; of a partitive,  
 212, n. 1, n. 3; of subject acc., 239; 269,  
 n. 1; of acc. after transitive verb, 229, n. 4;  
 of prep., 232, (2.); 235, n. 5; 241, n. 4; 248,  
 n. 3; of voc., 240; of *quam*, 256; of partic-  
 ple, in abl. absol., 257, n. 7; of *ut* w. subj.,  
 262, n. 4; of *ne* after *cave*, 262, n. 6; of *non*  
 after *non modo*, etc., 277, n. 6; of conjunc-  
 tions, 278, n. 6; of *j* in composition, 307;  
 of *centena millia*, 327, n. 6.  
*-elius*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3,  
 n. 3.

- em and -en, accs. in 45, 1; 80, iv.; -em in acc. sing. 3d decl., 79, 80.
- Erebo*, 264, n. 1.
- Emphatic word, its place in a sentence, 279, 2 and 16.
- En*, interrogative particle, 198, 11, and n. (a.); 187, n. 3; *en*, interjection, 199; w. nom., 208, n. 13; w. acc. 238, 2; -en, acc. in 45, 1; 80, iv.
- Enallage, 323, 3.
- Enclitics, in accentuation, 15, 3;—conjunctions, 198, n. 1.
- Endeavoring, verbs of, 278, 1, (a.)
- endus and -undus, 163, 20.
- English pronunciation of Latin, 6.
- Enim* and *nam*, 198, 7, and n.; 279, 3, (a.) and (c.)
- Enimvero*, 198, 9, n. (a.)
- Ennehemimeris, 304, 6.
- Enis*, participle, 164, n. 1.
- ensis, adjs. in 123, 6, (a.)
- entissimus, superlatives in 126, 3
- enus, adjs. in 123, 1, (c.)
- Eo*, conjugated, 182; compds. of, 182, n. 3; w. supine in *um*, 276, II., n. 2; w. two datives, 227, n. 1.
- eo, verbs in of 1st conj., 166, n. 3.
- Eo*, pron. w. comparatives, 256, n. 16.
- As adverb of place, w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.)—of degree, w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 3. As an illative conj., 198, 6.
- Eodem*, w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 3.
- eos, Greek gen. in, 76, n. 7; 64, 5; pr., 263, 1, n. 6, (2.)
- Epanadiplosis*, 324, 18.
- Epanados*, 324, 19.
- Epanalepsis*, 324, 16.
- Epanaphora*, 324, 13.
- Epanastrophe*, 324, 17.
- Epanorthosis*, 324, 32.
- Epenthesis*, 322, 3.
- Epicene* nouns, 33.
- Epistrophe*, 324, 14.
- Epizeuxis*, 324, 20.
- Epulor*, with abl., 245, II., 4.
- Epulum*, 62, 6.
- Equality, how denoted, 123, 8.
- Eques*, gender of, 31, 2; used collectively, 209, n. 11, (1.), (b.)
- Equidem*, its composition and use, 191, n. 4.
- er, nouns in, of 2d decl., 46—syncopated, 43, 1; of 3d decl., gender of, 58 and 60; genitive of, 70 and 71; syncopated, 71;—adjectives in, superlative of, 125; annexed to pres. infin. pass., 162, 6.
- Erga*, how used, 195, n. 7.
- ere, in 3d pers. plur. of perf. indic. active, 162, 8.
- eris, genitives in, 76; 73, n. 2; 74, n. 1; and 112, 1 and 2.
- Ergo*, w. gen., 147, n. 2, (a.)
- Erotesis*, 324, 31.
- errimus, superlatives in, 125, 1.
- es, proper names in, 44, 1; -es and -e in Greek nouns changed to a, 45, 3; nouns in of 3d decl. increasing in genitive, gender of, 58; 61; genitive of, 73; genitive of adjs. in, 112; not increasing, gender of, 62; genitive of, 73; in nom., acc., and voc. plur. of masc. and fem. nouns of 3d decl., 63, 1; 85; final, sound of, 8, n. 2; quantity of, 300.
- Escit*, 154, n. 4.
- Esse* and *fuisse*, ellipsis of, 270, n. 3.
- esso, -isso or -so, intensives in, 187, II., 6.
- Est*, w. dat. of a possessor, 226; *est*, qui, with subj., 264, 6; so *est*, *unde*, *ubi*, *cur*, or *ut*, 264, 6, n. 3.
- Et* and *que*, 198, 1, n. (a.); *et ipse*, 207, n. 27, (b.); ellipsis of *et*, 236, n. 6, (b.); *et is*, *et id*, *et is quidem*, 207, n. 26, (c.); *et—et*, *et—que*, *et—neque* or *neq*, 198, 1, n. (c.); *et non*, 198, 1, (c.)
- Etenim*, 198, 7, n. (a.)
- Etiā*, 198, 1, n. (d.); with comparatives, 256, n. 3, (b.); 127, 3; *etiā*num, *etiā*rum, 191, n. 7.
- etis, genitive in, 73; 112, 1.
- Etiā* and *etiā*mi, constr., 271, n. 2.
- etum, derivative nouns in, 100, 7.
- Etymology, 24—198.
- Ew*, the diphthong, 10, 3; when not a diphthong, 10, 3, n. 3; in voc. sing. of Greek nouns in *eus*, 81.
- Euphemism, 324, 11.
- Eus*, nouns in of 2d decl., 54, 5;—adjs. in 123, 1 and 2; Greek proper names in, 233, n. 2; gen. of, 76, n. 7; acc. of, 180, III.
- ev and -etu, in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 167.
- Evado*, constr., 251, n.
- Evenit*, conjugated, 184; *evenit ut*, 262, n. 3.
- Ex* and *e*, prep., how used, 195, n. 2 and 18;—used with participles instead of the genitive, 212, n. 4; sometimes omitted, 261, and n. 1; *ex quo*, scil. *tempore*, 253, n. 4.
- ex, gender of nouns in, 66, 2.
- Exadversus*, w. acc., 195, n. 3.
- Excedo*, w. acc., 238, (3.), n.
- Excello*, constr., 256, n. 16, (3.)
- Excito*, w. *ut*, 273, n. 4.
- Excludo*, constr., 251, n.
- Exeo*, constr., 251, n.
- Existimo*, w. gen., 214; w. two accs., 230, n. 1; *existimor*, constr., 271, n. 2.
- Exiez*, 112, 2; 196, I., 6.
- Exos*, genitive of, 112, 2.
- Exosus*, 183, 1, n.
- Exsistunt* qui, w. subj., 264, 6.
- Exter*, 106, 3, and n.; comparison of, 125, 4.
- Expedio*, 251, n.; *expedit*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, (b.)
- Exterior* si, 198, 11, (c.)
- Expers*, w. gen., 218, n. 1, (3.), and n. 5, (2.)
- Exemplo*, 193, II., 1.
- Extera*, how compared, 125, 4; *extremus*, how used, 206, n. 17; *extremum est*, *ut*, 262, n. 3.
- Exuo*, constr., 225, n. 2; *exuor*, 234, I., n. 1.
- F.
- Fabula*, ellipsis of, 29, 2.
- Fac*, imperative, 162, 4; *fac ut* or *ne*, 267, n. 3; *fac*, 'suppose or granting,' w. acc. and inf., 273, n. 3; pr., 296, n. 4.

*Facile*, adv., 192, 4, (b.); w. superlatives, etc., 277, 8, 7.  
*Facilis*, constr., 276, m., n. 4; 222, n. 1, (a.)  
*Facio* and compds., passive of, 180 and n.; changes of in the compds., 189, n. 1; w. gen. of value, 214, n. 2; w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. abl., 250, n. 3; w. *ut* and subj., 278, 1, n. 2 and 3; w. participle, 278, 1; w. *de*, etc., 250, n. 3; *facere non possum quin*, 262, 2; *facere quod*, 278, n. 3; ellipsis of, 209, n. 4; *facere certiorum*, 230, n. 3.  
*Fallican* verse, 312, xi.  
*Fallit me*, 229, n. 7.  
*Familia* with *pater*, etc., gen. of, 43, 2.  
*Familiaris*, w. dat., 222, n. 1, (a.); with gen., 222, n. 1, (c.)  
*Fas*, its root, 56, n., n. 6; gen. of, 71, n. 2; abl., 82, n. 1, (b.); 94 and 96.  
*Fas*, gender of, 62, n. 2; 94; *fas erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, n. 3; *fas est*, w. supine in *u*, 276, m., n. 2.  
*Fazo*, *fazim* and *fazem*, 162, 9, and 188, n. 1.  
*Fauz*, genitive of, 78, 2, (5); but cf. 94, p. 50; gen. plur., 83, n., 3.  
*Favetur*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.) constr., 223.  
*Fearing*, verbs of, w. *ut* and *ne*, 262, n. 7.  
*Febris*, ellipsis of, 206, n. 7, (1.)  
*Fecundus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)  
*Feet*, in poetry, 302; isochronous, 302, n.  
*Fel*, its root, 56, n., n. 6; its genitive, 70, n.; 94.  
*Feliz*, declined, 111; 213, n. 4, (1.)  
*Femina*, added to epicene nouns, 133, n.  
*Feminine* nouns, of 1st decl., 41; of 2d decl., 49—61; of 3d decl., 62; exceptions in, 62—66.  
*Femur*, genitive of, 71, 3.  
*Fer*, 162, 4; quantity of, 299, n. 4.  
*Fero*, conjugated, 179; its compds., 172, (p. 184); *fertur*, constr. of, 271, n. 2.  
*-ficus*, comparison of adjs. in, 125, 3, (a.)  
*Fido*, how conjugated, 142, n. 2; w. abl., 245, n.; w. dat., 245, n., n. 1; 223, n. 2.  
*Fidi*, (from *fido*), pr., 284, n. 1, (1.)  
*Figures of prosody*, 306—307; of orthography and etymology, 322; of syntax, 323; of rhetoric, 324.  
*Filia*, dat. and abl. plur., 43.  
*Filius*, voc. sing., 62.  
*Filling*, verbs of, w. abl., 249, 1; w. gen., 230, 3.  
*Final syllables*, quantity of, 294—301;—conjunctions, 198, 8.  
*Finisimus*, w. dat., 222, n. 1, (a.)  
*Fio*, conjugated, 180; w. gen. of value, 214, n. 2; w. two datives, 227, n. 1; *fit* and *fieri non potest ut*, 232, n. 3; *fit per me*, 262, n. 11; quantity of *i* in *fo*, 283, n. 1.  
*Flagito*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; w. *ut*, 278, n. 4.  
*Flecto*, used reflexively, 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Flocci habere*, etc., 214, n. 1.  
*Fluo* and *struo*, 2d and 3d roots of, 171, n.  
*Follow*, in what sense used, 203, 9.  
*Fons*, gender of, 64, 1.  
*Foras* and *foris*, 237, n. 5, (c.)  
*Forem*, *fore*, etc., 154, n. 3; 162, 12, (1.); w. two datives, 237, n. 1.

*Fractional expressions*, 121, 6.  
*Freeing*, verbs of, 251.  
*Frenum*, plur. *freni* and *frena*, 92, 5.  
*Frequens*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 3, (3.); cf. n. 4, (1.)  
*Frequentative verbs*, 187, n., 1; quantity of *i* in, 284, n. 4.  
*Fretus*, w. abl., 244; w. dat., 222, n. 6; w. inf., 244, n. 2, (b.)  
*Fructus*, declined, 87.  
*Fruget*, 115, 4; comparison of, 125, 5.  
*Fruor*, w. abl., 245, 1; w. acc., 245, 1, n.  
*Fruz*, genitive of, 78, 2, (5); 94.  
*Fugio*, constr., 225, iv.; 210, n. 3, (2.); *fuge*, poetically, w. inf., 271, n. 3; *fugit me*, 229, n. 7.  
*Fui*, etc., in compound tenses, 162, 12, (1.); *fuisse*, w. perf. pass. participles, 263, n. 1, (b.)  
*Fungor*, w. abl., 245, 1; w. acc., 245, n.; 275, n., n. 1.  
*Fuo*, root of *fui*, 154, n. 2 and 3; *futum*, pr., 284, n. 1, (2.)  
*Furo*, 183, n. 2.  
*Furor*, w. dat. or abl., 224, n. 2.  
*Future tense*, 145, m.; how supplied in the subj., 260, n. 7; future perfect tense, 145, vi.; old form in *so*, 162, 9 and 10; future indic. for imperative, 267, n. 2; 259, n. 1, (4.); fut. imperative, 267, (2.), (3.); future pass. part. w. acc., 234, 1, n. 2; fut. perf. for fut., 259, n. 1, (5.)  
*Futurum esse* or *fore*, w. subj., 268, n. 4, (b.); *futurum fuisse*, *ut*, 268, n. 6.  

G.

*G*, sound of, 10; before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, n. 2; in roots of verbs, 171, 1, and 5.  
*Gallambus*, 314, x.  
*Gaudeo*, how conjugated, 142, n. 2; with abl., 247, 1, (2.); w. acc., 232, n. 1; with *quod*, etc., 273, n. 6.  
*Gemo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1.  
*Gems*, gender of names of, 29.  
*-gena*, compounds in, 43, 2.  
*Gener*, declined, 46.  
*General relatives*, 139, 5, n.; how used, 207, n. 29.  
*General indefinites*, 139, 5, n.  
*Gender*, 26, 7 and 27; its divisions, 27; general rules of, 27—34; natural and grammatical, 27; masc. from signification, 28; fem. from do., 29; common and doubtful, 30; epicene, 33; neuter appellatives of persons, 32, 2; of Greek nouns, 34, n. 1; neuter, 34; of 1st decl., 41; exes in 1st decl., 42; of 2d decl., 46; exes in 2d decl., 49; of 3d decl., 58, 62, and 66; exes in 3d decl., 69—67; of 4th decl., 87; exes in 4th decl., 88; of 5th decl., 90; exes in 5th decl., 90; gender of adjs., 206.  
*Genero*, w. abl., 246, n. 1; *generatus*, w. abl., 246.  
*Genitive*, 87; sing., 1st decl., exes in, 43; of 3d decl., 68; of adjectives, 3d decl., 112; plur., 1st decl., contracted, 43; 2d decl., 60, 63; 3d decl., 63; terminal letters in all the declensions, 40, 5; of adjectives, 8d

decl., 112 and 114; after nouns, 211; its place, 279, n.; what relations it denotes, 211, n. 1; subjective and objective, 211, n. 2; of substantive pronouns objective, 211, n. 3; possessive adjective used for, 211, n. 4; dative used for, 211, n. 5; of character or quality, 211, n. 6; of measure, 211, n. 6, and (3.) and (6.); noun limited by, omitted, 211, n. 7; wanting, in the predicate after *sum*, 211, n. 8; in other cases, 211, n. 8, (4.); omitted, 211, n. 9; two genitives, 211, n. 10; gen. after *opus* and *usus*, 211, 11; how translated, 211, n. 12; after participles, 212; after a neuter adjective or adj. pronoun, 212, n. 3; its place, 279, 10; after adverbs, 212, n. 4; after adjectives, 213; of *causa* or *source*, 213, n. 2; different constructions instead of, 213, n. 4; after *dignus* and *indignus*, 244, n. 2; after verbs, 214—220; after *sum*, and verbs of valuing, 214; of crime, 217; after verbs of admonishing, 218; after verbs denoting an affection of the mind, 220; instead of abl. after verbs of abounding, etc., 220, 3; instead of predicate acc., 220, n. 4; of place, 221; after particles, 221, n., iii.; of gerunds, 275, n., n. 1; plur. depending on a gerund, 275, n. 1, (3.); place of, after neuter adjectives, 279, 10.

Genitives, two, limiting the same noun, 211, n. 10.

*Genius*, w. abl., 246.

*Genius*, voc. sing., 52.

*Genium*, 212, n. 4, n. 2.

*Genus*, in acc. instead of the gen. or abl., as, *id genus, omne genus*, etc., 234, n., n. 2, fin.; 209, n. 7, (4.); 231, n. 6; used with the genitive instead of an apposition, 211, n. 2, n.

*Georgicon*, 54, 4.

*Gero* and *fero*, compounds of, in nouns of 2d decl., 47; in adjs. of 1st and 2d decls., 105, 3; not compared, 127, 7.

Gerundives, defined, 278, n. 2; how used, 275, n.

Gerunds, 25, and 148, 2; by what cases followed, 274; and gerundives, genitive of, 275, n., n. 1; nouns which they follow, ib. (1.); adjectives, ib. (2.); after *sum* denoting tendency, 275, (5.); instead of a noun in apposition, 211, n. 2, n.; dat. of, 275, n. 2; acc. of, 275, n. 3; abl. of, 275, n. 4; infin. for, after *ad*, 270, n. 1, (a.).

*Gigno*, pr., 284, n. 3.

*Gl*, *tl*, and *thl*, in syllabication, 18, 3.

*Gloriar*, with abl., 247, 1, (2.); w. acc., 232, n. 1, and (3.).

Glyconic verse, 304, 2; 316, iv.

*Gn*, initial, 12, n.

*Gnarus*, w. gen., 213, n. 1; cf. n. 4, (1.).

-go, nouns in, gender of, 59, 2; genitive of, 69, n. 1.

Golden age, of Roman literature, 329, 2.

Government defined, 203, 7.

Grammatical subject, 202, 2; cases of, 202, n. 4; predicate, 208, 2; figures, 322.

*Gratia*, w. gen., 247, n. 2; its place, 279, n.; *gratias ago*, constr., 278, n. 6.

*Gratum mihi est, quod*, 278, n. 6.

*Gratulor*, constr., 278, n. 7.

Grave accent, 5, 2, and 14, 2; 15, n. 8.

*Gravidus* and *gravis*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.).

Greek nouns, gender of, 84, n. 1; terminations of in 1st decl., 44; in 2d decl., 54; terminations of in 3d decl., 55, n.; acc. of in 3d decl., 80; declension of, in do., 86.

Greek or limiting acc., 224, n. 2.

*Greex*, gender of, 65, 2; genitive of, 78, 2, (2.).

*Grus*, gender of, 80; genitive of, 76, n. 8.

Guilt and innocence, adjectives of, with gen., 217, n. 1.

## H.

*H*, its nature, 2, 6; its place in syllabication, 18, 1; before *s* in verbal roots, 171, 1; in prosody, 283, i., (b.).

*Habeo*, with two accs., 230, n. 1; *habere in numero* or *in loco*, 230, n. 4; w. gen. of value, 214, n. 2; w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1; w. two datives, 227, n. 1; w. participle perf. pass., 274, n. 4; w. participle in *duo*, 274, n. 7, (a.); *habeo, non habeo*, or *nihil habeo, quod*, w. subj., 264, n. 3; *haberi*, w. predicate nom., 210, n. 8, (3.), (c.); 271, n. 2, and n. 4.

*Habito*, w. gen. of price, 214, n. 1; w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1.

*Hac* in answer to *qua?* 191, n. 1, (c.).

*Hactenus*, adv. of place and time, 191, n. 1, (g.).

*Hadria*, gender of, 42, 2.

*Hae*, for *ha*, 134, n. 1.

*Haud*, signification and use, 191, n. 8; *haud multum abest quin*, 262, n. 7; *haud scio an*, 198, 11, n. (c.).

*Hebet*, gen. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 118, n. 3; defective, 115, 2.

*Hei mihi*, 228, 3.

Hellenism, 323, n. (2.).

*Hem*, w. dat., 228, 3; w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240, n. 1.

Hemistich, 304.

Hemilius, 304, 5.

Hendiady, 323, 2, (8.).

*Hepar*, genit. of, 71; abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.).

Hepthemimeris, 304, 5.

*Heres*, gender of, 81, 2; genitive, 73, n. 1.

*Hierok caesura*, 310, 4 and 5.

*Heros*, genitive, 75, 2; acc., 80, n.; dat. plur., 84; acc. plur., 85, n. 2; declined, 86.

Heteroclit nouns, 93.

Heterogeneous nouns, 84, n. 2; 92.

Heterosis, 323, 3, (2.).

Hexameter verse, 310; Priapean, 310, ii.

Hiatus, 279, 13.

*Hibernus*, pr., 284, n. 5, n. 2.

*Hic*, pron., declined, 134; distinguished from *ille*, 207, n. 23; *hic—hic*, for *hic—ille*, 207, n. 23, (b.); related in time like *nunc* and *tunc*.

*Hic*, adv. of place, *hic, hinc, huc*, etc., referring to the place of the speaker, 191, n. 1, (e.); w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.); adv. of time, 161, n. 1, (g.).

*Him, her*, etc., how expressed in Latin, 207, n. 20.

Hipponastic trimeter, 314, ii.; tetrameter, 314, iv.

Historical present, 145, i., 3; perfect, 145, iv.; *m.* for the pluperfect, 258, n. 1, (d.); infinitive, 209, 5; tenses, 258.

*Hoc*, pleonastic, 207, n. 21 and 22; *hoc* w. participial gen., 212, n. 3, n. 1; *hoc* with comparatives, 254, n. 16.

*Hodie*, pr., 285, 2, n. 1.

*Homo*, gender of, 31, 2; genitive, 69, n. 2; *homo*, *homines*, ellipsis of, 209, n. 2, (2.); 205, n. 7, (1.); 229, n. 4.

Homocypheron, 324, 26.

*Honor*, (-os), declined, 57.

Horace, key to the odes of, 321.

Horatian metres, 320.

*Horreo*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Hortor*, w. *ad*, 225, n. 1; w. *ut*, *ne*, etc., 273, 2; without *ut*, 282, n. 4.

*Hosper*, gender of, 80; formation of nom. sing., 56, i., n. 3; genitive, 73, 2; abl., 118, n. 2; as an adj., 120, 5.

*Hostis*, w. gen. or dat., 222, n. 2, (c.)

However, w. a relative, how expressed in Latin, 280, iii., (3.)

*Huc*, w. genitive, 212, n. 4, n. 3, (b.); *huc*, *hominum*, 212, n. 4, n. 3.

*Humi*, constr., 221, n. 3; *humo*, 254, n. 2; 255, n. 1.

*Huius*, pronunciation of, 9, 5; pr., 306, n. 2.

*Huius non facio*, 214, n. 1.

*Huiusmodi*, 134, n. 5; w. *qui* and the subj., 284, i., n.

Hyperallage, 323, 4, (3.)

Hyperbaton, 323, 4.

Hyperbole, 324, 6.

Hypercatalectic or hypermeter verse, 304, 3, (4.)

Hypothetical sentences, 259, n. 3, (c.), (d.), and n. 4; 260, n.; in the inf., 268, n. 4

— *n.* 6.

Hysteron proteron, 323, 4, (2.)

## I.

*I*, its sound, 7 and 8; *i* and *j* but one character, 2, 3; *i* for *ii* in gen. of 2d decl., 52; *i* changed to *e* in forming certain nouns, 56, i., n. 3; nouns in *i*, gender of, 66; genitive of, 68; genitive of Greek nouns in, 78, n.; dat. of 2d decl. in, 79; abl. sing. in, 82; 118; in gen. and dat. sing. of 5th decl., 90, n. 2; *i* ending the former part of a compound noun or adj., 103, n. 1; 131, n.; *i* in dat. sing. of nine adjs. in *us* and *er*, 107; in 1st person sing. of the perf. act., 147, 3; *i*, the characteristic vowel of the 4th conj., 149, 2; cf. 150, 5; *i* or *e* for the Greek *υ*, 283, n. 6, (1.); increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290; *i* final, quantity of, 285, n. 4, 296.

— *ia*, abstracts in, 101, 3; in nom., acc. and voc. plur., 83; 85.

— *iacus*, adjs. in, 128, i, (d.)

Iambic metre, 314; 303; tetrameter, 314, iii.; trimeter, 314, i.; catalectic, 314, iv.; dimeter, 314, vi.; hypermeter, 314, vii.; aeophalus, 314, viii.; catalectic, 314, ix.; iambico-dactylic metre, 318, n.

— *ianus*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (f.)

— *ias*, fem. patronymics in, 100, i, (b.)

— *Ibi*, ellipsis of before *ubi*, 206, (3.), (a.)

— *icis*, genitives in, 73, 2, (2.) and (3.)

74, n. 2.

— *icrus*, adjs. in, 128, 2; — *icrus* or — *itrus*.

verbal adjs. in, 129, 5.

— *ictus*, 308, 8.

— *iculus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3, n. 1.

— *icus*, adjs. in, 128, 1, (d.), and 2, (a.), and 6, (i.)

— *id*, before a relative pron., 208, (13.);

w. gen., 212, n. 3; *id temporis*, *etatis*, *id*

*genus*, etc., 224, ii., n. 3; 253, n. 3; *id ago*,

constr., 278, n. 1; 207, n. 22; *id quod* instead

of *quod*, 206, (13.), (b.); as acc. of degree,

etc., 232, (5.)

— *idem*, declined, 124, n. 6; how used, 207,

n. 27; w. gen., 212, n. 3; w. dat., 222, n. 7;

207, n. 21, (d.); supplying the place of

*idem*, *etiam*, or *tamen*, 207, n. 27; *idem*

*qui*, *ac*, *atque*, *ut*, *cum*, etc., 207, n. 21, (a.);

222, n. 7; *idem—idem*, 'at once', 207, n. 21,

(c.); as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

— *ides*, 323, 2.

— *ides* and — *iades*, patronymics in, 100, 1,

(a.); pr., 231, 4.

— *Idiotism*, 325, 6.

— *idis*, genitives in, 73, n. 1; 74, n. 2.

— *Idoneus*, *qui*, 264, 9; 270, n. 1.

— *idus*, adjs. in, 129, 2.

— *ici*, in 5th decl., quantity of the *e*, 233,

i., n. 2.

— *ies*, advs. in, 192, ii., 3.

— *Igitur*, 198, 6; its place, 279, 3, (b.);

equivalent to 'I say', 278, n. 10.

— *Ignarus*, w. genitive, 213, n. 1; 275, iii.,

n. 1, (2.)

— *ii* in genitive contracted, 52; how ac-

cented, 14, n.

— *ile*, derivative nouns in, 100, 9.

— *ilis*, adjs. in, 129, 4; 128, 4.

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illicrimo*, w. dat., 224, n. 1, 4.

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

— *Illic*, in answer to *qua*? 191, n. 1, (d.)

- Immo*, 191, n. 3.  
*Immodicus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3).  
*Immunis*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3).  
 cf. 261, n.  
*-imonium*, deriv. nouns in, 100, 6;—and  
*-imonia*, verbals in, 102, 3.  
*Impatiens*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (2).  
*Impavidus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3).  
*Impedio*, w. genit., 232, n. 7; w. *quomius*, 232, n. 11; w. inf., 232, n. 11, n.  
*Impello*, 273, n. 4.  
 Imperative, 143, 3; its tenses, 145, n. 3; how used, 267, (1.), (2.); irregular, 132, 4 and 5; subj. for imperative 237, n. 2; sing. for plur., 209, n. 2; used as a noun, 205, n. 8.  
 Imperfect tense, 145, II.; w. *oportet*, etc., 259, n. 3; the imperf. indic. for plup. subj., 259, n. 4.  
*Imperitus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3); of gerund, 275, III., n. 1, (2).  
*Impero*, constr., 273, n. 4; 262, n. 4; w. dat. and acc., 223, n. 2, (1.).  
 Impersonal verbs, 184; subject of, 184, 2; list of in 2d conj., 169; 184, n. 1; in 1st, 3d, and 4th conj., 184, n. 1; constr. w. gen., 215, 1; 219; w. dat., 223, n. 2, n. (b.); w. acc., 229, n. 8 and 7.  
*Impertio*, 249, n., and n. 3; 225, n. 1, (b).  
*Impetro*, ut, 273, n. 2.  
*Implico*, 249, n. 1, 220, 3.  
*Impono*, 241, n. 5.  
*Impos* and *impotens*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3).  
*Imprimis*, 193, II., 2.  
*Imprudens, improvidus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Impubes*, genitive, 112, 1; abl., 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.).  
*Impulsus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, n. 2, (b).  
*-in*, roots of nouns in, 56, II., n. 1 and 2; in acc. sing., 79.  
*In*, prep., constr., 235, (2.); signification and use, 195, n. 14; in composition, 196, 7; in with abl. instead of predicate acc., 230, n. 4; constr. of verbs compd. with, 224; w. abl. after verbs of placing, holding, regarding, assembling, etc., 241, n. 5; ellipsis of with some ablatives of place, 254 and as.; with ablatives of time, 253, n. 1, and n. 3; with names of towns, 254, n. 2 and n. 3.  
*Inanis*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3).  
*Incassum*, 193, II., 4.  
*Incedo*, 233, (3.), n.; 210, n. 3, (2).  
 Inceptive verbs, 187, II., 2; list of, 173.  
*Incertus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1; *incertum* est an, 193, II., n. (c.); 265, n. 3.  
 Inchoatives, see inceptive verbs.  
*Incidit ut*, 262, n. 3.  
*Incipio*, constr., 225, n. 1; *incitatus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, n. 2, (b).  
*Incipio*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Incipio*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1; 225, IV.  
*Incommodo*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n. (b).  
 Increment of nouns, 286; sing. num., 287; plur. num., 288; of verbs, 289.  
*Incrementum*, 324, 22.  
*Increpo* and *incepio*, w. gen., 217, n. 1.  
*Incumbo*, w. dat., 224, 4; w. ad, 224, n. 4.  
*Incuo*, w. genit., 217, n. 1.  
*Inde*, ellipsis of before *unde*, 206, (3.), (a.); *inde loci*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
 Indeclinable nouns, 34; 94;—adjectives, 115, 4.  
 Indefinite adjectives, 104; 139, 5, n.;—pronouns, 138;—adverbs, 191, n. 4.  
 Indicative mood, 143, 1; its tenses, 145; how used, 259; tenses used one for another, 259, n. 1—4; indic. of the protiteres with *oportet*, etc., 259, n. 3; in inserted clauses, 206, 2, n. 3 and 5; 266, 1, n. 1.  
*Indico*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Indigo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.); w. genit., 220, 3.  
*Indignor*, constr., 273, 5, n. 6.  
*Indignus*, w. abl., 244; w. genit., 244, n. 2; *indignus qui*, w. subj., 264, 9; w. supine in n., 276, III., n. 1.  
*Indigus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2).  
 Indirect questions, subj. in, 265;—indirect reference, 236, 3;—indirect discourse, 266, 1, n. and 2.  
*Induco*, id animum inducere, 233, (1.); pass. w. acc., 234, n. 1; *inductus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, n. 2, (b).  
*Indulgeo*, constr., 223, (1.), (a).  
*Induo*, w. dat. and acc., 224, 4; w. abl. and acc., 249, 1, n. 1; cf. 234, n. 1, (b); *induo* and *exuo*, constr. in pass., 234, n. 1. *-inco-ione*, fem. patronymic, 100, 1, (b).  
*Ineo*, 183, n. 3; *inire consilia*, w. inf., 270, n. 1, (c); 134, III.  
*Iners*, abl. of, 113, n. 3, and n. 1.  
*Inexpertus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Inferno*, w. genit. of crime, 217, n. 1.  
*Infero*, 224, 4, and n. 4.  
*Inferus*, comparison of, 125, 4;—*inferior*, w. dat., abl. or *quam*, 256, n. 10; *inferius* and *imus*, 205, n. 17.  
 Infinitive, 143, 4; as a noun, 268, n.; 269; its gender, 34, 4; 205, n. 8; its cases, 269, (b.); as an acc., 229, n. 5; 270, n. 5; as a verb, 269, (a.); its tenses, 145, n. 4; old inf. pres. pass. in -er, 182, 6;—inf. as logical subj., 202, n. 2; 269; how modified, 203, II., 5; with subject nom., 209, n. 5; for the genitive, 213, n. 4; its subject, 239; w. dat. instead of acc., 227, n.; construction and meaning of its tenses, 268, inf. as subject of inf., 269, n. 3; as predicate nom., 269, n. 4; *esse*, etc., with *licet* and a predicate noun or adj., case of such predicate, 269, n. 5; poetically after what verbs, 271, n. 3; depending on a verb, 270; 229, n. 5; on an adj. or noun, 270, n. 1; 275, n. 1, n. 1; absolute, 270, n. 2; ellipsis of, 270, n. 3; inf. without a subject after what verbs used, 271; with a subject, after what verbs, 272; 273; how translated, 272, n. 3; used like a noun, 273, n. 9; its place, 279, 11; inf. pres. for inf. perfect, 268, n. 1; inf. perf. for present, 268, n. 2; pres. for future, 268, n. 3; poet. to denote a purpose, 274, n. 7, (b).  
*Infinitum est*, the indic. for the subj., 259, n. 4, (2).  
*Infirmus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3).  
*Infit*, 183, 14; 180, n.  
 Inflection, 25; parts of speech inflected, 24, 4.



- Ingens*, abl. of 113, n. 3.  
*Inimicus*, w. dat., 222, n. 1; w. genit., 222, n. 2, (c.).  
*-inis*, genitives in 69, n. 1 and 2.  
*Initio*, "at first," 253, n.  
*Initor*, 222, n. 2. See also *nitior*.  
*Innocens* and *innocuius*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Insatiabilis*, w. genit., 213, n. 5, (1.).  
*Inscius*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.).  
*Inscribo*, *insculpo*, and *insero*, constr., 241, n. 6.  
*Insimulo*, w. genit., 217, n. 1.  
*Insolens* and *insolitus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Inops*, abl. of 113, n. 3; 115, 1, (a.); w. genit., 213, n. 1; cf. n. 4, (1.); w. abl., 250, 2, (1.).  
*Inquam*, 183, 5; ellipsis of 209, n. 4; its position, 279, 6.  
 Inserted clauses, 263.  
*Insinuo*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Insons*, genit. plur. of 114, n. 3; 115, 1, (a.); w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Inspergo*, 249, 1, n. 1 and n. 3.  
*Instar*, a diphthong, 94.  
*Institutio*, 273, n. 4; 230, n. 1; 231, n. 4; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
 Instrument, abl. of, 247, and n. 5; w. verbs of teaching, 231, n. 3, (c.).  
*Instruo*, 231, n. 4.  
*Insumere tempus*, 275, n. 2.  
*Insumo*, w. dat. or abl. of the thing, 245, n. 3; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Insuper*, 213, n. 1, (3.); 222, n. 2, (a.); 275, III., (2.); 270, n. 1; 275, III., n. 1, (2.).  
*Insuper*, w. acc. or abl., 255, n. 3.  
*Integer*, w. genit., 213; *integrum est ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3.  
*Intelligo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *intelligitur*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
 Intention denoted by participle in *rus* with *sum*, 182, 14; 274, n. 6.  
*Intentus*, w. acc. *nihil*, 232, (3.); *intentum esse*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., n. 2, (1.).  
*Inter*, use of, 235, 1, n. 2; in composition, 190, 1, 8;—w. *se* or *ipse*, 208, (5.); w. gerunds, 275, III., n. 3; instead of partitive gen., 212, n. 3, n. 4; construction of its compds., 224; repeated by Cicero after *interesse*, 277, II., 4.  
*Intercedo*, w. *quin*, *ne*, or *quominus*, 262, n. 11.  
*Intercludo* and *interdico*, 251, n. and n. 2.  
*Interdico*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Interdixi* or *dixi*, 253, n. 1.  
*Interea loci*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
 Interest, Roman computation of, 327.  
*Interest*, w. genit., 219; w. *mea*, etc., 219, n. 1; subject of, 219, n. 4; degree of interest how expressed, 219, n. 5.  
*Interior*, comparison of, 126, 1; *intimus*, 205, n. 17.  
 Interjections, 199; w. nom., 209, n. 13; w. dat., 223, (3.); w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240; *O*, *heu*, etc., not elicited, 305.  
*Intermitto*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Interpres*, gender of, 80; 61, 2; genit. of, 73, 3.  
*Interritus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1 and 2.  
 Interrogative particles, 198, 11;—*advs*, 104, 14; 121, 5; 139, 5, 3;—pronouns, 137; in indirect questions, 137, n.; 265, n. 2;—sentences, 200, 3.  
*Interrogo*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; constr. in pass., 232, 1; w. genit. of the crime, 217, n. 1.  
*Intersum*, w. dat., 224, 5.  
*Intus*, w. acc., 333, 1, (b.).  
*Intra*, how used, 185, n. 3; 253, n. 4, (b.).  
 Intransitive verb, 141, II.; used impersonally in pass. w. dat., 223, n. 1, (c.).  
*-ius*, adjs. in 128, 1, 2, and 6.  
*Inveado*, 233, (3.), n.  
 Invariable adjs., 122; specified, 127, 7.  
*Invento*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; *inventuntur*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.  
*Invidet*, constr., 223, (1.), (c.); 230, 1; *invidetur mihi*, 223, n. 2, n. (c.).  
*Invidius*, w. dat. of the person, 226, n. 3; *invidia Minerva*, 257, n. 7.  
 Involuntary agent of pass. verb, 248, II., and n.  
*-io*, nouns in, gender of, 59, 1; personal appellatives in, 100, 4, (b.); verbals in, 102, 7; verbs in of 3d conj., 159.  
 Ionic metre, 317; 303;—*a majore*, 317, 1;—*a minore*, 317, II.  
*-ior*, *-ius*, in terminational comparatives, 124, 1.  
*Ipsa*, declined, 135; how used, 135, n. 1; 207, n. 28; used reflexively, 208, (4.); 207, n. 23, (c.); w. *inter*, 208, (5.); *et ipse*, 207, n. 27, (b.); *ipse*, with the inf., 273, n. 9, (a.); *nunc ipsum* and *tum ipsum*, 191, n. 7.  
*Ipsus* and *ipsissimus*, 135, n. 2.  
*Irascor*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n. (b.).  
*Iri*, w. supine in *um*, 276, II., n. 3.  
 Iron age of Roman literature, 323, 4.  
 Irony, 324, 4.  
 Irregular nouns, 92;—adjs., 115;—verbs, 178—182.  
*-is*, nouns in, gender of, 62; 63; genitive of, 74;—*is* or *-eis* instead of *-is* in acc. plur. of 3d decl., 85, n. 1; abl. of adjs. in *is* used as nouns, 82, n. 4;—used as proper names, 82, n. 4, (b.);—*is* for *-us* in genitive of 4th decl., 89, 2; fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.); ellipsis of in 2d root of verbs, 162, 7, (c).  
*Is*, pron., declined, 134; how used, 207, n. 28; referring to a clause, 206, (13.); *is* and *ille* with *quidem* used pleonastically, 207, n. 21; *is* for *talis*, 207, n. 26, (b.); 264, 1, n.; *et is*, *atque is*, *isque*, *et is quidem*, 207, n. 28, (c.); ellipsis of *is*, 207, n. 26, (d.); *is-qui*, 264, 1, n.  
 Islands, gender of, 29; constr. of names of, 237, n. 5, (b.).  
*-issimus*, a, *um*, the terminational superlative, 124, 2.  
*-isso*, verbs in, 187, II., 5.  
*Iste*, how declined, 134; how used, 207, n. 23, 25; *iste qui*, w. subj., 264, 1, n.  
*Istic*, pron., declined, 134, n. 3.  
*Istic*, adv., *istinc*, *istuc*, their reference, 191, 1, (c.).  
*Istiusmodi*, 134, n. 5.  
*-it*, roots of nouns in, 56, II., n. 5; in 3d root of 4th conj., 175; of certain verbs of 3d conj., 171, n. 7.

*Da*, 191, n. 5; 277, n. 12, (a.); *ita non*, 277, n. 14.

*Daque*, its meaning, 198, 6, n.; its place, 279, 3, (b.)

*Der*, declined, 57; 71, 2; with *sum* and acc. of place, 237, n. 1; increments of, 286, 2.

*-der* and *-ter*, advs. in, 192, II. and IV. *-itas*, *-ia*, *-itia*, *-ities*, *-itudo*, and *-itus*, abstracts in, 101, 1.

*-itis*, genitive in, 78; 78, 1; 112, 1.

*-io*, frequentatives in, 187, II., 1.

*-itius* or *-icius*, adjs. in, 129, 5.

*Itum*, sup., in prosody, 284, n. 1, (2.)

*-itus*, advs. in, 192, I. and II.; adjs. in, 128, 7.

*-ium*, verbals in, 102, 2; *-ium* or *-itium*, nouns in, 100, 5.

*-ius*, genitives in, place of English accent, 15; in what adjs., 107; quantity of the i, 283, I., n. 4;—adjs. in, 128, 1, 2, and 5; voc. sing. of patris and possessives in, 52.

*-iv*, in 24 roots of verbs, 175; 171, n. 8.

*-ivus*, adjs. in, 129, 7.

## J.

*J*, vowel before, in prosody, 283, IV., n. 1. *Jaceo*, 210, n. 3, (2.); 238, (3.), n.

*Jam*, with a negative, 191, n. 6; *jamdum*, ib.

*Jecur*, genitive of, 71, 3; increments of, 286, 2.

*Jecurus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)

*Jesus*, decl. of, 53.

*Jocus*, plur. *joci* and *joca*, 92, 2.

*Jubar*, abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.)

*Jubeo*, constr., 223, (2.); 278, 2, (d.); 272, n. 6; 282, n. 4; ellipsis of *jubeo valere*, 238, n. 2; *jubeor*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Jucundus*, constr., 276, III., n. 1 and 4; *jucundum est*, w. *quod*, 278, 5, n. 6.

*Judico*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; in pass., 210, n. 3, (3.), (c.); *judicari* w. predicate nominative, 271, n. 2.

*Jugerum*, 93, 1; 94.

*Jugum*, quantity of its compds., 233, IV., n. 1.

*Jungo*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.

*Junctus* and *conjunctus*, constr., 222, n. 3, (c.)

*Jupiter*, genitive of, 71; declined, 85.

*Jure aliquid facere*, without *cum*, 247, 2.

*Juro*, its compds., 189, n. 3;—*juratus*, with active meaning, 183, 16;—*juro*, poet. w. inf., 271, n. 3.

*Jusjurandum*, declined, 91.

*Justum erat*, indie. for subj., 259, n. 3; *justum est* with inf. as subject, 269, n. 2; *justo* after comparatives, 256, n. 9; its place, 279, n. 1.

*Juvat*, w. acc., 229, n. 7.

*Juvenalis*, abl. of, 82, n. 4, (b.)

*Juvenis*, abl. of, 82, n. 4, (b.); 113, n. 2; comparison of, 126, 4; 115, 1, (a.); for in *juventute*, 253, n. 6.

*Juxta* as an adv., 196, n. 4; *juxta ac* or *atque*, 198, 8, n.

## K.

*K*, its use, 2, 4.

Key to the Odes of Horace, 321.

Knowing, verbs of, their construction, 273.

## L.

*L*, roots of nouns in, 56, II.; gender of nouns in, 66; genitive of, 70;—*anal*, quantity of, 299, 2.

*Labore*, constr., 278, n. 1; poet. w. inf., 271, n. 8.

Labials, 3, 1.

*Lac*, gender of, 66, n.; genitive of, 70.

*Lacesso*, constr., 225, n. 1.

*Lator*, w. abl., 247, 1, (2.); acc., 232, (3.)

*Latus*, w. abl. or gen., 213, n. 5, (4.); cf. n. 4, (1.)

*Lampas*, declined, 86.

*Lapis*, declined, 57.

*Lar*, pr., 284, n. 1.

*Largus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.); cf. n. 4, (1.)

*Lars*, genitive of, 71.

*Lassus*, w. genit., 213, n. 2.

*Latco*, w. dat. or acc., 223, n. 2, n., (b.), and (1.); (a.)

Latin grammar, its divisions, 1.

*Latinus*, for *ludis Latinis*, 263, n. 1.

*Latus*, *altus*, and *longus*, w. acc. of space, 236.

*Lavo* and *lazo*, sed. *se*, 229, n. 4, 1; *lavo*, w. abl. of price, 253, n. 1.

*Lazo*, w. abl., 251, n.

Leading clause, subject, and verb, 201, 13.

*Lego* (*ere*), its form in the compds., 189, n. 2; constr., 230, n. 1.

*Lenio*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.

*Leutus*, adjs. in, 123, 4.

Letters, 2; division of, 3; sounds of, 7; numeral, 118, 7; capital, 2, 5; silent, 12, n.; terminal in 8d decl., 55.

*Levo*, w. abl., 251, n.; w. gen. poet., 220, 2.

*Lex*, gender, 65, 2; genitive, 78, 2, (2.);—*legem dare*, constr., 273, 2, n. 4;—*lege*, abl. of manner, 247, 2.

*Liber*, w. abl. or gen., 213, n. 5, (4.); cf. 220, 2; and 251, n.; w. genit., 213, n. 5, (4.); cf. n. 4, (1.)

*Libero*, w. abl., 251, n.; poetically, w. genit., 220, 2.

*Liberalis*, w. genit., 213, n. 5, (1.)

*Libram* and *libras*, 236, n. 7.

*Libro*, abl. w. adj. without prep., 254, n. 2.

*Licentia*, w. genit. of gerund, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)

*Licco*, w. genit. of price, 214, n. 3; w. abl., 252, n. 1.

*Licet*, w. dat., 223, n. 2; w. subj., the acc. with the inf. or the inf. alone, 273, 4; 262, n. 4; w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2; case of the predicate after *licet esse*, etc., 269, n. 5; w. indicative instead of subj., 259, n. 3, (a.)

—*licet*, conj. w. subj., 263, 2.

Limiting acc., 234, n.;—abl., 250 and n.

—*rimus*, superlatives in, 125, 2.

Linguals and liquids, 3, 1.

*Liquidus*, pr., 284, n. 5., n. 8.  
*-is*, adv. in, comparison, 125, 2.  
*Litteras dare, scribere* or *mittere*, 225, III., n. 4; ellipsis of, 229, n. 4, 2; *litteras* or *litteris*, after verbs of teaching, 231, n. 8, (c.)  
*Litotes*, 324, 9.  
*Litum*, pr., 284, n. 1, (2.)  
 Loading, verbs of, w. abl., 249, 1.  
*Locuples*, genitive of, 112, 1; abl., 113, n. 2; gen. plur., 114, n. 3; 115, 1, (a.); w. abl. or gen., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
*Locus*, plur. *loci* and *loca*, 92, 1., 2; *loco* and *locis*, abl. of place without a preposition, 254, a. 2; *loco*, w. gen. for predicate nom., 210, n. 3; for predicate acc., 230, n. 4; *loci* and *locorum*, 212, n. 4, n. 2 and n. 4; *locus* in apposition to names of towns, 237, n. 2; *loco*, w. gen. of price, 241, n. 5; w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1; w. participles in *du*, 274, n. 7; w. genitive of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)  
 Logical subject, 202, 3;—predicate, 203, 3.  
 Long syllable, 232, 2.  
*Longe*, w. comparatives and superlatives, 127, 3; 256, n.; w. acc. of space, 236, n. 1; *longe gentium*, 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.); *longius* without *quam*, 256, n. 6.  
*Longitudine*, w. genit. of measure, 211, n. 6, (8.)  
*Longus*, w. acc. of space, 236; *longum est*, the indicative instead of the subjunctive, 259, n. 4, (2.)  
*-is*, genitive of nouns in, 77, 2, (2.)  
*Ludis*, for *in tempore ludorum*, 253, n. 1; 257, n. 9, (2.)  
*Luo*, w. abl., 252, n. 1.

M.

*M*, roots of nouns ending in, 56, 1.; before *d* changed to *n*, 134, n. 1; dropped in the 3d root of certain verbs, 171, n. 6; final, quantity of, 259, 3; elided, 305, 2.  
*-ma*, Greek nouns in, genitive plur. of, 84, n. 2.  
*Mactus*, 115, 5; *macte*, w. abl., 247, 1, n. 2; w. genit., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
*Magis* and *maxime*, use of in forming comparatives and superlatives, 127, 1; pleonastic with *male*, etc., 256, n. 13.  
*Magnus*, compared, 125, 5; w. supine in *n*, 276, III., n. 1; *magnam partem*, 234, II., n. 3; *magni parvi*, etc., w. verbs of valuing, 214, n. 1; *magno parvo*, etc., w. verbs of buying, etc., 252, n. 3.  
*Male*, constr. of its compounds *malefacio*, *maledico*, etc., 225, 1.; *male*, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3; *male, bene*, or *prudenter facio*; *male* or *bene fit*, w. *quod*, 273, 5, (1.)  
*Malo*, conjugated, 178, 3; constr., 273, 4; 262, n. 4; *mallem*, meaning of, 260, II., n. 2; constr. w. abl. like a comparative, 256, n. 16, (3.)  
*Malus*, compared, 125, 5.  
*Mando*, constr., 223, n. 2, and (1.), (b.); 273, n. 4; 274, n. 7, (a.); 262, n. 4.  
*Mane*, 94; 192, 3.  
*Maneo*, 210, n. 3, (2.); compds. of, 233, (3.), n.  
*Manifestus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.

Manner, advs. of, 191, III., abl. of, 247; with *cum*, 247, 2; w. *de* or *ex*, 247, n. 8.  
*Manus*, gender of, 88; ellipsis of, 205, n. 7; *manum injicere*, 233, (1.)  
*Mare*, abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.); ellipsis of, 205, n. 7.  
*Mas*, gender of, 62, n. 1; genitive, 72, n. 1; genit. plur., 83, II., 3, n.; used to distinguish the sex of epicenes, 33, n.  
 Masculine nouns of 3d decl., 58; exceptions in, 59—61;—masculine caesura, 310, n. 1.  
*Materfamilias*, declined, 91.  
*Materia*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)  
 Material nouns, 26, 6;—adjs., 104, 8.  
*Maturo*, scil. *se*, 229, n. 4, 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Me* and *mi* for *mihi*, 133, n. 1.  
*Mea, tua*, etc., w. *refert* and *interest*, 219, n. 1 and 2.  
 Means, abl. of, 247; when a person, 247, n. 4; w. passive verbs, 248.  
 Measure or metre, 303; Roman measures of length, etc., 327.  
*Medior*, w. dat., 223, n. (b.); its gerundive, 275, II., n. 1.  
*Medicor*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Medior*, constr., 273, n. 1.  
*Medius*, how translated, 205, n. 17; w. genit., 213; w. *inter*, 212, n. 4, (2.); w. abl., 213, n. 4, (5.); its place, 278, 7, (b.)  
*Mel*, genitive of, 70, n.; 56, II., n. 6; abl., 82, n. 5, (b.); 84.  
*Melas*, genitive of, 72, n. 2.  
*Melius fuit* and *erat* instead of subj., 259, n. 3; *melius est*, w. dat., 223, 1; *melius erit*, w. perf. inf., 263, n. 2.  
*Melos*, nom. plur. of, 83, 1; 94.  
*Meme* and *mepte*, intensive, 133, n. 2.  
*Memini*, 183, 3; constr., 216; w. present inf., 268, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *memento*, poet. w. inf., 271, n. 3.  
*Memor*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.); w. subj., 213, n. 4.  
*Memoro*, constr., 272, n. 6.  
*-men*, nouns in, gender of, 61, 4, and 66; genitive, 71, 1; *-men* or *-mentum*, verbals in, 102, 4.  
*Mens*; in *mentem venit*, constr., 216, n. 3.  
*Mercor*, w. abl. of price, 252, n.  
*-met*, enclitic, 133, n. 2; 139, n. 1.  
 Metalepsis, 324, 6.  
 Metaphor, 324, 1.  
 Metaplasma, 322, 1.  
 Metathesis, 322, 9.  
*Meto*, 171, n. 2.  
 Metonymy, 324, 2.  
 Metre, 303; how divided, 303, 3; different kinds, 310—317.  
 Metres, compound, 318; Horatian, 320.  
*-metros*, Greek nouns in, 49, 2.  
*Metuo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, n. 7; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Meus*, voc. sing. masc., 105, n. 3; 189, 1; used reflexively, 189, n. 2; how declined, 189; *meum est*, 211, n. 8, (3.), (a.)  
*Mi*, for *mihi*, 183, n. 1.  
 Middle voice in Greek, 248, n. 1, (2.)

**Mile**, Roman, 327.  
**Miles**, declined, 57; gender, 30; 61, 2; genitive, 73, 2; used collectively, 209, n. 11, (1.). (b.); ellipsis of, 205, n. 7.  
**Military expressions without cum**, 249, 111., n.  
**Militis**, construed like names of towns, 221, n. 3.  
**Millie**, how used, 118, 6; ellipsis of, 327, n. 5.  
**Million**, how expressed, 118, 5, (a.); a million sesterces, 327, n. 6.  
**Min'** for *minime*, 133, n. 1.  
*-mino*, in old imperatives, 162, 5.  
**Minor** and compds. w. acc. and dat., 223, (1.). (b.).  
*Ministro*, w. dat., 223, n. 2; and (1.). (b.).  
*Minus* and *minimum*, w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1; *minus*, for *non*, 277, 1., n. 14; *minus* without *quam*, 256, n. 6.  
**Miror**, conjugated, 161; w. genit. poet., 220, 1; constr., 273, n. 6.  
*Mirum* est ut, 262, n. 3, n. 8; *mirum quam*, quantum, etc., 264, n. 4.  
**Misceo**, how construed, 245, 11., 2, and n. 1; 224, n. 3.  
*Miseror*, *miseresco*, *miseret*, *miseritum* est, and *miserescit*, w. gen. of the thing, 215; *miseret*, etc., w. acc. of the person, 215, n. 3; 229, n. 6; and w. acc. of the thing, 215, n. 2; w. acc. of degree, 215, n. 3.  
**Mitis**, declined, 109.  
**Mitto**, w. *ad* or *in*, 225; w. two dat., 227; 273, 2, (c.); w. participle in *duo*, 274, n. 7; w. inf., 271, n. 3; w. *quod*, 273; *missum facio*, 274, n. 4.  
**Mm**, initial, 12, n. 2.  
*Mobilis*, pr., 234, n. 5, n. 1.  
*Moderor*, constr., 223, (1.). (a.).  
**Modi** annexed to pronouns, 134, n. 5; its use, 211, n. 6, (5.).  
*Modicus*, w. genit., 213, n. 5, (1.).  
**Modified subject**, 202, 6; itself modified, 202, 111., n. 1.—predicate, 203, 5.  
**Modify or limit**, in what sense used, 202, 4, n.  
**Modo** as abl. of manner, 247, 2.  
**Modo**, conditional conj., 198, 5; w. subj., 263, 2; *modo*, adv., 193, 11., 3; *modo ne*, 263, 2, n. 1; *modo—modo*, 271, n. 8.  
**Modus**, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, 111., n. 1, (1.).  
**Molto**, 229, n. 4, 1.  
**Molest**, *agere* or *graviter fero*, w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.  
**Monco**, conjugated, 157; constr., 218, and n. 1, 2; 273, n. 4; without *ut*, 262, n. 4; w. acc. and inf., 273, n. 4, (c.); in pass., 234, 1.  
**Money**, Roman, 327, pp. 370—372.  
**Monocolon**, 319, 2.  
**Monometer**, 304, 2; 313, 1.  
**Monoptotes**, 94.  
**Monosyllables**, quantity of, 294, (a.); 299, 1; their place, 279, 8.  
**Mons**, gender of, 64, 1.  
**Months**, Roman, 326, 2; names of, 326; division of, 326, 1; gender of names of, 23; 115, 3; abl. of names in *er* and *is*, 82, n. 2, (a.).

**Moods**, 143.  
**Mora**, in prosody, 232, 2.  
*Mos* or *moris* est, constr., 262, n. 2; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, 111., n. 1, (1.); *more* as abl. of manner without *cum*, 247, 2.  
**Motion or tendency**, verbs of, constr., 225, 1v.; 237, n. 3.  
**Motum**, pr., 284, n. 5, n. 1.  
**Mountainous**, gender of names of, 28, 3.  
**Motuo**, constr., 229, n. 4, 1; 251, n.; *motus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, n. 2, (b.).  
*-ms*, nouns in, genitive of, 77, 2, (1.).  
**Multiplicatives**, 121, 1.  
*Multo*, (are), constr., 217, n. 5.  
**Multus**, compared, 125, 5; *multi* et, how used, 278, n. 5; *multo*, w. comparatives, etc., 127, 8; 256, n. 16; so *multum*, ib., n.; *multum*, w. genitive, 212, n. 3, n. 1; as acc. of degree, 212, (2.); *multus* instead of an adverb, 205, n. 15.  
**Mus**, gender of, 30; 67, 4; genitive, 76, n. 3; genit. plur., 89, 11, 3.  
*Mumificus*, w. genit., 213, n. 5, (1.).  
**Mutes**, division of, 3, 1; a mute and a liquid in prosody, 283, 1v., n. 2.  
**Mutilus**, w. abl., 213, n. 5, (5.).  
**Muto**, constr., 252, n. 5; 229, n. 4, 1.

## N.

**N**, roots of nouns in, 56, n.; nouns in, gender of, 58; 61; genitive of, 70; 71; final quantity of, 239, n.; dropped in the 3d root of certain verbs, 171, n. 6.  
*-nactis*, genitive of Greek names in, 78, 2, (1.).  
*Nam* and *enim*, 198, 7, n., (a.); place of, 279, 3, (a.) and (c.).  
**Names of persons**, their order, 279, 9, (b.); of nations instead of those of countries, 256, n. 3; 237, n. 6.  
*Narro*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6; *narrow*, constr., 271, n. 2.  
*Nascor*, w. abl., 246, n. 1; *nascitur*, w. subj., 263, n. 3, n. 2.  
**Nato**, 232, (2.), n. 1; constr. of compds., 233, (3.), n.  
*Natura fert*, constr., 262, n. 3, n. 2.  
*Naturale* est, w. *ut* and the subj., 262, n. 3, n. 3.  
*Natus*, w. abl., 246; *natus*, 'old', w. acc., 236, n. 3; poet. w. inf., 271, n. 3.  
*Natu*, 94; 250, 1; 126, 4.  
*Nauti habere*, 214, n. 1.  
*-ne*, enclitic conjunction, 198, 11; quantity of, 235, n.; as an interrogative particle, 198, 11, n., (c.); its place, 279, 3, (c.).  
**Ne**, adv., the primitive negative particle, 191, 111., n. 3, p. 158; w. *quidem*, ib.; 279, 3, (d.); w. subjunctives used as imperatives, ib.; in wishes, asseverations and concessions, ib.; 260, n. 6, (b.) with the imperative, 267, n. 1; *ne multa*, *ne plura*, etc., 229, n. 3, 2;—in intentional clauses, 262, n. 6; *ne non*, for *ut*, 262, n. 4; ellipsis of, 262, n. 6; *ne*, for *nequum*, 262, n. 5.  
*Nec* or *neque*, 198, 1; *nec non* or *neque non*, ib.; *nec—nec*, with the singular, 209, n. 12, (b.). (a.); *neque*, for *et ne*, after *ut* and *ne*, 262, n. 6, n. 4;—*nec ipse*, 207, n. 27,

(b.); *nec* is, 207, n. 26, (c.); *necne* or *annon*, 265, n. 2; *necdum*, 277, i., n. 16; its place, 279, 3, (a.)

*Necesse*, defective adj., 115, 5; *necesse est* ut, etc., 262, n. 3, n. 2; without *ut*, 262, n. 4; *necesse fuit*, the indic. for the subj., 269, n. 2; w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2; w. predicate dat. 269, n. 5; 273, 4.

Necessity, how expressed, 162, 15.

*Necessario*, after comparatives, 256, n. 9.

*Nedum*, w. subj., 262, n. 5; without a verb, ib.

*Nefas*, gender of, 62, n. 2: 94; w. supine in *u*, 276, iii., n. 2.

Negatives, two, their force, 277, n. 3-5; negative joined to the conjunction, as, *nec quisquam*, *nec ullus*, etc., instead of *et nemo*, *et nullus*, etc., 278, n. 9.

*Negligens*, constr., 218, n. 4, (2.)

*Nego*, instead of *non dico*, 279, 15, (b.); w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6; *negor*, w. inf., 271, n. 3.

*Ngotium*, ellipsis of, 211, n. 8, n.

*Nemo*, 94 and 95; for *nullus*, 207, n. 81; *nemo est qui*, 264, 7, n. 2; *nemo non*, 'every one', 277, n. 5, (c.)

*Nempe*, 191, n. 4; 193, 7, n., (a.)

Neoterism, 325, 3.

*Nepqua* and *neque*, 138, 2.

*Nepqua*, indeclinable, 115, 4; compared, 126, 5.

*Neque*, see *nec*; for *et non*, 198, 1, (c.); *neque-neque*, or *nec-nec*, *neque-nec*, *nec-neque*, 198, 1, (c.); *neque-et*, ib.; *neque* w. general negatives, 279, 15, (b.); *neque non*, 277, n. 3; *neque quisquam*, *ullus*, *umquam*, etc., 278, n. 9.

*Nequeo*, how conjugated, 182, n.; w. inf., 271, n. 4.

*Ne quis* or *nequis*, how declined, 138, 2; *ne quis*, instead of *ne quisquam*, 207, n. 81; 278, n. 9.

*Nerio*, genitive of, 69, n. 2.

*Nescio* an, 198, 11, n., (c.); 265, n. 3; *nescio qui*, 265, n. 4; *nescio quomodo*, ib.; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.

*Nescius*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.)

*-neus* and *-nus*, adjs. in, 128, 1, (b.)

Neuter, nouns, 34; not found in 1st and 5th decls., 40, 9; of 2d decl., 46; 54; of 3d decl., 65; excls. in, 66; 67; adjs. used adverbally, 206, n. 10; adjs. and adj. prons. w. genit., 212, n. 3; acc. of denoting degree w. another acc. after transitive verbs, 231, n. 5; verbs, 141; form of, 142, 1; neuter passives, 142, 2; neuter verbs with cognate, etc., subjects, 234, iii.; w. cognate acc., 232, (1.); w. acc. of degree, etc., 232, (3.); w. abl. of agent, 248, n. 2; used impersonally, 184, 2; in the passive voice, 142, n. 2; participles of, 102, 18; neuters of possessive pronouns and adjs. instead of the genitive of their personal pronouns, or of a corresponding noun, 211, n. 8, (3.), (a.) and (b.)

Neutral passive verbs, 142, 3.

*Neve* or *neu*, 198, 8; after *ut* and *ne*, 262, n. 4.

*Ni* or *nisi*, 198, 5, n., (b.); *nisi*, 'except', 261, n. 6; 277, n. 16; *nisi quod*, ib.; *nisi vero*, and *nisi forte*, 'unless perhaps', ib.

*Nihil*, *nihilum*, 94; w. genitive, 212, n. 1; instead of *non*, 277, n. 2, (b.); 282, (3.); *nihil aliud quam* or *nisi*, 277, n. 16; *nihil*, acc. w. *extimo* and *moror*, 214, n. 2 *nihil* w. *facio*, 214; as acc. of degree, 215, n. 3; 232, (3.); *nihil est quod*, etc., 264, 7, n. 2; *nihil abest*, *quin*, 262, n. 7; *nihil antiquius habeo* or *duco quam*, w. subj., 278, n. 1; *nihilum*, 277, i., n. 16.

*Nimius*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)

*Nimio*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 16; as abl. of price, 252, n. 3.

*-nis*, nouns in, gender of, 63, 1.

*Nitor*, w. abl., 245, ii.; w. in or *ad*, 245, ii., n. 2; w. inf. or subj., 273, 1, n. 1.

*Niz*, 56, n. 2; genit. sing., 78, (3.); genit. plur., 88, ii., 8.

No, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), n.

*Noctu* or *nocte*, 253, n. 1.

*Nolo*, conjugated, 178, 2; constr., 273, 4; *noli* w. inf., paraphrasing the imperative, 267, n. and n. 3; *nollem*, meaning of, 260, ii., n. 2.

*Nomen est*, constr., 226, n. 1; 211, n. 2, n.; *nomin*, without a prep. before the genitive following verbs of accusing, 217, n. 2, (b.); its place, 279, 9, (b.)

Nominative, 37; construction of, 209; 210; ellipsis of, 209, n. 1 and 2; wanting, 209, n. 3; w. inf., 209, n. 6; after interjections, 209, n. 13; formation in 3d decl. from the root, 53; plural, 3d decl., 88; of adjs. of 3d decl., 114. See Subject-nominative and Predicate-nominative.

*Nomino*, 230; pass., 210, n. 3, (3.)

*Non*, 191, n. 3; ellipsis of, after *non modo*, etc., followed by *ne quidem*, 277, n. 6; *non quo*, *non quod*, *non quin*, 262, n. 9; *non est quod*, *cur*, *quare*, or *quamobrem*, w. subj., 264, 7, n. 3; *non* before a negative word, 277, n. 3;—before *ne quidem*, 277, n. 6; position of, 279, 15, (b.); *non*, rare with the imperative, 267, n. 1; difference between *non* and *haud*, 191, n. 3; *non nemo*, *non nulli*, *non nihil*, *non numquam*, different from *nemo non*, etc., 277, n. 5, (c.); *non nihil*, to some extent, 232, (3.); *nonne*, 198, 11, n., (c.); *non modo—sed etiam*, and *non modo—sed*, equivalent to *non dicam—sed*, 277, n. 10; *non dubito*, *non est dubium*, *non ambigo*, *non procul*, *non abest*, *quin*, 262, 2, n. 7; *non quo non*, *non quod non*, or *non quia non*, instead of *non quin*; *non eo quod*, *non ideo quod*, for *non quod*, 262, n. 9; *non priusquam*, *non nisi*, w. abl. absolute, 257, n. 4; *nondum*, 277, i., n. 16; *non* in the second member of adversative sentences without *et* or *vero*, 278, n. 11; *non nisi*, separated, 273, 3, (d.)

*Nonne*, the *Nones*, 326, 2.

*Nonnullus*, pronominal adj., 189, 5, (1.)

*Nos*, for *ego*, n. 7.

*Nosco*, 171, n. 8.

*Noster*, how declined, 189, 8.

*Nostras*, how declined, 189, 4, (b.)

*Nostrum*, how formed, 183, 3; different use of *nostrum* and *nostrum*, 212, n. 2, n. 2.

'Not' and 'nor,' how expressed with the imperative, 267, n. 1; with subj., 260, n. 6, (b.)

- Nouns, 26—108**; proper, common, abstract, collective, and material, 26; gender of, 27—34; number of, 35; cases of, 36, 37; declension of, 38—40; nouns of 3d decl., mode of declining, 56; compound, declension of, 91; irregular, 92; variable, 92; defective, in case, 94; in number, 95, 96; singular and plur. having different meanings, 97; redundant, 99; verbal, 102; derivation of, 100—102; composition of, 103; how modified, 201, III., R. 1; used as adjs., 206, R. 11; extent given to the term noun, 24, R.
- Novum est ut**, 262, R. 3, N. 2.
- Nox**, declined, 57; genitive of, 78, 2, (4.); genit. plur., 83, II., 3.
- Noxius**, w. genit. of the crime, 213, R. 1, (3.); 217, R. 1, (a.); w. dat., 222, R. 1, (a.).
- ns**, participles in, abl. of, 113, 2; when used as nouns, 82, R. 4; nouns in, genit. plur. of, 83, II., 4; genit. sing. of, 77, 2, (2.) and R. 1; participials and participles in, construction of, 213, R. 1 and 3.
- Nubilo**, scil. calo, 257, 9, (1.)
- Nubo**, w. dat., 223; quantity of *w* in compds. of, 235, 2, R. 3.
- Nudo**, w. abl., 251, R.
- Nudus**, w. abl. or genit., 213, R. 5, (4.); 250, R. 1, (1); w. acc., 213, R. 4, (3.)
- Nullus**, how declined, 107; a pronominal adj., 139, 5, (1.); for *non*, 205, R. 15; refers to more than two, 212, R. 2, N., (b.)
- nullus est, qui**, w. subj., 264, 7, N. 2; *nullus non*, 271, R. 5, (c.); *nullus* and *nullo*, instead of *neminis* and *nemine*, 207, R. 31, (c.); *nullusdum*, 277, 1, R. 16.
- Nun**, with its compounds, meaning of, 198, 11, R. 1, (b.); *nun—am*, used only in direct questions, 265, R. 2.
- Number**, 26, 7; of nouns, 35; of verbs, 146; of the verb when belonging to two or more subjects, 209, R. 12; when belonging to a collective noun, 209, R. 11.
- Numbers**, cardinal, 117, 118; ordinal, 119, 120; distributive, 119, 120; w. genit. plur., 212, R. 2, (4.)
- Numerals**, adjs., 104, 106; classes of, 117; placed in the relative clause, 206, (7.), (b.); w. genit. plur., 212, R. 2, (4.); letters, 118, 7; adverbs, 119; 192, 3; multiplicative, 121; proportional, temporal, and interrogative, 121.
- Nummus**, 327, R. 3, (b.)
- Numquam non**, and *non numquam*, 277, R. 4, (c.)
- Numquis**, *num quis*, or *numqui*, etc., how declined, 137, 3; *numquis est qui*, 264, 7, N. 2; *numqua* and *numqua*, 137, R. 4; *numquid*, as an interrogative particle, 198, 11.
- Numquidnam**, 137, 4.
- Nunc**, use of, 277, R. 15; *nunc—nunc*, 277, R. 8; *nunc* and *etiamnunc*, w. imperfect and perfect, 259, R. 1, (b.)
- Nuncupo**, w. two accs., 230, R. 1; *nuncupor*, 210, R. 3, (3.)
- Nundinae**, 326, 2, (11.)
- Nuntio**, 273, 2, (c.); 272, R. 1; pass. w. inf., 271, R. 1; *nuntiatur*, constr., 271, R. 2.
- Nuper**, *modo* and *mox*, 191, R. 6.
- Nusquam**, w. genit., 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.)
- Nuz**, pr., 234, 8, 5, R. 2.
- nz**, nouns in, genitive of, 65, 6, 7.
- O.
- O**, sound of, 7, 8; changed to *w* in forming certain nominatives from the root, 56, I., R. 4, and II., R. 4; nouns in, gender of, 58, 59; genitive of, 69; Greek nouns in, gender of, 59, R. 3; genitive of, 69, R. 3; amplificatives in, 100, 4, (a.); verbals in, 102, 6, (c.); adverbs in, 192; increment in, of 3d decl., 287, 8; of plur., 288; of verbs, 290; final, quantity of, 285, R. 4; 297; sometimes used for *w* after *v*, 322, 8; 53; 178, 1, N.
- O**, interj. w. nom., 209, R. 15; w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240, R. 1; *O si*, w. subj., 263, 1.
- Ob**, government of, 195, 4; 275, III., R. 3; in composition, 196, 1, 8; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, R. 1, (b.)
- Obedio**, how formed, 189, N. 3.
- Obequo**, constr., 233, (3.)
- Obo**, constr., 233, (3.), N.; pass., 234, III.
- Object**, of an active verb, 229; the dative of the remote object, 223, N.
- Objective genitive**, 211, R. 2; after adjs., 213; dat. for objective genitive, 211, R. 5; —propositions after what, 273, R. 8.
- Oblique cases**, 37; their place, 279, 10 and 2.
- Obviscor**, w. genitive or acc., 216; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.
- Obnoxius**, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (b.)
- Obno**, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1.
- Obsecro**, w. two accs., 231, R. 1.
- Obsequar**, *obtempero*, and *obstricto*, w. dat., 223, R. 2.
- Obsecro**, w. ut or *ne*, 262, N. 3.
- Obses**, gender of, 30; genitive of, 73, R. 1.
- Obsonor**, w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1.
- Obsto**, and *obisto*, *quominus*, etc., 262, R. 11.
- Obtemperatio**, w. dat., 222, R. 8.
- Obtrektor**, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)
- Obtrius**, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (b.)
- Obtriam**, w. dat., 223, 1.
- Occasio**, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1, (1.)
- Occumbo**, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 224, R. 5.
- Occurro**, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 233, (3.); *occurrit ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 1.
- Ocio**, comparison of, 126, 1.
- ocis**, genitive in, 78, (4.); 112, 2.
- Odonarius**, 304, 2; —iambic, 314, III.
- Odi**, 183, 1.
- odis**, genitives in, 76, R. 5; 75, R. 1.
- odus**, Greek nouns in, 49, 2.
- OE**, how pronounced, 9; in nom. plur. 2d decl., 54, 2.
- Oedipus**, genitive of, 76, R. 5.
- Olea**, gender of, 42.
- Officio**, w. *quominus*, etc., 262, R. 11.
- Ohe**, pr., 233, I., R. 5; 236, R. 5.
- Oh**, how pronounced, 9, 1.
- ois**, genitives in, 75, R. 2; words in, pr., 233, I., R. 6, (3.)

Old, how expressed in Latin, 236, n. 3.  
*Oleo* and *redoleo*, w. acc., 232, (2.)  
*Olius*, for *ille*, whence *olli*, masc. plur. for *illi*, 134, n. 1.  
*-olus*, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3, a. 2.  
*-om*, for *-um*, 53.  
Omission of a letter or syllable, see syncope—of a word, see ellipsis.  
*Omnes*, w. genitive plur., 212, n. 2, n. 6;  
*omnium*, w. superlatives, 127, 4, n. 2;  
*omnia*, acc. of degree, 232, (3.)  
*-on*, Greek nouns in, 54, 1; *-on* for *-orum*, 54, 4; *-on*, roots in, of 3d decl., 56, II., n. 1;  
nouns in, of 3d decl., 58 and 61, 5; genit. plur. in, of Greek nouns, 83, II., 6; *-os* and *-on*, nouns in, of 2d decl., changed to *-us* and *-um*, 54, 1.  
*Onustus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
*Operam dare*, w. ut, 273, n. 1; w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., n. 2, (1.); w. acc. id., 232, (3.); *-operâ meâ*, equivalent to *per me*, 247, n. 4.  
*Opinio est*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1;  
*opinioe* after comparatives, 256, n. 9; its place, 279, n. 1.  
*Opinor*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Oporet*, w. inf. as its subject, 269, n. 2;  
w. inf. acc. with the inf., or the subj., 273, n. 5; without ut, 262, n. 4.  
*Oporebat*, *oportuit*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, n. 3, (a.)  
*Oppido*, w. adjs., 127, 2.  
*Oppidum*, in apposition to names of towns, 237, n. 2, (b.)  
*Opteo*, w. abl., 249, I., n. 1.  
*Optabitis erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, n. 3.  
*Optime*, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Opto*, 271, n. 4; 273, 4; *opto*, w. subj., without ut, 262, n. 4.  
*Opulentus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)  
*Opus*, work, declined, 57; *opus*, need, w. genit. and acc., 211, n. 11; w. abl. of the thing, 243; as subject or predicate of *est*, 243, n. 2; 210, a. 5; w. perfect participle, 243, n. 1; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., n. 2; *opus est*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
*-or*, nouns in, gender of, 58; 61; genit. of, 70; 71; verbals in, 102, 1; 102, 6.  
*-Oratio obliqua*, 266, 1, n., and 2; 273, 3; tenses in, 266, n. 4.  
*Orbo*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Orbus*, w. abl., 250, 2, (1.); or genit., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
Order, advs. of, 191, 1.  
Ordinal numbers, 119, 120; in expressions of time, 236, n. 2.  
Origin, participles denoting, w. abl., 246;  
from a country expressed by a patial, 246, n. 3.  
*-oris*, genitives in, 76; 112, 2; *-oris*, genit. in, 75.  
*-orium*, verbals in, 102, 8.  
*Oriundus*, constr., 246.  
*Oro*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; w. ut, *ne*, or inf., 273, 2, n. 4; without ut, 262, n. 4.  
Orthoëpy, 6—23.  
Orthography, 2—5; figures of, 322.  
*Ortus*, w. abl., 246.  
*-os*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 54, 1; of 3d

decl., gender of, 58 and 61, 8; genit. of, 75;  
Greek genitives in, 68, 1; final in plural accs., sound of, 8, n. 3; quantity of, 300.  
*Os*, (*oris*), gender of, 61, 8; genit. of, 75;  
wants genit. plur., 94.  
*Os*, (*ossis*), gender of, 61, 3; genit. of, 75, n. 1.  
*Ossa*, gender of, 42, 1.  
*Ostendo*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*-osus*, adjs. in, 128, 4.  
*-otis*, genit. in, 75; 112, 2.  
'Ought' or 'should,' expressed by indic. of *debeo*, 259, n. 4, (2.)  
*-ox*, nouns in, genit. of, 78, 2, (4.)  
Oxymoron, 324, 26.

P.

P, roots of nouns ending in, 56, 1; when inserted after *m* in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 171, 3.  
*Pace* or *in pace*, 253, n. 1; 257, n. 9, (2.)  
Palatals, 3, 1.  
*Palleo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1.  
*Pan*, acc. of, 80, n.  
*Panthus*, voc. of, 54, 5.  
*Par*, abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.); 113, n. 3; superlative of, 126, 2; w. dat. or genit., 223, n. 2, (a.); w. cum and the abl., 222, n. 6;  
*par erat*, indic. instead of subj., 269, n. 3, (a.); pr., 284, n. 1; *par ac*, 198, 3.  
Parabola, 324, 30.  
Paradigms, of nouns, 1st decl., 41; 2d decl., 46; 3d decl., 57; 4th decl., 87; 5th decl., 90;—of adjs. of 1st and 2d decl., 105—107; 3d decl., 108—111;—of verbs, *sum*, 153; 1st conj., 155, 156; 2d conj., 157; 3d conj., 158, 159; 4th conj., 160; deponent, 161; periphrastic, conj., 162; defective, 183; impersonal, 184.  
Paragoge, 322, 6.  
*Paratus*, constr., 222, n. 4, (2.)  
*Parco*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n., (a.); *parcitur mihi*, ib., (c.); w. inf., 271, n. 3.  
*Parcus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.); w. in, 213, n. 4, (2.)  
Paregmenon, 324, 24.  
Pareicon, 323, 2, (1.)  
Parenthesis, 324, 4, (6.)  
*Pariter ac*, 198, 3.  
*Paro*, constr., 273, n. 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
Paroemic verse, 304, 2.  
Paronomasia, 324, 25.  
*Pario*, compds. of, 163, n. 4.  
Parsing, 281, III.  
*Pars*, acc. of, 79, 4; abl. of, 82, n. 5, (a.); ellipsis of, 205, n. 7; its use in fractional expressions, 121, 6; *magnam* and *maximam partem*, 234, II., n. 3; *multis partibus*, 256, n. 16, (3.)  
*Part*, acc. of, 234, n.  
*Particeps*, genit. of, 112, 2; genit. plur. of, 114, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)—w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.)  
Participial adjs., 130;—of perfect tense, meaning of, with tenses of *sum*, 162, 12, (2.); w. genit., 213, n. 1, (2.)  
Participles, 25 and 148, 1; in *us*, how declined, 105, n. 2; in *as*, do., 111; abl. sing. of, 113, 2; participles of active verbs, 148,

- 1, (2.); of neuter verbs, 148, 1, (3.); 162, 16;  
of deponent verbs, 162, 17; of neuter pas-  
sive verbs, 162, 18; in *-rus*, genit. plur. of,  
162, 19; *rus*, and perf. compounded with  
*is*, 162, 21, when they become adjs. or  
nouns, 162, 22; cases of in compd. tenses,  
162, 12, 13; sometimes with *esse* indeclina-  
ble, 162, 13, (1.); in *-rus* with *sum*, force of,  
162, 14; how modified, 202, II., (3.); agree-  
ment of, 205; agreement with a predicate  
nom. instead of the subject, 205, a. 5;  
gender when used impersonally, 205, a. 16;  
perfect denoting origin, with abl., 248; in  
abl. absolute, 256;—passive of naming, etc.,  
with predicate abl., 257, a. 11; their gov-  
ernment, 274; their time how determined,  
274, 2, and 3; perfect in circumlocution,  
for abl. of cause, 247, 1, a. 2, (b.); with  
*habere*, etc., 274, 2, a. 4; for a verbal noun,  
274, 2, a. 5; for clauses, 274, 3.
- Participio*, poetically, w. genit., 220, 2.
- Particulae*, 190, 1.
- Partim*, 73, 4; *partim*, w. genit., 212,  
a. 4; *partim-partim*, w. genit. or *ex*, 277,  
a. 8.
- Partitive nouns, 212, a. 1.—adjs., 104, 9;  
—partitives with plur. verbs, 209, a. 11;  
211, a. 1; w. genit. plur., 212; ellipsis of,  
212, a. 2, a. 3; w. acc. or abl., 212, a. 2,  
a. 4; genit. sing. after neuter adjs. and  
pronouns, 212, a. 3.
- Parts of speech, 24, 2 and 3.
- Parum*, its meaning, 191, III.; compared,  
194, 4; w. genit., 212, a. 4.
- Parumper*, its meaning, 191, II.
- Parvus*, compared, 125, 5; *parvi*, w.  
verbs of valuing, 234, a. 1, (a.), (1.);  
*parvo*, with comparatives, 256, a. 16; after  
*estimo*, 214, a. 2, n. 2; as abl. of price,  
252, a. 8.
- Pasco*, 171, a. 6.
- Passive voice, 141, 2; construction of,  
234; passive voice with a reflexive pronoun  
understood as the agent equivalent to the  
middle voice in Greek, 248, a. 1, (2.); with  
acc. of the thing, 234, 1.
- Pateo*, w. two dat., 227, a. 1.
- Pater*, declined, 57.
- Pater-familias*, etc., how declined, 43, 2.
- Pathetic or emotive word, 279, 2, (e.)
- Patior*, 173, 4; 252, a. 4; *patiens*, w. gen.,  
213, a. 1, (2.); w. inf., 271, n. 3.
- Paternal nouns, 100, 2; in *o*, genitive of,  
69, n.—adjs., 104, 10; 128, 6, (a.); ellipsis  
of their substantive, 205, a. 7; pronouns,  
159, 4.
- Patrocinior*, w. dat., 223, a. 2.
- Patronymics, 100, 1; in *-es*, genit. plur.  
in *um* instead of *-um*, 43, 2; in *as* and *is*  
used as adjs., 205, a. 11; quantity of their  
penult, 231, 4 and 5.
- Pruca*, acc. of degree, 232, (3.)
- Paulisper*, its meaning, 191, II.
- Pauco*, w. comparatives, 256, a. 16; *pau-  
lum abest quin*, 272, a. 7.
- Pauper*, abl. of, 113, a. 2; defective, 115,  
1, (a.); w. genit. or abl., 213, a. 5, (2.)
- Pavidus*, w. genit., 213, a. 1.
- Favor est ne*, etc., 262, n. 3.
- Fecus*, (*-udis*), genit. of, 67, a. 3.
- Pessiliaris*, 222, a. 2, (a.)
- Pedes*, gender of, 31, 2; genit. of, 73, 2;  
for *pedites*, 209, a. 11, (1.); (b.)
- Pesjor*, pr., 236, 2, a. 1.
- Pelagus*, gender of, 51; acc. plur. of, 54,  
5; 94.
- Pello*, 171, a. 1, (b.); 251, n.
- Pendo*, w. genit. of value, 214; w. abl. of  
price, 252, a. 1.
- Pensi and piti habere*, 214, a. 1.
- Pentameter verse, 304, 2; 311; 312, IX., x.
- Penthemimeris, 304, 5.
- Penult, 13; quantity of, 291; of proper  
names, 233.
- Per*, its uses, 195, a. 9; 247, 1, a. 1; w.  
the means when a person, 247, 3, a. 4; in  
adjurations, 279, 10, (e.); in composition,  
195, I., 10; *per* compounded with adjectives  
strengthening their meaning, 127, 2.
- Perceiving, verbs of, their construction,  
272.
- Percipio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, a. 1; *per-  
cipium habeo*, instead of *percepi*, 274, a. 4.
- Percontor*, w. two accs., 231, a. 1.
- Perennis*, abl. of, 113, a. 1.
- Perdo*, w. *capitis*, 217, a. 3; *perditionem ire*,  
for *perdere*, 276, II., a. 2.
- Perdum*, for *perdam*, 162, 1.
- Perfect tense, 145, IV.; definite and in-  
definite, 145, IV., a.; old form in *sim*, 162,  
9; quantity of dissyllabic perfects, 284, a. 1.  
perfect participles translated actively, 162,  
16; both actively and passively, 162, 17,  
(a.);—of neuter verbs, 162, 18; of imper-  
sonal verbs, 184, a. 2; the perf. subj., 260,  
II., a. 1, (3.); in the connection of tenses,  
268; signification of perf. definite, 259, a. 1,  
(2.), (a.); of perf. indefinite, ib. (b.)—(d.);  
perf. subj., signification of, 260, II., a. 1,  
(3.), and a. 4 and 6; in the protasis, 261, 2  
and a. 2 and 3; 268, a.; perf. subj. for im-  
perative, 267, a. 2; perf. inf., how used,  
268, a. 1, (a.); perf. participle, 274, 2 and  
a.; supplies the place of a pres. pass. par-  
ticiple, 274, a. 3, (a.); perf. part. of a pre-  
ceding verb used to express the completion  
of an action, ib., (b.); w. *habere*, 274, a. 4;  
w. *do*, *reddo*, *curo*, etc., ib.; supplies the  
place of a verbal noun, 274, a. 5; used in  
circumlocution for abl. of cause, 247, a. 2,  
(b.); neuter perf. pass. participle used as  
the subject of a verb, 274, a. 5, (b.)
- Perficio ut*, 273, n. 2.
- Pergo*, constr., 225, IV.; w. inf., 271, n. 1.
- Perhibeo*, 230, n. 1; 272, n. 1, and a. 6;
- perhibeor*, 210, a. 3, (3.); w. inf., 271, n. 1.
- Perichlor*, *capitis* or *capite*, 217, a. 3.
- Period, 230.
- Perinde*, 191, III.;—*ac* or *atque*, 198, 3, a.
- Periphrasis, 323, 2, (4.)
- Periphrastic conjugations, 162, 14 and 15.
- Peritus*, 213, n. 1, and a. 4; 276, (2.);  
270, a. 1; w. *ad*, 213, a. 4; (2.); 225, III.,  
a. 1, (2.)
- Permisceo*, 245, II., 2, and a. 1 and 2.
- Permitto*, 73, 4; w. part. fut. pass., 274,  
a. 7; w. subj. without *ut*, 262, a. 4.
- Permuto*, 252, a. 5.
- Pernox*, genit. of, 112, 2.
- Perosus*, 189, 1, n.



- Perpello*, 273, n. 4.  
*Perpes*, in genit. sing., 112, 1; 115, 2.  
*Persevero*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
 Personal pronouns, 132, 4; ellipsis of as subject-nominatives, 209, n. 1; expressed with infinitive, 272, n. 4;—personal terminations of verbs, 147, 3.  
 Personification, 324, 34.  
 Person of a noun or pronoun, 35, 2; 132, 4; of a verb, 147; used in the imperative, 147, 2; 1st and 2d persons used indefinitely, 209, n. 7; of verbs with nominatives of different persons, 209, n. 12.  
*Perspectum habeo*, instead of *perspezi*, 274, n. 4.  
*Persuadeo*, w. dat., 223, n., (b.); *hoc persuadetur mihi*, 223, n., (c.);—*persuasum mihi habeo*, 274, n. 4.  
*Pertassum est*, constr., 229, n. 6; 215, (1.) and n. 2.  
*Pertinuo*, ellipsis of, 209, n. 4.  
*Peto*, constr., 230, n. 2; 231, n. 4; *peto ut*, 273, n. 4; 282, n. 4.  
*Pes* and compds., genit. of, 73, n. 1; 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2; pr., 234, n. 1; 300, n. 2, (b.).  
*Ph*, in syllabication, 18, 2; when silent, 12, n.  
 Phalæcian verse, 304, 2; pentameter, 312, x.  
*Piger*, declined, 106; constr., 222, n. 4, (2).  
*Piget*, w. genit., 215; w. acc., 229, n. 6; participle and gerund of, 184, n. 3.  
*Pili habere*, etc., 214, n. 1.  
 Place, advs. of, 191, i.; 192, iii.; genit. of, 221; acc. of, 237; dat. of, 237, n. 3; place where, abl. of, 254;—whence, abl. of, 255; through which, 256, 2; place of a foot in verse, 308, n.  
 Plants, gender of their names, 29.  
*Plaudo*, change of *au* in its compds., 189, n. 3.  
 Plenty or want, adjs. of, w. abl., 250.  
*Plenus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.); 250, 2, (1.).  
 Pleonasm, 323, 2.  
*plex*, adjs. in, abl. of, 113, n. 3; how declined, 121, 1.  
*Plerique*, w. genit. plur., 212, n. 2, (1.).  
 Pluperfect tense, 145, v.; old form in *sem*, 162, 9; for the historical perfect, 259, n. 1, (3.).  
 Plural number, 35, 1; when wanting, 95; nouns only plur., 96; plur. of Greek nouns of 1st decl., 45, 2; do. of 2d decl., 64, 2;—nouns used for singular, 98; *nos* for *ego*, 209, n. 7, (b.); of verbs with collective nouns, 209, n. 11; the plur. of abstract nouns, 96, n.; plur. nouns in apposition to two or more nouns in the singular, 204, n. 5.  
*Plurimum*, w. genit., 212, n. 3; *plurimi* and *plurimo* after verbs of buying, etc., 214, n. 1, (1.), and n. 3, n. 2; *plurimo*, abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Pius*, declined, 110; w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1, (a.); with numerals, etc., with or without *quam*, 256, n. 6; *pius* for *magis*, 217, n. 12; *piure*, abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Poëma*, declined, 57.  
 Poems, gender of names of, 29.  
*Pœnitet*, w. genit., 215; w. subj., 215, n.; w. acc., 229, n. 6; participles of, 184, n. 3; w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.  
*Pœtis*, declined, 86.  
 Poetical arrangement of words, 279, 3, (c.); 16, n. 4.  
*politanus*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (g.).  
*Pollens*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (4.); cf. n. 4, (1.).  
*Polliceor*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
 Polypotton, 324, 23.  
 Polysyndeton, 323, 2, (2.).  
*Pondo*, indeclinable, 34; *pondo libram* or *libras*, 211, n. 6, (4.); 236, n. 7.  
*Pono*, 171, n. 2; 230, n. 2; 241, n. 5; pr., 284, n. 2, (c.); 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Posco*, w. two accs., 231; 230, n. 2; w. *ut*, etc., 273, n. 4; in pass., 234, 1.  
 Position in prosody, 233, iv.  
 Positive degree, 122, 4.  
 Possessive, adjs., 104; pronouns, 139; to what equivalent, 132, 6; how used, 207, n. 36; 211, n. 3; ellipsis of when reflexive, 207, n. 36; used for subjective and possessive genit., 211, n. 3, (b.), and n. 8, (3.), (a.); for objective genit., 211, n. 3, (c.); so possessive adjectives, 211, n. 4, and n. 8, (3.), (b.); *mea*, *tua*, etc., after *refert* and *interest*, 219, n. 1.  
*Possideo*, w. perf. pass. part., 274, n. 4.  
*Possum*, conjugated, 154, n. 7; with superlatives, 127, 4; w. inf., 271, n. 1; *poterat*, the indic. for the subj., 259, n. 3; *possum* for *possem*, 259, n. 4, (2.).  
*Post*, *postquam*, etc., how pronounced, 8, n. 4; *post*, its case, 195, 4; *post* in composition, 196, 11; 197, 14; constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; with concrete official titles, 233, n. 3; w. acc. and abl. of time, 233, n. 1; ellipsis of, 235, n. 3; w. abl. like a comparative, 256, n. 16, (3.).  
*Postea loci*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
*Postera*, defective, 115, 5; compared, 125, 4; derivation, 130, v.  
*Posterior* and *postremus*, instead of *posterius* and *postremum*, 205, n. 15.  
*Postquam* and *posteaquam*, w. historical perfect instead of pluperfect, 259, n. 1, (2.), (d.).  
*Postulo*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; w. acc. and genit., 217, n. 1; w. de. or the simple abl., 217, n. 2; w. subj., without *ut*, 262, n. 4.  
*Potens*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.); w. in or ad and acc., 212, n. 4, (2.).  
*Potior*, w. abl., 245, i.; w. acc., 245, i., n.; w. genit., 220, (4.); *potiundus*, 162, 20; 273, n., n. 1.  
*Pœtis*, defective, 115, 5.  
*Pœtus*, compared, 134, 4; used pleonastically, 256, n. 13.  
*Pœtus*, translated actively, 162, 16.  
*Præ*, in composition w. adjs., 127, 2; w. verbs, 197; before adjs., 127, 6; constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; *præ*, with comparatives, 127, 6; 256, n. 13, (b.).  
*Præbeo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1.  
*Præcedo*, constr., 233, (3.), and n.; 224, n. 5.  
*Præcello*, *præco*, etc., 224, 8, and n. 5.

- Præcept**, abl. of, 113, n. 2, and n. 1.  
**Præcipio**, constr., 223, (1.), (b.).  
**Præcipio**, 229, n. 4, 1.  
**Præcipio**, *præsentium*, etc., 193, II., 2.  
**Præcuro**, constr., 224, 8, and n. 5.  
**Prædium**, ellipsis of, 255, n. 3.  
**Prædixi**, w. abl., 244.  
**Præneste**, gender of, 66, n., and 29, n.  
**Prænomen**, its place, 279, 9, (b.).  
**Præpes**, genit. sing. of, 112, 1; genit. plur., 114, n. 2.  
**Præscribo**, w. ut, etc., 273, 2, n. 4.  
**Præsens**, declined, 111; abl. of, 113, n. 2.  
**Præses**, gender of, 30; 61, 2; genit. of, 73, n. 1.  
**Præsto**, 233, (3.), and n.; 230, n. 1; 224, 8, and n. 5; 256, n. 16, (3.);—*præsto*, adv., w. dat., 228, 1;—*præsto sunt*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6, n. 1.  
**Præstator**, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n.; w. acc., 223, (1.), (a.).  
**Præter**, w. adjs., 127, 6; w. comparatives, 256, n. 13, (b.); as an adverb, 191, III.  
**Prætereo**, w. quod, 273, 5, (1.).  
**Præteri**, constr. of, 229, n. 7.  
**Præterquam** quod, 277, n. 16.  
**Prætervho**, 233, (2.).  
**Prætor**, w. dat., 224, 8 and n. 5.  
**Prætor**, w. two accs., 231; w. ut, 273, n. 4; w. omitted, 262, n. 4.  
**Predicate**, 301, 203;—predicate-nominative, 210; differing in number from the subject-nominative, 210, n. 2; instead of dat. of the end, 227, n. 4; after what verbs, 210, n. 3 and 4; pred. adjs., 210, n. 1; after *esse*, *haberi*, *judicari*, *videri*, etc., 271, n. 2;—predicate-accusative, 210, (b.); dative, 210, (c.); abl., 210, (d.); 257, n. 11.  
**Prepositions**, 195—197; in composition, 195; with nouns, 193; with adjs., 131, 11—13; with verbs, 196; change of in composition, 103, n. 2; 131, n.; 195, (a.); inseparable, 196, (b.); w. acc., 185, 4; 235; w. abl., 195, 5; 241; w. acc. and abl., 195, 6; 235, (2.)—(5.); used as adverbs, 195, n. 4; how modified, 202, II., n. 2; verbs compounded with, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 233; w. abl., 242; compds. of *ad*, *con*, and *in*, with acc., 224, n. 4; repeated after compds., 224, n. 4; 233, n. 2; how interchanged, ib.; compds. of *ad*, *ante*, etc., with neuter verbs of motion, 224, n. 5; 233, n. 1; repetition of prepositions, 233, n. 2; 277, II., 3 and 4; prepositions of one syllable, pr., 235, 2, n. 1, and n. 5; ellipsis of, 232, (2.); 235, n. 11; ellipsis of their case, 235, n. 10; their place, 279, 10; quantity of *ab*, *se* and *red*, 235, n. 2 and 3; put after their case, 279, 10, n., (c); repeated, 277, II., 4.  
**Present tense**, 145, I.; principal tense, 258, A.; indicative pres. for historical tense, 259, n. 1, (a.); for the fut., 259, n. 1, (b.); for imperf. or perf. w. *dum*, 259, n. 1, (c.); subj. pres., use of, 260, II., n. 1, (1.); used to soften an assertion, 260, II., n. 4; to express a wish, command, etc., 260, n. 6; 267, n. 2; imperative pres., how used, 145, n. 3; 267, (1.); infinitive pres., how used, 268, n. 1, (a.), and n. 3; 272, n. 4 and 5; *participle pres.*, how declined, 111, n.; what it denotes, 274, 2 and n.; denoting something about to be done, 274, n. 1; also a purpose, 274, n. 2, (a.); and a state or condition, 274, n. 2, (b.); present pass. participle, how supplied, 274, n. 9.  
**Preterites**, 145, n. 2; 258, n.; preterites of the indicative used for the pluperfect subjunctive, 259, n. 4, (1.).  
**Preteritive verbs**, 183, I.  
**Preterit** and *preterio*, 214, n. 2, n. 3; ellipsis of, 252, n. 3.  
**Priapean verse**, 310, II.  
**Price**, ablative of, 252; genitive of *tanti*, etc., 214, n. 1.  
**Priapean**, w. genit., 212, n. 4, n. 6; w. acc., 238, I.  
**Primus**, *medius*, etc., how translated, 205, n. 17; their place, 279, 7; *prior*, *primus*, for *prius*, *primum*, 205, n. 15.  
**Principes**, genit. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 112, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); used instead of an adverb of time, 205, n. 15.  
**Principal parts of a verb**, 151, 4;—propositions, 201, 5;—parts of a proposition, 202, 5; tenses, 255, A.  
**Principio**, abl. of time, 253, n.  
**Priusquam**, with what mood, 263, 3.  
**Prius**, w. abl., 251, n.  
**Pro**, constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; w. abl. for predicate nom., 210, n. 3; for predicate acc., 230, n. 4; in composition, quantity of, 285, n. 5, and n. 7; *pro nihilo* *duco*, etc., 214, n. 2, n. 2; *pro eo* and *proinde* ac, 198, 3, n.  
**Proclivis**, 222, n. 4, (2); 276, III., n. 1.  
**Procul**, w. abl., 195, n. 3; 241, n. 2.  
**Prodigus**, w. genit. or abl., 210, n. 5, (2); w. in, 213, n. 4, (2.).  
**Prodo**, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6.  
**Proditur**, constr., 271, n. 2.  
**Proficiscor**, w. two datives, 227, n. 1.  
**Prohibeo**, 251, n. 2; w. *quominus*, 262, n. 11; 273, 4; w. genit., 220, 2; w. abl., 251, n.; w. dat. or abl., 224, n. 2; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 6.  
**Proinde**, adv., 191, III.; *proinde* ac, 198, 3, n.  
**Prolepsis**, 323, 1, (b.) and (4.).  
**Promitto**, constr., 272, n. 4; 217, n. 3, (c).  
**Pronouns**, 132—139; simple, 132, 2; neuter w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1.  
**Pronominal adjs.**, 169, 5.  
**Pronunciation of Latin**, 6.  
**Pronus**, constr., 222, n. 4, (2.).  
**Prope** est, w. ut and the subj., 262, n. 3, n. 1.  
**Proper nouns**, 26, 2; found only in lat., 2d, and 3d decls., 40, 9.  
**Propero**, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
**Propinquo**, 225, n. 2.  
**Propinquus**, w. the dat. or genit., 222, n. 2, (a.).  
**Proptior**, how compared, 126, 1; *propior* and *proximus*, w. dat., 222, n. 1; w. acc., 222, n. 5; 238, 1; instead of *propius*, *proxime*, 205, n. 15; *proximum* est, w. ut and the subj., 262, n. 3, n. 1.  
**Proptius** and *proxime*, constr., 223, 1, and n.

- Proportional, adjs., 121, 2.  
 Proposition, 201, 1; analysis of, 281.  
*Proprius*, constr., 222, n. 2, (a.)  
*Prosumpo*, constr., 226, n. 4, 1.  
 Prosodiac verse, 304, 2.  
 Prosody, 282–321; figures of, 306–307.  
*Proseopoeia*, 324, 34.  
*Prosper* and *prosperus*, 106, n.; w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.)  
*Prosthesis*, 322, 1.  
*Prosto*, w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1.  
*Prosum*, 154, n. 6.  
*Provideo*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
 Protasis and apodosis, 261; import of the different tenses in the protasis and apodosis, 261, 1 and 2.  
*Providus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.)  
*Prudens*, w. genit., 228, n. 1, (3.)  
*Ps*, initial, 12, n. 1; *-ps*, nouns in, genit. of, 77, 2, (1.)  
*-psc*, enclitic, 135, n. 3.  
*Pt*, initial, 12, n.  
*-pte*, enclitic, 133, n. 2; 139.  
*Pubes* and *impubes*, genit. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Pudet*, w. genit., 215; w. inf., 215; w. acc., 229, n. 6; w. perf. inf., 268, n. 2; w. sup. in *u*, 276, III., n. 2; participle in *dus*, and gerund of, 184, n. 3.  
*Puer*, instead of *in pueritia*, 253, n. 6.  
*Pueritia*, how used in the abl., 253, n. 1.  
*Pugna*, for *in pugna*, 258, n. 1; *pugnare* pugnare, 232, (1.)  
*Pugnatur*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.)  
*Pulchre*, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
 Punctuation, 5.  
*Punio*, constr., 217, n. 5.  
 Punishment, constr. of words denoting, 217, n. 3.  
*Purgo*, w. genit., 217, n. 1; 220, 2; w. abl., 251, n.  
 Purpose, denoted by *ut*, etc., with the subj., 262; by participles, 274, 2, n. 2, 6 and 7; by inf., 271; 273, n. 4, (b.); by gerund, 275, III., n. 2, and (1.), (2.); by supine in *-um*, 276, II.  
*Purus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.); cf. 251, n.  
*-pus*, Greek nouns in, genit. of, 76, n. 5.  
*Puto*, w. genit. of value, 214; w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1; w. two accs., 230, n. 1, and n. 4; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *putares*, 260, II., n. 2; *putor*, 210, n. 3, (3.), (c.); w. inf., 271, n. 1.
- Q.
- Qu* before *s* in verbal roots, 171, 1  
*Qua*, adverbial correlative, 191, n. 1.  
*Qua—qua*, for *et—et*, 277, n. 8.  
*Quero*, constr., 231, n. 4; poet. w. inf., 271, n. 3.  
*Quesso*, 183, 7; constr., 262, n. 4.  
*Qualiter*, 139, 5, (3.); w. comparatives, 256, n. 10, (b.)  
*Qualisqualis* or *qualiscumque*, 139, 5; 207, n. 29.  
*Qualis—talis*, 206, (16.)  
*Quam*, w. comparatives, 256; w. the superlative, with or without *possum*, 127, 4; ellipsis of after *plus*, *minus*, *amplius*, etc., 256, n. 6 and 7; *quam qui* and superlative after *tam*, 206, (21.); *quam pro*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 11; *quam non*, 277, n. 14; *quam* and a verb after *ante* and *post*, 253, n. 1, n. 3; *quam qui*, w. comparatives and the subjunctive, 264, 4.  
*Quamquam*, peculiar use of, 198, 4, n.; constr., 263, 2, (4.); used to connect an abl. absolute, 257, n. 10.  
*Quamvis*, constr., 263, 2, and (2.), (3.)  
*Quando*, *quandoquidem*, 198, 7, n., (b.)  
 Quantity, adjs. of, 104, 4; w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1; after *sum* and verbs of valuing, 214; adverbs of, w. genit., 212, n. 4.  
 Quantity, in prosody, 13, 1; marks of, 5, 1; general rules of, 13; 233; special rules of, 284; of penults, 291; of antepenults, 292; of penults of proper names, 293; of final syllables, 294–301; of final vowels, 294–298; of final consonants, 299; of derivative words, 284; of compound words, 286; of increments, 286–290; of Greek words, 288, n. 6.  
*Quantus*, pronom. adj., 139, 5, (3.); *quantus* for *quam*, with *posse* and superlatives, 127, n. 1; constr., 206, (16.); *quanto*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 16; *quantum*, w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1; in acc. of degree, 231, n. 5; 232, (3.); 256, n. 16, n.; *quantum possum*, w. indicative, 264, 3 *fin.*; *quantus—tantis*, 206, (16.)  
*Quantuscumque*, *quantusquantus*, *quantuliscumque*, 139, 5, (3.); w. indicative, 259, n. 4, (3.); *quanticumque*, 207, n. 29.  
*Quasi*, w. subj., 263, 2.  
*Quatio*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1; how changed in its compds., 189, n. 3.  
*-que*, its use, 198, 1, n., (a.); *que—et*, *et—que*, *que—que*, 198, n., (c.); its place, 279, 8, (c.)  
*Queis* and *quis*, for *quibus*, 136, n. 2.  
*Queo*, how conjugated, 182, n.; w. inf., 271, n. 3.  
*Queror*, w. acc., 232, n. 1; w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.  
*Qui*, declined, 136; *qui* in abl., 136, n. 1; 137, n. 2; interrogative, 137; difference between *qui* and *quis*, 137, 1; person of *qui*, 209, n. 6; w. subj., 264; when translated like a demonstrative, 206, (17.); with *sum* instead of *pro*, 206, (18.); *quicum*, when used, 136, n. 1 *fin.*; *qui vero*, *qui autem*, 280, III., (3.); *ex quo*, for *postquam*, 253, n. 4.  
*Quia*, *quod*, and *quoniam*, 198, 7, n., (b.)  
*Quicque* and *quicquam*, 138, 3, (a.)  
*Quicquid*, 136, n. 4; acc. of degree, 232, (3.)  
*Quicumque*, how declined, 136, 3; how used, 207, n. 29; w. indic., 259, n. 4, (3.); for *omnis*, *quivis*, or *quilibet*, 207, n. 29.  
*Quid*, 137; w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1, (a.); acc. of degree, 231, n. 5, (a.); 232, (3.); *quid?* why? 235, n. 11; *quid sibi vult?* 225, n., (b.); *quid est quod?* w. subj., 264, 7, n. 2; *quid est cur?* etc., 264, 7, n. 3; *quid aliud quam?* 209, n. 4; *quid? quid vero?* *quid igitur?* *quid ergo?* *quid enim?* *quid multa?* *quid plura?* 229, n. 3, 2.

*Quidam*, how declined, 188, 5; how used, 207, n. 83.  
*Quidem*, its meaning, 191, n. 4; its place, 279, 8, (d.).  
*Quilibet*, how declined, 188, 5; how used, 207, n. 84.  
*Quies* and compds., gender, 61, 1; genit., 73, 4; 96.  
*Quis*, 198, 8; w. subj., 262, n. 10; for a relative with *non*, ib., 1 and n. 6; for *us non*, ib., 2; after *non dubito*, etc., *quis*? why not? w. indic., ib., n. 9.  
*Quipe*, 198, 7, n., (b.); *quippe qui*, w. subj., 264, 8, (2).  
*Quispiam*, 188, 8, (a.).  
*Quisq.*, 186, n. 4.  
*Quirit*, genit. sing., 74, n. 4; genit. plur., 88, 11, 6.  
*Quis*, declined, 187; difference of *quis* and *qui*, 187, 1; between *quis* and *uter*, 212, n. 2, n. 1; *quis est qui*? w. subj., 264, 8, (2); between *quis* and *aliquis*, 207, n. 80, (b.).  
*Quisnam*, *quisnam*, how declined, 187, 2.  
*Quispiam*, how declined, 188, 8; how used, 207, n. 80; *quispiam*, w. genit., 212, n. 8, n. 1.  
*Quisquam*, how declined, 188, 8; how used, 207, n. 81; *quisquam* and *quidquam*, w. genit., 212, n. 8; acc. of degree, 231, n. 5, (a.); 252, (8).  
*Quisque*, how declined, 188, 8; how used, 207, n. 85; with plur. verb, 209, n. 11, (4.); its place, 279, 14; w. a superlative, 207, n. 85, (b.); in apposition, 204, n. 10.  
*Quisquis*, declined, 186, 4; its use, 207, n. 29; difference between *quisquis* and *quiscumque*, 207, n. 29; w. indic., 269, n. 4, (8).  
*Quivis*, how declined, 188, 5; how used, 207, n. 84.  
*Quo*, the correlative adv., 191, n. 1; *quo*, w. a comparative, 266, n. 16, (2.); for *ut eo*, w. subj., 262, n. 9; as adv. of place, w. genitive, 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.); *quo mihi hanc rem*, 209, n. 4; 228, n. 5; *quo scias*, 262, n. 11, n.; *quo ne*, 262, n. 5.  
*Quoad*, w. subj., 263, 4; w. *ejus*, 212, n. 4, n. 5.  
*Quocum*, *quacum*, etc., instead of *cum quo*, etc., 241, n. 1.  
*Quod*, causal conj., 198, 7; construction of, 273, 5; refers to past time, 278, (6.); w. subj. of *dico*, *puto*, etc., 266, 8, n.; *quod sciam*, etc., 264, 8; *quod*, referring to a preceding statement, 206, (14); 278, 6, (a.); w. genit., 212, n. 8; before *si*, *nisi*, etc., 206, (14); as acc. of degree, 232, (8).  
*Quoqu岸* and *quor*, for *cujus* and *cui*, 186, n. 2.  
*Quoque* and *etiam*, difference between, 196, 1, n., (d.); place of *quoque*, 279, 8, (d.).  
*Quot*, indecl., 115, 4; interrogative, 121, 5; 139, 5, (3.); constr., 206, (16); *quot sunt qui*? 264, 7, n. 2; *quotquot*, w. indic., 269, n. 4, (8).  
*Quoteni* and *quotus*, interrogative, 121, 5.  
*Quoties*, interrog. adv., 121, 5.  
*Quotus-quisque*, its meaning, 207, n. 85, (a.).  
*Quem*, correlative of *tum*, 191, n. 7; instead of *postquam*, 263, n. 4; — conj., 198, 10; constr., 263, 6, and n. 1—4.

## R.

R, before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, n. 1; nouns in *r*, genitive of, 70, 71; changed to *s* before *s* and *t*, 171, 8; *r* final, quantity of, 289, 2.  
*Rapio*, w. dat. or abl., 224, n. 2.  
*Rarum est*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 8.  
*Rastrum*, plur. *rastris* or *rastra*, 92, 5.  
*Ratio*, w. genit. of gerunds, 276, 111, n. 1, (1.); *rationes*, as abl. of manner, without *cum*, 247, 2.  
*Ratum est*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 2; *ratum*, pr., 264, n. 1, (2).  
*-re* in 2d person sing. of passive voice, 162, 8.  
*Re* or *red*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.); 197, 18; quantity of, 236, n. 3, (a.).  
*Reapse*, 185, n. 8.  
*Recess*, abl. of, 113, n. 8 and n. 1; also adverb, 192, 4, (b.).  
*Receptio*, constr., 233, n. 2, n.  
*Recingor*, w. acc., 264, n. 1.  
*Recordor*, w. genit. or acc., 218; w. pres. inf., 268, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Recte*, instead of abl. of price, 262, n. 3.  
*Reckoning*, Roman mode of, 326, 327.  
*Rectum est*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 8.  
*Recuso quis*, and *quominus*, 262, n. 7 and n. 11; w. *ne*, 271, n. 1; w. inf., ib., n., and 271, n. 1.  
*Reddo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; pass. 210, n. 3, (b.); w. perf. pass. part., 274, n. 4.  
*Redoleo*, w. acc., 232, (2).  
*Redundant nouns*, 99; adjs., 116; 109, n.; 111, n.; verbs, 186.  
*Redundo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2).  
*Reduplication*, 163, n.; of compound verbs, 163, n. 1; of verbs of 1st conj., 165, n. 2; of 2d conj., 168, n. 2; of 3d conj., 171, n. 1, (b.); quantity of, 284, n. 2.  
*Refero*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Referat* and *interest*, w. genit., 214; 219; w. the adj. pronouns *mea*, etc., 219, n. 1; w. *ad*, etc., 219, n. 3; *referat*, pr., 285, n. 3.  
*Refertus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (8).  
*Reflexive pronouns*, 132, 4; 139, n. 2; how used, 208; for demonstratives, 208, (6.); ellipsis of, 229, n. 4; in oratio obliqua, 266, n. 8.  
*Reformido*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Regno*, w. genit., 220, 4.  
*Regnum*, declined, 46.  
*Rego*, conjugated, 168.  
*Relative adjs.*, 104, 13; 139, n.; government of, 218, n. 1; 222, 3; adverbs, w. subj., expressing a purpose, 264, 5, n. 2; used indefinitely, w. subj., 264, n. 3.  
*Relative pronouns*, 136; agreement of, 206, n. 19; ellipsis of, 206, (5.); in the case of the antecedent, 206, (6.), (a.); referring to nouns of different genders, 206, (9.);—to a proposition, 206, (13.); agreeing with a noun implied, 206, (11); number and gender of, when referring to two or more nouns, 206, (15);—relative clauses used as circumlocutions and to express the English 'so called,' 206, (19); relative adverbs for relative pronouns, 206, (20); the relative adjs. *quot*, *quantus*, etc., construction of,

206, (16); *qui* with *sum*, instead of *pro*, 206, (18); person of, 209, n. 6; 206, n. 19;—*w. subj.*, 264; their place, 279, 18; 280, III., (2.); relatives as connectives, 280, III., (1.); 198, II.

Resolving, verbs of, 273, I., (a.)

*Relinquo*, *w. two datives*, 227, n. 1; *w. part. in dus*, 274, n. 7; *relinquitur*, *w. ut* and the subj., 262, n. 3, n. 1.

*Reliqua*, acc., 234, II., n. 3; *reliquum est ut*, n. 3.

*Reminiscor*, constr., 216.

*Remitto*, 229, n. 4, I.

Removing, verbs of, *w. abl.*, 261.

*Remuneror*, *w. abl.*, 249, I., n. 1.

*Renuncio*, *w. two accs.*, 230, n. 1; *pass.*, 210, n. 3, (3.), (b.)

Repeated words, their place, 279, 4.

*Repens*, abl. of, 113, n. 3.

*Reperio*, *w. two accs.*, 230, n. 1;—*reperi-*or, 210, n. 3, (3.), (c.); 271, n. 2;—*reperi-*untur, *qui*, *w. subj.*, 264, 6.

*Repo*, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), n.

*Repono*, 241, n. 5.

*Reposco*, *w. two accs.*, 231, n. 1.

*Repugno*, with *quominus* or *ne*, 262, n. 11.

*Res*, declined, 90; use of, 206, n. 7, (2.), n. 1.

*Reses*, genit. sing. of, 112, I.; defective, 115, 2.

*Resipio*, *w. acc.*, 232, (2.)

Responsives, case of, 204, n. 11.

*Respublica*, declined, 91.

*Restat*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 1.

*Rele*, abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.)

*Retracto*, constr., 229, n. 4, I.

*Reus*, *w. genit.*, 213, n. 1, (3.); *reum agere* or *facere*, *w. genit.*, 217, n. 1.

Rhetoric, figures of, 324.

*Rhus*, genit. of, 76, n. 3; acc. of, 80, II.

Rhythm, 308, (1.)

*Rideo*, *w. acc.*, 232, n. 1.

*-rimus*, *-ritis*, quantity of, 290, n., (1.), 4.

*-rimus*, superlatives in, 125, 1.

*Ritu*, as abl. of manner without *cum*, 247, 2.

Rivers, gender of names of, 28.

*-riz*, verbals in, 102, 6, (a.) See *tor* and *triz*.

*Rogo*, *w. two accs.*, 231, n. 1; *w. ut*, 273, n. 4; 274, n. 7; without *ut*, 262, n. 4; constr. in *pass.*, 224, I.

Roman day, 326, 1;—hour, *ib.*:—month, 326, 2;—names of the months, 326, 2, (1);—calendar table of, 326, 2, (6), p. 369;—week, 326, 2, (10); names of the days of the week, *ib.*:—year, how designated, 326, 2, (11);—money, weights and measures, 327;—tables of weights, etc., 327, pp. 370—373;—coins, 327, p. 371;—interest, how computed, *ib.*

Root or crude form of words inflected, what and how found, 40, 10; formation of nominative sing. from in 3d decl., 56, I. and II.

Roots of verbs, 150; general, 150, 1; special, 150, 2; second and third, how formed, 150, 3 and 4; third, how determined when there is no supine, 151, n.; first, its derivatives, 151, 1; irregularities in

tenses formed from, 162, 1—6; second, do., 151, 2; irregularities in tenses formed from, 162, 7—10; third, do., 151, 3; second and third, formation of, 1st conj., 164—166; 2d conj., 167—170; 3d conj., 171—174; 4th conj., 175—177; second and third irregular, 1st conj., 166; 2d conj., 168; 4th conj., 176.

*-rs*, nouns in, genitive sing. of, 77, 2, (2.); genit. plur. of, 83, II., 4.

*Rudis*, 213, n. 1, and n. 4, (2.); 275, III., n. 1, (2.)

*Rupes*, declined, 57.

*Rus*, construed like names of towns, in acc., 237, n. 4; in abl., 254; 256; cf. 82, n. 5, (b.); *rure*, not *ruri* with an adj., 255, n. 1.

*-rus*, participle in, how declined, 105, n. 2; its signification, 162, 14; 274, 2, n. 6; with *sim* and *essem* serving as future subjunctives, 162, n. 3; with *esse* and *fuisse*, 162, 14, n. 3; 268, n. 4; genitive plur. of, 162, 19; denotes intention, 274, n. 6; used for an English clause connected by 'since, when,' etc., *ib.*; as an apodosis, *ib.*

*Rutum*, pr., 284, n. 1, (2.)

S.

*S*, sound of, 11; added to some roots of nouns of 3d decl., 56, I.; added to roots of verbs ending in a consonant, 171; used instead of *t* in the 3d root of some verbs, 171, n. 5; inserted in some verbals, 102, 5, (b.); *s* preceded by a consonant, nouns in, gender of, 63; 64; genit. of, 77; final, elided, 305, 2.

*Sacer*, *w. genit. or dat.*, 222, n. 2, (a.)

*Sacerdos*, gender of, 30; 61, 3.

*Saepe*, comparison of, 194, 5.

*Sai*, 82, n. 1, (b.), and 66, n.; 96, 9; pr., 284, n. 1.

*Salio*, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), n.

*Saltem*, 193, II., 3.

*Saluto*, *w. two accs.*, 230, n. 1; *salutor*, *w. two nominatives*, 210, n. 3, (3.)

*Salve*, 133, 9.

*Samnis*, genit. sing., 74, n. 4; genit. plur., 88, II., 5.

*Sapio*, *w. acc.*, 232, (2.)

Sapphic verse, 304, 2; 315, II.

*Sat*, indecl., 115, 4; *satis*, *w. genit.*, 212, n. 4; *satis esse*, *w. dat. of gerund*, 275, III., n. 2, (1); *satis habeo*, and *satis mihi est*, *w. perf. infin.*, 268, n. 2; *satis erat*, indie. instead of subj., 269, n. 3; degrees of comparison, 126, 4.

*Satago*, *w. genit.*, 215, (2.)

*Satelles*, gender of, 30; 61, 2.

*Satiatus*, *w. abl. or genit.*, 213, n. 5, (3.)

*Satindo*, *w. damni infecti*, 217, n. 3, (c.); *w. dat.*, 225, I.

*Satisfacio*, *w. dat.*, 225, I.

*Saturn*, pr., 284, n. 1, 2.

*Saturnalibus*, for *ludis Saturnalibus*, 258, n. 1.

*Satur*, how declined, 105, n. 1; *w. genit. or abl.*, 213, n. 5, (3.)

*Saturo*, *w. abl.*, 249, I., n. 1; *w. genit. poet.*, 220, 3

- Satus*, w. abl., 246.  
 Saying, verbs of, constr., 272; ellipsis of, 270, n. 2; (b.) and 3; implied, 273, 3, (b.); used in the passive, 272, n. 6.  
*Scando*, compds. of, 233, (3.), n.  
*Scanning*, 304, 6.  
*Scato*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.), n. 1; with genit. post. 220, 3.  
*Season*, 314, 11.  
*Scidi*, pr., 234, n. 1, (1.)  
*Scitice*, 138, 7, n., (a.)  
*Scio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *scito*, 162, 4.  
*Scitor* and *sciscitor*, constr., 231, n. 4.  
*scio*, verbs in, 187, 11, 2; drop *sc* in 2d and 3d root before *t*, 171, n. 6.  
*Scribo*, 273, 2, (c.); w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6; in pass. w. predicate nominative, 210, n. 3, (3); *scribit*, w. pres. inf. instead of perf., 263, n. 1, (a.)  
*Se*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.)  
*Se*, w. inter., 208, 5. See *sui*.  
*Scerno*, 251, n., and n. 2, n.  
*Secus*, for *secus*, 33, 1; 34; 211, n. 6, (4.); 230, n. 6; adv., 191, 111; w. acc., 196, n. 3.  
*Sed*, 198, 9, n., (a.); its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sed*, *sed quod*, *sed quia*, 262, n. 9; *sed*, *sed tamen*, 278, n. 10; *sed et*, 198, 1, (d.)  
*Sedo*, 210, n. 3, (2.); compds. of, 233, (3), n.  
*Sedile*, declined, 57.  
*Sedo*, constr., 223, n. 4, 1.  
*sem*, old termination of plup. indic. active, 162, 9.  
 Semi-deponent verbs, 142, 2.  
*Scenarius*, 304, 2; *Iambio*, 314.  
*Senex*, its degrees of comparison, 126, 4; gender of, 66, 2; genitive of, 78, 2, (2); abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1; for *in senectute*, 259, n. 6.  
 Sentences, 200; analysis of, 231.  
 Sentiments of another, in dependent clauses, 266, 3.  
*Sentio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
 Separating, verbs of, w. abl., 261.  
*Separo*, w. abl., 261, n.  
*Sequitur*, constr., 262, n. 3, n. 1.  
*Sere*, future infin. in, 162, 10.  
*Sereno*, scil. *calo*, 257, n. 9, (2.)  
*Sermo*, declined, 57.  
*Serpens*, gender of, 64, 3.  
*Sese*, intensive, 133, n. 2.  
*Servitutum servare*, 232, (1.)  
*Sextertius*, its value, 327, n. 2, (b.); how denoted, ib.; mode of reckoning, ib.; *sestertium*, ib., n. 5-7.  
*Seu*, or *stve*, 198, 2, n., (c.)  
 Ships, gender of their names, 29.  
 Short syllable, 262, 2.  
 Showing, verbs of, constr., 272, n. 6.  
*Si*, how pronounced, 11, n. 1.  
*si* or *-sin*, Greek datives in, 84.  
*Si*, conj., 198, 5; *si* for *num*, 198, 11, n., (c.); *si minus*, *sin minus* or *sin aliter*, 198, 6, n., (b.); 277, n. 14; ellipsis of in the protasis, 261, n. 1; *si* with the imperfect subj., instead of the pluperfect, 261, n. 5; *si nihil aliud*, 209, n. 4; *si quisquam* and *si ulus*, 207, n. 30, (b.); *si non*, 262, n. 5.  
*Sibi suo*, 228, n., (a.)  
*Sic*, 191, n. 5; 277, n. 12, (a.); pleonastically, 207, n. 22.  
*Sicula*, w. subj., 263, 2, (1.)  
 Significant word, in a proposition, 279, 2, (c.)  
*Sicem*, *sies*, etc., 154, n. 4.  
*Silencio praeferre* or *facere aliquid*, with-out *cum*, 247, 2.  
*Sileo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1; pres., 234, 111.  
 Silver age of Roman literature, 320, 3.  
*-sim*, old termination of perfect indic. active, 162, 9.  
 Similar constructions, 278, n. 1 and 2.  
*Simile*, 324, 30.  
*Similis*, w. genit. or dat., 222, n. 2, (a.); w. dat. in imitation of the Greek, 222, n. 7;  
*similes*, w. inter., 222, n. 4, (4.); w. *ac* and *atque*, 222, n. 7, *fin*.  
 Simple, subject, 202, 2;—predicate, 203, 2;—sentences, 201, 10.  
*Simul*, w. abl., 195, n. 3; 241, n. 2; *simul-simul*, 277, n. 8.  
*Sin*, 193, 5; its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sin minus*, 277, n. 14.  
 Singular number, 35, 1; sing. for plur., 209, n. 11, 1, (b.)  
*Singulare est ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3.  
*Singuli*, 119.  
*Sino*, 273, 4; 262, n. 4.  
*Siquidem*, 193, 7, n., (b.)  
*Siquis*, how declined, 138, 2; *siquis* and *siquid*, how used, 138, 2, (a.) and (b.); 207, n. 29; *si quis est*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.  
*Sis* for *si vis*, 183, n. 3.  
*Sisto*, constr., 223, n. 4, 1.  
*Situm*, pr., 234, n. 1, (2.)  
*Sive* or *seu*, 193, 2, n.; 278, n. 8; its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sive-sive*, w. verb in the indic., 259, n. 4, (3.)  
*-so*, *-sim*, *-sem*, old verbal terminations, 162, 9.  
*Socius*, w. genit. or dat., 222, n. 2, (a.)  
*Sodes*, for *si aude*, 153, n. 3.  
 Solecism, 325, 2.  
*Soleo*, how conjugated, 142, n. 2; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Solitus*, 274, n. 3; *solito*, after comparatives, 256, n. 9; its place, 279, n. 1.  
*Solum*, *solummodo*, 193, 11, 3.  
*Solus*, how declined, 107; w. relative and subj., 264, 10; for *solum*, 205, n. 15.  
*Solutus*, w. genit., 213; w. abl., 251, n.; *solutum*, pr., 234, n. 3.  
*Solveo*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Sons*, genit. plur. of, 114, n. 3; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Sospes*, genit. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); 126, 5, (b.)  
 Sotadic verse, 304, 2; 317, 1.  
 Sounds of the letters, 7-12; of the vowels, 7 and 8; of the diphthongs, 9; of the consonants, 10-12.  
 Space, acc. and abl. of, 236; ellipsis of, 236, n. 3.  
*Spatium*, w. genit. of gerund, 275, 111, n. 1, (1); *spatio* as abl. of space, 236, n. 4.  
*Specto*, constr., 225, n. 1.  
*Specus*, 38, 1.  
*Spero*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Spes est*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1;

- spes*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, II., n. 1, (1.); *spe*, after comparatives, 266, n. 9; its place, 279, n. 1.
- Spolio*, w. abl., 251, n.
- Spondaio* verse, 810; tetrameter, 812.
- Spondeo*, 163, n.; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.
- Stanza*, 319, 4.
- Statim*, 193, II., 1.
- Statuo*, 241, n. 5; 278, n. 1; 271, n. 3; 272, n. 1; *statutum habeo*, 274, n. 4.
- Statum*, pr., 284, n. 1, (2.)
- Sterilis*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2); w. ad, 213, n. 4, (2.)
- Steti* and *stiti*, pr., 284, n. 1, (1.)
- 'Still,' w. comparatives, how expressed in Latin, 266, n. 9, (b.)
- Stipulor*, 217, n. 3, (c.)
- Sto*, 163, n.; w. genit. of price, 214, n. 3; w. pred. nom., 210, n. 3, (2.); w. abl., 245, n. 5, and n. 2; *stat per me*, construction of, 262, n. 11; compds. of, 233, (3.), n.
- Strophe*, 319, 4.
- Studeo*, w. dat., 223, n. 2; with gerund, 275, III., n. 2, (1.); with the inf. with or without an accusative, 271, n. 4; w. ut, 273, 4, (a.); w. acc. id, 232, (3.)
- Studiosus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1; 275, III., n. 1, (2.)
- Studium*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, II., n. 1, (1.)
- Styz*, gender of, 28, n.
- Suadeo*, constr., 273, n. 4; 262, n. 4.
- Sub*, in composition, force of, 122; government of, 235, (2); constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, n. 1, (b.)
- Subject of a verb, 140; of a proposition, 201; 202; simple, complex, and compound, 202; its place in a sentence, 279, 2; subject of a dependent clause made the object of the leading verb, 229, n. 5, (a.)
- Subject-nominative, 209; ellipsis of, 209, n. 1 and 2; when wanting, 209, n. 3; w. inf., 209, n. 5; 239, n. 1; two or more in the singular with a plural verb, 209, n. 12; (2.)
- Subject-accusative, 239; ellipsis of, 239, n. 1-3; considered also as the accusative of the object after verbs of saying, showing, and believing, 272, n. 6.
- Subjective genitive, 211, n. 2; possessive pronoun used instead of, 211, n. 3.
- Subjectus*, w. dat., 222, n. 1, (b.)
- Subjunctive, 143, 2; its tenses, 145, n. 2; how used, 260-266, and 273; various use of its tenses, 260; how translated, 260, I. and II., n. 1; for imperative, 260, n. 6; in impersonal verbs, 184, n. 2; in conditional clauses, 261; after particles, 262 and 263; after *qui*, 264; after relative advs., 264, n. 2; indefinite subj., 264, 12 and n.; in indirect questions, 266; in inserted clauses, 266; in oratio obliqua, 266, 1 and 2; after what verbs used, 273; after adjectives, 213, n. 4; exchanged for acc. w. inf., 273, 3, (b.); subjunctive in doubtful questions, 260, n. 5; in repeated actions after relative pronouns and adverbs, 264, 12
- Subito*, 193, II., 1.
- Subordinate conjunctions, 193, II.;—propositions, 201, 6 and 7.
- Substantive, 26-103; substantive pronouns, 132, 133; their gender, 132, 8; declined, 133; as subject nominative, ellipsis of, 209, n. 1; dat. of, redundant, 228, n.; substantive verb, 153; substantive clauses, 201, 7 and 8; 229, n. 5; 231, n. 2, (b.); substantive clause instead of the abl. after *opus est*, 243, n. 1; and after *dignus* and *indignus*, 244, n. 2, (b.)
- Subter*, constr., 235, (4.)
- Subtractive expressions in numerals, 118, 4; 120, 2, 3, and 5.
- Succenseo*, 223, n. 2; w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.
- Sufficio*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., n. 2, (1.)
- Sut*, signification of, 132, 4; declined., 133; use of, 208; 266, n. 3; 275, II., n. 1, (4.)
- Sutis* for *si vultis*, 133, n. 3.
- Sum*, why called an auxiliary, 153; why substantive, ib.; why the copula, 140, 4; conjugated, 153; compds. of, 154, n. 5-a. 7; w. a genit. of quality, 211, n. 6, (7); in expressions denoting part, property, duty, etc., 211, n. 8, (3); 275, n. 1, (5); denoting degree of estimation, 214; w. dat., 226; with two datives, 227; how translated, 227, n. 3; w. abl. denoting in regard to, 250, n. 8; w. an abl. of place, manner, etc., in the predicate, 210, n. 3, (1); w. dat. of gerund, 275, n. 2, (1); w. abl. of price, 262, n. 1; w. genit. of value, 214; *sunt qui*, w. subj., 264, 6; *sunt quidam*, *nonnulli*, etc., 264, 6, n. 4; ellipsis of as copula, 209, n. 4 *fin.*; of *esse* and *fuisse*, 270, n. 3; *sum* w. predicate nom., etc., 210, n. 3, (1); *esse* w. predicate nom., 271, n. 2, and n. 4.
- Sumo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 2; poet. w. inf., 271, n. 3.
- Supellex*, genitive of, 78, 2, (2); abl. of, 82, n. 5, (a.)
- Super*, constr., 235, (3); of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, n. 1, (b.)
- Superfluo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2), n. 1.
- Superjacio*, constr., 233, (1.)
- Superlative degree, 122, 6; particular use of, 122, n. 4; formation of, 124; by *maxime*, 127, 1; superlative with *quisque*, 207, n. 35; w. partitive genit., 212, n. 2, and n. 4, n. 7; place of, 236, (7), (b.)
- Supero*, w. abl., 256, n. 16, (3.)
- Supersedeo*, w. abl., 242.
- Superstes*, genit. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 118, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); 126, 5, (b.); w. genit. or dat., 222, n. 2, (a.)
- Supersum*, w. dat., 224, 11; *superest ut*, etc., 262, n. 3, n. 1.
- Supernus*, its degrees of comparison, 125, 4; *supremus* or *summus*, 205, n. 17; *summus* used adverbially, 205, n. 10; 234, II., n. 3.
- Supines, 25 and 143, 3; few in number, 162, 11; in *um*, by what cases followed, 276, I.; on what verbs dependent, 276, II., w. eo, 276, II., n. 2 and 3; supines in *u*, after what adjs., 276, III., and n. 1; after *fas*, *nefas*, and *opus*, 276, III., n. 2; of two syllables, quantity of, 284, n. 1.

*Supra*, w. acc., 195, 4; w. adjs., 127, 6; 256, n. 13, (b.)  
*Suppedito*, w. two dat., 227, n. 1; 229, n. 4, 1; w. abl., 250, 2, n. 1.  
*Supplex*, genit. plur. of, 114, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); w. dat., 222, n. 1, (b.)  
 Supposition or concession denoted by the tenses of the subj., 280, n. 3.  
*Surripio*, w. dat. or abl., 224, n. 2.  
*Sus*, gender of, 80; 67, n. 4; genit. of, 76, n. 3; dat. and abl. plur., 84, n. 1.  
*Suscipio*, w. participle in *du*, 274, n. 7.  
*Suspensus* and *suspectus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Susus*, use of, 139, n. 2; 208; referring to a word in the predicate, 208, (7); for *hujus* when a noun is omitted, 208, (7); when two nouns are united by *cum*, 208, (7), (c.); denoting fit, etc., 208, (8.)  
 Syllable cæsure, 310, n. 1.  
 Syllabication, 17—23.  
 Syllables, number of, in Latin words, 17; pure and impure, 80; quantity of first and middle, 284; of penultimate, 291; of antepenultimate, 292; of final, 294.  
 Syllepsis, 323, 1, (b.) and (8.)  
 Symplace, 324, 15.  
 Synæresis, 306, 1.  
 Synalopha, 305, 1.  
 Synaphæa, 307, 3.  
 Synchysis, 327, 4.  
 Syncope, 322, 4; in genit. plur. of 1st decl., 43, 2; of 2d decl., 53; in cases of *bos* and *sus*, 83, n. 1 and 84, n. 1; of *e* in oblique cases of nouns in *er* of 2d decl., 43; of 3d decl., 71, n. 1; in perfect, etc., of verbs, 162, 7; see Omission.  
 Synecdoche, 234, II.; 323, 1, (5); 324, 8.  
 Synesis or synthesis, 323, 3, (4.)  
 Synonymia, 324, 29.  
 Synopsis of Horatian metres, 320.  
 Syntax, 1; 200—281.  
 Systole, 307, 1.  
 Syzygy, 303, 4.

## T.

T, sound of, 12; before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, n. 1; in roots of verbs, 171, 3, and n. 6; nouns in, gender of, 66; genit. of, 78; final, quantity of, 299, 2.  
*Taceo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1.  
*Tædet*, w. genit., 215; w. acc., 229, n. 6.  
*Tactio* w. acc., 233, n. 2, n.  
*Talma*, gender of, 42, 2.  
*Talis*, demonstr. adj., 139, 5, (3.); *talis* followed by *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, n.; ellipsis of, 264, 1, (b.); 206, (3), (a.); and (16); *talis* ac, 198, 3, n.; *talis—qualis*, 206, (16.)  
*Tam*, 191, n. 5; *tam—quam*, 277, n. 11; *tam* with an adj. before *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, n.  
*Tamen*, how used, 198, 4, n.  
*Tametsi*, 198, 4; constr., 263, 2, (4.)  
*Tamquam*, w. subj., 263, 2; used like *quidam*, 207, n. 33, (b.) *fin.*; w. abl. absolute, 267, n. 4.  
*Tandem*, 191, n. 6.

*Tantum*, adv., 193, II., 3.  
*Tantus*, demonstrative, 193, 5, (3.); followed by *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, n.; ellipsis of, 264, 1, (b.); 206, (3), (a.); and 6; *tantus—quantus*, 206, (16); *tantus*, *quantus*, etc., w. verbs of valuing, 214, n. 1, (1.); *tantum*, w. genit. plur. and plur. verb., 209, n. 11, (3.); *tantum*, w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1; *tanti* after *referi* and *interest*, 219, n. 5; *tantum*, acc. of degree, 231, n. 5; 232, (3.); 256, n. 16, n.; *tanto*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 16, (2.)  
*Tantopere*, 191, n. 5.  
*Tardo*, 229, n. 4, 1.  
 Tautology, 325, 4.  
*Tazo*, constr., 217, n. 5; w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1.  
*-te*, enclitic, 133, n. 2.  
*Tempe*, 88, 1, and 94.  
*Tempero*, 223, n. 2, and (1), (a.); *temperare mihi non possum, quin*, 262, n. 7.  
 Temporal adjs., 104, 6; classes of, 121, 3;—conjunctions, 198, 10.  
*Tempus*, ellipsis of, 206, n. 7; *tempus est*, w. inf., 270, n. 1; *tempus impendere*, 275, III., n. 2; *tempus consumere*, ib.; *temporis* after *tum* and *tunc*, 212, n. 4, n. 4; w. *id*, *hoc*, or *idem*, 234, II., n. 3; *tempore* or *in tempore*, 263, n. 1; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)  
*Tenax*, w. genitive, 213, n. 1, (1.)  
*Tendo*, constr., 225, IV.; 229, n. 4, 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Teneo*, w. perf. pass. participle, 274, n. 4 *fin.*; *tenet*, perf. pass. part., 268, n. 1, (b.)  
 Tenses, 144; division of, 144, 2 and 3; of the subj., 145, n. 2; of the imperative, 145, n. 3; of the infinitive, 145, n. 4; connection of, 258; principal and historical, 258, A. and B.; of indie. mood, used one for another, 259; future for imperative, 259, n. 1, (4); the preterites of the indie. for the pluperfect subj. in the apodosis of a conditional clause, 259, n. 4; of subj. mood, their use, 260, I., n. 1, and II., n. 1; in protasis and apodosis, 261; of inf. mood, use of, 268; tenses used in epistolary style, 145, II., 3; 259, n. 1, (2.), (c.)  
*Tento*, constr., 273, n. 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Tenus*, w. genit., 221, III.; w. abl., 241, n. 1; place of, 279, 10; 241, n. 1.  
*-ter*, nouns in, 48, 1, 71.  
*Teres*, in genit. sing., 112, 1; defective, 115, 2; its degrees, 126, 4.  
 Terminational comparative, and superlative, 124; adjs. without such comparison, 126, 5.  
 Terminations of inflected words, 40; of nouns, table of, 39; of 1st decl., 41 and 44; of 2d decl., 46; of 3d decl., 55; of 4th decl., 87; of 5th decl., 90; masculine and feminine affixed to the same root, 32, 8; of degrees of comparison in adjs., 124, 125; in adverbs, 194, 2; personal, of verbs, 147, 3; verbal, 150; table of verbal, 152.  
*Terræ*, as genit. of place, 221, n. 3, (4); *terrâ marique*, 254, n. 2; *terrarum*, 212, n. 4, n. 2.  
*Terreo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, n. 3.



*Teruncius*, 327, p. 371; *teruncii habere*, 214, r. 1.

*Tete*, intensive, 138, r. 2.

Tetrameter, 304, 2; *a priori*, 312, iv.; *a posteriore*, 312, v.; *meiurus*, 312, xi.; catalectic, 312, xii.

Tetrapodes, 94.

Tetrastrophon, 319, 3.

*Th*, in syllabication, 18, 2.

'That,' sign of what moods, 273; instead of a repeated subst., how expressed in Latin, 207, r. 26, (c.)

Thesis, in prosody, 308.

Thinking, verbs of, their constr., 272.

Thousands, how expressed in Latin, 118, 5, (a.)

*Th*, how pronounced, 12.

*Tiaras*, 45, 3.

*Tibi*, its pronunciation, 7, r. 1; 19, r.

*Tigris*, genit. of, 75, 2; acc. of, 80, r. 2; abl. of, 82, r. 2, (b.)

Time, advs. of, 191, ii.; conjcs., 198, 10; acc. of, 236; abl. of, 253; with *de* or *sub*, 253, r. 4; with *intra* ib.; with *in*, 253, r. 5; expressed by *id* with a genit., 253, r. 3; by the abl. absolute, 257; the concrete noun instead of the abstract title, 257, r. 7; mode of reckoning, 326; table of, 326, 6.

*Timeo*, 223, r. 2, (1.); w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, r. 7; w. inf., 271, r. 1.

*Timidus*, w. genit., 213, r. 1.

*Tiryns*, genit. of, 77, r. 2.

*-tis*, genit. in, 77, 2, 71, 2.

Titles, place of, 279, 9, (a.)

'Too' or 'rather,' how expressed in Latin, 122, r. 3; 256, r. 9.

*-tor* and *-triz*, verbals in, 102, 6; used as adjs., 129, 8.

*Tot*, indecl., 115, 4; correlative of *quot*, 121, 5; 208, (16); syncope of, before *quot*, 208, (16.)

*Totidem*, indecl., 115, 4.

*Toties*, correlative of *quoties*, 121, 5.

*Totus*, how declined, 107; *toto*, *tota*, abl. without in, 254, r. 2; *totus*, instead of an adverb, 208, r. 15.

Towns, gender of names of, 29, 2; constr.; see Place.

*-tr*, roots of nouns in, 56, ii., r. 3.

*Traditio*, w. dat., 222, r. 8.

*Trado*, w. acc. and inf., 272, r. 1, and r. 6; w. part. fut. pass., 274, r. 7, (a.); *traditur*, constr., 271, r. 2; *trador*, constr., 271, r. 2.

*Tranquillo*, scil. *mari*, 257, r. 9, (1.)

*Trans*, constr. of verbs compounded with, 233, 1; in passive, 234, r. 1, (b.)

*Trayico*, constr., 229, r. 4, 1; 238, (1.)

Transitive verbs, 141; w. acc., 229; ellipsis of, 229, r. 2.

Trees, gender of names of, 29.

*Tres*, how declined, 109.

*Trepulus*, w. genit., 213, r. 1.

*Trebus*, w. two datives, 227, r. 1; w. two accs., 230, r. 2; w. part. perf. pass., 274, r. 7, (a.)

Tricolon, 319, 2; tricolon tristrophon and tetrastrophon, 319, 6.

*Tricorpor*, abl. of, 118, r. 2; 115, 1.

*Tricuspis*, abl. of, 118, r. 2.

Trihemimeris, 304, 5.

Trimeter, 304, 2; catalectic, 312, vii.

*Tripes*, genit. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, r. 2.

Triptotes, 94.

Tristrophon, 319, 3.

Trochaic or feminine caesura, 310, r. 1; — metre, 315 and 303; tetrameter catalectic, 315, 1.; dimeter catalectic, 315, iv.; trochaic pentameter or Phaeacian, 315, iii.

Tropes, 324.

*-trum*, verbals in, 102, 5.

*Truncus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, r. 5, (4.)

*Tu*, declined, 133; in nom. with adj. in voc., 205, r. 15, (c.); used indefinitely, 209, r. 7; when expressed, 209, r. 1; *tui*, feminine, with masc. or neuter gerundive, 275, iii., r. 1, (4.)

*Tum* and *quum*, 191, r. 7; *tum—tum*, 277, r. 8; *tum* and *tunc*, difference between, ib.; *tum maxime*, ib.; *tum temporis*, 212, r. 4, n. 4.

*Tumulus*, as abl. of time, 253, n. 1.

*Tunc* and *nunc*, 191, r. 7; *tunc temporis*, 212, r. 4, n. 4.

*Tumidus* and *turgidus*, w. abl., 213, r. 5, (5.)

*Turris*, declined, 57.

*-tus*, adjs. in, 123, 7; nouns in, of 3d decl., 76, r. 2; 102, 7.

*Tuus*, how declined, 139; used reflexively, 139, r. 1; *tua* after *refert* and *interest*, 219, r. 1.

## U.

*U*, sound of, 7 and 8; *u* and *v*, 2, 3; *u* in genit. and voc. of Greek nouns, 54; roots of nouns of 3d decl. ending in, 53, i.; dat. in, 89; neuters of 4th decl. in, 87; dat. in of 4th decl., 89, 3; in 2d root of verbs, 167, and 171, r. 2; increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290; final, quantity of, 298, 285, r. 4; *u* and *iu* in 3d roots of verbs, 167.

*Ua*, *ue*, etc., pronunciation of, 9, 4 and 5; quantity of, 283, ii., r. 3.

*Uber*, w. genit. or abl., 213, r. 5, (3.)

*-ubus*, in dat. and abl. plur., 89, 5.

*Ubi*, genit., 212, r. 4, n. 2; w. indic. perf. instead of pluperf., 259, r. 1, (d.);

*ubiubi*, 191, r. 1.

*-ucis*, genitives in, 78, (5); 112, 2.

*-udis*, genitives in, 76, r. 1.

*-uis*, genitives in, 76, r. 3.

*-uleus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3, c. 1.

*Ullus*, pronom. adj., 139, 5, (1), (a.);

how declined, 107; how used, 207, r. 31.

*Uterior*, its degrees, 126, 1; *ultimus* for

*ultimum*, 205, r. 15; how translated, 206,

r. 17.

*Ultrix*, gender of, 125, 1, (b.)

*Ultra*, prep., 193, 4; adv., 191, r.

*Ullum tre* for *ultrici*, 276, ii., r. 2.

*-ulus*, verbals in, 102, 5.

*-ulus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3;

128, 5.

*-um*, genit. plur. in instead of *orum*, 43;

instead of *orum*, 53; nouns ending in, 43;

in genit. plur. 3d decl., 88; 114;—*advs.* in, 192, II., 4. (b.)

*Uncia*, 327, p. 872.

—*undus*, participles in, 162, 20.

*Unde domo*, 255, r. 1.

*Ungquam*, 191, II.; *ungquam, usquam, usque, uspiam*, 191, r. 6.

—*untis*, in genit. of Greek nouns, 76, r. 6.

*Unus*, declined, 107; when used in plur., 118, r. 2; added to superlatives, 127, n. 2; *unus et alter*, with verbs singular, 209, r. 12; w. relative and subj., 264, 10; for *solum, tantum*, etc., 205, r. 15. (b.); *unum, as acc.* of degree, 232, (3.)

*Unusquisque*, how declined, 138, 4.

—*ur*, nouns in, gender of, 66, 67; genit. of, 70, 71.

—*ura*, verbals in, 102, 7, r. 2.

*Urbs*, in apposition to names of towns, 237, r. 2, (b.)

—*urio*, verbs in, 187, II., 3.

—*uris*, genitives in, 76, r. 3.

—*us*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 46; exceptions in, 49–51; voc. sing. of, 46, n. and 52; of 3d decl., gender of, 66; 67; genitive of, 76; Greek genit. in, 69, r. 3; nouns in of 4th decl., 87–89; participles in, how declined, 105, r. 2; verbals in, 102, 7; final, quantity of, 301.

*Usitatum est, ut*, 262, r. 3, n. 3.

*Uspiam, usquam, usque*, 191, r. 6; *usquam*, w. genit., 212, r. 4, n. 2; *usque*, w. acc., 195, r. 3; 235, r. 9.

*Usus*, w. abl., 243; *usu venit, ut*, 262, r. 3, n. 1; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., r. 1. (1.)

*Ut* or *uti*, a conj., 198, 8; *ut non* and *ut ne*, ib.; w. subj., 262; its correlatives, 262, r. 1; ellipsis of, 262, r. 4; its meaning after *metuo*, etc., 262, r. 7; *ut non*, 262, r. 5, and r. 6, 2; *ut—ita* or *sic*, 277, r. 12, (b.); *ut*, 'as,' ellipsis of, 277, r. 17; *ut*, 'even if,' and *ut non*, w. subj., 262, r. 2; *ut* with certain impersonal verbs and subj., 262, r. 3; in questions expressing indignation, 270, r. 2, (a.); *ut, ut primum*, etc., with the historical perf., indic., instead of the pluperf., 259, a. 1. (d.); its place, 279, 3, (b.); *ut* after *est* with a predicate adj., 262, r. 3, n. 4; *ut credo, ut puto*, etc., in interposed clauses, 277, I., r. 17; *ut*, 'because,' 277, I., r. 12, (b.); *ut qui*, 264, 8, 2; *ut si*, w. subj., 263, 2; *ut i'a dicam*, 207, r. 33, (b.) *fin.*; *ut*, 'as if,' w. abl. absolute, 257, n. 4; *utut*, w. indic., 259, r. 4, (3); ellipsis of *ut* when *ne* precedes and *et*, etc., follow, 278, r. 6, (c.)

*Utrumque*, w. indic., 259, r. 4, (3.)

*Uter*, how declined, 107; w. dual genit., 212, r. 2, n. 1.

*Utrumque*, how declined, 107.

*Uterlibet, uterque*, and *utrovis*, their meaning and declension, 107; 139, 5, (1), (b.); *utroque*, use of, 207, r. 32; *utroque*, w. plur. verb, 209, r. 11, (4.)

*Utilis*, w. dat., 222, r. 1; 275, III., r. 2; w. ad., 222, r. 4, (1.); *utile est* *ut*, 262, r. 3, n. 3; *utilis*, w. inf. poetically, 270, r. 1, (b.); 275, r. 2; *utilius fuit*, indic. instead of subj., 259, r. 3; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., r. 1.

*Utinam* and *uti*, w. subj., 263, 1.

—*utis*, genitives in, 76, r. 2; 112, 2.

*Utor*, w. abl., 245; w. acc., 245, I., r.; w. two ablatives, 245, n.; *utor, fruor*, etc., their gerundives, 275, II., r. 1.

*Ut pote qui*, w. subj., 264, 8, (2.)

*Utrique*, how used, 107, r. 32, (c.)

*Utrum* and *utrumne*, 198, 11.

—*utus*, adjectives in, 128, 7.

—*us*, adjectives in, 129, 3.

—*ux*, nouns in, genit. of, 78, 2, (5.)

*Uxor*, ellipsis of, 211, r. 7.

## V.

*V*, changed to *u*, 163, 2; sometimes dropped in forming the 2d root of verbs of the 3d conj., 171, r. 4.

*Vaco*, 250, 2, r. 1.

*Vacuus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, r. 5, (3.); cf. 251, n.

*Vado*, constr., 225, IV.; 232, n. 1; 233, (3), n. 1.

*Vae*, w. dat., 228, 3; w. acc., 238, 2.

*Valde*, 127, 2.

*Valde*, w. abl., 250, 2, r. 1; 252; w. acc., 252, r. 4; *valere* or *vale dico*, w. dat., 225, I., n.; w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Validus*, 213, r. 5, (4.)

*Valuing*, verbs of, 214, r. 2; w. genit., 214; w. abl., 252, r. 1.

*Vapulo*, 142, r. 3.

Variable nouns, 92; adjs., 122.

*Vas*, genit. of, 72, r. 1; gender of, 62, r. 1, and r. 2; 93, 2.

*ve*, 198, 2, and n. 1, p. 76; place of, 279, 3, (c.)

*Vehor*, compds. of, 233, (3.), n.

*Vel*, 198, 2; difference between *vel* and *aut*, 198, r.; *vel* w. superlative degree, 127, 4; w. comparatives, 256, r. 9, (b.)

*Velim*, w. subj. without *ut*, 260, r. 4; 262, r. 4.

*Vellem*, how used, 260, r. 2.

*Velox*, constr., 222, r. 4, (2.)

*Velut, velut si, veluti*, w. subj., 263, 2; *velut*, 'as if,' w. abl. absolute, 257, n. 4.

*Venalis*, w. abl. of price, 252.

*Vendo*, w. abl., 252; w. genit., 214, r. 3, n. 1.

*Venco*, 142, r. 3; 252; 214, r. 3, n. 1.

*Venio*, w. two datives, 227, r. 1; w. *ad* or *in*, 225, IV.; w. dat., 225, r. 2; *venit mihi in mentem*, constr., 211, r. 8, (5); 216, r. 3.

*Venitur*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.)

Verbal terminations, 152; nouns, 102; w. acc., 233, r. 2, n.; of place, 237, r. 1; w. dat., 222, r. 8; w. abl. of place, 255; w. genit. of personal pronouns, 211, r. 3, (a.); verbal adjs., 129.

Verbs, 140–189; subject of, 140, 1; active or transitive, 141, I.; neuter or intransitive, 141, II.; neuter passive, 142, 2; neutral passive, 142, 3; deponent, 142, 4; common, 142, 4, (b.); principal parts of, 151, 4; neuter, participles of, 162, 16; inceptive, 173; desiderative, 187, II., 3; 178, n.; irregular, 178–182; defective, 183; re-

dundant, 185; verbs spelled alike, or having the same perfect or supine, 186; derivation of, 187; imitative, 187, 3; frequentative, 187, ii., 1; inceptive, 187, ii., 2; desiderative, 187, ii., 3; diminutive, 187, ii., 4; intensive, 187, ii., 5; 187, ii., 1, (c.); composition of, 188; changes in composition, 189; compounds from simples not in use, 189, n. 4; agreement of, 209, (b.); ellipsis of, 209, n. 4; person of with *qui*, 209, n. 6; agreeing with predicate nominative, 209, n. 9; with collective nouns, 209, n. 11; plural with two or more nominatives, 209, n. 12; after *utroque*, etc., 209, n. 11, (4); after a nominative with *cum* and the abl., 209, n. 12, (6); after nominatives connected by *aut*, 209, n. 12, (5); their place in a sentence, 279, 2; in a period, 280.

*Vere* and *vero*, 192, 4, n. 1.

*Vereor*, w. genit. poet., 220, 1; w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, n. 7; w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Verisimile est ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3; w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.

*Veritum est*, w. acc., 229, n. 6.

*Vero*, use of in answers, 192, 4, n. 1; 198, 9, n. (a.); ellipsis of, 278, n. 11; its place, 279, 3, (c.).

Verses, 304; combinations of in poems, 319.

Versification, 302.

*Versus*, w. acc., 195, n. 8; 235, n. 9; place of, 279, 10, (f.).

*Verito*, constr., 225, iv.; w. two datives, 227, n. 1; 229, n. 4, 1.

*Verum est ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3; w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2; *verum*, conj., 192, 9; its place, 279, 3; *verum* and *verum-tamen*, 'I say,' 278, n. 10; *verum enimvero*, 198, 9, n. (a.); *vero* after comparatives, 266, n. 9.

*Vescor*, with abl., 245, i.; with acc., 245, i., n.

*Vespere*, or *-ri*, 253, n. 1.

*Vester*, how declined, 139, 1; *vestrum*, 133, 3; used after participles, 212, n. 2, n. 2.

*Vestio*, 229, n. 4, 1.

*Veto*, 273, 2, (d.); 262, n. 4; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 6.

*Vetus*, declension of, 112, 2; its superlative, 125, 1; 126, 3.

*Via*, abl. of place without *in*, 254, n. 3.

*Vicem* for *vice*, 247, 1, n. 3.

*Vicinia*, genit. of place, 221, n. 3, (4.); 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.).

*Vicinus*, w. dat. or genit., 222, n. 2, (a.).

*Victrix*, 115, 1, (b.); how declined as an adj., 123, 8.

*Videlicet* and *scilicet*, 198, 7, n. (a.); pr., 235, n. 4, n. 2.

*Video*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, n. 3; *videres*, 260, n. 2; *video* for *curo*, w. *ut*, 273, n. 1; *videor*, constr., 271, n. 2; 272, n. 6.

*Viduus*, constr., 213, n. 5, (4); 250, 2, (1.).

*Vigeo*, w. abl., 250, 2, n. 1.

*Vigil*, abl. of, 113, n. 3; genit. plur. of, 114, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.).

*Vigilia*, 326, 1, (2.)

*Vigilias*, *vigilare*, 222.

*Vilis*, w. abl. of price, 252.

*Vir*, how declined, 48, 2.

*Virgilius*, voc. of, 52; accent of, 14, n.

*Virgo*, declined, 57.

*Virus*, gender of, 51.

*Vix*, declined, 85; acc. sing. of, 79, 2; abl. sing., 82, n. 2; genit. plur., 83, ii., 3; 94; *vi* and *per vim*, difference between, 247, 8, n. 4; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, iii., n. 1, (1.).

*Vitabundus*, w. acc., 233, n. 2, n.

*Vitam vivere*, 232, (1.).

*Vitio creati magistratus*, 247, 2.

*Vivo*, w. abl., 245, ii., 4; w. pred. nom., 210, n. 3, (2); *tertia vivitur aetas*, 234, iii.

*Vix*, with part. fut. pass., 274, n. 12; *vixitum*, 277, i., n. 16.

Vocative, 37; sing., its form, 40, 3; plur., 40, 4; ellipsis of, 240, n. 2.

*Voco*, constr., 225, n. 1; 230, n. 1; pass., 210, n. 3, (3.).

Voices, 141.

*Volucer*, in genit. plur., 108, n. 2.

*Volo*, (are), compds. of, 233, (3), n.

*Volo*, conjugated, 178, 1; w. perf. inf., 268, n. 2; w. perf. part., and ellipsis of *esse*, 269, n. 3; its construction, 271, n. 4, and n. 4; 273, 4; 262, n. 4; *volens*, w. dat. of person, 220, n. 3; *volo bene* and *male alicui*, 225, i., n.; *volo*, w. reflexive pron., 228, n., (b.).

Voluntary agent of pass. verbs, 248, i.; ellipsis of, 141, n. 2; 248, i., n. 1; when expressed by *per* and acc., 247, n. 4; of neuter verbs, 248, n. 2; dative of voluntary agent, 225, ii. and iii.

*Voluntum*, pr., 234, n. 3.

*Vos*, see *tu*, 133.

*Voti* and *votorum damnati*, 217, n. 3.

Vowels, 3, 1; sounds of, 7 and 8; vowel, before a mute and liquid, its quantity, 13, 6, and 283, iv., n. 2; before another vowel, quantity of, 13, 3, and 283, i.; in Greek words, 283, n. 6; before two consonants, 13, 5, and 283, iv.; ending first part of a compound, quantity of, 285, n. 4.

*Vulgus*, gender of, 51; 95.

*Vultus*, gender of, 57.

W.

W, not used in Latin, 2, 4.

Weight, acc. of, 236, n. 7; weights, Roman, 327.

Willingness, verbs of, constr., 273, 4.

Winds, gender of names of, 28.

Wishing, verbs of, constr., 271, n. 4.

Words, division of, 17—23; arrangement of, 279; gender of as mere words, 34, 3.

Writers in different ages, 329.

X

X, sound of, 12; its equivalents, 3, 2; 56, n. 2; 171, 1; in syllabication, 18, 4; nouns in, gender of, 62 and 65; genitive of, 78, 2.

## Y.

Y, found only in Greek words, 2, 5; sound of, 7, *z*. 2; 8, *z*. 5; nouns in, gender of, 62; genitive of, 69; increment in, 8d decl., 287, 3; final, quantity of, 298; 285, *z*. 4.

-*ychis*, in genitive, 78, 2, (6.)

-*ycis*, genitives in, 78, 2, (6.)

-*ydis*, genitives in, 77, 1.

Yi, how pronounced, 9, 1; abl. in, 82, *z*. 6.

-*ygis*, genitives in, 178, 2, (6.)

-*ynos*, Greek genitive in, 71, 2.

-*ys*, nouns in, gender of, 62, 63, *z*.; genitive of, 77; acc. of, 80, *z*.; abl. of, 82, *z*. 6; final, quantity of, 301.

-*yz*, nouns in, gender of, 65, 6.

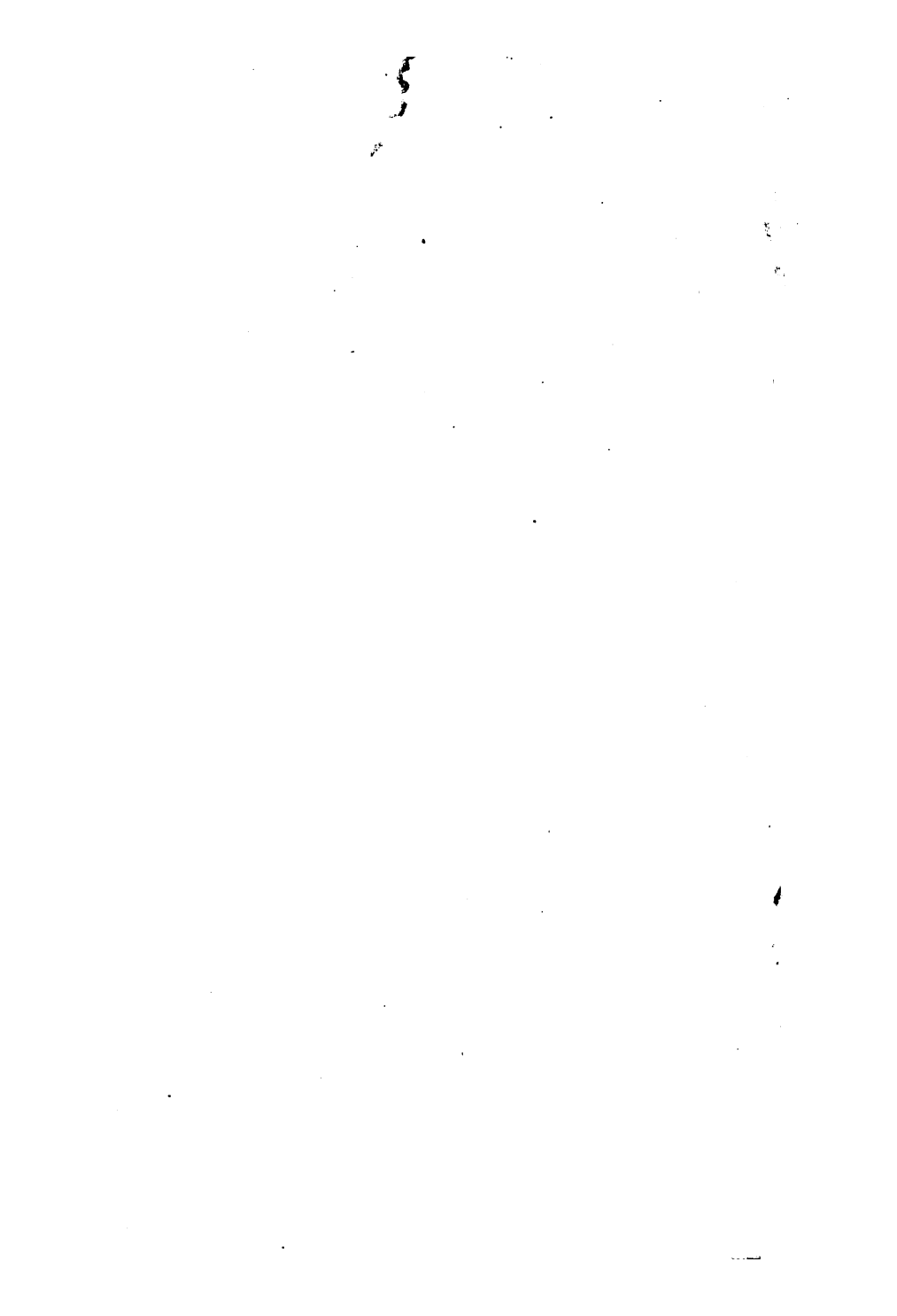
## Z.

Z, found only in words derived from the Greek, 2, 5; its equivalents, 3, 2.

Zeugma, 323, 1, (*b*.) and (2.)







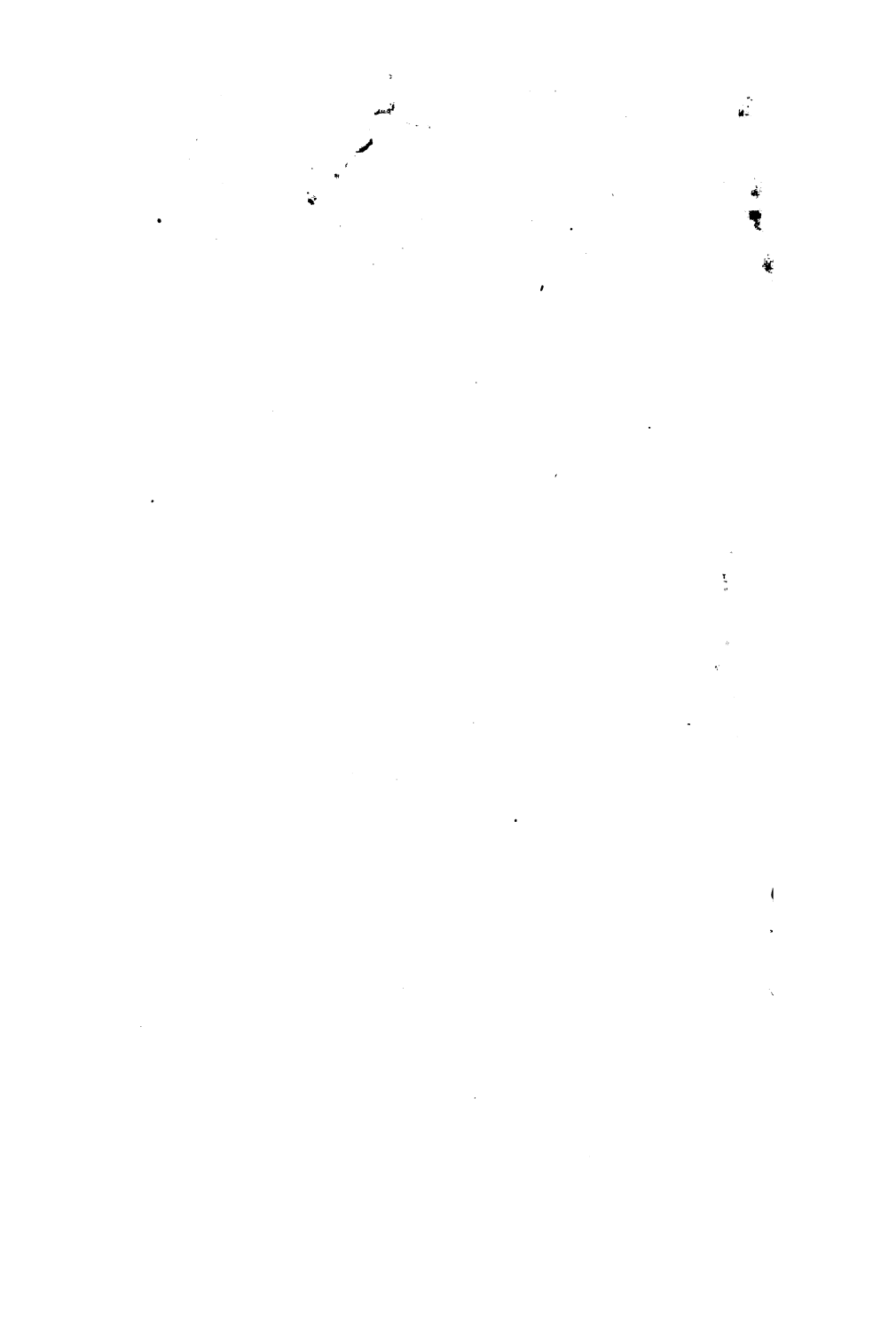
1

2

3

4





To avoid fine, this book should be returned on  
or before the date last stamped below

10M-6.40



7C

APR 30

47  
A3

TX  
475.1  
A566a

Andrews, E. A.  
A Grammar of the

NAME

DATE

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD

597625

